CD to accompany

Herbs & Natural Supplements

An Evidence-based Guide

Second Edition
Disclaimer  Complementary medicine and pharmacology are ever-changing fields. Standard safety precautions must be followed but, as new research and clinical experience broaden our knowledge, changes in treatment become necessary or appropriate. The authors and publisher have, in so far as it is possible, taken every care to ensure that the information contained within the text is as accurate and as up-to-date as possible. Readers are, however, advised to always check available product information with the herb, supplement or drug manufacturer to verify the recommended dose, the method and duration of administration, and contraindications. It is the responsibility of the treating person to determine dosages and the best treatment for the patient. Neither the publisher nor the editors assume any responsibility for any injury and/or damage to persons or property.

♀- indicates a herb or supplement action with particular significance for pregnant women

!!- indicates a warning or cautionary note regarding the action of a herb or supplement
CONTENTS

Click on the name of the item that you are interested in, or use the PDF bookmarks to navigate through this document.

An index to the herbal medicines, conditions and main actions (clinical uses) discussed in the book is located at the end of the PDF.

Adhatoda
Albizia
Aloe vera
Andrographis
Astragalus
Baical skullcap
Beta-carotene
Bilberry
Bitter melon
Black cohosh
Brahmi
Calcium
Calendula
Carnitine
Celery
Chamomile
Chaste tree
Chickweed
Chitosan

Chondroitin
Chromium
Cinnamon
Citrus aurantium
Clove
Cocoa
Coenzyme Q10
Colostrum
Cranberry
Creatine
Damiana
Dandelion
Devil’s claw
Dong quai
Echinacea
Eucalyptus
Evening primrose oil
Fenugreek
Feverfew

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
Fish oils
Flaxseed oil
Folate
Garlic
Gentian
Ginger
Ginkgo biloba
Ginseng—Korean
Ginseng—Siberian
Globe artichoke
Glucosamine
L-Glutamine
Goldenrod
Goldenseal
Grapeseed extract
Green tea
Guarana
Gymnema sylvestre
Hawthorn
Honey
Hops
Horse chestnut
Horseradish
Iodine
Iron
Kava kava
Lavender
Lemon balm
Licorice
Lutein and Zeaxanthin
Lycopene
L-Lysine
Magnesium
Meadowsweet
Mullein
Myrrh
New Zealand green-lipped mussel
Noni
Oats
Olive
Passionflower
Peppermint
Perilla
Policosanol
Probiotics
Psyllium
Pygeum
Quercetin
Raspberry leaf
Red clover
Rosemary
Sage
St John’s wort
St Mary’s thistle
S-Adenosyl-L-Methionine (SAMe)
Saw palmetto
Schisandra
Selenium
Shark cartilage
Slippery elm
Soy
Stinging nettle
Tea tree oil
Thyme
Tribulus
Turmeric
Tyrosine
Valerian
Vitamin A
Vitamin B1
Vitamin B2 — Riboflavin
Vitamin B3 — Niacin
Vitamin B5 — Pantothenic acid
Vitamin B6
Vitamin B12
Vitamin C
Vitamin D
Vitamin E
Wild yam
Willowbark
Withania
Zinc
Appendix 1
Appendix 2
Appendix 3
Appendix 4
Appendix 5
Appendix 6
Appendix 7
Index

Contents  6
Adhatoda

Historical note  Used for hundreds of years as an important herb in Ayurvedic medicine, adhatoda is used traditionally for cough, asthma, bronchitis and tuberculosis.

COMMON NAMES
Adhatoda, Malabar nut tree

OTHER NAMES
Adhatoda zeylanica, arusha, bakash justicia adhatoda, vasaka, vasa

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
*Adhatoda vasica* (family Acanthaceae)

PLANT PARTS USED
Leaves and roots

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
The leaves contain several different alkaloids, including vasicine, vasicinone, vasicinol, adhatodine, adhatonine, adhavasinone, anisotine, peganine (Claeson et al 2000), betaine, steroids and alkanes. The root also contains alkaloids (vasicinol, vasicinolone, vasicinone, adhatonine), a steroid (daucosterol), carbohydrates and alkanes (Claeson et al 2000).

Clinical note
One of the alkaloids found in the herb (vasicine) has been chemically modified and is referred to as RLX (6,7,8,9,10,12-hexahydro-azepino-[2,1-b]-quinazoline-12-one) in the medical literature (Johri & Zutshi 2000). It has been shown in animal studies...
to inhibit antigen-induced mast-cell degranulation and histamine release and exert bronchodilator activity.

MAIN ACTIONS
Adhatoda has not been significantly investigated in clinical studies, so information is generally derived from in vitro and animal studies and is largely speculative. As with many Ayurvedic herbs, most investigation has been undertaken in India and locating original research from these sources is difficult.

ANTITUSSIVE EFFECTS
Results from animal studies show that Adhatoda vasica extract exerts considerable antitussive activity when administered orally and is comparable to codeine when cough is due to irritant stimuli (Dhuley 1999). The antitussive activity may be due to the action of vasicinone and vasicinol, which have activity in the cerebral medulla.

ANTI-INFLAMMATORY
Potent anti-inflammatory activity has also been demonstrated for the alkaloid fraction and shown to be equivalent to that of hydrocortisone in one study (Chakraborty & Brantner 2001).

BRONCHODILATOR AND ANTI-ASTHMATIC ACTIVITY
According to a 2002 review, both vasicine and vasicinone possess in vitro and in vivo bronchodilatory activity and inhibit allergen-induced bronchial obstruction in a manner comparable to that of sodium cromoglycate (Dorsch & Wagner 1991, Jindal et al 2002).

OTHER ACTIONS
HEPATOPROTective
Adhatoda vasica leaf (50–100 mg/kg) was shown to protect against induced liver damage in rats (Bhattacharyya et al 2005); 100 mg/kg of Adhatoda vasica was comparable to the hepatoprotective ability of silymarin at 25 mg/kg. An earlier study showed that Adhatoda vasica (100–200 mg/kg) protected against carbon tetra-chloride-induced liver damage in rats (Pandit et al 2004). The leaf extract significantly enhanced the protective enzymes superoxide dismutase and catalase in the liver: 200 mg/kg of Adhatoda vasica was shown to be comparable to 25 mg/kg of silymarin.

PROTECTS AGAINST RADIATION DAMAGE
Adhatoda vasica (800 mg/kg) protects hematopoietic stem cells against radiation damage by inhibiting glutathione depletion, reducing lipid peroxidation and increas-
ing phosphatase activity in mice (Kumar et al 2005). Animals pretreated with oral doses of adhatoda showed an 81.25% survival rate at 30 days as compared to control animals who could not survive past 25 days.

**ENZYME INDUCTION**
In vitro tests show that *Adhatoda vasica* acts as bifunctional inducer, since it induces both phase I and phase II enzyme systems (Singh et al 2000).

**ABORTIFACIENT**
One of the traditional uses of the herb is as an abortifacient; however, inconsistent results from in vivo studies have made it difficult to determine whether adhatoda has significant abortifacient activity. One study investigating oral administration of leaf extracts showed 100% abortive rates at doses equivalent to 175 mg/kg of starting dry material (Nath et al 1992). Another study found that an *Adhatoda vasica* extract had anti-implantation activity in 60–70% of test animals (Prakash et al 1985).

**ANTISPASMODIC**
The essential oil from the leaves has been shown to exert antispasmodic action on guinea pig tracheal chain (Claeson et al 2000).

**ANTIOXIDANT ACTIVITY**
In vitro tests also show the extract is effective in inducing glutathione S-transferase and DT-diaphorase in lungs and forestomach, and superoxide dismutase and catalase in kidneys (Singh et al 2000).

**CLINICAL USE**
Adhatoda has not been significantly investigated in clinical studies, so information is generally derived from in vitro and animal studies and is largely speculative.

**COUGH**
The antitussive activity of adhatoda extract has been compared to that of codeine in two different models of coughing and in two different animal species (Dhuley 1999). When administered orally, *Adhatoda vasica* extract produced antitussive effects comparable to those of codeine against coughing induced by peripheral irritant stimuli. When coughing was induced by electrical stimulation of the tracheal mucosa, adhatoda extract was only one-quarter as active as codeine. Intravenous administration was far less effective in both cough models. A double-blind, randomised, controlled trial of *Adhatoda vasica* in combination with *Echinacea purpurea* and *Eleutherococcus senticosus* was compared with an *Echinacea* and *Eleutherococcus* mixture and bromhexine (Narimanian et al 2005). Bromhexine is a semi-synthetic derivative of the alkaloid vasicine found in *Adhatoda vasica* (Grange & Snell 1996).
and is found in some pharmaceutical cough mixtures. The *Adhatoda vasica* combination reduced the severity of cough, increased mucus discharge and reduced nasal congestion compared to the other two formulas. Both the herbal mixtures reduced the frequency of cough compared to bromhexine.

**ASTHMA**
Although used for asthma in combination with other herbs, clinical evidence is unavailable to determine effectiveness. Evidence of bronchodilator activity from in vitro and animal studies provides a theoretical basis for use in this indication.

**OTHER USES**
Adhatoda is traditionally used to treat cough, asthma, bronchitis and colds, but has also been used to treat fever, dysentery, diarrhoea, jaundice, to stimulate the birthing process and aid healing afterwards, tuberculosis, headache, and as an antispasmodic (Claeson et al 2000). It has also been used as an abortifacient in some Indian villages.

Topical application of leaves that have been warmed on the fire is used in the treatment of joint pain, lumber pain and sprains.

The powder is reported to be used as a poultice on rheumatic joints, as a counterirritant for inflammatory swelling, on fresh wounds, and in urticaria and neuralgia (Dhuley 1999).

**DOSAGE RANGE**
As clinical research is lacking, the following dosages come from Australian manufacturer recommendations.

- Liquid extract tincture (1:2): 1–3 mL/day.
- Dried herb: 0.5–1.5 g/day.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
Insufficient reliable information is available.

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**
Controlled studies are not available, so interactions are based on evidence of activity and are largely theoretical and speculative.

**CODEINE AND OTHER ANTITUSSIVE DRUGS**
Theoretically, adhatoda may increase antitussive effects of these drugs — beneficial interaction possible under professional supervision.

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**
Insufficient reliable information is available.
PREGNANCY USE
Adhatoda is contraindicated in pregnancy, as the herb may have abortifacient activity.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Adhatoda is an important Ayurvedic medicine used in the treatment of cough, asthma, bronchitis and colds.
- Traditional use further includes fever, dysentery, diarrhoea, jaundice, tuberculosis and headache.
- Preliminary evidence suggests that adhatoda may have bronchodilator activity and inhibit allergen-induced bronchoconstriction; however, clinical studies are unavailable to determine clinical significance.
- Antitussive effects comparable to those of codeine have also been reported in animal studies in which cough has been peripherally induced.
- Adhatoda has been used to stimulate the birthing process and aid healing afterwards and may have abortifacient activity.
- Overall, little clinical evidence is available, so much of the available information is speculative and based on in vitro and animal research and traditional use.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this herb do for me?
Adhatoda has mainly been investigated in animal and test tube studies so it is uncertain what effects it will have in humans. Based on this preliminary information and historical use, it may suppress cough and have some beneficial effects in asthma.

When will it start to work?
This is uncertain because insufficient research data are available.

Are there any safety issues?
Some research suggests that adhatoda may stimulate uterine contractions, so it is not recommended in pregnancy.

REFERENCES


**Albizia**

**Historical note** It is believed that albizia received its name because Filipo del Albizzi, an 18th century Florentine nobleman, introduced the species into cultivation (The Plants Database 2004). It has been used in Ayurvedic medicine for many years and is still a popular treatment for asthma, allergy and eczema.

**COMMON NAME**
Albizia

**OTHER NAMES**
Pit shirish shirisha

**BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY**
*Albizia lebbeck* (family Fabaceae)

**PLANT PARTS USED**
Leaves and stem bark

**CHEMICAL COMPONENTS**
These are poorly understood, but albizia has been reported to contain albiziasaponins A, B and C, epicatechin, procyanidins and stigmastadienone.

**MAIN ACTIONS**
*Albizia* has not been significantly investigated in clinical studies; therefore, information is generally derived from in vitro and animal studies and is largely speculative.

**STABILISING MAST CELLS**
Both in vitro and in vivo tests have reported significant mast-cell-stabilisation effects similar to those of cromoglycate (Johri et al 1985, Tripathi et al 1979). One study found that degranulation was inhibited by 62% (Tripathi et al 1979). The saponin fraction is believed to be the key group responsible for activity.

**ALTERING NEUROTRANSMITTER ACTIVITY**
*Albizia* has an influence on GABA, serotonin and dopamine levels, according to in vivo studies (Chintawar et al 2002, Kasture et al 2000). It appears that different fractions within the herb exert slightly different effects on neurotransmitters. In one study, a saponin-containing fraction from the extract of dried leaves of *Albizia* was shown to decrease brain concentrations of GABA and dopamine, whereas serotonin...
levels increased. Another study that tested the methanolic fraction of an ethanolic extract of *Albizia* leaves found that it raised brain levels of GABA and serotonin (Kasture et al 2000). Additionally, anticonvulsant activity has been demonstrated in vivo for this fraction.

**MEMORY ENHANCEMENT**
Saponins isolated from *Albizia* have been shown to significantly improve the memory retention ability of normal and amnesic mice, compared with their respective controls (Une et al 2001).

**REDUCES MALE FERTILITY**
Two studies using animal models have demonstrated that *Albizia* significantly reduces fertility in males (Gupta et al 2004, 2005).

*Albizia* saponins A, B and C (50 mg/kg) isolated from the stem bark have been shown to significantly reduce the weight of the testis, epididymides, seminal vesicle and ventral prostate of male rats (Gupta et al 2005). A significant reduction in sperm concentration was also noted and *Albizia* reduced fertility by 100% after 60 days. The methanolic extract of *Albizia* pods (50, 100 and 200 mg/kg) was also shown to significantly decrease fertility and arrest spermatogenesis in rats after 60 days (Gupta et al 2004).

**OTHER ACTIONS**
Other actions seen in vitro and in vivo include antifungal and antibacterial action, antispasmodic effect on smooth muscle, positive inotropy and an immunostimulant effect (Barua 2000, Bone 2001, Kasture et al 2000). Cholesterol-lowering activity has been demonstrated in vivo (Tripathi et al 1979).

**CLINICAL USE**
*Albizia* has not been significantly investigated under clinical trial conditions, so evidence is derived from tradition, in vitro and animal studies.

**ALLERGY AND ASTHMA**
*Albizia* is mainly used to treat allergic rhinitis, urticaria and asthma in clinical practice. In vitro and in vivo evidence of mast-cell stabilisation provide a theoretical basis for its use in allergic conditions; however, the clinical significance is unknown.

**OTHER USES**
Traditionally, a juice made from the leaves has been used internally to treat night blindness. The bark and seeds have been used to relieve diarrhoea, dysentery and treat haemorrhoids, most likely because of their astringent activity. The flowers have
been used as an emollient to soothe eruptions, swellings, boils and carbuncles. In Ayurvedic medicine, it is used to treat bronchitis, asthma, allergy and inflammation.

**DOSAGE RANGE**
As clinical research is lacking, the following dosages come from Australian manufacturer recommendations.
- Liquid extract (1:2): 3.5–8.5 mL/day or 25–60 mL/week.
- Dried herb: 3–6 g/day.

**TOXICITY**
This is unknown; however, research with the methanolic fraction of Albizia extract has identified a median lethal dose of 150 mg/kg (Kasture et al 2000).

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
Insufficient reliable information available.

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**
Controlled studies are not available; therefore, interactions are based on evidence of activity and are largely theoretical and speculative.

**BARBITURATES**
Additive effects are theoretically possible, as potentiation of pentobarbitone-induced sleep has been observed in vivo — use with caution.

**ANTIHISTAMINES AND MAST-CELL-STABILISING DRUGS**
Additive effects are theoretically possible because both in vitro and in vivo tests have identified significant mast-cell-stabilisation activity similar to that of cromoglycate — potentially beneficial interaction.

**TRICYCLIC AND SELECTIVE SEROTONIN REUPTAKE INHIBITOR ANTIDEPRESSANT DRUGS**
Increased risk of serotonin syndrome is theoretically possible, as Albizia increases serotonin levels, according to in vivo studies — observe patient.

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**
Significant reductions in male fertility have been reported in tests using animal models; however, it is not known whether the effects also occur in humans. Until further research is conducted, caution is advised.

**PREGNANCY USE**
Insufficient reliable information available.
PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING

- *Albizia* is a traditional Ayurvedic herb used to treat allergies, asthma, eczema and inflammation.
- Preliminary research has shown that it has significant mast-cell-stabilisation activity comparable to cromoglycate, and has also identified memory enhancement activity and possible anticonvulsant effects.
- Overall, little clinical evidence is available; therefore, much information is speculative and based on in vitro and animal research.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

**What will this herb do for me?**

*Albizia* is a traditional Ayurvedic medicine used to reduce allergic conditions, such as allergic rhinitis and urticaria. It is also used for atopic conditions, such as eczema and asthma, when indicated. Controlled trials have not been conducted, so it is uncertain whether it is effective.

**When will it start to work?**

This is uncertain because insufficient research data are available.

**Are there any safety issues?**

This is uncertain because insufficient research data are available. It is advised that people with asthma be monitored by a healthcare professional.

REFERENCES


Historical note  *Aloe vera* has been used since ancient times as a medicinal plant. In fact, evidence of use has been found on a Mesopotamian clay tablet dating back to 2100 BC (Atherton 1998). It has been used as a topical treatment for wounds, burns and other skin conditions and internally as a general tonic, anti-inflammatory agent, carminative, laxative, aphrodisiac and anthelmintic by the ancient Romans, Greeks, Arabs, Indians and Spaniards. According to legend, Alexander the Great captured an island in the Indian Ocean in order to gain the *Aloe vera* for his wounded army. Today aloe is used to soothe skin complaints and heal burns, and is one of the most common ingredients in many cosmetic products.

**OTHER NAMES**
Aloes, Barbados aloe, Curacao aloe

**BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY**
*Aloe vera* (L.)/*Aloe barbadensis* (Mill.) (family Aloeaceae)

**PLANT PARTS USED**
The leaf, from which several different products are made; namely the exudate, gel, extract and juice. The exudate (‘aloes’ in older pharmacy texts) is a thick residue, yellow in colour and bitter in taste, that comes from the latex that oozes out when the leaf is cut. The ‘gel’ refers to the clear gel or mucilage produced by the inner parenchymal cells in the central part of the leaf. Diluted aloe gel is commonly known as ‘aloe vera extract’ or ‘aloe juice’.

**CHEMICAL COMPONENTS**
*Aloe vera* extract, or diluted aloe gel, is made of mostly water (99%) and mono- and polysaccharides, most important of which is the monosaccharide mannose-6-phosphate and the polysaccharide gluco-mannans, which are long-chain sugars containing glucose and mannose. Gluco-mannan has been named acemannan and is marketed as Carrisin. A glycoprotein with anti-allergic properties has also been isolated, and has been named alprogen. Recently, C-glucosyl chromone, an anti-inflammatory compound, has also been identified.

Aloe gel also contains lignans, saponins, salicylic acid, sterols and triterpenoids, vitamins A, C, E, B12, thiamine, niacin and folic acid, and the minerals sodium,


Ultimately, the types and levels of components present in aloe gel vary according to geographic origin, variety and processing method.

The exudate contains the pharmacologically active anthraquinone glycosides: aloin, aloe- emodin, barbaloin and emodin (Choi & Chung 2003).

**MAIN ACTIONS**

The active ingredients, whether acting alone or in concert, include glycoproteins, anthraquinones, polysaccharides, and low-molecular-weight species such as beta-sitosterol (Choi & Chung 2003).

**ASSISTS IN WOUND HEALING**

Wound healing is associated with various mechanisms and constituents. Thromboxane inhibits wound healing and aloe has been shown to inhibit thromboxane in vitro (Zachary et al 1987). Enzymes in aloe have also been shown to break down damaged tissue, which can then be removed by phagocytosis (Bunyaprathatsara et al 1996). A glycoprotein fraction was found to increase proliferation of human keratinocytes and increase the expression of receptors for epidermal growth factor and fibronectin in vitro (Choi et al 2001). The same research team then demonstrated that this glycoprotein enhanced wound healing by increasing cell proliferation in vivo. Beta-sitosterol appears to improve wound healing by stimulating angiogenesis and neovascularisation in vivo (Moon et al 1999). Aloe polysaccharides have been shown to ameliorate UV-induced immunosuppression (Strickland et al 1994).

**Tests in animal models** Several animal studies support the application of aloe gel to skin damaged by frostbite as a means to maintain circulation and reduce the vasoconstrictive effects of thromboxane in the affected dermis (Heggars et al 1987, Klein & Penneys 1988, McCauley et al 1990, Miller & Koltai 1995). In combination with pentoxifylline, it will act synergistically to further increase tissue survival (Miller & Koltai 1995).

A study to test the effectiveness of topical application versus oral administration in rats with full-thickness wounds showed topical use of aloe gel to be slightly more effective than internal use. The collagen content in granulation tissue was measured to be 89% in the topical group compared with 83% in the oral group (Chithra et al
1998). Other studies have found that aloe gel not only increases collagen content, but also changes collagen composition, in addition to increasing collagen cross-linking, which in turn increases the breaking strength of scar tissue, making the seal stronger (Chithra et al 1998, Heggers et al 1996).

Full thickness hot-plate burns (3% total surface area) to test animals healed more quickly with the application of aloe gel compared to silver sulfadiazine (SSD) or salicylic acid cream (aspirin) (Rodriguez-Bigas et al 1988). Guinea pigs treated with aloe recovered in 30 days as compared to 50 days for control animals (dressing only) and wound bacterial counts were effectively decreased. Aloe vera was also found to promote healing and decrease inflammation in second-degree burns in vivo (Somboonwong et al 2000). A significant reduction in vasodilation and post-capillary venular permeability was recorded on day 7 in the aloe group. At day 14 arteriolar diameter had returned to normal and the size of the wound was greatly reduced as compared to controls.

Aloe gel prevented delayed hypersensitivity of UV-irritated skin as well as contact hypersensitivity in animal models with allergic reactions (Strickland et al 1994). Acemannan gel (beta-(1,4)-acetylated mannan) has demonstrably improved radiation burns in mice. Best results were obtained when the gel was applied during the first week after injury (Roberts & Travis 1995).

**Use with pharmaceutical agents** Several topical pharmaceutical antimicrobial agents, such as SSD, inhibit wound contraction, thereby slowing the rate of wound healing. An experimental model was used to investigate whether co-administration of aloe could reverse this effect and improve wound healing rate (Muller et al 2003). Full-thickness excised wounds were treated with placebo (aqueous cream or saline), SSD cream 0.5%, 1% or 1% with A. vera three times daily for 14 days, then observed until healed. Aloe vera was found to reverse the delayed wound healing produced by SSD, resulting in the shortest wound half-life and healing time.

*Aloe vera* (100 and 300 mg/kg daily for 4 days) blocked the ability of hydrocortisone acetate to suppress wound healing by up to 100% (Davis et al 1994a). Growth factors in *A. vera* were thought to mask sterols and certain amino acids that prevent wound healing. An earlier study identified the sugar mannose-6-phosphate to be one of the chief constituents responsible for wound healing (Davis et al 1994b).

---

**Clinical note — Wound healing models**
Acute wound healing occurs in four stages that tend to overlap: haemostasis, inflammation, proliferation and remodelling. Underlying metabolic disturbances and/or disease may disrupt the regenerative process, causing delayed healing. Much
investigation is conducted with in vitro assays based on cell culture models of the various phases of healing, which provides information about possible mechanisms of action. Experimental models using animals are undertaken to determine the reduction of wound size (usually in terms of area) and hence the rate of healing. Histological examination of granulation and epidermal tissues provides a concurrent analysis at the molecular level. Human models of wound healing provide an opportunity to observe a variety of healing disorders that are less predictable than their cell or animal-based counterparts. Aloe vera is the only traditional wound healing herbal medicine that has been subjected to a variety of cell culture-based, animal and human-based studies (Krishnan 2006).

**ANTIOXIDANT**

Studies have found that several compounds present in aloe gel protect tissues against oxidative damage caused by free radicals (‘t Hart et al 1990, Singh et al 2000, Wu et al 2006, Yagi et al 2002, Zhang et al 2006). This is achieved by direct antioxidant activity and indirect activity through stimulation of endogenous antioxidant systems.

Treatment with aloe gel extract decreased lipid peroxidation and hydroperoxides in diabetic rats to near normal levels (Rajasekaran et al 2005). The extract also significantly increased superoxide dismutase, catalase, glutathione peroxidase and glutathione-S-transferase in the liver and kidney. In another study, data obtained 3, 7 and 10 days after exposure to radiation showed that aloe gel significantly reduced oxidative damage in the liver, lungs, and kidney tissues of irradiated rats (Saada et al 2003).

Three-year-old aloe plants appear to have the highest amounts of flavonoids and polysaccharides and hence the best free radical scavenging capacity, as compared to 2- and 4-year-old plants (Hu et al 2003). Interestingly, the 3-year-old plant demonstrated antioxidant activity of 72.19%, compared to alpha-tocopherol at 65.20%.

**IMMUNOSTIMULANT**

It has been suggested that aloe may have immune-stimulating capabilities. Much of the available research has been performed on mice or in vitro and aloe shows antiviral, antitumour and non-specific immunostimulant activity. An experiment in 1980 demonstrated that mice given aloe extract 2 days before exposure to pathogens were protected against a variety of fungi and bacteria (Brossat et al 1981). Later, the isolated compound acemannan (beta-(1,4)-acetylated mannan) was shown to increase the response of lymphocytes to antigens in vitro (Womble & Helderman 1988). In mice, acemannan stimulated cytokines, bringing about an immune attack
on implanted sarcoma cells, leading to necrosis and regression of cancer cells (Peng et al 1991). A later trial investigated the effects of acemannan on mouse macrophages (Zhang & Tizard 1996). Acemannan stimulated macrophage cytokine production (IL-6 and TNF-alpha), NO release, surface molecule expression, and cellular morphologic changes. Similarly, a polysaccharide fraction isolated from Aloe vera promoted human keratinocytes to secrete TGF-alpha, TGF-beta-1, IL-1-beta, IL-6, IL-8 and TNF, and inhibited the release of NO as compared to control (Chen et al 2005). The immune enhancing effects of acemannan may be due in part to the compound’s ability to promote differentiation of immature dendritic cells (Lee et al 2001). These cells are crucial for the initiation of primary immune responses.

Three purified polysaccharide fractions (PAC-I, PAC-II, and PAC-III) from A. vera stimulated peritoneal macrophages, splenic T and B cells, and increased the ability of these cells to secrete TNF-alpha, IL-1-beta, IFN-gamma, IL-2, and IL-6 (Leung et al 2004). The compound with the highest mannose content, and therefore the highest molecular weight (PAC-I), demonstrated the most potential. A 99% pure carbohydrate compound (purified acemannan) isolated from aloe demonstrated potent haematopoietic and haematologic activity in myelosuppressed mice (Talmadge et al 2004).

Specific manufacturing methods can be applied to enhance the extracts. For example, 1 g of extract obtained from leaves subjected to cold and dark treatment contained 400 mg of neutral polysaccharide compared with 30 mg in leaves not specially treated (Shida et al 1985).

**ANTI-INFLAMMATORY**

A number of in vitro and in vivo studies confirm the anti-inflammatory activity of Aloe vera.

The gel reduces oxidation of arachidonic acid, thereby reducing PG synthesis and inflammation (Davis et al 1987). It inhibits the production of PGE2 by 30% and IL-8 by 20%, but has no effect on thromboxane B2 production in vitro (Langmead et al 2004). Following burn injury in vivo, A. vera was also found to inhibit inflammation by reducing leukocyte adhesion and decreasing the pro-inflammatory cytokines TNF-alpha and IL-6 (Duansak et al 2003).

One study conducted on rats with croton oil-induced oedema reported a 47% reduction in swelling after the application of topical aloe gel (Davis et al 1989). Another study found aloe gel to reduce vascularity and swelling by 50% in the inflamed synovial pouch in rats, along with a 48% reduction in the number of mast cells in the synovial fluid within the pouch. When aloe gel was applied topically there was also an increase in fibroblast cell numbers (Davis et al 1992). C-glucosyl...
chromone, isolated from aloe gel extracts, is chiefly responsible for the anti-inflammatory effect, with activity comparable to hydrocortisone in experimental models (Hutter et al 1996). A study of streptozotocin-induced diabetic mice further confirmed the anti-inflammatory activity of A. vera and identified the isolated constituent gibberellin as also effective (Davis and Maro 1989). Both compounds inhibited inflammation in a dose dependant manner.

**LAXATIVE**
The aloe latex contains anthraquinones, which have a stimulant laxative activity. Studies in rats have shown that aloe latex increases intestinal water content, stimulates mucus secretion, and induces intestinal peristalsis (Ishii et al 1994). However, aloe as a laxative is more irritating than other herbs (Reynolds & Dweck 1999) and long-term use can cause an electrolyte imbalance through depletion of potassium salts. Alternatives are recommended if long-term treatment is required.

**ANTI-ULCER**
The anti-ulcer activity of Aloe vera has been proposed to be due to anti-inflammatory, cytoprotective, healing and mucus stimulatory effects. According to an in vivo study, A. vera promotes gastric ulcer healing (Eamlamnam et al 2006). In contrast to these results, a stabilised fresh aloe gel preparation prolonged the effect of histamine-stimulated acid secretion but inhibited pepsin in another study (Suwitayavat et al 2004).

**HYPOGLYCAEMIC**
Glucomannan slows carbohydrate absorption and slows the postprandial insulin response by up to 50% (McCarty 2002).

Aloe vera leaf gel has been investigated as a possible hepatoprotective and kidney protective agent in diabetes type 2 using animal models. In one study, the leaf gel and glibenclamide both decreased degenerative kidney changes, serum urea levels and creatinine levels, but only aloe further reduced kidney lipid peroxidation (Bolkent et al 2004). Can et al (2004) tested aloe pulp, aloe gel extract and glibenclamide, finding that all treatments decreased liver tissue damage as compared to control animals. Aloe gel extract also increased glutathione levels and decreased non-enzymatic glycosylation, lipid peroxidation, serum alkaline phosphatase and alanine transaminase.
ANTIBACTERIAL
Aloe vera is active against a wide variety of bacteria in vitro, such as Pseudomonas aeruginosa, Klebsiella pneumoniae, Streptococcus pyogenes, Staphylococcus aureus and Escherichia coli (Heck et al 1981, Shelton 1991).

ANTIVIRAL
In vitro studies suggest that Aloe vera has antiviral activity due to its interference with DNA synthesis (Sáoo et al 1996). The polysaccharide fractions of aloe gel inhibit the binding of benzopyrene to primary rat hepatocytes and thus prevent the formation of potentially cancer-initiating benzopyrene-DNA adducts in vitro. This was later confirmed by in vivo studies (Kim & Lee 1997). Moreover, in vitro experiments have shown the anthraquinones in aloe to be virucidal against HSV 1 and 2, vaccinia virus, parainfluenza virus and vesicular stomatitis virus (Anderson 2003).

Clinical investigation with the acemannan component has identified antiviral activity, particularly against feline AIDS, HIV type 1, influenza virus, measles virus and herpes simplex (Kahlon et al 1991a,b, Sydiskis et al 1991).

CLINICAL USE
Although Aloe vera products are used for many indications, the chief use is treating skin conditions.

SKIN CONDITIONS
Aloe is used in the treatment of wounds, burns, radiation burns, ulcers, frostbite, psoriasis and genital herpes. The healing properties may be attributed to antimicrobial, immune-stimulating, anti-inflammatory and antithromboxane activities. Allantoin has also been shown to stimulate epithelialisation, and acemannan has been shown to stimulate macrophage production of IL-1 and TNF, which are associated with wound healing (Liptak 1997).

Most human studies have found that topical application of aloe vera gel increases wound healing rate and effectively reduces microbial counts; however, there are some negative studies, most likely related to the fact that the composition of aloe vera gel varies, even within the same species. Chemical composition depends on source, climate, region, and the processing method used (Choi & Chung 2003).

Dry-coated aloe vera gloves were tested by 30 women suffering from dry, cracked hands, with or without contact dermatitis due to occupational exposure, in an open contralateral comparison study (West & Zhu 2003). Women wore a glove on one hand for 8 hours daily for 30 days followed by a rest period for 30 days and then 10 more days of treatment. Results indicated that the aloe vera glove significantly reduced dry skin, irritation, wrinkling, dermatitis, redness and improved skin integrity.
It would be interesting to see this study repeated using a standard non-aloe fortified glove on the opposing hand.

The effects of aloe gel applied to skin following dermabrasion in humans are more controversial, with some patients responding well (Fulton 1990), while others have had severe adverse reactions, including burning sensations and dermatitis (Hunter & Frumkin 1991). A standard polyethylene oxide gel dressing saturated with stabilised aloe vera gel was compared to the standard oxide dressing alone in the study by Fulton. The addition of Aloe vera produced a significant vasoconstriction and anti-inflammatory effect 24 and 48 hours after application. By the 4th day it produced less crusting and exudate and by the 5th and 6th day re-epithelialisation was almost complete (90% for aloe compared with 50% for the standard treatment). Overall, wound healing was quicker with A. vera and completed by an average of 72 hours before the oxide gel-treatment.

In contrast, one study found that topical aloe vera gel actually slowed healing after caesarean delivery (Schmidt & Greenspoon 1991).

**Burns** One study involving 27 patients with a partial-thickness burn injury found that topical aloe gel significantly increased the healing rate compared with controls who used a vaseline gauze. The mean healing time for the aloe gel group was 11.89 days compared with the control group, which was 18.18 days. Additionally, the aloe treatment brought about full epithelialisation after 14 days (Visuthikosol et al 1995).

Another study involving 18 outpatients with moderate to deep second-degree burns ranging from 2% to 12% of total body surface area showed that a commercial aloe vera ointment was as effective as SSD in regard to protection against bacterial colonisation and healing time. More specifically, the mean healing time with aloe vera treatment was 13 days compared with 16.15 days for SSD (Heck et al 1981).

Results are less encouraging for sunburn protection and healing. A randomised double-blind trial in 20 healthy volunteers evaluated the effect of aloe vera cream for both prevention and treatment of sunburn (Puvabanditsin & Vongtongsri 2005). The cream (70% aloe) was applied 30 minutes before, immediately after, or both before and after UV irradiation. The cream was then continually applied daily for 3 weeks. The results showed that the aloe vera cream did not protect against sunburn and was not an effective treatment.

**Frostbite** In combination with other treatments, topical Aloe vera significantly enhances healing and has a beneficial effect in frostbite. One clinical study compared the effects of topical aloe vera cream in combination with standard treatment, such as rapidly rewarming the affected areas, analgesics, antibiotics and debridement.
(n = 56) with another group of 98 patients who did not receive aloe vera treatment. Of those receiving aloe vera in addition to usual treatment, 67% healed without tissue loss compared with 32.7% in the control group. Additionally, 7.1% of the total group of 56 required amputation compared with 32.7% in the control group. Although encouraging, this study is difficult to interpret because the groups were not well matched and combination therapies differed (Heggers et al. 1987).

Radiation-induced dermatitis  A recent review concluded that aloe gel was as effective as mild steroid creams, such as 1% hydrocortisone, to reduce the severity of radiation burn, without the side-effects associated with steroid creams (Maddocks-Jennings et al. 2005). In contrast, another review concluded that aloe was ineffective for the prevention or reduction of side-effects to radiation therapy in cancer patients (Richardson et al. 2005). That review analysed 1 past review, 5 published RCTs and 2 unpublished RCTs. It is important to note that various preparations such as creams, juices, gels and fresh aloe had been tested, which makes it difficult to assess the evidence.

Ulcers  A number of case reports tell of a positive effect on leg ulcers with topical use of aloe gel, including cases that did not respond to standard medical interventions (Zawahry et al. 1973). Application of water-based aloe-gel saline soaks, broad-spectrum antibiotics and antifungals allowed a wound, caused by necrotising fasciitis, to heal in 45 days in a 72-year-old woman. Aloe gel and saline-soaked sponges were also used to treat two large seroma cavities caused by deep vein thrombosis in a 48-year-old man (Ardire 1997).

Although aloe gel is commonly used as a topical agent for wound healing it is also used internally. A small study of six patients with chronic leg ulcers found that ingesting 60 mL aloe juice daily and applying aloe gel directly to the ulcer and surrounding area resulted in less exudate, odour and seepage through the bandaging (Atherton 1998).

Psoriasis  A double-blind placebo-controlled study found topical aloe vera extract 0.5% in a hydrophilic cream to be beneficial in the treatment of psoriasis. Sixty patients aged 18–50 years with slight to moderate chronic psoriasis and PASI (psoriasis area and severity index) scores between 4.8 and 16.7 (mean 9.3) participated in the study, which was scheduled for 16 weeks with 12 months of follow-up. Patients were examined on a weekly basis and those showing a progressive reduction of lesions, desquamation followed by decreased erythema, infiltration and lowered PASI score were considered healed. By the end of the study, the aloe vera extract cream had cured 83.3% of patients compared with the placebo cure rate of 6.6% (P < 0.001). Psoriatic plaques decreased in 82.8% of patients versus only 7.7%...
in the placebo group ($P < 0.001$). PASI scores decreased to a mean of 2.2 (Syed et al 1996a). In contrast, a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial found no significant benefits with a commercial aloe vera gel in 41 patients with stable plaque psoriasis (Paulsen et al 2005). Following a 2-week washout period patients applied either the aloe gel or placebo twice daily for 1 month. Redness and desquamation decreased by 72.5% in the active treatment group as compared to 82.5% in the placebo group. It should be pointed out that 82.5% is an extremely high placebo responder rate. Fifty-five per cent of patients reported local side-effects, mainly drying of the skin on test areas.

**Genital herpes**  Two clinical studies have investigated the effects of *Aloe vera* 0.5% topical preparations in genital herpes, producing good results.

A double-blind, placebo-controlled study has demonstrated that aloe vera extract (0.5%) in a hydrophilic cream is more efficacious than placebo in the treatment of initial episodes of genital herpes in men ($n = 60$, aged 18–40 years). Each patient was provided with a 40 g tube, containing placebo or active preparation with instructions on self-application of the trial medication to their lesions three times daily for 5 consecutive days (maximum 15 topical applications per week). The treatment was well tolerated by all patients (Syed et al 1997).

The other study involving 120 subjects used a preparation containing 0.5% of whole aloe leaf extract in hydrophilic castor and mineral oil cream base, which was applied three times daily for 5 days per week for 2 weeks. Treatment resulted in a shorter mean duration of healing compared with placebo. Aloe cream also increased the overall percentage of healed patients and there were no significant adverse reactions reported (Syed et al 1996b).

**HIV**  The acemannan component of *Aloe vera* has been used as adjunctive therapy to antiretroviral therapy in HIV infection. A preliminary clinical trial found that acemannan may enhance the activity of the anti-HIV drug AZT. A dose of 800 mg acemannan daily significantly increased circulating monocytes (macrophages) in 14 HIV patients. Aloe increased the number and activity of the monocytes (McDaniel et al 1990). Subsequently, a randomised, double-blind placebo-controlled study of 63 male subjects with advanced HIV, taking zidovudine and didanosine, investigated the effects of 400 mg of acemannan taken four times daily for 48 weeks. Results showed a decrease in CD4 cell numbers in the acemannan group compared with placebo (Montaner et al 1996).
**GASTROINTESTINAL CONDITIONS**

Oral *Aloe vera* is a popular treatment for a variety of gastrointestinal disorders. It has been shown to improve different parameters of gastrointestinal function in normal subjects, such as colonic bacterial activity, gastrointestinal pH, stool specific gravity and gastrointestinal motility (Bland 1986). Due to its anthraquinone content, it is used as a stimulant laxative.

Besides this indication, there is still a need for scientific validation to establish which gastrointestinal conditions are most receptive to treatment with aloe.

**IRRITABLE BOWEL SYNDROME**

*Aloe vera* may be effective for patients with diarrhoea-predominant IBS, according to a recent randomised, placebo-controlled study (*n* = 58) (Davis et al 2006). Both treatments were administered for 1 month with a follow-up period of 3 months. Within the first month, 35% of the patients receiving *A. vera* responded compared to 22% with placebo. Overall, diarrhoea-predominant IBS patients had a more statistically significant responder rate than placebo (43% vs 22%).

**ULCERATIVE COLITIS**

A double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled trial evaluated the efficacy and safety of *Aloe vera* gel (100 mL twice daily for 4 weeks) in ulcerative colitis (Davis et al 2006). Aloe induced clinical remission in 30% of subjects compared to 7% for placebo and symptom improvement in 37% compared to 7% for placebo. The Simple Clinical Colitis Activity Index and histological scores also decreased significantly for patients on the aloe treatment, but not for those receiving placebo.

**OTHER USES**

**ASTHMA**

According to a small open study (*n* = 33), long-term oral administration of aloe may have benefits for some people with chronic asthma, as one-third of subjects reported improvement (Afzal et al 1991, Shida et al 1985).

**DIABETES**

Three systemic reviews of herbal medicines for glycaemic control in diabetes found that *Aloe vera* can lower blood glucose levels in diabetic patients (Grover et al 2002, Vogler & Ernst 1999, Yeh et al 2003). In one trial aloe juice consisting of 80% gel or placebo was given in a trial of 40 patients who were recently diagnosed with type 1 diabetes at the dose of 1 tablespoon twice daily. From day 14 the blood sugar levels in the aloe group began to fall significantly compared with the control group and continued to steadily drop during the period of study (*P* < 0.01). Blood triglyceride
levels were also substantially reduced but cholesterol levels remained the same (Yongchaiyudha et al 1996). A single blind, placebo-controlled trial found that oral aloe gel was more effective in reducing blood sugar levels when combined with glibenclamide than glibenclamide alone in 72 patients with type 2 diabetes. Patients took 5 mg of glibenclamide twice daily and 1 tablespoon aloe gel. Fasting blood glucose levels dropped appreciably after just 2 weeks’ treatment, and were still falling after 42 days (Bunyapraphatsara et al 1996).

**CANCER**

There are some epidemiological studies suggesting that aloe may reduce the risk of certain cancers; however, further research is required to clarify its place in practice (Sakai et al 1989, Siegers et al 1993).

**DOSAGE RANGE**

- Aloe vera gel: fresh from a living plant or as stabilised juice 25 mL (4.5:1) up to four times daily.
- Extracts standardised to acemannan: preparation containing up to 800 mg/day.
- Topical application: gel, cream or ointment as needed.
- 1.5–4.5 mL daily of 1:10 tincture of resin (latex).

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**

Although adverse reactions are rare, hypersensitivities and contact dermatitis to aloe have been reported (Morrow et al 1980, Nakamura & Kotajima 1984). Hypersensitivity manifested by generalised nummular eczematous and papular dermatitis, and presumably by contact urticaria, developed in a 47-year-old man after 4 years of using oral and topical aloe. Patch tests for aloe were positive in this patient (Morrow et al 1980).

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**

**HYPOGLYCAEMIC AGENTS**

Oral *Aloe vera* may have hypoglycaemic activity, therefore additive effects are theoretically possible — observe patients taking this combination.

**LAXATIVES**

Additive effects are theoretically possible with oral aloe latex inducing griping pains — use with caution.

**TOPICAL CORTISONE PREPARATIONS**

In addition to its own anti-inflammatory effects, animal studies have shown that *Aloe vera* increases the absorption of hydrocortisone by hydrating the stratum corneum,
inhibits hydrocortisone’s suppressive effects on wound healing and increases wound tensile strength — possible beneficial interaction.

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**  
Strong laxatives such as aloe latex are contraindicated in children. Avoid in patients with known hypersensitivity to aloe or with nausea, vomiting or signs and symptoms of gastrointestinal obstruction. Avoid excessive use and long-term use (more than 2 weeks), as potassium losses may occur, which may alter cardiac electrophysiology.

Use with caution in people with thyrotoxicosis.

A case study of depression of thyroid hormones in a woman taking Aloe vera juice has been reported (Pigatto & Guzzi 2005). The patient consumed 10 mL daily for 11 months and laboratory testing showed reduced levels of thyroxine and triiodothyronine. Levels returned to normal progressively after discontinuing the aloe juice and the patient achieved full clinical remission after 16 months. Reduced serum levels of the thyroid hormones $T_3$ and $T_4$ have been reported for Aloe vera in vivo (Kar et al 2002).

**PREGNANCY USE**  
Strong laxatives such as aloe latex are contraindicated in pregnancy.

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**
- Different parts of the Aloe vera plant are used therapeutically. The gel is used topically and the latex is used internally.
- The gel may be beneficial in the treatment of skin conditions (wounds, burns, radiation burns, ulcers, frostbite, psoriasis and genital herpes). There is good scientific evidence for these indications.
- Traditionally, aloe latex is also used internally for gastrointestinal ulcers, dyspepsia and what is known today as IBS. Aloe is also used in conditions such as food allergies and disturbed bowel flora.
- Aloe may be a useful adjunct in the treatment of chronic poor immunity, HIV, cancer and chronic fatigue. There is preliminary scientific support for these indications.

**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**  
**What will this herb do for me?**
Aloe gel is traditionally used for burns, wounds and inflammatory skin disorders. There is good scientific evidence that aloe may be of benefit in these conditions; however, the chemical composition of Aloe vera products will vary depending on geographical and processing factors. Traditionally, aloe is also used internally for dyspepsia, gastrointestinal ulcers and IBS.
When will it start to work?

Aloe has an immediate effect on burns and inflammatory skin diseases. Improvement occurs within several weeks with the condition continuing to improve with use. Chronic conditions may require long-term use. Internal use of Aloe vera as a laxative can produce results within 12–24 hours.

Are there any safety issues?

Aloe gel is safe and non-toxic. Avoid chronic use of laxative preparations that contain highly irritant compounds, known as anthraquinone glycosides, in the latex.

REFERENCES


Andrographis

Historical note  Andrographis has long been used in traditional medicine systems in numerous countries. It has been included in the pharmacopoeias of India, Korea and China, possibly because it grows abundantly in India, Pakistan and various parts of South-East Asia. In TCM, andrographis is considered a ‘cold’ herb and is used to rid the body of heat, as in fevers and acute infections, and to dispel toxins from the body. In Ayurvedic medicine it is used as a bitter tonic, to stimulate digestion and as a treatment for a wide range of conditions such as diabetes and hepatitis. It is still a common household remedy and found in over half the combination tonics used to treat liver conditions in India. Also used to treat the common cold, it is sometimes called Indian echinacea.

COMMON NAMES
Andrographis, chirayata, chiretta, green chiretta, Indian echinacea kalmegh, king of bitters.

*Andrographis paniculata* is often studied as the herbal combination known as Kan Jang.

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
*Andrographis paniculata* (family Acanthaceae)

PLANT PARTS USED
Leaves, aerial parts

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
The main active constituent group is considered to be the bitter diterpenoid lactones known as andrographolides. Other constituents include diterpenoid glucosides, diterpene dimers, flavonoids (Koteswara et al 2004, Rao et al 2003) and xanthones (Dua et al 2004).

Clinical studies show that andrographis is well absorbed, with peak plasma concentrations reached after 1.5–2 hours and a half-life of 6.6 hours (Panossian et al 2000).

MAIN ACTIONS
The mechanism of action of andrographis has not been significantly investigated in clinical studies, so results from in vitro and animal tests provide most of the evidence for this herbal medicine.
**IMMUNOSTIMULANT**

According to in vivo research, andrographis stimulates both antigen-specific and non-specific immune responses (Puri et al 1993). One of the main constituents responsible for the immunostimulant activity is andrographolide, which has an effect on the stimulation and proliferation of immunocompetent cells and the production of key cytokines and immune markers in vitro (Panossian et al 2002). Although important, other pharmacologically active constituents are also present as demonstrated by a study that found the immunostimulant activity of the whole extract is greater than that of the isolated andrographolide constituent alone. Investigation with a combination of the whole extract and *Eleutherococcus senticosus* in the formula Kan Jang demonstrated a more profound effect.

**ANTICANCER**

Twenty patients with various end-stage cancers were given 500 mg twice daily for 6 months. After 6 months 16 patients were still alive with a statistically significant increase in both NK function and TNF-alpha levels. Haemoglobin, haematocrit and glutathione levels were all greatly increased (See et al 2002). Although these results are interesting it is difficult to examine the direct effect of *Andrographis paniculata* as many other nutritional supplements were given concurrently.

In vitro experiments have demonstrated the possible benefits of andrographolide on various cancer cells. The compound has been shown to increase apoptosis of prostate cancer cells (Kim et al 2005), inhibit proliferation of human cancer cells and increase IL-2 induction in human peripheral blood lymphocytes in vitro (Kumar et al 2004, Rajagopal et al 2003). However, contradictory results have been described from a murine model. Andrographolide was found to decrease IFN-gamma and IL-2 production and therefore shown to have an immunosuppressive effect. Burgos et al (2005) concluded that andrographis may be useful for autoimmune disease, especially where high levels of IFN-gamma are present, for example, in multiple sclerosis and RA. In vitro and in vivo data has recently shown that andrographolide has the ability to interfere with T-cell proliferation, cytokine release and maturation of dendritic cells, as well as drastically decreasing the antibody response in delayed-type hypersensitivity (Iruretagoyena et al 2005). Additionally, andrographolide demonstrated a capacity to inhibit T-cell and antibody responses in experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis in mice and protect against myelin sheath damage.
ANTIMICROBIAL
Aqueous extract of Andrographis paniculata has demonstrated significant antibacterial and antifungal activity in vitro when compared with standard antibiotics (Singha et al 2003).

HYPOTENSIVE
In vivo experiments suggest a mechanism of action involving adrenoceptors, autonomic ganglia receptors and a reduction in circulating ACE (Zhang et al 1998). The constituents responsible appear to be other than andrographolide.

HYPOGLYCAEMIC
Observed in animal tests, this activity does not appear to involve the stimulation of insulin release from the pancreas. The results from one animal test suggest that andrographis alters glucose absorption from the gut (Borhanuddin et al 1994). In vitro data suggests that andrographolide may also lower plasma glucose by increasing glucose uptake in cultured myoblast cells via the phospholipase C/protein kinase C pathway (Hsu et al 2004).

HEPATOPROTECTIVE
The hepatoprotective activity of andrographis has been investigated using several different experimental rat models: galactosamine, paracetamol and carbon tetrachloride (Handa & Sharma 1990a, b, Rana & Avadhoot 1991). In all models, treatment led to complete normalisation of toxin-induced increases in the levels of key biochemical parameters, and significantly reduced toxin-induced histopathological changes to the liver. Andrographolide is one of the key active constituents responsible for this activity (Handa & Sharma 1990b, Rana & Avadhoot 1991). Results from animal studies suggest that the hepatoprotective effect of andrographolide is more potent than that of silymarin, from the herb St Mary’s thistle (Rana & Avadhoot 1991, Visen et al 1993).

Analogous to silymarin, the activity is a result of several similar mechanisms working together. Andrographis increases liver superoxide dismutase, glutathione peroxidase, glutathione reductase and catalase concentrations, thereby increasing endogenous antioxidant production by the liver (Trivedi & Rawal 2001). A hepatocyte cell-membrane-stabilising activity has also been observed (Puri et al 1993, Upadhyay et al 2001).

DIGESTIVE STIMULANT/CHOLERETIC
Andrographolide produces a significant dose-dependent increase in bile flow and bile salt and acid production (Shukla et al 1992).
ANTIPYRETIC AND ANTI-INFLAMMATORY
Testing in different animal models has identified antipyretic activity (Mandal et al 2001). Clinical testing in randomised double-blind trials involving volunteers with the common cold suggests that this activity is clinically relevant. The mechanism of action is unlike that of NSAIDs, as andrographis does not influence the biosynthesis of any lipoxygenase pathways, but may involve promoting ACTH production and enhancing adrenocortical function (Amroyan et al 1999).

Interestingly, a combination of andrographolide and Eleutherococcus senticosus, Schisandra chinensis and Glycyrriza glabra inhibited neutrophil adhesion and transmigration (Shen et al 2002) and stabilised NO and IL-6 in functional Mediterranean fever, according to a randomised, double-blind trial (Panossian et al 2003). The study involved 14 people (age 3–15 years) with the fever and it was found that the herbal combination significantly reduced the frequency, severity and duration of attacks (Amroyan et al 2003). The daily dose of andrographolide was 48 mg, divided into three doses for 1 month.

ANTIPLATELET AND ANTI-TROMBOTHIC ACTIVITY
Andrographolide inhibits platelet-activating-factor-induced human blood platelet aggregation in a dose-dependent manner (Amroyan et al 1999). Results from in vivo studies suggest that andrographis prevents the formation of thrombi and reduces the size of myocardial ischaemia by promoting synthesis of prostaglandin I₂, inhibiting production of thromboxane A₂, stimulating synthesis of cyclic AMP in platelets, and inhibiting platelet aggregation (Zhao & Fang 1990, 1991). Clinical research in humans has confirmed the observed antiplatelet effect (Zhang et al 1994).

CLINICAL USE
UPPER RESPIRATORY TRACT INFECTIONS AND THE COMMON COLD
Although sometimes investigated as a sole treatment, andrographis is also tested as part of a herbal combination known as Kan Jang. This is a standardised formula of Andrographis paniculata extract 85 mg, containing 5.25 mg andrographolide and deoxyandrographolide per tablet, and Eleutherococcus senticosus extract 9.7 mg, containing total eleutheroside B and eleutheroside E 2% (Melchior et al 2000). Although more representative of real-life practice, results obtained with Kan Jang make it difficult to assess the individual role of andrographis.

COMMON COLD — SYMPTOM RELIEF AND REDUCED INCIDENCE
In 2004, two different systematic reviews that investigated whether andrographis is a suitable treatment in acute respiratory infections were published (Coon & Ernst 2004, Poolsup et al 2004). The one conducted by Coon and Ernst from the Peninsula...
Medical School, Universities of Exeter and Plymouth, Exeter, UK was a review of seven double-blind, controlled trials \((n = 896)\), from which the authors concluded that \textit{A. paniculata} is more effective than placebo in treating uncomplicated URTI and is associated with relatively few adverse events. They also concluded that preliminary data suggested a protective effect. In five of the seven trials, the daily dose was equivalent to 60 mg of andrographolide, which was administered for 3–8 days.

The second systematic review conducted by Poolsup et al from the Department of Pharmacy, Faculty of Pharmacy, Silpakorn University, Nakhon-Pathom, Thailand, was a review of four randomised controlled trials \((n = 433)\) and they came to a similar conclusion, finding that \textit{Andrographis paniculata} either by itself or in combination with \textit{Eleutherococcus senticosus} (Kan Jang) is effective for uncomplicated acute URTI.

**Symptoms responding** According to double-blind studies, numerous symptoms respond to treatment with andrographis. According to two trials that used a dose of 340 mg andrographis taken three times daily, total symptom scores improved, with throat signs and symptoms responding most strongly (Melchior et al 2000). A third study observed a decrease in rhinitis, sinus pain and headache compared with placebo (Hancke et al 1995). A fourth study using a treatment dose of 1200 mg andrographis daily found a significant reduction in tiredness and sleepiness, as well as in sore throat and nasal secretions, by day 4 (Caceres et al 1999).

A double-blind placebo-controlled study \((n = 185)\) that tested Kan Jang in the treatment of acute URTI and sinusitis showed it effectively reduced headache, nasal and throat symptoms and general malaise, but had no significant effects on cough and ocular symptoms. Additionally, fever was moderately reduced with active treatment (Gabrielian et al 2002).

**Comparisons with Echinacea** Although no direct head-to-head study could be located, one study was found that compared the effects of Kan Jang to a product known as Immunal (containing \textit{Echinacea purpurea} (L.) extract) when both were used as adjuncts to standard treatment in children with the common cold. One hundred and thirty children were divided into three groups and received either of the combination treatments or solely standard treatment over a 10-day period (Spasov et al 2004). The addition of Kan Jang was shown to be significantly more effective than Immunal when started at an early stage and produced better symptomatic relief. The amounts of nasal secretion and congestion were particularly improved. In regards to altering recovery time, Kan Jang was also superior to Immunal and children required less standard medication than in the other two groups. Additionally, Kan Jang treatment was well tolerated and no side-effects or adverse reactions were reported.
**PHARYNGOTONSILLITIS**
One randomised double-blind study involving 152 volunteers compared the effects of paracetamol with two different doses of andrographis (3 g and 6 g) taken daily for 7 days (Thamlikitkul et al 1991). By day 3 the symptom-relieving effects of both paracetamol treatment and high-dose *A. paniculata* were significant and by day 7 andrographis was as effective as paracetamol.

**HEPATOTOXICITY PROTECTION**
No clinical studies are available; however, several in vivo studies confirm hepatoprotective effects against such hepatotoxins as paracetamol.

**OTHER USES**

**TRADITIONAL USES**
The herb is traditionally given as a restorative and tonic in convalescence and used as a choleretic to stimulate bile production and flow, which improves appetite and digestion. It is often used in combination with aromatic herbs, such as peppermint, for stronger digestive effects and to prevent gastrointestinal discomfort at higher doses.

**DIABETES**
Although no clinical studies are available, three in vivo studies suggest that andrographis exerts significant dose-dependent hypoglycaemic activity comparable to that of metformin (Borhanuddin et al 1994, Zhang & Tan 2000a, b). A 49.8% reduction in fasting serum triglyceride levels was also achieved with andrographis treatment compared with 27.7% with metformin; however, neither treatment affected cholesterol levels. A more recent animal trial also concluded that andrographolide (1.5 mg/kg) lowers plasma glucose by enhancing glucose utilisation in diabetic rats (Yu et al 2003).

**CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE**
Although clinical trials are not available, the results from several in vivo studies have suggested a potential role for andrographis in cardiovascular disease.

**Prevention of atherosclerotic arterial stenosis and restenosis after angioplasty**
According to two animal studies, andrographis significantly improved atherosclerotic iliac artery stenosis induced by both de-endothelialisation and a high-cholesterol diet, and reduced the restenosis rate after experimental angioplasty (Wang & Zhao 1993, 1994).

**Prevention of myocardial reperfusion injury and malignant arrhythmias postoperatively**
Using an animal model, pretreatment with intravenous
Andrographis significantly protected the myocardium from ischaemic reperfusion injury and eliminated malignant arrhythmia development after reperfusion, compared with controls (Guo et al 1996). As a result of treatment, infarct size was also smaller and myocardial damage lessened.

**Hypertension** Andrographis produced significant dose-dependent falls in mean arterial blood pressure and heart rate when administered as an intraperitoneal infusion in one animal study (Zhang et al 1998).

**MALARIA**
In vitro and in vivo studies have identified considerable antimalarial effects (Najib et al 1999, Siti Najila et al 2002). Administration of andrographis immediately after infection and for an additional 4 days extended the life span of mice infected with *Plasmodium berghei* strain ANKA (Rahman et al 1999). Four xanthones recently isolated from *A. paniculata* have demonstrated antimalarial activity against *Plasmodium berghei* in vivo (Dua et al 2004). Treatment with 30 mg/kg for 4 days produced a 62% decrease in parasites in infected mice.

**SNAKE BITE**
Prolonged survival has been reported with intraperitoneal administration of andrographis before administration of cobra venom (Martz 1992).

**HIV INFECTION**
A phase 1 clinical trial involving non-medicated HIV-positive patients and healthy controls found that oral andrographolides taken for 6 weeks at increasing doses produced no significant benefits and a high incidence of adverse effects, causing the trial to be stopped prematurely (Calabrese et al 2000).

**DOSAGE RANGE**

**URTI**
Prevention dose
- 1200–3000 mg andrographis (standardised to contain no less than 11.2 mg andrographolides) or 4–6 mL of 1:2 liquid extract, daily in divided doses, taken for at least 3 months for preventive effects to become established.

Treatment dose for infection
- 1200–6000 mg/day or fluid extract (1:2): up to 12 mL/day or equivalent in solid dose form.

**DYSPEPSIA**
- Andrographis can be taken as a tea before meals: 5 g of herb in 1 cup of hot water, which should be allowed to stand for 10 minutes before drinking.
TOXICITY
Animal tests suggest low toxicity (Mills & Bone 2000).

ADVERSE REACTIONS
Generally well tolerated, but high doses may cause vomiting, anorexia and gastrointestinal discomfort. One source states that urticaria is also possible (Ernst 2001).

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
Controlled studies are not available; therefore, interactions are theoretical and based on evidence of pharmacological activity with uncertain clinical significance.

ANTICOAGULANTS
Increased risk of bruising and bleeding is theoretically possible, because andrographolide inhibits platelet aggregation factor-induced platelet aggregation — use with caution.

ANTIPLATELET DRUGS
Additive effects are possible, because the herb exhibits antiplatelet activity — observe patient.

BARBITURATES
Additive effects are possible, according to an animal study (Mandal et al 2001) — observe patient. Beneficial interaction is theoretically possible under professional supervision.

HEPATOTOXIC DRUGS (E.G. PARACETAMOL, TRICYCLIC ANTIDEPRESSANTS)
Hepatoprotection is possible, according to studies in various experimental models — beneficial interaction.

HYPOGLYCAEMIC AGENTS
Additive effects are theoretically possible — andrographis has hypoglycaemic activity comparable to that of metformin in vivo. Use together with caution; however, interaction may be beneficial.

DRUGS METABOLISED CHIEFLY VIA THE CYTOCHROME P450 SYSTEM
It is currently unclear whether there is a significant interaction between andrographis and these medications, as in vivo evidence is suggestive of enzyme induction, but this observation has not yet been investigated in clinical studies (Singh et al 2001). It is recommended that patients be observed to ensure that drug effectiveness is not compromised.
**IMMUNOSUPPRESSANTS**
Reduced drug activity is theoretically possible, as immunostimulant activity has been demonstrated in vivo (Puri et al 1993) — use caution in the immunosuppressed.

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**
Suspend use of concentrated extracts 1 week before major surgery.

**PREGNANCY USE**
Not recommended for use in pregnancy. There is conflicting evidence about the safety of andrographis in pregnancy.

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**
- Several clinical studies suggest that andrographis, both as a stand-alone treatment and in combination with Siberian ginseng, is a useful treatment in cases of common cold, pharyngotonsillitis and uncomplicated URTIs, with significant symptom relief experienced after 3 days’ use.
- Clinical studies are lacking, but animal experiments suggest that andrographis may be useful in cases of hepatotoxicity (paracetamol), to reduce myocardial reperfusion injury, improve blood glucose management in diabetes, and in hypertension.
- Traditionally, the herb is used to increase bile production and relieve symptoms of dyspepsia and flatulence, loss of appetite and general debility.
- Due to the extreme bitterness of the herb, solid-dose forms may be better tolerated than liquid preparations.
- Andrographis is not recommended in pregnancy.
- There are several theoretical drug interactions with this herb — check interaction data for more details.

**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**
What will this herb do for me?
Andrographis has been traditionally used to improve digestion, as a liver tonic and to fight off infection. Clinical studies confirm that it is an effective symptom-reliever for the common cold, uncomplicated URTIs and pharyngotonsillitis. It has also been used to reduce the risk of developing the common cold in winter.

When will it start to work?
During an acute infection, effects may be seen within 3–4 days of starting the correct dose. Used in lower doses for prevention, effects are seen after 3 months’ continual use.
Are there any safety issues?
Andrographis is not recommended in pregnancy and may interact with a range of pharmaceutical drugs, so advice from a health professional is required.

REFERENCES
Melchior J et al. Double-blind, placebo-controlled pilot and phase III study of activity of standardized
Andrographis paniculata Herba Nees extract fixed combination (Kan jang) in the treatment of
249-54.
Panossian A et al. Effect of andrographolide and Kan Jang (fixed combination of extract SHA-10 and extract
SHE-3) on proliferation of human lymphocytes, production of cytokines and immune activation markers in
Panossian A et al. Pharmacokinetic and oral bioavailability of andrographolide from Andrographis paniculata
Panossian A et al. Plasma nitric oxide level in functional Mediterranean fever and its modulations by
Poolsup N et al. Andrographis paniculata in the symptomatic treatment of uncomplicated upper respiratory
249-54.
Rajagopal S et al. Andrographolide, a potential cancer therapeutic agent isolated from Andrographis paniculata.
Rana AC, Avadhoot Y. Hepatoprotective effects of Andrographis paniculata against carbon tetrachloride-
See D, Mason S, Roshan R. Increased tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF-alpha) and natural killer cell (NK)
Shen YC, Chen CF, Chiou WF. Andrographolide prevents oxygen radical production by human neutrophils:
Singh RP, Banerjee S, Rao AR. Modulatory influence of Andrographis paniculata on mouse hepatic and
Siti Najila MJ et al. The screening of extracts from Goniolalamus scortechini, Aralidium pinnatifidum and
Andrographis paniculata for anti-malarial activity using the lactate dehydrogenase assay. J Ethnopharmacol
82.23 (2002): 239-42.
Spasov AA et al. Comparative controlled study of Andrographis paniculata fixed combination, Kan Jang and an
Echinacea preparation as adjuvant, in the treatment of uncomplicated respiratory disease in children.
Trivedi NP, Rawal UM. Hepatoprotective and antioxidant property of Andrographis paniculata (Nees) in BHC
Upadhyay L et al. An experimental study of some indigenous drugs with special reference to hydraulic
Visen PK et al. Andrographolide protects rat hepatocytes against paracetamol-induced damage. J
Wang DW, Zhao HY. Experimental studies on prevention of atherosclerotic arterial stenosis and restenosis after


Astragalus

Historical note  The roots of astragalus have been used for more than two thousand years by the Chinese and are considered among the most important and popular herbs for invigorating vital energy, health promotion and strengthening Qi. Western herbalists began using astragalus in the 1800s in various tonics and the gummy sap (tragacanth) is still used as an emulsifier, food thickener and antidiarrhoeal agent.

COMMON NAME
Astragalus

OTHER NAMES
Astragali, beg kei, bei qi, hwanggi, huang-qi, milk vetch, goat’s horn, green dragon, Mongolian milk, ogi, Syrian tragacanth

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Astragalus membranaceus (family Fabaceae)

PLANT PART USED
Root

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Saponins such as cycloastragenol, astragalosides, and cyclocanthoside are present and suspected to be the main active group; flavonoids, polysaccharides, phytosterols (including beta-sitosterol), essential oil, amino acids (including gamma-aminobutyric acid) (Duke 2003, Mills and Bone 2000).

MAIN ACTIONS
Astragalus has not been significantly investigated in clinical studies, so in vitro and animal tests provide the evidence for its pharmacological activities.

IMMUNE ENHANCING
Although usually administered in the oral form, research has also been undertaken with injectable forms. A study conducted with both normal and immunosuppressed mice found that astragalus administration increased antibody responses and T helper cell activity (Zhao et al 1990). A flavonoid identified in the stem and leaves of astragalus is believed to be one of the main constituents responsible for immune modulation (Jiao et al 1999) and more recently, several studies have identified that astragalus polysaccharide (APS) also exerts significant biological effects.

One study investigating the effects of APS identified that it stimulates mouse B cells and macrophage activity, but not T cells (Shao et al 2004). It has been demonstrated that APS stimulates macrophages to produce nitric oxide (NO) through induction of NO synthase transcription (Lee & Jeon 2005) leading to increased cytolytic function of macrophages.

Guo et al found that the polysaccharide increases cellular and humoral immune responses in *Eimeria tenella*-infected chickens when administered as 1 g in every kg of food. When given for 1 week, it increased systemic antibodies, intestinal antibodies, antigen-specific splenocytes and erythrocyte-antibody-complement cells as compared with controls (Guo et al 2004a). The same research team used both in vitro and animal models to further investigate the effects of APS and found increased beneficial gut flora and decreased harmful gut bacteria (Guo et al 2003, 2004b).

**Clinical note – Polysaccharides and immunity**

One of the most promising recent alternatives to antibiotic treatment is the use of immunomodulators for enhancing host defence responses. Several types of immunomodulators have been identified, most recently botanically sourced polysaccharides isolated from mushrooms, algae, lichens and higher plants. These polysaccharides tend to have a broad spectrum of therapeutic properties and relatively low toxicity. One of the primary mechanisms responsible for immunomodulation involves non-specific induction of the immune system, which is thought to occur via macrophage stimulation and modulation of the complement system. According to one report, polysaccharides isolated from 35 plant species among 20 different families have been shown to increase macrophage cytotoxic activity against tumour cells and microorganisms, activate phagocytic activity, increase reactive oxygen species (ROS) and nitric oxide (NO) production, and enhance secretion of cytokines and chemokines, such as TNF-alpha, IL-1beta, IL-6, IL-8, IL-12, IFN-gamma and IFN-beta2 (Schepetkin & Quinn 2005). These effects have a major influence on the body’s ability to respond rapidly and potently to a diverse array of pathogens, giving the polysaccharides wide clinical application.
CARDIOVASCULAR EFFECTS — POSITIVE INOTROPIC AND HYPOTENSIVE ACTIVITY

The effect of astragalus on heart function has been the subject of several investigations and, most recently, a Cochrane systematic review, which analysed studies of Chinese herbs used in viral myocarditis and concluded that astragalus significantly improves cardiac function, arrhythmia and creatinine kinase levels (Liu et al 2004a). The review assessed data from 10 randomised clinical trials that used a single preparation of astragalus and one that used a combination containing mainly astragalus; however, the authors stated that the trials had poor quality in terms of design, reporting and methodology.

Several constituents from Astragalus spp. have demonstrated effects on heart contractility, heart rate and blood pressure. In particular, 3-nitropropionic acid (NPA) has been shown to decrease blood pressure and induce bradycardia when administered as an IV preparation in normotensive rats or renal hypertensive dogs (Castillo et al 1993). Another compound, astragaloside IV, demonstrated positive inotropic activity in patients with congestive heart failure (Luo et al 1995).

ANTIOXIDANT

In vivo studies have found that astragalus raises superoxide dismutase activity in the brain and liver, thus demonstrating an indirect antioxidant activity (Jin et al 1999). The constituent, astragaloside IV (20 and 40 mg/kg), prevented the formation of cerebral infarction after induced focal ischaemia in an animal model, most likely due to its antioxidant and anti-inflammatory actions (Luo et al 2004).

ANTICARCINOGENIC EFFECTS

Both in vitro and animal studies indicate that astragalus may have a role as adjunctive therapy in the treatment of some cancers. In vivo studies have shown that astragalus extract exerts anticarcinogenic effects in carcinogen-treated mice, mediated through activation of cytotoxic activity and the production of cytokines (Kurashige et al 1999). An extract of the root (90 and 180 mg/kg) prevented the development of preneoplastic lesions and delayed hepatic cancer in chemically-induced hepatocarcinogenesis in a rat model (Cui et al 2003). The saponin, astragaloside IV, can increase the fibrinolytic potential of cultured human umbilical vein endothelial cells by downregulating the expression of plasminogen activator inhibitor type 1 (Zhang et al 1997). Another constituent (astragalan) increased the secretion of TNF-alpha and TNF-beta (Zhao and Kong 1993).
An animal study using a combination of *Astragalus membranaceus* and *Ligustrum lucidum astragalus* demonstrated anti-tumour effects by augmenting phagocyte and lymphokine-activated killer cell activities (Lau et al 1994).

**DIGESTIVE EFFECTS**
Astragalus strengthens the movement and muscle tone of the small intestine (especially the jejunum) in animal tests, which may account for its clinical application in a variety of common digestive symptoms (Yang 1993).

**IMPROVED SPERM MOTILITY**
An aqueous extract of *Astragalus membranaceus* was tested in vitro and found to have a significant stimulatory effect on sperm motility (Hong et al 1992). Astragalus has shown a significant effect on human sperm motility in vitro when compared with controls (Liu et al 2004).

**HEPATOPROTECTIVE ACTIONS**
Astragalus has hepatoprotective qualities against paracetamol, carbon tetrachloride and D-galactosamine poisoning (Zhang et al 1990). Increases in liver glutathione levels observed as a result of the herbal treatment may be partly responsible. Studies have identified the constituent betaine as an important contributor to this activity.

**OTHER ACTIONS**
Astragalus is also thought to have adaptogenic activity. It also has shown weak oestrogenic activity in vitro when compared with other Chinese herbs and controls (17-beta-estradiol) (Zhang et al 2005). This could partially explain its traditional use in menopause.

**CLINICAL USE**
As a reflection of clinical practice, astragalus is often tested in combination with other herbal medicines. As such, it is difficult from these trials to determine the role of astragalus as a stand-alone treatment.

**VIRAL INFECTION**
Owing to its immunomodulatory actions, astragalus is widely used for preventing and treating various viral infections. A popular use is as a preventive treatment against common colds and influenza. To date, scientific evidence is scant to confirm effectiveness, although one review stated that astragalus has been tested in clinical trials in China, reducing the incidence and shortening the duration of the common cold (Murray 1995).
**VIRAL MYOCARDITIS**

Findings from a recent Cochrane systematic review of Chinese herbs used in viral myocarditis provide limited supportive evidence for its use; however, further research is required before a definitive conclusion can be made (Liu JP et al 2004). Several in vivo and in vitro studies have found some antagonistic effects on the enterovirus coxsackie B and a reduction in myocardial injury (Lu et al 1999, Peng et al 1995, Rui et al 1993, Yang et al 1990) thought to be due to the astragalosides in the herb (Lu et al 1999).

**CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE, INCLUDING ISCHAEMIC HEART DISEASE, CONGESTIVE HEART FAILURE, ANGINA PECTORIS**

**Congestive heart failure** Some of the clinical signs and symptoms recognised as indicators for this medicine by TCM practitioners suggest that the herb may be useful for congestive heart failure. Recent positive results obtained in clinical studies have reinforced this possibility.

The two clinical trials have investigated continuous intravenous administration of astragalus. One study involving 19 patients found that after 2 weeks’ continuous administration of astragaloside IV, major symptoms were alleviated in 15 patients. Treatment produced a positive inotrophic effect, improved left ventricular modelling and ejection function (Luo et al 1995).

The second study, involving 38 patients with congestive heart failure who were administered astragalus 24 g intravenously for 2 weeks, found that 13.6% had significantly shortened ventricular late potentials (Shi et al 1991).

**Angina pectoris** Two clinical studies have suggested that astragalus may be an effective treatment for angina pectoris. One study used Doppler echocardiography to study the action of astragalus on left ventricular function in 20 patients with angina pectoris. Treatment resulted in increased cardiac output after 2 weeks, but no improvement in left ventricular diastolic function (Lei et al 1994). One Chinese study reported 92 patients with ischaemic heart disease who were successfully treated with astragalus as measured by electrocardiogram readings. Results obtained with the herb were considered superior to those obtained with nifedipine (Li et al 1995).

**CANCER**

Astragalus is used in cancer patients to enhance the effectiveness of chemotherapy and reduce associated side-effects. It is additionally used to enhance immune function.

A Cochrane systematic review of Chinese herbs for chemotherapy side-effects in colorectal cancer patients analysed the results of four trials that used a decoction...
containing astragalus (huang-qi) as the intervention with chemotherapy (Taixiang et al. 2005). Adjunctive treatment with astragalus was compared with chemotherapy alone in three trials and two other Chinese herbal treatments in the fourth trial. When astragalus was used, there was a significant reduction in nausea and vomiting and a decrease in the rate of leucopenia (WBC <3 × 10^9/L). Increases in the proportions of T-lymphocyte subsets (CD3, CD4 and CD8) were also reported, with no significant effects on immunoglobulins G, A or M. Taixiang et al concluded that despite the low quality of the trials, decoctions of astragalus may stimulate immunocompetent cells and decrease side-effects in patients treated with chemotherapy. Additionally, no evidence of harm was identified with use.

In a recent placebo-controlled, randomised clinical trial in 60 patients receiving chemotherapy for non-small cell lung cancer, astragalus was shown to significantly increase quality of life (Zou & Liu 2003). The treatment group (n = 30) received 60 mL of astragalus per day intravenously and improved survival rates and quality of life scores were observed.

**Reducing adverse effects of treatment (in combination)** Zee-Cheng screened and evaluated 116 Kampo formulas and identified 15 that potentiated therapeutic effects, reduced adverse toxicity of various anticancer drugs, and exhibited immune-modulating effects in cancer patients. Among these, shi-quan-da-bu-tang (SQT) was selected as the most effective and studied further. SQT is a popular TCM herbal combination consisting of 10 medicinal herbs, including *Astragalus membranaceus*. Using both animal models and clinical studies, the herbal combination produced several promising results (Zee-Cheng 1992).

**Prostate cancer (in combination)** Although no human studies could be located, encouraging results were obtained from an in vitro study investigating the effects of a proprietary product known as Equiguard™ on prostate cancer cells. It is prepared according to TCM principles and contains standardised extracts of nine herbs: herba epimedium brevicornum maxim (stem and leaves), radix morindae officinalis (root), fructus rosae laevigatae michx (fruit), rubus changii hu (fruit), *Schisandra chinensis* (Turz.) Baill (fruit), *Ligustrum lucidum* Ait (fruit), *Cuscuta chinensis* Lam (seed), *Psoralea corylifolia* L. (fruit), and *Astragalus membranaceus* (root). It is used in TCM to restore Qi in the urogenital region. The product was shown to significantly reduce cancer cell growth, induce apoptosis, suppress expression of the androgen receptor and lower intracellular and secreted prostate-specific antigen (Hsieh et al. 2002).
OTHER USES

TRADITIONAL USES
Used within the traditional Chinese herbal medicine system, astragalus is used to invigorate and tonify Qi and the blood, as an adaptogen, for severe blood loss, fatigue, anorexia, organ prolapse, chronic diarrhoea, shortness of breath, sweating and to enhance recuperation (Mills and Bone 2000).

Clinical note — The concept of an adaptogen is foreign to Western medicine but often used in Chinese medicine
Adaptogens are considered natural bioregulators that increase the ability of the organism to adapt to environmental factors and to avoid damage from such factors. Herbal medicines with adaptogenic activity are used when extremes of physical or emotional activity are present, environmental influences are severe, or allostatic load has developed over time. The aim of treatment is to improve the patient’s endurance and ability to deal with these changes in a healthy way, and for abnormal parameters to shift towards normal (see also Siberian ginseng and Glossary).

CHOLESTEROL REDUCTION (IN COMBINATION WITH OTHER HERBS)
A randomised, double-blind clinical trial compared the effects of a traditional Chinese herbal medicine combination known as jian yan ling (which includes astragalus as a main ingredient) to placebo in 128 hyperlipidaemic patients. After 3 months’ treatment it was found that total cholesterol, triglyceride, apoproteins and lipoprotein-a levels were significantly reduced in the treatment group, compared with placebo (Lu et al 1994).

ASTHMA (IN COMBINATION WITH OTHER HERBS)
A herbal combination consisting of Astragalus membranaceus, Codonopsis pilulosa and Glycyrrhiza uralensis was investigated in an open study for effects on airway responsiveness. Twenty-eight patients with asthma were treated with the herbal combination for 6 weeks, after which values for FVC, FEV1 and PEF were all higher than at baseline (Wang et al 1998).

MEMORY DEFICITS (IN COMBINATION WITH OTHER HERBS)
In TCM, invigorating Qi and warming Yang are believed to have a beneficial therapeutic effect on some brain diseases, such as senile dementia. Some studies have been conducted to determine the outcome of following this ancient principle.
A decoction of astragalus produced neuroprotective effects in rats with experimentally induced cerebral ischaemia (Quan and Du 1998), and memory enhancement has been observed in vivo (Jin et al 1999).

One article reports on 100 cases of children with minimal brain dysfunction and compared the effects of a TCM combination (Bupleurum chinense, Scutellaria baicalensis, Astragalus membranaceus, Codonopsis pilulosa, Ligustrum lucidum, Lophatherum gracile and thread of ivory) to the Western medical approach (methylphenidate (Ritalin™) 5–15 mg/day). A collation of results found that the herbal treatment produced a clinically effective rate of 87.5% compared with 90% in the Ritalin group, with the herbal treatment group reporting fewer side-effects (Zhang and Huang 1990).

**DOSAGE RANGE**
- Dried root: 2–30 g/day.
- Liquid extract (1:2) or solid dose equivalent: 4.5–8.5 mL/day.
- Decoction: 8–12 g divided into two doses daily on an empty stomach.

**TOXICITY**
Animal studies have shown that the herb has a wide safety margin.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
None known.

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**
Interactions are theoretical and based on in vitro and in vivo data; therefore, clinical significance is unclear and remains to be confirmed.

**IMMUNOSUPPRESSANT MEDICATION**
Reduced drug activity is theoretically possible, as immunostimulant activity has been demonstrated — use caution in the immunosuppressed.

**POSITIVE INOTROPIC DRUGS**
Additive effects are theoretically possible with intravenous administration of astragalus, based on positive inotropic activity identified in clinical studies. The clinical significance of these findings for oral dose forms is unknown — observe patients using high-dose astragalus preparations.

**CHEMOTHERAPY**
Adjunctive treatment with astragalus may have beneficial effects in regards to improving patient wellbeing and reducing adverse effects associated with treatment such as nausea and vomiting — only use combination under professional supervision.
CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
According to the principles of TCM, astragalus should not be used during the acute stages of an infection.

PREGNANCY USE
Safety is unknown although no evidence of fetal damage has been reported in animal studies (Mills & Bone 2005).

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Astragalus is widely used as an immunostimulant medicine to reduce the incidence of the common cold and influenza.
- It is also used to enhance recuperation and reduce fatigue.
- According to TCM practice it is widely used to invigorate and tonify Qi and the blood, and as an important adaptogen.
- Under the TCM system of use, astragalus is not used during periods of acute infection.
- In clinical practice it is often used in combination with other herbs such as Bupleurum chinense, Scutellaria baicalensis and Codonopsis pilulosa. As such, most clinical trials have tested combination formulas.
- It appears to be well tolerated; however, several theoretical interactions exist.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this herb do for me?
Astragalus appears to have numerous biological effects, such as digestive and immune system stimulation and heart muscle stimulation. Early research suggests that it may have a role in the treatment of asthma, memory deficits, elevated cholesterol levels and as an adjunct to chemotherapy treatment for cancer.

When will it start working?
This will depend on the indication and dose; some studies have shown that effects can begin within 2 weeks.

Are there any safety issues?
Overall the herb appears to be safe, although it has the potential to interact with some medicines.

REFERENCES


Astragalus 55

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
Baical skullcap

Historical note  Baical skullcap is a TCM herb used to clear ‘heat and dry dampness’. Diseases with heat are associated with symptoms such as fever, irritability, thirst, cough and expectoration of thick, yellow sputum. Damp diseases may be associated with diarrhoea, a feeling of heaviness of the chest and painful urination (Bensky & Gamble 1986). From a modern perspective this suggests that baical may be useful for infection and inflammation of the respiratory, digestive and urinary systems. Scientific investigations have indeed shown that baical skullcap and its constituents have antibacterial, antiviral, anti-inflammatory, hepatoprotective and diuretic actions (Zhang et al 2001).

OTHER NAMES
Baical skullcap, Chinese skullcap, Huang qin (Mandarin), ogon (Japanese), scute

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Scutellaria baicalensis Georgi (family Lamiaceae)

PLANT PART USED
Root

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Baical skullcap contains numerous flavonoids and their glycosides. The main flavonoids are baicalin and its aglycone, baicalein and wogonin. Resin and tannins are also present.

Baical also contains melatonin. It has been shown that dietary melatonin directly contributes to the circulating level of the hormone. The clinical effects of plant-derived melatonin remains to be investigated (Hardeland & Poeggeler 2003). Baicalin itself is poorly absorbed from the gut, but is hydrolysed to its aglycone, baicalein, by intestinal bacteria and then restored to its original form from the absorbed baicalein in the body (Akao et al 2000).

MAIN ACTIONS
The actions of baical skullcap, some of its individual constituents, and combination formulations have been studied in various models.
ANTI-INFLAMMATORY


In a study using mice, baicalein 50 mg/kg has been shown to ameliorate the inflammatory symptoms of induced colitis, including body weight loss, blood haemoglobin content, rectal bleeding and other histological and biochemical parameters (Hong et al 2002). Pretreatment with wogonin also significantly reduced ethanol-induced gastric damage in vivo (Park et al 2004) and reduced immunoglobulin E, IL-4, IL-5 and IL-10 secretion in a colitis-induced mouse model (Lim 2004). The methanolic extract of the baical skullcap root and its flavonoids wogonin, baicalein and baicalin have been shown to inhibit lipopolysaccharide-induced inflammation of the gingivae (gums) in vivo. The three flavonoids exerted an anti-inflammatory effect similar to prednisolone. In addition, the flavonoids exerted a moderate inhibition (33–36%) of collagenolytic activity, comparable to the 40% inhibition by tetracycline. Meanwhile, the cellular activity of fibroblasts was augmented remarkably (40%) by baicalein and slightly by baicalin and wogonin. Consistent with the cellular activation, the flavonoids enhanced the synthesis of both collagen and total protein in fibroblasts in vitro (Chung et al 1995).

The anti-inflammatory mechanisms are varied and summarised below.

Chemokine binding  It has been proposed that the anti-inflammatory activity is partly caused by limiting the biological function of chemokines.

Excessive release of pro-inflammatory cytokines mediates the toxic effect of superantigenic staphylococcal exotoxins. In vitro data suggest that baicalin may be therapeutically useful for mitigating the pathogenic effects of staphylococcal exotoxins by inhibiting the signalling pathways activated by superantigens (Krakauer et al 2001).

Baicalin inhibited the binding of a number of chemokines to human leukocytes or cells expressing specific chemokine receptors, with an associated reduced capacity of the chemokines to induce cell migration. Based on these results, it is possible that the anti-inflammatory mechanism of baicalin is to bind a variety of chemokines and limit their biological function (Bao et al 2000, Li et al 2000).

Four major flavonoids from baical have been shown in vitro to suppress eotaxin. Eotaxin is an eosinophil-specific chemokine associated with the recruitment of eosinophils to sites of allergic inflammation. Eotaxin is produced by IL-4 plus TNF-alpha-stimulated human fibroblasts. This may explain why it has been used...
traditionally in the treatment of bronchial asthma (Nakajima et al 2001). Various flavonoids, including wogonin and baicalein, have been shown to inhibit chemically induced histamine release from rat mast cells in vitro (Kubo et al 1984).

**COX-2 inhibition**  Wogonin is a direct COX-2 inhibitor. Wogonin inhibits both inducible nitric oxide synthase and cyclo-oxygenase 2 induction (Chen et al 2001, Chi et al 2001, Wakabayashi & Yasui 2000). Wogonin has been shown to inhibit inducible PGE\textsubscript{2} production in macrophages by inhibiting COX-2 (Wakabayashi & Yasui 2000).

Wogonin may be beneficial for COX-2-related skin disorders. When applied topically to the dorsal skin of mice, it inhibited COX-2 expression and PGE\textsubscript{2} production (Byoung et al 2001, Chi et al 2003, Park et al 2001).

**Lipoxygenase inhibition**  The inhibition of the 5-lipoxygenase pathway of arachidonic acid metabolism may be one of the mechanisms of baicalein’s anti-inflammatory activity according to an in vivo study (Butenko et al 1993).

**Nitric oxide synthase inhibition**  Baicalein and wogonin attenuate lipopolysaccharide-stimulated nitric oxide synthase induction in macrophages, which helps to explain the anti-inflammatory action of these flavonoid compounds (Wakabayashi 1999).

**Antioxidant activity**  The anti-inflammatory activity of baicalein may be associated with inhibition of leukocyte adhesion by the scavenging of reactive oxygen intermediates (Shen et al 2003).

**ANTIFIBROTIC**
A methanolic extract of baical skullcap has been shown to inhibit fibrosis and lipid peroxidation induced by bile duct ligation or carbon tetrachloride in rat liver. Bile duct ligation in rodents is an experimental model for extrahepatic cholestasis caused by, for example, cholelithiasis (gall stones). Liver fibrosis was assessed by histological observation and by measuring levels of liver hydroxyproline, lipid peroxidation based on malondialdehyde production, and serum enzyme activities. Treatment with baical skullcap significantly reduced the levels of liver hydroxyproline and malondialdehyde, with improved histological findings (Nan 2002).

**HEPATOPROTECTIVE**
Baicalein, baicalin and wogonin have been shown to have hepatoprotective effects in vivo. The flavonoids decrease the toxicity produced by a variety of chemicals. Significant protective effects were seen by comparing the serum levels of AST and ALT and histopathologic examination (Lin & Shieh 1996).
The combination Sho-saiko-to has been shown to inhibit chemical hepatocarcinogenesis in animals, act as a biological response modifier and suppress the proliferation of hepatoma cells by inducing apoptosis and arresting the cell cycle. These effects may be due to baicalin, baicalein and saikosaponins (from *Bupleurum falcatum*), which have the ability to inhibit cell proliferation (Shimizu 2000).

Baical flavonoids inhibit hepatic CYP1A2, suggesting that baical extract may be hepatoprotective via prevention of CYP1A2-induced metabolic activation of toxins (Kim et al 2002).

**ANTIOXIDANT**

Several studies have shown baical skullcap constituents to be antioxidant in vitro and in vivo. Flavones produced a concentration-dependent protection of liposome membrane against UV-induced oxidation. The ability to scavenge free radicals and protect against the effects of lipid peroxidation (in this case caused by sunlight irradiation) may in part account for the herb’s underlying mechanism of action (Gabrielska et al 1997).

Fourteen flavonoids and flavone glycosides have been demonstrated to possess good free radical scavenging properties in vitro (Gao et al 1999, Lin & Shieh 1996). Baicalin has been found to have the most potent antioxidant effect (Bochorakova et al 2003).

Baicalin’s antioxidant effect is based on scavenging superoxide radicals, whereas baicalein is a good xanthine oxidase inhibitor. Xanthine oxidase inhibitors are known to be therapeutically useful for the treatment of hepatitis and brain tumours (Gao et al 2001).

Oxidative stress plays an important role in the pathological process of neurodegenerative diseases including Alzheimer’s disease. The protective effects of baical flavonoids on the oxidative injury of neuronal cells have been demonstrated in vitro (Choi et al 2002, Gao et al 2001).

**ANTI-ALLERGIC**

Flavonoids have anti-allergic activities and are known to inhibit histamine release from basophils and mast cells. Luteolin and baicalein have been shown to inhibit IgE antibody-mediated immediate and late phase allergic reactions in mice. In an in-vitro study, luteolin and baicalein inhibited IgE-mediated histamine release from mast cells. The compounds also inhibited IgE-mediated TNF-alpha and IL-6 production from mast cells. However, the compounds did not affect the histamine, serotonin or platelet-activating factor-induced cutaneous reactions in rats (Kimata et al 2000).
Wogonin, wogonoside and 3,5,7,2',6'-pentahydroxyl flavanone isolated from baikal skulcap decrease histamine, leukotriene B4 and IgE in vitro (Lim 2004).

Baicalein is 5–10-fold more potent than the anti-allergic drug, azelastine. Baicalein significantly suppressed leukotriene C4 release by polymorphonuclear leukocytes obtained from asthmatic patients compared with healthy subjects (Niitsuma et al 2001).

**NEUROPROTECTIVE**


Cerebral ischaemia can cause a significant elevation in the concentrations of amino acid neurotransmitters in the cerebral cortex. Baicalin administration can attenuate the elevations of glutamic acid and aspartic acid induced by cerebral ischaemia. This research demonstrates that baicalin may act as a neuroprotectant during cerebral ischaemia. Wogonin has been shown to exert a neuroprotective effect by inhibiting microglial activation, which is a critical component of pathogenic inflammatory responses in neurodegenerative diseases. Wogonin inhibited inflammatory activation of cultured brain microglia by diminishing lipopolysaccharide-induced TNF-alpha, IL-1-beta and NO production. Wogonin inhibited NO production by suppressing iNOS induction and NF-kappa-B activation in microglia. The neuroprotective effect of wogonin has also been shown in vivo using two experimental brain injury models (Lee et al 2003).

A recent in vivo study in rats induced with permanent global ischaemia demonstrated that daily oral doses of baikal skulcap flavonoids (35 mg/kg) for 19–20 days statistically increased learning and memory ability and attenuated neural injury (Shang et al 2005).

Baical skulcap is used in TCM for the treatment of stroke. Methanol extracts from the dried roots (0.1–10 mg/kg IP) significantly protected neurons against 10 min transient forebrain ischaemia. The extract inhibited microglial TNF-alpha and NO production, and protected cells from hydrogen peroxide-induced toxicity in vitro (Kim et al 2001).

**HYPOTENSIVE**

Treatment with baicalein lowered blood pressure in hypertensive but not in normotensive rats according to one study (Takizawa et al 1998). Baical extract and baikalein have also been shown to lower blood pressure in rats and cats (Kaye et al 1997, Takizawa et al 1998). The exact mechanisms underlying the hypotensive action
are unclear. One in vivo study has shown that *Scutellaria baicalensis* extract produces peripheral vasodilatation (Lin et al 1980). A recent review concluded that baikal skullcap is effective for renin-dependent hypertension and that in vivo effects may be due to the inhibition of lipoxygenase, reducing the production and release of arachidonic-acid derived vasoconstrictor substances (Huang et al 2005).

**VASCULAR ACTIVITY**

Monocyte chemotactic protein-1 (MCP-1), a potent chemoattractant for monocytes, plays a crucial role in cases of early inflammatory responses, including atherosclerosis. Wogonin has been shown to inhibit MCP-1 induction by endothelial cells in a dose-dependent manner. Wogonin and baikal skullcap may be potentially beneficial in inflammatory and vascular disorders (Chang et al 2001).

**ANTIPLATELET**

Baical flavonoids have been shown to inhibit platelet aggregation in vitro (Kubo et al 1985). Baicalein inhibited the elevation of calcium induced by thrombin and thrombin receptor agonist peptide. These findings suggest a potential benefit of baicalein in the treatment of arteriosclerosis and thrombosis (Kimura et al 1997).

**CHOLESTEROL REDUCTION**

Flavonoids are known to reduce cholesterol. A 30-day study of induced hyperlipidaemia in rats found that baicalein, quercetin, rutin and naringin reduced cholesterol, with baicalein being the most potent. Baicalein was also the most effective flavonoid in reducing triglyceride levels (De Oliveira et al 2002). In another in vivo study, rats were fed a cholesterol-laden diet and half were also given *S. baicalensis* radix extract (Regulska-Ilow et al 2004). The treatment rats displayed a significant reduction in plasma triglycerides and total cholesterol as compared with control animals.

**ANXIOLYTIC**

Wogonin, baicalein, scutellarein and baicalin (in reducing order of potency), which all contain a certain flavonoid phenylbenzopyrone nucleus, have been shown in vitro to bind with the benzodiazepine site of the GABA-A receptor (Hui et al 2000).

Oral administration of wogonin (7.5–30 mg/kg) has been shown to interact with GABA-A receptors and produce an anxiolytic response that was similar to diazepam in the elevated plus-maze. Unlike benzodiazepines, wogonin was able to reduce anxiety without causing sedation or myorelaxation (Hui et al 2002, Kwok et al 2002).
Baicalin (10 mg/kg IP) and baicalin (20 mg/kg IP) have also been shown in vivo to produce an anxiolytic effect, mediated through activation of the benzodiazepine binding sites of GABA-A receptors (Liao et al 2003).

Two other flavones, 5,7-dihydroxy-6-methoxyflavone (oroxilin A) and 5,7,2'-trihydroxy-6,8-dimethoxyflavone (K36), also act as antagonist at the GABA-A recognition site and have demonstrated anxiolytic activity in vivo (Huen et al 2003a, b).

A water-extract of baical skullcap demonstrated anticonvulsant activity against electroshock-induced tonic seizures in vivo. Interestingly, the authors suggest that the effect might not be via the activation of the benzodiazepine binding site of GABA-A receptors, but probably via the prevention of seizure spread (Liao et al 2003, Wang et al 2000).

**ANTIMICROBIAL**

Numerous studies have found that baical extract and flavonoids exert antibacterial, antiviral and antifungal actions. The antimicrobial effect of baical extract is mild and the clinical efficacy of baical in infectious diseases may be more associated with its anti-inflammatory rather than its antimicrobial activities.

**Antibacterial**

Baical skullcap decoction was investigated for bacteriostatic and bactericidal activity against a selection of oral bacteria, including suspected periodontopathogens. At a concentration of 2%, the decoction was bacteriostatic for 8 of 11 bacteria tested, but a concentration of 3.13% or greater was required for bactericidal effect (Tsao et al 1982).

Baical aqueous-extract, but not its flavonoids, baicalin and baicalein, demonstrated antibacterial effects against the enteric pathogen *Salmonella typhimurium*. The effect was compatible with commercial antibiotics including ampicillin, chloramphenicol, and streptomycin. In contrast, the growth of a non-pathogenic *Escherichia coli* strain was unaffected by baical (Hahm et al 2001). One study demonstrated that the addition of baical skullcap in vitro improved the responsiveness of antibiotics for the treatment of MRSA (Yang et al 2005).

**Antiviral**

Antiviral effects have been demonstrated for baical in numerous in vitro and in vivo tests. Baical extract significantly inhibit hepatitis C RNA replication in vivo (Tang et al 2003) and in vitro studies have found that:

- Intraperitoneal and intranasal administration of baical flavonoids significantly inhibits influenza virus in vivo and in vitro (Nagai et al 1989, 1992a, b, 1995a, b).
- Baical extract was bactericidal in vitro against periodontal pathogens isolated from patients with periodontal disease (Tsao et al 1982).
- Baicalein inhibits HIV-1 infection at the level of viral entry (a process known to involve interaction between HIV-1 envelope proteins and the cellular CD4 and chemokine receptors) (Li et al 2000b).
- Bacalin inhibits human T-cell leukaemia virus type I (HTLV-I) (Baylor et al 1992).
- Aqueous extract inhibits HIV type-1 protease (Lam et al 2000).
- Baicalin inhibits HIV-1 infection and replication (Li et al 1993).
- Baical flavonoids inhibit Epstein-Barr virus early antigen activation (Konoshima et al 1992).
- Wogonin suppresses hepatitis B virus surface antigen production without evidence of cytotoxicity (Huang et al 2000).
- 5,7,4′-trihydroxy-8-methoxyflavone inhibits the fusion of influenza virus with endosome/lysosome membrane (Nagai et al 1995a).
- Virus replication is suppressed, partly by inhibiting the fusion of viral envelopes with the endosome/lysosome membrane which occurs at the early stage of the virus infection cycle (Nagai et al 1995b).
- The flavones in baical have potent influenza virus sialidase inhibitory activity and anti-influenza virus activity in vivo (Nagai et al 1992b).
- Baicalin reduces the pathogenic effects of superantigenic staphylococcal exotoxins by inhibiting the signalling pathways activated by superantigens (Krakauer et al 2001).
- Baicalin may selectively induce apoptosis of HIV-infected human T-leukaemia (CEM-HIV) cells, which have a high virus-releasing capacity, and stimulate proliferation of CEM-HIV, which have a relatively lower capacity of HIV-production (Wu et al 1995).

Antifungal Antifungal activity has been demonstrated by several studies (Blaszczyk et al 2000, Yang et al 1995). Baical extract showed clear fungistatic activities in vitro against some cutaneous and unusual pathogenic fungi, and particularly upon strains of *Candida albicans*, *Cryptococcus neoformans* and *Pityrosporum ovale*. The antifungal substance was isolated and found to be baicalein (Yang et al 1995). Of 56 Chinese antimicrobial plants, baical root extract had the highest activity against *C. albicans* (Blaszczyk et al 2000).

ANTI-ULCEROGENIC
Extracts prepared from grass and roots of *S. baicalensis* showed high antiulcerogenic activity in vivo (Amosova et al 1998).
**ANTIDIABETIC**

5-alpha-aldose inhibition  Diabetic patients may accumulate intracellular quantities of the sugars sorbitol and dulcitol, because of an increase in the polyol pathway involving the enzyme 5-alpha-aldose. Oral baicalin and liquid extract of licorice (also rich in flavonoids) reduced the sorbitol levels in the red blood cells of diabetic rats (Lin et al 1980, Zhou & Zhang 1989).

Alpha-glucosidase inhibition  Alpha-glucosidase inhibitors (e.g. acarbose) are a class of oral medicine for type 2 diabetes, which blocks the enzymes that digest starches in food. The result is a slower and lower rise in blood glucose throughout the day, especially immediately after meals. Methanol extracts of Scutellaria baicalensis, Rheum officinale and Paeonia suffruticosa showed potent inhibitory activity against rat intestinal sucrase. The active principles were identified as baicalin and methyl gallate (from the latter two plants). In addition to its activity against the rat enzyme, baicalein also inhibited human intestinal sucrase in vitro (Nishioka et al 1998).

**ANTI-EMETIC**

Pretreatment with baical root extract has been shown to decrease cisplatin-induced pica in rats (animal models use the level of kaolin [a type of clay] intake as a measure of the intensity of nausea). This suggests that baical may help to reduce cisplatin-induced nausea and emesis during cancer therapy (Aung et al 2003, Mehendale et al 2004, Wu et al 1995), although clinical testing is required to confirm significance.

In a recent in vivo trial, *S. baicalensis* was found to significantly attenuate ritonavir-induced pica, and demonstrate possible efficacy for the management of ritonavir-induced nausea in HIV treatment (Aung et al 2005).

**RENAI-URINARY ACTIVITY**

Baicalein inhibited angiotensin II-induced increases in the cellular protein content of aortic smooth muscle cells in vitro (Natarajan et al 1994). In another in vitro study, baicalein prevented the angiotensin II-induced increase in renal vascular resistance by 50% and promoted glomerular filtration rate (Bell-Quilley et al 1993). Pretreatment with baicalein significantly inhibited a decrease in nephrotoxin-induced glomerular filtration rate and renal blood flow in vivo (Wu et al 1993). Oral intake of baical flavonoids and extract has been shown to produce a diuretic effect.

**ANTICANCER**

Immunostimulation  Sho-saiko-to has been shown to stimulate granulocyte colony-stimulating factor (G-CSF), which may explain its use in infectious diseases and cancer (Yamashiki et al 1992). Like growth hormone, IL-2 and -4 and interferon, G-CSF is a signalling ligand that stimulates immune function. G--CSF, a glycoprotein...
produced mainly by macrophages, induces proliferation of neutrophil colonies and differentiation of precursor cells to neutrophils. It also stimulates the activity of mature neutrophils (Hill et al 1993).

Sho-saiko-to is known to significantly suppress cancer development in the liver. Moderate regulation of the cytokine production system in patients with hepatitis C by using Sho-saiko-to may be useful in the prevention of disease progression (Yamashiki et al 1997). One possible mechanism for the beneficial effects of this formula in patients with liver cirrhosis may be the improvement in production of IL-12, which is an important cytokine for maintenance of normal systemic defence and bioregulation. This effect of Sho-saiko-to is attributed to two of its seven herb components, baical and licorice root (Yamashiki et al 1999).

Patients who were given baical skullcap showed a tendency towards an increase in the relative number of T-lymphocytes and their theophylline-resistant population during antitumour chemotherapy. The immunoregulation index in this case was approximately twice the background value during the whole period of investigation. The inclusion of baical skullcap in the therapeutic complex promoted an increase in the number of immunoglobulins A at a stable level of IgG (Smolianinov et al 1997).

**Apoptosis induction** Baicalein, baicalin and wogonin have been shown to induce apoptosis, disrupt the mitochondria and inhibit proliferation in various human hepatoma cell lines (Chang et al 2002, Chen et al 2000). The platelet-type 12-lipoxygenase (12-LOX) pathway is a critical regulator of prostate cancer progression and apoptosis by affecting various proteins regulating these processes. Baicalein inhibits 12-LOX and may be a potential therapeutic agent in the treatment of prostate cancer (Pidgeon et al 2002) as well as breast cancer (Tong et al 2002).

**Antiproliferative** Baicalein, baicalin and wogonin have been shown to induce apoptosis and inhibit proliferation in various human hepatoma cell lines (Chang et al 2002).

Baicalin has been shown to inhibit the proliferation of prostate cancer cells in vitro. However, the response to baicalin differed among different cell lines (Chan et al 2000).

COX-2, which converts arachidonic acid to PGE₂, is highly expressed in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma (HNSCC). *Scutellaria baicalensis*, but not baicalein, suppressed proliferation cell nuclear antigen expression and PGE₂ synthesis. A 66% reduction in tumour mass was observed in the mice with HNSCC. Baical selectively and effectively inhibits cancer cell growth in vitro and in vivo and can be an effective chemotherapeutic agent for HNSCC (Zhang et al 2003).
In a recent study designed to determine the ability of baical skullcap to inhibit various human cancer cells in vitro, *S. baicalensis* demonstrated a significant dose-dependent, growth inhibition on squamous cell carcinoma, breast cancer, hepatocellular carcinoma, prostate carcinoma and colon cancer cell lines (Ye et al 2002). Prostate and breast cancer cells were particularly sensitive. Baical skullcap has also been shown to arrest mouse leukaemia cell proliferation in vivo (Ciesielska et al 2002, 2004). Inhibition of PGE\(_2\) synthesis via suppression of COX-2 expression may be responsible for its anticancer activity (Ye et al 2002). Differences in the biological effects of baikal compared with baikalein suggest the synergistic effects among components in baikal (Zhang et al 2003).

Baicalein, baikalin and wogonin have been shown to reduce proliferation of human bladder cancer cell lines in a dose-dependent manner, but baikalin exhibited the greatest antiproliferative activity. In an in vivo study baikal skullcap extract had a significant inhibition of tumour growth \(P < 0.05\) (Ikemoto et al 2000).

**Adjunct to chemotherapy** In experiments with murine and rat transplantable tumours, baikal skullcap extract treatment improved cyclophosphamide and 5-fluorouracil-induced myelotoxicity and to decrease tumour cell viability (Razina et al 1987).

**Prevention of metastases** The advancement of Pliss’ lymphosarcoma in rats is associated with disorders of platelet-mediated haemostasis, presenting with either lowered or increased aggregation activity of platelets. Extract of baikal was shown to produce a normalising effect on platelet-mediated haemostasis whatever the pattern of alteration. This activity is thought to be important for antitumour and, particularly, metastasis-preventing effects (Razina et al 1989).

Experiments in mice inoculated with metastasing Lewis lung carcinoma showed that the antitumour and antimetastatic effects of cyclophosphamide are potentiated by baikal, rose root (*Rhodiola rosea*), licorice (*Glycyrrhiza glabra*), and their principal acting components, baikalin, paratyrrosol and glycyrrhizin (Razina et al 2000).

**Chemoprevention** Baicalein prevents chemically-induced DNA damage in a cell culture model (Chan et al 2002).

**Anti-angiogenesis** Baicalein and baikalin have demonstrated anticancer activity against several cancers in vitro. The flavonoids have also been shown to be potent inhibitors of angiogenesis in vitro and in vivo. Baicalein was found to be more potent than baikalin (Liu et al 2003).

**CLINICAL USE**
Baical skullcap is an ingredient in the very popular traditional Chinese/Japanese formulation, Minor Bupleurum Combination, known as Xiao Chai Hu Tang (Chinese)
and Sho-saiko-to (Japanese). Minor Bupleurum Combination has been used in China for about 3000 years for the treatment of pyretic diseases.

Minor Bupleurum Combination (Sho-saiko-to) is now a prescription drug approved by the Ministry of Health and Welfare of Japan and widely used in the treatment of chronic viral liver diseases. Since 1999, Sho-saiko-to has been administered to 1.5 million patients with chronic liver diseases, because it can significantly suppress cancer development in the liver (Yamashiki et al. 1999). Sho-saiko-to is also used for the treatment of bronchial asthma in Japan (Nakajima et al. 2001).

**Minor Bupleurum Combination (Sho-saiko-to, Xiao Chai Hu Tang)**
- *Bupleurum falcatum* (bupleurum)
- *Scutellaria baicalensis* (baical skullcap)
- *Pinellia ternate* (pinellia)
- *Panax ginseng* (Korean ginseng)
- *Zizyphus jujube* (zizyphus)
- *Glycyrrhiza uralensis* (Chinese licorice)
- *Zingiber officinale* (ginger)

**RESPIRATORY INFECTION**
Sixty patients with respiratory infection (mainly nosocomial pneumonia) were treated either by injection of baical compound or piperacillin sodium (IV). The total efficacy was evaluated after treatment for 1 week.
- Total effective treatment rates were 73.3% for baical compared with 76.7% in the antibiotic treatment group.
- Body temperature was decreased similarly and symptoms disappeared or were relieved in 11.67 ± 6.75 days with the herb and 11.53 ± 7.30 days with the antibiotic.
- In the piperacillin sodium group, fungal infections occurred in 4 of 30 patients, but there were none in the baical treatment group (Lu 1990).

**BONE MARROW STIMULATION DURING CHEMOTHERAPY**
Haemopoiesis was studied in 88 patients with lung cancer during combination treatment with chemotherapy and a *S. baicalensis* extract. Administration of the plant preparation was associated with haemopoiesis stimulation, intensification of bone marrow erythrocytopoiesis and granulocytopoiesis, and increased numbers of circulating precursors of erythroid and granulomonocytic colony-forming units (Goldberg et al. 1997).
EPILEPSY (IN COMBINATION WITH OTHER HERBS)
Saiko-keishi-to, a spray-dried decoction of Bupleurum, (cinnamon, peony, ginger, licorice, ginseng, pinellia, zizyphus and baikal) was administered to 24 people with epilepsy, who had frequent uncontrollable seizures (3–5 seizures per day in the most severe case and 5 seizures per month in the mildest case) of various types, despite treatment with pharmaceutical anticonvulsants. Of them, 6 were well controlled with Saiko-keishi-to whereas 13 experienced improvement and 3 showed no effect. No patients experienced worsening of their condition. Two patients dropped out during treatment (Narita et al 1982).

CHRONIC ACTIVE HEPATITIS (IN COMBINATION WITH OTHER HERBS)
In a double-blind, multicentre clinical study of 222 patients with chronic active hepatitis, Sho-saiko-to was found to significantly decrease AST and ALT values compared with placebo. The difference between the treatment and placebo groups in the mean value was significant after 12 weeks. In patients with chronic active type B hepatitis, a tendency towards a decrease of HBeAg and an increase of anti-HBe antibodies was also observed. No remarkable side effects were noticed (Hirayama et al 1989).

LIVER FIBROSIS (IN COMBINATION WITH OTHER HERBS)
Minor Bupleurum Combination (Sho-saiko-to) has been shown to play a chemopreventive role in the development of hepatocellular carcinoma in cirrhotic patients in a prospective study and several studies have demonstrated the preventive and therapeutic effects of Sho-saiko-to on experimental hepatic fibrosis (Shimizu 2000). Sho-saiko-to has been shown to inhibit the activation of hepatic stellate cells, the major collagen-producing cells. Sho-saiko-to has a potent antifibrotic effect by inhibiting oxidative stress in hepatocytes and hepatic stellate cells. It is proposed that the active components are baicalin and baicalein, because they both have chemical structures very similar to silybinin, the active compound in Silybum marianum (St Mary’s thistle), which exhibits antifibrotic activities.

OTHER USES
Because of its wide range of pharmacological effects, baikal skullcap is used for many different indications. Although controlled trials are not yet available to determine its effectiveness, evidence from in vitro and animal studies provides a theoretical basis for the following uses:
- Chronic inflammatory conditions such as asthma, arthritis and allergies (anti-allergic and anti-inflammatory effects).
- Hepatitis (as a hepatoprotective agent).
• Common infections such as the common cold (antimicrobial and immunostimulant effects).
• Nausea and vomiting (anti-emetic effect).
• Mild hypertension (hypotensive activity demonstrated in several animal models).

In practice, baical skullcap is used in combination with other herbs for these conditions.

**DOSAGE RANGE**
• Dried herb: 6–15 g/day (Bensky & Gamble 1986).
• Liquid extract (1:2): 30–60 mL/week or 4.5–8.5 mL/day in divided doses.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
There have been several case reports of Sho-saiko-to-induced interstitial pneumonia (Liu et al 2002). One case of Sho-saiko-to-induced pneumonia in a patient with autoimmune hepatitis was reported (Katou et al 1999); however, direct toxicity is very low.

Toxicity studies of three different traditional Chinese/Japanese formulations containing baical suggests a very low acute or subchronic toxicity for the herbs in them. The studies found no herb-related abnormalities such as changes in body weight or food consumption, abnormalities on ophthamological and haematological examination, urinalysis and gross pathological examination, changes in organ weights or optical microscopic examination (Iijima et al 1995, Kanitani et al 1995, Kobayashi et al 1995, Minematsu et al 1992, 1995). The acute lethal activity of wogonin is low, with an LD₅₀ of 3.9 g/kg (Kwok et al 2002).

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**
There are reports of baical flavonoids interacting with P450 enzymes. Baical flavonoids inhibit hepatic CYP1A2 (Kim et al 2002) and CYP2E1 expression (Jang et al 2003). Theoretically, inhibition of CYP1A2 and CYP2E1 may affect certain medical drugs metabolised by these P450 enzymes. There are, however, no clinical reports of such herb–drug interactions.

**Sho-saiko-to during interferon therapy** Sho-saiko-to, as well as interferon, is used for the treatment of chronic hepatitis. There have been reports of acute pneumonitis due to a possible interferon–herb interaction. Pneumonitis, also called extrinsic allergic alveolitis, is a complex syndrome caused by sensitisation to an allergen. The mechanism of the Sho-saiko-to–interferon interaction seems to be due to an allergic–immunological mechanism rather than direct toxicity (Ishizaki et al 1996) — contraindicated.

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
Cyclosporine  A decoction of *S. baicalensis* has been reported to significantly decrease plasma levels of cyclosporine in rats. The co-administration of these two substances should be avoided until further research is available (Lai et al 2004).

Warfarin/anticoagulants  Increased risk of bleeding is theoretically possible — use with caution.

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**
Baical skullcap and the formulation Sho-saiko-to (Minor Bupleurum Combination, Xiao Chai Hu Tang) are contraindicated during interferon therapy. Baical is contraindicated in cold conditions in TCM.

**PREGNANCY USE**
Baical is used in TCM for restless fetus (threatened abortion) and toxaemia of pregnancy. A recent animal study found that baical skullcap combined with *Atractylodes macrocephala* had an anti-abortive effect through inhibition of maternal–fetal interface immunity. The herbs prevented lipopolysaccharide-induced abortion by reducing natural killer cells and interleukin 2 activity (Zhong et al 2002). Although this is encouraging, safety in pregnancy is still unknown.

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**
- Baical skullcap is a traditional Chinese herb used to treat fever, cough with thick yellow sputum, thirst and irritability, nausea, jaundice and diarrhoea.
- Baical skullcap extract, many of its constituents, and as part of herbal combination treatments, has been studied in many different experimental models. However, few clinical trials have been conducted using baical as a stand-alone treatment.
- It is used to treat chronic inflammatory conditions such as asthma, arthritis and allergy, because of its anti-inflammatory and anti-allergic effects.
- It is used as a hepatoprotective agent in the treatment of hepatitis.
- Because of its antimicrobial and immunostimulant effects, baical is used to treat infections such as the common cold and bronchitis.
- Anti-emetic effects suggest a role in nausea and vomiting.
- Hypotensive activity demonstrated in various animal models provides a basis for its use in hypertension.
- In practice, it is combined with other herbal medicines for a more targeted approach.

**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**
**What can this herb do for me?**
Baical skullcap may be useful as an adjunctive therapy during cancer treatment to reduce nausea and immune suppression. Baical skullcap may also be beneficial in the...
treatment of vascular disorders, allergies, liver disease and infections, hypertension and arthritis; however, effectiveness is largely unknown.

**When will it start to work?**
For acute allergic and infectious conditions, the beneficial effects of baical skullcap should be noticeable within a few days. For chronic diseases, long-term use is recommended.

**Are there any safety issues?**
Baical skullcap is a safe and non-toxic herb, which is used in both acute and chronic conditions. It should only be used during pregnancy on the recommendation of a healthcare practitioner. Baical and the formulation Sho-saiko-to (Minor Bupleurum Combination known as Xiao Chai Hu Tang in Mandarin) are contraindicated during interferon therapy.

**REFERENCES**
Akao T et al. Baicalin, the predominant flavone glucuronide of Scutellariae radix, is absorbed from the rat gastrointestinal tract as the aglycone and restored to its original form. J Pharm Pharmacol 52(12) (2000): 1563-8.


\section*{Beta-carotene}

\section*{BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS}

\subsection*{CAROTENOIDS}

The carotenoids are a family of bright yellow-, orange- and red-coloured compounds found in fruit, vegetables and some animal products such as salmon, lobster and egg yolk. Carotenoids can be divided into the provitamin A group, such as beta-carotene, and xanthophylls such as lutein, zeaxanthin and lycopene, which are important fat-soluble antioxidants. Of the 600 or so carotenoids known to exist in nature, approximately 20 are found in humans. In plants, carotenoids play a vital role in photosynthesis and participate in the energy-transfer process, as well as protecting plants from oxidative damage. The red, orange and yellow colour of these compounds is because they preferentially absorb blue light, which is the most energetic and hence the most biologically damaging part of the visible spectrum.

In animals, carotenoids have many functions. In addition to providing direct photoprotection via absorption of blue light, carotenoids act as powerful fat-soluble antioxidants linked to oxidation prevention, as well as playing a role in cellular communication, including stimulation of gap-junction communication, which is important for cancer prevention by regulating cell growth, differentiation, apoptosis and angiogenesis. Carotenoids may also be involved in detoxification of carcinogens, DNA repair and immunosurveillance. These properties are believed to contribute to their antioxidant, immune-enhancing, anticarcinogenic and photoprotective activity.

Beta-carotene was the first of the carotenoids to be discovered, being initially isolated from carrots. The bioavailability of beta-carotene is dependent on its source, with the amount being absorbed from raw foods such as carrots, where it forms part of a protein-polysaccharide matrix, being only about 20\% of that absorbed from supplemental forms. Although beta-carotene is lipid soluble its absorption requires only a limited amount of fat (Roodenburg et al 2000); however, there is a wide individual variation in serum response to beta-carotene administration (Bowen et al 1993, Pryor et al 2000).

Although it has been suggested that different carotenoids compete for absorption, this was not confirmed by a postprandial study (Tyssandier et al 2002). Beta-carotene is absorbed in the intestine and released into the lymphatic circulation within chylomicrons. It is then taken up by hepatocytes and released into the blood and transported predominantly within LDLs. It is distributed to adipose tissue and the
skin and excreted in the faeces (Micromedex 2003). The time to reach peak concentration is up to 4–6 weeks with oral dosing (Mathews-Roth 1990a).

Animal feeding studies suggest that a natural algae-derived beta-carotene isomer mixture is more readily absorbed than synthetic all-trans beta-carotene and that this higher bioavailability can be enhanced by increasing dietary lipid levels (Mokady & Ben-Amotz 1991). Natural algal beta-carotene has also been shown to have higher accumulation in rat liver than synthetic all-trans beta-carotene (Ben-Amotz et al 1989, Takenaka et al 1993) with at least a 10-fold higher accumulation having been observed in chick and rat liver (Ben-Amotz et al 1989).

Animal studies suggest that there is some bioconversion within the body between different stereoisomers of beta-carotene (Ben-Amotz et al 2005) and further studies in humans suggest that, regardless of the isomer mix, there is preferential absorption or transport of the all-trans isomer in comparison with the 9-cis isomer, with plasma levels of the all-trans isomer being around 10-fold that of the 9-cis form (Gaziano et al 1995a, Jensen 1987, Morinobu et al 1994, Stahl & Sies 1993, Tamai et al 1993).

It is suggested that Helicobacter pylori infection may impair the protective role of alpha-tocopherol and beta-carotene in the stomach, because infected people have been found to have reduced beta-carotene concentrations in gastric juice and the presence of gastric atrophy and intestinal metaplasia is associated with reduced mucosal alpha-tocopherol and beta-carotene concentrations (Zhang et al 2000).

**CHEMICAL COMPONENTS**

Beta-carotene comes in natural and synthetic forms, with the natural form being derived mainly from algal sources and consisting of roughly equal amount of 9-cis and all-trans isomers, with small amounts of the 13-cis isomer. Synthetic beta-carotene is primarily composed of the all-trans isomer with small residues of the 13-cis isomer (PDRHealth 2005). Although all-trans beta-carotene is converted into vitamin A, which plays an essential role in vision, growth, reproduction, immune function and maintenance of the skin and mucous membranes (see Vitamin A monograph), the 9-cis isomer is not converted into vitamin A but does act as an antioxidant (Ben-Amotz & Levy 1996).

**FOOD SOURCES**

Carrots are the major contributors of beta-carotene in the diet, but it is also found in cantaloupe, broccoli and spinach. Carotenoids have emerged as the best single tissue marker for a diet rich in fruits and vegetables, and measurements of plasma and tissue carotenoids have an important role in defining the optimal diets for humans (Handelman 2001).
Natural beta-carotene for use in supplements is generally obtained from palm oil or the micromarine algae (phytoplankton) *Dunaliella salina* (also known as *D. bardawil*), which is the richest natural source of beta-carotene. Whole dried *D. salina* is also available in a supplemental form that contains between 1% and 2% beta-carotene. The typical western diet is estimated to provide approximately 2–4 mg/day of beta-carotene (Pryor et al 2000).

**DEFICIENCY SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS**

Beta-carotene is considered a conditionally essential nutrient and becomes an essential nutrient when the dietary intake of retinol (vitamin A) is inadequate.

Low serum beta-carotene levels have been associated with male gender, younger age, lower non-HDL-cholesterol, greater ethanol consumption and higher BMI (Brady et al 1996), increased lipoprotein density and the presence of inflammation (Kritchevsky 1999), high C-reactive protein (Erlinger et al 2001), high blood glucose (Abahusain et al 1999), hypertension (Coudray et al 1997), exposure to environmental tobacco smoke (Farchi et al 2001), as well as all measures of obesity (Wallstrom et al 2001), including obesity in children (Strauss 1999).

Low serum beta-carotene and/or low beta-carotene intake has also been associated with a number of clinical conditions, such as type 2 diabetes and poor glycaemic control (Abahusain et al 1999, Coudray et al 1997), non-melanoma and melanoma skin cancer (Gollnick & Siebenwirth 2002), breast cancer (Hacisevki et al 2003), rheumatoid arthritis (Kacsur et al 2002), Alzheimers dementia (Jimenez-Jimenez et al 1999) and age-related macular degeneration (Cooper et al 1999a).

Low serum beta-carotene has been independently associated with an increased all-cause mortality risk in older men. Apparently, a synergistic effect occurs between low beta-carotene and high inflammation burden in predicting higher mortality rates (Hu et al 2004). In another study of 668 hospitalised patients aged 70 years or more and 104 healthy controls, the diseased elderly people had reduced plasma levels of retinol, beta-carotene, and alpha-tocopherol (Tebi et al 2000). It is unclear whether these observed low levels of beta-carotene seen in disease states are a cause or result of disease processes.

**MAIN ACTIONS**

**PRO-VITAMIN A**

Beta-carotene is converted to retinoic acid (vitamin A: see Vitamin A monograph) by an enzyme found in the intestinal mucosa and liver, with 2 µg of all-trans carotene being equal to 1 µg of all-trans retinol (vitamin A) or 3.33 IU (PDRHealth 2005). This conversion is regulated by vitamin A status and may be enhanced by alpha-
tocopherol (Wang & Krinsky 1998). Zinc may also be important for bioconversion, as indicated by a double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of 170 pregnant women that found that supplementation zinc improved the postpartum vitamin A status of both mothers and infants (Dijkhuizen et al 2004).

**IMMUNOMODULATION**

The mechanisms by which beta-carotene influences immune function are not well understood and both direct and indirect effects on immune function, via its pro-vitamin A activity, have been demonstrated (Watson et al 1991). Beta-carotene directly influences immune function by reducing oxidative damage to cell membranes and their receptors, by influencing the activity of redox-sensitive transcription factors and the production of cytokines and prostaglandins and enhancing cell-to-cell communication (Hughes 2001).

These actions are influenced by several factors, such as dose and timing of supplementation, age and health status of the individual. A double-blind, placebo-controlled, randomised crossover study in 25 healthy, adult male non-smokers found that 15 mg/day of beta-carotene enhanced cell-mediated immune responses, with significant increases in the percentages of monocytes expressing the major histocompatibility complex class II molecule HLA-DR and adhesion molecules, as well as increased ex vivo TNF-alpha secretion by blood monocytes (Hughes et al 1997). Beta-carotene has also been shown to increase plasma levels of TNF-alpha in patients given 30 mg/day for the treatment of oral leukoplakia (Prabhala et al 1993).

In controlled trials, supplementation with 30 mg beta-carotene was shown to protect against UV-induced photosuppression of immune function in young men (Fuller et al 1992), as well as in older men, with serum beta-carotene levels being significantly associated with maintenance of the delayed-type hypersensitivity response (Herraiz et al 1998). Another controlled trial found that 60 mg/day beta-carotene for 44 weeks increased the CD4-CD8 ratio after 9 months without affecting NK cells, virgin T cells, memory T cells or cytotoxic T cells in healthy male non-smokers, and supplementation with 60 mg/day beta-carotene for 4 weeks was shown to significantly increase lymphocyte counts and CD4+ in a pilot study of seven patients with AIDS (Murata et al 1994).

Natural killer cell activity was also found to increase in older adults in a dose-finding study in which 30 mg/day beta-carotene for 2 months significantly increased in a dose-dependent manner the percentage of lymphoid cells with surface markers for T-helper and NK cells, and cells with IL-2 and transferrin receptors (Watson et al 1991). In a further study of 59 men participating in the Physicians Health Study, 10–12 years of supplementation with 50 mg beta-carotene on alternate days was
found to increase NK cell activity without increasing the percentage of NK cells, IL-2 production or receptor expression in elderly but not middle-aged men (Santos et al 1996).

Although beta-carotene supplementation has been shown to enhance NK cell responses, there are a number of RCTs that suggest that it does not influence other aspects of immune activity in healthy individuals. In separate RCTs, supplementation with 90 mg beta-carotene for 3 weeks or 50 mg on alternate days for more than 10 years was not found to influence T-cell-mediated immunity of healthy elderly people (Santos et al 1997) and supplementation with 30 mg beta-carotene was not found to affect the T-lymphocyte proliferative response to phytohaemagglutinin in healthy lactating and non-lactating women (Gossage et al 2000). A further study found that supplementation with 8.2 mg/day of beta-carotene for 12 weeks did not influence several markers of T-cell-mediated immunity in well-nourished, healthy elderly individuals (Corridan et al 2001).

**ANTIOXIDANT**

Beta-carotene has consistently demonstrated antioxidant activity in vitro, although the mechanism of action is poorly understood. At low partial pressures of oxygen, such as those found in most tissues under physiological conditions, it exhibits good radical-trapping antioxidant behaviour, whereas this capacity is lost at high oxygen pressures in vitro with autocatalytic, pro-oxidant effects observed (Burton & Ingold 1984).

Beta-carotene has been shown to quench singlet oxygen, scavenge peroxyl radicals and inhibit lipid peroxidation in vitro; however, there is ongoing debate as to beta-carotene’s ability to act as an antioxidant in vivo, with some evidence suggesting this varies from system to system for reasons that are poorly understood (Pryor et al 2000).

Beta-carotene acts synergistically with other antioxidants, such as vitamins E and C, or other dietary components as part of the antioxidant network (see Vitamin E monograph). A combination of beta-carotene and alpha-tocopherol has been shown to inhibit lipid peroxidation significantly more than the sum of the individual inhibitions in a membrane model (Palozza & Krinsky 1992) and a synergistic effect has also been demonstrated in vitro and in vivo with vitamins E and C (Bohm et al 1997, 1998).

**In vivo studies**  A number of studies have demonstrated that beta-carotene has antioxidant activity in vivo. Supplementation with 180 mg of beta-carotene for 2 weeks was found to increase the beta-carotene content of LDL and significantly reduce plasma lipid peroxidation and LDL susceptibility to oxidation, as analysed by
malondialdehyde generation (Levy et al 1996). Similarly, lipid peroxidation as measured by breath pentane output was found to be significantly reduced in healthy subjects by 4 weeks of daily supplementation with 120 mg of beta-carotene (Gottlieb et al 1993). In a case-controlled trial involving 20 patients with long-standing type 1 diabetes mellitus, as well as age- and sex-matched controls, supplementation with 60 mg/day of natural algae-derived beta-carotene for 3 weeks was found to significantly reduce malondialdehyde and lipid peroxide production and the increased susceptibility towards LDL oxidation seen in the diabetic subjects (Levy et al 2000).

Beta-carotene supplementation was also found to significantly reduce serum lipid peroxidation in a dose-dependent manner in a number of double-blind, placebo-controlled trials (Greul et al 2002, Lee et al 2000).

These results contrast with those from a number of studies that failed to demonstrate any in vivo antioxidant activity. A study of 79 healthy volunteers found that normal concentrations of carotenoids in plasma and tissues did not correlate with total antioxidant capacity of the plasma or breath pentane measurements (Borel et al 1998). In other studies supplementation was seen to increase LDL beta-carotene without changing LDL susceptibility to oxidation (Princen et al 1992, Reaven et al 1993).

It is possible that beta-carotene is more likely to demonstrate antioxidant activity in conditions of increased oxidative stress. This is suggested by the results of a randomised, double-blind controlled trial involving 42 non-smokers and 28 smokers who received either 20 mg of beta-carotene or placebo and showed that beta-carotene reduced lipid peroxidation as indicated by breath pentane output in smokers but not in non-smokers (Allard et al 1994). It is further supported by a study of whole-body irradiation in rats that found that supplementation with natural algaederived beta-carotene protected against the reduction in growth rate and the selective decline in 9-cis beta-carotene and retinol seen in irradiated animals, as well as partially reversing the effect of irradiation when given after the irradiation (Ben-Amotz et al 1996). Algae-derived beta-carotene was also found to protect against CNS oxygen toxicity in rats, as indicated by a significant increase in the latent period preceding oxygen seizures in supplemented animals (Bitterman et al 1994).

**Isomer differences** Individual isomers and isomer mixtures demonstrate different antioxidant properties in vivo. The 9-cis isomer, which is present in greater amounts in natural beta-carotene, exhibits higher antioxidant potency than the all-trans isomer in vitro (Levin & Mokady 1994). Natural beta-carotene, such as that obtained from algal sources, also exhibits greater antioxidant activity than synthetic beta-carotene in vivo (Takenaka et al 1993).
In humans, supplementation with natural algal beta-carotene containing a 50:50 mix of all-trans and 9-cis isomers has been shown to be a more effective lipophilic antioxidant than all-trans beta-carotene (Ben-Amotz & Levy 1996). Human supplementation with natural algal and synthetic beta-carotene has also been shown to produce similar reductions in LDL oxidation, despite the synthetic beta-carotene producing double the rise in LDL beta-carotene content (Levy et al 1995).

These studies are contrasted by in vitro studies that suggest that 9-cis beta-carotene and all-trans beta-carotene have equal antioxidant activities (Liu et al 2000) and that synthetic beta-carotene is twice as effective as algal beta-carotene in inhibiting LDL lipid peroxidation following LDL incubation with copper ions (Lavy et al 1993).

**PHOTOPROTECTION**

Beta-carotene, together with other carotenoids, is present in all photosynthetic organisms where it serves an important photoprotective role either by dissipating excess excitation energy as heat or by scavenging reactive oxygen species and suppressing lipid peroxidation (Penuelas & Munne-Bosch 2005). Studies in bacteria, animals and humans have demonstrated that carotenoids can prevent or lessen photosensitivity by endogenous and exogenous photosensitisers (Mathews-Roth 1993) and high doses of beta-carotene (180 mg/day, up to 300 mg/day) have been used to treat the photosensitivity associated with erythropoietic protoporphyria (Mathews-Roth 1987). There is also consistent evidence from animal and human studies that beta-carotene has photoprotective effects.

Beta-carotene is present at the target sites of light-induced damage, being present in the dermis, epidermis and stratum corneum with levels varying between skin areas with higher concentration in the forehead and palms (Alaluf et al 2002). Skin levels are related to the levels found in the plasma (Sies & Stahl 2004) and beta-carotene and other endogenous antioxidants are reduced in both skin and blood by UV exposure (Gollnick et al 1996).

Although it is presumed that beta-carotene exerts a light-protective function by quenching excited species such as singlet oxygen and free radicals (Mathews-Roth 1987), there are a number of other ways that beta-carotene may contribute to photoprotection (i.e. absorption of UV light). These include the protection of target molecules through its antioxidant activity, enhancement of the repair of UV damage, modulation of enzyme activity and gene expression, enhancement of cell-to-cell communication and suppression of cellular responses and inflammation (Sies & Stahl 2004). It is also suggested that the effect of UVA protection provided by beta-
Beta-carotene is due to the siting of beta-carotene deep inside membranes in proximity to the UVA chromophores that initiate the cell damage (Bohm et al 1998b).

As a strong natural pigment, beta-carotene produces a yellow-orange colouration in the skin that adds to the red colouration from haemoglobin and the brown colouration from melanin to create the normal human skin colour (Alaluf et al 2002). Beta-carotene acts as a blue light filter by absorbing light in the range of 360–550 nanometers (Pathak 1982) with the cis isomers having been found to exhibit an additional absorption maximum in the UV range (Sies & Stahl 2004), thus suggesting a possible advantage for natural beta-carotene over synthetic all-trans beta-carotene in providing photoprotection.

As with titanium dioxide, the beta-carotene in the skin takes the form of finely dispersed particles that can increase the natural pigment action. This was observed in a human trial involving 20 subjects that found that supplementation with 50 mg of natural algal beta-carotene for 6 weeks increased the reflection capacity of the skin 2.3-fold, irrespective of the wavelength (Heinrich et al 1998). A study on whole albino hairless mouse skin and epidermis, however, suggests that although beta-carotene did impart a visible change in skin colour its absorbance was insufficient to impart significant photoprotection, which indicates that its photoprotective action is mediated through processes other than blue light absorption (Sayre & Black 1992).

In a controlled study injection of phytone, the colourless triene precursor of beta-carotene was found to significantly reduce radiation-induced erythema in guinea pigs (Mathews-Roth & Pathak 1975); however, a further study on albino hairless mice found that 10 g/kg feed of beta-carotene and 200 mg/kg feed of 13-cis retinoic acid for 12 weeks did not prevent UVB-induced dermal damage (Kligman & Mathews-Roth 1990).

An in vitro study on human keratinocytes suggests that beta-carotene dose-dependently suppressed UVA-induction of matrix metalloproteases through quenching of singlet oxygen and that this action was not enhanced by vitamin E (Wertz et al 2004). Further studies suggest that beta-carotene also interferes with UVA-induced gene expression by multiple pathways, including inhibition of UVA-induced extracellular matrix degradation, enhanced UVA induction of tanning-associated protease-activated receptor-2, promotion of keratinocyte differentiation and synergistic induction of cell cycle arrest and apoptosis (Wertz et al 2005).

Beta-carotene has also been observed to have synergistic effects with other antioxidants in protecting cultured human fibroblasts from UVA, although only additive effects were observed for UVB (Bohm et al 1998b). The interaction between different antioxidants and/or other as yet unidentified phytochemicals has been used
to explain the finding that UV carcinogenesis was enhanced with a beta-carotene-supplemented semi-defined diet in mice (Black 2004, Black & Gerguis 2003, Black et al 2000).

**ENHANCE INTERCELLULAR COMMUNICATION**

In addition to its antioxidant activity, beta-carotene enhances gap junction intercellular communication by upregulation of the gap junction protein connexin 43. This action may be important in its control of tumour growth (Yeh & Hu 2003) and is likely to be independent of its ability to quench singlet molecular oxygen (Stahl et al 1997).

Animal studies have indicated that a beta-carotene dose of 50 mg/kg/day for 5 days inhibits, whereas a lower dose (5 mg/kg/day) increases, gap junction intercellular communication in rat liver. Further in vitro studies suggest that the observed inhibition is due, at least in part, to oxidised beta-carotene (Yeh & Hu 2003).

**ANTICARCINOGENIC ACTIVITY**

Observational epidemiological studies have consistently shown a relationship between dietary beta-carotene intake and low risk of various cancers (Cooper et al 1999b, Pryor et al 2000). In animal studies beta-carotene has been found to be chemoprotective, with inhibition of spontaneous mammary tumours (Fujii et al 1993, Nagasawa et al 1991), as well as prevention of skin carcinoma formation (Ponnampерuma et al 2000), UV-induced carcinogenesis in mice (Epstein 1977, Mathews-Roth 1982) and oral cancer in laboratory and animal models (Garewal 1995). Studies in ferrets suggest that the beta-carotene molecule becomes unstable in smoke-exposed lungs and that when given with alpha-tocopherol and ascorbic acid to stabilise the beta-carotene molecule, there is a protective effect against smoke-induced lung squamous metaplasia (Russell 2002).

A review of carotenoid research by the International Agency for Research on Cancer suggests there is sufficient evidence that beta-carotene has cancer-protective activity in experimental animals, based on models of skin carcinogenesis in mice and buccal pouch carcinogenesis in hamsters (Vainio & Rautalahti 1998), despite a review suggesting that beta-carotene does not protect against lung cancer in animals (De Luca & Ross 1996).

Whether beta-carotene has anticancer properties in humans is unclear. It has been suggested any such effects could be mediated through multiple mechanisms that may include antioxidant activity preventing oxidative damage to DNA and inhibition of lipid peroxidation, stimulation of gap junction communication, effects on cell transformation and differentiation, inhibition of cell proliferation and oncogene expression, effects on immune function and inhibition of endogenous formation of
carcinogens (Cooper et al 1999). Additional mechanisms may include the metabolic conversion of beta-carotene to retinoids, which may in turn modulate the gene expression of factors linked to differentiation and cell proliferation. The modulation of enzymes that metabolise xenobiotics and inhibition of endogenous cholesterol synthesis by modulation of HMG-CoA reductase expression may also lead to a possible inhibition of cell proliferation and malignant transformation (PDRHealth 2005).

None of these mechanisms has been conclusively found to contribute to preventing cancer in vivo and there is ongoing debate as to the role of beta-carotene in cancer prevention (Cooper et al 1999, Patrick 2000). This debate has been further fuelled by the findings of two large intervention studies, the Alpha-Tocopherol Beta-Carotene (ATBC) Cancer Prevention Study (the ‘Finnish study’; Heinonen et al 1994) and the Carotene and Retinol Efficacy Trial (CARET; Omenn et al 1996a), which found a significantly increased risk of lung cancer in high-risk individuals supplemented with synthetic beta-carotene (see Clinical Use for more details).

The mixed findings from beta-carotene intervention trials has produced much controversy in the scientific literature and although it has been suggested that there is no known biologically plausible explanation for the finding, a number of hypotheses have been put forward (Bendich 2004).

It has been suggested that the dose, duration of study and/or choice of synthetic all-trans- beta-carotene may have been inappropriate to use in the intervention trials (Cooper et al 1999) and that supplementation with monotherapy using synthetic beta-carotene may have inhibited the absorption of other carotenoids (Woodall et al 1996). It is also suggested that, although beta-carotene may be effective in the prevention of lung cancer before or during the phases of initiation and early promotion of cancer, the intervention studies that involved heavy smokers and asbestos workers probably included individuals in whom these processes were already initiated (Bendich 2004).

Additional possible explanations for the observed increase in lung cancer risk with beta-carotene supplementation include possible pro-oxidant activity of beta-carotene or its oxidative metabolites in the high oxygen environment of smokers’ lungs, with oxidised beta-carotene metabolites inducing carcinogen-bioactivating enzymes, facilitating the binding of metabolites to DNA, enhancing retinoic acid metabolism by P450 enzyme induction and acting as pro-oxidants, causing damage to DNA (Russell 2002), as well as inhibition of retinoid signalling (Wang et al 1999). It is further suggested that the beta-carotene molecule may become unstable due to a low level of antioxidants, such as ascorbic acid, being present in smokers compared with non-smokers.
smokers (Bohm et al 1997), together with significant oxidative stress also being in present in smokers who consume high amounts of alcohol (PDRHealth 2005).

It has further been suggested that beta-carotene may increase lung cancer risk in smokers because of its ability to improve lung function. Thus smokers supplemented with beta-carotene may have increased lung capacity, resulting in deeper breathing of carcinogens and other oxidants. It is also suggested that beta-carotene may improve smokers’ immune responses and thus reduce the number of days they suffered from upper respiratory tract infections and enabling them to smoke more (Bendich 2004).

The suggestion that beta-carotene may have pro-oxidant effects is supported by an in vitro study showing that although cell viability and DNA integrity was not affected by beta-carotene, it was significantly and dose-dependently decreased by oxidised beta-carotene (Yeh & Hu 2001). There was a dose-dependent increase of beta-carotene cleavage products, together with increasing genotoxicity in vitro when beta-carotene was supplemented during oxidative stress induced by hypoxia/reoxygenation (Alija et al 2004, 2005). Carotenoid cleavage products have also been found to impair mitochondrial function and increase oxidative stress in vitro (Siems et al 2002, 2005), as well as produce a booster effect on phase I carcinogen-bioactivating enzymes in the rat lung (Paolini et al 1999). Beta-carotene has also been shown to be degraded by stimulated polymorphonuclear leukocytes in vitro, producing highly reactive and potentially toxic cleavage products (Sommerburg et al 2003). These pro-oxidant effects have not been conclusively demonstrated in vivo and beta-carotene at a dose of 50 mg/day for several years was not found to have pro-oxidant effects in either smokers or non-smokers, as measured by urinary excretion of F2-isoprostanes (Mayne et al 2004).

**CARDIOVASCULAR PROTECTION**

There are a number of ways in which beta-carotene may act to protect against cardiovascular disease. Free radical scavenging may prevent cellular transformations leading to atherosclerosis and protection of LDL oxidation may further act to protect against atheroma formation (Halliwell 1993). Other mechanisms proposed for the possible favourable effect of antioxidants include an increase of HDL cholesterol and the preservation of endothelial functions (Tavani & La Vecchia 1999). Patients with acute myocardial infarction (AMI) have also been shown to have reduced plasma antioxidant vitamins and enhanced lipid peroxidation upon thrombolysis, suggesting that antioxidants may reduce free radical generation processes in reperfusion injury in AMI (Levy et al 1998).

In an animal study, atherosclerosis was inhibited in rabbits fed a high-cholesterol diet supplemented with all-trans beta-carotene. In that study all-trans beta-carotene
was undetectable in LDL, although tissue levels of retinyl palmitate were increased, suggesting that any anti-atherogenic effect is separate from the resistance of LDL to oxidation and that metabolites of beta-carotene may inhibit atherosclerosis in hypercholesterolaemic rabbits, possibly via stereospecific interactions with retinoic acid receptors in the artery wall (Shaish et al 1995). A randomised, placebo-controlled trial in 149 male smokers taking 20 mg/day of beta-carotene for 14 weeks, however, found no influence on haemostatic measures, suggesting that it is unlikely that cardiovascular protection from beta-carotene is via an effect on haemostasis (Van Poppel et al 1995).

OTHER ACTIONS
An animal study found that rats supplemented with beta-carotene-rich algae had improved reproduction and body growth with a markedly lower still-birth rate, a higher litter size or rearing rate, and enhanced body growth in male offspring (Nagasawa et al 1989).

CLINICAL USE
VITAMIN A DEFICIENCY
In a series of large, double-blind, cluster randomised, placebo-controlled field trials involving as many as 44,000 Nepalese women, weekly supplementation with 42 mg of trans-beta-carotene was found to reduce the prevalence of selected illness symptoms such as loose stools, night blindness and symptoms of high fever during late pregnancy, at the time of birth and during 6 months postpartum (Christian et al 2000a). Beta-carotene was further found to reduce maternal, but not infant, mortality among smokers and non-smokers by approximately 50%, with a protective effect becoming evident after 18 months of supplementation (Christian et al 2004, West et al 1999). Beta-carotene supplementation has also been found to reduce the 5-fold increased risk of infection-related mortality in women who were night-blind because of vitamin A deficiency (Christian et al 2000b).

These studies are contrasted by one that found an association between self-reports of poor night vision and beta-carotene consumption in women involved in the Blue Mountain Eye Study in which the authors concluded that perceived poor night vision caused an increase in carrot consumption in women (Smith et al 1999).

CANCER PREVENTION
There are at least 35 observational epidemiological studies, including prospective cohort and case-controlled studies, involving smoking and non-smoking men and women from diverse regions of the world, which have consistently found a positive association between dietary or serum beta-carotene levels and reduced risk of cancer.
(Cooper et al 1999). This association, however, does not necessarily imply a causal link, because it may be an association between beta-carotene ingestion and other dietary or lifestyle factors (Peto et al 1981). Beta-carotene intake is linked to a variety of healthy dietary and lifestyle factors, as well as being highly correlated with the intake of many other protective dietary phytochemicals and nutrients (Cooper et al 1999).

The link between beta-carotene levels and cancer prevention in epidemiological studies is contrasted with the findings of two large intervention trials that reported increased lung cancer risk with synthetic beta-carotene supplementation (Heinonen et al 1994, Omenn et al 1996b).

The Alpha-Tocopherol Beta-Carotene (ATBC) Cancer Prevention Study, also known as the ‘Finnish study’, was the first large intervention trial to test the hypothesis that beta-carotene reduces the risk of lung cancer. This double-blind, placebo-controlled primary-prevention trial involved 29,133 male smokers, 50–69 years of age, who were randomised to receive daily supplementation with alpha-tocopherol (50 mg/day) alone, synthetic (all-trans) beta-carotene (20 mg/day) alone, or both. After a follow-up period of 5–8 years the results suggested that there was an unexpected 18% increase in the incidence of lung cancer with an associated 8% higher mortality among those who received beta-carotene (Heinonen et al 1994). Subgroup analysis revealed that the increased risk with beta-carotene supplementation was only greater for those who smoked at least 20 cigarettes per day, with the risk of those who smoked 5–19 cigarettes/day being no greater than the placebo group. An increased risk was also observed for those who consumed more than 11 g/day alcohol compared with those with a lower intake (Albanes et al 1996). Further analysis found no effect of beta-carotene supplementation on the risk of pancreatic cancer (Rautalahti et al 1999), colorectal cancer (Albanes et al 2000), urothelial or renal cell cancer (Virtamo et al 2000), or gastric cancer (Malila et al 2002).

The Carotene and Retinol Efficacy Trial (CARET) tested the effect of synthetic, all-trans beta-carotene (30 mg) and retinyl palmitate (25,000 IU) on the incidence of lung cancer, other cancers, and death in 18,314 participants who were at high risk for lung cancer because of a history of heavy smoking or asbestos exposure. CARET was stopped ahead of schedule in January 1996 because participants who were randomly assigned to receive the active intervention were unexpectedly found to have a 28% increase in incidence of lung cancer, a 17% increase in incidence of death and a higher rate of cardiovascular disease mortality compared with participants in the placebo group (Omenn et al 1996a). Further analysis revealed results similar to the
ATBC study, with the increased risk of lung cancer being greatest for heavy smokers and those with the highest alcohol intake, while former smokers were found to have a similar risk to those taking placebo (Ommen et al 1996a).

The finding of an increased risk of lung cancer in smokers taking beta-carotene in the ATBC and CARET studies is consistent with a number of other studies. A prospective cohort study of 59,910 French women found that self-reported supplemental use of beta-carotene was directly associated with double the risk of cancers among smokers, yet dietary beta-carotene intake was associated with less than half the risk of tobacco-related cancers among non-smokers in a statistically significant dose-dependent relationship (Touvier et al 2005). Similarly, the results of a case-control study of 362 adenoma cases and 427 polyp-free controls suggest a protective effect for colon cancer with beta-carotene in non-smokers and an adverse effect in smokers (Senesse et al 2005). Alcohol intake and cigarette smoking were also observed to modify the effect of beta-carotene supplementation on the risk of colorectal adenoma recurrence in another double-blind, placebo-controlled clinical trial involving 864 patients randomised to receive either beta-carotene (25 mg), vitamin C (1000 mg) or vitamin E (400 mg), beta-carotene with vitamins C and E, or placebo, which after 4 years found no evidence that supplementation reduced the incidence of adenomas (Greenberg et al 1994). Subgroup analysis from this study, however, found that beta-carotene supplementation was associated with a marked decrease in the risk of one or more recurrent adenomas among subjects who neither smoked cigarettes nor drank alcohol, but conferred a modest increase in the risk of recurrence among those who either smoked or drank alcohol and double the risk for those who both smoked and drank (Baron et al 2003).

The results of these studies are contrasted with those from the Physicians’ Health Study, which found no effect of beta-carotene supplementation on cancer risk in smokers or non-smokers. This RCT of 50 mg of synthetic beta-carotene given on alternate days involved 22,071 US male physicians, 11% of whom were smokers. After more than 12 years of follow-up, no overall effect on cancer incidence was evident with beta-carotene supplementation (Hennekens et al 1996) and no benefit or harm was observed for lung, prostate or colon cancer (Cook et al 2000) or for squamous cell carcinoma (Frieling et al 2000). Subgroup analysis of this study population revealed that total cancer was modestly reduced with supplementation among those aged more than 70 years, and total cancers and colon cancer was reduced in those who drank alcohol daily (Cook et al 2000). Total cancers and prostate cancer were also reduced in those in the highest BMI quartile (Cook et al 2000) and those with low baseline beta-carotene levels (Cook et al 1999), while those
with high baseline levels had a non-significant increased risk of prostate cancer with beta-carotene supplementation (Cook et al 1999).

Similar to the results of the Physicians’ Health Study the results of the Women’s Health Study, which involved 39,876 women supplemented with 50 mg of beta-carotene on alternate days for 2 years, found no benefit or harm from beta-carotene supplementation on the incidence of cancer or cardiovascular disease in apparently healthy women, with no benefit or harm also being observed for the 13% of women who were smokers at baseline (Lee et al 1999).

In contrast to these results, a RCT performed on a poorly nourished population found a lower cancer incidence with beta-carotene supplementation. This study involved 29,584 adults aged between 40 and 69 years from Linxian County, China, which has one of the world’s highest rates of oesophageal/gastric cardia cancer and a persistently low intake of several micronutrients. In this study people were randomised to receive retinol and zinc, riboflavin and niacin, vitamin C and molybdenum, or beta-carotene, vitamin E, and selenium at doses that ranged from 1- to 2-fold the US RDI for a period of 6 years. Results revealed a significantly lower total mortality among those receiving supplementation with beta-carotene, vitamin E, and selenium, mainly attributable to lower cancer rates, especially stomach cancer (Blot et al 1993).

**Possible reasons for the mixed results** The mixed results from the beta-carotene intervention studies have created significant debate. The results of a review of carotenoid research by the International Agency for Research on Cancer suggest there is a lack of cancer-preventive activity for beta-carotene when it is used as a supplement at high doses (Vainio & Rautalahti 1998). This is supported by a more recent study that examined the relationship between dietary beta-carotene and lung cancer using pooled data from seven cohort studies that involved 399,765 participants and 3155 lung cancer cases. This study found that dietary beta-carotene intake was not associated with increased or decreased lung cancer risk in never, past, or current smokers (Mannisto et al 2004).

The mixed results from beta-carotene intervention studies may also be a reflection of a difference between natural and synthetic beta-carotene, as the negative intervention studies have all used synthetic rather than natural beta-carotene. These studies, however, do provide consistent evidence for a link between dietary and serum beta-carotene levels and reduced cancer risk. Even in the studies that found an adverse effect of beta-carotene supplementation, study participants with the highest intake and serum concentrations of beta-carotene at baseline developed fewer subsequent lung cancers, regardless of their intervention assignment (Albanes 1999, Holick et al 2002). Therefore, although monotherapy with synthetic beta-carotene is
no longer generally recommended, there continues to be a consistent call for an increased consumption of beta-carotene-containing foods to assist in prevention of cancer (Mayne 1996, Pryor et al 2000).

**Oral leucoplaia** Beta-carotene consumption has been found to be inversely associated with precancerous lesions of the oral cavity in tobacco users (Gupta et al 1999) and it is suggested that there is a significant role for antioxidant nutrients in preventing oral cancer (Garewal & Schantz 1995). This is supported by the findings of multiple clinical trials in which beta-carotene and vitamin E have been shown to produce regression of oral leucoplaia, a premalignant lesion for oral cancer (Garewal 1994).

In a more recent, double-blind, randomised controlled trial involving 160 people, 360 mg/week of beta-carotene for 12 months was found to induce regression in oral precancerous lesions with half of the responders relapsing after ceasing supplementation. Similarly, another multicentre, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial found improvement in dysplasia with 60 mg/day of beta-carotene for 6 months (Garewal et al 1999).

These studies are contrasted with a subgroup analysis involving 409 white male cigarette smokers from the ATBC Study that suggested that beta-carotene supplementation does not play an essential role in preventing oral mucosal changes in smokers (Liede et al 1998).

**CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE**
Epidemiological studies support the idea that a diet rich in high carotenoid containing foods is associated with a reduced risk of heart disease (Kritchevsky 1999). A review of observational and intervention studies on beta-carotene and the risk of coronary heart disease found that seven cohort studies (Gaziano et al 1995b, Gey et al 1993, Knekt et al 1994, Manson et al 1991, Morris et al 1994, Rimm et al 1993, Street et al 1994) reported relative risks between 0.27 and 0.78 for high serum beta-carotene levels or high dietary intake and that this was supported by case-control studies (Bobak et al 1998, Bolton-Smith et al 1992, Kardinaal et al 1993, Torun et al 1994, Tavani et al 1997) that reported odds ratios between 0.37 and 0.71, with a possible stronger protection for current smokers (Tavani & La Vecchia 1999). These results contrast with those of four more recent cohort studies (Knekt et al 1994, Kushi et al 1996, Pandey et al 1995, Todd et al 1995) and five large RCTs (Buring et al 1996, Hennekens et al 1996a, Lee et al 1999, Redlich et al 1999, Vlot et al 1999) that have not reported any significant prevention of cardiovascular disease with beta-carotene supplementation.
The final results of the Physicians’ Health Study (see Cancer Prevention above) indicated that beta-carotene supplementation had no significant benefit or harm on cancer or cardiovascular disease during more than 12 years of treatment (Hennekens et al 1996). Similarly, the results of the Women’s Health Study, which involved 39,876 women aged 45 years or older, found that beta-carotene supplementation of 50 mg on alternate days did not influence cardiovascular disease after 2 years of supplementation and 2 years of further follow-up. Subgroup analysis revealed an apparent benefit of beta-carotene supplementation on subsequent vascular events among 333 men with prior angina or revascularisation (Christen et al 2000).

In contrast, analysis of the data from the ATBC cancer prevention study, which involved 23,144 male smokers, found that beta-carotene supplementation slightly increased the risk of angina (Rapola et al 1996) and intracerebral haemorrhage while having no overall effect on the risk of stroke (Leppala et al 2000a,b), abdominal aortic aneurysm (Tornwall et al 2001), or symptoms and progression of intermittent claudication (Tornwall et al 1999). Beta-carotene, however, was found to decrease the risk of cerebral infarction modestly among a subgroup with greater alcohol consumption (Leppala et al 2000a,b). In a 6-year post-intervention follow-up study, beta-carotene was found to increase the risk of first-ever myocardial infarction while continuing to have no overall effect on the incidence of stroke (Tornwall et al 2004). An analysis of 52 men from the CARET Study concluded that there was no significant effect on total, HDL- or LDL-cholesterol levels that could account for the observed increase risk of cardiovascular disease observed in this study (Redlich et al 1999).

A pooled analysis of four randomised trials of beta-carotene therapy ranging from 20 mg to 50 mg involving 90,054 patients found beta-carotene supplementation to be associated with a significant increase in all-cause mortality and cardiovascular death in patients at risk for coronary disease, with the increased risk being strongest in smokers. A further meta-analysis of eight randomised trials involving 138,113 patients found that supplementation with 15–50 mg of beta-carotene was associated with a small but significant increase in all-cause mortality and a slight increase in cardiovascular death (Vivekananthan et al 2003).

The apparent discrepancy between the findings of observational and intervention studies may be due to several factors, including the length and nature of the intervention (Tavani & La Vecchia 1999). For example the intervention trials involved supplementation with synthetic beta-carotene in isolation or with other single nutrients, whereas the observational studies involved the consumption of beta-carotene-rich foods containing a range of additional antioxidant vitamins, phytonutrients and micronutrients.
PHOTOPROTECTION

Excessive exposure to solar radiation, especially UVA (320–400 nm) and UVB (290–320 nm), may induce UV-carcinogenesis and erythema in the skin (Lee et al 2000). There have been a number of controlled clinical trials that have demonstrated that supplementation with beta-carotene alone, or in combination with other antioxidants, can reduce UV-induced erythema (Gollnick et al 1996, Heinrich et al 1998, 2003, Lee et al 2000, Mathews-Roth et al 1972, Sies & Stahl 2004, Stahl et al 2000). These studies suggest that at least 8–10 weeks of supplementation are required before protection against erythema becomes evident and that doses of at least 24 mg/day of beta-carotene are required (Sies & Stahl 2004).

In uncontrolled studies, a protective effect against UV-induced erythema was observed after supplementation with 180 mg of beta-carotene for 10 weeks (Mathews-Roth et al 1972) and 50 mg for 6 weeks (Heinrich et al 1998). These results are supported by more rigorous studies that have shown photoprotective activity with smaller doses of beta-carotene. A RCT involving supplementation with 30 mg of natural beta-carotene for 8 weeks, with the dose increasing to 60 mg for a further 8 weeks and then to 90 mg for another 8 weeks, found a dose-dependent reduction in UVA- and UVB-induced erythema (Lee et al 2000). In another RCT, supplementation for 12 weeks with 24 mg/day of natural beta-carotene or a natural carotenoid mix supplying similar amounts of beta-carotene, lutein and lycopene also significantly reduced UV-induced erythema (Heinrich et al 2003). Similarly, a randomised trial found that supplementation with 25 mg of natural algal beta-carotene for 12 weeks significantly reduced UV-induced erythema, with the effect enhanced by the addition of alpha-tocopherol (Stahl et al 2000). Yet another trial suggests that the photoprotective action of beta-carotene enhances the action of topical sunscreens. In this randomised, placebo-controlled, double-blind study of 20 healthy young females, 30 mg/day beta-carotene for 10 weeks reduced UV induced erythema and protected against UV-induced drop in serum beta-carotene levels and UV-induced reduction in Langerhans cells, with beta-carotene combined with topical sunscreens being more effective than sunscreen cream alone (Gollnick et al 1996). Another controlled study found a protective effect against photo-immunosuppression, with 30 mg/day of beta-carotene for 4 weeks protecting against UV-induced suppression of delayed-type hypersensitivity in young men (Fuller et al 1992).

It has been suggested that the duration of supplementation may be more important than the dose, as the studies that have not demonstrated significant reduction in UV-induced erythema have all involved supplementation of relatively short duration (Lee et al 2000). No photoprotective effects of beta-carotene were
observed with supplementation with 90 mg for 3 weeks (Garmyn et al 1995), 150 mg/day for 4 weeks (Wolf et al 1988) or 15 mg/day for 8 weeks (McArdle et al 2004).

It has also been suggested that a combination of antioxidants may be more effective than the sum of the separate components because the skin’s antioxidant defence system appears to involve an intricate connection between individual antioxidants (Steenhoorn & Beijersbergen van Henegouwen 1997). This is supported by a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled study that found that short-term (2-week) supplementation with an anti-oxidative combination containing beta-carotene and lycopene, as well as vitamins C and E, selenium and proanthocyanidins, significantly decreases the UV-induced expression of matrix metallo-proteinases, with a non-statistically significant trend towards reduced minimal erythema dose (Greul et al 2002).

Although beta-carotene supplementation may provide some degree of protection against sunburn, the effect is modest and there is still some debate about its use for routine photoprotection (Biesalski & Obermueller-Jevic 2001, Fuchs 1998). However, beta-carotene is likely to be clinically useful in providing photoprotection for people with specific photosensitivity. High doses (180 mg/day, up to 300 mg/day) have been shown to reduce photosensitivity in people with the genetic condition ‘erythropoietic protoporphyria’ in a number of case series (Mathews-Roth et al 1970, 1974, Thomsen et al 1979), and the results of a double-blind RCT suggest that beta-carotene may be useful in conjunction with canthaxanthin in preventing polymorphous light eruptions (Suhonen & Plosila 1981).

The ability of beta-carotene to protect against UV-induced erythema and photosensitivity does not appear to extend to protecting against non-melanotic skin cancer. In a randomised placebo-controlled trial involving 1805 subjects with recent non-melanotic skin cancer, daily supplementation with 50 mg beta-carotene for 5 years had no effect on the incidence of new or recurring non-melanotic skin cancers, with similar results for those with low baseline beta-carotene levels and smokers (Greenberg et al 1990). Similarly, in another randomised, placebo-controlled trial of 1621 adults aged 25–74 years daily supplementation with 30 mg beta-carotene did not reduce the development of solar keratoses over the 3-year study period (Darlington et al 2003, Green et al 1999). These results are supported by an analysis of data from the Physicians’ Health Study that found no effect of 12 years of beta-carotene supplementation on the incidence of non-melanotic skin cancer (Frieling et al 2000), as well as a subgroup analysis from this study that found no effect on non-melanotic skin cancer in men with low baseline plasma beta-carotene levels.
levels (Schaumberg et al 2004). In a further randomised, placebo-controlled study of 62 patients with numerous atypical naevi, 25 mg of beta-carotene given twice daily for 36 months resulted in a non-significant reduction in newly developed naevi, with a significant reduction observed for the lower arm and feet but not for 10 other body sites (Bayerl et al 2003).

**OXIDATIVE STRESS**

There are a number of human studies that suggest that supplementation with beta-carotene can reduce the oxidative stress associated with different pathological conditions or stressors such as intense exercise or radiation. Supplementation with beta-carotene (30 mg/day) and vitamin E (500 mg/day) for 90 days has been found to enhance the antioxidant enzyme activity of superoxide dismutase and catalase in the neutrophils of sportsmen (Tauler et al 2002). Similarly, in a study of 13 professional basketball players, 35 days of antioxidant supplementation with 600 mg alpha-tocopherol, 1000 mg ascorbic acid and 32 mg beta-carotene led to a significant decrease in plasma lipid peroxides, with a significant decrease of lactate dehydrogenase serum activity and a non-significant increase in the anabolic/catabolic balance being observed during a 24-hour recuperation time after exercise (Schroder et al 2001).

The results of an Israeli study of 709 children exposed to radiation from the Chernobyl accident suggest that natural algae-derived beta-carotene may act as an in vivo lipophilic antioxidant or radioprotector. This study found that exposed children had increased susceptibility to lipid oxidation and that supplementation with 40 mg of natural 9-cis and all-trans equal isomer mixture beta-carotene twice daily for a period of 3 months reduced plasma markers of lipid oxidation (Ben-Amotz et al 1998).

A double-blind study has also found that beta-carotene supplementation reduced the severity, but not the incidence, of post-endoscopy pancreatitis which is thought to be mediated by oxidative stress (Lavy et al 2004). A further small, controlled trial involving 15 patients with RA found that 3 weeks of supplementation with natural beta-carotene resulted in a significant increase in plasma antioxidants, but did not change indicators of disease (Kacsur et al 2002).

Further evidence for beta-carotene’s ability to reduce oxidative stress comes from a study of conditioning therapy preceding bone marrow transplantation. This therapy consists of high-dose chemotherapy and total body irradiation and has acute and delayed toxic effects that are considered to be due to peroxidation processes and exhaustion of antioxidants. Supplementation with 45 mg beta-carotene, 825 mg alpha-tocopherol and 450 mg ascorbic acid daily for 3 weeks, however, was found to
increase serum antioxidant levels and reduce the post-conditioning rise in plasma lipid hydroperoxides in patients receiving the conditioning therapy prior to transplantation (Clemens et al 1997). Similarly, a combined antioxidant supplement increased plasma antioxidant levels and antioxidative enzyme activities, and lowered LDL lipid peroxides in male hyperlipidaemic smokers, although higher doses of the supplement did not have an additive effect (Chao et al 2002).

These studies are contrasted by two small studies that showed no change in oxidative stress in healthy subjects after beta-carotene supplementation. Normal concentrations of carotenoids in plasma and tissues were not correlated with clinical markers of antioxidant and oxidative stress in a study of 79 healthy volunteers (Borel et al 1998), and a placebo-controlled, single-blind study found that daily supplementation with 15 mg of beta-carotene for 3 months did not significantly improve biomarkers of oxidative stress in healthy males (Hininger et al 2001).

**IMMUNE FUNCTION**

In a study of 652 non-institutionalised elderly people, the incidence of acute respiratory infections was reduced for those with the highest plasma levels, suggesting that beta-carotene may improve the immune response and result in decreased risk of infectious diseases (van der Horst-Graat et al 2004).

These findings are contrasted by analyses of male smokers who participated in the ATBC study, which found that supplementation with synthetic beta-carotene had no overall effect on the risk of hospital-treated pneumonia or the incidence of the common cold (Hemila et al 2002, 2004), but instead increased the risk of colds in subjects carrying out heavy exercise at leisure but not at work (Hemila et al 2003).

**ASTHMA AND CHRONIC OBSTRUCTIVE PULMONARY DISEASE**

Studies have shown increased oxidative stress in patients with chronic airflow limitation (Ochs-Balcom et al 2005) and accumulating evidence suggests that dietary antioxidant vitamins are positively associated with lung function (Schunemann et al 2001), with serum beta-carotene levels being associated with improved FEV₁ (Grievink et al 2000). Thus it has been suggested that antioxidant protection is important for protecting the lungs against high oxygen levels and that oxidative stress may contribute to respiratory pathology such as asthma (Rahman et al 2006, Wood et al 2003).

This is supported by the finding of a significant association between serum vitamin C, vitamin E, beta-cryptoxanthin, lutein/zeaxanthin, beta-carotene, and retinol with FEV₁ (Schunemann et al 2001), together with a study involving a subset from the CARET study of 816 asbestos-exposed men with a high rate of current and former...
cigarette smoking, which found that serum beta-carotene was associated with a significant improvement in FEV₁ and FVC (Chuwers et al 1997).

Studies on the correlation between serum beta-carotene levels and asthma, however, have produced mixed results. One small study of 15 asthmatic subjects and 16 healthy controls found that despite similar dietary intake, whole blood levels of total carotenoids, including beta-carotene, lycopene, lutein, beta-cryptoxanthin and alpha-carotene, were significantly lower in the asthmatics with no differences in plasma or sputum carotenoid levels (Wood et al 2005). Another small study found that beta-carotene, alpha-tocopherol and ascorbic acid were significantly lower in asthmatics at remission compared to controls and that beta-carotene was significantly lower and lipid peroxidation products significantly higher during attacks than periods of remission (Kalayci et al 2000). A further small study found that increased dietary consumption of beta-carotene was associated with better QOL (Moreira et al 2004).

These results are supported by an analysis of 7505 youths (4–16 years) from the Third National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey, which found that increased serum beta-carotene was associated with reduced asthma prevalence (Rubin et al 2004). Another analysis involving 4093 children from the same study, 9.7% of whom reported a diagnosis of asthma, found that asthma diagnosis was associated with lower levels of serum beta-carotene, vitamin C, alpha-carotene and beta-cryptoxanthin (Harik-Khan et al 2004).

In contrast to these findings, a much larger study involving 771 persons with self-reported asthma, 352 persons with former asthma and 15,418 persons without asthma, asthma status was not significantly associated with serum antioxidant concentrations (Ford et al 2004). Similarly, in a study of 15 mild asthmatics and 15 age-and sex-matched controls, oxidative stress was found to be increased in the asthmatics, with no difference in plasma dietary antioxidant vitamins (Wood et al 2000).

Although the role of antioxidant vitamins in prevention and/or treatment of asthma remains to be determined (Kalayci et al 2000), the results of one intervention study suggest that there may be a role for beta-carotene in exercise-induced asthma. This randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial, involving 38 subjects with proven exercise-induced asthma, found that supplementation with 64 mg/day of natural algal beta-carotene for 1 week protected against post-exercise reduction in FEV₁ (Neuman et al 1999).
**CYSTIC FIBROSIS**

Cystic fibrosis (CF) is characterised by exocrine pancreatic insufficiency and reduced absorption of fat-soluble vitamins, as well as chronic lung inflammation and an associated increased oxygen free radical generation. Patients with CF have been found to have lower levels of beta-carotene and it has been suggested that they would benefit from beta-carotene supplementation (Cobanoglu et al 2002, Walkowiak et al 2004). This suggestion is supported by a study of 52 patients with CF that found a statistically significant correlation between serum beta-carotene and the clinical course of the disease as indicated by faecal elastase-1 and FEV₁ (Walkowiak et al 2004), together with a study showing that the plasma levels of beta-carotene and vitamin E increased and the plasma levels of TNF-alpha and malondialdehyde decreased after 6 months of beta-carotene supplementation (Cobanoglu et al 2002). This is further supported by a RCT of 24 CF patients supplemented with up to 50 mg/day beta-carotene for 12 weeks and 10 mg/day beta-carotene for a further 12 weeks, which found a significant decrease in oxidative stress, correction of total antioxidative capacity and improved pulmonary response to treatment in the supplemented group (Rust et al 2000).

**CATARACTS**

Although a high intake of beta-carotene containing foods has been associated with the prevention of cataracts, the role of supplementation is uncertain. An assessment of dietary beta-carotene intake in a subgroup of 472 non-diabetic women, aged 53–73 years, who participated in the Nurses’ Health Study found that the odds of posterior subcapsular cataracts was 72% lower in those with the highest intakes of beta-carotene who had never smoked, whereas beta-carotene intake and cataract risk were not associated in current or past smokers (Taylor et al 2002). This finding is contrasted with findings from intervention studies that have found that beta-carotene may help prevent cataracts in smokers (Christen et al 2003, 2004). Two years of beta-carotene treatment was found to have no large beneficial or harmful effect on the development of cataract in a randomised, double-masked, placebo-controlled trial of 39,876 female health professionals aged 45 years or older who participated in the Women’s Health Study, although a subgroup analysis suggests a possible beneficial effect in smokers (Christen et al 2004). Similarly, a randomised, double-masked, placebo-controlled trial of 22,071 male physicians aged 40–84 years found that supplementation with 50 mg of beta-carotene on alternate days for 12 years did not reduce the overall incidence of cataracts or cataract extraction; however, in a subgroup of smokers the risk of cataract was reduced by approximately 25% (Christen et al 2003).
In two randomised, double-masked trials involving 5390 nutritionally deprived subjects in Linxian, China, supplementation with selenium, alpha-tocopherol and beta-carotene for 5–6 years was found to significantly reduce the prevalence of nuclear but not cortical cataracts in older subjects (Sperduto et al 1993). This is contrasted with the finding that 500 mg of vitamin C, 400 IU of vitamin E and 15 mg of beta-carotene had no apparent effect on the 7-year risk of development or progression of age-related lens opacities or visual acuity loss in a relatively well-nourished older adult cohort of 4629 people aged from 55 to 80 years who participated in the Age-Related Eye Disease Study (AREDS) (Kassoff et al 2001).

**AGE-RELATED MACULA DEGENERATION**
A high intake of beta-carotene-containing foods has been associated with the prevention of ARMD and observational and experimental data suggest that carotenoid supplements may delay progression of both ARMD and vision loss. This is supported by the findings from the AREDS Study, an 11-centre, double-masked clinical trial involving 3640 participants with ARMD that found supplementation with vitamin C 500 mg, vitamin E 400 IU, beta-carotene 15 mg and zinc 80 mg for 6 years significantly reduced the development of advanced ARMD and moderate visual acuity loss (Kassoff et al 2001). Although beta-carotene and other nutrients may have been found to be beneficial for preventing ARMD, the carotenoids lutein and zeaxanthin appear to provide the most protection (see Lutein/zeaxanthin monograph).

**ERYTHROPOIETIC PROTOPORPHYRIA AND PHOTOSENSTIVITY**
Studies in bacteria, animals and humans have demonstrated that carotenoid pigments can prevent or lessen photosensitivity by endogenous photosensitisers, such as chlorophyll or porphyrins, as well as by exogenous photosensitisers (Mathews-Roth 1993) and high doses of beta-carotene (between 180 and 300 mg/day) have been used to effectively prevent or lessen photosensitivity in most patients with erythropoietic protoporphyria and in some patients with other photosensitivity diseases such as solar urticaria, hydroa aestivale, porphyria cutanea tarda, actinic reticuloid (Mathews-Roth 1986, 1987, 1990, Mathews-Roth et al 1977).

**DOSAGE RANGE**
Consumption of the recommended five or more servings of fruits and vegetables per day provides between 3 and 6 mg of beta-carotene. Supplemental intake of beta-carotene ranges from 3 to 30 mg/day, although medicinal doses to treat erythropoietic protoporphyria or prevent a reaction to sun in patients with polymorphic light eruption range from 30 to 300 mg/day (PDRHealth 2005). The dose
required to provide photoprotection is greater than 24 mg/day for more than 2 months (Sies & Stahl 2004).

To enhance absorption, supplementation should be taken with meals.

**TOXICITY**

Beta-carotene is readily converted into vitamin A when required by the body and is considered to be non-toxic, even when given in doses as high as 300 mg/day (Mathews-Roth 1990a, 1993).

A review of the literature on adverse effects of carotenoids on human and animal development suggests that beta-carotene does not have any genotoxic affects (Mathews-Roth 1988) and a toxicity study performed on rats suggests a no-observed-adverse-effect-level (NOAEL) is at a dietary level of at least 5.0% or more than 3000 mg/kg/day (Nabae et al 2005). Beta-carotene overdose is not reported in the literature.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**

At doses greater than 30 mg/day beta-carotene may cause an orange-yellow colouration of the skin (carotenodermia), which is usually seen first as yellowness of the palms and soles. This condition is harmless and reversible when intake ceases (Micozzi et al 1988). Carotenodermia is distinguished from jaundice by the absence of yellowed ocular sclerae. [For some people, this skin colouration is actually considered desirable (Mathews-Roth 1990b) and is utilised in tanning tablets to produce a natural-looking skin tan (DerMarderosian & Beutler 2002).]

At present it is unclear if there is a true link between increased lung cancer risk and long-term beta-carotene supplementation in smokers, because supplementation studies with synthetic beta-carotene have produced mixed results, with two studies finding an increased lung cancer risk with heavy smokers or those with high asbestos exposure (Group 1994, Heinonen et al 1994, Omenn et al 1996b) and other studies finding either no effect (Hennekens et al 1996, Lee et al 1999) or a protective effect (Blot et al 1993).

The association between increased lung cancer risk and beta-carotene has not been found with natural beta-carotene and there is no suggestion that heavy smokers should reduce their intake of beta-carotene rich foods. A review suggests that there is no evidence at present that consuming small amounts of supplemental beta-carotene in a multivitamin tablet at amounts that exist in foods (<6 mg) is unwise for any population (Pryor et al 2000).
SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS

DRUGS REDUCING FAT ABSORPTION (E.G. CHOLESTYRAMINE, ORLISTAT)

Drugs that reduce fat absorption, such as cholestyramine, colestipol and orlistat, may also reduce absorption of beta-carotene (PDRHealth 2005). This can be avoided by spacing the administration of these substances by at least 2 hours. Plant sterols have been found to reduce beta-carotene bioavailability by approximately 50% in normocholesterolaemic men (Richelle et al 2004).

FIBRATES

There may be a positive interaction between fibrate and natural beta-carotene, which has been found to significantly increase HDL-cholesterol levels in fibrate-treated mice and humans (Shaish et al 2006).

VALPROATE

Epileptic patients who gain weight with valproate therapy have been found to have reduced plasma concentrations of beta-carotene and other fat soluble antioxidant vitamins, which is reversible after valproate withdrawal (Verrotti et al 2004).

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS

Heavy smokers should be advised not to take synthetic beta-carotene supplements for long periods of time.

PREGNANCY USE

Beta-carotene crosses the placenta. Adequate and well-controlled studies in humans have not been documented. No problems with pregnancy have been documented in women taking up to 30 milligrams of beta-carotene daily (Micromedex 2003).

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING

- Beta-carotene is an antioxidant found in carrots and other fruit and vegetables, as well as in seaweed and algae. Together with other carotenoids, it is an effective marker for a diet rich in fruits and vegetables.
- Beta-carotene is fat soluble and should be consumed with meals.
- Although beta-carotene is converted into vitamin A in the body, unlike vitamin A it is considered non-toxic even in large doses.
- When supplementing with beta-carotene it is preferable to use supplements containing natural beta-carotene from the algae Dunaliella salina or palm oil rather than synthetic beta-carotene.
- Beta-carotene is a powerful pigment that contributes to the normal yellow component of skin and increased beta-carotene intake may protect from the effects of excessive exposure to sunlight and the symptoms of sunburn.
• Consumption of beta-carotene-rich food is associated with reduced risk of cancers, heart disease and eye disease; however, these benefits have not been found in large studies that have used synthetic beta-carotene with two studies finding an increase in lung cancer in heavy smokers and asbestos workers taking large doses of synthetic beta-carotene.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What will this supplement do for me?
Beta-carotene supplementation will ensure you maintain adequate vitamin A levels, as well as possibly assist in preventing cancer and cardiovascular disease, help maintain a healthy immune system, prevent sunburn and photoageing of the skin, assist with asthma, and deal with oxidative stress.

When will it start to work?
It may take up to 2–3 months to see a benefit with UV protection, whereas other benefits may be observable over many years.

Are there any safety issues?
Beta-carotene is considered non-toxic. Large doses may cause a yellowing of the skin, but this is harmless and reversible.

REFERENCES


Bilberry

Historical note  Bilberries have been used as a food for many centuries and are valued for their taste and high nutritional content. They are still commonly used to make jams, pies, syrups and beverages. Medicinally, the berries have been used internally to treat diarrhoea and haemorrhoids and externally for inflammation of the mouth and mucous membranes as they have significant astringent activity. According to folklore, World War II British Royal Air Force pilots noticed that their night vision seemed to improve after consuming bilberries or bilberry preserves, sparking a renewed interest in the medicinal properties of the fruits.

COMMON NAME
Bilberry

OTHER NAMES
Baies de myrtille, blaubeeren, dwarf bilberry, European bilberry, European blueberries, huckleberry, hurtleberry, heidelbeeren, petit myrte, whortleberry, wine berry

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Vaccinium myrtillus (family Ericaceae)

PLANT PARTS USED
Dried ripe fruit or fresh fruit

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
The fruit contains catechin tannins (up to 10%), invert sugar, fruit acids, flavonol glycosides including astragalin, hyperoside, isoquercitrin and quercitrin, phenolic acids, pectins, triterpenes, and polyphenols such as anthocyanosides. The volatile oil includes methyl salicylate, farnesol, vanillin, myristicin and citronellol. Bilberry also contains vitamin C and chromium, which are suspected of playing a role in its pharmacological activities.

Some of the anthocyanosides are responsible for the deep blue pigment of the fruit (Kahkonen et al 2001). As the fruit ripens, the anthocyanoside content increases. Some commercially available extracts are standardised to anthocyanoside content.
Clinical note — Tannins
Tannins are polyphenolic compounds that have an affinity for proteins. They also complex with alkaloids and therefore should not be mixed with alkaloid-containing herbs.

Anthocyanosides are condensed tannins. When they come into contact with mucous membranes they have an astringent action, making the mucosa less permeable. This activity has been used therapeutically in a variety of ways.

Taken internally, herbs with a high tannin content such as bilberry have been used to treat diarrhoea; applied externally, a styptic action occurs that reduces blood loss.

MAIN ACTIONS
The pharmacological actions of bilberry have not been significantly investigated in clinical studies, so information is generally derived from in vitro and animal studies or based on known information about key constituents found within the herb. Most of the research undertaken to understand the pharmacology of the herb has focused on the polyphenol content.

ANTIOXIDANT
Anthocyanosides are the main phenolic constituents in bilberry and have well established antioxidant activity (Kahkonen et al 2001, Roy et al 2002).

Reduces ischaemic reperfusion injury  Bilberry anthocyanosides have been shown to improve ischaemia damage, preserve capillary perfusion, inhibit increased permeability of reperfusion and save arteriolar tone in an animal model of ischaemic reperfusion injury (Bertuglia et al 1995).

Ophthalmic conditions  Bilberry’s significant antioxidant activity is believed to be responsible for much of its activity in the eye, in particular, prevention of cataract.

Clinical note — Cataract
Growing evidence suggests that senile cataract development may in part be linked to the endogenous generation of free radical molecules, such as superoxide derived from oxygen and light in the aqueous humour and lens (Varma & Richards 1988, Varma et al 1982, 1994). As such, substances with significant antioxidant activity such as anthocyanins, vitamin C and vitamin E have been investigated as potential prophylactic treatments.

ANTI-INFLAMMATORY AND ANTI-OEDEMA ACTIVITY
Biochemical and histochemical data show that the anthocyanins decrease vascular permeability and alter capillary wall dynamics by increasing the endothelium barrier

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
effect by stabilising membrane phospholipids, and by increasing synthesis of mucopolysaccharides of the connective ground substance and thus restoring the altered pericapillary sheath (Mian et al 1977).

These effects have been demonstrated in animal models for both oral administra-
tion and topical application of bilberry anthocyanins (1% alcoholic solution) and seen to be stronger and longer lasting than those of rutin (Lietti et al 1976).

**ASTRINGENT**
The astringent properties of bilberry are well established and attributed to its significant tannin content.

**IMPROVES VISUAL FUNCTION**
Epidemiological investigations have indicated that moderate consumption of anthocyanin-containing herbs such as bilberry extract is associated with an improvement of visual function (Hou 2003). Several animal studies suggest a positive effect on dark adaptation (Canter & Ernst 2004). More specifically, bilberry enhances regeneration of rhodopsin in the retina, which is essential for optimal functioning of the rods and therefore light adaptation and night vision (Blumenthal et al 2000). Other possible mechanisms of action in the eye include accelerated modulation of retinal enzyme activity and improved microcirculation (Canter & Ernst 2004).

**GASTROPROTECTIVE ACTIVITY**
In vitro results have found that a specific anthocyanin found in bilberry causes an increase in the efficiency of the gastric mucosal barrier (Cristoni et al 1989). When administered orally in an animal model it was shown to retard the development of gastric ulcers induced by stress, NSAIDs, ethanol, reserpine and histamine (Magistretti et al 1988).

**HYPOGLYCAEMIC ACTIVITY**
A dried hydroalcoholic extract of bilberry leaf administered orally to streptozotocin-diabetic rats for 4 days decreased plasma glucose levels by 26% (Cignarella et al 1996).

**REDUCES TRIGLYCERIDE LEVELS**
A dried hydro-alcoholic extract of bilberry leaf administered orally to streptozotocin-diabetic rats for 4 days decreased plasma triglyceride levels by 39% (Cignarelli et al 1996).

**OTHER ACTIONS**
Preliminary research has found that components of the hexane/chloroform fraction of bilberry exhibits anticarcinogenic activity (Bomser et al 1996). More recently,
antiangiogenic activity has also been identified (Roy et al 2002). Bilberry extract inhibits platelet aggregation according to ex vivo tests (Pulliero et al 1989).

**CLINICAL USE**
Bilberry extracts are popular in Europe and have been investigated in numerous clinical trials, primarily in non-English speaking European countries. As a result, many research papers have been published in other languages. To provide a more complete description of the evidence available, secondary sources have been used when necessary.

**NON-SPECIFIC ACUTE DIARRHOEA**
The considerable astringent activity of bilberry provides a theoretical basis for its use in non-specific acute diarrhoea. Commission E approved crude fruit preparations for this indication (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**MILD INFLAMMATION OF THE MOUTH AND THROAT**
The considerable astringent, anti-inflammatory and anti-oedema activity of bilberry provides a theoretical basis for its use as a topical application in these indications. Commission E approved for this indication (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**HAEMORRHOIDS, VARICOSE VEINS, VENOUS INSUFFICIENCY**
The considerable astringent, anti-inflammatory and anti-oedema activity of bilberry provides a theoretical basis for its use in these conditions. Several human case series and a single-blind trial report significant improvements in lower extremity discomfort and oedema related to chronic venous insufficiency; however, further research is required to confirm these findings (Ulbricht & Basch 2005).

**PREGNANCY**
A bilberry product (Myrtocyan®) was taken at a dose of 320 mg daily in the last trimester by women aged 24–37 years with pregnancy-induced lower extremity oedema and found to significantly improve symptoms of burning and itching, heaviness, pain, diurnal and nocturnal leg cramps, oedema and capillary fragility (Ghiringhelli et al 1978 and reported in Blumenthal 2003).

**OPHTHALMIC CONDITIONS**
Bilberry preparations have been used to improve poor night vision, light adaptation and photophobia, myopia and to prevent or retard diabetic retinopathy, macular degeneration and cataracts. Primarily the collagen-enhancing and antioxidant activities of bilberry provide a theoretical basis for these indications.

**Visual acuity and light adaptation** A systemic review of 12 placebo-controlled trials (5 RCTs and 7 placebo-controlled non-randomised trials) concluded that the

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
anthocyanosides from *Vaccinium myrtillus* were not effective for improving night vision; however, the authors point out that the potential therapeutic role of these constituents should not yet be dismissed because confounding factors and supportive auxiliary evidence exists (Canter & Ernst 2004). Four of the RCTs showed no positive effects for *V. myrtillus* anthocyanosides on outcome measures relevant to vision in reduced light whereas the fifth RCT and all seven non-randomised trials reported positive effects on outcome measures relevant to night vision. Seventeen other studies were located by Canter and Ernst but not included in the analysis because they did not contain a placebo group. Sixteen of those studies produced positive results on measures relevant to night vision in either healthy subjects or patients with a range of visual disorders and only one was negative.

The authors point out several confounding factors, in particular the wide range of doses, possible geographical variations in extract composition, choice of subject (generally healthy) and methods used to obtain and interpret electroretinograms, which varied between older and newer studies. For example, two of the negative RCTs tested the lowest dose levels of any of the trials: 36 mg daily for acute treatment and ≤48 mg for short-term treatment.

A significant improvement in visual performance has been demonstrated for bilberry extract in people with retinitis pigmentosa and hemeralopia (inability to see distinctly in bright light), suggesting that effects may be more pronounced in cases of impaired visual acuity (Gloria & Peria 1966, Junemann 1967).

**Glaucoma** In one small study of eight patients, a single oral dose of 200 mg bilberry anthocyanosides was shown to improve glaucoma, as assessed by electroretinography (Caselli 1985).

**Retinopathy** In Europe, bilberry anthocyanoside extracts are recognised as highly effective in preventing or treating diabetic retinopathy, with clinical research supporting its use (Lietti et al 1976, Orsucci et al 1983, Perossini 1987, Scharrer & Ober 1981).

One double-blind study involving 40 patients with diabetic and/or hypertensive retinopathy showed that a dose of bilberry extract (Tegens™) equivalent to 160 mg anthocyanosides taken twice daily for 1 month significantly improved ophthalmoscopy parameters and angiographic parameters (Perossini 1987). Another study of 31 subjects with different forms of retinopathy (diabetic retinopathy, retinitis pigmentosa, macular degeneration or haemorrhage due to anticoagulant use) found that treatment with bilberry extract (Difarel 100™) reduced vascular permeability and the tendency to haemorrhage in all patients (Scharrer & Ober 1981). A small open study by Orsucci et al of 10 subjects with diabetic retinopathy found that 6 months of
treatment with bilberry extract (Tegens™) equivalent to 240 mg anthocyanosides daily resulted in reduction or disappearance of haemorrhages and improvement in the retinal picture (Orsucci et al 1983 and reported in Blumenthal 2003).

**Myopia** Uncontrolled trials report a beneficial effect of the extract on patients with myopia (Canter & Ernst 2004).

**Cataract** In practice, bilberry has been recommended to delay cataract progression. A case series of 50 elderly subjects with early-stage cataract found that a combination of anthocyanosides extracted from bilberry and vitamin E slowed progression of lens opacities by 97% (Ulbricht & Basch 2005). Placebo-controlled trials are now required to confirm these results.

**OTHER USES** Traditionally, bilberry has been used to treat dysentery, diabetes, gastrointestinal inflammatory conditions, vaginal discharges, haemorrhoids, and to stop lactation. Externally, bilberry preparations have been used to treat wounds, ulcers and skin infections. More recently, other uses include treatment for bleeding gums, nose bleeds, spider veins, capillary fragility, peptic ulcers, Raynaud’s syndrome and venous insufficiency (such as claudication).

Additionally, a double-blind placebo-controlled study confirmed that bilberry improves peripheral vascular disorders by improving subjective symptoms after 30 days’ treatment (Mills & Bone 2000).

**DOSAGE RANGE**

**INTERNAL**
- Fluid extract (1:1) standardised to provide 50–120 mg daily of anthocyanins: 6–12 mL/day taken in three divided doses.
- Oral dose forms: bilberry extracts providing 50–288 mg of anthocyanins daily.
- Decoction of dried herb: 5–10 gm of crushed, dried fruit in 150 mL of cold water, which is then boiled for up to 10 minutes and strained while hot. For symptomatic treatment of diarrhoea, drink the cold decoction several times daily.
- Gargle: Make a 10% decoction using the above preparation.
- Fresh fruit: 20–50 g daily.

**EXTERNAL**
- 5–10 g crushed dried fruit in 150 mL of cold water, brought to the boil for 10 minutes then strained while hot to make a decoction for local application.
TOXICITY
Rats administered high doses of up to 400 mg/kg showed no adverse effects (Murray 1995).

ADVERSE REACTIONS
No adverse effects were reported in a systematic review of 12 placebo-controlled trials of *V. myrtillus* anthocyanosides (Canter & Ernst 2004). According to the same authors, a post-marketing surveillance study of 2295 people identified that 4% experienced side-effects related to the skin, nervous system or gastrointestinal tract.

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
Controlled studies are not available, therefore interactions are theoretical and based on evidence of pharmacological activity with uncertain clinical significance.

ANTICOAGULANT AND ANTIPLATELET DRUGS
A theoretical risk exists that high doses (>170 mg anthocyanidins) may increase bleeding risk.

IRON
Reduced absorption is theoretically possible if taken at the same time because of the tannin content of the herb — separate doses by 2 hours.

HYPOGLYCAEMIC AGENTS
Additive effects theoretically possible with leaf preparations — observe patient.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
High doses (>170 mg anthocyanidins) should be use with caution by people with haemorrhagic disorders.

PREGNANCY USE
A study investigating bilberry extract for pregnancy-induced lower extremity oedema reported no adverse effects (Ulbricht & Basch 2005) — likely to be safe when berry is consumed in dietary amounts.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Bilberry has antioxidant, anti-inflammatory and astringent actions and has considerable polyphenol content.
- Bilberry extract is a popular treatment in Europe for preventing and treating retinopathy. It is also used to treat several other ophthalmic conditions such as poor night vision, poor light adaptation, and sensitivity to glare, photophobia, glaucoma, myopia and cataract.
• Some research also suggests that it is useful in venous insufficiency, peripheral vascular disorders (such as Raynaud’s syndrome) and capillary fragility.
• Approved by Commission E for the treatment of non-specific, acute diarrhoea and mild inflammatory conditions of the mouth and throat.
• Preliminary evidence suggests it may reduce serum glucose levels and triglycerides in diabetes and prevent peptic ulcer formation due to NSAIDs or stress; however, clinical research is still required to confirm these effects.
• In vitro investigation has identified anticarcinogenic activity.

**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

**What will this herb do for me?**
Bilberry is used to relieve the symptoms of mild diarrhoea and improve poor night vision, sensitivity to glare, photophobia, peptic ulcers, varicose veins, venous insufficiency and haemorrhoids when taken internally. It is also used as a mouthwash, gargle or paint for mild inflammation of the mouth or throat, such as gingivitis or pharyngitis.

**When will it start to work?**
This depends on the indication. Improvements in night vision, photophobia and glare sensitivity have been reported within 2–4 weeks of use in some people whereas preventive effects are likely to require long-term use. In peripheral vascular diseases, 30 days’ treatment may be required before effects are noticed.

**Are there any safety issues?**
Considered a safe herb overall, bilberry can theoretically reduce blood glucose levels in people with diabetes and so should be used carefully in these patients. At very high doses it may interact with warfarin and antiplatelet drugs.

**REFERENCES**


Bitter melon

Historical note  Bitter melon is used as a traditional medicine wherever it is found. It has a long history of use in Asia, Africa and Latin America and has been widely acclaimed as an important remedy for diabetes mellitus since ancient times. The term *momordica* means ‘to bite’ and refers to the jagged edges of the leaf, which appear as if bitten. Bitter melon has been used to treat fevers, viral infections and as an emmenagogue in reproductive health. It has also been used as a treatment for gastrointestinal complaints, worms, constipation, headaches, skin conditions and diabetes. The fruit is used topically for wound healing. The plant has also been used in traditional ceremonies and considered a powerful charm which is worn as a necklace, wrist or ankle bracelet or crown (Beloin et al 2005). The ritual ceremonial importance of the plant is accompanied by its considerable reputation as a medicinal plant for the treatment of disease.

OTHER NAMES
African cucumber, balsam pear, bitter gourd, kakara, karela, ku gua, sushavi, wild cucumber

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
*Momordica charantia* (family Curcubitaceae)

PLANT PARTS USED
Fruit, leaves

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
It contains several biologically active constituents that include glycosides (e.g. momordicins I and II), steroidal saponins (e.g. charantins), alkaloids, fixed oils and proteins (e.g. MAP30: *Momordica* anti-HIV protein; molecular weight, 30 kD). The immature fruits are a good source of vitamin C and also provide vitamin A, phosphorus, and iron (Grover & Yadav 2004).

MAIN ACTIONS
Bitter melon has been the subject of countless studies and has demonstrated significant pharmacological activity in a variety of experimental models.
**ANTIDIABETIC**


A systematic study comparing the hypoglycaemic activity of three extracts in vivo found that the methanolic extract of dried whole fruits and seeds reduced blood glucose by 49% at the end of the first week, which became 39% by week 5; the aqueous extract of fresh, unripe, whole fruits reduced fasting blood glucose by 50%, which was consistent until the study ended, and the chloroform extract of dried whole fruits and seeds showed almost no hypoglycaemic activity (Virdi et al 2003).

These observations have special significance when one considers that the whole bitter gourd is cooked in water and consumed in many cultures, particularly in India. The hypoglycaemic activity is attributed to a mixture of steroidal saponins known as charantins, insulin-like peptides and alkaloids that are concentrated in the fruit (Grover & Yadav 2004).

Based on studies with animal models, it appears that *Momordica charantia* increases the renewal of beta-cells in the pancreas, or may permit the recovery of partially destroyed beta-cells (Ahmed et al 1998), and stimulates pancreatic insulin secretion (Welihinda et al 1982). It also improves peripheral glucose uptake (Welihinda & Karunanayake 1986). A study with streptozocin-induced diabetic animals found that bitter melon juice normalises the structural abnormalities of peripheral nerves, regulates glucose uptake into the jejunum membrane brush border vesicles and stimulates glucose uptake into skeletal muscle cells (Ahmed et al 2004).

**LIPID-LOWERING**

Lipid-lowering activity has been reported in studies of normal and diabetic animals for the fruit extract, flavonoids extracted from bitter melon or a methanolic fraction of the plant (Ahmed et al 2001, Anila & Vijayalakshmi 2000, Chaturvedi 2005, Chaturvedi et al 2004, Senanayake et al 2004, Singh et al 1989). Typically, decreases in triglyceride and LDL levels and increases in HDL levels are seen.

In contrast, karela oil increased total lipid levels and phospholipid concentrations in heart and brain as compared with linseed, according to an in vivo study (Dhar & Bhattacharyya 1998).
**ANTIVIRAL**

Several constituents found in bitter melon (e.g. alpha- and beta-momorcharin, lectin and MAP 30) have demonstrated in vitro antiviral activity against Epstein-Barr, HSV-1, HIV, coxsackievirus B3 and polio viruses (Beloin et al 2005, Bourinbaiar & Lee-Huang 1998, Foa-Tomasi et al 1982, Grover & Yadav 2004, Sun et al 2001).

A study using a lyophilised extract of *Momordica charantia* against HSV-1 suggests that the presence of light may be important for antiviral activity (Beloin et al 2005). The active antiviral constituents are not the main bitter principles momordicins I and II, as these have not shown activity against HSV-1 (Beloin et al 2005). One constituent referred to as MAP30 has received special attention as it exhibits potent inhibition of HIV-1 and HSV (Schreiber et al 1999).

**ANTIBACTERIAL**

Broad-spectrum antibacterial activity has been demonstrated for the leaf extracts (aqueous, ethanol, and methanol) (Grover & Yadav 2004). In vitro antimicrobial activity occurred against *Escherichia coli*, *Salmonella paratyphi*, *Shigella dysenteriae* and against *Streptomyces griseus* (Grover & Yadav 2004, Ogata et al 1991, Omorogbe et al 1996). In a phase II study, the leaf extracts inhibited the growth of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* in vitro, using the BACTEC 460 susceptibility test method (Frame et al 1998).

Tests with an extract of the entire plant demonstrated antiprotozoal activity against *Entamoeba histolytica* (Grover & Yadav 2004) and a fruit extract exhibited activity against *Helicobacter pylori* (Yesilada et al 1999).

**ANTHELMINTIC**

The anthelmintic activity of the leaves of *Momordica charantia* against *Caenorhabditis elegans* was identified and described as high in one study (Beloin et al 2005). Triterpene glycosides of bitter melon (momordicins I and II) were found to be very active nematicides. A preparation of *M. charantia* exhibited stronger anthelmintic activity in vitro than piperazine hexahydrate against *Ascaridia galli* (Lal et al 1976).

**ABORTIFACIENT**

Experimental studies with mice have demonstrated that bitter melon can induce abortions (Chan et al 1984, 1985, Tam et al 1984). According to an in vivo study, the glycoproteins alpha- and beta-momorcharin isolated from the seeds are effective in inducing early and midterm abortions (Chan et al 1986) and the momorcharins were teratogenic in cultured mouse embryos (Chan et al 1986).
OTHER ACTIONS

ANTICANCER
Various preliminary studies (in vitro and in vivo) with crude bitter melon extract and its various constituents (e.g. MAP 30, momordin I, alpha-momorcharin) have shown anticancer activity (Basch et al 2003).

ANALGESIC
An in vivo study identified a dose-dependent analgesic effect for a methanolic extract of bitter melon seeds (Biswas et al 1991). The dose that produced a 50% response was 5 mg/kg SC. Analgesic activity was rapid and short lived. The opiate pathway was not involved, as naloxone pretreatment did not modify the analgesic response.

CLINICAL USE
Although bitter melon and several of its constituents have been investigated in many experimental studies, few clinical studies have been conducted.

DIABETES
Various bitter melon preparations have demonstrated hypoglycaemic activity in experimental models, but double-blind controlled studies are not available to determine its clinical effects.

Current evidence of efficacy in diabetes comes from case series and an open study that have shown that bitter melon juice, fruit, and dried powder exerts a moderate hypoglycaemic effect (Basch et al 2003, Ahmad et al 1999). The largest study involved 100 people with type 2 diabetes and found that drinking a homogenised suspension of the vegetable pulp of *M. charantia* caused a significant reduction ($P < 0.001$) of postprandial serum glucose in 86% cases and fasting glucose in 5% cases (Ahmad et al 1999).

Bitter melon has shown promising effects in prevention as well as delay in progression of diabetic complications (e.g. nephropathy, neuropathy, cataract and insulin resistance) in experimental animals (Grover & Yadav 2004).

CANCER
Controlled studies are not available to determine the clinical significance of the encouraging experimental findings.

According to an intriguing case report from the 1970s, a patient with gall-bladder carcinoma who was given an estimated survival of 2 years after surgery survived a further 10 years, possibly because of drinking bitter melon tea daily. The signs and symptoms of disease reappeared after consumption of the tea ceased for 4 months because of lack of availability and the patient subsequently died (West et al 1971).
HIV
Nine case reports of people with HIV taking bitter melon, sometimes in combination with other herbal medicines, suggest it may normalise the CD4/CD8 ratio; however, further investigation is required (Zhang & Khanyile 1992).

OTHER USES
Traditionally, bitter melon has been used as a treatment for a variety of conditions such as diabetes, gastrointestinal complaints, worms, constipation, headaches, skin conditions, viral infections and as an emmenagogue in reproductive health. Experimental studies support its use in some of these indications; however, controlled studies are still required to determine its role in practice.

DOSAGE RANGE
GENERAL GUIDE
• Juice: 50–100 mL/day

ACCORDING TO CLINICAL STUDIES
• Diabetes: aqueous extract of bitter melon fruit juice containing 100 g of fruit in 100 mL of extract taken daily

ADVERSE REACTIONS
There are two case reports of bitter melon tea inducing hypoglycaemic coma and convulsions in children (Basch et al 2003). Headaches have been reported with ingestion of the seeds (Ulbricht & Basch 2005).

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
Controlled studies are not available therefore interactions are based on evidence of activity and are largely theoretical and speculative.

HYPOGLYCAEMIC AGENTS
Theoretically an additive effect is possible, resulting in increased hypoglycaemic effects — caution. Possible beneficial interaction when used under professional supervision.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Avoid bitter melon seed or the outer rind due to the presence of toxic lectins and avoid use of bitter melon in people with glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency (Ulbricht & Basch 2005).

When low doses of bitter melon extract were ingested for up to 2 months in experimental models, no signs of nephrotoxicity, hepatotoxicity or adverse effects on food intake, growth organ weights and haematological parameters were observed.
However, toxicity and even death in laboratory animals have been reported when extracts in high doses were administered intravenously or intraperitoneally (Kusamran et al. 1998).

**PREGNANCY USE**

Based on experimental studies in animal models and traditional use, bitter melon is contraindicated in pregnancy.

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**

- Bitter melon is used as a traditional remedy for diabetes mellitus. Evidence from experimental studies and case reports support moderate hypoglycaemic activity; however, controlled studies have not yet been conducted.
- Traditionally, bitter melon has also been used as a treatment for gastrointestinal complaints, worms, constipation, headaches, skin conditions, viral infections and as an emmenagogue.
- According to experimental studies, bitter melon and/or its various constituents exert lipid-lowering, antibacterial, anthelmintic, abortifacient, antineoplastic and analgesic activities.
- Bitter melon is contraindicated in pregnancy and people with glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency.
- Avoid bitter melon seed or the outer rind, which have toxic lectins.

**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

**What will this herb do for me?**

According to preliminary research, bitter melon may lower blood glucose levels and aid in the management of diabetes.

**When will it start to work?**

This is difficult to predict. Diabetics should monitor their blood glucose readings when taking bitter melon.

**Are there any safety issues?**

Bitter melon is contraindicated in pregnancy and people with glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency. The seeds and outer rind should be avoided because they contain toxic lectins. Diabetic patients should monitor their blood glucose when taking bitter melon to prevent hypoglycaemia.

**REFERENCES**


Schreiber CA et al. The antiviral agents, MAP30 and GAP31, are not toxic to human spermatozoa and may be useful in preventing the sexual transmission of human immunodeficiency virus type 1. Fertil Steril 72 (1999): 686-90.


Black cohosh

Historical note  Native Americans first used black cohosh many centuries ago, mainly as a treatment for female reproductive problems but also for fatigue, snakebite and arthritis. It was widely adopted by European settlers, eventually becoming a very popular treatment in Europe for gynaecological conditions.

COMMON NAME
Black cohosh

OTHER NAMES
Baneberry, black snakeroot, bugbane, rattle-root, rattle-top, rattleweed, squawroot, traubensilberkerze, wanzenkraut

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
*Cimicifuga racemosa* now known as *Actaea racemosa* Linnaeus (family Ranunculaceae)

PLANT PARTS USED
Rhizome and root

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Black cohosh contains various triterpene glycosides, including cimicifugoside and actein, 27-deoxyactein, N-methylcytisine and other quinolizidine alkaloids, phenolic acids, isoflavan and salicylic acids, resins, fatty acids and tannins.

Until recently, the isoflavone, formononetin, was believed to be a pharmacologically important constituent of the herb; however, recent testing of numerous samples has failed to detect it in any sample, including the commercial products Remifemin (Schaper & Brummer GmbH & Co. KG, Salzgitter, Germany) and CimiPure (Kennelly et al 2002).

MAIN ACTIONS

HORMONE MODULATION
It appears unlikely that black cohosh exerts oestrogenic activity. Although oestrogenic activity has been detected in some tests (Duker et al 1991, Kruse et al 1999, Liu et al 2001) it has not been observed in others (Beck et al 2003, Einer-Jensen et al 1996, Zierau et al 2002). Additionally, the herb has demonstrated anti-oestrogenic activity in one test (Zierau et al 2002) and in 2003, black cohosh was investigated in a variety

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
of different assays and did not demonstrate oestrogenic activity in any assay system (Lupu et al 2003).

More recently, results from a study using black cohosh extract BNO 1055 in ovariectomised rats found it has selective oestrogen receptor modulator activity with no action in the uterus, but beneficial effects in the hypothalamopituitary unit and in the bone (Seidlova et al 2003). This has been confirmed in a double-blind, randomised, multicentre study using the same black cohosh extract (Wuttke et al 2003). In that study, the herbal extract was equipotent with conjugated oestrogens in reducing menopausal symptoms, had beneficial effects on bone metabolism and significantly increased vaginal superficial cells; however, it did not exert uterotrophic activity.

Overall it is generally agreed that black cohosh reduces LH secretion. This has been confirmed in a human study and is believed to be the result of at least three different active constituents acting synergistically (Duker et al 1991).

**Clinical note – Selective oestrogen receptor modulators**

These are compounds that, in contrast to pure oestrogen agonists or antagonists, have a mixed and selective pattern of oestrogen agonist–antagonist activity, which largely depends on the tissue targeted. The therapeutic aim of using these substances is to produce oestrogenic actions in those tissues in which it would be beneficial (e.g. bone, brain, liver) and have either no activity or antagonistic activity in tissues, such as breast and endometrium, where oestrogenic actions (cellular proliferation) might be deleterious. They are a relatively new class of pharmacologically active agents and are being used by women who cannot tolerate pharmaceutical HRT or are unwilling to use it. The most actively studied are tamoxifen and raloxifen (Hernandez & Pluchino 2003).

**ANTI-INFLAMMATORY**

Animal studies have identified some anti-inflammatory activity (Hirabayashi et al 1995).

**SEROTONERGIC**

*In vitro* tests identified compounds in a black cohosh methanol extract that were capable of strong binding to the 5-HT(1A), 5-HT(1D), and 5-HT(7) receptor subtypes (Burdette et al 2003). Further investigation by these authors found that the components functioned as a partial agonist of the 5-HT(7) receptor.
DOPAMINERGIC
It is suggested that the effects of A. racemosa may be due to dopaminergic activity, because black cohosh extract BNO 1055 displayed dopaminergic activity with a D(2)-receptor assay (Jarry et al 2003). Considering that dopaminergic drugs reduce some symptoms (e.g. hot flushes) associated with menopause, this theory is feasible; however, further studies are required to explain why black cohosh is devoid of the typical side-effects associated with dopaminergic drugs (Borelli & Ernst 2002).

OTHER ACTIONS
A dose-dependent antihypertensive effect was identified for a triterpene found in black cohosh (actein) in animals tests. The clinical significance of this finding for humans using black cohosh root is unknown (Genazzani & Sorrentino 1962). Black cohosh is traditionally thought to act as a tonic and nervous system restorative medicine and exert antispasmodic and anti-inflammatory activity.

No effect on CYP3A was detected in a recent human study (Gurley et al 2006).

CLINICAL USE
MENOPAUSAL SYMPTOMS
Most clinical research has tested the commercial preparation of black cohosh known as Remifemin, which is standardised to contain triterpene glycosides (0.8–1.2 mg/tablet), but recently there has been some investigation of BNO 1055, an aqueous ethanolic extract (58% vol/vol), sold as Klimadynon and Menofem (Bionorica AG, Neumarkt, Germany).

A review of eight clinical trials published in 1998 found that black cohosh (Remifemin) is a safe and effective alternative to HRT for menopausal patients in whom HRT is contraindicated (Lieberman 1998). Symptoms responding to treatment with black cohosh include hot flushes, vaginal thinning and drying, night sweats, sleep disturbances, anxiety and depression.

Two clinical studies have been conducted in recent years with the BNO 1055 black cohosh extract. A double-blind, randomised, multicentre study compared the effects of BNO 1055 (40 mg/day) to conjugated oestrogens (0.6 mg/day) and placebo on climacteric complaints, bone metabolism and endometrium (Wuttke et al 2003). The study involved 62 postmenopausal women who took their allocated treatment for 3 months. BNO 1055 proved to be equipotent to conjugated oestrogens and superior to placebo in reducing climacteric symptoms and both active treatments produced beneficial effects on bone metabolism. Vaginal superficial cells increased with both active treatments; however, BNO 1055 had no effect on endometrial thickness, which was significantly increased by conjugated oestrogens.
A randomised study (Hernandez & Pluchino 2003) was also performed with 136 young premenopausal breast cancer survivors experiencing hot flushes as a result of tamoxifen therapy. When BNO 1055 (Menofem/Klimadynon, corresponding to 20 mg of herbal drug) was used together with tamoxifen for 12 months, the number and severity of hot flushes were reduced, with almost 50% of subjects becoming free of hot flushes, and severe hot flushes were reported by only 24% compared with 74% for those using tamoxifen alone.

In contrast, a previous double-blind, placebo controlled study (n = 85) failed to detect significant improvements with black cohosh for hot flush frequency or severity when used by patients with breast cancer for 2 months and who were also taking tamoxifen (Jacobson et al 2001). Unfortunately, the authors of that study did not specify which black cohosh product was being used or the dosage, making a comparison with the previous study difficult.

Recently, a Swiss multicentre, randomised, placebo-controlled, double-blind study (Frei-Kleiner et al 2005) was conducted with 122 menopausal women and found that daily black cohosh root extract Cr 99 (6.5 mg dried rhizome extract, drug/extract ratio 4.5–8.5:1 corresponding to 29–55 mg with an average of 42 mg crude drug, extraction solvent 60% ethanol v/v) had a significant effect in women with menopausal disorders of moderate intensity according to a Kupperman Index ≥20. Concerning the Menopause Rating Scale, active treatment decreased score values by 48% in the A. racemosa group compared with 14% for placebo.

**Herbal combination studies** One study has investigated the effects of a fixed combination of isopropanolic black cohosh (Remifemin; standardised to 1 mg triterpene glycosides) and ethanolic St John’s wort (standardised to 0.25 mg total hypericin) in women with menopausal symptoms with pronounced psychological symptoms (Uebelhack et al 2006). The double-blind, randomised study of 301 women found that 16 weeks of herbal treatment produced a significant 50% reduction in the Menopause Rating Scale score compared with 20% with placebo and a significant 42% reduction in the Hamilton Depression Rating Scale compared with only 13% in the placebo group. Each treatment tablet contained black cohosh extract (corresponding on average to 3.75 mg native extract and 22.5–41.25 mg rootstock) and St John’s wort extract (corresponding to 70 mg native extract and 245–350 mg herb). Patients took two tablets twice daily for 8 weeks then reduced to one tablet twice daily for the remainder of the study. There were no relevant group differences regarding adverse events, laboratory values, or tolerability.

A combination of soy isoflavones, black cohosh and nutritional supplements failed to have a significant effect on menopausal symptoms in a 12-week randomised,
placebo-controlled, double-blind study of 124 women (Verhoeven et al 2005). Women in the supplement group received 125 mg soy extract daily (providing 50 mg isoflavones including 24 mg genistein and 21.5 mg daidzein), 1,500 mg evening primrose oil extract (providing 150 mg gamma linoleic acid), 100 mg Actaea racemosa L. extract (providing 8 mg deoxyacetein), 200 mg calcium, 1.25 µg vitamin D, and 10 IU vitamin E, whereas the women in the placebo group received 2000 mg olive oil daily.

Commission E has approved the use of this herb as a treatment for menopausal symptoms (Blumenthal et al 2000). Similarly, the World Health Organization (WHO) recognises its use for the ‘treatment of climacteric symptoms such as hot flushes, profuse sweating, sleeping disorders and nervous irritability’. The North American Menopause Society recommends black cohosh, in conjunction with lifestyle approaches, as a treatment option for women with mild menopause-related symptoms (2004).

**PREMENSTRUAL SYNDROME AND DYSMENORRHOEA**
Although no clinical studies are available, the pharmacological activity of the herb suggests that it may be useful. Commission E has approved the use of black cohosh as a treatment in these conditions (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**OTHER USES**
Black cohosh has been used traditionally to treat a variety of female reproductive disorders, inflammation, diarrhoea and rheumatism. It has also been used to promote menstruation. The British Herbal Pharmacopoeia states it is indicated in ovarian dysfunction and ovarian insufficiency.

**MENSTRUAL MIGRAINE**
A RCT of 49 women with menstrual migraines tested placebo against a herbal combination consisting of 60 mg soy isoflavones, 100 mg dong quai, and 50 mg black cohosh, with each component standardised to its primary alkaloid (Burke et al 2002). Over the course of the study, the average frequency of menstrually associated migraine episodes was significantly reduced in the active treatment group.

**DOSAGE RANGE**
- Decoction or powdered root: 0.3–2 g three times daily.
- Tincture (1:10): 2–4 mL three times daily.
- Fluid extract (1:1) (g/mL): 0.3–2 mL three times daily.

Many practitioners have used black cohosh long term without safety concerns; however, Commission E does not recommend more than 6 months’ continuous use.
TOXICITY
Overdose has produced nausea and vomiting, vertigo and visual disturbances.

IDIOSYNCRATIC HEPATIC REACTIONS
In February 2006 the TGA announced that based on the appraisal of case reports, a causal association between black cohosh and serious hepatitis exists; however, the incidence is very low considering its widespread use. As a result, products available in Australia containing black cohosh will have to carry label warnings informing consumers of the risk by 2007.

The conclusion made by the TGA is considered controversial by some experts because numerous confounding factors were present in many of the case reports, such as the use of multiple ingredient preparations, concurrent use of at least one pharmaceutical medicine and the presence of other medical conditions.

ADVERSE REACTIONS
Although large doses are reported to produce dizziness, headache, tremors or giddiness in some people, gastrointestinal disturbances and rashes are the most common adverse effects, according to data from clinical studies and spontaneous reporting programs (Huntley & Ernst 2003). The adverse effects tend to be rare, mild and reversible.

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
None known.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Results from a 2002 study testing the safety of black cohosh in an in vitro model for oestrogen-dependent breast tumours found that the herbal extract significantly inhibited tumour cell proliferation, oestrogen-induced proliferation and enhanced the antiproliferative effects of tamoxifen (Bodinet & Freudenstein 2002). It is suggested that black cohosh only be used under professional supervision for treatment of oestrogen-dependent tumours or during pregnancy.

PREGNANCY USE
Although it has been used to assist in childbirth, black cohosh is not recommended in pregnancy.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
• Several clinical trials have tested black cohosh in menopause and generally found it to be an effective symptom reliever.
• It appears that 4–12 weeks’ continuous treatment are required for adequate menopausal symptom relief.
• Black cohosh is also used in the treatment of premenstrual syndrome and dysmenorrhea and is Commission E-approved for these uses; however, controlled studies are not available to confirm efficacy.
• There is some evidence suggesting black cohosh exerts selective oestrogen receptor modulator activity, serotonergic activity and possibly dopaminergic activity.
• Black cohosh should be only used under professional supervision for treatment of oestrogen-dependent tumours or during pregnancy.
• Black cohosh is well tolerated; however, rare case reports of idiosyncratic hepatic reactions have been described.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this herb do for me?
Black cohosh has been well tested and shown to be an effective treatment for menopausal symptoms in most women, especially those with mild to moderate symptoms. It may also be useful in the treatment of premenstrual syndrome and prevention of period cramping.
When will it start to work?
Studies suggest that benefits are seen within 4–12 weeks’ for the treatment of menopausal symptoms.
Are there any safety issues?
Black cohosh should only be used under professional supervision for treatment of oestrogen-dependent tumours or during pregnancy.

REFERENCES


Lupu R et al. Black cohosh, a menopausal remedy, does not have estrogenic activity and does not promote breast cancer cell growth. Int J Oncol 23(5): 1407-12.


Black cohosh 138
Brahmi

Historical note  Brahmi is the Sanskrit name for the herb *Bacopa monniera* and has been used in Ayurvedic medicine as a nerve tonic since time immemorial. Under this system, *B. monniera* is classified under ‘Medhya rasyayana’, that is, medicinal plants rejuvenating intellect and memory. The ancient classical Ayurvedic treatises recommend it for the promotion of memory, intelligence and general performance. Over time it has earned a reputation as an important brain tonic (Williamson 2002).

**COMMON NAME**
Brahmi

**OTHER NAMES**
Bacopa, jalanimba, jalnaveri, sambrani chettu, thyme-leave gratiola

*Centella asiatica* (gotu kola) and *Merremia gangetica* have also been referred to by the name brahmi but most authorities associate brahmi with *Bacopa monniera*

**BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY**
*Bacopa monniera* (family Scrophulariaceae)

**PLANT PARTS USED**
Dried whole plant or herb, mainly leaves and stems (aerial parts)

**CHEMICAL COMPONENTS**
Dammarene-type saponins (bacosides and bacosaponins, based on the bacogenins A1–A5, are considered the most important) and alkaloids (brahmine, herpestine and flavonoids).

**MAIN ACTIONS**
The mechanism of action of brahmi has not been significantly investigated in clinical studies, so results from in vitro and animal tests provide most of the evidence. Some studies have investigated the effects of an Ayurvedic herbal combination known as brahmi rasayan, which consists of 10 parts bacopa, 2 parts cloves, 1 part cardamom, 1 part *Piper longum* and 40 parts sucrose.

**ANTIOXIDANT**
Brahmi has potent antioxidant activity, which appears to be a result of both direct free-radical scavenging activity and increasing the activity of endogenous antioxidant
systems (Bhattacharya et al 2000, Tripathi et al 1996). Administration of bacoside A reduced the effects of cigarette smoke in an animal model by increasing lactate dehydrogenase and its isoenzymes (Anbarasi et al 2005). Bacoside A has also been shown to reduce creatine kinase in brain and cardiac tissue, thus preventing smoking induced damage (Anbarasi et al 2005). An extract of brahmi provided protection against DNA damage in both animal cells (Russo et al 2003a) and human cells (Russo et al 2003b) in vitro. Dose-related increases in superoxide dismutase, catalase and glutathione peroxidase activities in several important regions of the brain has been demonstrated in animal models (Bhattacharya et al 2000). Additionally, brahmi induces increased activity of superoxide dismutase and catalase in the liver (Kar et al 2002).

**COGNITIVE ACTIVATOR**

Both antioxidant and anticholinesterase activity have been demonstrated in vivo and suggested as the mechanisms responsible for cognitive activation (Das et al 2002). Results from a double-blind placebo-controlled trial using brahmi (300 mg/day) support this view, as one of the major effects seen was on speed of early information processing, a function predominantly modulated by the cholinergic system (Stough et al 2001).

**REDUCTION IN BETA-AMYLOID LEVELS**

Bacopa extract significantly reduced beta-amyloid levels when administered prior to beta-amyloid deposition in a study using an Alzheimer’s dementia animal model (Dhanasekaran et al 2004).

**ANTIDEPRESSANT ACTIVITY**

A rodent model of depression found that an extract of brahmi produced significant antidepressant activity comparable to that of imipramine after 5 days of oral administration (Sairam et al 2002).

**ANTIULCER EFFECTS**

Although no clinical studies are available, one study using an animal model of aspirin-induced gastric ulceration has identified significant antiulcer activity for the fresh juice from the whole plant of *Bacopa monniera* (Rao et al 2000). The study found that brahmi had a beneficial influence on the natural mucosal defensive factors, such as enhanced mucin secretion, mucosal glycoprotein production and decreased cell shedding, thereby reducing ulceration (Rao et al 2000). A follow-up in vivo study in various gastric ulcer models further confirmed brahmi’s ability to increase the body’s natural defence factors and showed that *B. monniera* is effective for both the **140**
prophylaxis and treatment of gastric ulcers (Sairam et al 2001). In addition, brahmi was shown to reduce lipid peroxidation. An in vitro study demonstrated that B. monniera significantly inhibited Helicobacter pylori and the effect was comparable to that of bismuth subcitrate, a known H. pylori growth inhibitor (Goel et al 2003).

**ANTI-INFLAMMATORY EFFECTS**

An ethanolic extract of B. monniera exhibited marked anti-inflammatory activity against carrageenan-induced paw oedema in mice and rats (Channa et al 2005). The effect was mediated via PGE₂ inhibition and found to be comparable to aspirin. Bacopa has also exhibited anti-inflammatory activity comparable to indomethacin without causing an associated gastric irritation (Jain et al 1994). Several constituents are thought to be responsible for the anti-inflammatory action, chiefly the triterpene, betulinic acid but also saponins and flavonoids.

**OTHER ACTIONS**

**ADAPTOGEN**

A standardised extract of B. monniera possesses adaptogenic effects in an animal model, which were found to be comparable to Panax quinquefolium (Rai et al 2003).

**ANTINOICEPTIVE ACTIVITY**

Brahmi rasayan (see under MAIN ACTIONS) has demonstrated antinociceptive activity in animal experiments (Shukia et al 1987). An interaction with the GABA-ergic system is believed to be involved. Although encouraging, it is not certain to what extent brahmi was responsible for these results.

**MAST-CELL STABILISATION**

The methanolic fraction of brahmi exhibits potent mast-cell-stabilising activity in vitro, which was found to be comparable to that of disodium cromoglycate (Samiulla et al 2001).

**INCREASED THYROID HORMONE LEVELS**

Results from animal experiments have found that brahmi increases T₄ concentrations by 41% without enhancing hepatic lipid peroxidation (Kar et al 2002).

**ANTISPASMODIC EFFECT ON SMOOTH MUSCLE**

A spasmyloytic effect on smooth muscle has been demonstrated in vivo, and is predominantly due to inhibition of calcium influx into the cell (Dar & Channa 1999). More recent studies have also shown bronchodilatory effects, most likely due to the same mechanism (Channa et al 2003).
CLINICAL USE
Brahmi has not been significantly investigated in clinical studies, so information is generally derived from in vitro and animal studies and traditional evidence, and is still largely speculative.

Clinical note — Scientific investigation of Ayurvedic medicines in India
Modern-day interest in many Ayurvedic herbs, such as brahmi, really started in 1951 when the then Prime Minister of India set up the Central Drug Research centre in Lucknow. The goal of this initiative was to encourage scientists to investigate many of the traditional Ayurvedic herbs in a scientific way, and to determine their potential as contemporary drugs or as potential sources for newer drugs.

IMPROVING COGNITIVE FUNCTION — LEARNING, MEMORY, INTELLIGENCE
In Ayurvedic medicine, bacopa is used to improve cognitive function and increase intelligence. Over time it has developed an excellent reputation, prompting scientific researchers to investigate the activity of bacopa more closely.

To date, results from animal studies are encouraging. Oral administration of brahmi extract (40 mg/kg) for at least 3 days produced positive effects on learning skills, memory and reaction times compared with controls in one learning model (Singh & Dhawan 1982). Another study found that bacopa extract significantly reversed the cognitive impairment induced by the antiepileptic drug phenytoin, without affecting its anticonvulsant activity (Vohora et al 2000). More recent animal studies have shown that bacopa attenuates scopolamine-induced dementia and significantly inhibits acetylcholinesterase activity in vitro (Das et al 2002). Studies indicate that bacosides A and B present in the ethanolic extract are responsible for the cognition facilitating effects (Russo 2005).

Clinical studies have generally produced encouraging results. A double-blind placebo-controlled trial using a dose of 300 mg bacopa over 12 weeks in 46 healthy volunteers found that it significantly improved the speed of visual information processing, learning rate and memory consolidation and that it has a significant anxiolytic effect (Stough et al 2001). Another study of the same design tested brahmi in 76 adults over 3 months (Roodenrys et al 2002); significant improvements in a test for new information retention was observed, but there were no changes in the rate of learning. Results from a double-blind placebo-controlled trial involving 38 healthy subjects suggest that cognitive activator effects may require long-term use and are not evident after single-dose administration (Nathan et al 2001). However, results from a double-blind, placebo-controlled study using a product (Blackmore’s Ginkgo Brahm) containing both Bacopa monniera (300 mg) and Ginkgo biloba (120 mg) in
healthy subjects failed to show any significant differences in memory, attention, comprehension, learning or motor responsiveness after 4 weeks (Nathan et al 2004).

**ANXIETY**
A placebo-controlled randomised study of healthy subjects found that 300 mg of brahmi daily reduced anxiety compared with placebo, an effect most pronounced after 12 weeks of treatment (Stough et al 2001).

**OTHER USES**

**TRADITIONAL USES**
Bacopa has been traditionally used as a brain tonic and is commonly recommended to improve memory and heighten learning capacity. It is also used as a nerve tonic to treat anxiety, nervous exhaustion or debility and is prescribed to enhance rehabilitation after any injury causing nervous deficit, such as stroke. Other traditional uses include promoting longevity, and treating diarrhoea and asthma. It is used as an anti-inflammatory, analgesic, anxiolytic and antiepileptic agent with some support for these uses provided by in vitro and in vivo studies.

**IRRITABLE BOWEL SYNDROME**
An Ayurvedic herbal combination consisting of Aegle marmelos correa and Bacopa monniera successfully treated 65% of patients with irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) under double-blind randomised conditions (Yadav et al 1989). Herbal treatment was particularly useful in the diarrhoea-predominant form of IBS, compared with the placebo. Follow-up reviews 6 months after the trial found that relapse rates were the same among all test subjects. Although encouraging, it is not certain to what extent brahmi was responsible for these results.

**DOSAGE RANGE**
- Dried aerial parts of herb: 5–10 g/day.
- Fluid extract (1:2) or equivalent oral dose form: 5–13 mL/day in divided doses.

**ACCORDING TO CLINICAL STUDIES**
- Cognitive activator effects: 300 mg/day.
  
  Positive results obtained in one controlled study have found 3 months’ use is required before clinical effects are observed (Stough et al 2001).

**TOXICITY**
The LD<sub>50</sub> data for an ethanolic extract of bacopa is 17 g/kg (oral) (Mills & Bone 2005).

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
Insufficient reliable information available.
SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
Controlled studies are not available, so interactions are based on evidence of activity and are largely theoretical and speculative.

CHOLINERGIC DRUGS
Cholinergic activity has been identified for brahmi, therefore increased drug activity is theoretically possible — observe patient, although a beneficial interaction is possible under professional supervision.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Caution is advised in hyperthyroidism — bacopa has been shown to significantly elevate T4 levels in vivo.

PREGNANCY USE
Insufficient reliable information available.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Brahmi is an Ayurvedic herb that has been used for several thousand years as a brain tonic, to enhance intellect, treat psychiatric illness, epilepsy, insomnia and as a mild sedative.
- Evidence of cognitive activator activity from animal models of learning is positive and clinical studies have produced generally encouraging results.
- Brahmi has potent antioxidant activity, which appears to be a result of both direct free-radical scavenging activity and increasing endogenous antioxidant systems in the brain and liver.
- Anticholinesterase, antidepressant, antulcer, antispasmodic, anti-inflammatory and antinociceptive activity has been demonstrated in animal studies. Elevated T4 levels have also been observed.
- Overall, large controlled studies are not available to determine the clinical significance of these effects.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this herb do for me?
Brahmi has a long history of use as a brain tonic. Results from scientific studies suggest that it may enhance memory and cognitive function and reduce anxiety with long-term use.

When will it start to work?
Studies suggest that 12 weeks’ continual use is required for benefits on cognitive function to become apparent.
Are there any safety issues?
Information from traditional sources suggests that brahmi is well tolerated at the usual therapeutic doses, but scientific investigation has yet to establish safety and whether drug interactions exist.

REFERENCES
BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS

Calcium found in the diet or in commercially made supplements exists as a salt form, from which calcium must be released for absorption to occur. Adequate hydrochloric acid levels are required to make soluble the majority of these calcium ions, whereas any unabsorbed calcium entering the higher pH environment of the small intestine is more likely to be precipitated and rendered insoluble (Wahlqvist et al 2002). Low or moderate calcium intakes are absorbed via active transport mechanisms that are influenced by vitamin D. When intake is high, active transport mechanisms become saturated, leading to greater passive absorption. Although most absorption occurs in the small intestine, the large intestine may also be responsible for up to 4% of absorption and provides compensatory mechanisms for those individuals with compromised small intestine absorption (Groff & Groper 2000).

Calcium’s bioavailability from both food and supplements shows enormous variation, from 4 to 45% (Recker 1985) and is dramatically influenced by other foods present in the gastrointestinal tract. Phytates, oxalates, all types of fibres, unabsorbed dietary fatty acids and other divalent minerals all potentially compromise its absorption, while lactose (especially in children) and other sugars, as well as protein and the presence of vitamin D all enhance uptake (Groff & Groper 2000).

Distribution results in 99% of absorbed calcium being deposited in bones. The remainder of the absorbed calcium is present in teeth and the intracellular or extracellular fluids. Calcium is excreted in faeces, sweat and urine. Calcium homeostasis is tightly regulated by the actions of parathyroid hormone (PTH), calcitonin and vitamin D. Together these hormones determine the level of absorption, excretion or retention by the kidneys, and sequestering or mobilisation of stores through bone mineralisation and resorption.

FOOD SOURCES

Good dietary sources of calcium include dairy products, fish with bones, especially salmon and sardines, tofu, broccoli, collard greens, mustard greens, bok choy, clams and black strap molasses.

DEFICIENCY SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

While there is little information available about the prevalence of deficiency across the general Australian population, a Melbourne study of 1045 women aged 20–92 years in 2000 revealed that approximately 76% of women consumed calcium at levels less

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
than the RDI and an additional 14% demonstrated a grossly inadequate intake of <300 mg/day (Pasco et al 2000). These figures are similar to those obtained by larger studies in the United States (Groff & Groper 2000).

- Tetany: muscle pain, spasms and paraesthesias.
- Rickets.
- Osteomalacia.
- Increased neuromuscular irritability.
- Altered heart rate.
- Ambulatory developmental delays in children.
- Osteoporosis and increased risk of fractures.
- Bone pain and deformity.
- Tooth discolouration and increased decay.
- Hypertension.
- Increased risk of pre-eclampsia.
- Increased risk of colon cancer (controversial).

There are many situations and conditions in which the risk of hypocalcaemia may be increased.

**PRIMARY DEFICIENCY**

Primary deficiency occurs as a result of inadequate dietary intake. Populations with increased calcium requirements are at greater risk of deficiency when intakes are not modified to meet their increased needs; these include children, adolescents, pregnant and lactating women, postmenopausal women, particularly those taking HRT (Wahlqvist et al 2002), people experiencing rapid weight loss or patients receiving TPN.

**SECONDARY DEFICIENCY**

Calcium absorption is impaired in achlorhydria, intestinal inflammation and any malabsorptive disorder accompanied by steatorrhoea (Wilson et al 1991). Increased faecal loss of calcium occurs with higher intakes of fibre and in fat malabsorption, while renal excretion has been shown in some studies to be increased in those patients ingesting a high protein diet (Kerstetter et al 1998).

Factors that compromise vitamin D status or activity will also affect calcium status (Pattanaungkul et al 2000, Prince et al 1997).

Other conditions that can predispose to hypocalcaemia include hypoparathyroidism (a deficiency in or absence of PTH), idiopathic hypoparathyroidism (an uncommon condition in which the parathyroid glands are absent or atrophied), pseudohypoparathyroidism (characterised not by deficiency of
PTH, but by target organ resistance to its action), renal tubular disease, renal failure, magnesium depletion, acute pancreatitis, hypoprothrombinaemia, septic shock or the use of certain medicines such as anticonvulsants (phenytoin, phenobarbital) and rifampin, and both oral and inhaled corticosteroids, which alter vitamin D metabolism (Beers et al 2003, Rossi et al 2005).

**MAIN ACTIONS**
Calcium is an essential mineral required for the proper functioning of numerous intracellular and extracellular processes, including muscle contraction, nerve conduction, beating of the heart, hormone release, blood coagulation, energy production and maintenance of immune function. It also plays a role in intracellular signalling and is involved in the regulation of many enzymes.

**BONE AND TEETH MINERALISATION**
Calcium is found in bone where it is mainly complexed with other ions in the form of hydroxyapatite crystals. Approximately 1% of calcium in bone can be freely exchanged into the extracellular fluid in order to buffer changes in calcium balance.

**MUSCLE CONTRACTION**
Ionised serum calcium helps to initiate both smooth and skeletal muscle contraction and in particular, the regulation of rhythmic contraction of the heart muscle in combination with sodium and potassium.

**BLOOD CLOTTING**
Calcium is involved in several steps of the blood clotting cascade.

**ALTERED MEMBRANE FUNCTIONS**
Calcium fluxes across membranes, both within the cell and across the plasma membrane, and acts as a vehicle for the signal transduction necessary for neurotransmitter and hormone function. It also selectively alters cell wall permeability to regulate passage of fluids in and out of cells.

**OTHER ACTIONS**
Regulates various enzyme systems responsible for muscle contraction, fat digestion and protein metabolism.

**CLINICAL USE**
Many of the clinical uses of calcium supplements are conditions thought to arise from a gross or marginal deficiency, but some indications are based on the concept of high-dose calcium supplements as a therapeutic agent.
**CALCIUM DEFICIENCY**

Traditionally, calcium supplementation has been used to treat deficiency or prevent deficiency in high-risk conditions or people with increased calcium requirements such as pregnant women. Acute severe hypocalcaemic states are treated initially with IV infusion of calcium salts. In chronic cases, oral calcium supplements and occasionally vitamin D supplements are used.

**Rickets and osteomalacia** A deficiency of either calcium or vitamin D can produce these bone disorders. (See Vitamin D monograph for further information.)

**Infants** The percentage and type of fats within an infant formula and their ability to bind calcium salts and increase excretion has been shown to influence the bone mineral content (BMC) of infants. One hundred 8-week-old infants given formulas considered to be more similar to breastmilk and less likely to form calcium soaps in the gut showed increased BMC after only 1 month’s treatment compared with those infants on standard formula (Kennedy et al 1999).

**BONE MINERAL DENSITY (BMD) AND OSTEOPOROSIS PROPHYLAXIS**

**Children** A 2006 Cochrane review of 19 trials including 2859 participants found there was no effect of calcium supplementation on femoral neck or lumbar spine BMD (Winzenberg et al 2006). There was a small effect on total body BMC and upper limb BMD; however, only the effect in the upper limb persisted after supplementation ceased. The effect is approximately equivalent to a 1.7% greater increase in supplemented groups, which at best would reduce absolute fracture risk in children by 0.1–0.2% annually. Additionally, there was no evidence of effect modification by baseline calcium intake, sex, ethnicity, physical activity or pubertal stage.

**Adolescents** Peak bone mass is one of the main determinants of osteoporotic fracture in humans and therefore there is significant research dedicated to determining the influence of calcium status on the 40–50% peak bone mass accretion that occurs during adolescence. Overall, studies in adolescent girls have shown that calcium supplementation significantly improves bone mineral status. Numerous studies, including one by Stear in 2003 of 144 pubertal girls, have confirmed a synergistic relationship between mechanical load, through physical activity, calcium status and bone calcium accumulation; however, it is important to note that physical activity has a positive effect on BMD only at high calcium intakes, with no effect at calcium intakes <1000 mg/day (Harkness & Bonny 2005).

Until recently, all clinical trials with calcium supplements in children and adolescents, demonstrating a positive effect on bone mass, were conducted over durations of 1–3 years. As such, it is uncertain whether supplementation and resultant increases in bone mass had a beneficial effect in the long-term. A 2005
placebo-controlled study addressed this issue by using calcium supplements (670 mg/day) over a 7-year period. The study of 354 pubertal girls reported significant increases in BMD during growth spurts in the supplemented group; however, these gains did not uniformly persist into late adolescence and only girls of tall stature received long-lasting benefits. Interestingly, the placebo group exhibited a ‘catch-up’ in bone mineral accretion subsequent to the pubertal growth spurt (Matkovic et al 2005). These results introduce two novel concepts: the first being that dietary calcium requirement for skeletal development may be size dependent and secondly the possibility that a calcium mineral deficit may be a transient feature of the pubertal growth spurt, with a ‘catch-up’ possible during bone consolidation. In spite of these findings, the temporary gains in BMD may be important in the prevention of fractures during adolescence (Matkovic et al 2005).

A second study introduces other issues regarding the impact of variable calcium status in adolescents. The randomised, double-blind, placebo controlled study of 144 prepubertal girls used 850 mg/day of calcium over 1 year. After follow-up some 7 years later, in addition to positive effects on BMD outcomes, an inverse relationship became apparent between calcium supplementation and the age of menarche. The authors consequently speculate that higher calcium intake prior to menarche may favourably impact on long-term BMD through this dual mechanism (Chevalley et al 2005).

**Postmenopausal women** Numerous studies have confirmed an important role for calcium in the prevention of osteoporosis in postmenopausal women. Clinical studies have assessed its efficacy as a sole agent against placebo, in comparison with steroid hormones, antiresorptive drugs and as part of combination therapy.

Long-term calcium supplementation protects against bone loss according to a 2-year study involving 60 postmenopausal, non-osteoporotic women. The trial showed that in comparison with the 3% BMD loss evident in the placebo group, those consuming 1633 mg/day on average of supplemental calcium suffered no bone loss, as measured at the greater trochanter, and in fact their BMD improved at other sites tested (Storm et al 1998). A similar trend was demonstrated by Daniele et al (2004) in their study of 120 women, given only 500 mg of calcium and 200 IU of vitamin D per day over 30 months. In general though, the efficacy of calcium supplements in postmenopausal women appears to be largely dependent upon the baseline calcium intake. Those with an initial poor intake tend to achieve significant improvements over placebo, with more modest or no effect evident in groups with higher intakes at baseline (Daniele et al 2004, Fardellone et al 1998).
Whether calcium supplements are sufficient as a stand-alone preventative measure against osteoporosis is still being investigated. The results of one study suggest that the effects of calcium on BMD may require additional supplementation with the trace minerals zinc, manganese and copper (Strause et al 1994). However, the most impressive results obtained to date are for the combination of high-dose calcium with antiresorptive drugs such as oestrogen or calcitonin. A review of these studies highlights the gain in bone mass that resulted from the addition of calcium in contrast to the halt in BMD depletion commonly observed with use of calcitonin alone (Nieves et al 1998).

Other studies of both male \( n = 50 \) and female \( n = 200 \) populations using a combination of fluoride, as monofluorophosphate, and calcium over a 3–4-year period, found this combination to be superior to calcium alone in the prevention of BMD loss. Increased lumbar spine BMD and reduced risk of fractures was evident in both trials using the two minerals (Ringe et al 1998, Reginster et al 1998).

The elderly A number of large studies investigating the preventative effect of calcium alone or in combination with vitamin D have produced mixed results in the elderly. Earlier studies by Chapuy et al (1992, 1994, 2002) and Dawson Hughes et al (1997) demonstrated a significant reduction in risk of fracture in the elderly, and Larsen et al in 2004 demonstrated up to 16% reduction in an open-label, 3-year intervention in 9605 community dwelling elderly people. However, the RECORD Trial in 2005 failed to yield positive results. It was a randomised, placebo-controlled trial of 5292 people aged 70 years or older who received either 1000 mg of calcium or 800 IU of vitamin D/day, alone or together, for 24–62 months (The RECORD Trial group 2005). The authors postulate that improved results in previous studies may be due to the increased age (>80 years) of study volunteers and poorer vitamin D status at baseline.

Glucocorticoid-induced osteoporosis Approximately one in six people with asthma receiving inhaled and/or systemic glucocorticoids developed fractures over 5 years. The interaction with calcium plays a small role in this process, with glucocorticoids directly inhibiting vitamin D mediated intestinal absorption of calcium. High vitamin D doses (50,000 IU twice weekly) in combination with 1.5 g calcium daily can overcome this interference (Wilson et al 1991), whereas a randomised study found that treatment with calcium alone or in combination with etidronate may not be effective. That study of 352 volunteers found that treatment for 5 years did not significantly reduce fracture rate (Campbell et al 2004).
SUPPLEMENTATION DURING PREGNANCY AND LACTATION

Calcium is considered a critical nutrient during pregnancy with at least a twofold increase in requirements observed. Its metabolism during gestation significantly changes from as early as 12 weeks, with doubling of both absorption and excretion, followed by additional losses through lactation, which can account for reductions in maternal bone mineral content of 3–10% (Prentice 2003). While it is clear that general supplementation would be necessary in those women with poor preconception calcium levels, it is suggested that for healthy women the metabolic compensation evident in pregnancy should be sufficient to guarantee adequate fetal levels.

Prevention of pre-eclampsia Epidemiological evidence illustrates an inverse relationship between calcium status and the prevalence of pre-eclampsia (Frederick et al 2005, Lopez-Jaramillo et al 2001) and recent studies confirm abnormalities in markers of calcium metabolism and status in a pre-eclamptic population compared to controls, including low urinary and serum calcium levels (Ingec et al 2006, Sukonpan & Phupong 2005). Trials that included a 1996 meta-analysis of studies involving calcium and hypertension in pregnancy have shown a substantial mean reduction in both SBP and DBP, which was also confirmed by more recent reviews (Atallah et al 2002, Bucher et al 1996).

Positive correlations demonstrated in original smaller trials between calcium supplementation and reduced prevalence of pre-eclampsia, involving over 400 women, were put into question when the Calcium for Prevention of Pre-eclampsia study (CPEP), the largest trial to date, found no effect on the incidence or severity of the condition (Levine et al 1997). However, the CPEP study, involving over 4000 healthy nulliparous women, is not a replication of the existing trials. While the original studies used populations with a low calcium intake to ascertain the connection between correction of this deficiency and prevalence of pre-eclampsia, this more recent trial represented a ‘pharmacological intervention in women with a normal calcium intake’ (Lopez-Jaramillo et al 2001). Further reviews of all the evidence have supported calcium’s preventative role and researchers have concluded that calcium supplementation should be recommended for those women with a low calcium intake who are at risk of developing gestational hypertension (Crowther et al 1999, Hofmeyr et al 2003).

A 2003 review of calcium and the prevention of pre-eclampsia concluded that while considerable evidence from observational and experimental studies links calcium intake and hypertension during pregnancy, there is currently no satisfactory

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
explanation of the mechanisms (Villar et al 2003). One possible explanation may be the antagonistic relationship between calcium and lead (Sowers et al 2002).

A small number of studies have investigated the effects of calcium in combination with other nutrients, including antioxidant and omega-3 oils in this population. One randomised, placebo-controlled, double-blind study involving a sample of 48 primigravidas, using a combination of 600 mg/day calcium and 450 mg/day of conjugated linoleic acid (CLA) from weeks 18–22 until delivery, resulted in a significantly reduced incidence of pregnancy-induced hypertension (8% vs 42% of the control group) (Herrera et al 2005). Further studies are warranted to elicit the individual impact of both nutrients and to determine the superiority of sole or combination treatment.

**Leg cramps**  Calcium supplements are commonly prescribed in pregnancy when leg cramps are a problem. A Cochrane review of five trials involving 352 women taking various supplements for the treatment of leg cramps in pregnancy included only one placebo-controlled trial of calcium. From this, researchers concluded that any improvement in cramps in those groups treated solely with calcium was likely due to a placebo effect, with significant findings limited to the groups taking other nutrients (Young & Jewell 2002).

**Fetal growth**  The greatest period of fetal mineral accretion has been identified as the gestational period of 20–33 weeks, with daily needs escalating from 50 mg/day to 330 mg/day at its peak. The average newborn contains about 20–30 g calcium, and one study of 256 women in their second trimester showed that supplementation in women with poor calcium status significantly increased neonatal bone mineral content, as determined by X-ray absorptiometry measurements at 1 week postpartum (Koo et al 1999). However, the full relationship between maternal calcium intake and fetal growth, particularly in non-deficient women, has yet to be elucidated (Prentice 2003). One suggested effect of gestational mineral intake has been the determination of calcium concentration in the mother’s breastmilk, while it has been established that this concentration is not the result of calcium intake postpartum (Prentice et al 1999).

**Lead toxicity**  Increased blood lead levels are commonly a result of bone resorption during pregnancy and are considered a potential risk to fetal and infant health. Lead can be transferred to the fetus and infant via cord blood and breastmilk. Several studies suggest a low placental barrier to lead, with 79% of the mobilised lead from maternal bone passed to the infant (Dorea & Donangelo 2005). While a number of studies have indicated lead levels in the breastmilk of Australian women appear to be well within a safe range, recent data from a study conducted by Ettinger et al
revealed that even low lead content in human milk appears to be highly influential on the lead levels of infants in their first month of life (2004). A separate review published in 2005 discussed additional related trends such as increased lead concentrations in cord blood during winter months, because of lower vitamin D status (Dorea 2004).

A RCT of 617 lactating women supplemented with high-dose calcium carbonate found that the women in the calcium group showed significant reductions in blood lead levels. Those subjects who showed improved compliance and also had baseline higher bone lead content produced an overall reduction of 16.4% (Hernandez-Avila et al 2003). Similar positive findings came from a study in Mexico of 367 lactating women; however, the maximal reduction in lead concentrations reached only 10% (Ettinger et al 2006). Nevertheless, when considered together these results suggest that calcium supplementation may represent an important interventional strategy, albeit with a modest effect, for reducing infant lead exposure.

**Neonatal benefits** Calcium supplementation during pregnancy has been postulated to have prolonged benefits in the offspring, as indicated in a study of nearly 600 children aged 5–9 years whose mothers had previously participated in a calcium trial during their pregnancy. The children demonstrated reduced SBP, compared with the children whose mothers had taken placebo, with significance reached particularly for those in the upper BMI bracket (Belizan et al 1997).

**DYSPEPSIA**
A first-line OTC treatment for heartburn, indigestion and dyspepsia has often been an antacid based on calcium carbonate in combination with magnesium and aluminium salts. Calcium in combination with the other ingredients reduces stomach acid and increases the rate of gastric emptying (Vatier et al 1996). In trials comparing H₂ blockers with calcium carbonate tablets, calcium was found to be equipotent, yet delivered a more rapid response and shorter duration of action (Feldman 1996). There have been many papers highlighting the dangers of prolonged use of these traditional antacids; however, pure calcium carbonate formulas attract the least concern, with the incidence of ‘milk alkali syndrome’ resulting from their overuse reported to be rare (Ching & Lam 1994, Herzog & Holtermuller 1982).

**PREVENTION OF COLORECTAL CANCER**
High dietary intake of calcium has demonstrated a reasonably consistent risk reduction of between 15% and 40% for colorectal cancer. Clear parameters for dosing are not yet available, with some studies showing no further benefit above
700–800 mg/day of total calcium, while other studies suggest an ongoing inverse dose-dependent relationship without cut-off (Schatzkin & Peters 2004).

A 2005 Cochrane review examining the effect of supplementary calcium on the incidence of colorectal cancer and the incidence or recurrence of adenomatous polyps included two double-blind, placebo-controlled trials with a pooled population of 1346 subjects. The doses of supplementary elemental calcium used were 1200–2000 mg/day for 3–4 years. The reviewers concluded that while the evidence to date appears promising and suggests a moderate degree of prevention against colorectal adenomatous polyps, more research with similar findings is required before this can be translated into any preventative protocol (Weingarten et al 2005).

Not included in the Cochrane review was a multicentre, placebo-controlled randomised study assessing the independent and joint effects of calcium supplementation and vitamin D status on adenoma recurrence in 803 subjects. Interestingly only those subjects with baseline vitamin D levels above the median (29.1 mg/mL) experienced a risk reduction with calcium supplementation (RR 0.71). Similarly, high vitamin D status was not independently associated with risk reduction, but was protective in combination with calcium supplementation (Grau et al 2003). These findings are suggestive of a synergistic action between the nutrients. Earlier hypotheses regarding the action of calcium in this role focused on calcium’s ability to bind bowel-irritating substances secreted into bile. This notion is further supported by a number of studies demonstrating enhanced chemoprotection when high doses of calcium have been combined with dietary factors such as reduced fat and increased carbohydrate, fibre and fluid intakes (Hyman et al 1998, Rozen et al 2001, Schatzkin & Peters 2004).

One significant development in our understanding has been the discovery of human parathyroid calcium-sensing receptors in the human colon epithelium, which function to regulate epithelial proliferation and differentiation. New in vitro studies suggest that expression of these receptors may be induced by the presence of extracellular calcium and vitamin D, therefore promoting greater differentiation of the epithelial cells (Chakrabarty et al 2005) and inducing apoptosis (Miller et al 2005).

The emerging evidence to date for a combined role of calcium, either dietary or supplemental, and vitamin D is strong and further elucidation of the independent and combined effects of these nutrients will assist in the development of preventative protocols.

**HYPERTENSION**

A 2006 Cochrane review of 13 RCTs involving 485 volunteers found that when the results of all trials were combined, calcium supplementation produced a statistically
significant reduction in SBP (mean difference: −2.5 mmHg), but not DBP (mean difference: −0.8 mmHg) compared with controls (Dickinson et al. 2006). The authors temper their conclusion by stating that the quality of included trials was poor and the heterogeneity between trials means there is a tendency to overestimate the effects of treatment. Earlier, an extensive systematic review, updated in 1999 to include 42 randomised comparative trials, shows modest reductions in both SBP and DBP (−2 mmHg and −1 mmHg respectively) with 1–2 g/day calcium over a 4–14-week intervention (Griffith et al. 1999). Although dietary calcium appeared to have a larger effect than supplementation, the difference was not statistically significant. The clinical significance of these small effects has been questioned and the recommendation of calcium as a therapy for all types of hypertension appears premature (Kawano et al. 1998). Some studies have proposed that it is only a particular subset of hypertension that demonstrates the greatest improvement with calcium. A number of researchers, for example, have hypothesised a physiological correlation between ‘salt sensitive’ hypertension and responsiveness to calcium treatment (Coruzzi & Mossini 1997, Resnick 1999).

In recent years, ongoing international epidemiological data have continued to link low dietary calcium intake with a slightly increased risk of hypertension, such as the study by Geleijnse et al published in 2005. A recent prospective cohort study of 5880 Spanish adults free from hypertension and CVD at baseline found that with a 27-month follow-up period, low-fat, but not full-fat, dairy products could be found to be protective (Alonso et al. 2005).

Additional findings that are attracting attention include epidemiologic links between markers of low calcium status or calcium metabolism abnormalities, hypertension and insulin resistance. In support of the possible link between these phenomena are the results of a Japanese study of 34 non-diabetic hypertensive and 34 non-diabetic normotensive women. Multiple assessments of the group revealed statistically significant increased urinary calcium, lower BMD, depressed serum calcium and elevated circulating PTH in the hypertensive sample (Gotoh et al. 2005).

With another study implicating high serum calcium as an independent indicator of both increased coronary heart disease risk and its severity (Rasouli & Mohseni Kiasari 2006), it is clear that whatever calcium’s relationship to cardiovascular disease, it is a complex one and more research with consistent findings is required before any conclusions can be drawn.

**PREMENSTRUAL SYNDROME**

Of all the vitamins and minerals used in the treatment of PMS, calcium supplements show overwhelmingly positive results.
One of the earliest trials to show that calcium supplementation can alleviate symptoms in PMS was conducted in 1989 (Thys-Jacobs et al 1989). A randomised, double-blind crossover trial involving 33 women with confirmed PMS compared the effects of daily 1000 mg calcium carbonate with placebo over 6 months. Results showed that 73% of women reported improved symptoms while taking calcium supplementation whereas 15% preferred placebo. The premenstrual symptoms responding significantly to calcium supplementation were mood changes, water retention and premenstrual pain. Menstrual pain was also significantly alleviated.

In 1993, the American Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology published a study that compared the effects of calcium (587 mg or 1336 mg) and manganese (1.0 mg or 5.6 mg) on menstrual symptoms. Ten women with normal menstrual cycles were observed over four 39-day periods during the trial (Penland & Johnson 1993). The researchers found that increasing calcium intake reduced mood, concentration and behavioural symptoms generally and reduced water retention during the premenstrual phase. Additionally, menstrual pain was reduced.

A more recent large, double-blind, placebo-controlled, randomised parallel-group study was conducted in the United States and supports the previous findings (Thys-Jacobs et al 1998). Four hundred and sixty-six premenopausal women with confirmed moderate to severe PMS were randomly assigned to receive either 1200 mg elemental calcium (from calcium carbonate) or placebo for three menstrual cycles. Symptoms were documented daily by the subjects based on 17 core symptoms and 4 symptom factors (negative affect, water retention, food cravings and pain). Additionally, adverse effects and compliance were monitored daily. During the luteal phases of both the second and third treatment cycles, a significantly lower mean symptom score was observed in the calcium group. By the third treatment cycle, calcium treatment resulted in a 48% reduction in total symptom score compared with baseline, whereas placebo achieved a 30% reduction. Furthermore, all four symptom factors responded in the calcium treated group.

A 1999 review of multiple trials investigating calcium supplementation as an effective therapy for PMS has found overwhelming positive results (Ward & Holiman 1999).

Some researchers in this area have hypothesised that part of the PMS aetiology lies in calcium dysregulation in the luteal phase and have highlighted the dramatic similarities between symptoms of PMS and hypocalcaemia (Thys-Jacobs 2000). Recent data from the Nurses Health Study II support this theory, with evidence of low calcium and vitamin D levels in PMS populations when compared to controls (Bertone-Johnson et al 2005).
**WEIGHT LOSS**

A review by Teegarden (2003) was one of the most substantial early contributions to the hypothesis regarding calcium’s role in accelerating weight loss. The review brought together a broad range of trials dating back 10 years to the original findings demonstrated on hypertensive rats. In an updated review published in 2005, while acknowledging the promising data that has emerged over the intervening 2 years, Teegarden notes that the current body of evidence has a number of limitations and flaws that need to be addressed before the full extent of calcium’s effect on weight loss can be determined.

Although the underlying mechanism of action remains unclear, there is general acceptance that high calcium intake depresses PTH levels and 1,25(OH)2D, which in turn decreases intracellular calcium, thereby potentially inhibiting lipogenesis and stimulating lipolysis within the cells (McCarty & Thomas 2003, Schrager 2005, Zemel et al 2004). Additional proposed actions include increased rates of faecal fat and energy excretion (14.2 g/day vs 5.9 g/day and 1045 kJ/day vs 684 kJ/day), as observed in a preliminary study of 10 subjects, during a 1-week high-calcium and normal protein diet (1800 mg/day and 15% of total energy intake, respectively) (Jacobsen et al 2005). Interestingly, these increased losses were not evident when high calcium and protein intake was combined (23%).

One prolific researcher in this area is Zemel (2004, Zemel et al 2004, 2005a, b), who has published three small trials investigating the effects of dietary and supplemental calcium in patients for weight maintenance or weight loss. These trials have consistently yielded positive results, demonstrating that in addition to enhanced weight loss on isocaloric and identical macronutrient profiles, with or without energy restriction, a diet providing high calcium levels of 1100–1200 mg/day results in central fat loss and corresponding improvements in blood pressure, insulin sensitivity and retention of lean tissue. Australian researchers Bowen et al have also demonstrated similar results (2004).

Zemel et al conclude that dietary calcium and, in particular, dairy based foods are the most effective form of calcium for weight loss and that results are significant within 12 weeks.

In stark contrast to this, there have been a number of studies reporting negative results. A trial of isocaloric energy restricted diets in 54 overweight subjects with either low or high calcium intake from dairy products found that over 12 months there was no significant difference in weight loss between the two groups (Harvey-Berino et al 2005). Other studies incorporating calcium supplements of 1000 mg/day yielded negative results over 3 25-week periods in pre- and postmenopausal women.
(Shapses et al 2004), as did a longitudinal study of dietary habits in adolescents (Berkey et al 2005).

Finally caution is being encouraged by many authorities who are keen to remind researchers that epidemiological data have positively linked high dairy diets with a range of other conditions, most notably prostate cancer (Lanou 2005).

**Nephrolithiasis**
In spite of previous concerns regarding a causal relationship between dietary or supplemental calcium intake and the recurrence of oxalate stones, recent studies demonstrate that this fear is unfounded. A study comprised 120 men who experienced recurrent calcium oxalate stones as a sequel to idiopathic hypercalcuria and who were randomly assigned to either a low-calcium diet or low-animal-protein, low-salt normal-calcium diet and assessed for changes in frequency of stone formation. Results clearly showed reduced oxalate excretion in those on a normal calcium intake, as well as a greater decrease in calcium oxalate saturation (Borghi et al 2002).

In another study of 14 healthy men, assessment of the influence of dietary calcium on the given amount of oxalate demonstrated that with the inclusion of additional calcium (1121 mg) urinary oxalate levels did not increase, while they did in the control group (Hess et al 1998). The view is that, rather than being a contributing factor for oxalate stones, dietary calcium, through its binding of oxalate in the gut, can minimise recurrence, and this is substantiated by other studies (Curhan et al 1997, Liebman & Chai 1997). A preventative role for supplemental calcium remains less clear.

**Other Uses**

**Hyperlipidaemia**
In a randomised, placebo-controlled crossover trial of 56 patients with mild–moderate hypercholesterolaemia on a controlled low cholesterol diet, calcium carbonate supplementation was shown to significantly reduce LDL levels by 4.4%, with additional 4.1% increases in HDL levels. No other effects on other blood lipids or blood pressure were observed (Bell et al 1992).

**Dry Eye**
A controlled double-masked study of petrolatum ointment containing 10% w/w calcium carbonate applied on the lower lid twice daily for 3 months resulted in significant improvements in all criteria assessed. However, significance over placebo was only found in ocular surface staining, therefore determination of the action of...
petrolatum needs to be established and controlled for in future studies to identify the therapeutic value of calcium (Tsubota et al 1999).

**FLUOROSIS**
Calcium has been shown to reduce the clinical manifestations of fluorosis in children exposed to contaminated water (Gupta et al 1996).

**DOSAGE RANGE**

**AUSTRALIAN RDIs**
- **Infants**
  - 1–3 years: 500 mg/day.
  - 4–8 years: 700 mg/day.
- **Children**
  - 9–11 years: 1000 mg/day.
  - 12–18 years: 1300 mg/day.
- **Adults**
  - <70 years: 1000 mg/day.
  - >70 years: 1300 mg/day.
- **Pregnancy**: 1000–1300 mg/day.
- **Lactation**: 1000–1300 mg/day.

**ACCORDING TO CLINICAL STUDIES**
- **Osteoporosis prophylaxis**: 1500 mg/day in combination with accessory nutrients (e.g. zinc, manganese, copper and fluoride, HRT or antiresorptive drugs).
- **Premenstrual syndrome**: 1200–1600 mg/day.
- **Prevention of pre-eclampsia**: 2000 mg/day.
- **Increased BMD in children with low intake**: 100 mg/day.
- **Supplementation during pregnancy to increase mineral accretion in fetus**: 2000 mg/day for last trimester.
- **Allergic rhinitis**: 100 mg/day.
- **Hyperacidity**: 500–1500 mg/day as required.
- **Hyperlipidaemia**: 400 mg three times daily.
- **Hypertension**: 1000–2000 mg/day.
- **Dry eye**: 10% w/w calcium carbonate in petrolatum base applied twice daily.
- **Fluorosis in children**: 250 mg/day.
- **Prevention of colorectal cancer**: 1200 mg/day.
- **Weight loss**: 1000 mg/day.
ADVERSE REACTIONS
Oral administration of calcium supplements may cause gastrointestinal irritation, constipation and flatulence.

Hypercalcaemia  Increased serum calcium may be associated with anorexia, nausea and vomiting, constipation, hypotonia, depression and occasionally lethargy and coma. Prolonged hypercalcaemic states, especially if associated with normal or elevated serum phosphate, can precipitate ectopic calcification of blood vessels, connective tissues around joints, gastric mucosa, cornea and renal tissue (Wilson et al 1991).

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
Calcium carbonate when taken as an antacid alters the absorption and excretion of a wide range of drugs. Please refer to a drug interaction guide for specific concerns. Only those interactions encountered with oral administration of calcium supplements will be included in this section.

ZINC
Calcium supplementation has been shown in some studies to increase faecal losses of zinc (McKenna et al 1997) — ensure adequate zinc intake and monitor for signs and symptoms of deficiency.

MAGNESIUM
Magnesium decreases calcium absorption as they compete for the same absorption pathway — separate doses by at least 2 hours.

PHOSPHORUS
Excess intake (soft drinks, meat consumption) can increase urinary excretion of calcium — ensure adequate calcium intake and monitor for signs and symptoms of deficiency.

CAFFEINE
Caffeine increases urinary excretion of calcium — ensure adequate calcium intake and monitor for signs and symptoms of deficiency.

EXCESS DIETARY FAT
This increases urinary excretion of calcium — ensure adequate calcium intake and monitor for signs and symptoms of deficiency.

EXCESS FIBRE, INCLUDING GUAR GUM
May simply delay or decrease absorption of calcium — separate doses by at least 2 hours.
**CARDIAC GLYCOSIDES**
Administered concurrently, high-dose calcium supplements can act synergistically with these drugs, which may induce arrhythmias and potentiate their toxicity — use this combination with caution.

**CALCIUM-CHANNEL BLOCKERS**
Calcium supplements can have an antagonistic effect on the desired action of calcium channel blockers that could precipitate the re-emergence of arrhythmias — avoid high-dose supplements unless under professional supervision.

**TETRACYCLINES**
Calcium supplements form complexes with these antibiotics and render 50% or more insoluble, therefore reducing the efficacy of the drug and absorption of calcium — separate doses by at least 2 hours.

**THIAZIDE DIURETICS**
These diuretics decrease urinary excretion of calcium. Monitor serum calcium and look for signs of hypercalcaemia, such as anorexia, polydipsia, polyuria, constipation and muscle hypertonia when using high-dose calcium supplements. Contributing risk factors are the presence of hyperparathyroidism or concurrent use of vitamin D.

**CORTICOSTEROIDS**
Both oral and long-term inhaled corticosteroids inhibit vitamin-D-mediated calcium absorption: overall levels of calcium may be decreased — ensure adequate calcium intake and monitor for signs and symptoms of deficiency. Consider supplementation with long-term drug therapy.

**OESTROGEN AND PROGESTERONE**
Calcium supplementation in combination with these hormones will have an additive effect on minimising bone resorption in postmenopausal women — potential beneficial interaction, so consider increasing intake.

**ALENDRONATE**
Calcium causes decreased absorption of this drug. However, as calcium supplementation is a fundamental adjuvant to the prevention of BMD loss, supplementation should still be encouraged — separate doses by at least 2 hours.

**ETIDRONATE**
Calcium may reduce drug absorption; however, adequate calcium is required for optimal drug effects — separate doses by at least 2 hours.
**LEVOTHYROXINE**
Calcium administered concurrently may reduce drug absorption — separate doses by at least 4 hours.

**LYSINE**
Additive effects may occur as lysine enhances intestinal absorption and reduces renal excretion of calcium — potentially beneficial interaction.

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**
People with hyperparathyroidism or chronic kidney disease should only take calcium supplements under medical supervision. Calcium supplementation is contraindicated in hypercalcaemia.

**PREGNANCY USE**
Many trials have established the safety of calcium supplementation during pregnancy in doses up to 2000 mg elemental calcium per day.

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**
- Calcium is an essential mineral required for the proper functioning of numerous intracellular and extracellular processes, including muscle contraction, nerve conduction, beating of the heart, hormone release, blood coagulation, energy production and maintenance of immune function.
- Low calcium states are associated with several serious diseases such as colorectal cancer, osteoporosis types I and II, hypertension, pre-eclampsia and eclampsia.
- Although supplementation is traditionally used to correct or avoid deficiency states, research has also shown a role in the prevention of osteoporosis, pre-eclampsia and management of numerous disease states (e.g. PMS).
- Calcium can interact with numerous drugs and should be used with caution by people with renal disease or hyperparathyroid conditions.

**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

**What will this supplement do for me?**
Calcium is essential for health and wellbeing. Although used to prevent or treat deficiency states, and primarily associated with BMD, it is also beneficial in a wide range of conditions such as prevention of pre-eclampsia, some forms of hypertension, maintenance of fetal growth, treatment of lead toxicity and PMS. It is considered to be a critical nutrient in pregnancy.

**When will it start to work?**
This will depend on the indication it is being used to treat; however, in most instances long-term administration is required (i.e. months to years).
Are there any safety issues?
In very high doses, calcium supplements can cause some side-effects, including constipation, but generally calcium is considered very safe and has a wide therapeutic range. High-dose supplements should not be used by people taking some medications. (See SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS above for specific information.)

REFERENCES
Campbell IA, Douglas JG, Francis RM, Prescott RJ, Reid DM. Five year study of etidronate and/or calcium as prevention and treatment for osteoporosis and fractures in patients with asthma receiving long term oral and/or inhaled glucocorticoids. Thorax 59 (2004): 761-8.


Teegardn D. Calcium intake and reduction in weight or fat mass. J Nutr 133 (2003): 249-51S.


Calendula

Historical note  Calendula is indigenous to Eastern Europe and the Mediterranean where its medicinal value has been respected since ancient times. Calendula was popular in Ancient Greece and in earlier Indian and Arabic cultures. It has been a common garden plant since the 12th century and it is mentioned in several older herbals. The name calendula comes from the Latin *calends*, meaning the first day of the month, referring to the plant’s near continual flowering habit.

**COMMON NAME**
Marigold

**OTHER NAMES**
Pot or garden marigold, gold-bloom, holligold.

Field marigold (*Calendula arvensis*) is also used medicinally for the same indications because it has similar constituents.

**BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY**
*Calendula officinalis* (family Asteraceae [Compositae or Daisy])

**PLANT PARTS USED**
The flowers are primarily used, but the stems, younger leaves, seeds and roots all have medicinal properties.

**CHEMICAL COMPONENTS**
The major constituents are triterpene saponins (2–10%) based on oleanolic acid and flavonols (3-o-glycosides of isorhamnetin and quercetin), including astraaglin, hyperoside, isoqueritrin and rutin, as well as the carotenoids flavoxanthin and auroxanthin (Bako et al 2002). The triterpendiol esters faradiol laurate, faradiol myristate and faradiol palmitate have been identified as the major active compounds, which are also used as marker compounds for standardisation of calendula extracts (Hamburger et al 2003, Zitterl-Eglseer et al 2001). The terpenoids faradiol, amidiol and calenduladiol have been shown to have anti-inflammatory activity (Neukirch et al 2005).

Other constituents include essential oil, sesquiterpenes, including caryophyllene, and triterpenes, including amyrins, lupeol and lupenone. Calendula also contains...
polysaccharides (WHO 2003), as well as minerals such as calcium, sodium, potassium, magnesium, iron, copper and manganese (Ahmed et al 2003).

**MAIN ACTIONS**

**ANTIMICROBIAL**

Hydro-alcoholic extracts have been shown to have antibacterial, antiviral and antifungal activities. The in vitro antifungal activity of calendula flower extracts has been investigated against *Aspergillus niger*, *Rhizopus japonicum*, *Candida albicans*, *C. tropicalis* and *Rhodotorula glutinis*. Calendula extract showed a high degree of activity against all fungi and the inhibitory effect was comparable to that of standard antifungals (Kasiram et al 2000). A flower extract has been shown to inhibit trichomonas. The oxygenated terpenes are thought to be the main active compounds (Gracza & Szasz 1968, Samochowiec et al 1979). A 70% hydro-alcoholic extract demonstrated virucidal activity against influenza virus and suppressed the growth of HSV (Bogdanova et al 1970). Calendula flower extract has also been shown to possess anti-HIV activity in vitro (Kalvatchev et al 1997).

**PROMOTES WOUND HEALING**

An ointment containing 5% calendula flower extract, as well as an ointment containing two different fractions of calendula extract combined with allantoin, has been shown to stimulate physiological regeneration and epithelisation in experimentally induced surgical wounds. The effect is thought to be due to more intensive metabolism of glycoproteins, nucleoproteins and collagen proteins during regeneration of the tissues (Klouchek-Popova et al 1982). A combination of calendula, *Actium lappa* and *Geranium robertianum* has been shown to improve healing of ulceration in 52 patients suffering herpetic keratitis compared with treatment with acyclovir alone (Corina et al 1999).

**ANTI-INFLAMMATORY**

Anti-inflammatory activity has been demonstrated in several animal models. Pretreatment with an 80% hydro-alcoholic extract reduced carrageenan-induced rat paw oedema at a dose of 100 mg extract/kg. Endomethacin 5 mg/kg was shown to be 4-fold more potent in the same experiment (Mascolo et al 1987). Both a 70% hydro-alcoholic extract and a CO₂-extract have been shown to inhibit experimentally induced inflammation and oedema. The triterpenoids were shown to be the main active anti-inflammatory compounds, with the faradiol monoester appearing to be the most relevant compound due to its quantitative prevalence (Della et al 1994). A freeze-dried extract of calendula was found to suppress both the inflammatory effect...
and leukocyte infiltration in an inflammatory model induced by the simultaneous injection of carrageenan and PGE\textsubscript{1} (Shipochliev et al 1981).

**OTHER ACTIONS**

**REDUCES OEDEMA**

Oral administration of a triterpene-containing fraction prevented the development of ascites and increased survival time compared with controls in mice inoculated with a carcinoma (Boucaud-Maitre et al 1988). The main triterpendiol esters of calendula, the faradiol esters, have been shown to possess anti-oedema activity by inhibiting croton oil-induced oedema of the mouse ear (Zitterl-Eglseer et al 1997).

**IMMUNOMODULATION**

Isolated polysaccharides have been shown to stimulate phagocytosis of human granulocytes (Varljen et al 1989, Wagner et al 1985). A 70% ethanol extract of calendula was shown to completely inhibit the proliferation of lymphocytes in the presence of phytohaemagglutinin in vitro (Amirghofran et al 2000).

**ANTIOXIDANT**

Calendula has free radical scavenging and antioxidant activity, with aqueous extracts having greater activity than methanolic extracts and antioxidant activity being related to the total phenolic content and flavonoid content (Cetkovic et al 2004). The butanolic fraction of a calendula extract has been shown to reduce superoxide and hydroxyl radicals, suggesting a free radical scavenging effect. Lipid peroxidation in liver microsomes is also reduced (Cordova et al 2002). Isorhamnetin glycosides isolated from calendula have been shown to inhibit the activity of lipo-oxygenase (Bezakova et al 1996).

**HYPOGLYCAEMIC ACTIVITY**

A methanolic extract and its butanol-soluble fraction have been found to have hypoglycaemic and gastroprotective effects and to slow gastric emptying. From the butanol-soluble fraction, four new triterpene oligoglycosides, calendasaponins A, B, C and D, were isolated, together with eight known saponins, seven known flavonol glycosides, and a known sesquiterpene glucoside. Their structures were elucidated on the basis of chemical and physicochemical evidence. The principal saponin constituents, glycosides A, B, C, D and F, exhibited potent inhibitory effects on an increase in serum glucose levels in glucose-loaded rats, gastric emptying in mice, and ethanol and indomethacin-induced gastric lesions in rats (Yoshikawa et al 2001).
**Hypolipidaemic Activity**
Oral administration of an isolated saponin fraction has been shown to reduce serum lipid levels in hyperlipidaemic rats (ESCOP 1996).

**Hepatoprotective**
Calendula extracts have been shown to have hepatoprotective effects on rat hepatocytes both in vitro and in vivo (Barajas-Farias et al 2006, Rusu et al 2005), with cytotoxic and genotoxic effects being evident at very high doses (Barajas-Farias et al 2006, Perez-Carreon et al 2002).

**Clinical Use**
Calendula is generally used in the treatment of inflammatory skin disorders or inflammation of the mucosa and as an aid to wound healing (Blumenthal et al 2000, ESCOP 1996). It is used both internally and topically for a variety of indications.

**Wounds and Burns**
Historically, calendula flower preparations have been used to accelerate the healing of wounds, burns, bruises, grazes and minor skin infections. In recent times, it has been investigated for its effects on wound healing in a variety of experimental models and clinical studies as either a stand-alone topical treatment or in combination with other ingredients.

In a RCT involving 254 patients treated with adjuvant radiotherapy for breast cancer, topical treatment with calendula to the irradiated skin was found to be significantly more effective than trolamine in reducing acute dermatitis, with patients receiving calendula having less frequent interruption of radiotherapy and significantly reduced radiation-induced pain (Pommier et al 2004). In another controlled trial involving 34 patients with venous leg ulcers, a calendula extract applied twice daily for 3 weeks was found to produce a statistically significant acceleration in healing compared to a saline solution (Duran et al 2005).

Calendula ointment (8%, 1:10 tincture in 70% alcohol) is a useful adjuvant treatment during cosmetic surgery, according to a study of 19 cleft lip patients with discoloured scar tissue. Pretreatment with the calendula ointment under a gauze dressing every evening for 1 month improved the results of dermatography, a refined tattooing technique used to improve the appearance of scars (Van der Velden & Van der Dussen 1995). Another clinical study used a mixture of chlorhexidine acetate and a 2% calendula extract as a haemostatic aerosol, producing good results (Garg & Sharma 1992).

A larger, open, randomised parallel study of 156 patients in four burn centres in France compared the effects of three different topical ointments (calendula, a
proteolytic ointment and vaseline) on the management of second and third degree burns. A thick layer of the test ointment was applied daily under a closed dressing until grafting or spontaneous healing occurred and effectiveness was evaluated between the 8th and 12th day of treatment. Failure was defined as the presence of an eschar, local infection, premature treatment discontinuation or failure to complete the study. A marginally significant difference in favour of calendula over vaseline was observed and calendula was significantly better tolerated than the other treatments (Lievre et al 1992).

Prophylactic treatment with calendula ointment has also been used successfully to reduce the incidence and severity of bedsores in an open multicentre study. In other studies, positive results have been demonstrated in the treatment of poor venous return associated with ulcers, thrombophlebitis and other cutaneous changes such as inflammation, cracks and eczema (Issac 1992).

In practice, calendula is sometimes used together with St John’s wort for stronger effects. The combination of Calendula arvensis (field marigold) and Hypericum perforatum oils has been shown to improve the epithelial reconstruction of surgical wounds in childbirth with caesarean section (Lavagna et al 2001).

Commission E approves the external use of calendula for poorly healing wounds and leg ulcers (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**GASTROINTESTINAL INFLAMMATORY DISORDERS**

An oral mixture of Symphytum officinalis (comfrey) and calendula was beneficial in the treatment of duodenal ulcers and gastroduodenitis according to a study involving 170 patients. Of these, 137 were treated with the herbal combination and 33 also received an antacid. A dramatic 90% of treated patients became pain free and 85% had a reduction in dyspeptic complaints. Gastric acidity showed a statistically insignificant tendency to decrease in both groups. Gastroscopy later revealed that the ulcers had healed in 90% of patients (Chakurski et al 1981). Interestingly, a smaller study conducted by the same researchers involving only 32 patients with the same condition failed to detect a beneficial effect (Matev et al 1981).

A further study by the same authors found another mixture containing calendula to be beneficial in the treatment of chronic colitis. A combination of Taraxacum officinale, Hypericum perforatum, Melissa officinalis, Calendula officinalis and Foeniculum vulgare was shown to relieve the spontaneous and palpable pains along the large intestine in over 95% of the patients (n = 24) by day 15 of treatment. Defecation was normalised in patients with diarrhoea and constipated patients were successfully treated with the addition of Rhamus frangula, Citrus aurantium and

Although encouraging, the role of calendula as a stand-alone treatment is difficult to determine from these studies.

GINGIVITIS
Calendula has been shown in an open, clinical study to be beneficial in the treatment of chronic catarrhal gingivitis (Krazhan & Garazha 2001). Interestingly, calendula extract failed to show any significant activity against common oral microorganisms in a second study that tested it against the saliva and dental plaque from 20 infants in vitro (Modesto et al 2000); however, a homeopathic preparation of calendula has been found to inhibit Streptococcus mutans (Giorgi et al 2004).

Commission E approves the internal and topical use of calendula flowers for inflammation of the oral and pharyngeal mucosa (Blumenthal et al 2000).

OTHER USES
The British Herbal Pharmacopoeia recommends calendula for gastric and duodenal ulcers, amenorrhoea, dysmenorrhoea and epistaxis (BHMA 1983). Topically it is recommended for leg ulcers, varicose veins, haemorrhoids, eczema and proctitis. The specific indications are for enlarged or inflamed lymphatic nodes, sebaceous cysts, duodenal ulcers, and acute and chronic inflammatory skin conditions. Its styptic activity makes it a popular topical treatment for bleeding.

DOSAGE RANGE
- Dried herb: 1–2 g as an infusion daily in divided doses.
- Liquid extract (1:2): 15–30 mL/week for internal use or 1.5–4.5 mL/day in divided doses. Dilute 1:3 for external application.
- Tincture (1:5): 0.3–1.2 mL three times daily.
- Calendula oil can be produced by steeping fresh flowers in vegetable oil for 1 week. Strain before use.

TOXICITY
Calendula has low toxicity. No symptoms of toxicity were found after long-term administration of a calendula extract in animal studies (Elias et al 1990, ESCOP 1996). Calendula has also been found to be neither mutagenic nor carcinogenic (Elias et al 1990).

ADVERSE REACTIONS
Irritant dermatitis from calendula has been reported (Paulsen 2002, Reider et al 2001) but is rare. Sesquiterpene lactones are the most important allergens present in
Compositae species, but there are a few cases of sensitisation from a coumarin, a sesquiterpene alcohol and a thiophene (Paulsen 2002).

A study of over 1000 patients randomly chosen from several different patch test clinics identified only one who reacted to calendula (Bruynzeel et al 1992). Patch test results need to be carefully interpreted because false positives can occur, as the following case shows. A 35-year-old woman with recalcitrant atopic dermatitis, with a positive patch-test reaction to Compositae mix, was told she was allergic to calendula. However, it turned out that she followed a self-devised diet consisting largely of food products of the Compositae family (which includes lettuces and artichoke). On excluding these foods her skin condition improved quickly. This case report underscores the difficulty in determining the relevance of positive patch tests, and shows that thorough analysis of positive patch tests, by both patient and physician, may reveal unexpected or less common sources of contact allergens (Wintzen et al 2003).

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**
Controlled studies are not available to assess the interaction potential of calendula.

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**
Use with caution in patients with confirmed allergy to herbs or foods from the Compositae family.

**PREGNANCY USE**
Insufficient reliable information available to assess safety.

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**
- Calendula has antimicrobial and anti-inflammatory activity and promotes wound healing.
- There is some evidence from clinical trials that calendula may be beneficial in the treatment of burns, wounds and gastrointestinal inflammation and ulceration.
- People who are sensitive or allergic to foods or plants from the Compositae family should use calendula with caution.
ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this herb do for me?
Calendula is used for inflammatory skin conditions, including poor wound healing, burns and ulcers, due to its non-irritant, antiseptic and healing properties. Internally it is used for inflammation and ulceration of the digestive tract.
When will it start to work?
Topical effects are quickly established and should improve with continuous use. Internal use may take longer.
Are there any safety issues?
Although there have been some reports of allergic reactions to calendula, these are very rare. Calendula is generally well tolerated by children and adults.

REFERENCES


Paulsen E. Contact sensitization from Compositae-containing herbal remedies and cosmetics. Contact Dermatitis 47.4 (2002): 189-98.


Reider N et al. The seamy side of natural medicines: Contact sensitization to arnica (Arnica montana L.) and marigold (Calendula officinalis L.). Contact Dermatitis 45.5 (2001): 269-72.


Wagner H et al. Immunostimulating action of polysaccharides (heteroglycans) from higher plants. Arzneimittelforschung 35.7 (1985): 1069-75.
Carnitine

BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS
Carnitine was discovered in 1905, although its role in metabolism was only described in the mid 1950s and deficiency symptoms outlined in 1972. It is a trimethylated amino acid, roughly similar in structure to choline, that is ingested through the diet and also synthesised from lysine and methionine in the body. To do this, a large number of cofactors are required, such as S-adenosyl methionine (SAMe), methionine, magnesium, vitamins C, B6, B2, B3, iron, alpha-ketoglutarate and oxygen (Kelly 1998).

Dietary carnitine is absorbed in the intestine via a combination of active transport and passive diffusion (Li et al 1992). Mucosal absorption is saturated around 2 g carnitine (Harper et al 1988). The bioavailability of carnitine is difficult to establish as reports vary widely from 16–87% (Harper et al 1988, Rebouche & Chenard 1991). Peak blood levels occur 3.5 hours after digestion and excretion is primarily via the kidneys (Bach et al 1983).

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
L-Carnitine is the form most commonly used. As the D form is not biologically active, there is concern that it might interfere with the use of the L isomer by competitive inhibition and thus cause L-carnitine deficiency (Tsoko et al 1995).

Clinical note — Acetyl-L-carnitine shows promise as a strong therapeutic agent

FOOD SOURCES
Red meat is the richest dietary source. Vegetarian sources include avocado and tempeh (Hendler & Rorvik 2001). Human colostrum also contains carnitine (Wahlqvist 2002).

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
**DEFICIENCY SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS**

L-Carnitine deficiency leads to an accumulation of free fatty acids in the cell cytoplasm and of acyl-coenzyme A (CoA) in the mitochondria. This produces a toxic effect and disturbs fatty acid use for energy production (Kletzmayr et al 1999).

Deficiency symptoms (Kelly 1998) include the following:

- hypoglycaemia
- progressive myasthenia
- hypotonia
- fatigue
- cardiomyopathy
- congestive heart failure
- encephalopathy
- hepatomegaly
- neuromuscular disorders
- failure to thrive in infants
- muscle fatigue and cramps
- myoglobinemia following exercise.

Elevation of triglycerides may also occur due to the role of carnitine in fatty acid metabolism.

**PRIMARY DEFICIENCY**

People at risk of primary deficiency are vegetarians, preterm infants and infants receiving a carnitine-free formula, and those with an inherited functional defect.

**Clinical note — Primary carnitine deficiency: an uncommon inherited disorder**

Primary carnitine deficiency is an uncommon inherited disorder, related to a functional defect in plasma membrane carnitine transport in muscle and the kidneys. These conditions have been classified as either systemic or myopathic (Evangeliou & Vlassopoulos 2003, Matera et al 2003). Systemic carnitine deficiency is reflected by low levels of carnitine in plasma and muscle and may result in cardiomyopathy, skeletal myopathy, hypoglycaemia and hyperammonaemia (Hendler & Rorvik 2001). Myopathic deficiency presents with normal plasma but low muscle carnitine levels and is a defect of carnitine transport across the muscle cell membrane (Winter et al 1987).
SECONDARY DEFICIENCY
Secondary carnitine deficiency is associated with several inborn errors of metabolism and acquired medical or iatrogenic conditions, such as the following (Evangelion & Vlassopoulos 2003):

- genetic defects of metabolism, including methylmalonic aciduria, cytochrome C oxidase deficiency, fatty acyl-CoA dehydrogenase deficiency
- medications — patients taking valproate and the anti-HIV drug azidothymidine are at risk
- dialysis — carnitine depletion in haemodialysis patients is caused by insufficient carnitine synthesis and particularly by loss through the dialytic membranes. Many studies have shown that L-carnitine supplementation leads to improvements in several complications seen in uraemic patients, including cardiac complications, impaired exercise and functional capacities, muscle symptoms, increased symptomatic intradialytic hypotension, and erythropoietin-resistant anaemia, normalising the reduced carnitine palmitoyl transferase activity in red cells (Matera et al 2003)
- liver disease, which impairs the last stage of carnitine synthesis, resulting in deficiencies in cardiac and skeletal muscle
- chronic renal failure and renal tubular disorders, in which excretion of carnitine may be excessive
- intestinal resection
- coeliac disease — a case report exists of a 48-year-old man developing encephalopathy due to carnitine deficiency as a result of coeliac disease (Karacak et al 2005). In patients with idiopathic dilated cardiomyopathy associated with coeliac disease a gluten-free diet has been shown to increase serum carnitine levels (Curione et al 2005)
- preterm neonates develop carnitine deficiency due to impaired proximal renal tubule carnitine re-absorption and immature carnitine biosynthesis
- hypopituitarism (Martindale 1999)
- adrenal insufficiency (Hendler & Rorvik 2001)
- advanced AIDS (Hendler & Rorvik 2001)
- vitamin C deficiency (Hendler & Rorvik 2001)
- other chronic conditions — diabetes mellitus, heart failure, Alzheimer’s disease.

MAIN ACTIONS
Carnitine is involved in a myriad of biochemical processes important for health and wellbeing.
CELLULAR ENERGY PRODUCTION
Carnitine assists the transport of fat across cell membranes in muscle tissue for use as an energy source (Wahlqvist 2002). It is essential for mitochondrial fatty acid oxidation, which is the primary fuel source for the heart and skeletal muscles and therefore required for proper functioning (Evangelou & Vlassopoulos 2003, Kelly 1998). This process is also required in order to maintain CoA levels.

IMPROVES BLOOD SUGAR CONTROL (IMPROVES INSULIN SENSITIVITY)
Administration of L-carnitine reduces insulin secretion and improves peripheral glucose use (Grandi et al 1997) and tissue insulin sensitivity (Negro et al 1994).

CELLULAR FUNCTION AND INTEGRITY
Carnitine is involved in the protection of membrane structures, stabilising a physiological CoA-sulfate hydrate/acetyl-CoA ratio, and reduction of lactate production (Matera et al 2003).

OTHER ACTIONS
INCREASES MALE FERTILITY
Based on the high concentrations of L-carnitine in the epididymis, it has been proposed that spermatozoa, which require beta oxidation for energy, may require L-carnitine for proper maturation (Lenzi et al 1992). Human trials have found carnitine therapy (2–3 g/day) to be effective in increasing semen quality, sperm concentration and total and forward sperm motility, especially in groups with lower baseline levels (Lenzi et al 2003). One trial also reported that improvements in sperm motility were only observed in the presence of normal mitochondrial function, determined by phospholipid hydroperoxide glutathione peroxidase levels (Garolla et al 2005).

ANTIOXIDANT
Carnitine acts as an antioxidant in the cell membrane, preventing protein oxidation and pyruvate and lactate oxidative damage (Peluso et al 2000). In vitro studies suggest a dose-dependent inhibition of lipid peroxidation of linoleic acid emulsion superior to (alpha)-tocopherol. In addition, L-carnitine may have an effect on superoxide anion radical scavenging, hydrogen peroxide scavenging, total reducing power and metal chelating on ferrous ions activities (Gulcin 2005).

PREVENTS APOPTOSIS
In vitro and animal studies show that L-carnitine can prevent apoptosis of skeletal muscle cells (Vescovo et al 2002). In patients with HIV it decreases numbers of CD4⁺ and CD8⁺ cells undergoing apoptosis, and significantly increases CD4⁺ counts (Moretti et al 2002).
NEUROPROTECTIVE
Animal studies have demonstrated a reduction in mortality and neuronal degeneration in experimentally induced neurotoxicity (Binienda et al 2004) and a reduction in hypoglycaemia-induced neuronal damage (Hino et al 2005) in rats that were pretreated with carnitine. In vitro studies suggest that the anti-apoptotic and antioxidant actions of L-carnitine contribute to the neuroprotective effect (Ishii et al 2000, Tastekin et al 2005).

LIPID-LOWERING
The role of carnitine in fatty acid metabolism suggests a potential role in hyperlipidaemia. Several studies have indicated that oral L-carnitine significantly reduces lipoprotein-a levels; however, effects on other lipids are inconsistent. L-Carnitine (2 g/day) significantly reduced serum lipoprotein-a levels in 77.8% of subjects receiving active treatment after 12 weeks, according to one placebo-controlled, double-blind randomised study. No significant change was observed in other lipid parameters (Sirtori et al 2000). L-Carnitine (2 g/day) was also shown to significantly lower lipoprotein-a levels at 3 and 6 months in a double-blind placebo-controlled trial of 94 hypercholesterolemic patients with newly diagnosed type 2 diabetes (Derosa et al 2003). In a trial of children with hyperlipidaemia, lipoprotein-a levels were only reduced in those with type II homozygotes and other lipid parameters worsened (Gunes et al 2005). L-Carnitine has also been shown to decrease apolipoprotein B levels in paediatric peritoneal dialysis patients (Kosan et al 2003). A study of elderly people taking l-carnitine (2 g twice daily) demonstrated improvements in total serum cholesterol, LDL-cholesterol, HDL-cholesterol, triglycerides, apoproteins A1 and B at 30 days (Pistone et al 2003). Animal studies have also suggested the potential for carnitine to lower triglyceride levels (Eskandari et al 2004); however, clinical trials using oral doses in type 2 diabetes have indicated an increase in triglycerides (Rahbar et al 2005). Further human trials are required to confirm which population groups may benefit from carnitine supplementation.

CLINICAL USE
Carnitine supplementation may be administered as intravenous or oral doses. This review will only focus on oral supplementation as this is the form generally used by the public and available over the counter.

TREATMENT OF DEFICIENCY
L-Carnitine supplementation is traditionally used to treat or prevent deficiency. It is indicated in primary L-carnitine deficiency and secondary deficiency due to inborn
errors of metabolism or haemodialysis. L-Carnitine 50–200 mg/kg/day has been shown to normalise plasma carnitine levels within 10 days (Campos et al 1993).

**Apnoea of prematurity** Preterm neonates develop carnitine deficiency due to impaired proximal renal tubule carnitine re-absorption and immature carnitine biosynthesis (Evangelou & Vlassopoulos 2003) and are at risk of developing apnoea of prematurity. Despite a promising preliminary study, a blinded, randomised, placebo-controlled study found that infants who received supplemental carnitine did not demonstrate any reduction in apnoea of prematurity, days requiring ventilator or nasal continuous positive airway pressure, or the need for supplemental oxygen therapy (O’Donnell et al 2002). A recent Cochrane review was unable to locate studies of significant quality to confirm any effects (Kumar et al 2004a). Further studies are needed to determine the role of this treatment in clinical practice as present evidence does not support its use (Kumar et al 2004b).

**CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE**
L-Carnitine supplementation in doses ranging from 2 g to 4 g/day has been investigated in a number of controlled studies involving subjects with angina, heart failure, cardiogenic shock, cardiomyopathy and post myocardial infarction. Overall, positive results have been obtained and reduced mortality reported for some populations.

**Chronic stable angina** Controlled studies indicate that L-carnitine supplements increase exercise tolerance and reduce frequency of angina attacks, enabling some patients to reduce nitrate requirements.

One RCT of 47 patients with chronic stable angina found that 2 g L-carnitine taken daily for 3 months moderately improved the duration of exercise and the time taken for ST changes to recover to baseline (Iyer et al 2000). This study confirmed the results of an earlier multicentre, double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled crossover trial that examined the effects of L-carnitine 1 g twice daily for 4 weeks in 44 men with stable chronic angina (Cherchi et al 1985). This study showed that active treatment resulted in increased exercise tolerance and reduced ECG indices of ischaemia in stable effort-induced angina. A meta-analysis also highlighted a significant reduction in the number of angina attacks and nitrate requirements with doses of 2 g/day (Fernandez & Proto 1992).

**Post myocardial infarction** A dose of 4 g/day L-carnitine over 12 months improved quality of life and increased life expectancy in patients who had suffered a MI, according to a controlled study (Davini et al 1992). This included an improvement in heart rate, systolic arterial pressure, a decrease in anginal attacks, and improve-
ment in the lipid profile. Changes were also accompanied by lower mortality in the treated group (1.2% vs 12.5% in the control group).

In a randomised, double-blind placebo-controlled trial, the effects of oral l-carnitine (2 g/day) for 28 days were assessed in patients with suspected acute MI. Total cardiac events, including cardiac deaths and non-fatal infarction, were 15.6% in the carnitine group and 26.0% in the placebo group. Angina pectoris (17.6 vs 36.0%), New York Heart Association class III or IV heart failure plus left ventricular enlargement (23.4 vs 36.0%) and total arrhythmias (13.7% vs 28.0%) were significantly less in the carnitine group compared with placebo (Singh et al 1996).

**Cardiomyopathy** Cardiomyopathy appears to cause leakage of carnitine from heart stores, which may make cardiac tissue vulnerable to damage; however, it is unclear whether carnitine leakage is a cause or effect of cardiomyopathy (Baker et al 2005). Long-term placebo-controlled studies (10–54 months) using an oral dose of 2 g/day l-carnitine for treatment of heart failure caused by cardiomyopathy found a statistically significant advantage in survival rates with carnitine treatment (Rizos 2000). In patients with idiopathic dilated cardiomyopathy associated with coeliac disease, a gluten-free diet has been shown to increase serum carnitine levels (Curione et al 2005).

**Cardiogenic shock** Several studies confirm the role of l-carnitine in the reversible phase of cardiogenic shock in terms of enzymic protection in the course of cellular oxidative damage. This has been reflected in improved survival rates (Corbucci & Lettieri 1991, Corbucci & Loche 1993).

**Congestive heart failure** In congestive heart failure a specific myopathy secondary to myocyte apoptosis triggered by high levels of circulating TNF-alpha has been described. The role of carnitine in preventing apoptosis in skeletal muscle and reducing TNF-alpha provides a theoretical basis for its use in the treatment of myopathy associated with congestive heart failure (Vescovo et al 2002).

**Myocarditis resulting from diphtheria** Two studies using D,L-carnitine (100 mg/kg/day in two divided doses orally for 4 days) found a reduction in the incidence of, and mortality from, myocarditis in diphtheria (Ramos et al 1984, 1992).

**HYPERTHYROIDISM**

Considering that this condition is associated with reduced body stores of carnitine and that l-carnitine is a peripheral antagonist of thyroid hormone action in some tissues according to in vivo studies, carnitine treatment has been investigated in hyperthyroidism.

One 6-month, randomised, double-blind placebo-controlled trial involving 50 women with induced suppression of thyroid-stimulating hormone showed that doses...
of 2 g or 4 g/day oral L-carnitine both reversed and prevented symptoms of the disease and had a beneficial effect on bone mineralisation (Benvenega et al 2001).

**MALE FERTILITY**
A placebo-controlled, double-blind crossover trial of 100 infertile males (aged 20–40 years) found that L-carnitine therapy (2 g/day) was effective in increasing semen quality, sperm concentration and total and forward sperm motility, especially in groups with lower baseline levels (Lenzi et al 2003). The positive effects on sperm motility have also been shown in previous trials using L-carnitine 3 g/day (Costa et al 1994, Vitali et al 1995). In a later trial, improvements in sperm motility were only observed in the presence of normal mitochondrial function, determined by phospholipid hydroperoxide glutathione peroxidase levels (Garolla et al 2005).

**PERIPHERAL VASCULAR DISEASE**
Due to its anti-ischaemic activity, L-carnitine supplements have also been used in peripheral vascular disease. A double-blind crossover study supports this use, finding L-carnitine supplements (2 g/day) taken for 3 weeks increased walking time in people with peripheral vascular disease (Brevetti et al 1988). A derivative of L-carnitine, known as propionyl-L-carnitine, taken for 6 months (2 g/day orally) has also demonstrated significant improvements in walking distance and speed in patients with claudication (Hiatt et al 2001).

**ERGOGENIC AID**
L-Carnitine is a popular supplement amongst athletes in the belief that it will increase performance and recovery. This concept is largely based on the fact that carnitine assists in the transport of fat across cell membranes in muscle tissue and is involved in cellular energy production. Additionally, carnitine reduces insulin secretion and significantly improves peripheral glucose use, when administered with glucose, according to human research (Grandi et al 1997). There is evidence that L-carnitine supplementation may increase maximal oxygen consumption, stimulate lipid metabolism and reduce post-exercise plasma lactate (Karlic & Lohninger 2004).

In a placebo-controlled crossover trial using an L-carnitine–L-tartrate (LCLT) supplement (2 g L-carnitine/day) for 3 weeks, researchers suggested that LCLT supplementation was effective in assisting recovery from high-repetition squat exercise (Volek et al 2002). However, other clinical trials using 2 g L-carnitine twice daily for 3 months found no significant increase in muscle carnitine content, mitochondrial proliferation, or physical performance (Wachter et al 2002).

Trials in subjects with cardiovascular disorders have been more promising. This is supported by the clinical trial discussed earlier involving patients with chronic stable
angina (Iyer 2000). In addition, a clinical trial using 1 g L-carnitine or placebo three times daily for 120 days has indicated a potential for improved performance and effort tolerance in patients with cardiac insufficiency (Loster et al 1999).

OTHER USES

CHRONIC FATIGUE SYNDROME
Studies investigating whether people with CFS have lower levels of free L-carnitine have shown contradictory results (Jones et al 2005), and trials using L-carnitine supplementation in CFS have generally produced mixed results (Plioplys & Plioplys 1995, 1997, Soetekouw et al 2000). One randomised controlled trial did find that 1 g L-carnitine (three times daily) produced a significant clinical improvement, especially between the fourth and eighth week of treatment (Plioplys & Plioplys 1997).

ATTENTION DEFICIT HYPERACTIVITY DISORDER
In a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled double-crossover trial, treatment with L-carnitine (100 mg/kg twice daily, maximum 4 g/day) over 24 weeks significantly decreased the attention problems, delinquency and aggressive behaviour in boys with ADHD (Van-Oudheusden & Scholte 2002). At 6 month follow-up 19 of 24 boys had responded to treatment as judged by parents and teachers.

DIABETES
Carnitine is essential for lipid and carbohydrate metabolism, and correct metabolic control. It has been suggested that some people with diabetes may have reduced levels of total and free carnitine (Mamoulakis et al 2004). Administration of L-carnitine reduces insulin secretion and improves peripheral glucose use (Grandi et al 1997) and tissue insulin sensitivity (Negro et al 1994). Additionally in type 2 diabetes, L-carnitine (1 g 3 times daily) significantly lowers fasting plasma glucose, but may increase fasting triglycerides (Rahbar et al 2005). Although promising, further research is required to elucidate the possible benefits and safety of carnitine supplementation in this population.

HAEMODIALYSIS
Carnitine depletion in haemodialysis patients is caused by insufficient carnitine synthesis and excessive loss through the dialytic membranes (Matera et al 2003). Carnitine supplementation has been approved by the US FDA for the treatment and prevention of carnitine depletion in dialysis patients. Supplementation in such patients is said to improve lipid metabolism, protein nutrition, antioxidant status, and anaemia and may reduce the incidence of intradialytic muscle cramps, hypotension, asthenia, muscle weakness, and cardiomyopathy (Bellinghieri et al 2003). However,
the routine use of L-carnitine in dialysis patients to manage anaemia and refractory dialysis-associated hypotension is contentious and some authors believe that there is insufficient evidence to support this indication (Steinman et al 2003).

**HEPATIC ENCEPHALOPATHY**
Hepatic encephalopathy is a major complication of cirrhosis. Human trials have demonstrated a protective effect of L-carnitine (2 g twice daily) in ammonia-precipitated hepatic encephalopathy in cirrhotic patients at 30 days and more significantly at 60 days (Malaguarnera et al 2003).

**RETT SYNDROME**
A case is reported of a 17-year-old girl with Rett syndrome whose condition improved while using L-carnitine (50 mg/kg/day). Upon cessation, she relapsed whereas re-establishing the treatment saw improvements after 1 week. More specifically, alertness increased, she started reaching for objects with both hands, and answered simple questions with one or two words. Interestingly, serum carnitine levels (free and total) were within normal limits before and after L-carnitine treatment (Plioplys & Kasnicka 1993). An 8-week randomised, placebo-controlled, double-blind crossover trial of L-carnitine has since been completed detecting improvements on the Hand Apraxia Scale and in the subjects’ general wellbeing (Ellaway et al 1999).

**BETA THALASSAEMIA MAJOR**
L-Carnitine treatment 100 mg/kg/day for 3 months improved transfusion time in patients with thalassaemia (Yesilipek et al 1998).

**AGEING**
In a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of 84 elderly subjects (aged 70–92 years) who experienced onset of fatigue after slight physical activity, L-carnitine (2 g twice daily) for 30 days resulted in significant improvements in total fat mass, total muscle mass, lipid profiles, as well as overall improvements in physical and mental fatigue (Pistone et al 2003). Animal studies have demonstrated that supplementation of carnitine (300 mg/kg/day) and lipoic acid (100 mg/kg/day) for 30 days protects mitochondria from ageing by raising mitochondrial energy production and reversing the age-associated decline in mitochondrial enzyme activity (Savitha et al 2005). Studies using standard oral doses of L-carnitine in humans are required to confirm these effects.

**WEIGHT LOSS**
Carnitine is a popular supplement for weight loss when combined with an exercise program. This is based on its biochemical role in the production of energy from fatty
acids. Currently, one clinical trial that has investigated carnitine supplementation together with an aerobic training program failed to detect a significant effect on weight loss (Villani et al 2000).

**DOSAGE RANGE**
- Deficiency: L-carnitine 50–200 mg/kg/day.
- Most conditions: 2–4 g/day L-carnitine or in divided dose (maximum single dose 2 g).

**ACCORDING TO CLINICAL STUDIES**
- Cardiovascular disorders: 2 g/day for at least 3 months may improve exercise tolerance and recovery in people with conditions such as chronic stable angina and cardiac insufficiency, and may also reduce lipoprotein-a levels and improve peripheral vascular disease.
- Hyperthyroidism: 2–4 g/day in divided doses.
- Chronic fatigue syndrome: 1 g three times daily.
- Ergogenic aid: 2 g/day.
- Fertility: 2–3 g/day may be useful to increase sperm motility and concentration.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
Carnitine is well tolerated at recommended doses. Mild gastrointestinal symptoms including abdominal cramps, diarrhoea, nausea and vomiting, heartburn or gastritis may occur. Mild myasthenia has been reported in uraemic patients using the D,L form (Hendler & Rorvik 2001). Changes in body odour have also been noted (Sigma-Tau Pharmaceuticals 1999, Van-Oudheusden & Scholte 2002).

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**

**ANTICOAGULANTS**
According to one case report, L-carnitine 1 g/day may potentiate the anticoagulant effects of acenocoumarol (also known as nicoumalone or acenocumarin) (Martinez et al 1993). Use this combination with caution. Monitor bleeding time and signs and symptoms of excessive bleeding.

**ANTICONVULSANTS (INCLUDING VALPROATE, PHENOBARBITAL, PHENYTOIN, CARBAMAZEPINE)**
Trials with children and adults have shown a reduction in carnitine levels during anticonvulsant therapy (Hug et al 1991, Rodriguez-Segade et al 1989). L-Carnitine deficiency may cause or potentiate valproate toxicity and supplementation is known to reduce the toxicity of valproate, as well as symptoms of fatigue. In a trial using L-carnitine for acute valproate poisoning no adverse events were noted (LoVecchio et
Increased carnitine intake may be required with long-term therapy — potentially beneficial interaction under professional supervision.

**INTERFERON-ALPHA**
Clinical trials with patients being treated with IFN-alpha for hepatitis C observed reduced fatigue when carnitine 2 g/day was co-administered (Neri et al 2003). Increased carnitine intake may be required with long-term therapy — potentially beneficial interaction under professional supervision.

**ADRIAMYCIN (DOXORUBICIN)**
Animal studies suggest long-term carnitine administration may reduce the cardiotoxic side effects of adriamycin (Kawasaki et al 1996). Increased carnitine intake may be required with long term therapy — potentially beneficial interaction.

**INTERLEUKIN-2 IMMUNOTHERAPY**
Clinical trials using L-carnitine (1 g/day orally) found that it may be used successfully to prevent cardiac complications during IL-2 immunotherapy in cancer patients with clinically relevant cardiac disorders (Lissoni et al 1993). Thus a beneficial interaction is possible under professional supervision.

**CHEMOTHERAPY (CISPLATIN)**
Research into the use of L-carnitine 4 g/day for 7 days showed a reduction in fatigue resulting from treatment with cisplatin (Graziano et al 2002) — beneficial interaction is possible under professional supervision.

**HIV DRUGS (ZIDOVUDINE)**
In vitro studies indicate prevention of muscle damage due to carnitine depletion (Dalakas et al 1994, Moretti et al 2002, Semino-Mora et al 1994). Patients with HIV infection undergoing highly active antiretroviral therapy can be carnitine deficient and supplementation of L-carnitine has been proposed to ‘increase the number of CD4 cells and reduce lymphocyte apoptosis; improve symptoms of polyneuropathy; prevent cardiovascular damage from wasting and diarrhoea syndromes; decrease serum levels of triglycerides and TNF(alpha)’ (Ilias et al 2004). Beneficial interaction is possible. Increased carnitine intake may be required with long-term therapy.

**BETAMETHASONE**
A RCT has shown that a combination of low-dose betamethasone (2 mg/day) and L-carnitine (4 g/5 days) was more effective in the prevention of respiratory distress syndrome (7.3% vs 14.5%) and death (1.8% vs 7.3%) in preterm infants than high-dose betamethasone given alone (8 mg/2 days) (Kurz et al 1993) — beneficial interaction possible under professional supervision.
CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
- Chronic liver disease — may impair metabolism or increase biosynthesis of L-carnitine (Krahenbuhl 1996).
- Seizures — may increase incidence of seizures in those with a pre-existing condition (Sigma-Tau Pharmaceuticals 1999).

PREGNANCY USE
Insufficient reliable information is available. However, animal studies have revealed no evidence of decreased fertility or harm to the fetus (Hendler & Rorvik 2001). In fact, some research suggests a role for carnitine.

Requirements for carnitine may increase during pregnancy and a small trial found a positive effect in women diagnosed with placental insufficiency taking 1 g L-carnitine twice daily (Genger et al 1988). Due to the role of L-carnitine in the synthesis of surfactant, trials have also been conducted using L-carnitine in combination with low-dose betamethasone in women with imminent premature delivery, with an improvement in respiratory distress syndrome and mortality rates (Kurz et al 1993).

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Carnitine is an amino acid that is ingested through the diet and also synthesised from lysine and methionine in the body.
- It is involved in numerous biochemical processes and is essential for energy production in the mitochondria of every cell.
- Vegetarians, and preterm infants or those on a carnitine-free formula, are at risk of deficiency. Secondary risk factors include genetic defects of metabolism, liver and renal disease, dialysis, certain medicines and hypopituitarism.
- L-Carnitine 2 g/day for 3 months has been shown to improve exercise tolerance and recovery, especially in people with cardiovascular disorders such as chronic stable angina and cardiac insufficiency. Preliminary evidence also suggests a possible role in hyperthyroidism, male infertility and peripheral vascular diseases such as intermittent claudication.
- Carnitine supplements are also used to promote weight loss and as an ergogenic aid, although large controlled studies are unavailable to assess effectiveness.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this supplement do for me?
L-Carnitine supplements improve clinical outcomes in people with cardiovascular disorders by reducing the frequency of angina attacks, and improving outcomes after heart attack, cardiogenic shock and in cardiomyopathy. It may also reduce...
symptoms in hyperthyroidism, increase male fertility, increase walking distance in people with peripheral vascular disease and reduce the side-effects of some medicines.

**When will it start to work?**
People with cardiovascular disorders such as chronic stable angina and cardiac insufficiency should experience benefits within 1–3 months.

**Are there any safety issues?**
Carnitine is well tolerated, but people with chronic liver disease or epilepsy should use it with caution.

**REFERENCES**
Benvenga S et al. Usefulness of L-carnitine, a naturally occurring peripheral antagonist of thyroid hormone action, in iatrogenic hyperthyroidism: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled clinical trial. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 86(8) (2001): 3579-94.


Pliopolys AV, Pliopolys S. Amantadine and L-carnitine treatment of chronic fatigue syndrome.
Pliopolys AV, Pliopolys S. Serum levels of carnitine in chronic fatigue syndrome: clinical correlates.
Steinman TI et al. L-carnitine use in dialysis patients: is national coverage for supplementation justified? What were CMS regulators thinking: or were they? Nephrol News Issues 17(5) (2003): 28-30, 32-4, 36 passim.


Celery

Historical note  Celery is widely used as a food. The ancient Greeks used celery to make a wine called selinites, which was served as an award at athletic games. Dioscorides described celery as an effective remedy for ‘heated stomach’ and breast lumps and used it as a diuretic for urinary retention and dropsy.

OTHER NAMES
Smallage, marsh parsley, wild celery

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
*Apium graveolens* (family Umbelliferae [Apiaceae])

PLANT PART USED
Fruit (seed)

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Celery is high in minerals, including sodium (Murphy et al 1978), and contains furocoumarins such as psoralen and bergapten (Beier et al 1983). The major constituents of celery seed oil include pinene and D-limonene (Saleh et al 1985). Celery also contains flavonoids, such as apigenin, luteolin and isoquercitrin, and phenolic acids and alkaloids (Fisher & Painter 1996).

MAIN ACTIONS

ANTI-INFLAMMATORY ACTIVITY
Celery has been found to have anti-inflammatory activity, with suppression of carrageenan-induced paw oedema observed in rats (Al-Hindawi et al 1989). Several constituents show anti-inflammatory activity, such as apigenin, eugenol, ferulic acid, luteolin and bergapton (Duke 2003). Studies in rats suggest that some celery seed extracts are highly effective in suppressing experimental arthritis without exhibiting any gastrototoxicity (Whitehouse et al 1999). Further in vivo studies suggest that celery seed extracts were gastroprotective for NSAID gastropathy and that this effect is mediated through non-prostaglandin mechanisms (Whitehouse et al 2001).

CHOLAGOGUE
Aqueous celery extract has also been found to increase bile acid excretion and lower total serum cholesterol levels in genetically hypercholesterolaemic rats (Tsi & Tan 2000).
CHEMOPROTECTIVE
Based on in vivo studies in mice, it has been suggested that the phthalide components of celery may be effective chemoprotective agents (Zheng et al 1993). Celery consumption has been linked to a reduced risk of developing colon cancer (Slattery et al 2000) and stomach cancer (Haenszel et al 1976).

OTHER ACTIONS
Celery is said to have antirheumatic, carminative, antispasmodic, diuretic, antihypertensive and urinary antiseptic activity. Celery extracts have also been found to have significant activity as a mosquito repellent (Tu et al 2004, 2005).

CLINICAL USE
Celery has not been significantly investigated under clinical trial conditions, so evidence is derived from in vitro and animal studies and is largely speculative.

OSTEOARTHRITIS
Evidence of anti-inflammatory activity in experimental models provides a theoretical basis for its use; however, controlled trials are not available to determine effectiveness.

A small uncontrolled trial of 15 patients with chronic arthritis found that treatment with celery seed extract significantly reduced pain symptoms after 3 weeks (Bone 2003).

URINARY TRACT INFECTION
Celery is used in combination with other herbal medicines for the treatment of this condition. Although it is not certain that the herb has antibacterial activity against microorganisms implicated in urinary tract infection, it is used for its diuretic effect.

OTHER USES
Celery has been traditionally used as a diuretic, to improve appetite and digestion, and as a treatment for nervousness and hysteria. The British Herbal Pharmacopoeia gives the specific indication of celery for rheumatoid arthritis and depression (Fisher & Painter 1996).

Oriental medicine uses the seeds to treat headaches and as a digestive aid and emmenagogue.

DOSAGE RANGE
- Fluid extract (1:2): 4.5–8.5 mL/day in divided doses.
- Decoction of dried fruit: 0.5–2 g three times daily.
TOXICITY/ADVERSE REACTIONS
Celery can cause food allergy (Luttkopf et al 2000), with cross-reactivity to a number of other foods (Moneret-Vautrin et al 2002, Vieths et al 2002). Topical exposure to celery may cause contact dermatitis angiooedema and urticaria (Kauppinen et al 1980). Photodermatitis has been recorded with occupational exposure (Seligman et al 1987) and celery has been suggested to cause ocular phototoxicity (Fraunfelder 2004).

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
Controlled studies are not available, so interactions are based on evidence of activity and are largely theoretical and speculative.

NSAIDS
Celery seed extract may reduce gastrointestinal symptoms associated with NSAIDs — beneficial interaction possible.

PENTOBARBITAL
Celery juice has been found to prolong the action of pentobarbital in rats (Jakovljevic et al 2002) — use with caution.

WARFARIN
Celery contains naturally occurring coumarins, which may theoretically exert anticoagulant effects; however, interaction is unlikely (Heck et al 2000, Myers 2002) — observe with high-dose extracts.

THYROXINE
May decrease drug effects (according to one case report) — observe patient.

PSORALEN–UV A (PUVA) THERAPY
Although celery has been found to contain psoralens, celery extract does not seem to be photosensitising, even after ingestion of large amounts; however, it may increase the risk of phototoxicity with concurrent PUVA therapy (Gral et al 1993) — use with caution.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Usual dietary intakes are likely to be safe.

PREGNANCY USE
Likely to be safe when consumed in dietetic amounts; however, safety is not known when used in larger quantities. Avoid high-dose preparations.
PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING

- Celery has been traditionally used as a diuretic. It is used to treat osteoarthritis and demonstrates anti-inflammatory activity in experimental models. Celery is likely to be safe when used in quantities commonly used in foods; however, there is the possibility for allergy and contact sensitivity.
- It is prudent to avoid using celery seed essential oil in amounts greater than those ingested when used as a food.

REFERENCES

Chamomile

Historical note  Chamomiles have been used as medicines since antiquity and traditionally grouped in botanical texts under the same general heading. They were probably used interchangeably. Roman chamomile was reportedly used to embalm the Egyptian Pharaoh, Ramses II, and is thought to have been introduced into Britain by the Romans during their conquests. The Anglo-Saxons used chamomile, presumably the Roman chamomile, as one of their nine sacred herbs. Culpeper lists numerous ailments for which chamomile was used, such as jaundice, fevers, kidney stones, colic, retention of urine and inflammation of the bowel (Culpeper 1995). It was also widely used to treat common conditions in children including colic in infants, teething pains and fever (Grieve 1976). It is used in the treatment of gout and to reduce the severity of sciatic pain, either taken internally or applied as a poultice externally (Culpeper 1995). Today, chamomile tea is one of the most popular herbal teas in Australia and New Zealand, and extracts are also used in cosmetics, as bath preparations, in hair dye for blonde hair, shampoos, mouthwashes and preparations to prevent sunburn (Foster & Leung 1996).

COMMON NAME
German chamomile

OTHER NAMES
Wild chamomile, single chamomile, Hungarian chamomile, pin heads matricaria, blue chamomile, Flos chamomillae vulgaris (Lat)

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
*Chamomilla recutita* (L.) (family Asteraceae [Compositae])

There has been considerable confusion over botanical classification since the plant formerly known as *Matricaria recutita* L. was added to the genus *Chamomilla* in 1974. *Matricaria chamomilla* L. is also used.

PLANT PARTS USED
Flower heads, gathered in summer when they are dry, and carefully dried at low temperatures. Essential oil extracted by steam distillation of the flower heads.
Clinical note — The difference between German and Roman chamomile.

*Chamomilla recutita* is widely distributed in waste lands and in the neglected fields of Europe, particularly in Croatia and Hungary. Selected varieties are cultivated (Bruneton 1995). Many plants are referred to as chamomile or have the word ‘chamomile’ as part of their common name. Of the large number of species of chamomile growing in Europe, North Africa and the temperate region of Asia, five grow wild in the United Kingdom and Europe. Wild varieties are German chamomile (*C. recutita*), Roman chamomile (*C. nobile* (L.)), foetid or stinking mayweed (*Anthemis cotula*), corn chamomile (*Anthemis arvensis*), and yellow chamomile (Grieve 1976).

Roman chamomile, or *Chamaemelum nobile* (L.) (*Anthemis nobile* L.) is the ‘chamomile’ often referred to in English herbals. It has similar uses to the German chamomile, such as an aromatic bitter for digestive conditions, antispasmodic agent, mild sedative, and topically for its anti-inflammatory and mild analgesic properties.

**CHEMICAL COMPONENTS**

- Essential oil (see below) 0.24–1.9%.
- Flavonoids (including flavonols and methoxylated flavones), apigenin (other flavonols are partially hydrolysed to apigenin leading to concentrations of up to 8%), apigetrin (apigenin-7-O-glucoside), apigenin-7-acetylglucoside, apiin (apigenin-7-apiosylglucoside), rutin (quercetin-3-rutinoside), luteolin, quercimeritrin (quercetin-7-O-glucoside), quercetin and isorhamnetin.
- Coumarins — umbelliferone (7-hydroxycoumarin) and herniarin (methyl ether of umbelliferone).
- Proazulenes (sesquiterpene lactones) including matricin, matricarin and desacetylmaticarin.
- Plant acids (acidic mucilage), fatty acids, polysaccharide, choline, amino acids.

**ESSENTIAL OIL**

Chamomile extract produced by a cold extraction process is yellow; steam distillation produces the blue essential oil. This is derived from matricin, also known as proazulene or prochamazulene, a precursor of chamazulene.

Chamazulene (1–15%), farnesene, alpha-bisabolol and bisabolol oxides A and B (up to 50% of the essential oil; proportions vary depending on the chemotype), bisabolone oxide, chamazulene (from matricin on distillation), matricin, chamaviolin, spathulenol and cis- and trans-enzyme dicyclo ethers (spiroether, polyacetylenes).
German chamomile has four chemotypes (variations of the plant product according to chemical composition). These relate to slight variations in the bisabolol oxide content of the essential oil (Gasic et al. 1986). Chemotypes, which contain highest levels of alpha-bisabolol (known as C and D chemotypes), should be sourced when an essential oil is required for antiphlogistic or spasmodytic properties.

MAIN ACTIONS

ANTI-INFLAMMATORY

Chamomile extract and various isolated constituents within chamomile have demonstrated anti-inflammatory activity in a variety of tests.

Chamomile extract showed anti-inflammatory effects when applied topically in animal models of inflammation (Al-Hindawi et al. 1989, Plevova 1999, Shipochliev et al. 1981). In a comparative trial, hydro-alcoholic extracts of chamomile produced anti-inflammatory actions when applied topically in the croton ear test in the mouse. The hydro-alcoholic extract reduced oedema in a dose-dependent manner and was equivalent in effectiveness to benzydamine at twice the usual clinical dose, but hydrocortisone was found to be the most effective treatment (Tubaro et al. 1984).

Another comparative study investigated the anti-inflammatory effects of an extract prepared from dried flowers, an extract based on fresh flowers, and the volatile oil, in croton oil-induced dermatitis of mouse ear. The activity of fresh chamomile equalled the activity of the reference drug (benzydamine).

The anti-inflammatory activity of the herb appears to be due to several different constituents, chiefly apigenin, matricin, chamazulene and alpha-bisabolol, although others may also exist.

The previous study determined that apigenin exerts the strongest anti-inflammatory action, which is ten times greater than matricin, which is ten times greater than chamazulene (Della Loggia et al. 1990). Another study evaluated the effects of apigenin on the lipopolysaccharide-induced pro-inflammatory cytokines IL6 and TNF-alpha in vitro and in vivo (Smolinski & Pestka 2003). Apigenin reduced IL6, but not TNF-alpha in vitro. Pretreatment with the flavone (50 mg/kg) reduced IL6 by 35% and TNF-alpha by 33% in vivo as compared with control animals. Alpha-bisabolol has demonstrated anti-inflammatory and analgesic effects in a number of experimental inflammatory models: rat paw oedema, adjuvant arthritis of the rat, ultraviolet erythema of the guinea pig, and yeast fever of the rat (Jakovlev et al. 1979).

Most studies have investigated the effects of topically applied chamomile or isolated constituents; however, one study using the carrageenan inflammation test on rat paws showed that orally administered matricin produces anti-inflammatory
activity that was greater than chamazulene and almost as effective as
Chamazulene has been found to inhibit leukotriene B4 formation and blocks
chemical peroxidation of arachidonic acid (Safayhi et al 1994).

**ANTIPURITIC**
An ethyl acetate extract and essential oil of chamomile have both shown anti-puritic
activity after a single dose in vivo (Kobayashiet al 2005). Additionally, the antipuritic
effects of the antihistamine H1 antagonists, oxatomide and fexofenadine, were
significantly increased by the ethyl acetate extract.

**ANTISPASMODIC**
Chamomile extract and several constituents demonstrate a dose-dependent
antispasmodic effect in vitro. The major activity is related to bisabolol, spiroethers,
and apigenin. (-)-alpha-bisabolol has an effect equal to papaverine; apigenin was the
most potent flavonoid, being significantly more potent than papaverine. The extract
of chamomile also has a good spasmylytic activity (Achterrath-Tuckermann et al
1980).

**SEDATIVE**
Shinomiya et al found that 300 mg/kg of chamomile extract significantly decreased
sleep latency in a sleep-disturbed rat model (2005). Extracts of chamomile showed
sedative activity on the mouse CNS (Della Loggia et al 1981), and extracts of
chamomile, as well as isolated apigenin, have been shown to bind to benzodiazepine
receptors in vitro. Apigenin showed antianxiety and sedative activity with
intraperitoneal injection in mice (Viola et al 1995).
Ovariectomised rats given inhalations of chamomile oil showed decreased levels of
stress-induced ACTH levels compared with controls; the experiment suggested an
activity similar to benzodiazepine agonists (Yamada et al 1996).

**ANTIMICROBIAL**
According to in vitro studies the essential oil has bactericidal and fungicidal activities
against Gram-positive bacteria (Bacillus subtilis, Staphylococcus aureus) and Candida
albicans in concentrations above 0.05% v/v, but has no effect against the Gram-
negative bacteria Escherichia coli, Pseudomonas aeruginosa (Aggag & Yousef 1972)
and Salmonella typhimurium (Gomes-Carneiro et al 2005). In contrast, extracts of
chamomile have demonstrated antimicrobial activity against E. coli (Ceska et al 1992).
The growth of S. aureus, Streptococcus mutans and group B streptococcus was
inhibited by chamomile extract at concentrations of 10 mg/mL (Cinco et al 1983). In
vitro tests using apigenin have identified inhibitory activity against HIV activation, possibly by affecting viral transcription (Critchfield et al 1997, Trovato et al 2000). Additionally, a semi-purified extract of chamomile has been found to inhibit HSV in vitro (Suganda et al 1983).

**ANTI-ULCER**
Chamomile extract protected rats from developing experimentally induced ulcers. Bisabolol (and extracts of chamomile) prevented the formation of ulcers in experimental animals exposed to indomethacin (NSAID) stress, and alcohol; and reduced the healing time of ulcers induced by chemical stress (acetic acid) or by heat coagulation. Alpha-bisabolol promotes granulation and tissue regeneration in burns and ulcers, and protects against their formation (Szelenyi et al 1979).

**OTHER ACTIONS**

**IMMUNE ENHANCEMENT**
Chamomile extract increased T-lymphocyte rosette formation in vitro in blood samples taken from ear, nose and throat patients with immunodeficiency (Kliachko et al 1994). The polysaccharides (heteroglycans) showed significant immunostimulating activities according to the granulocytes and carbon clearance tests (Wagner et al 1985).

**ANTIOXIDANT**
Chamazulene is a potent antioxidant. It inhibits lipid peroxidation in vitro (Goeters et al 2001) in a dose-concentration- and time-dependent manner (Rekka et al 1996).

**CHOLERETIC**
Chamomile increases the production of bile by the liver (Pasechnik 1966).

**DRUG DEPENDENCE**
Chamomile extract was shown to inhibit the development of morphine dependence and expression of abstinence syndrome in rats. Chamomile reduced frequencies of behaviours associated with withdrawal (paw tremor, rearing, teeth chattering, body shakes, ptosis, diarrhoea and urination) and weight loss (Gomaa et al 2003).

**ANTICARCINOGENIC**
UTERINE EFFECTS
Water extracts of chamomile increased uterine tonus in isolated rabbit and guinea pig uterine horn (Shipochliev 1981b).

PIGMENTATION
Chamomile extract has been found to decrease UV-induced pigmentation as well as the hyperpigmentation found in lentigo senilis (aged or liver spots). Endothelin-1 is a cytokine responsible for stimulating melanocyte function leading to hyperpigmentation. Chamomile has been shown to interrupt the endothelin-1 induced signalling, thereby reducing the ability of melanocytes to proliferate and to synthesise melanin (Ichihashi et al 1999).

CLINICAL USE
Chamomile is most widely taken as a tea, often after meals or as an alternative to caffeine-containing beverages. In clinical practice, the oral dose form most often used is a concentrated extract, in order to produce stronger therapeutic effects. It is also used as a topical treatment in some indications.

SKIN CONDITIONS
Chamomile is used topically for a variety of dermatological conditions. The most tested topical product is known commercially as Kamillosan.

Wound healing  According to a double-blind trial, external application of a chamomile extract improves wound healing. In the study, chamomile extract significantly decreased weeping and improved wound healing after dermabrasion of tattoos (Glowania et al 1987).

Eczema  In one comparative study, 161 patients with eczema on the arms and lower legs were treated with 0.25% hydrocortisone, 5% bufexamac (NSAID), 0.75% fluocortin (glucocorticoid) or a chamomile cream known commercially as Kamillosan. The chamomile cream was as effective as hydrocortisone and was superior to the other two treatments (Aertgeerts et al 1985). (Kamillosan is reportedly made from a high bisabolol-containing chemotype of chamomile.)

Dermatitis  A study involving experimentally-induced toxic dermatitis found that chamomile ointment (Kamillosan) produced a more soothing effect on human skin than a chamomile ointment base or hydrocortisone ointment 0.1% (Nissen et al 1988). (Note: the hydrocortisone cream used in this study was quite weak compared with the usual strength of 0.5–2.5%.)

Chamomile cream helped protect against skin radiation damage in breast cancer patients receiving radiation (Maiche et al 1991). Chamomile cream (Kamillosan) has been shown to be slightly less effective than 0.25% hydrocortisone, but superior to
fluocortin butyl ester and 5% bufexamac in relieving inflammation associated with dermatoses (Aertgeerts 1984, Aertgeerts et al 1985).

Commission E approves the external use of chamomile for inflammation of the skin and mucous membranes, as well as for bacterial skin diseases, including those of the oral cavity and gums (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**SEDATION**
Both oral dose forms and the essential oil of chamomile are used for this indication.

A placebo-controlled study involving 22 volunteers found that inhalation of chamomile oil produced sedative effects and improved mood (Roberts & Williams 1992). Chamomile tea (two teabags in 175 mL of hot water) given to 12 patients during cardiac catheterisation induced a deep sleep in 10 patients, even though the procedure usually causes pain and anxiety (Gould et al 1973).

**GASTROINTESTINAL CONDITIONS**
Chamomile is widely used to relieve stomach cramping, dyspepsia and flatulence. The herb’s antispasmodic and relaxant effects provide a theoretical basis for its use in these conditions.

In an open, multicentre study, 104 patients with gastrointestinal complaints, including gastritis, flatulence and minor spasms of the intestines, were treated for 6 weeks with 5 mL/day of an oral chamomile preparation (standardised to contain 50 mg alpha-bisabolol and 150–300 mg apigenin-7-glucoside per 100 g). By self-evaluation, all patients improved with 44.2% becoming symptom free (Stiegemeyer 1978).

**Diarrhoea in children** In Europe, chamomile is widely used to treat a variety of paediatric complaints.

A prospective, double-blind, randomised trial was used to document the efficacy of a preparation containing chamomile extract and pectin in children aged 6 months to 5.5 years with uncomplicated diarrhoea. The chamomile preparation reduced the duration and severity significantly faster than placebo (de la Motte et al 1997).

Commission E approves chamomile for gastrointestinal spasms and inflammatory diseases of the gastrointestinal tract.

**ANTIBACTERIAL PREPARATIONS**
A phase III, double-blind, placebo-controlled clinical trial of 164 patients assessed the efficacy of chamomile mouthwash in preventing 5-fluorouracil induced stomatitis and found no difference between chamomile and placebo (Fidler et al 1996).
OTHER USES
The British Herbal Pharmacopoeia (1983) recommends chamomile for flatulent nervous dyspepsia, travel sickness, nasal catarrh, nervous diarrhoea and restlessness. Externally, chamomile is recommended for haemorrhoids, mastitis and leg ulcers. The specific indication is for gastrointestinal disturbance with nervous irritability in children and for teething and colic in infants.

Commission E approves the use of inhalations for inflammation and irritation of the respiratory tract and baths and irrigations for anogenital inflammation (Blumenthal et al 2000).

ORAL MUCOSITIS
Methotrexate-induced oral mucositis in a 76-year-old woman was successfully treated by chamomile mouthwash in a recently reported case study (Mazokopakis et al 2005).

The mouthwash consisted of 8 g of flower heads steeped in 1000 mL of boiling water for 15 minutes and then used as a gargle four times daily.

PREVENTING POSTOPERATIVE SORE THROAT
Chamomile extract spray administered before intubation was not able to prevent postoperative sore throat and hoarseness compared with saline spray in a randomised double-blind study (Chan et al 2003).

HAEMORRHAGIC CYSTITIS
Chamomile extract decreased the symptoms of haemorrhagic cystitis. Thirty-two patients were randomly assigned to receive either the antibiotic cotrimoxazole (trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole) alone or with a chamomile extract administered on day one as a bladder instillation, followed by daily hibath use. Symptoms were evaluated after 10 days and indicated that the chamomile group experienced more rapid alleviation of symptoms than the group treated with only cotrimoxazole. The product used was Kamillenextrakt, an ethanolic extract of chamomile flowers (Barsom et al 1993).

DOSAGE RANGE

INTERNAL USE
- German chamomile is used either as a tea made from the dried flower heads, or as an extract.
- Dried flower heads: 2–8 g three times daily by infusion.
- Fluid extract (1:2): 3–6 mL/day.
- Tincture (1:5): 3–10 mL three times daily.
The quality of chamomile varies greatly. For maximum efficacy, use high-grade chamomile (high in alpha-bisabolol). Standardised extracts are usually standardised to either bisabolol or apigenin.

**EXTERNAL USE**
- The dried flowers can also be made into a poultice with the addition of hot water and applied directly to the skin, or the tea can be used to bathe inflamed skin and eyes.
- Essential oil (external use): 5 drops per 100 mL of oil, or per 100 g of cream or ointment.
- In baths and water for compresses, the dose should not exceed 10 drops.
- Inhalation: 5 drops of essential oil in 1 L hot water.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**

**ALLERGIC REACTIONS**
Occasional rare cases of allergic skin reactions have been reported. However, a bibliographic review of 50 reports of ‘chamomile’ sensitivity revealed that in only five papers was the botanical identification of the plant material correlated with *Chamomilla recutita*. In the majority of other instances, the effects were caused by species of the genus *Anthemis*, frequently also called chamomile. Experimental studies on pigs using a rigorous testing technique proved that *C. recutita* possesses low sensitising capacity. The suspected allergen is the sesquiterpene lactone, anthecotulide, found in *Anthemis cotula* L. (stinking mayweed), which only occurs in trace amounts in the bisabolol oxide B-chemotype of genuine chamomile (Hausen et al 1984). Allergic conjunctivitis has been reported with the use of chamomile tea eyewashes, and the pollens contained in the teas have been identified as the allergens responsible. The reaction occurred after first exposure and was thought to be due to cross-reactivity to *Artemesia* pollen (Subiza et al 1989). Pollens are not likely to be present or active in aqueous alcohol extracts of chamomile.

German chamomile is thought to be less allergenic than Roman chamomile, but any variety of chamomile can potentially cause allergic reactions. An enema made from German chamomile (Kamillosan) given during labour to a 35-year-old woman with no history of atopy resulted in life-threatening anaphylaxis and fatal asphyxia of the newborn (Jensen-Jarolim et al 1998). Chamomile enemas are not a usual form of administration.

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**
Controlled studies are not available; therefore, interactions are based on evidence of activity and are largely theoretical and speculative.
**BENZODIAZEPINES**

Theoretically, an additive CNS depressant and antispasmodic effect can occur with concurrent use — observe patients taking this combination, although the combination may be clinically useful when used under supervision.

**DRUGS METABOLISED BY CYP3A4**

Chamomile has been shown to inhibit cytochrome 3A4 enzymes in vitro (Budzinski et al 2000, Ganzera et al 2006, Gomes-Carneiro et al 2005). The clinical significance of this is unknown; however, drugs that are metabolised by these enzymes could theoretically be affected.

**NSAIDS**

Chamomile extract protected test animals from experimentally-induced ulcers — beneficial interaction.

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**

Chamomile is contraindicated in hypersensitivity or known allergy to chamomile or other members of the Asteraceae family (e.g. yarrow, tansy, feverfew, daisy, ragweed).

**PREGNANCY USE**

Safety has not been established scientifically; however, no teratogenic effects have been observed in vivo.

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**

- German chamomile has demonstrated anti-inflammatory, antispasmodic, sedative and antimicrobial activity.
- It is taken orally either as a tea or tincture, used externally as a poultice, cream or ointment or inhaled as an essential oil.
- Internally, it is used to relieve flatulence, gastrointestinal spasm, dyspepsia and induce a sense of relaxation. It is also used for infants with teething pain and colic.
- Externally, chamomile preparations are used to treat dermatitis, enhance wound healing, nappy rash and soothe irritated skin. Comparative studies show it has an anti-inflammatory effect equivalent to low-dose hydrocortisone preparations.
- There is some evidence from clinical trials to support the use of chamomile in the treatment of wounds, eczema, dermatitis, nervousness and tension, diarrhoea in children and for the symptoms of haemorrhagic cystitis (in association with antibiotic therapy).
ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What will this herb do for me?
Chamomile is taken to relieve stomach spasms and flatulence, to induce relaxation and promote sleep. It is also popular for children with teething pain and digestive complaints such as colic or diarrhoea. Applied externally as a cream, ointment or poultice, it is used to reduce skin irritation and inflammation.

When will it start to work?
Chamomile relieves gastrointestinal symptoms quickly, within several minutes. For more chronic problems, it may need to be used long term.

Are there any safety issues?
Chamomile is considered a very safe herb. While there have been reports of allergic reactions, the majority have been due to adulteration with other herbs. Chamomile tea is more likely to cause allergic reactions than either extracts or essential oil. Chamomile should not be used by persons with hypersensitivity or known allergy to chamomile or other members of Asteraceae family (e.g. yarrow, tansy, feverfew, wormwood).

REFERENCES


Aertgeerts P, Albring M, Klaschka F et al. Comparative testing of Kamillosan cream and steroidial (0.25% hydrocortisone, 0.75% fluocortin butyl ester) and non-steroidal (5% bufexamac) dermatologic agents in maintenance therapy of eczematous diseases. Z Hautkr 60.3 (1985): 270-7.


Hausen BM, Busker E, Carle R. The sensitizing capacity of composite plants. VII. Experimental studies with extracts and compounds of Chamomilla recutita (L.) Rauschert and Anthemis cotula L. Plant Med 50.3 (1984): 229-34.


Chaste tree

Historical note  Chaste tree has been used since ancient times for a variety of gynaecological conditions, such as aiding expulsion of the placenta after birth and promoting menstruation. Leaves of the chaste tree were worn by vestal virgins in ancient Rome as a symbol of chastity and it was used during that time to promote celibacy. The berries have been used to reduce fever and headaches, stimulate perspiration and to ‘check violent sexual desires’ in monasteries. A commercially preparation of chaste tree has been available in Germany for over 50 years and it is still commonly used for menstrual irregularities.

OTHER NAMES
Agnus castus, chasteberry, gattilier, hemp tree, keuschlammfruchte, monk’s pepper, wild pepper, vitex

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Vitex agnus-castus (family Labiatae)

PLANT PART USED
Dried ripened or fresh ripe fruits

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Vitex agnus-castus contains many different chemical constituents, including luteolin-like flavonoids (casticin, orientin, isovitexin), iridoid glycosides, aucubin, eurostoside, agnuside, essential fatty acids and the essential oils cineole, limonene and sabinene.

MAIN ACTIONS
A mechanism of action has not been conclusively identified, but it is thought to act on the pituitary–hypothalamic axis.

DECREASES PROLACTIN RELEASE
The most thoroughly studied mechanism for vitex is its interaction with dopamine receptors in the anterior pituitary. Several studies have indicated that vitex acts on dopamine D2 receptors and decreases prolactin levels (Berger et al 2000, Halaska et al 1998, Jarry et al 1994, Meier & Hoberg 1999, Meier et al 2000, Milewicz et al 1993, Sliutz et al 1993, Wuttke et al 2003). It is likely that this mechanism is responsible for the symptom-relieving effects seen with vitex in mastodynia and hyperprolactinaemia (Meier & Hoberg 1999, Milewicz et al 1993, Splitt et al 1997).
Results from one study involving healthy males propose that this effect is dose-dependent, as lower doses (120 mg) were found to increase secretion and higher doses (204–480 mg) were found to decrease secretion (Merz et al 1996).

A study using the vitex extract BNO 1095 (70% ethanol, 30% H2O extract, Bionorica, Neumarkt, Germany) identified that the major dopaminergic compounds are the clerodadienols, which act as potent inhibitors of prolactin release; however, other active compounds of lesser activity were also identified (Wuttke et al 2003).

**OESTROGEN-RECEPTOR BINDING**
Chasteberry extract showed significant competitive binding to oestrogen-receptors alpha and beta in vitro (Liu et al 2001).

**INCREASES PROGESTERONE LEVELS**
A randomised controlled trial of women with hyperprolactinaemia showed that vitex extract (20 mg daily) normalises progesterone levels after 3 months’ treatment (Milewicz et al 1993). In vitro research has found that vitex stimulates progesterone receptor expression (Liu et al 2001).

**OPIOID RECEPTORS**
A recently published study reported that a methanol extract of vitex had affinity to the μ-opiate receptor (Webster et al 2006). Of note, this receptor is the primary action site for beta-endorphin in vivo, a peptide which assists in regulating the menstrual cycle through inhibition of the hypothalamus–pituitary–adrenal axis.

**Clinical note — The opiate system and PMS**
The opiate system consists of mu, delta and kappa opiate receptors and endogenous opiate peptides such as beta-endorphin (Webster et al 2006). The opiate system plays an essential role in regulating tonic pain perception, mood, appetite, and other functions. PMS is characterised by a reduction of opiate activity and the severity of symptoms such as anxiety, food cravings, and physical discomfort is inversely proportional to the amount of decline in beta-endorphin levels in the luteal phase. Based on recent research, the symptom-relieving effects of vitex in PMS may be due to direct activation of analgesic and mood regulatory pathways via opiate receptor activation and/or reversal of the loss of opiate inhibition in the luteal phase.

**CYTOTOXIC ACTIVITY**
Cytotoxic activity has been reported for an ethanolic extract of the dried ripe fruit of vitex against various human cancer cell lines (Ohyama et al 2003, 2005, Weisskopf et
The extract increased intracellular oxidative stress and mitochondrial damage leading to apoptosis.

OTHER ACTIONS
Conflicting results have been obtained in studies with regard to the effect on FSH and LH levels. One clinical study found that vitex extract did not alter them, whereas another showed that it increased LH release (Lauritzen et al 1997, Milewicz et al 1993).

CLINICAL USE
Although double-blind studies have recently been conducted with chasteberry, uncontrolled trials go back to the 1940s when a product known as Agnolyt was tested. The product was developed and patented by Dr Gerhard Madaus in Germany and contained Vitex agnus-castus. Several different vitex products have been investigated to date including: Agnolyt (standardised to 3.5–4.2 mg of dried chasteberry extract), Vitex agnus-castus L. extract Ze 440 (each 20 mg tablet standardised for casticin and agnuside), Femicur (contains 1.6–3.0 mg of dried extract per capsule) and Mastodynon (53% v/v ethanol) a homeopathic preparation.

Owing to difficulty in locating the German studies, secondary information sources have sometimes been used to provide a more comprehensive review.

PREMENSTRUAL SYNDROME
Chasteberry relieves some common symptoms associated with PMS, according to several clinical trials (Atmaca et al 2003, Berger et al 2000, Dittmar 1992, Lauritzen 1997, Loch et al 2000, Schellenberg 2001). According to these clinical trials, the PMS symptoms that respond best to treatment are breast tenderness, irritability, depressed mood, anger, mood changes, headache and constipation. The most studied extract investigated in PMS is Ze440 (see Clinical note below).

A multicentre, randomised, controlled, double-blind study investigating the effects of Vitex (Ze 440) for PMS involved 170 women and was published in the British Medical Journal (Schellenberg 2001). Of the group, 13% were also taking OCP. Treatment with a 20 mg tablet of dry extract of chasteberry taken daily resulted in a significant improvement of PMS symptoms, particularly headache, breast fullness, irritability, anger and mood changes. Over 50% of women in the active treatment group achieved at least a 50% reduction in symptoms.

Previously, a number of open studies had generally produced positive results for vitex as a symptomatic treatment in PMS. One multicentre open-label study showed that daily treatment with a 20 mg tablet of Vitex (Ze 440) over three menstrual cycles significantly reduced the Moor menstrual distress self-assessment questionnaire.
(MMDQ) with 46% of women experiencing a 50% reduction in the MMDQ. Treatment also reduced the duration of PMS symptoms from 7.5 days to 6 days and was as effective for women taking OCP as for those who were not (Berger et al 2000). Once treatment was stopped, PMS symptoms gradually returned to baseline within three further cycles. The largest multicentre trial was an open study of 1634 women with PMS, which found that treatment with vitex (Femicur) for three menstrual cycles decreased the number of PMS symptoms in 93% of subjects (Loch et al 2000). Symptoms completely resolved in 40% of subjects and 94% overall rated vitex treatment as well tolerated. An early study using vitex (Agnolyt) in 1542 women with PMS reported an improvement in symptoms with an average dose of 42 drops daily taken for an average of 25 days (Dittmar 1992 as reported in Ulbricht & Basch 2005). According to Ulbricht and Basch (2005), three earlier uncontrolled studies produced inconclusive results.

Although vitamin B6 is a popular treatment for PMS symptoms, the results from a double-blind comparative study have found that vitex (Agnolyt) is as effective and possibly more so (Lauritzen et al 1997). The randomised, double-blind study of 175 women compared vitex, pyridoxine and placebo. In the study, 77% of women receiving vitex reported symptom alleviation compared with 61% with pyridoxine (200 mg/day), which was considered a small but significant difference. Additionally, physician assessments were more likely to rate treatment with vitex as ‘excellent’ compared with pyridoxine.

In 2003, a randomised 8 week study involving 42 women compared the effects of 20–40 mg daily of fluoxetine, a SSRI, and 20–40 mg of vitex extract and found no statistically significant difference between the groups with respect to the rate of responders (Atmaca et al 2003). More specifically, patients with premenstrual dysphoric disorder responded well to both treatments; however, fluoxetine was more effective for psychological symptoms such as depression and irritability whereas the herbal extract was more effective for diminishing physical symptoms such as breast tenderness, cramps, food cravings and swelling. Unfortunately, the authors did not report the type of vitex extract used in the study.

Commission E approves the use of chasteberry for this indication.

**Clinical note — Ze440 extract**

The naming of the Ze440 extract (Premular in Australia) is derived from the name Zeller, the 135-year-old Swiss company manufacturing it, combined with a unique number ascribed during the initial studies. In order to ensure that products deliver consistent results, Ze440 is measured by both composition and consistency from batch to batch. To promote product uniformity, every batch is grown, harvested...
and manufactured into tablets under controlled conditions and is extracted in a
standardised method that ensures consistent and high levels of the important
lipophilic compound casticin and an established marker compound, the iridoid
glycoside named agnuside.

**MASTALGIA**
Mastalgia is considered to relate to latent and increased basal prolactin levels;
therefore, agents that reduce prolactin levels are anticipated to reduce symptoms. For
this reason, vitex is a popular treatment for mastalgia.

In two randomised, double-blind studies, vitex (Mastodynon) effectively reduced
Subjects completed a visual analogue scale (VAS) and rated their breast pain from 0
(lowest breast pain) to 10 (extremely strong breast pain). Active treatment reduced
the mastalgia score by 35–40%, an effect significantly stronger than that of placebo
(25%). One of these studies also demonstrated that treatment with vitex reduced
serum prolactin levels (Splitt et al 1997, as reported in Wuttke et al 2003). According
to Halaska et al (1998), symptom relief was experienced after the first month of
treatment with continued improvements experienced after the second and third
months.

Commission E approves the use of chasteberry for this indication.

**IRREGULARITIES OF THE MENSTRUAL CYCLE**
Chasteberry is used to normalise menstruation in women with shortened, lengthened
or infrequent menstruation, particularly when low progesterone and luteal phase
defects are suspected. A randomised controlled trial of women with luteal phase
defect due to latent hyperprolactinaemia demonstrated that vitex extract (20 mg
daily) effectively reduced prolactin levels and normalised luteal phase length and
progesterone levels after 3 months’ treatment (Milewicz et al 1993).

Commission E approves the use of chasteberry for this indication.

**POOR LACTATION**
Vitex has been used since ancient times as a galactagogue to promote milk
production. Currently there are no double-blind studies to confirm its efficacy;
however, an early uncontrolled study supports the use of vitex in lactation, finding a
favourable effect on milk production in 80% of women (Noack et al 1943). Results
from a small study of males suggest that increases in prolactin may be possible with
low dose vitex (120 mg daily) whereas higher doses (480 mg daily) result in decreased
levels (Merz et al 1996).
**FERTILITY DISORDERS**

Vitex is used in practice with other herbal medicines to enhance fertility in women with progesterone deficiency or luteal phase defects. Currently no large studies have been published to evaluate the effectiveness of this approach; however, a double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled study of 96 women with fertility disorders (38 with secondary amenorrhea, 31 with luteal insufficiency and 27 with idiopathic infertility) used the vitex product Mastodynon with encouraging results (Gerhard et al 1988). Treatment of 30 drops was administered twice daily for 3 months and resulted in women with amenorrhea or luteal insufficiency achieving pregnancy more than twice as often as the placebo group, with 15 women conceiving during the study period (n = 7 with amenorrhea, n = 4 with idiopathic infertility, n = 4 with luteal insufficiency). Although promising, this study has been criticised for pooling of diverse conditions, unclear reporting of results and variable significance (Ulbricht & Basch 2005).

**ACNE VULGARIS**

An open study of 117 subjects with different forms of acne found that after 6 weeks' treatment with a 0.2% dried extract of *Vitex agnus-castus* and a topical disinfectant, 70% of cases experienced total resolution with the highest success rates reported for acne vulgaris, follicularis and excoriated acne (Amann 1975). A group that was not treated with the herb took 30–50% longer to achieve similar results. Although encouraging, it is difficult to determine the contribution of vitex treatment to these results. Until controlled studies using vitex as a stand-alone treatment are conducted, the herb’s role in this condition is still uncertain.

**OTHER USES**

Vitex is used to relieve menopausal symptoms, and aid the expulsion of the placenta after birth. It is also used to treat fibroids, normalise hormones following the use of OCP, and in cases of premature ovarian failure.

**DOSAGE RANGE**

**GENERAL GUIDE**

- Liquid extract (1:2): 1–2.5 mL in the morning.
- Dried fruit: 1.5–3 g in the morning.
- Dry fruit flesh (solid-dose form): 1000–1800 mg/day.
- Manufacturers have recommended vitex preparations be taken daily as a single dose upon rising, before breakfast, throughout the menstrual cycle.
ACCORDING TO CLINICAL STUDIES

- PMS
  Ze440 extract (Premular) 20 mg daily
  Femicur 40 mg daily
- Cyclic mastalgia
  Mastodynon 60 drops daily or 1 tablet daily
- Menstrual irregularities
  20 mg daily (extract unknown)
- Infertility
  Mastodynon 30 drops twice daily

ADVERSE REACTIONS
A systematic review of the herb's safety, published in 2005, analysed data from six electronic databases, postmarketing surveillance studies, spontaneous reporting schemes (including WHO), herbalist organisations and manufacturers (Daniele et al 2005). The review concluded that vitex is a safe herbal medicine and any adverse effects associated with its use tend to be mild and reversible. The most common adverse effects are: nausea, headache, gastrointestinal disturbances, menstrual disorders, acne, pruritis and erythematous rash. Additionally, no drug interactions have been reported.

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
Controlled studies are not available, so interactions are based on evidence of activity and are largely theoretical and speculative.

DOPAMINE ANTAGONISTS
An antagonistic interaction is theoretically possible — observe patients.

ORAL CONTRACEPTIVES
There has been speculation about the effectiveness of vitex when OCP are being taken. Several clinical studies involving women taking oral contraceptives have confirmed the herb still reduces PMS symptoms and does not affect OCP.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
People with tumours sensitive to oestrogen or progesterone should avoid using this herb until safety can be established.

PREGNANCY USE
Vitex is not traditionally recommended in pregnancy. In practice, some herbalists use it during the first 8 weeks of pregnancy in cases of difficult conception.
**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**

- Several clinical trials have shown that vitex is an effective treatment for common PMS symptoms, such as mood changes and irritability, breast tenderness, headaches and constipation. According to one study, it is more effective than pyridoxine treatment and has a similar response rate to fluoxetine.
- Clinical research has also shown it to be effective in menstrual irregularities and mastalgia.
- Vitex is also used to relieve menopausal symptoms, enhance fertility in women with progesterone deficiency or luteal phase defects, and aid the expulsion of the placenta after birth, reduce fibroids and normalise hormones following the use of oral contraceptives.
- Traditionally, it is described as a galactagogue (i.e. a medicine able to increase milk production in lactation) and is used in low doses for this indication.
- A mechanism of action has not been conclusively identified, but it appears to inhibit prolactin release by selective stimulation of pituitary dopamine D2 receptors, increase progesterone levels and works via the opiate system.

**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

**What will this herb do for me?**
Chasteberry is used to relieve common symptoms of PMS, such as irritability, mood swings, breast tenderness, headache and constipation. It is also used in combination with other herbal medicines to enhance fertility, relieve menopausal symptoms, regulate irregular menstruation, improve acne and promote milk production in new mothers.

**When does it start to work?**
Most trials show that treatment for at least three menstrual cycles may be required before symptom relief is experienced in PMS.

**Are there any safety issues?**
In cases of irregular menstruation, investigation for serious pathology should be undertaken before use of this herb.

**REFERENCES**


© 2007 Elsevier Australia

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
Chickweed

Historical note  Chickweed is one of the most common weeds worldwide. It has been used since ancient times to treat external inflammatory conditions and is also used as a tasty and nutritious vegetable, as well as poultry fodder to improve egg production.

COMMON NAME
Chickweed

OTHER NAMES
Mouse-ear, star chickweed, starweed, satinfower, starwort, stellaria, winterweed

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Stellaria media (family Caryophyllaceae)

PLANT PARTS USED
Aerial parts — leaves, stems and flowers

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Saponins, coumarins, flavonoids, carotenoids, carboxylic acids, as well as nitrate salts, vitamin C, calcium, iron, vitamins A and C and B complex vitamins (Fisher & Painter 1996). Chickweed essential oil has been found to contain several well-known contact allergens borneol, menthol, linalool, 1,8-cineole, and other terpenes such as epoxy-dehydro-caryophyllene, monoterpane alcohol-ester and caryophyllene (Jovanovic et al 2003).

MAIN ACTIONS
The pharmacological actions of chickweed have not been significantly investigated, so traditional use and an understanding of the actions of individual constituents is used.

INTERNAL USE — ANTITUSSIVE, EXPECTORANT AND DEMULCENT EFFECTS
Herbal saponins are well known to irritate mucous membranes and are successfully used as expectorants (e.g. senega). Herbs, such as chickweed, that contain saponins are also suspected to have a degree of expectorant activity when used internally; however, this has not been investigated in controlled studies.
EXTERNAL USE — SOOTHING IRRITATED SKIN AND ENHANCING WOUND HEALING
Chickweed is traditionally thought to have soothing properties when applied to the skin in an appropriate vehicle, although controlled studies are not available to confirm these effects. The saponin content may account for the herb’s ability to help reduce itchiness.

OTHER ACTIONS
An in vitro study identified that a chickweed decoction had activity against human hepatoma cell lines (Lin et al 2002). An ethanolic extract of chickweed has been found to strongly inhibit xanthine oxidase in vitro, suggesting that it may have a use against hyperuricaemia and gout (Pieroni et al 2002).

CLINICAL USE
Chickweed has not been significantly investigated under clinical trial conditions, so evidence is derived from traditional, in vitro and animal studies.

URTICARIA, ECZEMA, RASHES, BURNS
Chickweed is most commonly used in external preparations for inflamed and itchy skin conditions such as urticaria, eczema, insect bites and stings, as well as minor wounds and cuts. Anecdotal evidence suggests that it may have some effects; however, controlled studies are not available to confirm effectiveness.

BRONCHIAL PHLEGM AND BRONCHITIS
Taken orally, chickweed is often combined with other herbs for treating conditions characterised by fever and bronchial phlegm; however, controlled studies are not available to confirm effectiveness.

OTHER USES
Chickweed can be eaten raw in salads, served as cooked greens, juiced or infused as a tea. It has also been used as a mild laxative and diuretic substance.

DOSAGE RANGE
• Tincture (1:5): 2–10 mL three times daily.
• Infusion of dried herb: 1–5 g three times daily.
• Chickweed is commonly incorporated into a topical ointment or cream base for external use (1 part chickweed to 5 parts base) and applied as required.

TOXICITY
Allergic skin reactions can occur with topical use.
ADVERSE REACTIONS
There is insufficient reliable information available about the safety of chickweed when used internally or externally. Allergy to chickweed causing contact erythema multiforme has been reported (Jovanovic et al 2003) and it is advised to apply a test patch to a small area before applying more widely.

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
Not known.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Allergic skin reactions can occur with topical use.

PREGNANCY USE
Likely to be safe when consumed in dietary amounts; however, safety is not known when used in larger quantities.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Chickweed has been traditionally used as an ingredient in herbal creams and ointments to soothe inflamed itchy skin and promote wound healing. Although controlled studies are unavailable, the pharmacological actions of several constituents within the herb suggest that it may be useful.
- Although it is likely to be safe, it is prudent in pregnancy to avoid using chickweed in amounts greater than those ingested when used as a food.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What will this herb do for me?
When chickweed is applied topically it may soothe inflamed and itchy skin. It is taken orally as a cough suppressant and expectorant.

How quickly will it work?
In practice, topical preparations are reported to produce symptom relief within 30 minutes; however, there are no controlled trials to confirm this.

Are there any safety issues?
Chickweed can be consumed as a food in salads, cooked as greens or prepared as a juice; however, the safety of larger intakes is unknown. Used as part of a herbal cream it is likely to be safe, although it would be wise to do a test patch in a small area before applying to large areas. The safety of large doses in pregnancy is unknown.

REFERENCES

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
Chitosan

Historical note  With the exception of cellulose, chitin is the most abundant natural polysaccharide on Earth. It is produced by different crustaceans, molluscs, insects, algae, fungi and yeasts. Recently, the commercial value of chitin has increased because of the beneficial properties of its soluble derivatives, which are used in chemistry, biotechnology, agriculture, food processing, cosmetics, veterinary science, medicine, dentistry, environmental protection, and paper or textile production. The most useful chitin derivative is chitosan.

BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS
Chitosan is a form of poorly soluble fibre, chemically derived from chitin, which is extracted from the exoskeletons of crustaceans or squid. It is a cationic polysaccharide and is in itself a major source of the nutritional supplement glucosamine. Similar to other forms of fibre, such as oat bran, chitosan is thought to bind bile acids and dietary lipids. The solubility, biocompatibility and immunological activity and physicochemical properties of chitosan are altered by its molecular weight and degree of N-acetylation. The most biologically effective products contain a chitosan fraction with a low molecular weight, about 8 kD (Synowiecki et al 2003).

The solubility of chitosan increases in the acidic environment of the stomach, but at a pH above 6.3 (e.g. in the intestines) the amino groups of chitosan and fatty acids, bile acids, cholesterol and lipids form a complex (Ylitalo et al 2002), and the resultant decreased availability of bile acids limits intestinal emulsification and the absorption of lipids, which are then excreted in the faeces.

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Chitosan is a cationic polysaccharide prepared by N-deacetylation of chitin.

DEFICIENCY SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS
Chitosan is not an essential nutrient, so deficiencies do not occur.

MAIN ACTIONS
BINDS TO FAT
As it passes through the digestive tract, chitosan binds to ingested fat, bile acids, cholesterol and other lipids, preventing their absorption. The complexes that form between chitosan and various fats are then excreted in the faeces. A human study investigating whether the effect is clinically significant found that a dose of 4.5 g/day,

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
taken in divided doses 30 minutes before meals, trapped only negligible amounts of fat as measured by fat excretion in stools (Gades & Stern 2003).

**ANTIBACTERIAL AND ANTFUNGAL ACTIVITY**

Animal studies have identified antibacterial activity against *Bifidobacterium* and *Lactobacillus*, which are part of the normal flora of the intestinal tract (Tanaka et al 1997). Clinical trials with a chitosan mouthwash have shown antibacterial activity against *Streptococcus mutans* (Sano et al 2003). Chitosan also inhibits the adhesion of *Candida albicans* to human buccal cells and has antifungal activity (Senel et al 2000).

**OTHER ACTIONS**

Chitosan can also absorb urea and ammonia and generally displays similar actions to other dietary fibres (Hendler et al 2001).

**CLINICAL USE**

The most biologically effective products contain a chitosan fraction having a low molecular weight. Unfortunately, not every clinical study indicates whether low molecular weight chitosan has been used. Therefore, aside from the usual variables, discrepant results may be due to differences in the type of chitosan used.

**WEIGHT LOSS**

Chitosan is widely marketed as a weight-loss aid, primarily due to its ability to bind to fats and reduce their absorption in the digestive tract.

A Cochrane systematic review published in 2005 analysed the results of 14 randomised studies involving 1131 subjects and concluded that use of chitosan resulted in a significantly greater weight loss, decrease in total cholesterol and decrease in systolic and diastolic blood pressure than placebo (Ni et al 2005). The studies had a minimum duration of 4 weeks and were conducted with overweight or obese subjects. In regards to the frequency of adverse events or faecal fat excretion, no clear differences were observed between the placebo and chitosan groups. Although encouraging, the authors noted that the quality of the studies was suboptimal and overall results were variable. A look at the studies of highest quality suggests that the effects are minimal. The mean trial duration was 8.3 weeks (range 4–24 weeks) and 8 of the 14 studies combined the use of chitosan or placebo with a low-calorie or weight-reducing diet. Interpretation of the data is not straightforward because the dose of chitosan used in studies varied considerably, from 0.24 g/day to 15 g/day (mean 3.7 g/day) and six of the studies used treatment preparations that contained other active ingredients in addition to chitosan. Additionally, the review excluded some potentially important trials because they did not meet criteria for

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
inclusion (e.g. subjects were not enrolled for being overweight but selected for other reasons).

Previously, a 1998 meta-analysis identified five studies evaluating the effectiveness of chitosan for the treatment of obesity (Ernst & Pittler 1998). All studies included were conducted in Italy and published in a single Italian journal over a 2-year period. They concluded that the mean difference in terms of weight reduction between chitosan and placebo was approximately 3.3 kg. It is worth noting that these five studies consistently demonstrated the greatest effects in the 2005 Cochrane systematic review discussed above, were all of short duration, and four of them also included other agents in the chitosan preparations.

A later systematic review conducted by Ernst and Pittler, which included five additional studies, concluded that when these new results were combined with the previous five from the 1998 meta-analysis, the evidence becomes less compelling and raised doubts about the effectiveness of chitosan in weight loss (Pittler & Ernst 2004).

Clearly, further well-reported research is required, using longer time frames and clearly stating the composition of the chitosan preparations.

**HYPERLIPIDAEMIA**

The ability of chitosan to form complexes with various fats, including cholesterol, provides a theoretical basis for its use in hyperlipidaemia. Dietary chitosan has been tested and found to be effective in reducing serum cholesterol levels and atherosclerosis in normal and diabetic mice, and therefore has been investigated in the treatment of hypercholesterolaemia in humans (Muzzarelli 1999).

A 2002 review states that in humans, dietary chitosan reduces serum total cholesterol levels by 5.8–42.6% and LDL levels by 15.1–35.1% (Yilitalo et al 2002). Based on these figures, the effects of chitosan range from mild to moderate and appear to be inconsistent for total cholesterol. More specifically, lowering of LDL-cholesterol is more consistent, whereas little effect is seen on plasma triglyceride concentration, according to several different experimental and human studies involving obese or diabetic subjects or people with mild to moderate hypercholesterolaemia (Bokura & Kobayashi 2003, Tai et al 2000, Wuolijoki et al 1999, Yihua & Binglin 1997).

Reduction in LDL-cholesterol was evident after 4 weeks’ treatment with a microcrystalline chitosan (1.2 g twice daily) according to one double-blind study (Wuolijoki et al 1999) and after 8 weeks’ treatment using a low dose of 1.2 g/day of chitosan in another double-blind study (Bokura & Kobayashi 2003). However, not all studies have produced positive results. One double-blind study found no effect with 1.5 g chitosan tablets taken three times daily (Zahorska-Markiewicz et al 2002).
The electrically neutral nature of triglycerides may mean that chitosan is unable to form complexes with it, and therefore is unable to influence its absorption.

**DENTAL PLAQUE PREVENTION**
Considering that chitosan has antibacterial activity against *Streptococcus mutans* and antifungal action against *Candida albicans*, it has been added to mouthwashes and gels for dental use. One randomised, crossover clinical trial involving 24 volunteers found that rinsing with a mouthwash containing 0.5% chitosan for 14 days was significantly more effective in reducing plaque formation than placebo (Sano et al 2003).

**KIDNEY FAILURE**
One open study of 80 patients with renal failure undergoing haemodialysis found that 1350 mg of chitosan taken three times daily effectively reduced total serum cholesterol levels (from 10.14 ± 4.40 mmol/L to 5.82 ± 2.19 mmol/L) and increased serum haemoglobin levels (from 58.2 ± 12.1 g/L to 68 ± 9.0 g/L) (Jing et al 1997). After 4 weeks, significant reductions in serum urea and creatinine levels were observed. After 12 weeks, patients reported subjective improvements, such as feeling physically stronger, increased appetite and improved sleep, which were also significantly greater than the placebo group. Importantly, during the treatment period, no clinically problematic symptoms were observed.

**WOUND HEALING — TOPICAL USE**
Chitosan is applied to burns and wound dressings in the form of films, bandages, cotton-like materials, and non-woven napkins. These dressings have good hydroscopicity, show high bacteriostatic effect, and are completely biodegradable in the human body. Another significant advantage is that repeated dressings are usually not needed (Synowiecki et al 2003). Topical application of chitosan enhances wound healing and has been used to promote donor-site tissue regeneration in plastic surgery. Its use is supported by findings that indicate chitosan accelerates the reformation of connective tissue (Ueno et al 2001).

**OTHER USES**

**DRUG DELIVERY SYSTEMS**
Chitosan is considered a good carrier for the controlled release of drugs over an extended period of time. (Synowiecki et al 2003). Additionally, it has been shown to excel in transcellular transport.

Chitosan is also used as a component of different cosmetics, toothpaste, hand and body creams, and hair-care products (Synowiecki et al 2003).
**DOSAGE RANGE**
- The standard dose of chitosan is 3–6 g/day, taken with food.

**ACCORDING TO CLINICAL STUDIES**
- Weight loss: 3.0–4.5 g taken daily in divided doses, 30 minutes before meals.
- Hyperlipidaemia: 1.2–4.5 g/day in divided doses.
- Dental plaque prevention: rinse daily with mouthwash containing 0.5%.
- Renal failure: 1.35 g taken three times daily.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
A systematic review of 14 randomised studies found that the most common side-effects reported were constipation, nausea, bloating, indigestion and abdominal pain (Ni et al 2005). Increased water consumption may reduce some of these side-effects.

Overall, chitosan is considered very safe and well tolerated according to safety studies in experimental models (Kim et al 2001).

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**

**FAT SOLUBLE NUTRIENTS**
Considering chitosan binds to dietary fats and reduces their absorption, chitosan can also affect the absorption of fat-soluble vitamins. However, the effect is dose-dependent as one study using a dose of 2 g/day found no changes to the levels of vitamins A, D, E and beta-carotene after 4 weeks’ use (Pittler et al 1999). As a precautionary measure, a multivitamin supplement should be considered for all individuals taking long-term chitosan.

**LIPOPHILIC DRUGS**
Considering chitosan binds to dietary fats and reduces their absorption, chitosan can also affect the absorption of lipophilic drugs. Separate doses by at least 2 hours.

**VITAMIN C**
According to a preliminary study in rats, taking vitamin C together with chitosan might provide additional benefit in lowering cholesterol.

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**
- Chitosan is contraindicated in people with allergies to shellfish.
- Pregnant women should avoid chitosan as it may reduce absorption of essential dietary nutrients.
PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING

- Chitosan is a form of poorly soluble fibre, chemically derived from chitin, which is extracted from the exoskeletons of crustaceans or squid. The most biologically active forms have a low molecular weight.
- It forms insoluble complexes with dietary fats, fatty acids, bile acids, cholesterol and other lipids in the digestive tract and has antibacterial and antifungal activity that is useful in dental hygiene.
- Chitosan is a popular weight-loss supplement. Clinical studies have produced mixed results; however, best effects occur when chitosan is used over several months and combined with dietary and lifestyle modifications.
- Overall, evidence generally supports its use in hyperlipidaemia as it reduces serum levels of total cholesterol and LDL levels, but it has little effect on triglyceride levels.
- Chitosan is contraindicated in people with allergies to shellfish and should be recommended together with a multivitamin supplement with long-term use.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What will this supplement do for me?
Taken orally, chitosan may aid in weight loss when combined with dietary and lifestyle modifications and reduce cholesterol levels.

When will it start to work?
Effects in weight loss require at least 8 weeks’ continual use before effects are seen, according to research, whereas cholesterol lowering requires 4–8 weeks.

Are there any safety issues?
Chitosan is contraindicated in people with allergies to shellfish.

REFERENCES

Chondroitin

OTHER NAMES
Chondroitin sulfate, chondroitin sulfuric acid, chondroitin 4-sulfate, chondroitin 4-and 6-sulfate

BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS
Chondroitin sulfate is an amino sugar polymer, made up of glucuronic acid and galactosamine, that is in the class of large polymers known as glucosaminoglycans or mucopolysaccharides. These compounds act as the flexible connecting matrix between the protein filaments in cartilage and connective tissue (Liesegang 1990). Chondroitin is manufactured from natural sources, such as shark and bovine (usually tracheal) cartilage and may have a molecular weight that varies from 10 to 50 kD, depending on the product’s source or preparation (Ross 2000).

There are differences in the absorption and bioavailability of chondroitin formulations due to differences in molecular mass, charge density, and cluster of disulfated disaccharides of the parental molecules (Volpi 2003). Low-molecular-weight chondroitin appears to be absorbed orally in both animals and humans (Adebowale et al 2002, Du et al 2004) and displays accumulation after multiple dosing (Adebowale et al 2002).

Chondroitin is concentrated in the intestine, liver, kidneys, synovial fluid and cartilage (Conte et al 1995) and the elimination half-life is about 5–6 hours, with 40–50% being excreted in the urine (Conte et al 1991, Ronca & Conte 1993). Oral chondroitin is absorbed as several metabolites, and as the active moiety has not yet been identified it is difficult to establish bioequivalence between different products (Volpi 2003).

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Chondroitin sulfate is a linear polymer of two alternating sugars, alpha-D-N-acetylgalactosamine and beta-D-glucuronic acid, with the sulfate moiety being a covalent part of the molecule and not a counter ion as is the case with glucosamine sulfate (Ross 2000).

FOOD SOURCES
Chondroitin is naturally present in the gristle in meat. As a supplement it is generally produced from natural sources, such as shark or bovine (usually tracheal) cartilage or can be manufactured in the laboratory using various methods. The purity and content
of products has been questioned in the USA, where it is regarded as a nutritional supplement and its quality is unregulated (Consumer-labs 2).

**MAIN ACTIONS**

**CHONDROPROTECTIVE EFFECT**

Chondroitin appears to protect cartilage by providing it with the raw material required for repair, as well as inhibiting the enzymes in synovial fluid, such as elastase and hyaluronidase, that damage joint cartilage. It improves chondrocyte nutrition by increasing hyaluronic acid production in articular cells (Raoudi et al 2005) and hence the fluid content of the extracellular matrix (Sasada et al 2005), which not only acts as a shock absorber but also brings nutrients into the cartilage (Krane & Goldring 1990).

The overall chondroprotective effect of chondroitin has been demonstrated in animal models, whereby oral or intramuscular chondroitin sulfate has been shown to protect rabbit articular cartilage from experimental chymopapain injury (Uebelhart et al 1998a) and inhibit the destruction of the cartilage extracellular matrix (Sumino et al 2005). The chondroprotective action of chondroitin has been found to be potentiated by high sulfur mineral water in an animal model of osteoarthritis (Caraglia et al 2005).

**ANTI-INFLAMMATORY**

Chondroitin exerts an anti-inflammatory action with an inhibitory effect over complement (Pipitone 1991). In an in vitro study of bovine cartilage, chondroitin alone and in combination with glucosamine was found to regulate gene expression and synthesis of NO and PGE$_2$, suggesting a basis for its anti-inflammatory properties (Chan et al 2005). Chondroitin sulfate has been found to increase the levels of antioxidant enzymes and reduce inflammation and cirrhosis of liver tissue in an ovariectomised rat model, suggesting that it enhances antioxidant activity (Ha 2004).

**VISCOELASTIC AGENT**

Chondroitin sulfate is a viscoelastic agent and together with similar substances such as sodium hyaluronate and hydroxypropylmethylcellulose, it is used in ophthalmic surgery to protect and lubricate cells and tissues (Larson et al 1989, Liesegang 1990).

**OTHER ACTIONS**

There are suggestions from laboratory studies and uncontrolled human trials that chondroitin may have potential anti-atherogenic properties (Morrison 1969, 1971, Morrison & Enrick 1973).

It has been found that serum levels of chondroitin sulfate are increased in patients with RA or OA and this may provide the basis for systemic detection of OA (Pothacharoen et al 2006).
CLINICAL USE
OSTEOARTHRITIS: SYMPTOM CONTROL AND RETARDING DISEASE PROGRESSION

Chondroitin sulfate appears to produce a slow but gradual reduction of the clinical symptoms of OA. Multiple human clinical trials lasting from a few weeks to 3 years have shown that chondroitin sulfate can significantly alleviate symptoms of pain and improve function in patients with OA of the knee (Bourgeois et al 1998, Buci & Poor 1998, Fioravanti et al 1991, Lazebnik 2005, Mazieres et al 2001, Morreale et al 1996, Olivier et al 1991, Rovetta 1991) and that these effects last months after the cessation of treatment (Mazieres et al 2005), as well as being evident with intermittent treatment (Uebelhart et al 2004).

A meta-analysis of 7 trials of 372 patients taking chondroitin sulfate found at least 50% improvement in pain and function in the chondroitin sulfate group compared with placebo (Leeb et al 2000). A meta-analysis of 15 trials of the use of glucosamine and/or chondroitin raised quality issues about many studies, but found moderate to large clinical effects from these agents, suggesting that they do have efficacy in treating OA (McAlindon et al 2000).

There is also evidence from double-blind clinical trials that chondroitin can reverse, retard or stabilise the pathology of OA (Volpi 2005), as evidenced by stabilisation of the joint space (Uebelhart et al 1999b), less progression of erosions (Rovetta et al 2002, Verbruggen et al 1998) and improved articular cartilage thickness (Pipitone et al 1992) and interarticular space, as observed by X-rays (Conrozier 1998, Michel et al 2005, Uebelhart et al 2004). A subanalysis of patients involved in the GAIT study (see below and Glucosamine monograph) further suggests that chondroitin sulfate may have differential effects on OA symptoms depending on the degree of radiographic involvement, and that chondroitin may provide improvements in knee pain in patients with relatively early radiographic disease (Clegg et al 2005).

Comparisons with NSAIDs Although chondroitin appears to be at least as effective as NSAIDs in treating the symptoms of OA (Fioravanti et al 1991, Morreale et al 1996), it has a slower onset of action, taking 2–4 months to establish an effect (Leeb et al 2000, Morreale et al 1996). Chondroitin may, however, provide benefits that persist after treatment is stopped (Mazieres et al 2001, Morreale et al 1996).

Combined use of chondroitin sulfate and glucosamine sulfate Chondroitin and glucosamine are frequently marketed together in combination products and some studies suggest that this combination is effective in treating symptoms (Das & Hammad 2000, Leffler et al 1999, McAlindon et al 2000, Nguyen et al 2001) and reducing joint space narrowing (Rai et al 2004). These findings are supported by an in
vitro study on horse cartilage that found that a combination of glucosamine and chondroitin was more effective than either product alone in preventing articular cartilage glycosaminoglycan degradation (Dechant et al 2005), as well as an in vivo study on rats that found that the combined treatment prevented the development of cartilage damage and was associated with a reduction in IL-1-beta and matrix metalloprotease-9 synthesis (Chou et al 2005). The recent GAIT trial (see Glucosamine monograph) provides further evidence that glucosamine and chondroitin are more effective when given in combination than when either substance is given alone, with the combined treatment being more effective than the COX-2 inhibitor celecoxib for treating moderate to severe arthritis compared with chondroitin alone (Clegg et al 2006).

A small RCT has suggested that the addition of high-molecular-weight hyaluronate to glucosamine and chondroitin may provide additional benefits to the use of glucosamine and chondroitin alone (Bucci et al 2005).

**Topical preparations**  A topical preparation containing chondroitin with glucosamine and camphor has been shown to reduce pain from OA of the knee in one RCT (Cohen et al 2003).

**OTHER USES**

**HEART DISEASE**
There are suggestions that chondroitin in doses of up to 10 g/day may have anti-atherogenic actions, beneficial effects on serum lipid levels and may be useful for reducing the risk of myocardial infarction (Morrison 1969, 1971, Morrison & Enrick 1973, Morrison et al 1969).

**SNORING**
The results of a pilot crossover study of seven subjects suggest that chondroitin sulfate instilled into the nostril at bedtime may reduce snoring (Lenclud et al 1998).

**OPHTHALMIC SURGERY AND DRY EYES**
Chondroitin sulfate is used as a viscoelastic substance to protect and lubricate cells and tissues during ophthalmic surgery, as well as to preserve corneas before transplantation (Larson et al 1989, Liesegang 1990). In a double-blind crossover study of 20 subjects, 1% chondroitin sulfate was found to be equally as effective as polyvinyl alcohol artificial tear formulation and 0.1% hyaluronic acid in reducing itching, burning and foreign body sensation in people with keratoconjunctivitis sicca (Limberg et al 1987).
PSORIASIS
It has been found that some patients with psoriasis experience a significant clinical and histological improvement in their psoriatic lesions after taking chondroitin to treat their OA (Verges 2005, Verges et al 2004).

DOSAGE RANGE
- Oral doses of chondroitin range from 800–1200 mg/day in either single or divided doses. Intramuscular, intravenous and topical forms are also available.
- A 4–5-month trial is generally used in order to determine whether it is effective for an individual patient.

ADVERSE REACTIONS
Chondroitin is generally deemed to be extremely safe, with the incidence of adverse reactions being comparable to placebo in studies lasting from 2 months to 6 years (Bourgeois et al 1998, Bucsi & Poor 1998, Leeb et al 2000, McAlindon et al 2000, Uebelhart et al 1998b).

Oral chondroitin may cause mild gastrointestinal disturbance.
While there is a theoretical risk of anticoagulant activity, this has not been demonstrated in clinical trials (Chavez 1997).

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
Controlled studies are not available; therefore, interactions are based on evidence of activity and are largely theoretical and speculative.

ANTICOAGULANTS
Additive effect theoretically possible — observe patient.

NSAIDS
Chondroitin may enhance drug effectiveness, suggesting a beneficial interaction is possible — drug dosage may require modification.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Due to theoretical anticoagulant activity, chondroitin should be used in caution in people with clotting disorders.

Some forms of chondroitin are produced from bovine (usually tracheal) cartilage, so it is theoretically possible that it may be a source of transmission of bovine spongiform encephalopathy (mad cow disease) and other diseases. This transmission has not been demonstrated and is deemed unlikely.

PREGNANCY USE
Insufficient reliable information available to advise on safety in pregnancy.
PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING

- Chondroitin is a naturally occurring building block of joint tissue and cartilage. Supplements are made from shark cartilage or bovine tracheal cartilage.
- Chondroitin is generally considered effective in treating the pain and disability of osteoarthritis and may act to slow disease progression, although it may take some weeks before a clinical effect is evident.
- It is considered extremely safe and may reduce the need for NSAIDs, which can have serious side-effects.
- There may be benefits in taking chondroitin in conjunction with glucosamine for treating arthritis.
- Patients undergoing anticoagulant therapy or with clotting disorders should have their blood clotting monitored while taking chondroitin.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What will this supplement do for me?
Multiple scientific studies have shown that chondroitin sulfate reduces symptoms of OA and may also reduce further progression of the condition. Some people find that they do not require NSAIDs as often when taking it.

When will it start to work?
Symptom relief takes 2–4 months to reach maximal effect, but protection effects on the joints occur only with long-term use of several years.

Are there any safety issues?
Generally considered a very safe treatment and far safer than pharmaceutical anti-inflammatory drugs; however, it should be used with caution by people with clotting disorders or taking anticoagulants.

REFERENCES


© 2007 Elsevier Australia


Chromium

Historical note  In the 1950s, researchers identified the role of chromium in insulin and glucose control (Shwarz & Mertz 1959). The importance of chromium was validated in 1977 when a woman on long-term TPN, without chromium, developed symptoms of diabetes that could not be controlled by insulin. After further investigation it was noted that she was deficient in chromium and when < 50 µg was added to her TPN solution, symptoms resolved. This led to the US FDA listing chromium as an essential trace nutrient (Edmonson 2002). However, problems in elucidating the effects of chromium supplementation persist, due to a lack of practical methods for diagnosing deficiency (Mertz 1998).

BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS
Absorption of chromium occurs by passive diffusion and is inversely related to dietary intake (e.g. from a dose of 10 µg, 2% is absorbed; from a dose of 40 µg, 0.5% is absorbed) (Anderson & Kozlovsky 1985). Absorption may be inhibited by zinc (Hahn & Evans 1975) and phytates, and enhanced by oxalate (Bryson & Goodall 1983) and ascorbic acid (Offenbacher 1994). In regard to supplements, chromium picolinate appears to be the most absorbable form as the complexation of picolinic acid with chromium increases its bioavailability (Edmonson 2002, Press et al 1990).

Chromium is transported around the systemic circulation primarily by transferrin (Campbell et al 1997) potentially competing with iron, and accumulates in kidney, muscle and liver (Hepburn & Vincent 2003). It is excreted primarily in urine, but small amounts are lost in hair, perspiration and faeces.

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Chromium exists mostly in two valence states in nature: hexavalent chromium (chromium (VI)) and trivalent chromium (chromium (III)). The hexavalent form is used in industry and is associated with toxicity. Trivalent chromium is an essential trace element in the human body and approved as a supplement.

Supplemental forms used in trials include organic chromium complexes such as chromium picolinate and chromium nicotinate and inorganic salts such as chromium chloride. Nicotinic acid is also a metabolite of tryptophan improving its absorption; however, the picolinate form is the one surrounded by the most controversy.
FOOD SOURCES
Brewer’s yeast, wholegrain breads and cereals, cheese, eggs, bananas, spinach, mushrooms, broccoli, organ meats and processed meat products.

DEFICIENCY SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

PRIMARY DEFICIENCY
Symptoms of weight loss, glucose intolerance and neuropathy have been noted in patients on TPN deficient in chromium (Verhage et al 1996). Deficiency may also be a precursor to the development of insulin resistance, and thus associated with hyperglycaemia, hypoglycaemia and obesity. Up to 90% of USA diets have been found to be below the minimum suggested safe and adequate daily intake for chromium of 50 µg/day (Anderson & Kozlovsky 1985).

SECONDARY DEFICIENCY
Factors that may exacerbate deficiency, generally by increasing requirements for or urinary excretion of chromium, include pregnancy, excessive exercise, infection, physical trauma and stress (Anderson 1986). Diets high in simple sugars have been found to increase urinary chromium excretion up to 30-fold, thereby increasing the risk of deficiency (Kozlovsky et al 1986). Corticosteroids also increase urinary losses of chromium (Kim et al 2002).

Clinical note — Problems testing for chromium deficiency
Currently, testing for chromium deficiency involves serum testing. This is problematic as it is still uncertain whether serum levels correlate with tissue levels and, therefore, are truly representative of nutritional status. Studies have shown that subjects with widely varying plasma chromium levels respond favourably to chromium supplementation, suggesting that this marker is misleading (Bahijri 2000). As a consequence, serum tests should not be solely relied upon, leaving the diagnosis of marginal deficiency up to a practitioner’s clinical suspicion. Other tests have been proposed such as toenail chromium concentration (Guallar et al 2005) and urinary chromium response to glucose load (Bahijri & Mufti 2002), as conditions that increase circulating glucose and insulin concentrations increase urinary chromium output (Vincent 2004); however, further research is required to confirm the validity of these tests.

MAIN ACTIONS

IMPORTANT COFACTOR IN MANY BIOCHEMICAL REACTIONS
Chromium is an essential trace mineral required for carbohydrate, lipid, protein and corticosteroid metabolism (Kim et al 2002). It is a key constituent of glucose tolerance
factor, together with nicotinic acid and the amino acids cysteine, glycine and glutamic acid.

**IMPROVES BLOOD SUGAR CONTROL (CARBOHYDRATE METABOLISM AND INSULIN SENSITIVITY)**
Trivalent chromium is an essential trace element for normal carbohydrate metabolism and insulin sensitivity (Wilson & Gondy 1995), aiding the transport of glucose into cells. Rather than increasing insulin secretion, chromium appears to improve glycaemic control by enhancing the action of insulin; improving the ability of insulin to bind to cells; enhancing beta-cell sensitivity; increasing the number of insulin receptors; and activating insulin receptor kinase, thus increasing insulin sensitivity (Anderson 1997, Edmonson 2002). Additionally, in vitro studies have shown that chromium inhibits the secretion of TNF-alpha, a cytokine known to reduce the sensitivity and action of insulin, and that this appears to be mediated by its antioxidant effects (Jain & Kannan 2001).

**LIPID-LOWERING ACTIVITY**
Although the mechanism of action is yet to be fully explained, studies show that chromium supplementation may decrease triglyceride levels, total and LDL-cholesterol and modestly increase HDL-cholesterol (Bahijri 2000, Lee & Reasner 1994, Press et al 1990, Preuss et al 2000).

**ANTIDEPRESSANT/NEUROTRANSMITTER EFFECTS**
Depression is often associated with insulin resistance, owing to cortisol overproduction (McCarty 1994). The reputed antidepressant effects of chromium may be explained by improvements in insulin sensitivity (Davidson et al 2003) and related increases in tryptophan availability and/or noradrenaline release (McLeod & Golden 2000). Chromium has also been shown to lower the cortisol response to challenge with 5-hydroxy-L-tryptophan (5-HTP) and decrease the sensitivity of 5-HT2A receptors (Attenburrow et al 2002).

**OTHER ACTIONS**

**IMMUNOMODULATION**
A review detailing the effects of chromium on the immune system found that chromium has both immunostimulatory and immunosuppressive effects, as shown by its effects on T and B lymphocytes, macrophages and cytokine production (Shrivastava et al 2002).
BONE DENSITY PROTECTION
It has been suggested that modulation of insulin by chromium may have positive effects on bone density, reducing bone resorption and promoting collagen production by osteoblasts (McCarty 1995). One placebo-controlled study using chromium picolinate (equivalent to 200 µg chromium/day for 60 days) has shown a 47% reduction in the urinary hydroxyproline:creatinine ratio, indicating a decrease in calcium excretion and a potential role in the prevention of osteoporosis (Evans et al 1995).

ANTIOXIDANT
A placebo controlled trial using 1000 µg/day of chromium (as chromium yeast) for 6 months found chromium supplementation an effective treatment in reducing oxidative stress in type 2 diabetes patients with severe hyperglycaemia (HbA1c > 8.5%); however, it may act as a pro-oxidant in euglycaemic people (Cheng et al 2004).

INCREASES DEHYDROEPiANDROSTERONE
In a placebo-controlled trial, chromium picolinate (equivalent to 200 µg chromium/day for 60 days) increased dehydroepiandrosterone by 24% in postmenopausal women (Evans et al 1995).

CLINICAL USE
Supplemental forms used in trials include organic chromium complexes, such as chromium picolinate and chromium nicotinate, and inorganic salts such as chromium chloride. Considering chromium is known to improve insulin sensitivity, a theoretical basis exists for its use in conditions associated with insulin resistance such as type 2 diabetes mellitus, gestational diabetes, hypoglycaemia, polycystic ovarian syndrome, obesity, and syndrome X. For many of these indications, controlled studies are not yet available. However, there has been investigation into its use in diabetes, hypoglycaemia, hyperlipidaemia and obesity.

DEFICIENCY STATES — PREVENTION AND TREATMENT
Although chromium deficiency is uncommon (Vincent 2004) and mostly described in relation to the use of TPN without chromium, subclinical deficiency states also exist and should respond to supplementation (Verhage 1996). Chromium supplementation is also used in cases at risk of deficiency, such as long-term corticosteroid use (Kim et al 2002) or people with a high sugar intake (Kozlovsky et al 1986).
**DIABETES**

Results of RCT on the use of varying forms of chromium for glucose and insulin regulation in healthy subjects and in individuals with glucose intolerance or type 2 diabetes have produced contradictory results (Althuis et al 2002, Frauchiger et al 2004, Gunton et al 2005). Overall, it appears that positive results are more likely in persons with known glycaemic aberrations rather than in healthy subjects; however, the response to chromium is difficult to predict.

Although it is uncertain why this is the case, the varying responses of glucose and lipid regulation may be partly explained by variations in pretreatment chromium and iron status, and phenotypic characteristics of the studied individuals.

**Type 2 diabetes mellitus (non-insulin-dependent)** Results have shown that chromium supplementation appears to be more effective in patients with type 2 diabetes than type 1 (Ravina & Slezack 1993). A 2003 review determined that ‘chromium appears to be a safe supplement and may have a role as adjunctive therapy for treatment of type 2 diabetes’ (Ryan et al 2003).

Patients with early-stage type 2 diabetes of less than 2 years’ duration were found to have lower chromium plasma levels (33%) and increased chromium excretion (100%) compared with healthy controls. Over a period of time this may contribute to the development of the insulin resistance seen in these patients (Morris et al 1999).

The most promising RCT to date tested chromium picolinate at doses of both 200 and 1000 μg/day in subjects with type 2 diabetes who were instructed to maintain their current medications, diet and lifestyle habits. HbA1c values (a marker of long-term glycaemic control) improved significantly in the higher treatment group after 2 months and in both groups after 4 months’ treatment. Fasting glucose was lower in the 1000 μg group after 2 and 4 months (4-month values: 7.1 ± 0.2 mmol/L vs placebo 8.8 ± 0.3 mmol/L). Two-hour glucose values were also significantly lower in the 1000 μg group after both 2 and 4 months (4-month values: 10.5 ± 0.2 mmol/L vs placebo 12.3 ± 0.4 mmol/L). Fasting and 2-hour insulin values decreased significantly in both groups receiving supplemental chromium after 2 and 4 months. Plasma total cholesterol also decreased in the subjects receiving 1000 μg chromium after 4 months (Anderson et al 1997). A double-blind, placebo-controlled crossover study using 400 μg for 12 weeks in diabetics known to have lower serum chromium levels than the healthy controls (Ghosh et al 2002) produced positive results, but a shorter randomised, double-blind placebo-controlled study using 1000 μg for only 8 weeks was not positive (Amato et al 2000). These results not only suggest that improvements are dose-related but are also affected by treatment duration and possibly initial chromium status. A controlled trial of elderly patients with diabetes
(average age 73 years) reported that supplementation with chromium (200 μg twice daily) for 3 weeks improved fasting blood glucose, HbA1c, and total cholesterol levels (Rabinovitz et al 2004), suggesting lower doses may be effective in older patients.

Studies using chromium nicotinic acid have proven more promising with higher doses of nicotinic acid (100 mg/day) (Urberg & Zemel 1987) than those with low-dose nicotinic acid (1.8 mg) (Thomas & Gropper 1996), demonstrating a synergistic effect with chromium (200 μg/day).

**Type 1 diabetes mellitus (insulin-dependent)** As chromium appears to improve insulin sensitivity rather than secretion its use in type 1 diabetes is probably limited (Edmondson 2002). One study did show reduced requirements for medication in 33.6% of patients with type 1 diabetes taking 200 μg chromium/day (Ravina & Slezack 1993), and another showed a 30% reduction in insulin requirements in 71% of subjects at the same dose (Ravina et al 1995), but as yet it is unclear which patients might respond to treatment.

**Gestational diabetes** Pregnancy can be described as an increased insulin resistance state, which may result in gestational diabetes if the pancreas is unable to increase insulin levels to maintain blood glucose balance (Jovanovic & Peterson 1996). As such, the beneficial effect of chromium on insulin sensitivity provides a theoretical basis for its use in this condition. A small placebo-controlled trial using 4 or 8 μg/kg of chromium daily in gestational diabetes found a significant dose-dependent improvement in fasting insulin, 1-hour insulin and glucose, and postprandial glucose levels after 8 weeks’ supplementation (Jovanovic et al 1999).

**Corticosteroid-induced diabetes mellitus** Human trials have shown that corticosteroid use significantly increases urinary chromium excretion. Supplementation with chromium picolinate (equivalent to 600 μg chromium/day) in patients experiencing steroid-induced diabetes resulted in decreased fasting blood glucose values (from > 13.9 mmol/L to < 8.3 mmol/L). Furthermore, hypoglycaemic medications were also reduced by 50% in all patients within 1 week (Ravina et al 1999).

**Prevention of long-term diabetic complications** Both QTc interval prolongation and chronic hyperinsulinaemia have been associated with atherosclerosis progression and increased cardiovascular morbidity in patients with type 2 diabetes. In a crossover trial of 60 subjects, chromium picolinate (1000 μg/day) for 3 months was shown to reduce both QTc interval duration and plasma insulin levels (Vrtovec et al 2005), probably by reducing the adrenergic activation of the sympathetic nervous system due to hyperinsulinaemia. Benefits were most significant in obese patients with higher peripheral insulin resistance (Vrtovec et al 2005).
Animal studies have found that chromium supplementation in mice with type 2 diabetes reduces the symptoms of hyperglycaemia and improves the renal function by recovering renal chromium concentration (Mita et al 2005, Mozaffari et al 2005) which may hold promise for human trials investigating the potential role of chromium in reducing the incidence of diabetic nephropathy.

**HYPOGLYCAEMIA**

Eight patients with reactive hypoglycaemia were given chromium chloride (equivalent to 200 µg chromium) for 3 months in a double-blind crossover study. Chromium supplementation significantly improved blood sugar regulation, insulin binding to receptors and red blood cells, and alleviated symptoms of hypoglycaemia (Anderson et al 1987).

A double-blind crossover study using chromium chloride (equivalent to 200 µg/day elemental chromium) for 8 weeks found a significant improvement in glycaemic control in subgroups where the 2-hour glucose level was > 10% above or below the fasting level (Bahijri 2000). In these subgroups chromium supplementation resulted in a 2-hour mean not significantly different to the fasting mean, suggesting an amphoteric effect on glycaemic control.

**HYPERLIPIDAEMIA**

Trials yielding both positive and negative results for supplemental chromium in hyperlipidaemia have been reported.

Currently, it is unclear what circumstances or conditions and type of subjects are most likely to respond to treatment, so in practice a treatment trial period is often used to establish usefulness in individual patients.

A placebo-controlled trial using chromium tripicolinate (equivalent to 200 µg chromium/day) for 42 days found a reduction in total cholesterol, LDL and apolipoprotein B (the major protein of the LDL fraction) with a slight increase in HDL and a significant increase in apolipoprotein A1 (the major protein of the HDL fraction) (Press et al 1990). Another RCT of 40 hypercholesterolaemic subjects found that chromium polynicotinate (equivalent to 200 µg elemental chromium) twice daily for 2 months decreased total (10%) cholesterol and LDL-cholesterol (14%) (Preuss et al 2000).

A prospective, double-blind, placebo-controlled crossover study was performed with 30 subjects with type 2 diabetes. Triglyceride levels were significantly reduced (17.4%) and HDL levels increased during the 2 months’ chromium picolinate supplementation (Lee & Reasner 1994). This is further supported by other trials (Bahijri 2000).
Another double-blind, placebo-controlled randomised study of young, non-obese adults taking chromium nicotinate (equivalent to 220 µg elemental chromium) for 90 days found no statistically significant differences in lipid levels (total cholesterol, HDL-cholesterol, LDL-cholesterol, triglycerides) at this dose (Wilson & Gondy 1995). Similar results were found in older, non-obese subjects taking 1000 µg chromium picolinate for 8 weeks (Amato et al 2000) suggesting that subjects without identified pre-existing hypercholesterolaemia or other conditions predisposing them to hypercholesterolaemia may not respond to treatment. However, a prospective, double-blind, placebo-controlled crossover study of mostly Hispanic patients with type 2 diabetes also elicited disappointing results, finding that only triglyceride levels were significantly reduced (17.4%) (Lee & Reasner 1994).

**OBESITY**
As chromium has a role in maintaining carbohydrate and lipid metabolism, and potentiating insulin action, it has been suggested that chromium supplementation may have effects on body composition, including reducing fat mass and increasing lean body mass (Vincent 2003).

A meta-analysis of RCT concluded that chromium picolinate elicited a relatively small effect compared with placebo for reducing body weight (Pittler et al 2003). One study, however, did show promising results using 200 µg chromium bound to niacin three times daily (total 600 µg/day) with moderate exercise. At these high doses, while overall reduction in body weight was similar for both the chromium and placebo groups, total fat loss was more significant in the chromium group, suggesting a muscle sparing effect (Crawford et al 1999).

**ATYPICAL DEPRESSION**
A placebo-controlled double-blind study of chromium picolinate (600 µg/day) for 8 weeks was conducted in 15 patients with DSM-IV major depressive disorder, atypical type. Seven (70%) of 10 patients receiving chromium picolinate and none of the placebo group responded to treatment. Six subjects in the chromium group also experienced remission compared with none in the placebo group. However, a significant difference was not detected in the Hamilton Depression Scale at the end of treatment (Anon 2003, Davidson et al 2003).

**OTHER USES**
While controlled trials are yet to be conducted or are inconclusive in some cases, chromium is also used in the following conditions, based on a theoretical understanding of its pharmacological actions.
RESISTANCE TRAINING
Studies in female athletes have shown no effect on body composition or muscle strength following supplementation of 500 µg chromium picolinate daily during 6 weeks of resistance training (Livolsi et al 2001). In a clinical trial of older women a high-dose chromium picolinate supplement did not affect body composition, skeletal muscle size or maximal strength above that of resistance training alone (Campbell et al 2002). A meta-analysis of trials of dietary supplements for enhancing lean muscle mass and strength during resistance training did not support the use of chromium for this purpose (Nissen & Sharp 2002).

POLYCYSTIC OVARIAN SYNDROME
The relationship between PCOS and insulin resistance provides a theoretical basis for the use of chromium in this condition. A small study has found that chromium picolinate (200 µg/day) appears to improve glucose tolerance but not ovulatory frequency in women with polycystic ovary syndrome (Lucidi et al 2005). Larger studies are required to investigate the potential benefits of chromium supplementation in this population.

SYNDROME X
Syndrome X highlights the link between insulin resistance and lipid profiles. As a number of studies have proved promising in regard to both these factors, a theoretical basis exists for the use of chromium in this condition. Furthermore, the presence or absence of this syndrome may explain why studies have shown varying responses to treatment with chromium in the past and may provide direction for more consistent trial results in future studies.

PREVENTION OF MYOCARDIAL INFARCTION
In a population-based case–control study, toenail chromium concentration was inversely associated with the risk of a first myocardial infarction in men. Men with the highest levels of chromium were 35% less likely to have a heart attack than those with the lowest levels (Guallar et al 2005). Future studies are required to determine whether chromium supplementation may be beneficial for the prevention of cardiovascular incidents.

OSTEOPOROSIS
Effects on bone resorption, calcium excretion and collagen production suggest a role in the prevention of osteoporosis (Evans et al 1995, McCarty 1995); however, there are no controlled trials to determine clinical effectiveness.
**DOSAGE RANGE**
The ESADDI is 50–200 µg/day. The most common doses studied include 200, 400, 600 and 1000 µg daily. Doses in the upper range appear to produce more convincing trial results.

**AUSTRALIAN ADEQUATE INTAKE**
- Women: 25 µg/day
- Men: 35 µg/day

Chromium picolinate is the best absorbed form, although chromium nicotinate may have a better safety profile and the synergistic effects with nicotinic acid may have further benefits in some conditions, especially with regard to lipid profiles.

**Clinical note — Does chromium picolinate cause cancer?**
There has been some concern in the past over in vitro studies suggesting chromium picolinate exerts clastogenic effects in hamster ovary cells (Stearns et al 1995a, 2002) and possible DNA damage (Speetjens et al 1999). This has been refuted by a number of authors, suggesting the doses tested were several thousand times higher than equivalent human doses (McCarty 1997, Salmon 1996) and that chromium is relatively short lived so that the accumulated doses suggested by researchers (Stearns et al 1995a) were not feasible (Hepburn & Vincent 2003). It should also be noted that picolinic acid appears to be the source of the concern and other forms of chromium have not been implicated (Bagchi et al 2002, Stearns et al 1995b).

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
It is important to differentiate between hexavalent chromium (Cr IV) and trivalent chromium (Cr III) when assessing toxicity. Cr IV is used in industry and is highly toxic, whereas Cr III is approved for use as a supplement and does not attract the same concerns. Recent in vitro studies suggest a possibility that Cr III may oxidise to Cr V, a potential carcinogen (Shrivastava et al 2005); however, this requires confirmation from in vivo studies.

Irritability and insomnia have been reported with chromium yeast supplementation (Schrauzer et al 1992).

A follow-up survey of the Anderson trial at 1 year found no side-effects for doses up to 1000 µg/day of chromium picolinate (Cheng et al 1999).

Of five anecdotal adverse reports attributed to chromium picolinate and reviewed by Lamson and Plaza (2002), only one reporting transient and vague symptoms was considered to be a possible adverse reaction (Huszonek 1993). Three could not be validated by the reviewers due to concurrent medications (Cerulli et al 1998, Martin & Fuller 1998, Wasser et al 1997), and another involved the inappropriate use of
potassium dichromate, a strong oxidising agent known to elicit reactions in a majority of people (Fowler 2000). A case report exists of toxic hepatitis and greatly elevated hepatic chromium levels (>10-fold normal) following 5 month ingestion of chromium polynicotinate in combination with vegetable extracts (Lanca et al 2002). Whether chromium supplementation was responsible for this incident is currently unclear.

**NO ADVERSE EFFECTS ON IRON STATUS**
As chromium competes with iron for binding to transferrin it has been suggested that high-dose chromium supplementation may adversely affect iron status. While some studies support this (Ani & Moshtaghie 1992), others show that serum iron concentrations and serum ferritin concentrations are unaffected by chromium picolinate supplementation (Campbell et al 1997). It would appear that iron does not use all available transferrin and therefore this situation is unlikely under normal conditions.

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**

**CORTICOSTEROIDS**
Corticosteroids increase urinary losses of chromium, and chromium supplementation has been shown to aid in recovery from steroid-induced diabetes mellitus. Therefore a beneficial interaction may be possible (Kim et al 2002).

**HYPOGLYCAEMIC MEDICINES**
Chromium may reduce requirements for hypoglycaemic agents (Ravina & Slezack 1993, Ravina et al 1995). While a beneficial interaction is possible, this combination should be used with caution and drug requirements monitored and adjusted if necessary by a healthcare professional.

**LIPID-LOWERING MEDICINES**
Additive effects are theoretically possible as some clinical studies have indicated lipid-lowering effects. Observe patients taking this combination and monitor drug requirements.

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**
Hypersensitivity to chromium.

**PREGNANCY USE**
Oral ingestion of doses typically found in the diet are likely to be safe. Taken under professional supervision, supplements are also likely to be safe and may be beneficial in the prevention and treatment of gestational diabetes (Jovanovic & Peterson 1996, Jovanovic et al 1999).
PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING

- Chromium is an essential trace mineral required for carbohydrate, lipid, protein and corticosteroid metabolism.
- Dietary intakes are generally below the minimum suggested safe and adequate levels, and factors such as high-sugar diets, corticosteroid use, excessive exercise, infection, physical trauma and psychological stress further increase the risk of deficiency.
- Chromium supplements are used in the treatment of type 2 diabetes, hypoglycaemia, gestational diabetes and hyperlipidaemia. However, inconsistent results have been obtained from clinical studies.
- It is also used in the treatment of obesity, atypical depression, syndrome X, PCOS and osteoporosis, and in resistance training.
- Supplemental forms used in trials include organic chromium complexes, such as chromium picolinate and chromium nicotinate, and inorganic salts such as chromium chloride.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What will this supplement do for me?
Chromium is essential for health and wellbeing. It may also have beneficial effects in type 2 diabetes, gestational diabetes, hypoglycaemia and elevated cholesterol and triglyceride levels in some people, although scientific research has produced mixed results.

When will it start to work?
Effects in diabetes and elevated cholesterol or triglyceride levels require 8–12 weeks to establish.

Are there any safety issues?
Used under professional supervision, chromium supplements are considered safe.

REFERENCES


Cinnamon

Historical note  Cinnamon has been used since ancient times for a variety of uses and was considered a precious commodity. In ancient Egypt, it was used as a flavouring for beverages, in combination with other spices for embalming, and as a medicinal agent. Ancient Chinese herbals mention it as a medicinal treatment as early as 2700 BC (Castleman 1991). In medieval Europe, cinnamon was a common ingredient in cooking, often used together with ginger. Due to the high demand for cinnamon, discovering lands where it grew was a primary motive for a number of explorers' enterprises in the 15th and 16th centuries. Today, two main types of cinnamon are cultivated, *Cinnamomum verum*, also known as Ceylon cinnamon, and *Cinnamomum cassia*, also known as Chinese cinnamon.

OTHER NAMES
*Cinnamomum verum*: cannelle de ceylan, Ceylon celonzimi cinnamon, Ceylon cinnamon, cinnamon bark, cortex cinnamomi ceylanici, dalchini, ecorce de cannelle de Ceylan, echter, gujerati-dalchini, kannel, kuei-pi, kurundu, kulit kayumanis, ob choei, tamalpatra, wild cinnamon
*Cinnamomum cassia* Blume: cassia, Chinese cinnamon, dalchini, guipi, kannan keihi, keishi, lavanga-pattai, lurundu, macrophyllos cassia bark tree, rou gui, Saigon cinnamon, saleekha, taj, toko keihi, Viet Nam cinnamon

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
*Cinnamomum verum* J.S. Presl (also known as *C. zeylanicum* Nees) and *C. cassia* Blume (family Lauraceae)

PLANT PARTS USED
Dried inner bark of the shoots grown on cut stock of *Cinnamomum verum* or of the trunk bark, freed from the underlying parenchyma; outer cork of *C. cassia* Blume.

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Both forms of cinnamon contain an essential oil that consists primarily of cinnamaldehyde (up to 80% in *C. verum* and 90% in *C. cassia*) and differ primarily in their eugenol and coumarin content. The volatile oil from *C. verum* contains 10% eugenol whereas the oil from *C. cassia* contains only trace amounts and *C. cassia* contains coumarin, which is not found substantially in *C. verum*. The bark of *C. verum*
contains caryophyllene, cinnamyl acetate and linalool whereas the bark of C. cassia contains catechin and 1,8 cineole.

**MAIN ACTIONS**
The cinnamaldehyde constituent in cinnamon is attributed with producing most of the herb’s biological effects. This component is found in large amounts in both forms of cinnamon. More recently, several other constituents have also been tested in isolation and found to exert significant pharmacological effects.

**ANTIBACTERIAL AND FUNGICIDAL EFFECTS**
Several in vitro studies have identified broad-spectrum antibacterial and fungicidal effects for both forms of cinnamon. This has been chiefly attributed to cinnamaldehyde although other constituents such as eugenol, caryophyllene and 1,8 cineole also exhibit antimicrobial properties.


*Cinnamomum cassia* extracts significantly inhibited *Helicobacter pylori* in vitro and produced zones of inhibition greater than or equal to commonly used antibiotics (Tabak et al 1999). The essential oil of *C. cassia* also exhibited strong antifungal properties in vitro (Giordani et al 2006). When tested with amphotericin, a reduced amount of drug was required for adequate antifungal effects.

Antibacterial activity for the oil has also been demonstrated against antibiotic-resistant *E. coli* and *Staphylococcus aureus* (Friedman et al 2004).

**Fungi in bakery products** Antifungal activity against the more common fungi causing spoilage of bakery products, *Eurotium amstelodami, E. herbariorum, E. repens, E. rubrum, Aspergillus flavus, A. niger and Penicillium corylophilum*, was demonstrated for cinnamon oil in vitro (Guynot et al 2003).

**Respiratory tract pathogens** An in vitro study of the antibacterial activity of essential oils and their major components against the major bacteria causing respiratory tract infection indicated that cinnamon bark oil was effective against *Haemophilus influenzae, Streptococcus pneumoniae* and *S. pyogenes* (Inouye et al 2001).

**Oral pathogens** According to in vitro research, cinnamon bark oil is an effective inhibitor of bacteria causing dental caries and periodontal disease (Saeki et al 1989).
CARMINATIVE
The essential oil exhibits carminative activity and decreases smooth muscle contractions in guinea-pig trachea and ileum, and in dog ileum, colon and stomach (WHO 2004). The oil has also demonstrated antifoaming activity in a foam generator model for flatulence (ESCOP 2003). The active antispasmodic constituent is considered to be cinnamaldehyde.

ENHANCED INSULIN SENSITIVITY
Water soluble compounds extracted from C. cassia potentiate insulin activity, as measured by glucose oxidation in the rat epididymal fat cell assay. The most active compound, methylhydroxy chalcone polymer (MHCP), increased glucose metabolism approximately 20-fold and was an effective mimetic of insulin according to an in vitro study. When combined with insulin, the responses were greater than additive, indicating synergism between the two compounds (Jarvill-Taylor et al 2001).

According to Anderson, MHCP is actually a water-soluble polyphenolic type-A polymer that increases insulin sensitivity by activating the key enzymes that stimulate insulin receptors, while inhibiting the enzymes that deactivate them. More specifically, extracts of cinnamon activate insulin receptor kinase and inhibit dephosphorylation of the insulin receptor, leading to maximal phosphorylation of the insulin receptor.

The United States Agricultural Research Service has filed a patent application on the active substances.

OTHER ACTIONS
Antioxidant and anti-inflammatory activity for cinnamon bark oil has been demonstrated in vitro and for the dry ethanolic extract in vivo (ESCOP 2003, Jarvill-Taylor et al 2001, Lee et al 2003, Mathew & Abraham 2006). Antinociceptive activity has been demonstrated when administered orally to mice in the hot plate and acetic acid writhing induced tests.

Cinnamomum cassia also possesses antipyretic activity (Kurokawa et al 1998) and reduced the occurrence of ulcers in rats in a dose-dependent manner in a study that administered an aqueous extract (Tanaka et al 1989).

Besides antispasmodic and broad-spectrum antibacterial and fungicidal activities, cinnamaldehyde also exhibits antitumor effects (Kwon et al 1998) and cytotoxicity (Moon & Pack 1983).

CLINICAL USE
Cinnamon has not been significantly studied in controlled trials, so evidence is mainly derived from in vitro and in vivo research and traditional usage.
**DYSPEPSIA AND RELATED SYMPTOMS**

Cinnamon bark oil and crushed cinnamon bark is used in the treatment of dyspeptic conditions, such as mild spastic conditions of the gastrointestinal tract, fullness and flatulence, loss of appetite and diarrhoea. Although controlled studies are unavailable, evidence of antispasmodic and antifoaming activity in animal models and a long tradition of use provide some support for its use in these indications.

Cinnamon bark and Chinese cinnamon are approved by the German Commission E for the treatment of loss of appetite and dyspeptic complaints such as mild gastrointestinal spasms, bloating, and flatulence (Blumenthal et al 1998).

**Helicobacter pylori infection**  According to a placebo-controlled study of 15 volunteers with documented *H. pylori* infection, an ethanolic extract of cinnamon was ineffective at eradicating the infection when used at a dose of 40 mg twice daily for 4 weeks (Nir et al 2000). Considering this is an extremely low dose, further investigation is required using therapeutic doses in order to adequately test its effectiveness for this indication.

**DIABETES**

A randomised, placebo-controlled study of type 2 diabetes demonstrated that cinnamon exerts clinically significant glucose- and lipid-lowering effects (Khan et al 2003). The study involved 60 people who were divided into six groups. Groups 1–3 consumed 1, 3 or 6 g of cinnamon daily whereas groups 4–6 were given the equivalent number of placebo capsules and acted as controls. The volunteers were not using insulin therapy and had a fasting blood glucose reading between 140 and 400 mg/dL. After 40 days of treatment, all three doses of cinnamon reduced mean fasting serum glucose by 18% to 29%, triglycerides by 23% to 30%, LDL-cholesterol by 7% to 27%, and total cholesterol by 12% to 26%. No significant changes were observed in the placebo groups. The effect on glucose and lipid levels was sustained 20 days after treatment had ceased, suggesting that cinnamon would not need to be consumed every day. The cinnamon used was *C. cassia*, which was finely ground and put into capsules.

More recently, a 6-week placebo-controlled study was conducted in 25 postmenopausal women with type 2 diabetes and produced different results (Vanschoonbeek et al 2006). Researchers assessed the effects of cinnamon supplementation (*C. cassia*, 1.5 g/day) on fasting blood glucose, insulin, and glycosylated haemoglobin concentrations, indices of oral glucose tolerance and whole-body insulin sensitivity, and fasting blood lipid profiles. During the trial, volunteers maintained their normal dietary and physical activities and continued all medication. After 6 weeks, cinnamon supplementation had no significant effect on fasting plasma glucose.
glucose or insulin concentrations, whole-body oral glucose tolerance, or blood lipid profiles in this sample.

It is not clear why positive results should be observed in the first study and not in the second. The dose of cinnamon used was within the range expected to be active and the same form was used. Vanschoonbeek et al report that baseline values of fasting glucose and triglycerides were different for subjects participating in the two studies and discrepant results may be accounted for by this difference and lack of nutritional standardisation in the study by Khan et al.

**Gestational diabetes** A randomised, double-blind placebo controlled study of 51 women with gestational diabetes found that 6 weeks of treatment with 1 g of cinnamon daily produced a trend towards decreased insulin requirements (53.85% cinnamon vs 44% placebo, \( P = 0.58 \)); however, this did not reach significance (Graham et al 2005). The cinnamon used was *C. cassia*. The researchers suggested that a longer duration of treatment may be required to produce better results.

**OTHER USES**

**TRADITIONAL USES**

Cinnamon has been traditionally used by ancient healers from many backgrounds for stomach cramps, flatulence, nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, infant colic, common infections and also female reproductive problems such as dysmenorrhoea, menorrhagia, lactation, and pain in childbirth. It has also been used as an ingredient in topical preparations for pain and inflammation. Cinnamon is often used in combination with other herbs and spices for most of these indications. In TCM it is considered to warm the kidneys and fortify yang, so is used for impotence among other indications.

**NATURAL FOOD PRESERVATIVE**

Spices such as cinnamon have been used traditionally for the preservation of food products. The considerable antimicrobial, fungicidal and antioxidant properties of cinnamon provide a theoretical basis for its use.

**DOSAGE RANGE**

**GENERAL GUIDE**

- Dried bark (crushed cinnamon): 1.5–4 g taken up to four times daily.
- Fluid extract 1:1: 0.5–1.0 mL taken up to three times daily.
- Tea: \( \frac{1}{2} \) to \( \frac{3}{4} \) teaspoon of powdered cinnamon in a cup of boiling water taken 2–3 times daily with meals.
- Essential oil: 0.05–0.2 mL diluted in carrier oil.
ACCORDING TO CLINICAL STUDIES
- Diabetes: 1–6 g daily of powdered cinnamon (C. cassia) administered in capsules.

TOXICITY
The oral LD$_{50}$ for cinnamon bark oils in rats is 4.16 g/kg and 3.4 mL/kg body weight.

ADVERSE REACTIONS
When the powdered herb is ingested orally, it is generally well tolerated; however, when cinnamon oil is applied topically, allergic reactions are possible as cinnamaldehyde may cause allergic contact dermatitis (Cheung et al 2003).

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
Controlled studies are not available, therefore interactions are based on evidence of activity and are largely theoretical and speculative.

HYPOGLYCAEMIC AGENTS
Oral ingestion of cinnamon capsules may reduce blood glucose levels, therefore theoretically, an additive effect is possible with concurrent use — observe; potential beneficial interaction under professional supervision.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Cinnamon is contraindicated in people with an allergy to cinnamon or Peru balsam, in cases of fever of unknown origin, active stomach or duodenal ulcers (WHO 2004).

PREGNANCY USE
*Cinnamomum cassia* or *C. zeylanicum/verum* should not be used in pregnancy; however, usual dietary intakes are likely to be safe. Currently, evidence of teratogenicity from animal studies is contradictory.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Cinnamon has been used since ancient times as a flavouring and medicinal agent.
- It is a natural food preservative with antioxidant and wide ranging antimicrobial and antifungal properties.
- It has been used traditionally to treat dyspepsia, nausea, flatulence, poor appetite, stomach cramps and diarrhoea. Some evidence suggests it may be effective for some of these indications.
- Ground cinnamon (C. cassia) may reduce blood glucose and lipid levels and be useful for people with type 2 diabetes; however, this has yet to be clearly established because inconsistent results have been obtained in controlled studies.
• Cinnamon oil can cause allergic contact dermatitis when used topically and should be avoided by people with allergies to cinnamon or Peru balsam, pregnancy or those with active gastrointestinal ulcers.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this herb do for me?
Cinnamon is a natural food preservative with wide ranging antimicrobial and antifungal properties. It may improve digestion and ease symptoms of dyspepsia, flatulence and nausea. Its effect on blood glucose, total cholesterol and triglyceride levels remains to be established as inconsistent test results have been reported.

When will it start to work?
The effects on digestion should start rapidly; however, effects on blood glucose and lipid levels may take 1 month or more.

Are there any safety issues?
Cinnamon oil can cause allergic contact dermatitis when used topically and should be avoided by people with allergies to cinnamon or Peru balsam, pregnant women or those with active gastrointestinal ulcers.

REFERENCES
Citrus aurantium

Historical note  The root word for orange is the Arabic, *narandj* (Sellar 1992). The orange is a symbol of innocence and fertility. Some scholars believe the ‘golden apple’ Paris presented to Venus was actually an orange. In return, Venus bestowed Helen on Paris as a reward for selecting her in a beauty contest, which eventually caused the Trojan War. The tree is indigenous to eastern Africa, Arabia and Syria and it is believed that the crusaders may have introduced the orange to Europe when they returned from the crusades. Unripe dried fruits and the fruit peel are incorporated into various products, including foods such as marmalade, alcoholic beverages such as Curacao and medicinal products. The essential oil is used in perfumes, cosmetics and aromatherapy (Leung & Foster 1996), and also used as food flavouring and to disguise the unpleasant taste of medicines. Orange blossom water has been used for centuries in Mediterranean countries to flavour cakes and beverages (Jeannot et al 2005).

COMMON NAME
Orange

OTHER NAMES
Bitter orange, *Citrus sinensis*, green orange, Seville orange, Zhi Shi

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
*Citrus aurantium* var. *dulcis* (sweet orange) and *Citrus aurantium* var. *amara* (bitter orange) (family Rutaceae).

PLANT PARTS USED
Fruit, dried outer peel of the ripe fruit, and essential oils and floral water (orange blossom water).

Clinical note — Three different essential oils
*C. aurantium* var. *dulcis* (sweet orange) and *C. aurantium* var. *amara* (bitter orange) are obtained from the peel and are usually expressed oils.

Neroli essential oil is obtained from the flowers of *C. aurantium* var. *amara* by steam distillation and very occasionally enfleurage and is known as Neroli Bigarade, which is said to be the best Neroli essential oil available. Neroli essential oil obtained from *C. aurantium* var. *dulcis* is known as Neroli of Portugal.

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
Petitgrain is obtained from the leaves of *C. aurantium* var. *amara* by steam distillation. Each of these oils has a different chemical profile and therefore different uses. Distilled essential oils are used more in food flavourings and expressed essential oils in aromatherapy and perfumes because of their stronger fragrance (Tisserand & Balacs 1995). This monograph concentrates on expressed sweet orange and bitter orange essential oils.

**CHEMICAL COMPONENTS**

**BITTER ORANGE PEEL**

Essential oil (0.2–0.5%), monoterpenes linalyl acetate, pinene, limonene, linalool, nerol, geraniol, bitter substances, flavonoids and methyl anthranilate, the alkaloid synephrine and n-methyltyramine (Blumenthal et al 2000, Pellati et al 2002). Synephrine is structurally similar to epinephrine.

**ESSENTIAL OILS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Essential oil species</th>
<th>Major components</th>
<th>Minor components</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Citrus aurantium</em> var. <em>dulcis</em></td>
<td>Limonene 89%</td>
<td>Linalool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Myrcene 1.7%</td>
<td>Neral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Beta-bisabolene 1.29%</td>
<td>Geranial, neral, citronellal, sabinene, myracene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Citrus aurantium</em> var. <em>amara</em></td>
<td>d-limonene 89–96%</td>
<td>Nerol, geraniol, linalyl acetate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Bergaptene 0.069–0.073%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Furanocoumarins (not in steam distilled oils)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Terpeneless/deterpenated or concentrated orange oil is sometimes available. Although the terpenes are removed, terpeneless orange oils retain all their other chemical components, including the furanocoumarins, which are in larger amounts, and this increases their phototoxic potential. Therefore, the safe concentration in blends containing terpeneless oils is less than 0.2% (Tisserand & Balacs 1995).

Methyl anthranilate is an important compound that may give orange flowers their aroma (Jeannot et al 2005).

The composition of orange essential oils is described by the International Standards Organisation (ISO) under the following standard numbers 1340: 2005

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
MAIN ACTIONS

SYMPATHOMIMETIC
Considering *C. aurantium* contains biologically active adrenergic amines, it may exert sympathomimetic activity.

An in vivo study found no significant effects on blood pressure when two concentrations of *C. aurantium* tincture (standardised to 4% synephrine or 6% synephrine) were administered (Calapai et al 1999). However, analysis of myocardial electrical activity showed ECG alterations such as ventricular arrhythmias with enlarged QRS complex. The effect was present after 5 days of treatment and became significant at day 10 and was still evident after 15 days. These effects may be explained by the positive chronotropic activity of synephrine, which has been observed on isolated atria from reserpinised guinea pigs due to beta-1-adrenoceptor agonist activity, but could also be due to other constituents.

APPETITE SUPPRESSANT
Synephrine produces effects on human metabolism, which could be useful for reducing fat mass in obese humans because it stimulates lipolysis, raises metabolic rate and fat oxidation through increased thermogenesis (Pellati et al 2002). A controlled in vivo study of *C. aurantium* fruit hydro-alcoholic extracts standardised to synephrine 4% (Ci.au. 4%) and 6% (Ci.au. 6%) found repeated administration of the extract significantly and dose-dependently reduced food intake and body weight gain (Calapai et al 1999).

ANTIBACTERIAL
Seville orange has strong in vitro antibacterial activity against *Escherichia coli* and *Staphylococcus aureus* (Melendez & Capriles 2006).

ANTIVIRAL
The fruit of *C. aurantium* has a potent inhibitory activity on rotavirus infection (Kim et al 2000). The active components are neohesperidin and hesperidin.

ANTIFUNGAL
Bitter orange essential oil has been shown to be effective in treating resistant fungal skin conditions (Ramadan et al 1996).
**DIGESTIVE EFFECTS**
The essential oil of *C. aurantium* var. *dulcis* is believed to aid digestion by stimulating the flow of gastric juice and has antispasmodic and carminative actions. The essential oil of *C. aurantium* var. *amara* is considered to be a liver stimulant, reduces gastric spasm and relieves symptoms of indigestion (Price & Price 1995, Wichtl & Bisset 1994). It is also thought to lower cholesterol.

**AROMATHERAPY EFFECTS**
The essential oil of *C. aurantium* var. *dulcis* is considered to convey warmth and happiness and improve mood (Battaglia 2003), reduce stress, aid sleep by reducing stress (Miyake et al 1991), and aid concentration (Baron & Thomley 1994). The essential oil of *Citrus aurantium* var. *amara* is considered to have a calming effect (Price & Price 1995, Wichtl & Bisset 1994).

**OTHER ACTIONS**

**ANTIOXIDANT**
Natural antioxidants obtained from ‘citrus oils’ have been shown to inhibit oxidation of LDL-cholesterol in in vitro studies (Takahashi et al 2003), possibly due to the gamma-terpinene content. Terpinolene and alpha-terpinene also showed antioxidant properties. Takahashi et al suggested gamma-terpinene could be added to foods and beverages to prevent oxidation. Sellar (1992) suggested sweet orange oil aids the absorption of vitamin C.

**CYP3A4 INHIBITION**
Bergamottin and 6′,7′-dihydroxybergamottin found in Seville oranges inactivate intestinal CYP3A4, as demonstrated clinically. Other furanocoumarins, including bergapten, could also be involved (Malhotra et al 2001).

**CLINICAL USE**

**HEARTBURN AND DYSPNEPTIC SYMPTOMS**
The primary indication for bitter orange tincture or extract is heartburn (Blumenthal et al 2000). The dried peel is officially listed in the British Pharmacopoeia (1983) as a bitter tonic and empirical evidence suggests it acts as a carminative agent. Commission E approves the use of cut peel for loss of appetite and dyspeptic symptoms (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**WEIGHT LOSS**
*Citrus aurantium* extract is growing increasingly popular as an ingredient in weight loss products, substituting for the banned ephedra in the United States. The main ingredient, synephrine, produces effects on human metabolism that could be useful.
for reducing fat mass in obese humans because it stimulates lipolysis, rises metabolic rate and fat oxidation through increased thermogenesis.

Currently, only two small clinical studies have been published and both suggest possible weight reduction (Preuss et al 2002); more research is required to confirm effectiveness and safety.

**SUPERFICIAL DERMATOPTHY IFE INFECTION**

The oil of bitter orange (C. *aurantium* var. *amara*) was an effective topical treatment in treatment-resistant superficial dermatophyte infection according to a study of 60 patients (Ramadan et al 1996). Patients with tinea corporis, cruris or pedis were treated with one of three treatments based on oil of bitter orange and cure was assessed by clinical and mycological examinations. One group used a 25% emulsion of oil three times daily, the second group used 20% oil in alcohol three times daily and the third group applied pure oil once daily. Treatment with the 25% oil emulsion was most successful and resulted in 80% of patients being cured after 1–2 weeks and 20% in 2–3 weeks. The group using the 20% oil in alcohol preparation also experienced substantial cure rates, but it took longer to achieve. Application of the undiluted oil successfully cured 33% of subjects within the first week, 60% within 1–2 weeks and 7% in 2–3 weeks. The only side-effect reported was mild irritation when the undiluted oil was used.

**AROMATHERAPY**

**Citrus aurantium var. dulcis**  The essential oil is used to convey warmth and happiness and improve mood (Battaglia 2003), reduce stress, and promote sleep (Miake et al 1991), and aid concentration (Baron & Thomley 1994). It is traditionally known as ‘the oil of communication and happiness’. It is also used to improve digestion and as a carminative to relieve gastric cramping and discomfort.

**Citrus aurantium var. amara**  The essential oil is used to reduce anxiety, muscle tension and promote relaxation. It is used in cosmetics to repair broken capillaries, stimulate cell regeneration and to manage acne-prone skin.

**OTHER USES**

Distilled orange oil is often added to foods and beverages to enhance their flavour and to medicines to reduce the unpleasant taste.

Orange blossom water or hydrosol contains small proportions of essential oils and is used on the skin as an astringent and orally as a gastrointestinal carminative (Jeannot et al 2005). There are no terpenes in orange hydrosol, so the likelihood of causing skin irritation is significantly reduced. It is also used topically as an astringent...
for acne-prone skin and to calm babies and induce sleep (Bellakhdar 1997, Hmamouchi 1999).

The essential oil of *C. aurantium* var. *amara* is used as an ingredient in perfumes.

**DOSAGE RANGE**

**BITTER ORANGE PEEL PRODUCTS**
- General dose information: 4–6 g daily of cut peel for teas or other galenical preparations used for oral administration.
- Infusion: 2 g of cut peel in 150 mL boiling water taken three times daily.
- Weight loss: bitter orange 975 mg (used with caffeine 528 mg and St John’s wort 900 mg in a small double-blind study).

**ESSENTIAL OILS**
- Oral LD$_{50}$ dose: 5 g/kg (rat)
- Dermal LD$_{50}$ dose: >5 g/kg (rabbit) (Citrus and Allied Essences 2004).
- Oral LD$_{50}$ dose for a 15 kg child: 83 g/kg
- Oral LD$_{50}$ dose for a 70 kg adult: 389 g/kg
- Oral doses in teas and other preparations: 4–6 g/day or 2 g in 150 mL of boiled water as an infusion (American Botanical Council 1999).
  - The inhalation LD$_{50}$ dose has not been established.
- Topical application dose of bitter orange to skin exposed to UV rays: 1.4% of a blend.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**

**SKIN SENSITISATION**

Both *C. sinensis* and *C. amara* are mild skin irritants, but are considered to be low risk. Skin reactions are more likely if undiluted oils are applied directly to the skin or when used on broken or inflamed skin or when other skin pathology is present. Skin reactions are idiosyncratic and can be difficult to predict. Skin sensitisation due to topically applied orange oil is largely due to the components citral and cinnamic acid and is dose-dependent (Tisserand & Balacs 1995).

**PHOTOSENSITISATION**

Expressed *C. sinensis* essential oil is not normally phototoxic (Tisserand & Balacs 1995), whereas *C. amara* oil is moderately phototoxic due to its furanocoumarin content, although the risk is considered low unless higher than recommended concentrations are used or more than one potentially phototoxic oil is combined in a blend. The risk may be increased in fair-skinned individuals. Other phototoxic essential oils include *Citrus bergamia* (bergamot) and *Citrus limon* (lemon). Sensitivity to
sunlight or UVB light after topical application increases in the first hour after application and declines over the following 8 hours. A general caution is to avoid UV exposure for at least 12 hours after topical application and use a sunscreen during this period. An early study (Zaynoun 1977) \((n = 63)\) showed no significant differences in phototoxic reactions to bergamot oil for eye colour, age, gender or tanning, but smaller amounts of oil produced an effect in light-skinned people. It is not clear whether this also applies to orange essential oil.

**GASTROINTESTINAL SYMPTOMS**
Abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, and dizziness have been reported with oral dosing (Citrus and Allied Essences 2004).

**CARDIOTOXICITY**
Bitter orange, standardised to 4–6% synephrine, demonstrated cardiovascular toxicity (ventricular arrhythmias with enlargement of QRS complex) and mortality in rats (Calapai et al 1999). The clinical significance of this finding remains unknown.

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**
There are no known interactions between the essential oils and conventional medicines; however, interactions may occur with the fruit and fruit products.

Theoretically, an interaction exists for CYP 3A and P-gp substrates as human studies indicate that juice made from *C. aurantium* (Seville orange) inhibits CYP3A and possibly P-glycoprotein (Di Marco et al 2002, Malhotra et al 2001) — use with caution.

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**
Do not apply essential oils to eyes or undiluted to mucous membranes. Orange essential oil is flammable and should not be vapourised near sources of heat or open flames. Therefore, candle vapourisers are not recommended. Skin sensitisation and phototoxicity are possible with the essential oils, so exposure to UV light sources should be avoided for at least 12 hours after dermal application. The risk is increased in fair-skinned individuals and when a blend that also contains other phototoxic essential oils is used.

**PREGNANCY USE**
Bitter orange peel and associated products is not recommended for use in pregnancy (Blumenthal et al 2000).

Orange essential oil used in recommended doses is generally safe in pregnancy, but general safety precautions apply.
PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING

- Bitter orange peel and associated products are used to improve digestion, relieve dyspeptic symptoms and improve appetite.
- *Citrus aurantium* extract is growing increasingly popular as an ingredient in weight loss products; however, controlled studies are required to determine its safety and effectiveness.
- The oil of bitter orange (*Citrus aurantium* var. *amara*) was an effective topical treatment in treatment-resistant superficial dermatophyte infection according to one study.
- Topical application of orange oil and bitter orange oil can induce skin sensitisation, which is more likely to occur if old orange essential oil is used because of its tendency to oxidise. Appropriate storage reduces oxidation. A patch test is recommended for atopic people or those who have a tendency to skin reactions to fragrance compounds, cosmetics or essential oils.
- Topical application of orange oil and bitter orange oil can induce photosensitivity in some individuals. After topical application, exposure to sunlight or UVB light should be avoided for at least 12 hours. The risk of phototoxicity increases if high concentrations of phototoxic essential oils are used or a blend contains several phototoxic essential oils or if used by fair-skinned people.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What will this herb do for me?
Orange essential oil can be used in a vapouriser or massage to aid focus and concentration and facilitate communication. It is also used to reduce stress and promote sleep and relaxation. In teas and tinctures, cut peel may aid digestion and relieve dyspeptic symptoms. There is some evidence that the oil may be an effective treatment for treatment-resistant fungal skin infections.

When will it start to work?
When used in aromatherapy, it usually acts soon after inhalation. When the oil or oil products are applied topically to fungal infections, results may be seen within 1–2 weeks; however, 3–4 weeks of treatment may be required. Used internally, bitter orange peel products should provide dyspeptic symptom relief quickly.

Are there any safety issues?
Skin irritation and phototoxicity (chemical burn) is possible after topical application of the oil if the skin is exposed to UV light such as sunlight. Use in recommended doses and do not use more than 15% of orange essential oil in a blend. Oral use of bitter orange peel products is not recommended in pregnancy and Seville orange juice can induce multiple drug interactions.
REFERENCES

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
Historical note  Spices such as cloves have been used as food preservatives, disinfectants and antiseptics for centuries (De et al 1999). Modern research has confirmed that cloves are an effective preservative that inhibit the growth of many food-poisoning and food-spoiling bacteria.

**COMMON NAME**
Cloves

**OTHER NAMES**
Oil of cloves, Oleum caryophylli
_Eugenia caryophyllata, Eugenia aromatica, Caryophyllus aromaticus, Myrtaceae_

**SCIENTIFIC NAME**
_Syzygium aromaticum_ (family Myrtaceae)

**PLANT PART USED**
Dried flower buds (clove oil is distilled from this plant part).

**CHEMICAL COMPONENTS**
The main constituent of clove oil is eugenol. Others include beta-caryophyllene, acetyl eugenol, isoeugenol, eugenine, kaemferol, tannins, gallic acid, vitamin C, minerals (boron, calcium, chromium, iron, manganese, magnesium, potassium, phosphorus) (US Department of Agriculture 2002).

**MAIN ACTIONS**
Because of cloves’ significant eugenol content, most pharmacological activity is based on studies involving eugenol.

**LOCAL ANALGESIC, LOCAL ANAESTHETIC AND ANTI-INFLAMMATORY**
The local analgesic and anti-inflammatory activity of clove oil is mainly due to the eugenol component. Eugenol acts on contact to depress nociceptors, the sensory receptors involved in pain perception (Brodin & Roed 1984). Eugenol also inhibits prostaglandin biosynthesis through potent cyclo-oxygenase-1 and -2 inhibitory activity (Huss et al 2002, Kelm et al 2000). Although eugenol is chiefly responsible, other constituents are also involved (Ghelardini et al 2001a). Beta-caryophyllene, another key component of clove oil, exhibits significant anti-inflammatory and rapid local anaesthetic activity in several animal models (Ghelardini et al 2001b,
Local anesthetic effects develop within 5 minutes of application and diminish after about 15 minutes.

**ANTISEPTIC — FUNGICidal, ANTIBACTERIAL, ANTIViral**

Clove oil has an inhibitory effect against yeasts in vitro (Arora & Kaur 1999). Antibacterial activity has been demonstrated against Gram-negative anaerobic periodontal oral pathogens, including Porphyromonas gingivalis and Prevotella intermedia (Cai & Wu 1996). Activity has also been demonstrated against Bacillus subtilis, Listeria monocytogenes, Salmonella enterica, Escherichia coli and Saccharomyces cerevisiae (De et al 1999, Dorman & Deans 2000, Friedman et al 2002). In vitro assays have identified inhibitory effects on hepatitis C virus protease (Hussein et al 2000) and human cytomegalovirus (Shiraki et al 1998, Yukawa et al 1996). An animal model confirmed significant activity against herpes simplex virus type 1 (Kurokawa et al 1998).

Clove oil has an inhibitory effect against yeasts in vitro (Arora & Kaur 1999). Antibacterial activity has been demonstrated against Gram-negative anaerobic periodontal oral pathogens, including Porphyromonas gingivalis and Prevotella intermedia (Cai & Wu 1996). Activity has also been demonstrated against Bacillus subtilis, Listeria monocytogenes, Salmonella enterica, Escherichia coli and Saccharomyces cerevisiae (De et al 1999, Dorman & Deans 2000, Friedman et al 2002). In vitro assays have identified inhibitory effects on hepatitis C virus protease (Hussein et al 2000) and human cytomegalovirus (Shiraki et al 1998, Yukawa et al 1996). An animal model confirmed significant activity against herpes simplex virus type 1 (Kurokawa et al 1998).

Clove oil has an inhibitory effect against yeasts in vitro (Arora & Kaur 1999). Antibacterial activity has been demonstrated against Gram-negative anaerobic periodontal oral pathogens, including Porphyromonas gingivalis and Prevotella intermedia (Cai & Wu 1996). Activity has also been demonstrated against Bacillus subtilis, Listeria monocytogenes, Salmonella enterica, Escherichia coli and Saccharomyces cerevisiae (De et al 1999, Dorman & Deans 2000, Friedman et al 2002). In vitro assays have identified inhibitory effects on hepatitis C virus protease (Hussein et al 2000) and human cytomegalovirus (Shiraki et al 1998, Yukawa et al 1996). An animal model confirmed significant activity against herpes simplex virus type 1 (Kurokawa et al 1998).

Clove oil has an inhibitory effect against yeasts in vitro (Arora & Kaur 1999). Antibacterial activity has been demonstrated against Gram-negative anaerobic periodontal oral pathogens, including Porphyromonas gingivalis and Prevotella intermedia (Cai & Wu 1996). Activity has also been demonstrated against Bacillus subtilis, Listeria monocytogenes, Salmonella enterica, Escherichia coli and Saccharomyces cerevisiae (De et al 1999, Dorman & Deans 2000, Friedman et al 2002). In vitro assays have identified inhibitory effects on hepatitis C virus protease (Hussein et al 2000) and human cytomegalovirus (Shiraki et al 1998, Yukawa et al 1996). An animal model confirmed significant activity against herpes simplex virus type 1 (Kurokawa et al 1998).

Clove oil has an inhibitory effect against yeasts in vitro (Arora & Kaur 1999). Antibacterial activity has been demonstrated against Gram-negative anaerobic periodontal oral pathogens, including Porphyromonas gingivalis and Prevotella intermedia (Cai & Wu 1996). Activity has also been demonstrated against Bacillus subtilis, Listeria monocytogenes, Salmonella enterica, Escherichia coli and Saccharomyces cerevisiae (De et al 1999, Dorman & Deans 2000, Friedman et al 2002). In vitro assays have identified inhibitory effects on hepatitis C virus protease (Hussein et al 2000) and human cytomegalovirus (Shiraki et al 1998, Yukawa et al 1996). An animal model confirmed significant activity against herpes simplex virus type 1 (Kurokawa et al 1998).

Clove oil has an inhibitory effect against yeasts in vitro (Arora & Kaur 1999). Antibacterial activity has been demonstrated against Gram-negative anaerobic periodontal oral pathogens, including Porphyromonas gingivalis and Prevotella intermedia (Cai & Wu 1996). Activity has also been demonstrated against Bacillus subtilis, Listeria monocytogenes, Salmonella enterica, Escherichia coli and Saccharomyces cerevisiae (De et al 1999, Dorman & Deans 2000, Friedman et al 2002). In vitro assays have identified inhibitory effects on hepatitis C virus protease (Hussein et al 2000) and human cytomegalovirus (Shiraki et al 1998, Yukawa et al 1996). An animal model confirmed significant activity against herpes simplex virus type 1 (Kurokawa et al 1998).

Clove oil has an inhibitory effect against yeasts in vitro (Arora & Kaur 1999). Antibacterial activity has been demonstrated against Gram-negative anaerobic periodontal oral pathogens, including Porphyromonas gingivalis and Prevotella intermedia (Cai & Wu 1996). Activity has also been demonstrated against Bacillus subtilis, Listeria monocytogenes, Salmonella enterica, Escherichia coli and Saccharomyces cerevisiae (De et al 1999, Dorman & Deans 2000, Friedman et al 2002). In vitro assays have identified inhibitory effects on hepatitis C virus protease (Hussein et al 2000) and human cytomegalovirus (Shiraki et al 1998, Yukawa et al 1996). An animal model confirmed significant activity against herpes simplex virus type 1 (Kurokawa et al 1998).
TOOTHACHE AND RELIEF OF DRY SOCKET PAIN
Clove oil and dried clove buds are used in dentistry to relieve dental pain and reduce infection. Based on the evidence available, Commission E has approved cloves for use as a local anaesthetic and antiseptic (Blumental et al 2000).

ORAL HYGIENE
Used as an antiseptic and antibacterial agent for the oral mucosa, clove is used as an ingredient in mouth rinses and gargles. Its established antiseptic activity provides a theoretical basis for efficacy.

HERPES SIMPLEX VIRUS TYPE 1
One study using a combination of acyclovir and cloves administered orally found this to be superior to acyclovir alone in the treatment of herpes simplex virus type 1 infection (Kurokawa et al 1995). The combination significantly reduced the development of skin lesion and/or prolonged survival times of infected mice and reduced viral loads.

HEADACHE (AS PART OF A COMBINATION)
Tiger balm is a popular OTC preparation that contains clove oil, menthol, cassia oil, camphor, cajuput oil and sometimes peppermint oil. It is generally used to relieve the symptoms of sore muscles, but a randomised double-blind study found that it is also as effective as paracetamol in reducing headache severity (Schattner & Randerson 1996). Although encouraging, the role of cloves in this combination is difficult to assess from the study.

OTHER USES
Clove oil and dried clove buds are used in dentistry to relieve dental pain and reduce infection. Based on the evidence available, Commission E has approved cloves for use as a local anaesthetic and antiseptic (Blumental et al 2000).

DOSAGE RANGE
- Powder: 120–300 mg as a single dose
- Oil: 0.05–0.2 mL as a single dose
- Toothache or gum inflammation: oil of clove is applied directly to the site.
- Dry socket: the area is packed with dried flower buds steeped in oil.
- Headache: 1 drop of oil massaged into each temple or area of pain.

ADVERSE REACTIONS
According to one review, contact dermatitis has been reported, and local application may cause irritation to mucous membranes in sensitive individuals. Oral use of the oil can cause nervous system depression, seizures, hepatic dysfunction and irritation to mucosal tissues.
SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
None known.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
None known.

PREGNANCY USE
Safety unknown.

PRACTICE POINTS
- Clove flower buds and clove oil have antiseptic, analgesic, anti-inflammatory and local anaesthetic properties.
- It is directly applied to relieve the symptoms of toothache and dry socket.
- Clove oil is also used in mouth rinses and gargles to improve oral hygiene.
- Massaging one drop of oil into the temples has been used to treat headache.
- This herb and its essential oil should not be taken internally.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this herb do for me?
Clove flower buds and clove oil have antiseptic, anti-inflammatory, analgesic, and local anaesthetic properties that are useful in the treatment of toothache, dry socket and common mouth infections. Massaging one drop of the oil into the temples may relieve the symptoms of headache.

When will it start to work?
Research suggests that effects are almost immediate, although short lasting.

Are there any safety issues?
Clove buds and clove oil should not be taken internally, and only applied externally.

REFERENCES

© 2007 Elsevier Australia


Cocoa

Historical note  Cocoa originates from Mexico where the Mayas, Incas, and Aztecs considered it the food of the gods. Chocolate, mixed with vanilla and sugar, was first introduced as a beverage to Europe by Columbus and was considered an aphrodisiac and a symbol of wealth and power. The phenolics in chocolate prevent the fat becoming rancid, decreasing the need for added preservatives. This quality was exploited during World War II when at times US troops were rationed three chocolate bars per day during heavy combat as their sole source of nourishment (Waterhouse et al 1996).

COMMON NAME
Chocolate, Cocoa, cocoa liquor, cocoa mass, baking chocolate

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
_Theobroma cacao_ (family Sterculiaceae)

PLANT PARTS USED
Cocoa is produced through a process of fermenting the seeds from the pods of the cacao tree _Theobroma cacao_. The beans are dried, roasted, and crushed to produce high-fat, unsweetened chocolate, which is also called baking chocolate. This intermediate is pressed and alkalised to form cocoa powder, which is then homogenised with sugar and cocoa butter, and sometimes milk, to ultimately form chocolate. Dark chocolate generally contains more than 50% cocoa, whereas mass-produced milk chocolate only contains around 10% cocoa. White chocolate is based on cocoa butter (or theobroma oil) without the cocoa solids.

Although many different types of cocoa beans grow throughout the world, three varieties of cocoa beans are mainly used to make chocolate products: (a) criollo (meaning ‘native’), distributed to the north and west of the Andes, (b) forastero (meaning ‘foreign’), found mainly in the Amazon basin, and (c) trinitario (meaning ‘sent from heaven’) (Bruinsma & Taren 1999).

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Cocoa is among the most concentrated sources of the flavanols, catechin and epicatechin, with four times the catechin content of tea (Arts et al 1999). Chocolate also contains additional flavonoids not found in tea, with high concentrations of oligomeric procyanidins (Lazarus et al 1999). Post-harvesting and processing pro-
 Procedures can have a striking influence on the flavanol content of chocolate and cocoa (Hollenberg et al 2004). Dark chocolate has the highest total catechin content with approximately 53.5 mg/100 g, whereas milk chocolate contains approximately 15.9 mg/100 g (Arts et al 1999). White chocolate primarily contains cocoa butter with minimal levels of polyphenols. Cocoa also contains the methylxanthines, caffeine and theobromine, the biogenic amines phenylethylamine, phenylalanine and tyrosine (Bruinsma & Taren 1999) and the cannabinoid-like fatty acid anandamide analogs, N-oleylethanolamine and N-linoleylethanolamine (Di Tomaso et al 1996). Chocolate is also a rich source of minerals, including magnesium, calcium, iron, copper, phosphorus, potassium and zinc (Steinberg et al 2003).

**MAIN ACTIONS**

Both in vitro and in vivo studies indicate that cocoa flavanols have antioxidant effects and decrease LDL-cholesterol oxidation, reduce platelet aggregation, and enhance endothelial function. There is, however, tremendous variability in cocoa processing, flavonoid content and measurement of flavonoids, and questions remain around bioavailability and dosing frequency (Fisher & Hollenberg 2005). A feeding study demonstrated that procyanidins were remarkably stable in the stomach environment and thus most ingested procyanidins reach the small intestine intact and are available for absorption or metabolism (Rios et al 2002). Epicatechin and its metabolites reach maximal levels 2 hours after either chocolate or cocoa intake, with rapid excretion in the urine (Baba et al 2000) and dimeric procyanidins have been detected in human plasma as early as 30–60 minutes after the consumption of flavanol-rich beverages providing 0.25–0.50 g/kg cocoa/kg body weight (Holt et al 2002, Zhu et al 2005).

**ANTIOXIDANT**

Cocoa has been found to have much higher levels of total phenolics and flavonoids, with a corresponding higher antioxidant capacity per serving, than black tea, green tea or red wine (Lee et al 2003). It has been suggested that the antioxidant capacity of cocoa polyphenols is greater than synthetic antioxidants and that they have the potential to complement or replace synthetic antioxidants in aqueous and oil-based food applications (Osman et al 2004).

Human studies have confirmed that the polyphenols in chocolate are indeed bioavailable and able to increase the antioxidant capacity of plasma, with one study reporting that ingestion of 80 g of procyanidin-rich chocolate increased plasma epicatechin concentrations 12-fold, significantly increased plasma total antioxidant capacity by 31% and significantly decreased 2-thiobarbituric acid reactive substances.
by 40% after 2 hours, with levels returning to normal within 6 hours (Rein et al 2000a).

Cocoa has also been consistently shown to inhibit LDL oxidation both in vitro (Sies et al 2005, Waterhouse et al 1996) and in vivo (Kondo et al 1996). In a crossover study in 23 healthy subjects cocoa powder and dark chocolate was seen to modestly reduce LDL oxidation susceptibility while increasing serum total antioxidant capacity and HDL-cholesterol concentrations (Wan et al 2001), and another cross-over trial of 25 healthy subjects found that supplementation with 36.9 g of dark chocolate (30 g of cocoa powder drink) for 6 weeks reduced LDL oxidisability (Mathur et al 2002). Similar results were seen in a randomised, double-blind crossover trial that found that a high-flavanol cocoa drink providing 187 mg flavan-3-ols/100 mL significantly reduced lipid peroxidation, compared with a low-flavanol cocoa drink providing only 14 mg/100 mL (Wисwedel et al 2004).

A further randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled study of 21 healthy adults, however, found that intake of high-flavonoid (213 mg procyanidins, 46 mg epicatechin) dark chocolate bars for 2 weeks did not alter resistance to LDL oxidation, total antioxidant capacity, 8-isoprostanes, blood pressure, lipid parameters, body weight or BMI, despite increasing plasma epicatechin concentrations and improving endothelium-dependent flow-mediated dilation of the brachial artery (Engler et al 2004).

In addition to reducing lipid oxidation, consumption of a flavanol-rich cocoa beverage has been shown to reduce susceptibility of erythrocytes to haemolysis and to increase their ability to buffer free radicals (Zhu et al 2005).

There is evidence that the polyphenols are not the only antioxidants in chocolate, as suggested by a study that found that consumption of chocolate containing 200 mg of polyphenols, as well as chocolate with less than 10 mg of polyphenols, reduced faecal free radical production (Record et al 2003). Furthermore, similar reductions in markers of lipid peroxidation have been observed after daily consumption of 75 g of dark chocolate and dark chocolate enriched with cocoa polyphenols, as well as with white chocolate, which contains very little polyphenols (Mursu et al 2004).

**EFFECTS ON MICROCIRCULATION AND NITRIC OXIDE**

A double blind, dose-finding study found that flavanol-rich cocoa increased circulating NO species in the plasma of male smokers, with maximal effects seen with ingestion of 176–185 mg flavanols (Heiss et al 2005). Another double-blind trial found that ingestion of a high-flavanol cocoa drink, but not a low-flavanol one, enhanced NO bioactivity and increased plasma concentrations of nitroso compounds.
and flow-mediated dilation of the brachial artery (Sies et al 2005). Similarly, ingestion of flavanol-rich cocoa is associated with acute elevations in levels of circulating NO species, enhanced flow-mediated dilatation response of conduit arteries, and an augmented microcirculation, with these effects being mimicked by ingestion of chemically pure epicatechin. Moreover, chronic consumption of a cocoa-flavanol-rich diet has been associated with augmented urinary excretion of NO metabolites (Schroeter et al 2006).

**LIPID-LOWERING**

A 3-week clinical supplementation trial of 45 non-smoking, healthy volunteers consuming high-polyphenol chocolate found a significant increase in serum HDL-cholesterol with dark and high polyphenol chocolate (11.4% and 13.7%, respectively), whereas white chocolate consumption resulted in a small decrease in HDL. Markers of lipid peroxidation decreased 11.9% in all three study groups with no changes occurring in the total antioxidant capacity of plasma, in the oxidation susceptibility of serum lipids or VLDL and LDL, or in the concentration of plasma F2-isoprostanes or hydroxy fatty acids. This suggests that while cocoa polyphenols may increase the concentration of HDL-cholesterol, chocolate fatty acids may modify the fatty acid composition of LDL, making it more resistant to oxidative damage (Mursu et al 2004).

**INHIBIT PLATELET FUNCTION**

Numerous dietary intervention studies in humans and animals indicate that flavanol-rich foods and beverages might exert cardioprotective effects with respect to vascular function and platelet reactivity (Keen et al 2005). Acute doses of flavanols and oligomeric procyanidins from cocoa have been observed to inhibit platelet activation (Pearson et al 2002, Rein et al 2000b) and have an aspirin-like effect on primary hemostasis 2 and 6 hours after consumption (Hermann et al 2006, Pearson et al 2002, Rein et al 2000b), with the effects being similar to, but less profound than, aspirin (Pearson et al 2002). Similar results have been observed in longer studies with lower doses of cocoa flavanols, with a double-blind, controlled trial demonstrating significantly lower platelet aggregation and significantly higher plasma ascorbic acid concentrations after supplementation with cocoa flavanols (234 mg cocoa flavanols and procyanidins/day) over 28 days (Murphy et al 2003).

In another randomised trial of 30 healthy volunteers 100 mg of dark chocolate, but not white or milk chocolate, were found to significantly inhibit collagen-induced platelet aggregation (Innes et al 2003). The alteration of eicosanoid synthesis has been suggested as a plausible mechanism by which procyanidins can decrease
platelet activation, and has been observed in an in vitro study of the effect of procyanidin on aortic endothelial cells, as well as in a randomised, blinded, crossover study of high procyanidin chocolate (4.0 mg/g) (Schramm et al 2001).

**PSYCHOLOGICAL EFFECTS**
Chocolate is purported to have a range of psychological effects, including enhanced arousal and cognitive function, stimulation of feelings of wellbeing and euphoria, as well as initiating cravings. The orosensory aspects of chocolate, including its taste, smell and texture, certainly contribute to chocolate’s positive appeal. Chocolate contains large amounts of fat in the form of cocoa butter, which melts at body temperature producing a pleasurable melt-in-the-mouth experience. Chocolate also often contains large amounts of sugar and thus satisfies the seemingly innate preference for sweet, high-fat, foods (Bruinsma & Taren 1999).

In addition to unique sensory properties, chocolate also contains many pharmacologically active substances. Several endogenous biogenic amines with sympathomimetic properties are found in chocolate, most notably tyramine and phenylethylamine (Hurst 1982). Phenylethylamine is an amphetamine analogue structurally related to methylenedioxymethamphetamine that may act to potentiate dopaminergic and noradrenergic neurotransmission and modulate mood (Bruinsma & Taren 1999).

Cocoa is also known to contain methylxanthines, including caffeine and theobromine, both of which are stimulants. Although the stimulatory and sympathomimetic effects of caffeine are well documented the psychological effects of theobromine are less certain.

A group of biologically active constituents, including $N$-oleylethanolamine and $N$-linoleylethanolamine, have been identified in chocolate and appear to be related to anandamide, the ‘internal bliss’ chemical, which is the endogenous lipoprotein that binds cannabinoid receptors within the brain (Di Tomaso 1996). Although is has been suggested that these compounds may elicit heightened sensitivity and euphoria by directly activating cannabinoid receptors or by increasing anandamide levels (Bruinsma & Taren 1999), measurements have suggested that their amounts in cocoa is several orders of magnitude below those required to reach the blood and cause observable central effects (Di Marzo et al 1998).

Chocolate craving, which is reported to be the most common food craving (Weingarten & Elston 1991), is more common in women, with fluctuations occurring with hormonal changes just before and during the menses (Rozin et al 1991). The basis for chocolate craving, however, remains undetermined, but it is suggested that aroma, sweetness, texture and calorie content are likely to play a more important role.

**MODULATION OF IMMUNE FUNCTION AND INFLAMMATION**

The procyanidin fraction from cocoa demonstrates immunomodulatory function in vitro, with stimulation of TNF-alpha (Mao et al 2002) and modulation of the secretion of the cytokine transforming growth factor (TGF-beta-1) (Mao et al 2003), as well as inhibiting induced nuclear transcription of human IL-1B (Mao et al 2000a), phytohemagglutinin-induced stimulation of IL-2 (Mao et al 1999) and mitogen-stimulated secretion of IL-4 (Mao et al 2000b) in peripheral blood mononuclear cells in vitro.

Cocoa polyphenols have also been shown to reduce leukotriene synthesis through inhibition of human 5-lipoxygenase (Sies et al 2005).

**ALTERED CELLULAR SIGNALLING**

Flavonoids have been shown to modulate tumour pathology in vitro and in animal models, and the pentameric procyanidin fraction isolated from cocoa is reported to slow the growth of cultured human aortic endothelial cells (Kenny et al 2004a), as well as inhibit the proliferation of human dermal microvascular endothelial cells in vitro through inhibition of tyrosine kinase ErbB2 expression. This has led to the suggestion polyphenols may influence endothelial growth signaling in vitro, with potential beneficial effects for specific neoplasias in which cells over-express ErbB2 (Kenny et al 2004b).

**INHIBITION OF DENTAL CARIES**

Cocoa contains substances that protect against dental caries (Palenik et al 1977, s’Gravenmade et al 1977) and in vitro experiments have shown that monomeric polyphenols and tannins from cocoa may interfere with glucosyltransferase activity of *Streptococcus mutans* and reduce plaque formation (Kashket et al 1985). Similar results were reported in hamsters, with a marked caries-inhibitive effect found with a water-extract of cocoa (Stralfors 1966). Cocoa bean husk, while not used in cocoa or chocolate, demonstrates antibacterial properties attributed to its unsaturated fatty acids and antiglucosyltransferase activities attributed to epicatechin polymers, as well as being shown both in vitro and in vivo to possess significant antiplaque activity (Matsumoto et al 2004).

**ANTITUSSIVE**

It has been suggested that theobromine, a methylxanthine derivative present in cocoa, may form the basis for a new class of antitussive drugs, as it has been shown
to effectively inhibit citric acid-induced cough in guinea-pigs in vivo, as well as suppress capsaicin-induced cough in a human double-blind trial. The observation that theobromine inhibits capsaicin-induced sensory nerve depolarisation of the guinea-pig and human vagus nerve suggests that its antitussive action may be mediated peripherally through an inhibitory effect on afferent nerve activation (Usmani et al 2005).

OTHER ACTIONS
The major flavonoids of cocoa, epicatechin and catechin, protected cellular membrane from amyloid beta-protein-induced neurotoxicity in vitro, suggesting that cocoa may have anti-neurodegenerative effects (Heo & Lee 2005).

CLINICAL USE
CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE
Epidemiologic studies have shown inverse associations between dietary polyphenols and mortality from coronary heart disease. Small, short-term, intervention studies have indicated that cocoa-containing foods may provide many cardiovascular benefits including reducing blood pressure, inhibiting platelet function, preventing lipid oxidation, reducing LDL, increasing HDL, improving endothelial function, increasing insulin sensitivity, reducing insulin resistance and reducing inflammation.

Dark chocolate, but not white chocolate, was observed to significantly improve endothelial and platelet function in healthy smokers, with increased flow-mediated dilatation, increased total antioxidant status and reduced shear stress dependent platelet function seen 2–8 hours after ingestion (Hermann et al 2006). Dark chocolate has also been shown to increase insulin sensitivity and decrease blood pressure in healthy people (Grassi et al 2005a). Similar results were obtained in a RCT using 100 g of dark chocolate containing approximately 500 mg polyphenols which was consumed daily for 15 days. Chocolate was found to decrease DBP by $-11.9 \pm 7.7$ mmHg, decrease serum LDL-cholesterol from 3.4 to 3.0 mmol/L, improve flow-mediated dilatation, and reduce insulin resistance and increase insulin sensitivity in patients with newly diagnosed essential hypertension (Grassi et al 2005b). Similarly, a study of male soccer players found that consumption of 105 g of flavanol-containing milk chocolate (168 mg of flavanols) for 14 days decreased DBP (−5 mmHg), mean blood pressure (−5 mmHg), plasma cholesterol (−11%), LDL-cholesterol (−15%), malondialdehyde (−12%), urate (−11%) and lactate dehydrogenase activity (−11%), and increased vitamin E/cholesterol (+12%) (Fraga et al 2005).

As yet there are no published long-term RCT or intervention studies of cocoa with hard clinical end-points (Maron 2004). The cardiovascular benefits of cocoa are
supported, however, in a 15-year epidemiological study of 470 elderly men, which found that cocoa intake was inversely associated with blood pressure and 15-year cardiovascular and all-cause mortality. This study found a 50% reduction in cardiovascular-related death and all-cause mortality in the highest tertile of cocoa intake compared to the lowest tertile, suggesting that the pharmacological actions described for cocoa do, in fact, translate into clinical benefits (Buijsse et al 2006).

**HYPERLIPIDAEMIA**

The lipid content of chocolate is relatively high, yet around one-third of the lipid in cocoa butter is composed of the fat, stearic acid, which exerts a neutral cholesterolaemic response in humans by an unknown mechanism (Kris-Etherton et al 1993, Steinberg et al 2003). Cocoa butter, however, is considered a high calorie fat because it has a high digestibility with a digestible energy value of 37 kJ/g in humans (Shahkhalili et al 2000). The results of a randomised, double-blind crossover design supplementation study suggest that the addition of calcium to chocolate can significantly reduce the absorption of cocoa butter, thus reducing the absorbable energy value of the chocolate by approximately 9% while at the same time reducing the plasma LDL-cholesterol level and leaving the plasma HDL-cholesterol level and taste of the chocolate unchanged (Shahkhalili et al 2001).

Although there are some short-term studies demonstrating that cocoa flavanols can reduce serum LDL (Fraga et al 2005, Grassi et al 2005) and increase HDL (Mursu et al 2004, Wan et al 2001), long-term clinical trials are needed to determine its role in the clinical treatment of hypercholesterolaemia.

Cocoa bran may also have a use in hypercholesterolaemia, as well as constipation, because this low-fat, high-fibre material has been shown in a randomised, controlled, double-blind study to increase faecal bulk similarly to wheat bran and reduce the LDL/HDL-cholesterol ratio, with no effect on LDL-cholesterol oxidation (Jenkins et al 2000).

**PREMENSTRUAL SYNDROME**

Magnesium deficiency may contribute to the symptomology of PMS, which may be improved by chocolate or cocoa powder, which contain a high concentration of magnesium (≈100 mg/100 g in chocolate and 520 mg/100 g in cocoa powder). There is also some evidence to suggest that serotonin levels are low premenstrually, and it is possible that premenstrual chocolate cravings are the body’s attempt to raise CNS concentrations of serotonin (Bruinsma & Taren 1999).
**ENHANCED COGNITIVE FUNCTION**

The results of a double-blind, placebo-controlled study suggests that both milk and dark chocolate, but not white chocolate, improve cognitive function. A second double-blind study suggests that this improvement is due to the methylxanthin content of chocolate, with 11.6 g of cocoa powder producing identical improvements in cognitive function and the mood construct ‘energetic arousal’ as a mixture of caffeine (19 mg) and theobromine (250 mg) (Smit et al 2004).

Consumption of a 65 g chocolate bar was shown to significantly increase driving accuracy and reduce collisions compared to an equicaloric snack of cheese and biscuits or no snack in a controlled trial of 12 volunteers (Smith & Rich 1998).

**FOOD SOURCE**

Cocoa and chocolate are nutritious foods that contribute to caloric as well as trace mineral intake (Steinberg et al 2003). Milk chocolate has a relatively low glycaemic index of approximately 40 (Foster-Powell et al 2002) and this is attributed to the fat in chocolate slowing gastric emptying and thus the rate of subsequent digestion and absorption. The glycaemic effect of milk chocolate can be further reduced by replacing the sucrose with fructose or isomalt (Gee et al 1991). Foods containing cocoa have been shown to lead to a greater postprandial insulin secretion in healthy young adults than foods with alternative flavourings, despite having a similar glycaemic index. It is suggested that specific insulinogenic amino acids or greater cephalic phase insulin release may explain this finding, although the clinical implications are uncertain (Miller et al 1995).

Milk chocolate has also been shown to be a cheap, effective and palatable form of fatty meal for producing gall bladder contraction prior to cholecystography (Harvey 1977).

**OTHER USES**

Chocolate consumption 15 minutes before exercise has been shown to enhance exercise capacity, spare glycogen stores, delay fatigue, and contribute to the recovery of glycogen repletion in healthy subjects (Chen et al 1996).

Cocoa may also be of use in lactose intolerance, with a feeding study of 35 subjects finding that the addition of cocoa significantly reduced breath hydrogen levels, as well as bloating and cramping, with the result being independent of the presence of sucrose and carrageenan (Lee & Hardy 1989).

Cocoa butter is used in the formation of suppositories and pessaries, as well as preparations for rough or chafed skin, chapped lips, sore nipples, and various cosmetics (Raintree Nutrition 1996).
**DOSAGE RANGE**
There is enormous variability in the polyphenol content of cocoa and chocolate. Trials suggest that effective doses are approximately 40–100 g of dark chocolate or 15–30 g of cocoa powder, providing approximately 200–500 mg polyphenols.

**TOXICITY**
Cocoa contains caffeine, which is a mild CNS stimulant that can be profoundly toxic in large doses, resulting in arrhythmia, tachycardia, vomiting, convulsions, coma and death. The caffeine content of cocoa is variable, being approximately 0.009% by weight (Kondo et al. 1996), with a typical milk chocolate bar containing approximately 10 mg of caffeine, compared to a cup of coffee, which contains approximately 100 mg (Bruinsma & Taren 1999). Fatal caffeine overdoses in adults have been reported, but are rare and typically require ingestion of more than 5 g of caffeine or more than 50 kg of chocolate (Kerrigan & Lindsey 2005).

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
It is believed that chocolate is a trigger for migraine, yet there is inconsistent support for this. In one small double-blind, parallel-group study of 12 patients who believed that chocolate could provoke their attacks, chocolate ingestion was more likely than placebo to trigger a typical migraine episode, with the median time until the onset of the attack of 22 hours (Gibb et al. 1991). Three other double-blind placebo-controlled trials suggest that chocolate on its own rarely precipitates migraine (Marcus et al. 1997, Moffett et al. 1974), with the results of one trial suggesting that chocolate was no more likely to provoke headache than was carob in typical migraine, tension-type, or combined headache sufferers (Marcus et al. 1997).

Allergy to cocoa has been documented (Taibjee et al. 2004) and it has been suggested that workers employed in the processing of cocoa and flour may be at a high risk for the development of allergic sensitisation and respiratory impairment (Zuskin et al. 1998). One case report of cocoa aspiration causing severe aspiration pneumonitis in a 4-year-old has been documented (Lopatka et al. 2004).

There is no evidence that chocolate contributes to acne (Ravenscroft 2005).

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**
Polyphenols may reduce iron absorption, with a cocoa beverage containing 100–400 mg total polyphenols per serving having been shown to reduce iron absorption by approximately 70% (Hurrell et al. 1999).

**PREGNANCY USE**
Cocoa and chocolate can be considered safe to use in pregnancy.

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING

- Cocoa has many potential benefits for the cardiovascular system and may reduce blood pressure, inhibit platelet function, and improve the serum cholesterol profile, as well as having beneficial effects on insulin sensitivity. However, further research is required to confirm the benefits.
- The most active agents in cocoa are the polyphenols, which are present in high amounts in dark chocolate, with lesser amounts in milk chocolate and minimal amounts in white chocolate.
- Cocoa powder contains minimal fat while dark chocolate contains less fat and sugar than milk or white chocolate. Beneficial effects are more likely to result from the use of cocoa powder or dark chocolate containing more than 50–60% cocoa mass.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What will this herb do for me?
Cocoa is a nutritious food that appears to have beneficial effects on blood pressure, cholesterol, blood clotting, and psychological well-being.

When will it start to work?
Psychological effects of chocolate consumption may be evident immediately, whereas beneficial effects on blood pressure and cholesterol may be evident after 2–4 weeks.

Are there any safety issues?
Cocoa powder and dark chocolate are extremely safe and are unlikely to precipitate migraine or dental caries or produce adverse effects from the caffeine content.

REFERENCES


Coenzyme Q10

OTHER NAMES
Ubiquinone, ubidecarenone, ubiquinol

BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS
Coenzyme Q10 (CoQ10) is an endogenous enzyme cofactor produced in humans from tyrosine through a cascade of reactions that itself requires eight vitamin coenzymes: tetrahydrobiopterin, vitamins B6, C, B2, B12, folic acid, niacin, and pantothenic acid (Folkers et al 1990). CoQ10 is also a fat-soluble antioxidant vitamin that plays an indispensable role in intracellular energy production.

Absorption occurs in the small intestine and tends to be poor, and is influenced by the presence of food and drink. CoQ10 is better absorbed in the presence of a fatty meal and is primarily bound to VLDL- and LDL- cholesterol. As such, serum levels of CoQ10 depend mostly on the amount of CoQ10-containing lipoproteins in circulation.

After incorporation into lipoproteins in the liver, CoQ10 is subsequently concentrated in various tissues, including the adrenals, spleen, kidneys, lungs and myocardium. Physical activity markedly reduces muscle tissue levels of CoQ10, which do not correlate to serum levels, suggesting they are independently regulated (Laaksonen et al 1995a, Overvad et al 1999).

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
The basic structure of ubiquinones is a benzoquinone head and terpinoid tail. The number of isoprenoid units in the tail portion varies among coenzymes. CoQ10 contains one quinine group and 10 isoprenyl units (Overvad et al 1999). Ubiquinones have been found in microorganisms, plants and animals but the CoQ10 form is the most common type found in mammals and humans.

FOOD SOURCES
Meat and fish products are the most concentrated sources of CoQ10, although lesser quantities are found in boiled broccoli, cauliflower, nuts, spinach and soy.

DEFICIENCY SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS
No RDI levels have been established but there has been some speculation as to possible deficiency signs and symptoms. These include fatigue, muscle aches and pains and chronic gum disease.
Based on biopsy and/or serum samples, it has been observed that relative CoQ10 deficiency is associated with:

- congestive heart failure (Sole & Jeejeebhoy 2002, Spigset 1994a)
- cardiomyopathy (Mortensen et al 1990)
- hypertension (Karlsøn et al 1991)
- ischaemic heart disease (Karlsøn et al 1991)
- hyperthyroidism (Bianchi et al 1999)
- breast cancer (Folkers et al 1997).

At this stage it is still unclear whether an observation of relative deficiency in a particular disease state can be interpreted as part of the aetiology of that disease or whether lowered levels are a consequence of disease. In heart failure the situation is somewhat clearer, as patients with more advanced heart failure have significantly lower CoQ10 levels than those with less advanced conditions (Mortensen 1993).

A deficiency state may result from:

- impaired or reduced synthesis due to nutritional deficiencies, advancing age or medication use
- interactions with drugs — there is clinical evidence that lovastatin, pravastatin and simvastatin reduce CoQ10 status in humans, which may in part explain the incidence of side-effects, particularly myopathy, associated with their use (Bargossi et al 1994a, b, Folkers et al 1990, Mortensen et al 1997). Clinical evidence also suggests that use of gemfibrozil and other fibrin acid derivatives reduce CoQ10 levels (Aberg et al 1998). In vitro evidence suggests that other drugs, such as clonidine, hydralazine, hydrochlorothiazide, methylldopa, metoprolol and propranolol, may also decrease endogenous production of CoQ10 (Kishi et al 1975). Other sources cite tricyclic antidepressants as further medicines that can reduce CoQ10 status (Pelton et al 1999)
- genetic or acquired defects in synthesis or utilisation
- inadequate intake or biosynthesis to meet increased requirements resulting from illness or excess physical exertion.

**MAIN ACTIONS**

**ANTIOXIDANT**

Being a vital electron and proton carrier, CoQ10 supports adenosine triphosphate synthesis in the mitochondrial inner membrane and stabilises cell membranes, preserving cellular integrity and function. It also reconstitutes vitamin E back into its antioxidant form (Kaikkonen et al 2002).
**CARDIOPROTECTIVE**
CoQ10 may offer myocardial protection during cardiac surgery, as suggested by some clinical trials that observed improved postoperative cardiac function and reduced myocardial structural damage with pre-surgery administration of CoQ10.

**ANTIHYPERTENSIVE**
In the 1970s Yamagami et al observed a deficiency in CoQ10 in patients with hypertension (1975, 1976) and suggested that correction of the deficiency could result in hypertensive effects. Small studies were initially conducted with hypertensive patients identified as CoQ10 deficient. Since then, significant antihypertensive activity has been observed in several clinical studies (Burke et al 2001, Digiesi et al 1994, Langsjoen et al 1994), however, not all have identified the subjects’ baseline CoQ10 plasma levels and whether oral administration restored levels to within the normal range. It has been suggested that CoQ10 supplementation is associated with a decrease in total peripheral resistance, possibly because of action as an antagonist of vascular superoxide, either scavenging or suppressing its synthesis (McCarty 1999).

**IMMUNOSTIMULANT ACTIVITY**
Several models of immune function have demonstrated the immunostimulant activity of CoQ10 (Folkers & Wolaniuk 1985).

**ENDOTHELIAL FUNCTION**
A randomised study involving 40 dyslipidaemic patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus found that oral CoQ10 (200 mg daily) taken over 12 weeks improved the endothelial function of conduit arteries of the peripheral circulation (Watts et al 2002). Another study of 80 subjects using the same dose for the same treatment period failed to improve endothelial forearm vasodilator function when given alone, although when combined with fenofibrate, the effectiveness was significant (Playford et al 2003). Both research groups suggested that the effect may be due to an increase in the bioactivity of and/or responses to endothelium-derived relaxing factors, including nitric oxide.

**OTHER ACTIONS**
Tests in animal models have demonstrated that CoQ10 protects against doxorubicin cardiotoxicity, possibly via antioxidant activity and restoring depleted nutrient status (Combs et al 1977, Folkers et al 1978).

Recent research has identified that CoQ10 affects the expression of genes involved in human cell signalling, metabolism and transport (Groneberg et al 2005). This mechanism may account for some of the pharmacological effects observed with
CoQ10 supplementation. Additionally, CoQ10 inhibits the formation of beta-amyloid protein in vitro (Ono et al 2005).

**CLINICAL USE**

**CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASES**

In 1972 Folkers and Littau from Italy documented a deficiency of coenzyme Q10 in human heart disease (Ernster & Dallner 1995).

Since those early reports, a steady stream of research articles have been published and clinical experience in its use as an adjunct to conventional treatment in various forms of heart disease has accumulated. Data from laboratory studies have also accumulated and generally provide a supportive basis for its use.

A review by Langsjoen and Langsjoen of over 34 controlled studies and additional open studies concluded that CoQ10 supplementation goes beyond the correction of a simple deficiency state with strong evidence to show it has the potential to reduce the risk of cardiovascular disease by the maintenance of optimal cellular and mitochondrial function in cardiomyocytes.

Although investigation into specific cardiovascular diseases has been undertaken, the results of an open study of 424 patients suggested that CoQ10 may have widespread benefits. The study found that CoQ10 supplementation produced clinically significant improvements in cardiac function and reduced medication requirements in patients with a range of cardiovascular disorders, including ischaemic cardiomyopathy, dilated cardiomyopathy, primary diastolic dysfunction, hypertension, mitral valve prolapse and valvular heart disease (Langsjoen et al 1994).

A recent review by Langsjoen and Langsjoen (1999) of more than 34 controlled studies and additional open studies concluded that CoQ10 supplementation goes beyond the correction of a simple deficiency state, with strong evidence to show it has the potential to reduce the risk of cardiovascular disease by the maintenance of optimal cellular and mitochondrial function in cardiomyocytes.

**Congestive heart failure** CoQ10 has been reported to improve symptoms of congestive heart failure (CHF) and QOL, and to reduce hospitalisation, and is used as standard therapy for CHF in some parts of Europe, Russia and Japan.

At the cellular level, oxidative stress, mitochondrial dysfunction and energy starvation are believed to play important roles in the aetiology of CHF (Overvad et al 1999). As such it has been suggested that low CoQ10 levels identified in patients with CHF may play a role in disease development (Jeejeebhoy et al 2002) and that restoring myocyte nutrition with vitamin supplementation, including CoQ10, produces significant improvement (Sole & Jeejeebhoy 2002). Furthermore, an inverse
relationship has been found between the severity of CHF and CoQ10 levels in blood from endocardial biopsies.

Clinical studies  Currently, over 15 RCTs involving subjects with heart failure have been published in addition to numerous open-trials (Bhagavan & Chopra 2005).

One meta-analyses of 8 RCT found that adjunctive therapy with CoQ10 led to significant improvements in total work capacity, cardiac index, cardiac output and stroke volume (Soja & Mortensen 1997). The subjects had cardiomyopathy and CHF of varying aetiologies (idiopathic, dilated, ischaemia, hypertension, valvular heart disease and congenital heart disease).

In 1994, the results were published of a large multicentre trial of 2664 subjects with New York Heart Association (NYHA) classes II and III that had studied the effects of oral CoQ10 (predominantly 100 mg/day) over 3 months (Baggio et al 1994). The percentages of patients experiencing improvements in clinical signs and symptoms of heart failure were: 78% for cyanosis, 79% for oedema, 72% jugular reflux, 53% dyspnoea, 75% palpitations, 80% sweating, 63% subjective arrhythmia, 63% insomnia, 73% vertigo and 54% nocturia. Improvements in at least three symptoms were reported by 54% of subjects.

Currently, the largest controlled trial in adult cardiomyopathy and CHF was reported in 1993 (Morisco et al) and involved 641 patients with NYHA classes III and IV. The double-blind placebo-controlled study used a dose of 2 mg CoQ10 per kg daily over 1 year and found that active treatment significantly improved arrhythmias and episodes of pulmonary oedema, as well as reducing the number of hospitalisations and overall mortality rate. The same researchers conducted a smaller double-blind crossover study that again produced positive results. Oral CoQ10 (150 mg/day) taken for 4 weeks significantly improved ejection fraction (EF), stroke volume and cardiac output in chronic heart failure patients (Morisco et al 1994). A controlled crossover study of 79 subjects with chronic cardiomyopathy and congestive heart failure showed that 3 months treatment with CoQ10 (100 mg/day) significantly improved volume load EF, arteriovenous oxygen difference and QOL assessment (Hofman-Bang et al 1995). Another randomised, double-blind study of 22 heart failure patients (NYHA classes II and III) found treatment for 12 weeks with 200 mg coenzyme Q10 daily improved left ventricular EF (Munkholm et al 1999).

More recently, a double blind, placebo-controlled study involving 39 patients with a NYHA class II or III heart failure due to ischaemic or dilated cardiomyopathy found that despite the small sample size, 150 mg oral CoQ10 taken for 3 months resulted in significant improvement of 0.5 class compared with placebo (Keogh et al 2003). Other parameters that showed significant improvements were Specific Activities Scale
class and the 6-minute walk-test distance, and there was a significant correlation between the increase in exercise time and the increase in serum CoQ10 level. Of note, patients were also receiving maximal non-beta-blocker therapy.

Although CoQ10 is generally studied in heart failure patients (NYHA class II and III), a double-blind, placebo-controlled, randomised study published in 2004 (Berman et al) describes its effects in end-stage heart failure among patients awaiting heart transplantation. The study of 32 subjects compared Ultrasome CoQ10 (60 mg/day) to placebo over 3 months as an adjunct to conventional therapy. Significant improvements in functional status, clinical symptoms and QOL were reported for CoQ10; however, no significant changes in the echocardiography parameters (dimensions and contractility of cardiac chambers) or ANF and TNF blood levels were observed.

These results are clearly encouraging; however, three controlled studies in CHF have failed to demonstrate an additional improvement with CoQ10 above that achieved for pharmaceutical therapy (Khatta 2000, Permanetter et al 1989, Watson et al 1999). One theory proposes that the most profound effects on myocardial function occur when supplementation is given shortly after the diagnosis of CHF and before the development of irreversible myocyte loss and fibrosis. Some commentators have suggested that the sample sizes, severity and duration of disease, treatment dose and duration of treatment may have contributed to the neutral effects observed (Langsjoen 2000). An important issue that often fails to be considered is the measurement of plasma and myocyte CoQ10 concentrations and whether supplementation has achieved levels that are within the range likely to produce clinical results.

The review by Langsjoen and Langsjoen in 1999 suggests that maximal effects on the mitochondrial bioenergetics of the heart muscle appear to require above normal plasma levels.

**HYPERTENSION AND CHOLESTEROL LOWERING**

CoQ10 has been studied both as stand-alone and adjunctive treatment in hypertension. According to a review of 8 studies, supplemental CoQ10 results in a mean decrease in systolic blood pressure of 16 mmHg and in diastolic blood pressure of 10 mmHg (Rosenfeldt et al 2003). The effect on blood pressure has been reported within 10 weeks of treatment at doses usually starting at 100 mg daily. One small 10-week open study of 26 subjects with essential hypertension study found that an oral dose of 50 mg taken twice daily also reduced total serum cholesterol levels with a modest increase in serum HDL-cholesterol (Digiesi et al 1994).
CARDIAC SURGERY
The use of CoQ10 supplementation before cardiac surgery has been studied since the early 1980s. Since that time, growing evidence suggests that CoQ10 can reduce reperfusion injury after coronary artery bypass surgery, reduce surgical complications, accelerate recovery times and possibly shorten hospital stays (Chello et al 1996, Chen et al 1994, Judy et al 1993, Rosenfeldt et al 2002, Taggart et al 1996, Tanaka et al 1982, Zhou et al 1999). In general, the studies that achieved positive results had provided supplements for 1–2 weeks prior to surgery.

One study observed that continuing to administer CoQ10 for 30 days after surgery hastened the recovery course to 3–5 days without complications, compared with a 15–30-day recovery period for a control group, which did experience complications (Judy et al 1993, Rosenfeldt et al 2002).

The most recent randomised, double-blind trial investigated the effects of preoperative high-dose CoQ10 therapy (300 mg/day) in patients undergoing elective cardiac surgery (mainly coronary artery bypass graft surgery or valve replacement) (Rosenfeldt et al 2005). Approximately 2 weeks of active treatment resulted in significantly increased CoQ10 levels in the serum, atrial myocardium and mitochondria compared with placebo, but no significant change in the duration of hospital stay. Active treatment also improved subjective assessment of physical QOL (+13%) compared with placebo; however, the authors point out that physical QOL does not necessarily indicate improved cardiac pump function and further studies are required with larger sample sizes to clarify the role of CoQ10 in cardiac surgery.

The use of CoQ10 as preoperative treatment may hold special significance for older patients, who generally experience poorer recovery of cardiac function after cardiac surgery than their younger counterparts. One explanation gaining support is that the aged myocardium has less homeostatic reserve and so is more sensitive to both aerobic and physical stress and less well equipped to deal with cardiac surgery. Two studies have confirmed this theory, demonstrating an age-related deficit in myocardial performance after aerobic and ischaemic stress and the capacity of CoQ10 treatment to correct age-specific diminished recovery of function (Rosenfeldt et al 1999).

Besides improving cardiac resilience, CoQ10 has been found to reduce skeletal muscle reperfusion injury after clamping and declamping by reducing the degree of peroxidative damage (Chello et al 1996).

ANGINA PECTORIS
Based on the observation of relative CoQ10 deficiency in patients with ischaemic heart disease, and in animal models showing that it prevents reperfusion injury,
several randomised clinical trials have been performed in angina pectoris. The doses used have varied from 60 mg to 600 mg daily, and the time frames for use varied from 4 days to 4 weeks. Overall, CoQ10 appears to delay signs of oxygen deficiency in the myocardium, increases patients’ stamina on a treadmill or during exercise and delays the onset of angina (Ovevad et al 1999), as well as reducing nitroglycerin consumption (Kamikawa et al 1985).

**STATIN DRUG USE**
The mechanism of action of the statin group of drugs is inhibition of 3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl-coenzyme A (HMG-CoA)-reductase, an enzyme involved in the biosynthesis of cholesterol from acetyl-CoA. Inhibition of this enzyme also adversely effects the intrinsic biosynthesis of CoQ10, as demonstrated in laboratory animals and humans and reduces plasma and myocardial levels of CoQ10 (Bargossi et al 1994b, Folkers et al 1990, Rosenfeldt et al 2005). Studies have indicated that reductions of 20–30% in circulating coenzyme Q10 concentrations may be expected in response to treatment with statins (Nawarskas 2005); however, it is uncertain whether reduced serum levels are of clinical consequence. It is more likely that reduced muscle CoQ10 concentrations are of greater concern because they may be associated with impaired cardiac function. The results obtained by Folkers et al (1990) and Silver et al (2004) provide some support for this rationale; however, a study by Colquhoun et al (2005) casts doubt on this relationship. Folkers et al showed that oral administration of CoQ10 to five hospitalised patients with cardiac disease made worse with lovastatin, produced an improvement in cardiac function (1990). Silver et al found that left ventricular diastolic function worsened in 10 of 14 patients after atorvastatin therapy, as observed with Doppler echocardiography (2004). When CoQ10 (300 mg/day) was administered to 9 of these patients, 8 experienced a reversal of diastolic abnormality. In contrast, Colquhoun et al (2005) studied left ventricular EF in 21 hypercholesterolaemic subjects with normal function receiving simvastatin over 6 months. After 1 month, EF significantly decreased; however, no significant changes were observed after 3 or 6 months and washout of simvastatin. No association was found between the size of the reduction in EF and the reduction in plasma CoQ10 level after 1 month.

There has been some suggestion that the side-effects of myalgia, fatigue and rhabdomyolysis associated with statin treatment may be dependent on CoQ10 depletion. A recent study identified that statin-induced myopathy can be associated with a mild decrease in muscle CoQ10 concentration, providing some support for this theory (Lamperti et al 2005). Numerous anecdotal reports suggest that some patients using statin therapy long-term and experiencing fatigue find benefit with CoQ10.
supplementation; however, controlled trials are unavailable to determine the significance of these observations. A case study by Walravens et al (1989) illustrates the point.

A 48-year-old physician was taking lovastatin 20 mg/day for moderate hypercholesterolaemia and he also jogged three times a week, with occasional high-altitude cycling. After 2–3 weeks of lovastatin treatment, exercise became difficult because of muscle soreness and fatigue and at 7 weeks he had severe cramps while cycling. Soreness and weakness continued for 6 months, after which he began taking CoQ10 (30 mg daily). After a few days’ treatment, muscle fatigue after exercise ceased and the severe cramps did not recur. Restarting lovastatin 10 mg 5–6 times weekly did not result in muscle cramping while CoQ10 was taken.

Currently it is still not clear whether CoQ10 supplementation should be considered a necessary adjunct to all patients taking statin drugs; however, those patients considered at risk of deficiency may benefit, in particular, patients with a family history of heart failure, elevated cholesterol levels and who are over 65 years of age and taking statin drugs long-term (Levy & Kohlhaas 2006).

**ARRHYTHMIAS**

A small open study of 27 volunteers showed that CoQ10 exerts antiarrhythmic effects in some individuals (Fujioka et al 1983).

**SPORTS SUPPLEMENT/ERGOGENIC AID**

Because CoQ10 is essential for energy metabolism, researchers have speculated that it may improve athletic performance. Eight clinical studies investigating the effects of CoQ10 supplementation on physical capacity were located, generally showing negative results (Bonetti et al 2000, Braun et al 1991, Laaksonen et al 1995, Malm et al 1997, Nielsen et al 1999, Porter et al 1995, Snider et al 1992, Weston et al 1997, Ylikoski et al 1997). Test doses of CoQ10 varied between 60 mg to 150 mg daily over time periods of 28 days to 8 weeks. Of these eight studies, only one double-blind crossover trial produced positive results on both objective and subjective parameters of physical performance (Ylikoski et al 1997). In that study 94% of athletes felt that CoQ10 had improved their performance and recovery times, compared with the 33% receiving placebo.

Of the others, one study found that 150 mg CoQ10 taken over 2 months had no effect on maximal oxygen consumption, lactate thresholds or forearm blood flow, although it did improve the subjective perceived level of vigour (Porter et al 1995). Another study demonstrated that CoQ10 did not alter physiological or metabolic parameters measured as part of cardiopulmonary exercise testing; however, it did
extend the time and the workload required to reach muscular exhaustion (Bonetti et al 2000). Five further clinical trials produced negative results.

One retrospective study found that muscle CoQ10 levels were positively related to exercise capacity and/or marathon performance, suggesting that runners with the highest levels performed better than those with lower levels (Karlsson et al 1996).

**CHRONIC OBSTRUCTIVE PULMONARY DISEASE (COPD)**

At least two clinical trials have investigated the use of CoQ10 supplementation in COPD (Fujimoto et al 1993, Satta et al 1991). In one study, 20 patients with COPD were randomly assigned CoQ10 (50 mg) or placebo as part of their pulmonary rehabilitation program (Satta et al 1991). Treatment resulted in a 13% increase in maximum oxygen consumption and a 10% increase in maximum expired volume, both significant improvements. A dose of CoQ10 (90 mg) daily over 8 weeks was studied in a smaller trial of patients with COPD (Fujimoto et al 1993). Significantly elevated serum CoQ10 levels were associated with improved hypoxaemia at rest, but pulmonary function was unchanged.

**PERIODONTAL DISEASE**

CoQ10 is used both topically and internally for the treatment of chronic periodontal disease. Topical application has been shown to improve adult periodontitis (Hanioka et al 1994) and a small open study has shown that oral CoQ10 supplementation can produce dramatic results within 5–7 days, making location of baseline biopsy sites impossible (Wilkinson et al 1975).

**PARKINSON’S DISEASE**

There is currently much speculation about the aetiology of Parkinson’s disease. Recent experiments suggest that mitochondrial impairment may play a role in the degeneration of nigrostriatal dopaminergic neurons (Ebadi et al 2001, Gotz et al 2000). Additionally, oxidative damage and inflammation are now considered contributing factors.

A number of preclinical studies using in vitro and in vivo models of Parkinson’s disease have demonstrated that CoQ10 can protect the nigrostriatal dopaminergic system, and levels of CoQ10 have been reported to be decreased in blood and platelet mitochondria from subjects with Parkinson’s disease (Shults 2005). As a result, a multicentre study was conducted to determine whether CoQ10 supplementation would exert beneficial effects in the disease.

The randomised, placebo-controlled double-blind study compared three different doses of CoQ10 (300 mg, 600 mg or 1200 mg) with placebo in 80 subjects with early Parkinson’s disease. After 9 months of treatment, subjects taking 1200 mg CoQ10
daily experienced significant improvements in disability compared with the placebo group. CoQ10 was also well tolerated at the dosages studied (Shults et al 2002). In 2003, results were published of a double-blind placebo controlled study that showed that even a relatively low dose CoQ10 (360 mg/day) taken for a short period (4 weeks) produced a significant mild benefit on Parkinson’s disease symptoms and significantly improved visual function compared with placebo (Muller et al 2003).

The safety and tolerability of high dose CoQ10 in subjects with Parkinson’s disease was investigated in an open study of 17 patients (Shults et al 2004). The study used an escalating dosage of 1200, 1800, 2400, and 3000 mg/day administered together with vitamin E (alpha-tocopherol) 1200 IU/day and failed to identify any serious adverse effects with CoQ10 administration. It also identified that plasma CoQ10 levels reached a plateau at 2400 mg/day, suggesting that higher treatment doses are not required.

**ALZHEIMER’S DEMENTIA**

Similarly to Parkinson’s disease, mitochondrial dysfunction and oxidative damage appear to play a role in the pathogenesis of Alzheimer’s dementia and therefore CoQ10 supplementation has been investigated as a possible treatment. Currently, evidence is limited to test tube and animal studies and is far from definitive.

Recently, CoQ10 was shown to inhibit beta amyloid formation in vitro (Ono et al 2005) and protect against brain mitochondrial dysfunction induced by a neurotoxic beta-peptide in a study using brain mitochondria isolated from diabetic rats (Moreira et al 2005). McDonald et al (2005) conducted two studies with test animals and found that supplemental CoQ10 (123 mg/kg/day) taken with alpha-tocopherol acetate (200 mg/kg/day) improved age related learning deficits; however, supplementation of CoQ10 alone at this dose, or higher doses of 250 or 500 mg/kg/day, failed to produce comparable effects.

**MIGRAINE**

An open-labelled trial investigated the effects of oral CoQ10 supplementation (150 mg/day) over 3 months in 32 volunteers with a history of episodic migraine with or without aura. CoQ10 significantly reduced both the frequency of attacks and the number of days with migraine after 3 months’ treatment (Rozen et al 2002). In 2005, Sandor et al investigated the effects of CoQ10 (300 mg/day) taken over 3 months in 42 migraine subjects in a double-blind, randomised, placebo controlled study. 47.6% of CoQ10 treated patients responded to treatment compared with 14.4% for placebo, experiencing a (50% or less) reduction in migraine frequency (number needed to treat, 3). Active treatment was superior to placebo for reducing attack
frequency, headache days and days with nausea in the third treatment month and was well tolerated.

OTHER USES

CANCER
Currently, controlled studies are not available to determine the clinical effectiveness of CoQ10 in cancer; however, there have been several case reports of CoQ10 (390 mg/day) successfully reducing metastases or eliminating tumours entirely (Lockwood et al 1994, 1995). An in vivo study found that CoQ10 enhances the effects of immunochemotherapy (Kokawa et al 1983).

There is some evidence that CoQ10 supplementation protects the mitochondria of the heart from anthracycline-induced damage. A systematic review of six studies (three randomised) in which patients in five of the six studies received anthracyclines concluded that CoQ10 provides some protection against cardiotoxicity or liver toxicity during cancer treatment; however, the results were not conclusive and further research is required (Roffe et al 2004).

MITOCHONDRIAL MYOPATHY
An open multicentre study involving 44 volunteers with mitochondrial myopathies showed that treatment with CoQ10 (2 mg/kg/daily) over 6 months decreased post-exercise lactate levels by at least 25% in 16 patients. Of those responding, a further 3 months’ treatment with either CoQ10 or placebo produced no significant differences (Bresolin et al 1990).

HUNTINGTON’S CHOREA
A randomised double-blind study involving 347 patients with early Huntington’s chorea showed that a dose of CoQ10 (600 mg/day) taken over 30 months produced a trend towards slow decline as well as beneficial trends in some secondary measures; however, changes were not significant at this dosage level (Huntington’s Study Group 2001).

DOSAGE RANGE

ACCORDING TO CLINICAL STUDIES
- Generally 100–150 mg/day has been used for conditions such as congestive cardiac failure (Mortensen et al 1990), hypertension, neurological disease, performance enhancement, periodontal disease (Wilkinson et al 1975).
- As preparation for cardiac surgery: 100–300 mg/day for 2 weeks before surgery followed by 100 mg/day for 1 month after surgery has been used (Judy et al 1993,
Rosenfeldt et al 2002, 2005); 30–60 mg taken for 6 days before surgery has also been found to be effective (Tanaka et al 1982).

- Angina pectoris: 60–600 mg daily
- Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: 50–90 mg daily
- Huntington’s chorea: 600 mg daily
- Migraine: 150–300 mg daily
- Parkinson’s disease (<12,000 mg/day) (Shults et al 2002)

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**

CoQ10 appears relatively safe and non-toxic and is extremely well tolerated. Dizziness, nausea, epigastric discomfort, anorexia, diarrhoea, photophobia, irritability and skin rash occur in less than 1% of patients. This tends to occur with higher doses (>200 mg/day).

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**

When controlled studies are not available, interactions are based on evidence of pharmacological activity, case reports and other evidence and are largely theoretical.

The following pharmaceutical drugs are suspected to reduce CoQ10 levels, so increased CoQ10 intake may be required with long-term drug therapy:

- beta-adrenergic antagonists
- clonidine
- gemfibrozil
- HMG-CoA-reductase inhibitors: simvastatin, pravastatin and lovastatin reduce both endogenous synthesis of CoQ10 and the serum concentration (Overvad et al 1999). Supplementation with CoQ10 may counter this effect without adversely affecting HMG-CoA-reductase inhibitor efficacy (Bargossi et al 1994a, b, Mortensen et al 1997).

- hydralazine
- hydrochlorothiazide
- methyldopa
- tricyclic antidepressants

**WARFARIN**

There are three case reports suggesting that CoQ10 may decrease the INR in patients previously stabilised on anticoagulants (Spigset 1994b). However, a double-blind crossover study involving 24 outpatients on stable long-term warfarin found that oral CoQ10 (100 mg) daily had no significant effect on INR or warfarin levels (Engelson 2003). Observe patients using high CoQ10 doses and taking warfarin.
DOXORUBICIN
Contradictory evidence exists as to whether oral CoQ10 supplementation reduces the cardiotoxicity of doxorubicin — potentially beneficial interaction (Combs et al 1977, Zhou 2002).

TIMOLOL
Eye drops — oral CoQ10 reduced the vascular side-effects of timolol without affecting eye pressure (Takahashi 1989) — beneficial interaction.

VITAMIN E
Reconstitutes oxidised vitamin E to its unoxidised form — beneficial interaction.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Insufficient reliable evidence — unknown.

PREGNANCY USE
Safety has not been scientifically established.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- CoQ10 is a safe antioxidant vitamin used in supplement form for a wide range of cardiovascular diseases, such as heart failure, hypertension and angina, with generally positive evidence supporting its use.
- Preliminary research has shown that presurgical supplementation has positive effects in cardiac surgery and improves recovery.
- There is also some clinical evidence suggesting a role in migraine headache, Huntington’s chorea, mitochondrial myopathy, COPD, periodontal disease and slowing the progression of Parkinson’s disease.
- Several common medicines, such as statins, have been found to reduce serum CoQ10 status. Although still speculative, case reports show that CoQ10 supplements have reversed some side-effects associated with statin drugs.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this vitamin do for me?
CoQ10 is an antioxidant vitamin used in every cell of the body. It is necessary for healthy function and can improve heart function, lower blood pressure and reduce angina. Taken before cardiac surgery it has been shown to reduce complications and hasten recovery in some studies. It may also provide benefits in periodontal disease, migraine headache, Huntington’s chorea, mitochondrial myopathy, COPD and slow the progression of Parkinson’s disease.
When will it start to work?
This depends on the indication. For heart conditions and to reduce migraine, 10–12 weeks may be required. To delay the progression of Parkinson’s disease, one study found that effects started after 9 months’ use.

Are there any safety issues?
Medical monitoring is required in patients taking warfarin and starting high dose CoQ10 supplements; however, even high dose supplements are well tolerated and considered safe.

REFERENCES


Jeejeebhoy F et al. Nutritional supplementation with MyoVive repletes essential cardiac myocyte nutrients and reduces left ventricular size in patients with left ventricular dysfunction. Am Heart J 143.6 (2002): 1092-100.


Colostrum

BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS
Colostrum is the milk produced by female mammals towards the end of pregnancy and secreted from the mammary gland in the first 2 days after giving birth. It is a very complex fluid, rich in nutrients, antibodies, growth factors, vitamins and minerals (Uruakpa et al 2002). The antibodies provide passive immunity to the newborn, and the growth factors stimulate development of the gastrointestinal tract.

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Colostrum contains macronutrients, such as protein and carbohydrate, micronutrients, such as vitamins and minerals, together with cytokines, including IL-1-beta, IL-6, trypsin inhibitors, protease inhibitors and oligosaccharides. It also contains growth factors such as insulin-like growth factor (IGF)-I and -II, transforming growth factor-alpha and -beta, lactoferrin, epidermal growth factor and others. Several different antimicrobial factors are also present, such as immunoglobulin (Ig) A, secretory IgA, IgG-1, IgG-2 and IgM, lactoferrin, lactoperoxidase and lysozyme, which produce both specific and non-specific bacteriostatic and bacteriocidal effects on many pathological microorganisms, including bacteria, viruses and fungi. IgG-1 is the principal immunoglobulin type in colostrums, and IgM, IgA and IgG-2 are present in lower amounts (Mach & Pahud 1971).

FOOD SOURCES
Bovine colostrums (BC) is derived from cows, and hyperimmune BC is derived from cows that have been exposed to organisms that can cause disease in humans.

Clinical note – Hyperimmune bovine colostrum
Bovine colostrum contains a variety of Ig, but the specific Ig present varies and is influenced by previous immune system challenges. Hyperimmune BC, in which the concentration of specific antibodies is raised, can be produced by immunising cows with either specific pathogens or their antigens. For example, BC from cows exposed to rotavirus might contain a relatively high neutralising Ig tithe against the virus (as well as many other pathogenic microorganisms), whereas BC collected from cows never exposed to rotavirus is less likely to have specific neutralising Ig against rotavirus. This is an important distinction, because much of the research on BC as prophylaxis or treatment for infectious disease, has focused on products that are, as
a consequence of specific immune provocation, immunologically unique (Kelly 2003).

**MAIN ACTIONS**

**IMPARTS PASSIVE IMMUNITY AND STIMULATES GROWTH OF THE NEONATAL GASTROINTESTINAL TRACT**

Just as the immunoglobulins of human colostrum impart passive immunity to the newborn child, so too BC provides protection against microbial infections and confers passive immunity to the newborn calf until its own immune system matures (Korhonen et al 2000). Studies with targeted hyperimmune BC suggest that passive immunity may prevent or treat infectious diseases that affect the entire length of the gastrointestinal tract (Pacyna et al 2001).

**ANTIBACTERIAL AND ANTIVIRAL EFFECTS**

Targeted hyperimmune BCs have proven effective in prophylaxis against various human infectious diseases such as rotavirus, *Shigella flexneri*, *Escherichia coli*, *Clostridium difficile*, *Streptococcus mutans*, *Cryptosporidium parvum* and *Helicobacter pylori* (Korhonen et al 2000). It is suspected that colostrum may modulate the interaction of *H. pylori* and other adhesin-expressing pathogens with their target tissues, chiefly due to phosphatidylethanolamine and its derivatives rather than to an antibody response (Bitzan et al 1998).

**IMPROVES GUT PERMEABILITY**

Studies with agents known to disrupt gut permeability indicate that BC has a preventive effect that is likely to be a result of more than one growth factor present in the colostrum.

**REDUCES NSAID-INDUCED INTESTINAL DAMAGE**

Defatted BC had major beneficial effects in preventing NSAID-induced gut injury in a variety of well-validated in vivo and in vitro models (Kim et al 2005a,b, Playford et al 1999). BC improves the integrity of intestinal villi and prevents NSAID-induced increases in small intestine permeability. More specifically, the studies indicate that it stimulates both cell migration and proliferation, thereby enhancing the natural repair mechanisms that occur during acute mucosal injury. One of the studies by Kim et al (2005a) identified that when BC is administered together with glutamine, gastrointestinal protection is greater than when either agent is used alone. The other study further found that the overgrowth of enteric aerobic bacteria seen with NSAID administration did not occur to the same extent with BC (Kim et al 2005b).
OTHER ACTIONS
The high nutritional content of BC makes it an excellent source of many macro- and micronutrients.

CLINICAL USE
The use of BC as a dietary supplement has increased substantially over the past 2 decades. Unlike other dietary supplements, the composition of BC is not precisely defined and varies greatly according to the breed and health status of the cow, feeding practices, previous exposure to infectious organisms and time collected post-parturition (Kelly 2003).

PREVENTION AND TREATMENT OF INFECTION
Targeted hyperimmune BC products have proven effective in prophylaxis against various infectious diseases in humans.

INFECTIOUS DIARRHOEA
Rotavirus infection  The clinical evidence available suggests hyperimmune BC is a promising agent in the prophylaxis and treatment of infectious diarrhoea caused by rotavirus. One Australian study using BC containing high titres of antibody to all four human rotavirus serotypes found that administration successfully prevented symptomatic infection in 100% of children treated with the preparation (Davidson et al 1989). It also reduced the duration of rotavirus excretion, which may have implications for preventing cross-infection. A double-blind study of 75 boys aged 6–24 months with rotavirus diarrhoea compared ordinary BC to hyperimmune BC (100 mL three times daily for 3 days) from cows immunised with four serotypes of human rotavirus (Mitra et al 1995). Diarrhoea ceased within 48 hours in 50% of children receiving hyperimmune BC whereas 100% of children receiving ordinary BC continued to have diarrhoea. Total stool output (g/kg) between admission and cessation of diarrhoea was also reduced in the group receiving hyperimmune BC compared with ordinary BC. Another double-blind study also found that treatment with anti-rotavirus immunoglobulin of BC origin is effective in the management of children with acute rotavirus diarrhoea (Sarker et al 1998). A double-blind study of children aged 6–30 months found treatment with hyperimmune BC (100 mL solution four times daily for 4 days) lead to improved weight gain, decreased duration of diarrhoea and resulted in fewer stools, although the differences were not statistically significant compared to ordinary colostrum or placebo (Ylitalo et al 1998).

Studies using hyperimmune BC in young children have identified rotavirus antibodies as early as 8 hours after ingestion and up to 72 hours after consumption has ceased, with a strong relation between the titre of rotavirus antibody adminis-
tered and the level of antibody activity detected in the faeces (Pacyna et al 2001). This suggests that passive immunity is imparted to the entire length of the gastrointestinal tract.

**Shigella infection** According to one small study, hyperimmune BC with a high titre of anti- *Shigella flexneri* 2a lipopolysaccharide prevented the incidence of shigella infection in 10 of 10 volunteers whereas 5 of 11 volunteers administered a control substance went on to develop the infection (Tacket et al 1992).

**HIV-induced diarrhoea** BC has also been investigated as a potential treatment in HIV-induced diarrhoea, a symptom that occurs in most patients infected with AIDS. A BC product (Lactobin, Biotest, Dreieich, Germany) containing high titres of antibodies against a wide range of bacterial, viral and protozoal pathogens, as well as against various bacterial toxins, was tested in a multicentre pilot study involving 29 HIV-infected patients (Rump et al 1992). An oral dose of 10 g/day produced a transient (10 days) or long-lasting (>4 weeks) normalisation of the stool frequency in 21 patients. Mean daily stool frequency decreased from 7.4 to 2.2 at the end of the treatment. Some success was also obtained 1 year later in a prospective, open, uncontrolled study of 25 HIV patients with chronic refractory diarrhoea and either confirmed cryptosporidiosis (n = 7) or absence of demonstrable pathogenic organisms (n = 18) (Plettenberg et al 1993). An oral dose of 10 g/day of an immunoglobulin preparation from BC over a period of 10 days led to complete remission of cryptosporidiosis infection in 3 of 7 subjects and 2 had partial remission. Complete remission was also seen in 7 of 18 patients with diarrhoea and negative stool culture and a further 4 had partial remission. Of those subjects not responding to treatment, doubling of the dose to 20 g/day led to partial remission in four more patients and complete remission in one.

A BC product designed for slow passage through the gastrointestinal tract (ColoPlus) was tested over 4 weeks in an open-label study of 30 people with HIV-associated diarrhoea (Floren et al 2006). Treatment resulted in a dramatic decrease in daily stool evacuations (from 7.0 ± 2.7 to 1.3 ± 0.5), a mean increase of 7.3 kg of body weight, a 125% increase in CD4⁺ count and a substantial decrease in self-estimated fatigue.

**REDUCING INCIDENCE OF URTI**

IgA is found in saliva and acts as a major barrier preventing pathogens entering the body via the oral route. As such, the level of secretory IgA has been found to correlate with resistance to some viral infections. According to two clinical studies, BC (20 g/day) increases salivary IgA levels, a factor that could feasibly increase the host’s resistance to infection (Crooks et al 2006, Mero et al 2002). In the study by Crooks et
al, secretory IgA levels were elevated by 79% after 12 weeks of BC administration in athletes. The presence of numerous immune factors in BC further provides a theoretical basis for its use; however, little clinical investigation has been conducted to confirm its preventive effects.

In 2003, results of a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial were published, providing some support for its use as a prophylactic agent (Brinkworth & Buckley 2003). The study of 174 physically active young males compared colostrum powder (60 g/day; intact™, Numico Research Australia Pty Ltd) to concentrated whey powder over 8 weeks. During the test period, a significantly fewer proportion of subjects taking BC reported URTI symptoms than the control group; however, BC did not alter the duration of URTI once infection was established. Due to the self-reporting method used in this study, results should be viewed as preliminary and require further confirmation.

**IMPROVED PHYSICAL PERFORMANCE AND PRESERVATION OF MUSCLE MASS**

BC has been used by athletes mainly as a natural source of IGF-I because it has an anabolic effect and is involved in the regulatory feedback of growth hormone. It is taken in the belief that protein catabolism will be reduced during intense training periods and physical performance will improve.

A double-blind crossover study of nine male athletes confirmed that ingestion of BC (125 mL/day; Bioenervie, Viable Bioproducts) resulted in elevated concentrations of IGF-I; however, no significant effects were reported for serum IgG or saliva IgA concentrations (Mero et al 1997). Several years later in a larger study of athletes, under double-blind study conditions, the researchers confirmed that BC ingestion produced significant increases in serum IGF-I (Mero et al 2002). The dose of 20 g/day of BC (Dynamic supplement) was used during a 2-week training period. The study further found saliva IgA levels increased with this particular treatment.

**GASTROINTESTINAL PROTECTION AGAINST NSAID-INDUCED DAMAGE**

BC has also been investigated in a small randomised, crossover study as prophylaxis against NSAID-induced gastrointestinal damage (Playford et al 2001). A spray-dried, defatted colostrum (125 mL three times daily) was co-administered with indomethacin (50 mg three times daily) for 5 days in the first phase, then the effect of 7 days treatment with the colostral solution on gut permeability was determined in subjects taking NSAID long-term. Indomethacin (150 mg/day) caused a threefold increase in gut permeability after 5 days, whereas no change was observed when colostrum was co-administered, suggesting a protective effect. In contrast, no
protective effect was seen in subjects who had been using NSAIDs long-term and then administered colostrum for 1 week.

OTHER USES
Due to its effects on gut permeability, BC is used in a variety of other conditions, such as inflammatory bowel disease, coeliac disease, food allergies, intestinal infection and inflammatory joint diseases. It has also been used to restore normal gut permeability in people using chemotherapy. In some instances, it is used with glutamine for these indications.

DOSAGE RANGE
ACCORDING TO CLINICAL STUDIES
- Diarrhoea due to rotavirus: 100 ml three times daily for 3 days of BC from cows immunised with the four serotypes of human rotavirus.
- HIV-induced diarrhoea: 10 g/day (Lactobin, Biotest, Dreieich, Germany).
- Prevention of URTI: 60 g/day (intact™, Numico Research Australia Pty Ltd).
- Increasing serum IGF-I levels: 125 ml/day (Bioenergie, Viable Bioproducts) or 20 g/day (Dynamic supplement).
- Prevention of NSAID-induced gastrointestinal damage: 125 mL three times daily of spray-dried, defatted BC.

TOXICITY
Not known.

ADVERSE REACTIONS
Not known.

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
Not known.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Only BC products produced under strict quality control guidelines should be used. They typically contain lactose, so should be avoided by people with lactose intolerance.

PREGNANCY USE
Likely to be safe.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Colostrum is a very complex fluid that is rich in nutrients, antibodies, growth factors, vitamins and minerals.
• Targeted hyperimmune BC products have proven effective in prophylaxis against various infectious diseases in humans, notably infectious diarrhoea.
• BC is a popular supplement among athletes and used mainly as a natural source of IGF-I because it has an anabolic effect and is involved in the regulatory feedback of growth hormone.
• Preliminary evidence suggests BC may prevent NSAID-induced gastrointestinal damage and improve gut permeability.
• Most studies use hyperimmune BC in which the concentration of specific antibodies is raised.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this supplement do for me?
Bovine colostrum contains nutrients, antibodies, growth factors, vitamins and minerals, and has a variety of effects on the gastrointestinal tract, immune function and the ability to fight some infections, and may possibly reduce muscle catabolism.

When will it start to work?
Studies with infectious diarrhoea have reported benefits within 3–4 days, and improvement in gut permeability within 5 days.

Are there any safety issues?
Bovine colostrum produced under quality control guidelines is a safe substance; however, it should be avoided by people with lactose intolerance.

REFERENCES
Native American Indians have used cranberries as both a food and a treatment for bladder and kidney diseases. In the mid 1800s, German scientists suggested that cranberry juice had antibacterial activity, supporting its use as a treatment for bladder infections. Recent investigation has confirmed its usefulness in the prevention of urinary tract infections.

**COMMON NAME**
Cranberry

**OTHER NAMES**
Kronsbeere, marsh apple, moosbeere, preisselbeere

**BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY**
Vaccinium oxycoccus, Vaccinium macrocarpon (family Ericaceae)

**PLANT PART USED**
Fruit

**CHEMICAL COMPONENTS**
Catechin, flavone glycosides, fructose, organic acids, proanthocyanidins, vitamin C.

Cranberry has a high flavonol content (100–263 mg/kg) (Hakkinen et al 1999) — higher than commonly consumed fruits and vegetables.

**MAIN ACTIONS**

**BACTEROIDSTATIC**
The adhesion of pathogenic organisms to a tissue surface is required to initiate most infectious diseases (Sharon & Ofek 2002). Cranberry is a potent inhibitor of Escherichia coli adhesion, thereby influencing the initiation of disease without exerting bactericidal activity. One in vitro study found that cranberry juice inhibited adhesion of 46 different E. coli isolates by 75% (Sobota 1984): when administered to mice for 14 days, adherence of E. coli to uroepithelial cells was inhibited by 80%. Significant inhibition of adherence was also observed in samples of human urine 1–3 hours after subjects drank a cranberry drink.

It appears that the anti-adhesion effects are a result of irreversible inhibition of the expression of P-fimbriae of E. coli (Ahuja et al 1998). Electron micrographic evidence suggests that cranberry juice acts either on the cell wall, preventing proper...
attachment of the fimbrial subunits, or as a genetic control preventing the expression of normal fimbrial subunits, or both.

This inhibitory effect has not only been seen with *E. coli* and uroepithelial tissues, but also in the adhesion of *Helicobacter pylori* to human gastrointestinal cells (Burger et al 2002) and in the co-aggregation of oral bacteria and *Streptococcus mutans* counts in saliva (Sharon & Ofek 2002, Weiss et al 1998).

Earlier hypotheses that cranberry juice prevents UTI by acidification of urine or by its hippuric acid content have not been substantiated.

**ANTIOXIDANT**

In vitro tests with whole fruit and isolated flavonol glycosides found in cranberry showed free radical scavenging activity comparable or superior to that of vitamin E (Yan et al 2002).

**INCREASES SECRETION OF OXALIC ACID AND URIC ACID**

According to an open study, a dose of 330 mL cranberry juice can increase the excretion of oxalic acid and uric acid (Kessler et al 2002).

**ALTERATIONS TO URINARY pH**

Results from human studies are contradictory, but overall suggest no significant change to urinary pH at doses less than 330 mL daily. A crossover study of 27 patients with indwelling urinary catheters and chronic bacteriuria showed no change to urinary pH (Nahata et al 1982), as did a double-blind study of 153 women (Avorn et al 1994). One small, open study involving 12 healthy subjects found that 330 mL cranberry juice reduced urinary pH (Kessler et al 2002).

**OTHER ACTIONS**

In vitro tests using four different *Vaccinium* spp. found that the proanthocyanidin fraction of cranberry exhibits potential anticarcinogenic activity (Bomser et al 1996).

**CLINICAL USE**

**PREVENTION OF UTI**

Several human studies support the use of cranberry in solid-dose form and cranberry juice drink for preventing UTI.

A recent Cochrane systematic review considered results from seven randomised clinical trials (four crossover design and three parallel group) that compared the effects of cranberry juice (or cranberry–lingonberry juice) to placebo or cranberry tablets to placebo in elderly men or women, subjects with a history of recurring UTI or subjects needing intermittent catheterisation (e.g. children with neuropathic bladder) (Jepson et al 2004). The final meta-analysis was performed using results from two
good quality studies (Kontiokari et al 2001, Stothers 2002) and showed that cranberry products significantly reduced the incidence of UTI at 12 months compared with placebo/control in women and there was no significant difference in the incidence of UTI between cranberry juice versus cranberry capsules. One trial used 7.5 g cranberry concentrate daily (in 50 mL) whereas the other used a 1:30 concentrate given either in 250 mL juice or in tablet form. Additionally, Stothers showed that cranberry tablets provided the most cost-effective prevention for UTI when compared with organic cranberry juice (Stothers 2002). The five studies not included in the meta-analysis were omitted due to methodological flaws or lack of available data.

**Spinal cord injuries**  Patients with spinal cord injuries are a high-risk group for UTI, so cranberry products are popular in this group. An open, pilot study involving 15 volunteers with spinal cord injuries showed that three glasses of cranberry juice daily significantly reduced adhesion of Gram-negative and Gram-positive bacteria to uroepithelial cells (Reid 2002).

**Children**  Cranberry use is popular for children with renal disease. An anonymous survey of 117 parents of children seen in a hospital paediatric nephrology clinic identified that 29% gave cranberry products to their children, to treat as well as prevent diverse renal problems (Super et al 2005). Most parents felt it was beneficial and only one reported a side-effect (nausea).

Two studies conducted with children managed by clean intermittent catheterisation found no clinical or statistical difference in the number of symptomatic UTI observed in either the cranberry or placebo groups (Foda et al 1995, Schlager et al 1999). Foda et al used a dose of 5 mL/kg/day of cranberry cocktail for 6 months and the dose used by Schlager was 2 ounces (≈55 g) of cranberry concentrate.

**TREATMENT OF UTI**

Although cranberry may be a viable adjunctive treatment in UTI when antibiotic resistance is encountered, there is no reliable evidence that it is an effective sole treatment in diagnosed UTI (Ulbricht & Basch 2005).

**URINARY DEODORISING ACTIVITY**

Cranberry juice and solid-dose forms are popular in nursing homes as urinary deodorising agents in older adults with incontinence. Although no clinical study is available to confirm efficacy, numerous anecdotal reports suggest that it is useful when used on a regular basis.
OTHER USES

GOUT
Cranberry juice has been used to treat gout. Evidence of increased uric acid excretion in humans provides a theoretical basis for the indication, although studies in patients with gout are not available to confirm effectiveness (Kessler et al 2002).

ORAL HYGIENE
The anti-adhesion effect of cranberry on oral microbial flora has been demonstrated in vitro, suggesting a possible role in oral hygiene; however, the high sugar content of commercial cranberry juice makes this use unsuitable (Weiss et al 1998).

PREVENTION AND TREATMENT OF HELICOBACTER INFECTION
Cranberry inhibits the adhesion of H. pylori to human gastrointestinal cells in vitro; however, no clinical evidence is available to confirm significance in humans (Burger et al 2002).

DOSAGE RANGE

PREVENTING UTI
- According to clinical studies:
  - Adults: 30–300 mL daily or 400 mg capsule daily
  - Children: 15 mL/kg to 300 mL daily
  - In practice, much higher doses are being used in an attempt to achieve quicker results (e.g. cranberry capsules or tablets 10,000 mg/day for prevention).

TREATING UTI
- Cranberry capsules or tablets up to 10,000 mg 3–4 times daily (according to Australian manufacturers).

ADVERSE REACTIONS
At high doses (3 L or greater), gastrointestinal discomfort and diarrhoea can occur (Ulbricht & Basch 2005).

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS

PROTON-PUMP INHIBITORS
Cranberry juice increases the absorption of vitamin B12 when used concurrently with PPI medicines (Saltzman et al 1994) — beneficial interaction.

WARFARIN
Although a preliminary report suggested that cranberry juice may increase the INR in patients taking warfarin (Grant 2004) a recent study casts doubt on a pharmacokinetic interaction (Greenblatt et al 2006) — caution.
CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Patients with diabetes should take care when using commercially prepared cranberry juices because of the high sugar content.

If symptoms of UTI become more severe while cranberry is being administered, other treatment may be required and medical advice is recommended.

People with a history of oxalate kidney stones should limit their intake of cranberry juice.

PREGNANCY USE
Likely to be safe when consumed in dietary amounts; however, safety is not known when used in larger quantities.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Cranberry preparations are widely used to prevent and treat minor UTI.
- Overall, clinical testing suggests that the juice and solid-dose forms may have significant beneficial effects for UTI management.
- Cranberry exerts bacteriostatic effects by reducing bacterial adhesion to host tissues.
- Overall, evidence suggests no significant alteration to urinary pH at doses less than 330 mL daily.
- Cranberry products have also been used to treat gout and to deodorise urine in people with incontinence.
- Preliminary research suggests a possible role in preventing conditions such as *Helicobacter pylori* infection and dental plaque formation.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this herb do for me?
Cranberry products appear to reduce the risk of developing UTI and may be useful as a treatment in minor UTI.

When will it start to work?
Studies using 1–2 glasses of cranberry juice suggest that 4–8 weeks’ continual use is required; however, faster effects using concentrated tablets or capsules have been reported.

Are there any safety issues?
If fever or pain exists or symptoms of UTI become more severe, seek medical advice.

REFERENCES


Creatine

Historical note  Creatine was first discovered in 1832 when it was identified in meat. The word creatine is derived from the Greek kreas for flesh, similar to the word ‘creature’. About 15 years later, the meat from foxes killed in the wild were found to have 10-fold more creatine than meat from domesticated foxes, suggesting that physical exercise must influence the amount of creatine that accumulates in muscles. Early last century orally consumed creatine was shown to be partly retained in the body and able to increase creatine content in muscles, leading some to suspect this could influence the performance of muscles. Nowadays, creatine monohydrate enjoys enormous popularity as a sports supplements and is being recommended to elite athletes by respected sporting bodies such as the Australian Institute of Sport (AIS).

BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS
Creatine is a naturally occurring nitrogenous compound produced in the human liver, pancreas and kidneys at a rate of 1–2 g daily. It is synthesised from the amino acids glycine, arginine and methionine and stored primarily in skeletal muscle, where it is in dynamic equilibrium with phosphocreatine and is a precursor to adenosine triphosphate (ATP), the main source of energy for muscle activity and many other biological functions. Orally ingested creatine is absorbed from the small intestine, then distributed via creatine transporters around the body to muscles and nerves (Persky et al 2003). These transporters also serve as a clearance mechanism because of creatine ‘trapping’ by skeletal muscle. It is ultimately converted to creatinine and excreted by the kidneys.

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Creatine is known chemically as N-(aminoiminomethyl)-N-methyl glycine.

FOOD SOURCES
Animal protein and fish. It has been estimated that approximately 1–2 g are ingested daily from the diet by non-vegetarians (Hendler et al 2001).

DEFICIENCY SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS
Several rare inborn errors of metabolism that result in a lack of creatine and phosphorylcreatine in the brain and severe mental retardation have been identified. Other symptoms and signs, such as involuntary extrapyramidal movements, speech...
disability, epilepsy, muscular hypotonia and weakness, and, in older patients, autism with self-injurious behaviour have also been reported (Wyss & Schulze 2002).

People involved in intense physical activity, vegetarians and those with muscle diseases may have lowered creatine levels.

**MAIN ACTIONS**

**ENERGY PRODUCTION**

Although the exact mechanism is unknown, much is known about the biochemistry of endogenous creatine. In skeletal muscle tissue, it is used for the production of phosphocreatine, an important form of high-energy phosphate. Phosphocreatine is broken down into phosphate and creatine during high intensity exercise lasting 15–30 seconds. During the process, energy is released and is used to regenerate ATP, the primary source of energy.

**Supplemental creatine** Oral supplementation with creatine has been shown to increase phosphocreatine levels in muscles, and as such, has been described as ‘fuelling up’ natural energy stores. Increased creatine stores leads to faster regeneration of ATP, thereby making more energy immediately available to muscles. Theoretically, increased free creatine allows depleted stores to replenish more quickly, thus shortening recovery times during repeated bouts of intense exercise. Increased muscle creatine may also buffer the lactic acid produced during exercise, delaying muscle fatigue and soreness.

It has been estimated that short-term supplementation over 5–7 days with a daily dose of 20 g creatine increases total creatine content by 10–30% and phosphocreatine stores by 10–40% (Kreider 2003).

In clinical studies, the effect of creatine on performance, endurance, strength and recovery is variable.

**NEUROPROTECTIVE**

Creatine supplementation has displayed neuroprotective effects in several animal models of neurological disease, such as Huntington’s disease, Parkinson’s disease, or motor neurone disease (MND) (also known as amyotrophic lateral sclerosis) (Andreassen et al 2001, Dedeoglu et al 2003, Ferrante et al 2000, Wyss & Schulze 2002) and is currently being evaluated in early stage trials in Parkinson’s disease and MND (Beal 2003). A number of theories of a possible mechanism for neuroprotection have been put forward. One theory proposes that creatine exerts antioxidant activity and mitochondrial stabilising effects, two mechanisms of benefit in neurodegenerative diseases, which are characterised by mitochondrial dysfunction and oxidative damage (Shefner et al 2004).
OTHER ACTIONS
It has been suggested that daily creatine supplementation may indirectly reduce coronary heart disease and cerebrovascular disease by suppressing normal creatine synthesis and therefore inhibiting a major production process of homocysteine (McCarty 2001). Research in animal models has shown it inhibits the growth of some solid tumours and also exhibits antioxidant activity (Lawler et al 2002).

CLINICAL USE
Creatine monohydrate is the form generally used and tested. In practice, this is available in three different forms, which differ according to particle size (granular, powder and micronised), in the belief that smaller particles are more fully absorbed and cause less gastric distress.

ERGOGENIC AID
Creatine supplementation has become one of the most widely used supplements taken by athletes and is touted by some as the only truly effective ergogenic aid besides carbohydrate loading. It is used by athletes engaged in sprint disciplines (e.g. 100 m run or 50 m swim), strength disciplines (e.g. weight lifting) or high-intensity, repetitive burst exercise (e.g. tennis, hockey, football, soccer) separated by short bouts of recovery. Its use is based on the assumption that supplementation at doses above dietary levels will increase energy and power output and also enhance recovery.

Hundreds of small studies have attempted to evaluate the effects of creatine supplementation on exercise capacity and muscle physiology in various populations.

A 2003 review of the literature concluded that approximately 300 studies have evaluated its potential as an ergogenic aid, with about 70% of studies reporting statistically significant positive results (Kreider 2003).

Who will respond? The observation that not every athlete responds to creatine supplementation with improved strength, performance and recovery has prompted investigation into identifying key features of responders. One study identified that responders had the lowest initial levels of muscle creatine, greatest percentage of type 2 fibres, greatest preload muscle fibre cross-sectional area and fat free mass in comparison to non-responders (Syrotuik & Bell 2004). Other factors that are likely to influence an individual’s response to creatine include training status, diet, age and the bioavailability of the creatine supplement being used. Not taking these factors into account may partly explain the inconsistent results obtained in randomised studies.

Padilla 1997, Mujika et al 2000, Tarnopolsky & MacLennan 2000, Williams & Branch 1998). Studies have been conducted in a variety of athletes, such as sprint cyclists, soccer players and sprint swimmers, and generally used a dose of 20 g daily.

**Lean body mass** Creatine increases exercise-related gains in lean body mass (Chrusch et al 2001, Jowko et al 2001, Stone et al 1999), although some of these apparent gains may actually represent water retention in the muscles.

**Enhanced power** Many studies show that creatine supplementation in conjunction with resistance training augments gains in muscle strength and size, although the effect is not consistent for everybody (Spriet & Gibala 2004, Volek & Rawson 2004). Creatine supplementation increases muscle fibre hypertrophy, myosin heavy chain expression and swelling of myocytes, which may in turn affect carbohydrate and protein metabolism. Supplementation also increases acute weightlifting performance and training volume, which may allow for greater overload and adaptation to training.

A 2003 review of 22 studies estimated that the average increase in muscle strength following creatine supplementation as an adjunct to resistance training was 8% greater than for placebo (20% vs 12%) (Rawson & Volek 2003). Similarly, the average increase in weightlifting performance (maximal repetitions at a given percentage of maximal strength) following creatine supplementation plus resistance training was 14% greater than placebo (26% vs 12%).

**Reducing strength decline in the elderly** The effects of supplemental creatine in older adults has been investigated in a few studies, overall producing positive results (Brose et al 2003, Chrusch et al 2001, Kreider et al 1998). One randomised, double-blind study involving 30 older men (>70 years) showed that resistance training combined with creatine supplementation produced significantly greater increases in lean tissue mass, leg strength, endurance and average power than placebo (Chrusch et al 2001). The dose regimen used was 0.3 g/kg for the first 5 days followed by 0.07 g/kg thereafter. Another double-blind study in 28 men and women aged over 65 years showed that creatine supplementation (5 g daily) combined with resistance training enhanced the increase in total and fat-free mass, and gains in several indices of isometric muscle strength (Brose et al 2003).

**Cervical level spinal cord injury** According to a randomised, double-blind, placebo controlled crossover trial, creatine supplementation enhances upper extremity work capacity in subjects with complete cervical-level spinal cord injury (Jacobs et al 2002).
**Clinical note — The Australian Institute of Sport Supplement Program**

The AIS is world renowned for its professionalism and high-quality training programs. In 2000, a project called the AIS Sports Supplement Program was developed to ensure that athletes use supplements correctly and confidently, and receive ‘cutting edge’ advice on nutritional practices. In order to streamline the information available, a panel of experts categorised some of the most popular sports supplements into various classes to clarify which are approved or recommended and which are directly banned by international doping rules. Some of the approved supplements recommended for use include creatine, antioxidants (vitamins C and E), multivitamins, iron, calcium supplements and sports drinks.

**MUSCULAR DYSTROPHY**

A number of muscle diseases are associated with a decrease in intracellular creatine concentration, which could theoretically contribute to muscle weakness and degeneration of muscle tissue (Wyss et al 1998). As a result, testing with creatine supplementation in a variety of muscle diseases has started.

One double-blind, crossover study of 36 patients with various muscle diseases found that creatine supplementation over 8 weeks produced a mild but significant improvement in muscle strength and daily-life activities on Medical Research Council scales and the Neuromuscular Symptom Score (Walter et al 2000). A single-blind placebo-controlled trial of 21 volunteers with different neuromuscular disorders found that creatine supplementation (10 g daily for 5 days followed by 5 g daily for 5–7 days) produced significant improvements in body weight, handgrip, dorsiflexion, and knee extensor strength (Tarnopolsky et al 1997).

**CONGESTIVE HEART FAILURE**

Muscle fatigue due to loss of skeletal muscle mass and strength, decreased oxidative capacity and other abnormalities of muscle metabolism have been associated with congestive heart failure. As a result, creatine supplementation has been suggested as a possible therapeutic agent in this condition.

A dose of 10 g creatine daily for 7 days significantly increased exercise capacity and muscle strength compared to placebo in a double-blind study involving 17 men with congestive heart failure (Gordon et al 1995). However, creatine supplementation did not alter ejection fraction at rest or at work. Muscle endurance during handgrip exercises was also seen to improve in another double-blind, crossover study of 20 men given 5 g creatine four times daily for 5 days (Andrews et al 1998).
**NEUROLOGICAL DEGENERATIVE DISEASES**

Over the past few years, a considerable body of scientific evidence has given support to the idea that creatine supplementation may alleviate some of the clinical symptoms of neurological disease and delay disease progression (Wyss & Schulze 2002). Studies conducted in both animal models of neurodegenerative disease and humans have produced mixed results.

**Huntington’s disease**  A number of studies conducted with experimental animal models of Huntington’s disease have identified a possible role for creatine supplementation (Andreassen et al 2001, Dedeoglu et al 2003, Ferrante et al 2000). Creatine was shown to increase survival, delay onset of symptoms and exert neuroprotective effects in vivo.

**Motor neuron disease**  A preliminary study demonstrated that creatine supplementation of 20 g daily for 7 days followed by 3 g daily for 3 and 6 months produced temporary increases in maximal isometric power in patients with MND (Mazzini et al 2001). More recently, two randomised, double blind, placebo-controlled studies have been conducted with MND patients, with both finding no change to disease progression with creatine monohydrate supplementation at doses of 5–10 g daily (Groeneveld et al 2003, Shefner et al 2004). Study periods varied from 6 to 12 months. The study by Shefner et al used creatine monohydrate at a loading dose of 20 g/day for 5 days, followed by 5 g/day. It must be noted that this study was powered only to detect a 50% or greater change, so the failure to show a significant positive effect of treatment might have limited clinical significance.

**REDUCES MENTAL FATIGUE**
Creatine supplement (8 g/day for 5 days) reduced mental fatigue when examined under double-blind placebo-controlled conditions in 24 healthy volunteers (Watanabe et al 2002).

**OTHER USES**

**GYRATE ATROPHY**
Doses of 1.5 g/day for 1 year resulted in improvement of the skeletal muscle abnormality that accompanies gyrate atrophy, a genetically acquired form of blindness (Feldman 1999).

**DOSAGE RANGE**
There are two common dosing regimens.
**LOADING**
Creatine loading protocols have been well studied.
- **Rapid loading**: A dose of 5 g is taken four times daily for 5–7 days as a loading phase, followed by 2–10 g daily as maintenance for 1 week to 6 months (Bemben & Lamont 2005). This is followed by a 4-week break and then restarted in a process known as ‘cycling’.
- **Slower loading**: A similar effect can be achieved by taking 3 g daily over 28 days. Concurrent ingestion of carbohydrate (50–100 g) may improve creatine uptake.

**NON-LOADING**
- **Daily dose of 3 g**.
  In practice, creatine is often taken with simple carbohydrates, such as glucose or fruit juice, in order to increase creatine accumulation within muscle.

---

**Clinical note — Interview with Steve Brown — Mr Australia and personal trainer**
In practice, micronised forms of creatine monohydrate provide superior results to powders or granules and have less gastrointestinal side-effects, particularly when taken with glucose or dark grape juice, according to Steve Brown (pers. commun. 2003). The loading regimen typically increases the ability to lift heavier weights for greater repetitions within 2–4 weeks and occurs quite suddenly. Also, creatine increases alertness and mental sharpness, effects that are obvious after the first week. Although there is a slight weight gain due to water retention, lean body mass also increases, because the body is able to work harder and for longer with creatine. Once supplementation stops, the physical effects on performance quickly reduce and are noticeable after the first week.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
Side-effects include gastrointestinal distress with nausea and vomiting, diarrhoea, muscle fatigue, pain and cramping, dehydration and heat intolerance. The effects may be reduced when micronised forms of creatine are taken together with glucose or simple carbohydrates. Fluid retention is commonly observed during the loading phase of supplementation.

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**
Controlled studies are not available and there is insufficient reliable evidence to determine interaction potential.
CONTRAINdications AND PREcautions
Use of high-dose creatine is contraindicated in individuals with renal failure.
Creatine supplementation for up to 8 weeks has not been associated with major health risks, but the safety of more prolonged creatine supplementation has not been established (Williams & Branch 1998).

Pregnancy Use
Insufficient reliable data are available, but it is generally not recommended in pregnancy.

PRACTice Points/pATient Counselling
- Creatine is a very popular sports supplement and is not a substance banned by the International Olympic Committee. Although scientific evidence supports its use in high-intensity, repetitive burst exercise, not every individual will respond. Investigation is underway to determine key characteristics of athletes most likely to respond.
- Creatine is also used in the treatment of numerous conditions involving fatigue or muscle weakness, but little evidence is available yet to determine its effectiveness.
- Creatine is used in the production of ATP, the main source of energy for muscle activity and many other biological functions.
- In practice, creatine is often taken in high doses for 5–7 days, followed by lower maintenance doses for up to 8 weeks. This is called ‘loading’.
- High-dose creatine is contraindicated in renal failure.

ANSwERS To PaTients’ FREQUently ASKed QUESTions
What will this supplement do for me?
Creatine enhances physical power and recovery in most cases. It may also reduce mental fatigue and have a protective effect on nerves.

When will it start to work?
The physical effects generally develop within 1–4 weeks of use.

Are there any safety issues?
It should not be taken in high doses by people with kidney disease and its long-term safety has not been established.

REFERENCES

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
Damiana

Historical note  Damiana is a wild deciduous shrub found in the arid and semi-arid regions of South America, Mexico, United States and West Indies. It is believed that Mayan Indians used damiana to prevent giddiness, falling and loss of balance, and as an aphrodisiac. It has also been used during childbirth, and to treat colic, stop bed wetting and bring on suppressed menses. Today its leaves are used for flavouring in food and beverages, and infusions and other preparations are used for a variety of medicinal purposes.

COMMON NAME
Damiana

OTHER NAMES
Herba de la pastora, Mexican damiana, miziboc, old woman’s broom, shepherd’s herb, stag’s herb

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Turnera diffusa, Damiana aphrodisiaca, Turnera aphrodisiaca (family Turneraceae)

PLANT PARTS USED
Dried leaves and stems

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Sesquiterpenes, alkaloids, essential oils containing caryophyllene, delta-cadinene, beta-elemene and 1–8 cineol and other lesser constituents, tetraphylin B (a cyanogenic glycoside, 0.26%), resin, tannins, gum, mucilage, starch, a bitter element and possibly caffeine. Damiana also contains a flavone and at least five flavonoids including arbutin (Piacente et al 2002).

MAIN ACTIONS
The pharmacological actions of damiana have not been significantly investigated, so traditional use and in vitro and in vivo evidence is used.

HORMONAL EFFECTS
One study that investigated the effects of over 150 herbs for their relative capacity to compete with oestradiol and progesterone binding to intracellular receptors identified damiana as a herb that binds to intracellular progesterone receptors, exerting a neutral effect and also exerting weak oestrogen agonist activity (Zava et al 1998). It
has been reported that delta-cadinene is a testosterone inducer and 1,8-cineole is a testosterone hydroxylase inducer (Duke 2006). A study analysing the constituents of the essential oils found in various damiana samples identified that fresh and dry samples contained both compounds, but wild plants contained more delta-cadinene than cultivated plants (Alcaraz-Melendez et al 2004). The action of these constituents may support the common belief that damiana is useful as an aphrodisiac.

**ANTI-INFLAMMATORY ACTIVITY**
Significant anti-inflammatory activity was identified for the aqueous and ethanolic fractions of damiana in an experimental model (Antonio & Brito 1998). Antiplatelet activity was not observed.

**HYPOGLYCAEMIC AGENT**
A decoction of dried damiana leaves caused a significant reduction of the hyperglycaemic peak, exerting a hypoglycaemic effect comparable to that of tolbutamide in an experimental model (Alarcon-Aguilara et al 1998).

**CLINICAL USE**
Damiana has not been significantly investigated under clinical trial conditions; therefore, evidence is derived from traditional use, in vitro and animal studies and clinical significance is unknown.

**SEXUAL DYSFUNCTION OR DECREASED LIBIDO**
Damiana has been used traditionally for sexual dysfunction or as an aphrodisiac to enhance sexual activity. Scientific studies in experimental models provide preliminary support for its use in these conditions, but controlled trials are lacking. One in vivo study established that damiana fluid extract significantly improves the copulatory performance of sexually sluggish animals, but has no effect on normally functioning ones (Arletti et al 1999). The effect appears to be dose-dependent as positive results were only obtained when the highest dose (1 mL/kg) was administered.

One clinical study of unknown design compared a herbal combination product consisting of ginseng, ginkgo, damiana, l-arginine and a variety of vitamins and minerals with placebo in 77 female volunteers. After 4 weeks, 73.5% of the women in the treatment group reported an increase in sexual satisfaction compared with 37.2% receiving placebo (Ito et al 2001). Although promising, the role of damiana in achieving this result is unknown.

**DIABETES**
Although in vivo studies suggest significant hypoglycaemic activity, no clinical studies are available to determine whether the effects are clinically significant.
**WEIGHT LOSS**

No controlled studies are available to determine the effectiveness of damiana as a stand-alone treatment in weight loss; however, one study that used a combination of herbs that included damiana has produced positive results. The randomised double-blind study involving 47 overweight subjects tested a herbal combination product known as ‘YGD’ (Yerbe mate, Paullinia cupana and damiana) for weight loss activity. Treatment resulted in a prolonged gastric emptying time and a body weight reduction of 5.1 ± 0.5 kg compared with 0.3 ± 0.08 kg after placebo over 45 days. A 12-month follow-up revealed that weight loss was maintained in the active treatment group (Andersen & Fogh 2001). Until studies using damiana as sole therapy are conducted, the effectiveness of this herb in weight loss is still unknown.

**OTHER USES**

In practice, damiana is sometimes used to treat anxiety and depression associated with hormonal changes (e.g. menopause) or where there is a sexual factor involved. It is also used as a mild stimulant, aphrodisiac, to enhance stamina generally, nervous dyspepsia and constipation.

**DOSAGE RANGE**

- Dried leaf: 2–4 g taken three times daily.
- Infusion: pour a cup of boiling water onto 1 teaspoonful of the dried leaves and let infuse for 10–15 minutes. Drink 3 cups daily.
- Liquid extract (1:2) or solid dose equivalent: 20–40 mL per week or 3–6 mL/day.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**

There is insufficient reliable information available.

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**

Controlled studies are not available; therefore, interactions are based on evidence of activity and are largely theoretical and speculative.

**HYPOGLYCAEMIC AGENTS**

Additive effects are theoretically possible, with unknown clinical significance — observe patients.

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**

Traditionally, the herb is not recommended for people with overactive sympathetic nervous system activity.
PREGNANCY USE
Safety in pregnancy has not been scientifically evaluated however no increase in fetal abnormalities has been observed from limited use in women (Mills & Bone 2005).

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Damiana is a herb with a traditional reputation as being an aphrodisiac, stimulant, mood enhancer and general tonic.
- Currently, evidence to support its use as an aphrodisiac is limited to research in animals, which has produced some positive results.
- In vivo studies have identified significant anti-inflammatory and hypoglycaemic activity, although human studies are still required to determine clinical significance.
- It is also suspected that the herb exerts some degree of hormonal activity.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this herb do for me?
Damiana has not been significantly tested in human studies, so much information is taken from traditional sources or preliminary research in animals. According to these sources, it may increase sexual function and libido in some cases of dysfunction, lower blood glucose levels and exert anti-inflammatory actions.

When will it start to work?
There is insufficient evidence to predict when effects may develop.

Are there any safety issues?
A long history of use suggests it is generally safe. However, scientific testing has not been conducted.

REFERENCES


Dandelion

Historical note  Dandelion grows throughout the world as a weed and has a long history of medicinal and culinary use. Dandelion leaves are added to salads, providing a good source of minerals, and the roasted root is used as a coffee substitute. Dandelion leaves are traditionally used as a diuretic, and the root is used as a liver tonic.

OTHER NAMES
Blowball, cankerwort, common dandelion, lion’s tooth, priest’s crown, puffball, swine snout, taraxacum, wild endive, white endive

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Taraxacum officinale; synonyms: Leontodon taraxacum, Taraxacum vulgare (family Compositae [Asteraceae])

PLANT PARTS USED
Leaf and root

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Dandelion leaf and root contain slightly different constituents.

    Overall, dandelion is a rich source of minerals, particularly potassium (Hook et al 1993), as well as iron, magnesium, zinc, potassium, manganese, copper, choline, selenium, calcium, boron and silicon (Queralt et al 2005), and a rich source of vitamins A, C, D and B complex (US Department of Agriculture 2003). The relatively high protein, fibre and linoleic acid content of dandelion leaves has led to suggestions that dandelion is a nutritious and underutilised food source (Escudero et al 2003). Dandelion’s constituents also include triterpenes, flavonoid glycosides and various phenolic acids, as well as phytosterols, sugars and mucilage (Blumenthal et al 2000). The many phenolic acids and flavonoids include chicoric acid (dicafeoyltartaric acid) and quercetin glycosides (Schutz et al 2005).

MAIN ACTIONS
DIURETIC
Dandelion leaf has been found to have a greater diuretic effect than the roots, with activity comparable to that of frusemide, without causing potassium loss because of the leaves’ high potassium content (Newall et al 1996). A study using an infusion of

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
dandelion root found that dandelion did not significantly increase diuresis in rats (Grases et al 1994), and no secondary metabolites showing major diuretic activity were found (Hook et al 1993).

**CHOLERETIC**
The bitter constituents in dandelion root are believed to be responsible for increasing bile production and flow, as well as contributing to the root’s mild laxative effects.

**HEPATIC ENZYME INDUCTION**
In vivo studies have demonstrated decreased activity of CYP1A2 and CYP2E enzymes and dramatic increases in levels of the phase II detoxifying enzyme UDP-glucuronosyl transferase in liver microsomes of rats receiving dandelion tea (Maliakal & Wanwimolruk 2001). The same study found that dandelion tea had no effect on the activities of CYP2D and CYP3A.

**ANTI-INFLAMMATORY AND ANTIOXIDANT ACTIVITY**
Dandelion extract was shown to exhibit a mild analgesic and anti-inflammatory effect in mice (Tito et al 1993), and an aqueous dandelion extract was found to prevent diabetic complications due to lipid peroxidation and free radicals in diabetic rats (Cho et al 2002). Dandelion extract has also been found to have a protective effect against CCK octapeptide-induced acute pancreatitis in rats (Seo et al 2005) and dandelion flower extract demonstrated marked antioxidant activity that has been attributed to its phenolic content, with suppression of reactive oxygen species and nitric oxide (Hu & Kitts 2003, 2005, Kery et al 2004). Extracts of dandelion flowers, roots and stem have been found to have significant OH-radical scavenging activity (Kaurinovic et al 2003).

**OTHER ACTIONS**
There is preliminary scientific evidence from animal and in vitro studies that suggests the roots of *Taraxacum japonicum* may have a cancer preventative effect. The extract has been shown to induce cytotoxicity through TNF-alpha and IL-1-alpha secretion in vitro.

Traditionally, dandelion root is understood to have laxative activity and to stimulate digestion, whereas dandelion leaf has antirheumatic effects. Dandelion root infusion, which contains oligofructans, has been found to stimulate the growth of multiple strains of bifidobacteria, suggesting its use as a probiotic (Trojanova et al 2004).

Dandelion may have antidiabetic actions, because ethanolic extracts of whole dandelion exhibited insulin secretagogue activity (Hussain et al 2004) and dandelion
in conjunction with various other herbal extracts has been shown to have an antihyperglycaemic effect in mice (Petlevski et al 2003).

**CLINICAL USE**
The therapeutic effectiveness of dandelion has not been significantly investigated under clinical trial conditions, so evidence is derived from traditional, in vitro and animal studies.

**DIURETIC**
Dandelion has a long history of use as a diuretic in well-established systems of traditional medicines; however, the scientific and clinical evidence to support this use is limited to animal studies (see above). The high potassium content of dandelion is considered to be partly responsible for any diuretic activity (Hook et al 1993).

A double-blind randomised study of 57 women with recurrent cystitis found that a commercial preparation known as Uva-E (a combination of Arctostaphylos leaves and dandelion root) significantly reduced the frequency of recurrence of cystitis compared with placebo. At the end of 12 months, none of the patients taking Uva-E had had a recurrence of cystitis, compared with 23% recurrence in the control group \( (P < 0.05) \) (Larsson et al 1993). The role of dandelion in achieving this result is unknown; however, the researchers suggested that its diuretic effect was likely to have contributed to the positive results.

**LIVER TONIC**
Dandelion has a long history of use as a liver tonic (Macia et al 2005); however, the scientific and clinical evidence to support this use is limited. Preliminary studies suggest that dandelion root stimulates the flow of bile.

Commission E approves the use of dandelion root and herb for disturbances in bile flow, loss of appetite and dyspepsia (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**OTHER USES**
Dandelion has been used traditionally as a source of minerals and for treating diabetes, rheumatic conditions, heartburn, bruises and for recurrent hives, urticaria and eczema. It has also been used to treat various digestive complaints such as dyspepsia, lack of appetite and constipation (Newall et al 1996), as well as treating warts (Guarrera 2005) and for breast and uterine cancers (Koo et al 2004).

**DOSAGE RANGE**

**LEAF**
- Infusion of dried herb: 4–10 g three times daily.
- Fluid extract (25%): 4–10 mL three times daily.
• Fresh juice: 10–20 mL three times daily.

**ROOT**
• Decoction of dried root: 2–8 g three times daily.
• Tincture (1:5): 5–10 mL three times daily.
• Fluid extract (30%): 2–8 mL three times daily.
• Juice of fresh root: 4–8 mL three times daily.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
Dandelion is generally considered safe when consumed in amounts commonly found in foods. Cross-reactivity may exist between dandelion and other members of the Compositae (Asteraceae) family, such as ragweed, mugwort, sunflower, daisy and chamomile (Cohen et al 1979, Fernandez et al 1993, Jovanovic et al 2004).

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**
Controlled studies are not available; therefore, interactions are based on evidence of activity and are largely theoretical and speculative.

**DIURETIC AGENTS**
Dandelion leaf may theoretically interact with other diuretics, although the clinical significance of this is unknown — observe patient.

**QUINOLONE ANTIBIOTICS**
The high mineral content of dandelion may result in the formation of chelate complexes with quinolone antibiotics and reduce their absorption and bioavailability. This has been demonstrated in rats with *Taraxacum mongolicum* (Chinese dandelion) (Zhu et al 1999). While the clinical significance of this is unknown, it is recommended to avoid concomitant use of these substances or to separate their dosing.

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**
It is recommended that dandelion not be used by people with obstruction of the bile ducts or other serious diseases of the gall bladder (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**PREGNANCY USE**
Based on a long history of use in traditional medicine, dandelion is generally considered safe in pregnancy and lactation (Blumenthal et al 2000, McGuffin et al 1997).

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**
• Dandelion leaf and root have a long tradition of culinary and medicinal use.
• Dandelion has been traditionally used as a diuretic and liver tonic. It has also been used to treat various digestive complaints such as dyspepsia, lack of appetite and constipation.
• The therapeutic effectiveness of dandelion has not been significantly investigated under clinical trial conditions, so evidence is derived from traditional, in vitro and animal studies.
• Dandelion is generally considered to be safe and non-toxic, but may cause allergy in people allergic to ragweed and daisies.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What will this do for me?
In practice, dandelion is used to improve digestion and detoxification, as a diuretic and laxative and to treat diabetes, rheumatic conditions, heartburn, bruises and for recurrent hives, urticaria and eczema. Controlled studies are not available to determine its effectiveness in these conditions.

When will it work?
Stimulation of digestive processes is thought to occur rapidly after one dose.

Are there any safety issues?
Dandelion is generally considered to be safe and non-toxic but may cause allergy in people allergic to ragweed and daisies.

REFERENCES


Devil’s claw

Historical note The botanical name Harpagophytum means ‘hook plant’ in Greek, after the hook-covered fruits of the plant. Devil’s claw is native to southern Africa and has been used traditionally as a bitter tonic for digestive disturbances, febrile illnesses, allergic reactions and to relieve pain (Mills & Bone 2000). It has been used in Europe for the treatment of rheumatic conditions for over 50 years, and was first cited in the literature by Zorn at the University of Jena, Germany, who described his observations on the antiphlogistic and anti-arthritic effects after administration of oral aqueous extracts prepared from the secondary roots of H. procumbens in patients suffering from arthritides (Chrubasik et al 2006).

COMMON NAMES
Devil’s claw root, grapple plant, harpagophytum, wood spider

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Harpagophytum procumbens (family Pedaliaceae)

PLANT PART USED
Dried tuber/root

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
The major active constituent is considered to be the bitter iridoid glucoside, harpagoside, which should constitute not less than 1.2% of the dried herb. Other iridoid glycosides include harpagide and procumbide. About 50% of the herb consists of sugars. There are also triterpenes, phytosterols, plant phenolic acids, flavonol glycosides and phenolic glycosides. Harpagophytum zeyheri, which has a lower level of active compounds, may be partially substituted for H. procumbens in some commercial preparations (Stewart & Cole 2005). The extraction solvent (e.g. water, ethanol) has a major impact on the active principle of the products (Chrubasik 2004a)

MAIN ACTIONS
ANTI-INFLAMMATORY/ANALGESIC
There is good in vitro and in vivo pharmacological evidence of the anti-inflammatory and analgesic properties of devil’s claw, although some negative findings have also

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
been reported (McGregor et al 2005). Overall, greatest activity appears to be in semi-chronic rather than acute conditions.

Devil’s claw exerted significant analgesic effects against thermally and chemically induced nociceptive pain stimuli in mice and significant dose-related reduction of experimentally induced acute inflammation in rats (Mahomed & Ojewole 2004), as well as reducing pain and inflammation in Freund’s adjuvant-induced arthritis in rats (Andersen et al 2004).

The iridoids, particularly harpagoside, are thought to be the main active constituents responsible for the anti-inflammatory activity, although the mechanism of action is unknown and devil’s claw is also rich in water-soluble antioxidants (Betancor-Fernandez et al 2003).

It has been suggested that the suppression of matrix metalloproteinases in chondrocytes via the inhibition of inflammatory cytokine synthesis, demonstrated in vitro, could explain its therapeutic effect in arthritic inflammation (Kundu et al 2005). In vitro evidence also suggests that the anti-inflammatory effect may be due to effects on TNF-alpha (Fiebich et al 2001) or antioxidant activity (Langmead et al 2002). Additionally, inhibition of leukotriene synthesis has been observed in vitro, which appears to relate to the amount of harpagoside present (Loew et al 2001).

Contradictory evidence exists as to whether devil’s claw affects prostaglandin (PG) synthesis. Early in vitro and in vivo studies suggest that it does not inhibit PG synthesis (Whitehouse et al 1983) and this is supported by studies of PG production in humans (Moussard et al 1992). However, more recent investigations have suggested that its anti-inflammatory and analgesic activities are due to suppression of PGE2 synthesis and nitric oxide production and that the herb may suppress expressions of COX-2 and iNOS (Jang et al 2003). More recently, methanolic extracts of devil’s claw have been shown to inhibit COX-2 in vivo (Kundu et al 2005, Na et al 2004).

In vivo experiments have determined that the method of administration of devil’s claw affects its anti-inflammatory properties. Intraperitoneal and intraduodenal administration was shown to reduce carrageenan-induced oedema, whereas oral administration had no effect, suggesting that exposure to stomach acid may reduce its anti-inflammatory activity (Soulimani et al 1994). This is supported by a study that found a loss of anti-inflammatory activity after acid treatment (Bone & Walker 1997).

In vitro studies on rat mesangial cells suggest that devil’s claw may be used as an anti-inflammatory agent in the treatment of glomerular inflammatory diseases (Kaszkin et al 2004a). Devils claw extract produced a concentration-dependent suppression of nitrite formation in rat mesangial cells in vitro due to an inhibition of iNOS expression through interference with the transcriptional activation of iNOS. It
was found that this activity was due to harpagoside, together with other constituents that possibly have strong anti-oxidant activity (Kaszkin et al 2004b).

**CHONDROPROTECTIVE**

In-vitro data suggests that the active principles of *H. procumbens* inhibit not only inflammatory mediators but also mediators of cartilage destruction, such as TNF-alpha, IL-1-beta, matrix metalloproteinases, NO and elastase (Boje et al 2003, Fiebich et al 2001, Huang et al 2006, Schulze-Tanzil et al 2004). A study using an animal model confirmed a chondroprotective effect in which the tissue inhibitor of metalloproteinase-2 is involved (Chrubasik et al 2006).

**HYPOGLYCAEMIC**

Devil’s claw extract produced a dose-dependent, significant reduction in the blood glucose concentrations of both fasted normal and fasted diabetic rats (Mahomed & Ojewole 2004).

**OTHER ACTIONS**

In vitro and in vivo evidence suggests that harpagoside may exhibit cardiac affects and lower blood pressure, heart rate and reduce arrhythmias (Fetrow & Avila 1999). As an extremely bitter herb, devil’s claw is thought to increase appetite and bile production. Diterpenes extracted from the roots and seeds of devil’s claw exhibited selective antiplasmodial activity in vitro (Clarkson et al 2003), which may have future relevance in view of the increasing resistance to conventional antimalarials.

**CLINICAL USE**

**ARTHITIS**

Overall, current evidence from clinical trials suggest that devil’s claw may be a useful treatment for arthritis; however, it is suggested, as with many herbal medicines, that evidence of effectiveness is not transferrable from product to product and that the evidence is more robust for products that contain at least 50 mg of harpagoside in the daily dosage (Chrubasik et al 2003a, Gagnier et al 2004).

An observational study of 6 months’ use of 3–9 g/day of an aqueous extract of devil’s claw root reported significant benefit in 42–85% of the 630 people suffering from various arthritic complaints (Bone & Walker 1997). In a 12-week uncontrolled multicentre study of 75 patients with arthrosis of the hip or knee, a strong reduction in pain and the symptoms of osteoarthritis were observed in patients taking 2400 mg of devil’s claw extract daily, corresponding to 50 mg harpagoside (Wegener & Lupke 2003). Similar results were reported in a 2-month observational study of 227 people with osteoarthritic knee and hip pain and non-specific low back pain (Chrubasik et al...
2002) and a double-blind study of 89 subjects with rheumatic complaints using powdered devil’s claw root (2 g/day) for 2 months, which also provided significant pain relief, whereas another double-blind study of 100 people reported benefit after 1 month (Bone & Walker 1997). A case report suggests that devil’s claw relieved strong joint pain in a patient with Crohn’s disease (Kaszkine et al 2004).

Comparisons with standard treatment have also been investigated. In 2000, encouraging results of a randomised double-blind study comparing the effects of treatment with devil’s claw 2610 mg/day with diacerhein 100 mg/day were published (Leblan et al 2000). The study involved 122 people with osteoarthritis of the hip and/or knee and was conducted over 4 months. It found that both treatment groups showed similar considerable improvements in symptoms of osteoarthritis; however, those receiving devil’s claw required fewer rescue analgesics.

One double-blind, randomised, multicentre clinical study of 122 patients with osteoarthritis of the knee and hip found that treatment with Harpadol (6 capsules/day, each containing 435 mg of cryoground powder of H. procumbens) given over 4 months was as effective as diacerhein (an analgesic) 100 mg/day (Chantre et al 2000). However, at the end of the study, patients taking Harpadol were using significantly fewer NSAIDs and had a significantly lower frequency of adverse events. In a 6-week study of only 13 subjects, similar benefits for devil’s claw and indomethacin were reported (Newall et al 1996). A recent preliminary study comparing the proprietary extract Doloteffin with the COX-2 inhibitor, rofecoxib, reported a benefit with the herbal treatment but suggested that larger studies are still required (Chrubasik et al 2003b). The herb is Commission E approved as supportive therapy for degenerative musculoskeletal disorders (Blumenthal et al 2000) and ESCOP approved for painful osteoarthritis (ESCOP 2003).

**BACK PAIN**

Several double-blind studies have reported benefit with devil’s claw in people with back pain. A double-blind study of 117 people with back pain reported decreased pain and improved mobility after 8 weeks’ treatment with devil’s claw extract LI 174, known commercially as Rivoltan (Laudahn & Walper 2001). Use of the same extract provided significant pain relief after 4 weeks in another randomised, double-blind placebo-controlled study of 63 subjects with muscle stiffness (Gobel et al 2001). Similar results were reported in two double-blind studies of 118 people (Chrubasik et al 1996) and 197 people (Chrubasik et al 1999) with chronic lower back pain.

Devil’s claw appears to compare favourably to conventional treatments. A 6-week double-blind study of 88 subjects comparing devil’s claw to rofecoxib found equal improvements in both groups (Chrubasik et al 2003b) A follow-up of the subjects
from that study who were all given devil’s claw for 1 year found that it was well tolerated and improvements were sustained (Chrubasik et al 2005). In an open, prospective study, an unspcific lower back pain treatment with *Harpagophytum* extract and conventional therapy were found to be equally effective (Schmidt et al 2005).

Devil’s claw root is approved for relief of low back pain by ESCOP (ESCOP 2003).

**DYSPEPSIA**

Traditionally, devil’s claw has also been used to treat dyspepsia and to stimulate appetite (Fisher and Painter 1996). The bitter principles in the herb provide a theoretical basis for its use in these conditions, although controlled studies are not available to determine effectiveness. The herb is Commission E (Blumenthal et al 2000) and ESCOP (2003) approved for dyspepsia and loss of appetite.

**OTHER USES**

Traditionally, the herb is also used internally to treat febrile illnesses, allergic reactions and to induce sedation, and topically for wounds, ulcers, boils and pain relief (Fisher & Painter 1996, Mills & Bone 2000), as well as for diabetes, hypertension, indigestion and anorexia (Van Wyk 2000).

**DOSAGE RANGE**

**MUSCULOSKELETAL CONDITIONS**

- Dried root or equivalent aqueous or hydroalcoholic extracts: 2–6 g daily for painful arthritis; 4.5–9 g daily for lower back pain.
- Liquid extract (1:2): 6–12 mL/day.
- Tincture (1:5): 2–4 mL three times daily.
  
  It is suggested that devil’s claw extracts with at least 50 mg harpagoside in the daily dosage should be recommended for the treatment of pain (Chrubasik 2004a, b).

**DIGESTIVE CONDITIONS (e.g. DYSPEPSIA)**

- Dosages equivalent to 1.5 g/day dried herb are used (Blumenthal et al 2000). It is suggested that devil’s claw preparations be administered between meals, when gastric activity is reduced.

**TOXICITY**

The acute LD$_{50}$ of devil’s claw was more than 13.5 g/kg according to one study (Bone & Walker 1997).

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**

Diarrhoea was reported in one clinical study.

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
Devil’s claw has been found to moderately inhibit cytochrome P450 enzymes in vitro (Unger & Frank 2004), however, the clinical relevance of this is yet to be determined.

WARFARIN
Rare case reports suggest that devil’s claw may potentiate the effects of warfarin, requiring caution and possible dose adjustments (Argento et al 2000, Heck et al 2000); however, clinical testing is required to confirm this — use caution in patients receiving warfarin.

ANTIARRHYTHMIC DRUGS
Theoretical interaction exists when the herb is used in high doses; however, clinical testing is required to determine significance — observe patients taking concurrent antiarrhythmics (Fetrow & Avila 1999).

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Use cautiously in patients with gastric and duodenal ulcers, gallstones or acute diarrhoea, as devil’s claw may cause gastric irritation (Blumenthal et al 2000).

PREGNANCY USE
Devil’s claw is not recommended in pregnancy, as it has exhibited oxytocic activity in animals.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Devil’s claw reduces pain and inflammation and is a useful treatment in arthritis and back pain, according to controlled studies.
- The anti-inflammatory action appears to be different to that of NSAIDs and has not been fully elucidated. There is also preliminary evidence of a chondroprotective effect.
- Preliminary research suggests that it is best to take devil’s claw between meals, on an empty stomach.
- Devil’s claw appears to be relatively safe but should not be used in pregnancy and should be used with caution in people with ulcers or gall stones or in those taking warfarin.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this herb do for me?
Devil’s claw is a useful treatment for arthritis and back pain. It may also increase appetite and improve digestion and dyspepsia.
When will it start to work?

Results from studies suggest that pain-relieving effects will start within 4–12 weeks.

Are there any safety issues?

Devil’s claw should be used cautiously by people with gallstones, diarrhoea, stomach ulcers and those taking the drug warfarin. It is also not recommended in pregnancy.

REFERENCES


Chrubasik S. Devil’s claw extract as an example of the effectiveness of herbal analgesics. Der Orthopade 33.7 (2004a): 804-8.


Dong quai

Historical note  Dong quai is an aromatic herb commonly used in TCM. Its reputation is second to that of ginseng and is regarded as a ‘female’ remedy, or women’s ginseng. Used in combination with other herbs, dong quai is used to treat numerous menstrual disorders and menopausal symptoms, as well as abdominal pain, migraine headache, rheumatism and anaemia (Murray 1995). Dong quai (Angelica sinensis) is closely related to the European Angelica archangelica, a common garden herb and the flavouring in Benedictine and Chartreuse liqueurs.

COMMON NAME
Dong quai

OTHER NAMES
Chinese angelica, dang gui, women’s ginseng, tang kuei

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Angelica sinensis (synonym: Angelica polymorpha sinensis) (family Apiaceae [Umbelliferae] — carrot family)

PLANT PART USED
Root

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Dong quai contains essential oil (0.4–0.7%) consisting of 45% ligustilide, n-butylphthalide, cadinene, carvacrol, safrole and isosafrol. The root also contains sucrose (40%) and various lactones and vitamins, together with phytosterols, ferulic acid and coumarins, including osthole, psoralen and bergapten (Micromedex 2003). Ferulic acid and ligustilide are considered to be the main active components (Dong et al 2005) and it has been suggested that assessment of total ferulic acid content provides a good measure of herbal quality (Lu et al 2005).

MAIN ACTIONS
Nearly all studies investigating the pharmacological effects of dong quai have been conducted in vitro or in animals, so it is difficult to predict whether the observed effects are clinically significant.
Hormone Modulation and Uterine Effects

Studies on the uterine effects of dong quai have produced variable results. A uterine relaxant effect has been attributed to the volatile oil, whereas a uterine stimulant effect has been attributed to an aqueous extract (Mills & Bone 2000). Animal experiments report that dong quai produces increased uterine excitability, with initial irregular, fast contractions, later slowing and becoming more regular (Zhu 1987).

Studies of dong quai’s oestrogenic activity have also produced contradictory results. In vitro reports suggest that dong quai has weak oestrogen-receptor-binding activity, producing up-regulation of progesterone-receptor mRNA (Liu et al 2001), and stimulating oestrogen-dependent breast cancer cells independent of oestrogenic activity (Amato et al 2002). An aqueous extract of dong quai was found to stimulate the growth of both oestrogen-receptor-positive and -negative breast cancer cells in vitro, suggesting both a weak oestrogen-agonistic activity and activity independent of oestrogen-receptor-mediated pathways (Lau et al 2005). This is contrasted by a study using several different in vitro bioassays that found that dong quai did not have oestrogenic activity (Klein et al 2003), oestrogen-receptor-binding activity or stimulate the growth of oestrogen-positive breast cancer cells and that it had neutral progestin activity (Zava & Blen 1998). Dong quai has also been reported to have anti-oestrogenic activity and anti-androgenic activity in vitro (Rosenberg et al 2001).

Immunostimulant Effect

It is reported that dong quai can counter the immunosuppressive effects of hydrocortisone in vivo (Mills & Bone 2000). Immunostimulation is further suggested by in vitro studies demonstrating enhanced cell mediated immunity (Yang et al 2005a) and upregulation of IL-2 and IFN-gamma (Yang et al 2005a), as well as non-specific lymphoproliferation (Wilasrusmee et al 2002). A polysaccharide from dong quai has also been found to enhance non-specific immunity while suppressing humoral immunity (Yang et al 2003).

Hepatoprotection

Dong quai is said to improve abnormal protein metabolism in people with chronic hepatitis or hepatic cirrhosis. Evidence comes from an in vivo study in which 5% dong quai was added to the daily diet of rats, resulting in enhanced metabolism, increased hepatic oxygen utilisation, and increased glutamic acid and cysteine oxidation (Micromedex 2003). Dong quai has been found to have antioxidant activity (Wu et al 2004), as well as antiproliferative and pro-apoptotic activities in hepatic stellate cells in vitro, suggesting a potential antifibrotic action (Chor et al 2005).
**CARDIAC PROTECTION**

Dong quai is reported to have a quinidine-like action, prolonging the cardiac refractory period and correcting atrial fibrillation (Fetrow & Avila 1999). An in vitro study of dong quai in conjunction with Astragalus membranaceus demonstrated protection against myocardial ischaemia-reperfusion injury (Yim et al 2000), while in vivo studies report prevention of atherosclerosis, dilation of coronary vessels and increased coronary blood flow (Mills & Bone 2000). A combined extract of dong quai and Ligusticum chuanxiong has been found to inhibit vascular smooth muscle cell proliferation in vitro (Hou et al 2005).

**ANTICOAGULANT AND ANTIPLATELET EFFECTS**

Dong quai has been shown to have potent anticoagulant effects, as well as haemostatic effect related to promoting platelet aggregation (Yang T et al 2002). In a controlled trial an IV preparation of dong quai was found to prolong prothrombin times significantly more than IV dextran in a group of 96 patients admitted with ischaemic stroke (Micromedex 2003). Dong quai has also been shown to significantly inhibit platelet activation, relieve vascular endothelial cell injury, and improve microcirculation in patients with ulcerative colitis (Dong et al 2004). Ferulic acid, found in dong quai, has been reported to inhibit the aggregation of platelets in blood and retard platelet release of serotonin and adenosine diphosphate. Angelica sinensis has a lower coumarin content than other Angelica species.

**ANTICARCINOGENIC**

Polysaccharides from dong quai have been shown to possess antitumour effects in experimental in vivo tumour models and inhibitory effects on invasion and metastasis of in vitro hepatocellular carcinoma cells (Shang et al 2003). An acetone extract of dong quai was found to inhibit proliferation of human cancer cells in vitro via induction of cell cycle arrest and apoptosis (Cheng et al 2004). There is evidence to suggest that a chloroform extract of dong quai suppresses growth of malignant brain tumour cells in vitro, as well as suppressing growths of malignant brain tumours of rat and human origin and shrinking the volumes of in situ glioblastoma multiforme, significantly prolonging survivals in vivo (Tsai et al 2005).

**NEUROPROTECTION**

Dong quai has been found to be effective in treating acute cerebral infarction. In a case series of 1404 patients with acute cerebral infarction, of whom 692 were treated with dong quai injection, 390 with compound salvia and 322 with low-molecular dextran injection, the group treated with dong quai were found to have significantly
better neurological function and a larger reduction of infarcted area than the other groups (Liu Y-M et al 2004).

Bak Foong Pills, a combination Chinese herbal formula that contains dong quai and other herbs such as Panax ginseng and Glycyrrhiza uralensis, have been found to have a neuroprotective action, suggesting these herbs may have a use in the treatment of neurodegenerative diseases, such as Parkinson’s disease (Jia et al 2005, Rui et al 2005). A multi-herbal formula (Guibi-tang) containing dong quai has also been shown to improve learning and memory, and to increase the proliferation of hippocampal cells in rats (Oh et al 2005). An aqueous extract of three herbs, including dong quai, has been found to have a neuroprotective action and improve cognitive function in an animal model of vascular dementia (Lin et al 2005) and a multi-herbal combination (Danggui-Shaoyao-san) has been found to improve memory and modulate monoamine neurotransmitter metabolism suggesting a possible use for treating senile dementia and Alzheimer’s disease (Kou et al 2005).

**GASTROPROTECTION**

Polysaccharides derived from dong quai have been found to have a protective effect on colon injury in acetic acid-induced rat colitis, through promotion of growth factors, decreasing oxygen free radicals and some anti-inflammatory effects (Liu et al 2004), as well as relieving the inflammation reaction and colon injury in immunological colitis in rats (Liu et al 2003a,b). A polysaccharide containing extract of dong quai was also shown to promote migration and proliferation of normal gastric epithelial cells and enhance gastric ulcer healing in animal models (Ye et al 2003).

**OTHER ACTIONS**

A preparation containing polysaccharides extracted from dong quai has been shown to have a radioprotective effect in mice (Mei 1988, Sun et al 2005), as well as an analgesic action in rats (Yue et al 2002).

An in vivo study has shown that dong quai in conjunction with astragalus reduced the deterioration of renal function and histologic damage in an animal model of nephrotic syndrome (Wang et al 2004). Dong quai has also been found to alleviate bleomycin-induced pulmonary fibrosis in rats (Chai et al 2003).

Dong quai promotes melanocytic proliferation, melanin synthesis and tyrosinase activity, suggesting a use in the treatment of skin pigmentation (Deng & Yang 2003).

An aqueous extract of dong quai has also been found to directly stimulate the proliferation and activity of human osteoprecursor cells in a dose-dependent manner in vitro (Yang et al 2002).
The essential oil of dong quai has been found to have an anxiolytic action similar to diazepam in a mouse model of anxiety (Chen et al 2004).

Various other in vitro and in vivo studies provide some evidence for antispasmodic, anti-allergic and anti-anaemic effects (Micromedex 2003).

**CLINICAL USE**

**GYNAECOLOGICAL USE**

Orally, dong quai has been traditionally used in combination with other herbs for gynaecological ailments including menstrual cramps, irregularity, retarded flow, weakness during the menstrual period, and symptoms of menopause (Fisher & Painter 1996). Very little clinical research has been conducted to determine its effectiveness as sole treatment in these indications.

In a 12-week randomised, placebo-controlled trial in 55 postmenopausal women, a combination of dong quai and chamomile was found to significantly reduce hot flushes and improve sleep disturbances and fatigue. Another double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled clinical trial of 71 women using dong quai as a single agent (4.5 g/day) found no differences between groups in the number of vasomotor flushes, endometrial thickness, or vaginal cells over a 24-week period (Hirata et al 1997).

It is suggested that dong quai may have some efficacy for premenstrual syndrome when used in traditional Chinese multi-herbal formulas (Hardy 2000), and an uncontrolled trial has suggested the possible benefit of uterine irrigation with dong quai extract for infertility due to tubal occlusion (Hardy 2000).

**OTHER USES**

In TCM, dong quai is used to strengthen the heart, lung and liver meridians and harmonise the blood. It is used to regulate menstruation, treat amenorrhoea, dysmenorrhoea, headache, constipation, abdominal pain and palpitations.

Traditionally, dong quai is considered a ‘hot’ herb and is not used in conditions associated with ‘heat’, according to these prescribing systems.

**DOSAGE RANGE**

- Decoction of dried root: 4.5–9 g/day.
- Liquid extract (1:2): 4.5–8.5 mL/day.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**

Furanocoumarins, such as bergapten and psoralen, which are in dong quai have been widely studied for their phototoxicity; however, only *Angelica gigas* (Korean angelica) has been demonstrated to cause photodermatitis.
Safrole, found in the volatile oil, is a potential carcinogen; however, no specific cases of carcinogenesis have been reported (Micromedex 2003).

High doses of dong quai volatile oil have been reported to cause nephrosis in rats but there are no reports in humans (Zhu 1987).

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**

**WARFARIN**

Case reports suggest the elevations in prothrombin and INR may occur when dong quai is used with warfarin (Heck et al 2000, Page & Lawrence 1999) — use caution if used concurrently with warfarin.

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**

Because dong quai may have oestrogenic effects, women with hormone-sensitive tumours, endometriosis and uterine fibroids should avoid using dong quai.

Traditional contraindications include diarrhoea due to weak digestion, haemorrhagic disease, heavy periods, first trimester of pregnancy, and acute infection such as colds or flu (Zhu 1987).

**PREGNANCY USE**

Dong quai may stimulate uterine contractions and is therefore contraindicated in pregnancy (Mills & Bone 2000).

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**

- Dong quai is a popular Chinese medicine used widely to relieve menopausal symptoms; however, controlled trials in humans are lacking. In practice, dong quai is prescribed together with other herbs and may be effective when used in this way.
- Evidence of oestrogenic activity is contradictory.
- Care is required in people using drugs that affect blood clotting.
- Dong quai is generally safe when used appropriately.

**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

What will this herb do for me?

Dong quai has a long history of use as a women’s tonic. Although conclusive evidence is lacking, dong quai is used in conjunction with other herbs to assist in menopausal and menstrual complaints, and may be effective when used in this way.

When will it start to work?

It is difficult to predict from the available scientific research.
Are there any safety issues?
Dong quai appears to be relatively safe but care should be taken in people using drugs that affect blood clotting or in pregnancy and conditions that are hormone sensitive.

REFERENCES


Echinacea

Historical note  Echinacea was first used by Native American Sioux Indians centuries ago as a treatment for snakebite, colic, infection and external wounds, among other things. It was introduced into standard medical practice in the USA during the 1800s as a popular anti-infective medication, which was prescribed by eclectic and traditional doctors until the 20th century. Remaining on the national list of official plant drugs in the USA until the 1940s, it was produced by pharmaceutical companies during this period. With the arrival of antibiotics, echinacea fell out of favour and was no longer considered a ‘real’ medicine for infection. Its use has re-emerged, probably because we are now in a better position to understand the limitations of antibiotic therapy and because there is growing public interest in self-care. The dozens of clinical trials conducted overseas have also played a role in its renaissance.

COMMON NAME
Echinacea

OTHER NAMES
E. angustifolia — American coneflower, black sampson, black susans, coneflower, echinaceawurzel, Indian head, kansas snakeroot, purple coneflower, purpursonnenhutkraut, racine d’echinacea, Rudbeckia angustifolia L., scurvy root, snakeroot
E. purpurea — Brauneria purpurea (L.) Britt., combflower, purple cone flower, red sunflower
Rudbeckia purpurea L. — E. pallida, Brauneria pallida (Nutt.) Britt., pale coneflower, Rudbeckia pallida Nutt.

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Echinacea species (family Asteraceae [Compositae])

The name ‘echinacea’ generally refers to several different plants within the genus — E. purpurea, E. pallida and E. angustifolia.

PLANT PARTS USED
Root, leaf and aerial parts
CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
The most important constituents in regard to pharmacological activity are the polysaccharides, caffeic acid derivatives, alkylamides, essential oils and polyacetylenes, although there are other potentially active constituents, as well as a range of vitamins, minerals, fatty acids, resins, glycoproteins and sterols (Pizzorno & Murray 2006). Constituent concentrations vary depending on the species, plant part and growing conditions. In regards to the final chemical composition of an Echinacea-containing product, the drying and extraction processes further alter chemical composition.

MAIN ACTIONS
Due to the wide assortment of chemical constituents found in Echinacea, it has varied pharmacological effects.

IMMUNOSTIMULANT AND IMMUNOMODULATOR
The immunostimulant activity of echinacea has been the subject of countless studies. Overall, the fresh-pressed leaf juice of E. purpurea and alcoholic extracts of the roots of E. pallida, E. angustifolia and E. purpurea have been shown to act mainly on non-specific cellular immunity (Blumenthal et al 2000). Macrophage activation has been well demonstrated, as has stimulation of phagocytosis (Barrett 2003, Bauer et al 1988). Orally administered root extracts of echinacea have produced stronger effects on phagocytosis than aerial parts, with E. purpurea roots producing the greatest effect, followed by that of E. angustifolia and E. pallida (Pizzorno & Murray 2006).

Activation of polymorphonuclear leukocytes and NK cells has been reported and increased numbers of T-cell and B-cell leukocytes. Research in human subjects has produced conflicting results, with some studies showing that echinacea stimulates non-specific immunity and others showing no significant effect (Roesler et al 1991, Schwarz et al 2002).

It is currently believed that no one single constituent is responsible for the herb’s immunomodulating action, with the most important elements being polysaccharides, glycoproteins, alkamides and flavonoids (Ernst 2002).

ANTI-INFLAMMATORY
Recent research has further identified that alkamides from echinacea modulate TNF-alpha mRNA expression in human monocytes/macrophages via the cannabinoid type 2 (CB2) receptor (Raduner et al 2006). Two alkamides that bind to the CB2 receptor more strongly than the endogenous cannabinoids have been identified. They also bind to CB1. Alkamides also potently inhibit lipopolysaccharide-induced inflammation in human whole blood and exert modulatory effects on cytokine expression in vitro. Cytokine modulation was also observed for two different echinacea extracts in a study using cytokine antibody arrays to investigate the changes in the proinflammatory cytokines and chemokines released from a cultured line of human bronchial epithelial cells exposed to rhinovirus 14 (Sharma et al 2006). Virus infection stimulated the release of at least 31 cytokine-related molecules, an effect that was reversed by simultaneous exposure to either of the two echinacea extracts, although the patterns of response were different for the two extracts.

**ANTIVIRAL**

Extracts of eight taxa of the genus *Echinacea* were found to have antiviral activity against HSV-1 in vitro when exposed to visible and UVA light (Binns et al 2002).

**ANTIFUNGAL ACTIVITY**

Hexane extracts of echinacea have phototoxic antimicrobial activity against fungi (Binns et al 2000). The extracts inhibited growth of yeast strains of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, *Candida shehata*, *C. kefyr*, *C. albicans*, *C. steatulytica* and *C. tropicalis*.

**OTHER ACTIONS**

**ANTIOXIDANT**

Free radical scavenging activity can be attributed to numerous antioxidant constituents found in echinacea, such as vitamin C, beta carotene, flavonoids, selenium and zinc. Herbalists consider it also to have lymphatic, blood cleansing and wound healing actions.

**ANAESTHETIC**

The alkylamides exert a mild anaesthetic activity, which is typically experienced as a tingling sensation on the tongue (Pizzorno & Murray 2006).

**APOPTOSIS**

Apoptosis, or programmed cell death, is a physiological, active cellular suicide process that can be modulated by various stimuli, including hormones, cytokines, growth factors, and some chemotherapeutic agents. According to one study, *E. purpurea* was able to regulate the process of apoptosis in vivo (Di Carlo et al 2003).
**CYTOCHROMES**
Contradictory results have been obtained by two research groups testing the effects of echinacea on cytochrome P (CYP) activity in human volunteers. One study found that echinacea had no significant effect on CYP1A2, CYP2D6, CYP2E1 or CYP3A4 activity (Gurley et al 2004), whereas the other identified a significant effect on CYP3A and CYP1A2 (Gorski et al 2004).

**CHEMOPREVENTION**
Several experimental studies with mice have found that treatment with echinacea reduces the incidence of tumour development (Brousseau & Miller 2005, Hayashi et al 2001, Miller 2005). Most research has been conducted with *E. purpurea*.

**CLINICAL USE**
Clinical trials using echinacea have used various preparations, such as topical applications, homeopathic preparations, injectable forms and oral dose forms, characteristics that should be noted when reviewing the data available. Overall, the majority of clinical studies performed in Europe have involved a commercial product known as Echinacin (Madaus, Germany), which contains the fresh-pressed leaf juice of *E. purpurea* stabilised in ethanol.

**UPPER RESPIRATORY TRACT INFECTIONS**
Overall, clinical studies support the use of echinacea in URTIs, such as bacterial sinusitis, common cold, influenza-like viral infections and streptococcal throat. Evidence is strongest for use of echinacea in adults as an acute treatment; however, results in children have been disappointing.

A 1999 review of 13 clinical trials consisting of 9 treatment studies and 4 prevention studies concluded that 8 of 9 treatment trials produced positive results whereas 3 of 4 prevention trials suggested modest effects (Barrett et al 1999). In other words, current evidence is stronger for supporting the use of echinacea as acute treatment in URTIs than as prophylactic treatment. In 2000, a Cochrane review was published that had assessed the evidence available from 16 clinical trials (8 treatment and 8 prevention) involving a total of 3396 subjects (Melchart et al 2000), and it concluded that some echinacea preparations may be better than placebo, with a majority of studies reporting favourable effects. Unfortunately, due to variations in the type of echinacea preparations tested, it is still difficult to confidently determine which one is superior.

Since 2000, numerous other randomised double-blind studies have been published, with varied results.
Adult studies  Schulten et al (2001) recruited 80 adults experiencing the first signs of a cold and randomly assigned treatment with *E. purpurea* (Echinacin, EC3110) or placebo. The results revealed that treatment with echinacea shortened the duration of illness by 3 days compared with placebo and was well tolerated. Barrett et al (2002) used a very different echinacea product, an encapsulated mixture of unrefined *E. purpurea* herb (25%) and root (25%) and *E. angustifolia* root (50%). One hundred and forty-eight students with recent-onset colds took either placebo or echinacea capsules in 1 g doses six times on the first day, then three times on each subsequent day for a maximum of 10 days. The results did not produce a statistically significant treatment effect. No significant effects on total cold symptom scores, mean individual symptoms or time to resolution of symptoms were observed in a double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of 128 subjects conducted by Yale and Liu (2004) using a standardised preparation of *E. purpurea* (freeze-dried pressed juice of the aerial portion). Subjects were enrolled within 24 hours of cold symptom onset and given 100 mg three times daily of active treatment or placebo. In contrast, a double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of 282 adults, which used a highly standardised formulation of freshly harvested *E. purpurea*, found that it significantly reduced the total daily symptom scores by 23% compared to placebo (Goel et al 2004). That study used *E. purpurea* containing alkamides, cichoric acid, and polysaccharides at concentrations of 0.25, 2.5, and 25 mg/mL, respectively and commercially available as Echinilin (Natural Factors Nutritional Products, Inc., Vancouver, BC, Canada). Subjects were instructed to start treatment at the onset of the first symptom related to a cold, consuming 10 doses the first day and 4 doses per day on subsequent days for 7 days.

A crucial factor in the investigation of any cold treatment is the time of treatment initiation. For best effects, treatment must be commenced at the first signs of infection, because later use is less likely to induce benefits (Schoop et al 2006). With regard to echinacea research, the time of initiation has varied between studies and is one possible explanation for the contradictory results obtained. Variations in the product’s chemical composition, the clinical setting and study populations are further confounding variables. Between 2000 and 2005, three studies have used artificial rhinovirus inoculation as a means of standardising ‘time to treatment initiation’, together with standardised echinacea extracts (Sperber et al 2004, Turner et al 2000, 2005). The two earlier studies used *E. purpurea*, whereas the most recent one used two different concentrations of an alcoholic extract of *E. angustifolia*. According to these studies, echinacea inhibited the onset and severity of symptoms; however, this was not significantly superior to placebo.
In response to these negative findings, Schoop et al (2006) conducted a meta-analysis to determine whether the results were a consequence of inadequate efficacy or inadequate sample size. Based on the analysis, the likelihood of experiencing a clinical cold was 55% higher with placebo than with echinacea treatment; however, there was no significant difference between groups for total symptom scores.

A recently published Cochrane systematic review analysed results from 16 randomised, double-blind studies (Linde et al 2006), only 5 of which had been included in a previous Cochrane review. Studies that investigated the effectiveness of combination echinacea products or E. purpurea preparations compared to placebo in the prevention of experimentally induced rhinovirus infections were not included. The authors concluded that overall assessment was difficult to make because of the great heterogeneity of preparations tested and variability of trial approaches and methods for cold assessment. Even so, they concluded that there is some evidence that preparations based on the aerial parts of E. purpurea might be effective for the early treatment of colds in adults, although results are not completely consistent. Beneficial effects of other echinacea preparations, and their use for preventative purposes, might exist, but have not been shown in independently replicated, rigorous randomised trials.

It is hoped that future research will include full disclosure of the chemical analysis of the echinacea preparation being tested. Systematic reviews will then be able to use this information to separately assess the effects of each echinacea species, rather than combining them under the umbrella term of ‘Echinacea’.

**Paediatric studies** Four randomised studies published after 2000 were conducted with children and generally produced disappointing results (Cohen et al 2004, Spasov et al 2004, Taylor et al 2003, Weber et al 2005). Taylor et al (2003) studied the effects of E. purpurea (dried pressed juice of the aerial portions) mixed into a syrup in healthy children aged 2–11-years-old who were advised to start treatment at the onset of cold symptoms and continue for a maximum of 10 days or until symptoms resolved. Treatment with E. purpurea failed to reduce the duration of the URTI or severity of symptoms compared with placebo. There was no difference in the rate of adverse events reported by both groups, although rash occurred in 7.1% of children using echinacea compared with 2.7% with placebo. Spasov et al (2004) compared the effects of E. purpurea extract to placebo and a herbal combination treatment (Kan Jang) in 130 children aged between 4 and 11 years over a period of 10 days. They found that treatment with Kan Jang was more effective than echinacea for reducing symptom severity and reducing symptom duration when started at the early stage of uncomplicated common colds. In contrast, E. purpurea appeared to reduce the

A combination product was investigated in the study by Cohen et al (2004), which involved 430 children aged 1–5 years. The preparation (Chizukit, Hadas Corp., Israel) contained 50 mg/mL of echinacea (aerial parts of E. purpurea and roots of E. angustifolia), 50 mg/mL of propolis and 10 mg/mL of vitamin C and was administered twice daily for 12 weeks. Active treatment resulted in a significant reduction in illness episodes (55% reduction), number of episodes per child (50% reduction) and number of days with fever per child (2.1 vs 5.4; 62% reduction). The total number of illness days and duration of individual episodes were also significantly lower in the treatment group.

Commission E approves the use of E. purpurea herb as an immune system support in cases of respiratory and lower urinary tract infection, and E. pallida root as supportive treatment in influenza-like infections (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**Clinical note — Common cold symptoms: what is usual?**
The pathogenesis of the common cold involves a complex interplay between replicating viruses and the host’s inflammatory response (Heikkinen & Jarvinen 2003). The onset of cold symptoms after viral incubation varies considerably and depends on the causative virus. In experimental rhinovirus infections, the onset of symptoms has been reported to occur as soon as 10–12 hours after intranasal inoculation. Generally, the severity of the symptoms increases rapidly, peaks within 2–3 days after infection, and decreases soon after. The mean duration of the common cold is 7–10 days, but in a proportion of patients some symptoms can still be present after 3 weeks. Symptoms typically start with a sore throat, which is soon accompanied by nasal stuffiness and discharge, sneezing and cough. The soreness of the throat usually disappears quickly, whereas the initial watery rhinorrhoea becomes thicker and more purulent over time and can be accompanied by fever, most usually in children. Other symptoms associated with the cold syndrome include hoarseness, headache, malaise and lethargy.

**WOUND HEALING**
Several uncontrolled clinical studies support the topical use of echinacea to enhance wound healing. A trial involving 4598 people investigated the effects of a preparation consisting of the juice of the aerial parts of E. purpurea on various wounds, burns, skin infections and inflammatory skin conditions (Kinkel et al 1984). Topical application of echinacea produced a 85% overall success rate, and the key constituent
responsible for enhancing wound healing appears to be echinacoside (Speroni et al 2002).

Commission E approves the external use of *E. purpurea* herb for poorly healing wounds and chronic ulcerations (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**HERPES INFECTION**

Based on the herb’s antiviral activity against HSV-1 in vitro, it is also used in the treatment of herpes infections.

**Genital herpes**  A prospective, double-blind, placebo-controlled crossover trial conducted over 1 year investigated the effects of an extract of the plant and root of *E. purpurea* (Echinaforce 800 mg twice daily) on the incidence and severity of genital herpes outbreaks in 50 patients (Vonau et al 2001). The study found no statistically significant benefit compared with placebo after 6 months of therapy.

**REDUCING CHEMOTHERAPY SIDE-EFFECTS**

Results from a small, open, prospective study of subjects with advanced gastric cancer suggests that intravenous administration of a polysaccharide fraction isolated from *E. purpurea* may be effective in reducing chemotherapy-induced leucopenia (Melchart et al 2002). Test subjects had advanced gastric cancer and were undergoing palliative chemotherapy with etoposide, leucovorin and 5-fluorouracil. The median number of leukocytes 14–16 days after chemotherapy was 3630/microL (range 1470–5770) in the patients receiving herbal treatment compared with 2370/microL (870–3950) in the patients of the historical control group (*P* = 0.015).

**RADIATION-ASSOCIATED LEUCOPENIA**

Equivocal evidence exists for the use of echinacea in radiation-induced leucopenia, according to a small number of randomised studies (Ulbricht & Basch 2006). The product tested was Esberitox, which contains ethanolic extracts of three herbs, including root of echinacea.

**RECURRENT CANDIDIASIS**

The herb is used to treat recurrent candidiasis, chiefly because of its antifungal and immunostimulant properties. Controlled studies are unavailable to determine effectiveness in this condition.

**OTHER USES**

Echinacea has also been used to treat UTI, allergies, acne and abscesses, and as adjunctive therapy in cancer (Mills & Bone 2000). It has also been used to prevent exercise-induced immunosuppression (Gleeson et al 2001). In practice, it is prescribed with other herbs to treat common infections and to prevent infections generally.
**DOSAGE RANGE**

**GENERAL GUIDE**
- Dried herb: 3 g/day of either *E. angustifolia* or *E. purpurea*.
- Liquid extract (1:2): 3–6 mL/day of either *E. angustifolia* or *E. purpurea*. This dose may be increased to 10–20 mL/day in acute conditions. Treatment is usually started at the first sign of URTI and continued for 7–14 days.

**SPECIFIC GUIDE**
- *E. angustifolia* dried root: 1–3 g/day.
- *E. purpurea* dried root: 1.5–4.5 g/day.
- *E. purpurea* dried aerial parts: 2.5–6.0 g/day.
- *E. purpurea* expressed juice of fresh plant: 6–9 mL/day.
- *E. pallida* ethanolic extract of root: 2–4 mL/day.

Although controversy still exists over which part of the plant and which particular plant has the strongest pharmacological activity, it appears that the cold-pressed juice of *E. purpurea* is the most studied preparation for URTIs.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
Oral dose forms and topical preparations tend to be well tolerated, although allergic reactions are possible in rare cases (mainly to the aerial parts, in contact dermatitis). One study using *E. purpurea* in children found that rash occurred in 7.1% of children using echinacea compared with 2.7% with placebo (Taylor et al 2003).

There is no clear evidence from basic science or human studies to show that echinacea causes liver toxicity (Ulbricht & Basch 2006).

---

**Clinical note — Safety of echinacea**
The safety of echinacea has come into question in recent years due to two different articles that were poorly described in the press. One was a case report of suspected anaphylaxis reported in the *Medical Journal of Australia* (Mullins 1998). On closer inspection, the article describes an atopic woman who had taken nearly a dozen supplements at once, as well as double the recommended dose of a liquid echinacea product, before experiencing symptoms suggestive of anaphylaxis.

Successful treatment consisted of oral promethazine and no other intervention. After the event, hypersensitivity was confirmed by skin prick and RAST testing, suggesting that an allergic response did occur.

In 2002, a second report described in detail five allergic reactions to different echinacea preparations and further stated that 51 adverse reaction reports involving echinacea had been made to ADRAC (Mullins & Hedde 2002). Unfortunately, this time the media omitted the important fact that these cases were reported over a
21-year period. Once again, a closer look at the article finds approximately half of those reports were of suspected allergic responses and of those, only two could certainly be linked to echinacea use, with 10 classified as probable and 12 as possible. Considering an estimated 200 million doses of echinacea are used by Australians each year, the relative lack of adverse reports is impressive.

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**
Controlled studies are not available; therefore, interactions are based on evidence of activity and are largely theoretical and speculative.

**IMMUNOSUPPRESSION AGENTS**
Theoretically, there may be an antagonistic pharmacodynamic interaction with immunosuppressive medication, but the clinical relevance is unclear. Exercise caution when using immunosuppressive agents and echinacea concurrently.

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**
Contraindicated in people with allergies to the Compositae family of plants (e.g. chamomile, ragweed).

Commission E warns against using echinacea in cases of autoimmune disorders, such as multiple sclerosis, SLE and RA, as well as tuberculosis or leukocytosis (Blumenthal et al 2000). This is based on theoretical considerations and has not been tested in controlled trials. In practice, echinacea has been successfully used by herbalists in autoimmune disease without mishap (Mills & Bone 2005).

**Duration of use** Based on evidence that parenterally administered echinacea reversibly depresses immune parameters, Commission E has recommended that echinacea should not be used for more than 8 weeks. However, in a study in which it was taken orally for up to 6 months, no changes in immune parameters were detected (Vonau et al 2001). As such, no conclusive evidence demonstrates that long-term use is detrimental.

**PREGNANCY USE**
Although safety in pregnancy has not been categorically established, results from a prospective study of 206 women who had inadvertently taken echinacea during their pregnancy found that gestational use is not associated with an increased risk for major malformations (Gallo et al 2000). Oral use of echinacea is considered safe in pregnancy when used in recommended doses (Mills & Bone 2005).

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**
- Different types of echinacea have demonstrated immunostimulant, anti-inflammatory, antifungal, antiviral and antioxidant activity.
• Overall, clinical studies support the use of echinacea in URTIs, such as bacterial sinusitis, common cold, influenza-like viral infections and streptococcal throat. Current evidence is strongest for supporting its use as acute treatment in URTIs rather than as prophylactic treatment.
• Several uncontrolled clinical studies support the topical use of echinacea to enhance wound healing.
• Echinacea is also used to treat UTI, allergies, acne and abscesses, as adjunctive therapy in cancer, herpes virus infections and candidiasis.
• Although controversy still exists over which part of the plant and which particular plant has the strongest pharmacological activity, it appears that the cold-pressed juice of *E. purpurea* is the most studied preparation for URTIs.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

**What will this herb do for me?**
Echinacea stimulates immune function and may also have antifungal, antiviral and anti-inflammatory activity. Scientific research generally supports its use as an acute treatment for URTIs in adults. Applied to the skin, it may also enhance wound healing and be useful for chronic wounds. It also has anti-inflammatory actions.

**When will it start to work?**
As an acute treatment for URTI, it has effects within the first week of treatment.

**Are there any safety issues?**
Echinacea is well tolerated, although allergic reactions are the first possible in rare cases.

REFERENCES

© 2007 Elsevier Australia


Eucalyptus

Historical note  Indigenous Australians traditionally used eucalyptus to treat fevers and respiratory infections, accounting for its name ‘fevertree’. European settlers also recognised the medicinal qualities of eucalyptus and surgeon Considen is credited with producing the first essential oil sample in 1788. Bosisto investigated oils from several Australian plants and in 1854 eventually produced essential oils commercially in association with Müeller, a pharmacist. Bosisto and Müeller concentrated on oils rich in 1,8-cineole, which includes Eucalyptus species. In the late 1800s, articles about its medicinal use appeared in medical journals such as The Lancet, focusing on its potential in scarlet fever and diphtheria.

COMMON NAME
Eucalyptus

OTHER NAMES
Aetheroleum Eucalypti, cineole, Oleum Eucalypti, Essence of eucalyptus rectifiee
Common names include Australian fever tree leaf, blue gum, eucalyptol, fever tree, gum tree, red gum, stringy bark tree

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Eucalyptus species (family Myrtaceae)
The species most commonly used in health care are:
- Eucalyptus globulus (blue gum)
- Eucalyptus citriodora (lemon scented gum)
- Eucalyptus dives (broad leaf peppermint)
- Eucalyptus polybractea

There are over 500 species of eucalyptus trees and shrubs native to Australia, but many species are cultivated in other parts of the world.

PLANT PARTS USED
The essential oil is extracted by steam distillation from fresh twigs and leaves. Modern eucalyptus essential oils are primarily extracted from E. polybractea, E. dives, E. leucoxylon, E. sideroxylon, and E. radiata in Australia, but other species are used in other countries (Lassak & McCarthy 2001).
CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
The major chemical constituents under the general heading ‘eucalyptus’ consist of oxides and hydroterpenes, primarily 1,8-cineole, which is the most significant constituent and ranges from 54–95%, citronellal camphone, fenchone, limonene, phellandrene and pinene depending on the species (Clarke 2002).

The exact chemical composition of an oil depends on the particular species from which it was extracted. There are small amounts of alpha-pinene (2.6%), alpha-cymene (2.7%), aromadendrene, ciminaldehyde, globulol and pinocarveol and d-limonene, alpha-phellandrene, camphene and alpha-terpinene (Bisset 1994, Bruneton 1995).

MAIN ACTIONS
The main reported actions are expectorant, antitussive (Misawa & Kizawa 1990), nasal decongestant (Burrows 1983, FDA 1994), analgesic (Gobel 1995) and antispasmodic in animal and human studies. Antimicrobial and anti-inflammatory activity has also been reported in animal and human studies.

ANTITUSSIVE
Antitussive effects were compared with codeine in guinea pigs in which cough was mechanically stimulated. Essential oil 5% in normal saline was administered by inhalation and had a significant antitussive effect relative to codeine (*P < 0.05*) (Misawa & Kizawa 1990).

NASAL DECONGESTANT
Two clinical studies have demonstrated that inhalation of eucalyptus oil reduces nasal congestion (Burrows 1983, FDA 1994), and one study showed topical application to the forehead and temples was ineffective (Gobel 1995).

ANTIMICROBIAL
Previous studies indicate eucalyptus has antimicrobial activity in vitro against *Pseudomonas aeruginosa, Bacillus subtilis, Enterococcus faecalis* and *Escherichia coli* (Kurrerath & Mundulaldo 1954).

ANTI-INFLAMMATORY
Eucalyptus inhibits prostaglandin synthesis in vitro (Wagner 1986) at a concentration of 37 micromol/L. Anti-inflammatory and antinociceptive effects have been demonstrated in animal models (Ulbright & Basch 2005). Alternatively, a study in which 1,8-cineole was injected into the rat hind-paw demonstrated that eucalyptus induced oedema, most likely due to the release of mast cell mediators (Santos & Rao 1997). The clinical implications of this finding for topically applied eucalyptus oil require
further investigation. Anti-inflammatory activity of *E. radiata* has been demonstrated in patients with dry and weeping dermatitis, most probably due to inhibition of inflammatory markers such as TNF-alpha, COX enzymes, 5-lipoxygenase and other leukotrienes, and it could be an alternative to topical steroid medicines (Hadji-Minglou & Bolcato 2005, Santos & Raos 2000).

**OTHER ACTIONS**
Eucalyptus oil is metabolised in the liver; however, evidence is contradictory as to whether it induces the cytochrome P450 enzyme system. One study conducted with an animal model demonstrated a slight increase in CYP4A expression (Ngo et al 2003), whereas 1,8-cineole has demonstrated CYP 450 induction in vitro and animal studies (Ulbricht & Basch 2005).

**CLINICAL USE**
Eucalyptus oil has been investigated in numerous forms; however, there is a lack of controlled, clinical studies.

**RESPIRATORY CONDITIONS**
Eucalyptus oil is used as symptomatic treatment in obstructive respiratory conditions such as bronchitis, asthma, the common cold and other conditions associated with catarrh of the upper respiratory tract. Although it is used internally and externally in Europe for these indications, in Australia the oil is generally used externally in vapourisers, chest rubs and nasal inhalations.

Nasal decongestant properties were assessed in 31 healthy volunteers using inhalations of 10 mL of essential oil for 5 minutes. There was no effect on nasal resistance to air flow, but there was a stimulant effect on the cold receptors in the nose and the majority of subjects reported being able to breathe more easily (FDA 1994). A single-blind, parallel clinical trial (*n* = 234) was conducted to assess whether vapourised essential oil reduced nasal congestion compared with steam. The essential oil was significantly more effective (*P* < 0.02), but only in the first hour after inhalation. Other researchers found no significant differences in nasal decongestion compared with placebo (Burrows 1983). There was no significant difference between placebo and topically applied *E. piperita* to the forehead and temples to treat headache in a randomised, double crossover trial (*n* = 32); however, cognitive performance and muscle and mental relaxation were greater in the essential oil group (Gobel 1995).
AROMATHERAPY
Eucalyptus, as it is traditionally used in aromatherapy, has not been systematically investigated under clinical trial conditions. Therefore, most evidence is derived from traditional sources.

Aromatherapists use eucalyptus for its mentally uplifting and stimulating effects and to aid concentration. It is also used in massage and vapourisers to relieve respiratory symptoms, treat minor skin infections and acne, and relieve headache and muscular aches and pain. Usually eucalyptus oil is included in a blend of 3–5 essential oils for a massage but may be used alone for an inhalation.

OTHER USES
Eucalyptus oil is often included in OTC medicines and other medicines in formulations, such as rubs, mouthwashes, cleansing products, inhalers, soaps and insect repellents in which the 1,8-cineole content is standardised to 80–90%. Bosisto’s Eucalyptus Oil is commonly sold in supermarkets and has an Aust R label (10908). It is not used in aromatherapy and is dispensed in a ribbed poison bottle with a childproof cap.

DUST MITE REMOVAL
Eucalyptus oil can be formulated with a kitchen detergent concentrate to form an inexpensive acaricidal wash that reduces the number of live mites found in blankets during normal machine washing (Tovey & McDonald 1997). When compared with detergent concentrate alone, a 30-minute pre-wash soak of woollen blankets with the eucalyptus oil/detergent formula reduced the number of live mites that could be recovered by 97%. This eliminates the need for very hot water and may maintain low allergen levels in bedding for longer than normal laundering alone because mites are adversely affected by low concentrations of eucalyptus oil vapour, which lingers for 2–3 days. In this study, the dishwashing liquid detergent concentrate (Kit, L&K, Rexona, Sydney, Australia) was used to form an emulsion in water because the essential oil is not soluble in water.

CLEANING AGENT
Washing in diluted eucalyptus oil is also used as a method of removing stains from fabric; however, it does leave a faint characteristic odour for 2–3 days despite rinsing and drying, and some people may find this irritating.

MALODOROUS NECROTIC ULCERS
These ulcers are a major concern for cancer patients and can lead to social isolation and reduced QOL because current treatments inadequately reduce the foul smell to acceptable levels. A paper recently published reported that rinsing the ulcers twice a
day with an antibacterial essential oil mixture (mainly eucalyptus oil) resulted in complete disappearance of odour by day 3 or 4 in all patients \((n = 30)\) (Warnke et al 2006). The eucalyptus was used in combination with a standard course of antibiotics. A number of beneficial secondary findings were anti-inflammatory activity, promotion of healing and complete re-epithelialisation, and emotional relief on resolution of the condition.

**DOSAGE RANGE**

Dose recommendations vary, but generally low doses are used. Internal formulations may take longer to show an effect than conventional medicines.

- **Inhalation:** 12 drops in 150 mL of boiling water or 5 drops in a nebuliser, which delivers approximately 35 mg (unpubl. data: Harris & Harris – Aromatic Medicine: The Interfaces of Absorption, seminar course notes, Melbourne, 2003). High doses are not recommended because they can irritate the eyes and mucus membranes and may trigger an asthma-like attack.
- **Mouth wash:** 20 mL (0.91 mg/mL) solution gargled twice daily.
- **Massage:** traditionally aromatherapists use essential oils as 3.5–5% in a carrier substance but doses between 5% and 20% are used for adults and much lower doses for children and older people.
- **Ointments, creams, gels and poultices:** 5–10% in a carrier substance such as beeswax.
- **Internal use:** 0.3–0.6 mL/day essential oil 1–4 times daily; capsules 100–200 mg; lozenges 0.2–15.0 mg dissolved slowly in the mouth every 30–60 minutes.

Most Australian aromatherapists do not currently administer essential oils via the internal route (oral, vaginal and rectal), but they are administered via these routes in other countries, especially France.

**TOXICITY**

Toxicity symptoms occur rapidly, but may be delayed for hours and include altered conscious state, drowsiness and unconsciousness, which are dose-dependent. Symptoms reported in other studies include epigastric burning, nausea, vomiting, dizziness, muscular weakness, delirium and convulsions.

The acute oral LD\(_{50}\) dose of 1,8-cineole in rats is 2.48 g/kg and the dermal LD\(_{50}\) dose in rabbits is \(>5\) g/kg.

Fatal poisoning has occurred in children after accidental ingestion of whole or diluted eucalyptus oil in amounts ranging from 2 to 10 mL. Tibballs (1995) reported 109 children who were admitted to hospital for eucalyptus oil poisoning in an 11-year period; 27 had been accidentally poisoned when an adult administered the oil.
orally by mistake and most of the remaining 82 children had ingested the oil from a vapouriser. Another review of 41 cases of eucalyptus oil poisoning (Webb & Pitt 1993) indicated that 80% were asymptomatic. There was no relationship between the amount of oil ingested and the presence and severity of symptoms.

The Victorian Poisons Information Centre (see Appendix 3) recommends all patients who ingest $\geq$ 1 mL of eucalyptus oil be assessed in an emergency department. The Centre attributes the toxicity to the cineole, terpene and phellandrene content and indicates that although hydrocyanic acid is only present in small amounts it may be responsible for most of the toxicity.

ADVERSE REACTIONS
Eucalyptus oil is generally safe when used externally in an appropriate manner.

A number of adverse reactions are reported for topical application, including systemic toxicity in a 6-year-old girl, and urticaria, contact dermatitis and skin irritation in other cases (Darben 1988). However, when considering the risks of topical application of eucalyptus oil the state of the skin must be considered as well as the individual’s susceptibility to atopic conditions such as eczema and asthma.

Allergic reactions to lozenges have also been reported anecdotally.

Inhalations may irritate the eyes and mucus membranes.

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
Due to the lack of clinical evidence, interactions are theoretical and speculative.

CNS DEPRESSANTS
Oral ingestion of eucalyptus has been associated with CNS depression, therefore additive effects are theoretically possible — caution.

DRUGS METABOLISED BY CYP 450
Some evidence suggests CYP induction is possible; however, it is not known which CYP enzymes are affected, thus making recommendations difficult. Interactions are unlikely when used topically or inhaled, but could theoretically occur when used internally (Springhouse 2001) — caution.

HYPOGLYCAEMIC AGENTS
If used in combination with oral glucose-lowering conventional or complementary medicines it may contribute to hypoglycaemia (oral doses) — blood glucose levels should be monitored (Springhouse 2001).

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Essential oils are not recommended in the first 3 months of life because the barrier function of the skin is not fully developed. *Eucalyptus globulus* may cause skin allergy

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
in susceptible individuals (those prone to asthma, allergies, and previous reaction to eucalyptus).

Eucalyptus oil should not be administered internally to children or people with inflammatory gastrointestinal tract disease or impaired liver function, or during pregnancy.

Eucalyptus oil should not be applied to the face, especially of infants and young children because of the risk of bronchospasm and irritation.

The oil should be stored out of the reach of children and confused people.

Vapourisers containing eucalyptus essential oils should also be placed out of reach. Poisoning has occurred following ingestion from vapourisers.

Oily carrier fluids should not be used for nasal spays because they inhibit protective nasal ciliary movements and could cause lipid pneumonia.

The essential oil is highly flammable and represents a fire risk when used in candle vapourisers.

**PREGNANCY USE**

No studies have been undertaken. The essential oil is not teratogenic in animal studies, but doses of 500 mg/kg cross the placenta in large enough amounts to stimulate (Jori & Briatico 1973) hepatic activity in rodents. Aromatherapists do not use eucalyptus essential oil during pregnancy, especially in the first trimester.

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**

- Eucalyptus essential oils are steam distilled from a number of *Eucalyptus* species, and have different chemical composition depending on the species. Most contain a large proportion of 1,8-cineole, which appears to be responsible for the action on the respiratory system.
- Eucalyptus is primarily used in aromatherapy as an inhalation to relieve nasal congestion and in massage to relieve muscular aches and pain, as well as in ointments, gels, and compresses, and via a vapouriser for mental stimulation and to aid concentration.
- It is used internally in lozenges, tinctures and conventional medicines.
- When used topically in an appropriate manner, eucalyptus oil is considered safe; however, several cautions exist to reduce the risk of adverse reactions and toxicity. People using eucalyptus essential oil should be monitored for allergies and it should not be applied to the face of children. Eucalyptus should not be used internally unless it is diluted and used in the recommended doses and dose intervals.
• Signs of poisoning usually occur rapidly and include confusion, irritability, respiratory distress, hypotension, nausea and vomiting. If poisoning is suspected medical care should be sought urgently. Do not induce vomiting. Use charcoal and monitor consciousness.
• Several drug interactions are theoretically possible; however, their clinical significance is unknown.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this essential oil do for me?
Eucalyptus essential oil can be used in a vapouriser or on tissues to help clear the nose and make breathing easier in the presence of URTI. It can also increase mental alertness. In a massage blend eucalyptus can help relieve muscular and arthritic pain.

Eucalyptus oil can be added to the washing machine to help kill dust mites in human clothes and animal bedding. Dust mites are responsible for many respiratory conditions, such as asthma.

When will it start to work?
Inhaled eucalyptus oil usually acts quickly and provides symptomatic relief quickly. Oral doses and massage blends usually take longer to have an effect.

Are there any safety issues?
Ingested eucalyptus oil has caused poisoning especially in children and therefore any source of the oil, including vapourisers, should be placed out of reach.

Eucalyptus can irritate the eyes and mucus membranes. It should be kept away from the face, especially of children.

Ingested eucalyptus oil could affect the action of some medicines such as antidepressants, sedatives and anaesthetic agents. It increases absorption of nicotine.

REFERENCES
Evening primrose oil

OTHER NAMES
EPO, primrose oil, butter rose, cow slip, fever plant, huile d’onagre, king’s cure all, mayflower, Our Lady’s key, palsywort, sundrop

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Oenothera biennis (family Onagraceae)

PLANT PART USED
Fixed oil from the seed. A suitable extract must be obtained from cold-pressing rather than heat extraction to avoid damaging the oil.

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Evening primrose oil contains essential fatty acids (EFAs). EFAs are polyunsaturated fatty acids containing two or more double bonds. EPO contains about 70% linoleic acid (LA) and 9% gamma-linolenic acid (GLA) (Horrobin 2000), as well as oleic, palmitic, and stearic acids, campesterol and beta-sitosterol. Due to the position of its double bonds EPO is classified as an omega-6 (n-6) fatty acid.

Borage seeds (18–26%) and blackcurrant oil (15–20%) also contain high amounts of GLA; however, research suggests that they are not necessarily any more potent on a gram-for-gram basis and it has been postulated that this is possibly due to other biologically active components of EPO or the minor stereodimensional differences in the GLA contained within the different oils (Fan & Chapkin 1992)

MAIN ACTIONS
The two main actions of EFAs are related to their roles in the structures of membranes and in the synthesis of a wide variety of derivatives that regulate numerous aspects of cellular activity. In regard to EPO, its main actions relate to its EFA content, GLA in particular.

ANTI-INFLAMMATORY
Although GLA is a theoretical precursor for arachidonic acid (AA) and as such could also generate pro-inflammatory eicosanoids, such as the 2-series PGs, 4-series leukotrienes and platelet activating factor, the evidence to date suggests that GLA can encourage uptake of dihomo-GLA (DGLA) into cell membranes and this in turn inhibits the synthesis of AA metabolites. In addition to this, the direct metabolites of DGLA include PGE₁, which has been shown to inhibit inflammation, regulate immunity, cause vasodilation and reduce blood pressure, improve flexibility of red
blood cell membranes, induce insulin receptors and inhibit platelet aggregation and thrombosis (Horrobin 1990). Consequently the net effect of this omega-6 oil is anti-inflammatory, which distinguishes it clearly from other non-GLA n-6 oils (Fan & Chapkin 1998).

GLA and DGLA have been shown to reduce inflammation and excessive immune reactivity in experimental models of arthritis, autoimmune disease, allergic and chronic inflammatory disorders (Godfrey et al 1986, Kunkel et al 1981a, b, Mertin 1984, Tate et al 1988).

**Dermatological effects** The anti-inflammatory effect of EPO has been most extensively studied in relation to skin disorders. In addition, n-6 fatty acids are involved in maintaining the integrity of the water impermeability barrier of the skin. Both LA and GLA, but not other EFAs, seem to be capable of this (Horrobin 1990).

**ANTITHROMBOTIC ACTIVITY**

GLA is metabolised to DGLA, which is a precursor to the 1-series of PGs. Increases in PGE_1_ production results in a cascade of reactions that ultimately inhibit platelet aggregation and cause vasodilation. Additionally, red cell membranes deficient in EFAs become stiffer than normal, resulting in reduced capacity of red cells to flow through the capillaries and, therefore, adequately oxygenate target tissues (Horrobin 1990).

**OTHER ACTIONS**

**Bone metabolism** Oral GLA and eicosapentaenoic (EPA) acid in the ratio 3:1 have been shown to significantly increase intestinal calcium absorption, calcium balance and bone calcium in rats, compared with controls that consumed LA (sunflower oil) and alpha-LA (linseed oil) acids (3:1) or a commercially available rat chow (Claassen et al 1995).

**Hypotensive effects** Vegetable oils, including sunflower oil, linseed oil and EPO, have been shown to enhance the effects of several antihypertensive drugs, including dihydralazine, clonidine and captopril in rats under experimental conditions (Hoffmann et al 1984).

A study examining the effects of salt-loading on blood pressure development in borderline hypertensive rats found that dietary sunflower and fish oils abolished the pressor response, reducing blood pressure below control levels (Mills et al 1989).

**Antidiabetic effects** Several studies have indicated that treatment with EPO can prevent or reverse diabetic neuropathy in animals. The effect does not seem to be mediated by regulating the sorbitol or other polyol levels in peripheral nerves, nor by having any effect on the control of blood sugar. The interval between oral intake of
EPO and its effect in peripheral nerves of rats was studied 35 days after induction of diabetes. EPO did not affect nerve conduction velocity in the first 12 hours of its administration, but significantly increased it 24 hours later. Nerve conduction needed 10 days to stabilise. The latency suggests that neuroactivity of EPO may be mediated by its metabolic products synthesised in the body, and not by constituents of the oil (Julu 1996). In another experiment, diabetic rats not receiving EPO showed highly significant elevations of nerve sorbitol and fructose combined with a depletion of nerve myo-inositol. The rats had increased immunoreactivity and reduced nerve conductivity. Treatment of other diabetic rats with EPO attenuated conduction deficiency and in some cases completely prevented the development of the motor nerve conduction velocity deficit (Tomlinson et al 1989).

Alcohol metabolism Many reports have now confirmed the teratogenic potential of alcohol in humans and in laboratory animals. A characteristic pattern of congenital anomalies is present in infants born to mothers with chronic alcoholism. Chronic consumption of ethanol causes a depletion of EFAs, partly by blocking GLA formation and partly by depleting DGLA. Treatment of pregnant rats with ethanol and EPO (Efamol), a rich source of GLA, led to a significant reduction in the embryopathic activity of ethanol (Varma & Persaud 1982).

Renal effects Evening primrose oil, safflower oil and salmon oil have all shown a favourable effect on progression of renal failure in partially nephrectomised rats compared with controls that were fed beef tallow. The regulation of thrombotic and inflammatory mediators may explain the protective role of these oils (Barcelli et al 1986). Further studies showed that EPO and safflower oil may help prevent diabetic nephropathy (Barcelli et al 1990). Compared with beef tallow the oils appeared to have a clear beneficial effect on proteinuria, glomerular sclerosis and tubular abnormalities in diabetic rats. The effect was mediated via PG and thromboxane metabolism. No significant changes in plasma lipid composition were observed. Fish oils did not have an effect on renal disease, but decreased plasma lipids and inhibited eicosanoid synthesis by platelets and kidney cortex.

Diets containing fish oils, EPO or a combination all lowered plasma triglyceride and total cholesterol levels compared with diets containing beef tallow in experimentally induced nephritic syndrome in rats. However, only the combination of EPO and fish oil (75:25) affected HDL-cholesterol levels. The combination prevented the 10-fold suppression of aortic 6-keto-PGF$_{1\alpha}$ caused by the fish oils. These changes in plasma lipids and eicosanoid production are potentially anti-atherogenic and may prevent glomerular sclerosis. The combination of EPO and fish oils may offer
advantages over either family of fatty acids in nephrotic syndrome (Barcelli et al 1988).

Metabolites of EPA and GLA have been shown to slow or modulate the development of experimentally induced glomerulonephritis in rats (Papanikolaou 1987).

**Antitumour effect** Excess dietary fat has been identified as a risk factor in the development of human breast carcinoma. However, the quality of fat may be more important than the overall quantity. Animals treated with EFAs from EPO and fish oils developed tumours that were significantly smaller than two control groups treated with dietary olive oil or normal laboratory feed (Pritchard et al 1989).

**CLINICAL USE**

Although this review focuses primarily on GLA, evidence now suggests that n-6 fatty acid intake must be considered in relation to concurrent omega-3 (n-3) fatty acid intake to have a more consistent anti-inflammatory effect. As such, many studies are now using combination supplements or dietary changes that alter the ratio of n-3 to n-6 EFAs.

For more information about the n-3:n-6 fatty acid balance, which has implications in cardiovascular disease and cancer, refer to the monograph on Fish oils.

**DEFICIENCY**

Like other essential nutrients, EFAs must be supplied by the diet. Unlike other essential nutrients, however, it has not yet been possible to identify a minimal daily requirement and a minimum daily intake for GLA has not been determined. Besides insufficient intake, secondary deficiency states are also possible due to faulty EFA metabolism.

The first step in EFA metabolism is the desaturation of LA. The reaction requires delta-6-desaturase and other enzymes, and it is the rate-limiting reaction of dietary LA metabolism. A deficiency or significant inhibition of the desaturase enzyme due to other dietary or lifestyle factors could lead to a deficiency of GLA. Excessive consumption of LA could also lead to a relative deficiency of GLA. In any case, direct supplementation with GLA may be clinically beneficial in these situations (Horrobin 1990).

It is now suspected that a number of common conditions, such as dermatitis, may be aggravated by or in part caused by an imbalance between n-3 and n-6 EFAs and relative lack of GLA.
DERMATITIS AND PSORIASIS

Research from the 1930s to the 1950s established that a deficit of n-6 EFAs leads to an inflammatory skin condition in both animals and humans. More recently, it has been established that there is no deficit of LA in atopic eczema. Instead, concentrations of LA tend to be elevated in blood, milk and adipose tissue of patients with atopic eczema, whereas concentrations of LA metabolites are substantially reduced. This suggests reduced conversion of LA to GLA (i.e. delta-6-desaturase) is responsible. In most studies, but not all, administration of GLA has been found to improve the clinically assessed skin condition, the objectively assessed skin roughness, and the elevated blood catecholamine concentrations of patients with atopic eczema. Atopic eczema may be a minor inherited abnormality of EFA metabolism in some cases (Horrobin 2000).

Clinical studies While early results appear promising, including a meta-analysis published in 1998 that found that oral EPO provided significant improvement for patients with atopic eczema (Morse et al 1989), more recent studies appear to have reached an almost unanimous negative conclusion.

Evening primrose oil, as well as its combination with fish oils, taken for 16 weeks failed to improve symptoms of atopic dermatitis compared with placebo in another double-blind study of 102 adults (Berth-Jones & Graham-Brown 1993). Another study (Oliwiecki & Burton 1994) found that a combination of EPO and fish oil was ineffective in the treatment of psoriasis, and another found it also to be ineffective in atopic eczema, apart from a certain subgroup who failed to show increased erythrocyte DGLA levels and for whom adherence to inclusion criteria and the study protocol were questionable (Henz et al 1999).

In 2000 a substantial review was conducted by the NHS Health Technology Assessment Programmes, looking at more than 15 studies involving either EPO or borage oil in the treatment of atopic dermatitis, and it was concluded that the largest and best reported studies showed no convincing effect (Hoare et al 2000). Most recently a randomised, double blind, placebo-controlled parallel group trial of 151 patients treated with high-dose borage oil (920 mg GLA) found in favour of the placebo (Takwale et al 2003).

The effects of EPO supplementation in children with atopic eczema has also been investigated, producing both positive and negative results once again (Bamford et al 1985, Biagi et al 1988, Hederos & Berg 1996, Wright & Burton 1982).

Clinical note — Company interest bias in the evidence? The research into the efficacy of EPO has attracted much criticism from different members of the scientific community. In particular, attention has been paid to the
contrast between early ‘strikingly’ positive findings and the negative conclusions currently being drawn as a result of more in-depth analysis regarding the efficacy of EPO in the treatment of some conditions. While some may justifiably argue that as with all research it is due to the improvement in techniques, design etc. one editorial published in 2003 in the British Medical Journal implies that research funding from the manufacturers, selective inclusion of positive only studies in previous reviews and meta-analyses as well as partial suppression of negative findings has had a part to play (Williams 2003).

**FEMALE REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM DISORDERS**

Without doubt, the most popular use for EPO supplements is conditions relating to the female reproductive system.

**Premenstrual syndrome**  Interest in EPO supplements as a potential treatment for PMS began in the early 1980s, largely as a result of investigational work published by David Horrobin. In the Journal of Reproductive Medicine he reported on positive results obtained in three double-blind placebo-controlled studies and two open trials in women with premenstrual syndrome (Horrobin 1983).

Shortly afterwards, results from a study conducted by Brush et al provided a rationale for considering EPO supplementation for PMS. This study found that levels of LA in the phospholipids of women with PMS were significantly above normal, yet the concentrations of all metabolites were significantly reduced (Brush et al 1984). Based on these findings, researchers suggested that some women with PMS may not be able to adequately convert LA to GLA and as a result, sensitivity to luteal phase prolactin and steroids may be increased. As such, supplementation directly with GLA (found in EPO oil) would bypass the problem and potentially normalise sensitivity and result in reduced symptoms.

For a time, these results stood unquestioned, until in 1990 another double-blind placebo-controlled trial involving 38 women failed to show evidence of efficacy over six cycles (Khoo et al 1990).

A comprehensive review published in 1996 identified seven placebo-controlled trials, although in two the randomisation was not clearly indicated. The two most well controlled studies failed to detect a benefit for EPO supplements; however, as they were small, modest benefits cannot be excluded (Budeiri et al 1996).

Interestingly, in one of these studies the only significant benefit noted by subjects was a mild reduction in breast pain.

**Mastalgia**  An early review on treatments for mastalgia produced by the Cardiff Mastalgia Clinic concluded that danazol was the most effective drug treatment, with...
bromocriptine and EPO having equivalent efficacy. Additionally, they state that patients treated with EPO reported much fewer adverse events than those using danazol or bromocriptine (Gateley et al 1992a). Interestingly, treatment with EPO was found to improve the fatty acid profiles towards normal, although this was not always associated with a clinical response (Gateley et al 1992b).

A more recent 6-month, randomised double-blind trial did not find that EPO, EPA or a combination of the two were significantly better than placebo in reducing the symptoms of mastalgia. Corn oil and corn oil with wheatgerm oil were used as control oils. The decrease in days with pain was 12.3% for EPO and 13.8% for its control oil; the decrease in days with pain was 15.5% for fish oil and 10.6% for its control oil (Blommers et al 2002).

Evening primrose oil has also been assessed for its ability in preventing fibro-adenomas. A small study of 21 patients found that EPO had no significant influence over the natural history of breast fibro-adenomas (Kollas et al 2000). A more recent study has also yielded negative results when compared with topical NSAIDs, with significantly reduced efficacy, more reported adverse effects and ratings of less acceptability by the patients (Quereshi & Sultan 2005).

**Endometriosis** A combination of GLA and EPA is better than placebo in relieving the symptoms of endometriosis according to one placebo-controlled study. Of those in the treatment group, 90% reported relief of symptoms compared with 10% of those in the placebo group (Horrobin 1990).

**Oedema and hypertension during pregnancy** In a partially double-blind, placebo-controlled clinical trial, a combination of EPO, fish oil and magnesium oxide was found to be superior to placebo in lowering the incidence of oedema \((P = 0.004)\) in pregnant women. Significantly fewer women developed hypertension in the group receiving the oils and magnesium oxide. The three cases of eclampsia all occurred in the control group (D’Almeida et al 1992).

**Menopausal hot flushes** According to one randomised, double-blind placebo-controlled study EPO supplementation significantly reduces the maximum number of night-time flushes, although other symptoms failed to respond. The study used a dose of four capsules daily (each containing 500 mg EPO and 10 mg vitamin E) over 6 months (Chenoy et al 1994).

A position statement of the North American Menopause Society (2004) concluded that evidence was lacking to warrant the use of EPO in the treatment of vasomotor symptoms of menopause.
**DIABETES**
The activity of delta-6-desaturase enzyme is compromised in patients with type 1 and type 2 diabetes mellitus, which can decrease the production of PGE₁, therefore possibly contributing to an overall inflammatory excess in these conditions, as demonstrated by increased levels of PGE₂ (Halat & Dennehey 2003).

The first randomised, double-blind placebo-controlled study investigating EPO as a treatment agent in type 1 and type 2 diabetes mellitus involved 22 patients with mild distal diabetic neuropathy. Patients were administered 360 mg/day of GLA or placebo for 6 months. Patients receiving GLA had statistically significant improvements in all measures of nerve function, wrist and ankle heat threshold values, as well as overall symptom scores. As there was no change in HbA₁c in the patients receiving EPO, improvements in symptoms were deemed to be independent of any effect on glucose control.

A subsequent larger, randomised, double-blind placebo-controlled study involved 111 patients with type 1 or 2 diabetes and mild or moderate neuropathy. Patients received either placebo or 480 mg/day of GLA for 1 year. At 1 year, patients who received GLA had a statistically significant increase in 13 of 16 neural function measurements compared with placebo, including a variety of motor conductivity, action potential and sensory tests. Greater benefits were observed in those patients who had glycohaemoglobin values less than 10% at baseline (Jamal & Carmichael 1990).

Currently, there is a need for more conclusive research; however, the evidence to date appears promising for EPO supplementation in mild to moderate neuropathy, even as an adjunct to conventional treatments.

**RHEUMATOID ARTHRITIS**
Evening primrose oil supplementation leads to an elevation of DGLA, which is a competitive inhibitor of pro-inflammatory PGs and leukotrienes, and therefore results in a reduced inflammatory response (Belch & Hill 2000). As such, EPO supplements have been investigated in the management of RA, with both negative and positive results (Belch et al 1988, Brzeski et al 1991, Hansen et al 1983, Janiti et al 1989, Veale et al 1994, Zurier et al 1996).

In one study, 16 patients with RA were given 540 mg GLA/day (EPO), 15 patients 240 mg EPA and 450 mg GLA/day (EPO/fish oil) and 18 patients an inert oil (placebo). The initial 12-month treatment period was followed by 3 months’ placebo for all groups. Results at 12 months showed a significant subjective improvement for EPO and EPO/fish oil compared with placebo. Additionally, within 12 months the patients receiving EPO and EPO/fish oil had significantly reduced their NSAID intake. After
3 months’ placebo, those receiving active treatment had relapsed. Despite the
decrease in NSAIDs, measures of disease activity did not worsen. It is suggested that
EPO and EPO/fish oil produce a subjective improvement and allow some patients to
reduce or stop treatment with NSAIDs. There is, however, no evidence that they act as
disease-modifying agents (Belch et al 1988).

In a randomised, single-blind placebo-controlled trial (Zurier et al 1996),
treatment with 2.8 g/day GLA resulted in a significant and clinically relevant reduction
in RA symptoms and signs of disease activity. GLA therapy demonstrated a significant
improvement in swollen joint count and score, tender joint count and score, duration
of morning stiffness, patient’s global assessment, patient’s assessment of pain and
degree of disability compared with baseline (measured by Health Assessment
Questionnaire score). Not all of these parameters were significantly improved
compared with placebo, but this may be due to the choice of safflower oil as a
placebo. Olive oil, which contains oleic acid, also found in safflower oil, has been
reported in other studies to benefit patients with RA (Brzeski et al 1991).

In one group of patients who were treated with GLA for 12 months, 16 of 21
showed meaningful improvement and 7 patients were able to decrease their NSAID
and/or prednisolone dosage. GLA does not have a disease-modifying effect and
supplementation must be long term. After 3 months without GLA supplementation,
most patients were experiencing an exacerbation of symptoms. GLA was well
tolerated during the trial with only three minor adverse reactions reported. Complete
blood count and platelet count did not show abnormal results (Zurier et al 1996).

CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASES

Hypertension  A double-blind, placebo-controlled study with a crossover design
found that the combination of EPO and fish oils significantly lowered blood pressure
in 25 non-obese black patients with mild–moderate uncomplicated essential hyper-
tension after 8–12 weeks compared with placebo (sunflower and linseed oil) (Venter
et al 1988). Other smaller studies have found a similar beneficial effect in hypertensive
patients. A combination of 4 g GLA and DHA daily for 6 weeks reduced blood
pressure in nine mildly hypertensive patients compared with placebo (sunflower oil)

EPO (1.3 g/day) significantly lowered blood pressure in mildly hypertensive but
otherwise healthy subjects in a small placebo-controlled, double-blind short-term
trial. EPO treatment led to a group reduction of systolic pressure (8.98 mmHg) and
diastolic pressure (12.25 mmHg). The authors suggest that the effect may be
mediated via GLA’s effects on PG metabolism (Leeds et al 1990).
A study conducted in 2001 in mice demonstrated that consumption of a GLA-based diet significantly reduced aortic vessel wall medial layer thickness and reduced atherosclerotic lesion size. These results were reported by the researchers to indicate that dietary GLA can suppress smooth muscle cell proliferation in vivo and potentially retard the development of atherosclerotic plaques. Human trials are now required to confirm this effect (Fan et al 2001).

OTHER USES

ALCOHOLISM

Essential fatty acids are major structural components of the brain and through their effects on membrane properties are essential for the proper actions of neurotransmitters and nerve conduction. Ethanol has three main known actions on EFA and PG metabolism: it reduces blood LA levels and induces or exaggerates EFA deficiency states; it blocks metabolism of LA to EFA metabolites, which are known to be important in brain structure; and it enhances conversion of DGLA to PGE$_1$ (Horrobin 1987).

Small clinical studies have found EPO somewhat beneficial in the treatment of alcoholism. In a double-blind placebo-controlled clinical trial EPO significantly reduced the severity of the withdrawal syndrome and improved liver function during the early weeks of withdrawal from alcohol. Relapse rates over 6 and 12 months did not improve, but in those who did not relapse certain parameters of cerebral function improved significantly (Horrobin 1990).

MIGRAINE

Gamma-linolenic acid may be beneficial in the prevention of migraine headache when used in combination with other nutritional supplements and as part of an overall management plan, according to an open, prospective, uncontrolled trial involving 168 migraine patients. In the study, patients took a combination of GLA and alpha-LA (1800 mg/day), other vitamins, coenzymes and antioxidants, and were instructed to lower their arachidonic acid intake. They were also instructed on correct techniques of self-medication and in stress-reduction and progressive relaxation techniques. Of the 129 patients who were evaluated after 6 months, 86% reported an improvement, with 22% of the total being free from migraine, while 14% were not able to implement the self-management of progressive relaxation and stress reduction techniques. Severity and frequency of attacks were decreased in patients reporting a positive response. Significant reduction in nausea and vomiting was reported in all groups except the failure group (Wagner & Nootbaar-Wagner 1997).
Although encouraging, further research using GLA as a stand-alone treatment is required to determine its role in achieving these impressive results.

**SCHIZOPHRENIA**
A 2000 review of clinical trials concluded that although EPA (from fish oils) may help up to one-third of people avoid initiation of standard treatment with antipsychotic drugs, but there is no clear evidence of any benefit from EPO, and in fact it may lower seizure threshold in some patients (Halat & Dennehey 2003, Joy et al 2000).

**RAYNAUD’S SYNDROME**
Prostaglandin E and prostacyclin have been used in Raynaud’s syndrome, but as these compounds are unstable and require intravenous administration, other treatments that increase the body’s own production of these chemicals have been sought, for example, by administration of the precursor EFA. A small, double-blind, placebo-controlled study of 21 patients with Raynaud’s phenomenon found that EPO significantly reduced the number of attacks as the weather worsened compared with placebo. Visual analogue scales assessing the severity of attacks and coldness of hands improved in the EPO group, but no changes were seen in either group for objective measures of blood flow although changes in platelet behaviour and blood prostanoids were observed (Belch et al 1985).

**DOSAGE RANGE**
- Like other essential nutrients, EFAs must be supplied by the diet. Unlike other essential nutrients, it has not yet been possible to identify a minimum daily requirement.
- To reduce the risk of rancidity, EPO is mostly administered in sealed soft gel capsules that are taken orally and should be cold-pressed form of the oil.

**ACCORDING TO CLINICAL STUDIES**
- Diabetic neuropathy 360–480 mg GLA, which is approximately 4–6 1-g capsules per day (Halat & Dennehey 2003).
- Alcoholism, cardiovascular and inflammatory disorders: 0.5–2.8 g GLA/day (approximately 5.0–28.0 g EPO/day) (Belch & Hill 2000, Leeds et al 1990, Zurier et al 1996).
- EPO may be applied topically in the treatment of skin disorders.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
Mild gastrointestinal symptoms, such as nausea, flatulence, loose bowels and bloating have been reported (Bamford et al 1985). High doses of 5–10 mL/kg/day
administered in animal models failed to detect toxic effects or carcinogenicity (Everett et al 1988).

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**

**PHENOTHIAZINES**
Several case reports suggest that EPO may reduce seizure threshold and reduce drug effectiveness in patients with schizophrenia treated with phenothiazines (Vaddadi 1981). Avoid concomitant use.

**ORAL ANTICOAGULANTS**
Due to the antithrombotic effect of EPO, concomitant use may theoretically increase the risk of bleeding — use caution and monitor bleeding time and signs and symptoms of excessive bleeding.

**ANTIPLATELET DRUGS**
Concomitant use may theoretically increase risk of bleeding, but enhanced anti-inflammatory effects may also develop, making this a useful combination — observe patients taking this combination.

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**
There is mixed evidence for EPO lowering the seizure threshold in people with epilepsy (Spinella 2001). Until safety can be better established, EPO should be used with caution by people with a history of partial complex seizure disorders such as temporal lobe epilepsy. Schizophrenics treated with neuroleptic drugs (phenothiazides) should also use this supplement with caution as it may lower seizure threshold. Suspend use of high doses 1 week before major surgery.

**PREGNANCY USE**
Safety has not yet been established in pregnancy, although studies with experimental models suggest it is safe. Furthermore, EPO combined with fish oils has been used successfully to reduce the incidence of pre-eclampsia (D’Almeida et al 1992).

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**
- Evening primrose oil contains a number of EFAs, most notably GLA, which is thought to be the most important for exerting pharmacological activity.
- It is suspected that GLA supplementation results in increased production of useful metabolites such as PGE₁, which inhibits inflammation, regulates immunity, causes vasodilation and reduces blood pressure, improves flexibility of red blood cell membranes, induces insulin receptors and inhibits platelet aggregation and thrombosis.
• Evening primrose oil appears beneficial in the treatment of diabetic neuropathy, RA and cardiovascular disease.
• In many disorders, EPO is combined with fish oils (EPA) for best results.

**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

**What is EPO?**
Evening primrose oil is the oil from the seed of the plant known as evening primrose. A similar oil is made from borage seeds. The oil contains high amounts of GLA, which is the main active compound.

**What will this supplement do for me?**
Current evidence supports the use of EPO in the treatment of diabetic neuropathy, RA and cardiovascular disease.

**When will it start to work?**
Beneficial effects have been reported in some studies within 2–4 weeks’ continuous use. However, long-term use is necessary for chronic diseases such as RA.

**Are there any safety issues?**
Evening primrose oil is generally well tolerated. Only minor gastrointestinal upset may occur. Should this happen it is recommended the capsules be taken with meals. EPO should be avoided by some people taking anti-epileptic medicines and blood thinning medicines.

**REFERENCES**


Spinella M. Herbal medicines and epilepsy: the potential for benefit and adverse effects. Epilepsy Behav 2.6 (2001): 524-32.
Fenugreek

Historical note  Fenugreek’s seeds and leaves are used not only as food but also as an ingredient in traditional medicine. It is indigenous to Western Asia and Southern Europe, but is now mainly cultivated in India, Pakistan, France, Argentina and North African countries. In ancient times it was used as an aphrodisiac by the Egyptians and, together with honey, for the treatment of rickets, diabetes, dyspepsia, rheumatism, anaemia and constipation. It has also been described in early Greek and Latin pharmacopoeias for hyperglycaemia and was used by Yemenite Jews for type 2 diabetes (Yeh et al 2003). In India and China it is still widely used as a therapeutic agent. In the United States, it has been used since the 19th century for postmenopausal vaginal dryness and dysmenorrhoea (Ulbricht & Basch 2005).

COMMON NAME
Fenugreek

OTHER NAMES
Trigonella seeds, bird’s foot, Greek hay, hu lu ba, methi, trigonella

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
*Trigonella foenum graecum* (family Leguminosae)

PLANT PARTS USED
Dried mature seed, although leaves are used less commonly.

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
The main chemical constituents are fibre, tannic acid, fixed and volatile oils and a bitter extractive, steroidal saponins, flavonoids, polysaccharides, alkaloids, trigonelline, trigocoumarin, trigomethyl coumarin, mucilage (up to 30%), seven essential amino acids and vitamins A, C, D, B1, B2 and B3 (Bin-Hafeez et al 2003, Fisher & Painter 1996, Shang et al 1998, Zia et al 2001).

MAIN ACTIONS

HYPOGLYCAEMIC
The hypoglycaemic effect of fenugreek seeds has been demonstrated in numerous studies involving experimentally induced diabetes (both type 1 and type 2) in rats, dogs, mice, rabbits and humans (Alarcon-Aguilara et al 1998, Madar et al 1988, Raju et al 2003).
et al 2001, Ribes et al 1984, 1986, Riyad et al 1988, Sharma et al 1990, Vats et al 2002), and the effect has been described as slow but sustained (Puri et al 2002). Interestingly, no reduction of fasting or postprandial blood sugar levels were observed in a placebo-controlled study in non-diabetic people who used a dose of 5 g/day over 3 months (Bordia et al 1997).

Fenugreek exerts its hypoglycaemic effect by delaying glucose absorption and enhancing its utilisation (Al-Habori et al 2001). Results from in vivo experiments suggest that fenugreek may increase the sensitivity of tissues to available insulin (Puri et al 2002). The active component responsible for this activity is associated with a defatted part (non-lipid extract), rich in fibre-containing steroidal saponins and proteins (Ribes et al 1986, Valette et al 1984).

ANTIULCEROGENIC ACTIVITY
Both an aqueous extract and a gel fraction isolated from the seeds demonstrated significant ulcer-protective effects in vivo (Pandian et al 2002). The seed fractions given orally to test animals provided dose-dependent gastric protection against the effects of ethanol that was as potent as that of omeprazole. Furthermore, histological studies found that the soluble gel fraction was significantly more protective than omeprazole. Preliminary research suggests that the polysaccharide composition and/or flavonoid components of the gel are responsible for the gastroprotective and antisecretory activities of the seeds.

HYPOCHOLESTEROLAEMIC EFFECT
Significant cholesterol-lowering activity has been demonstrated in several animal studies and human studies with diabetic volunteers (Gupta et al 2001, Petit et al 1995, Rao et al 1996, Stark & Madar 1993, Sharma et al 1990, Sowmya & Rajyalakshmi 1999). Although the mechanism of action is still unclear, it appears that the fibre and steroidal saponin content are important for activity.

IMMUNOSTIMULANT ACTIVITY
Enhanced humoral immunity, significant increases in macrophage activity and a stimulatory effect on lymphoproliferation have been demonstrated in vivo (Bin-Hafeez et al 2003). Stimulatory effects were observed at 100 mg/kg and in some cases at 250 mg/kg.

ANTI-INFLAMMATORY AND ANTIPYRETIC ACTIVITY
Potent anti-inflammatory activity was demonstrated in an animal model for both single-dose and chronic-dose applications of a dried leaf decoction of fenugreek (Ahmadiani et al 2001). The effectiveness of the 1000 mg/kg dose of the extract was
relatively equal to 300 mg/kg sodium salicylate for single dosing; however, chronic administration was more effective than sodium salicylate. Additionally, the fenugreek decoction demonstrated stronger antipyretic activity than that of sodium salicylate.

**ANTINOCICEPTIVE EFFECTS**

Two studies in animal models have identified antinociceptive activity for fenugreek (Ahmadiani et al 2001, Javan et al 1997). This seems to be mediated through central and peripheral mechanisms. According to Javan et al (1997), the antinociceptive effects of 2000 mg/kg of the extract were more potent than 300 mg/kg sodium salicylate.

**EFFECT ON THYROID HORMONES**

Administration of fenugreek seed extract for 15 days to both mice and rats significantly decreased serum triiodothyronine (T3), suggesting that thyroxine (T4)-to-T3 conversion is inhibited and leads to increases in T4 levels (Panda et al 1999).

**STIMULATES DIGESTION**

Traditionally, fenugreek is used to improve digestion. In vivo studies have identified that it enhances the activity of pancreatic and intestinal lipase, and sucrase and maltase thereby providing support to this traditional use (Platel & Srinivasan 1996, 2000).

**OTHER ACTIONS**

Antineoplastic activity has been observed for fenugreek in the Ehrlich ascites carcinoma model in mice (Sur et al 2001). Protodioscin, purified from fenugreek, has also exhibited antineoplastic activity on human leukaemia cell lines in vitro (Hibasami et al 2003). Although fenugreek contains coumarin constituents, a placebo-controlled study found that it does not affect platelet aggregation, fibrinolytic activity or fibrinogen (Bordia et al 1997). Traditionally it is thought to promote lactation in nursing mothers and act as a general tonic.

**CLINICAL USE**

**DYSPEPSIA AND LOSS OF APPETITE**

Although controlled studies are unavailable, the increased activity of pancreatic and intestinal lipase seen in animal studies provides a theoretical basis for its use in dyspepsia. Commission E approved the internal use of fenugreek seed for loss of appetite (Blumenthal et al 2000).
ELEVATED LIPID LEVELS
Several clinical studies conducted in people with and without diabetes have identified significant lipid-lowering activity with different fenugreek preparations, such as de-fatted fenugreek, germinated seed and hydro-alcoholic extracts (Bordia et al 1997, Gupta et al 2001, Sharma et al 1990, Sowmya & Rajyalakshmi 1999). As can be expected, the dose used and type of preparation tested has an influence over results.

An open study using a daily dose of 18.0 g germinated fenugreek seed in healthy volunteers demonstrated significant reductions in total cholesterol and LDL-cholesterol levels. A placebo-controlled study found no effect after 3 months with a lower dose of 5 g seed daily (Bordia et al 1997, Sowmya & Rajyalakshmi 1999), suggesting that higher intakes may be required for lipid-lowering activity to become significant.

DIABETES
Fenugreek is a popular natural treatment used to aid blood sugar regulation in diabetes. Overall, results from clinical studies have produced positive results however trials have used diverse preparations, various dosage regimens and outcome measures.

In one open study involving 60 people with type 2 diabetes, 25 g fenugreek seed powder taken together with lunch and dinner for 24 weeks produced significant reductions to fasting blood sugar levels and symptoms of diabetes, and improved glucose tolerance (Sharma et al 1996). A shorter 10-day randomised study of people with type 1 diabetes found that de-fatted fenugreek seed powder (50 g twice daily) significantly reduced fasting blood sugar level and improved glucose tolerance (Sharma et al 1990). More recently, a double-blind, placebo-controlled study involving 25 volunteers with mild to moderate type 2 diabetes showed that 1 g/day hydro-alcoholic extract of fenugreek seeds for 2 months improved insulin resistance and increased insulin sensitivity but had no effect on fasting blood glucose level at this low dose (Gupta et al 2001).

Studies with de-fatted fenugreek seed (100 g/day) in patients with type 1 diabetes identified significant reductions in total cholesterol, LDL- and VLDL-cholesterol and triglyceride levels but no changes to HDL-cholesterol under randomised conditions (Sharma et al 1990). Similar results were obtained with an ethanolic extract of de-fatted fenugreek seeds in vivo, which produced an 18–26% reduction in plasma cholesterol level (Stark & Madar 1993).

A placebo-controlled study using a lower dose of 2.5 g unaltered fenugreek seed twice daily over 3 months found this was ineffective in type 1 diabetes but did have a lipid-lowering effect in patients with diabetes and coronary artery disease (Bordia et al...
In this population, total cholesterol and triglyceride levels were significantly reduced. Although high doses of fenugreek seeds are required, a 2001 double-blind placebo-controlled study found that a dose of 1 g ethanolic extract of fenugreek was able to significantly decrease serum triglyceride levels and increase HDL-cholesterol in mild to moderate type 2 diabetes mellitus (Gupta et al 2001).

**PROMOTING LACTATION**
Although fenugreek has been used traditionally for centuries to increase milk production and improve lactation, no controlled studies are available to confirm effectiveness.

**EXTERNALLY — TO REDUCE LOCAL INFLAMMATION**
Although controlled studies are not available, evidence of anti-inflammatory and antinociceptive activity provides a theoretical basis for this indication. Commission E approves the external use of fenugreek as a poultice for local inflammation (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**OTHER USES**
In Ayurvedic and Unani systems of medicine, fenugreek is used for treating epilepsy, paralysis, gout, dropsy, chronic cough and piles. The seeds are reported to have nutritive properties and to stimulate digestive processes, and have been used to treat a range of gastrointestinal disorders in the Indian system of medicine. It is also used as a general tonic, mixed with milk and sugar to promote lactation and to lower lipid and glucose levels.

**DOSAGE RANGE**

**INTERNAL USE**
**According to clinical studies**
- General dose range: liquid extract (1:2): 2–6 mL/day.
- Diabetes: 50–100 g seed daily taken in divided doses with meals, or 1 g/day ethanolic seed extract.
- Lipid-lowering activity: according to the above studies, 18.0 g germinated fenugreek or 100 g de-fatted seeds daily taken in divided doses with meals.

**EXTERNAL USE**
- As a poultice: 50 g powdered seed in 0.5–1 L hot water applied topically to affected area.

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
TOXICITY
Safety studies indicate that fenugreek is extremely safe. When consumed as 20% of the diet, it did not produce toxic effects in animal tests.

ADVERSE REACTIONS
One clinical study found that a dose of 50 g taken twice daily produced mild gastrointestinal symptoms, such as diarrhoea and flatulence, which subsided after 3–4 days. Allergic reactions have been reported, but are rare.

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
Where controlled studies are not available, interactions are speculative and based on evidence of pharmacological activity and case reports.

HYPOGLYCAEMIC AGENTS
Additive effects are theoretically possible in diabetes — monitor concomitant use and monitor serum glucose levels closely — potentially beneficial interaction.

IRON
Frequent use of fenugreek can inhibit iron absorption — separate doses by 2 hours.

WARFARIN
Although there is a theoretical concern that concomitant use could increase bleeding risk due to the herb’s coumarin content, this is unlikely. A placebo-controlled study found that fenugreek does not affect platelet aggregation, fibrinolytic activity or fibrinogen (Bordia et al 1997).

CONTRAINdications AND PRECAUTIONS
Fenugreek is contraindicated in people with allergy to the herb, which has been observed in several case reports (Patil et al 1997), or those with allergy to chickpeas, because of possible cross-reactivity (Ulbricht & Basch 2005). Monitor patients with thyrotoxicosis when using this herb at doses above usual dietary intake.

PREGNANCY USE
When taken in usual dietary amounts, fenugreek is likely to be safe; however, the safety of larger doses has not been scientifically evaluated.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
• Fenugreek’s seeds and leaves are used not only as food but also as an ingredient in traditional medicine systems.
• Clinical studies have identified significant hypoglycaemic and lipid-lowering activity; however, dosage forms and treatment regimens varied.
In animal studies fenugreek has been shown to exert immunostimulant, anti-inflammatory and antinociceptive activity, stimulate digestive enzyme production and provide significant antiulcerogenic effects.

In practice it is used to manage blood sugar levels in patients with diabetes, to lower cholesterol levels, to provide symptom relief in dyspepsia and to promote lactation.

Externally it is made into a poultice with hot water and used as an anti-inflammatory application.

**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

*What will this herb do for me?*

Fenugreek can lower blood sugar levels in patients with diabetes, reduce cholesterol levels and stimulate digestion. It may also protect the gastrointestinal tract from ulcers, stimulate immune function and provide anti-inflammatory and antipyretic effects. Traditionally, it has also been used to promote lactation.

*When will it start to work?*

Studies suggest that blood sugar effects can be seen within 10 days in type 1 diabetes, whereas lipid-lowering effects can take up to 3 months to establish. Traditionally, digestive effects are thought to occur soon after ingestion of the seeds.

*Are there any safety issues?*

Used as a food, fenugreek appears extremely safe but may interact with blood-thinning medicines. When used in high doses as a medicine, it may cause flatulence, diarrhoea and mild stomach discomfort. Allergies to fenugreek are possible. When used with diabetic medicine, it may increase sugar-lowering activity and safety should be monitored.

**REFERENCES**


Petit PR et al. Steroid saponins from fenugreek seeds: extraction, purification, and pharmacological investigation on feeding behavior and plasma cholesterol. Steroids 60.10 (1995): 674-80.


Historical note  Feverfew has been used for centuries in Europe to treat headaches, arthritis and fever and used as an emmenagogue and anthelmintic agent. In the 1970s it was ‘rediscovered’ by the medical establishment and subjected to clinical studies, which produced encouraging results that suggested feverfew was an effective prophylactic medicine for migraine headache.

OTHER NAMES
Altamisa, bachelor’s button, camomile grande, featherfew, featherfoil, chrysanthemum parthenium, mutterkraut, matrem, tanacetii parthenii herba/folium

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Tanacetum parthenium (family [Asteraceae] Compositae)

PLANT PART USED
Leaf

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
The leaves and flowering tops contain many monoterpenes and sesquiterpenes as well as sesquiterpenes lactones (chrysanthemolide, chrysanthemonin, 10-epi-canin, magnoliolide and parthenolide), reynosin, santamarin, tanaparthins and other compounds. Until recently, the sesquiterpene lactone parthenolide was thought to be the major biologically active constituent. However, in vitro and in vivo research suggests others are also present (Brown et al 1997, Pugh & Sambo 1988).

Clinical note – Natural variations in parthenolide content
The amount of parthenolide present in commercial preparations of feverfew leaves varies significantly, with some exhibiting levels as high as 1.7% dry weight and others as low as 0.01% to non-detectable (Cutlan et al 2000). The study by Cutlan et al measured the parthenolide content in plants produced from seeds taken from over 30 different sources and germinated under identical conditions. According to this study, feverfew collected from the wild and distributed by botanical gardens or US Department of Agriculture seed banks yielded plants with the highest mean parthenolide value, and plants with yellow leaves also had significantly higher parthenolide levels than those with green leaves.
MAIN ACTIONS

ANTI-INFLAMMATORY AND ANALGESIC
Several in vivo studies have identified anti-inflammatory and antinociceptive activity for feverfew extracts and parthenolide. When feverfew extracts were orally administered, or pure parthenolide was injected IP, significant dose-dependent anti-inflammatory and antinociceptive effects were observed in animal models (Jain & Kulkarni 1999). Similarly, when feverfew extracts and parthenolide from *Tanacetum vulgare* was administered orally in a rat model, gastric ulcer index was significantly reduced (Tournier et al 1999).

The mechanisms responsible for these effects are not well elucidated. Jain and Kulkarni (1999) demonstrated that the antinociceptive effect was not mediated through the opiate pathway and was not associated with sedation. In regards to the anti-inflammatory effect, several mechanisms appear to be responsible.

Two in vitro studies have found evidence of COX and lipoxygenase inhibition (Capasso 1986, Pugh & Sambo 1988), while other tests reveal no effect on COX (Collier et al 1980, Makheja & Bailey 1982). Inhibition of phospholipase A₂ has also been suggested (Heptinstall 1988). Direct binding and inhibition of I-kappa B kinase beta, an important subunit involved in cytokine-mediated signalling, has been demonstrated for parthenolide in test tube studies (Kwok et al 2001). Parthenolide also inhibits NO production, an important regulator and inducer of various inflammatory states (Wong & Menendez 1999). More recently, results from an in vivo study confirm that parthenolide inhibits proinflammatory cytokine responses, although the authors propose that proinflammatory mediators including chemokines (MIP-2), plasma enzyme mediators (complement, kinin and clotting systems) and lipid mediators (COX, PG, platelet-activating factor) are also likely to be involved (Smolinski & Pestka 2003).

The essential oil constituent of feverfew, chrysanthenyl acetate, inhibits PG synthetase in vitro and also seems to possess analgesic properties (Pugh & Sambo 1988).

ANTISPASMODIC
The results from several in vitro studies generally indicate that feverfew decreases vascular smooth muscle spasm (Barsby et al 1992, Barsby et al 1993a, b, Collier et al 1980).

INHIBITS SEROTONIN RELEASE AND BINDING
Parthenolide and several other sesquiterpene lactone constituents inhibit serotonin release but do not bind to 5HT₁ receptors, according to in vivo data (Groenewegen &
Heptinstall 1990, Marles et al 1992, Weber et al 1997a). Some tests with 5HT₂A receptors show parthenolide is a low-affinity antagonist (Weber et al 1997b), whereas other tests found no effect on 5HT₂A or 2B receptors. Feverfew extract potently and directly blocked 5HT₂A and 2B receptors and neuronally released 5HT, suggesting that feverfew powder or extracts are more effective than isolated parthenolide (Mittra et al 2000).

**OTHER ACTIONS**

**INHIBITS PLATELET AGGREGATION**
Evidence is contradictory as to whether feverfew inhibits platelet aggregation. Several test tube studies and animal models have observed inhibition of platelet aggregation (Heptinstall et al 1988, Jain & Kulkarni 1999, Makheja & Bailey 1982). However, no significant effects were seen in a clinical study of 10 patients receiving feverfew (Biggs et al 1982).

**MAST-CELL STABILISATION**
Tests with rat mast cells indicate that feverfew extract inhibits histamine release, but the mechanism of action is different to cromoglycate and quercetin (Hayes & Foreman 1987).

**CLINICAL USE**

**PROPHYLAXIS OF MIGRAINE HEADACHE**
The first double-blind study investigating feverfew in migraine prophylaxis was published in 1985 and involved 17 patients who had been chewing fresh feverfew leaves on a daily basis (Johnson et al 1985). Therapeutic effect was maintained when capsules containing freeze-dried feverfew powder were continued, whereas those allocated placebo capsules experienced a significant increase in the frequency and severity of headache, nausea, and vomiting during the early months of withdrawal.

Since then, numerous clinical studies have been conducted to determine the role of feverfew in the prevention of migraine headache.

In 2000, Ernst and Pittler published a systematic review of six randomised, placebo-controlled double-blind trials of feverfew as a prophylactic treatment and concluded that the current evidence favours feverfew as an effective preventative treatment against migraine headache, and is generally well tolerated.

**Clinical note — Migraine**
Migraine is a common episodic familial headache disorder characterised by a combination of headache and neurologic, gastrointestinal, and autonomic symp-
toms. It has a 1-year prevalence of approximately 18% in women, 6% in men, and 4% in children before puberty (Silberstein 2004). Several underlying mechanisms are considered responsible for the onset of migraine.

One of the genes linked to migraine is associated with dysfunction in P-type neuronal calcium channels, which mediate 5-HT and excitatory neurotransmitter release. This dysfunction can impair release of 5-HT and predispose patients to migraine attacks or impair their self-aborting mechanism (Silberstein 2004). Additionally, NO may be involved in the initiation and maintenance of migraine headache (Ferrari 1998). Migraine aura is now thought to be caused by neuronal dysfunction, not ischaemia, and headache begins while cortical blood flow is reduced.

In clinical practice, the three goals of migraine-preventive therapy are to reduce attack frequency, severity, and duration, improve responsiveness to treatment of acute attacks, and improve function and reduce disability. Ultimately, choice of treatment should be based on efficacy, adverse effects and coexistent conditions with a full therapeutic trial taking 2–6 months.

A more recent Cochrane systematic review of five placebo-controlled, randomised, double-blind trials (n = 343) concluded that there was insufficient evidence to determine whether feverfew was superior to placebo in reducing migraine frequency or incidence, severity of nausea or severity of migraines (Pittler & Ernst 2004). A closer look at the studies reveals that results were mixed, methodological quality varied and various dosage regimens, administration forms and extracts were used. One study used three different dosing regimens for a CO₂ extract, two studies used an alcoholic and CO₂ extract, three studies used dried feverfew leaves for 8–24 weeks and one study used an alcoholic extract for 8 weeks. Interpretation of test results is made even more difficult when one considers the naturally occurring chemical variations among the preparations.

The authors have offered several explanations for the inconsistent clinical findings and point out that previous negative studies used extracts standardised for parthenolide concentration; however, it is possible that other compounds found in whole-leaf preparations may also be important for pharmacological activity. In vivo studies support this view (Mitra et al 2000). Additionally, the negative results obtained by some studies may be due to under-dosing.

Since then, positive results were obtained for a CO₂-extract of feverfew in a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, multicentre study of 170 patients (Diener et al 2005). Active treatment with feverfew (MIG-99) at a dose of 6.25 mg,
three times daily, significantly reduced the frequency of migraine headache episodes over a 16-week period.

**ARTHritic CONDITIONS**
Although traditionally used as a treatment for inflammatory joint conditions, the results of a randomised, double-blind study involving 41 patients with symptoms of RA found no difference between chopped dried feverfew (70–86 mg) or placebo after 6 weeks' treatment (Pattrick et al 1989).

**OTHER USES**

**DERMATOLOGY**
Parthenolide-free feverfew extract is being investigated in various dermatological conditions. One study found that the formulation protected skin against inflammation and UV-induced damage (Finkey et al 2005). When the pathenolide-free feverfew extract was topically applied, it significantly reduced the loss of cell viability, the increase in proinflammatory mediator release and the induction of DNA damage induced by solar simulated UV radiation in a human epidermal model. It also exhibited potent antioxidant activity in vitro. Other in vitro tests have revealed that parthenolide-free feverfew extract reduces inflammation through several mechanisms and is being investigated further as a novel non-steroidal extract for irritated skin (Martin et al 2005).

**ONCOLOGY**
In vitro tests suggest that parthenolide may have potential as a radiation sensitisier. According to the study, parthenolide inhibits NF-kappa-B activity, slows cell growth, and synergistically enhances cell killing after moderate doses of radiation (Mendonca et al 2003).

**TRADITIONAL USE**
Feverfew has been used traditionally to treat coughs and colds, fevers, atonic dyspepsia, worm infestation, menstrual disorders, nervous debility, joint pain and headaches.

**DOSAGE RANGE**
- Dried leaf: 50 mg to 200 mg daily
- Fresh plant tincture (1:1): 0.7–2.0 mL/day.
- Dried plant tincture (1:5): 1–3 mL/day.
- Prevention of migraine headaches (based on clinical studies): 125–250 mg/day of powder, standardised to contain a minimum parthenolide content of 0.2%, or
400 µg, which should be taken for at least 4 months. It is still controversial as to whether standardised extracts are best for migraine prophylaxis or not.

**TOXICITY**
Unknown, although no major safety issues have been identified (Ernst & Pittler 2000).

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
According to a Cochrane systematic review of five studies (Pittler & Ernst 2004), feverfew is well tolerated and adverse events are generally mild and reversible. Symptoms were most frequently reported by long-term users and were predominantly mouth ulceration and gastrointestinal symptoms. Contact dermatitis, mouth soreness and lip swelling has also been reported when leaves are chewed.

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**
Controlled studies are not available; therefore, interactions are based on evidence of activity and are largely theoretical and speculative.

**ANTICOAGULANTS**
Theoretically, feverfew may increase bruising and bleeding; however, although feverfew inhibits platelet aggregation in vitro and in vivo, no effects were seen in a clinical study (Biggs et al 1982) — observe patients taking this combination.

**ANTIPLATELET DRUGS**
Theoretically, feverfew may increase bruising and bleeding; however, contradictory evidence exists — observe patients taking this combination.

**CONTRAINdications AND Precautions**
Hypersensitivity to plants in the Asteraceae (Compositae) (daisy) family (e.g. chamomile, ragweed).

**PREGNANCY USE**
Contraindicated in pregnancy.

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**
- Although early studies were positive and showed a preventative effect for migraine headache, not all studies have been positive, which may be related to variations in preparations and dosing. Further research is required to determine its place in practice for this indication.
- Of the studies that have produced positive results for migraine therapy, feverfew reduced severity of symptoms such as vomiting and visual disturbances, but did not alter the duration of an episode.
• Tincture or solid-dose preparations may be better tolerated than chewing the fresh leaves, which have been associated with mouth ulcers and lip swelling in some individuals.
• Traditionally, feverfew has also been used to treat coughs and colds, fevers, atonic dyspepsia, worm infestation, menstrual disorders, nervous debility, joint pain and headaches.
• Use is contraindicated in pregnancy.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What will this herb do for me?
Some evidence suggests that feverfew may reduce the frequency and severity of migraine headaches; however, test results are inconsistent.

When will it start to work?
Of those studies producing positive results, it appears that approximately 4 months’ continual use may be required; however, in practice, some patients experience benefits within the first 4 weeks.

Are there any safety issues?
Feverfew should not be used in pregnancy. It may increase tendency to bruising and bleeding in patients taking warfarin.

REFERENCES

Fish oils

BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS

One of the two fats identified as being essential for humans to consume is alpha-linolenic acid (ALA or 18:3n-3) which, due to the position of its first double bond, is classified as an omega-3 essential fatty acid (n-3 EFA). Although mammals have the ability to introduce double bonds into most positions of the fatty acid chain in fat metabolism, therefore creating a variety of unsaturated metabolites, they lack the capacity to insert double bonds at the n-3 and n-6 position. Consequently, linoleic acid (LA) and alpha-linolenic acid (ALA), which already have the double bond at the n-3 or n-6 position, respectively, are considered essential and must be consumed in the diet. When the EFAs are consumed in this precursor state they follow a pathway of further elongation and desaturation via the action of delta-6- and delta-5-desaturase until they form the ‘active’ fatty acids: eicosapentaenoic acid (20:5 n-3) (EPA) and docosahexaenoic acid (DHA) (22:6 n-3).

Fish oils, also known as marine oils, are rapidly absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract and compete with arachidonic acid (AA) for incorporation into phospholipids, particularly of platelets, erythrocytes, neutrophils, monocytes and liver cells (Simopoulos 1999). When stimulated, the cell membranes release polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFAs), which are then converted into 20-carbon eicosanoids, which have important and extensive physiological effects. The most active of these metabolites are prostaglandins, prostacyclins and thromboxanes, which affect blood chemistry, muscle contraction, immune function and inflammation. Dietary fats not used in this way are stored in adipose tissue and ultimately oxidised to produce energy. The FA cell membrane profile of different tissues will have varying ratios of EPA and DHA, but generally DHA is considered the major component of phospholipids in the retina, brain, male reproductive tissue, and myocardium (Groff & Gropper 2004).

Supplements based on fish liver oils, such as cod and halibut, contain EPA and DHA together with high levels of vitamins A and D. As such, they have additional actions and safety issues besides those found with traditional marine lipid supplements. This review will focus on the research surrounding those fish oils that are not liver extractions.

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS

Dietary fish contains a number of nutrients important for health, such as several types of vitamin B, vitamin E, calcium, magnesium and potassium and are an excellent
source of protein with a low saturated fat content. Importantly, they also contain the two PUFAs: EPA and DHA. EPA has 20 carbon atoms and 5 double bonds, and DHA has 22 carbon atoms and 6 double bonds. Both are derived from ALA and are considered conditionally essential.

FOOD SOURCES
Most dietary EPA and DHA are consumed in the form of fish or seafood. Deep sea cold water fish, such as salmon, mackerel, halibut and herring, provide the most concentrated sources. Current Australian estimates of intake indicate inadequate consumption according to WHO standards (Meyer et al 2003).

Clinical note — Are ALA-rich oils a worthy substitute for fish oils?
Both EPA and DHA are derived from ALA, so food sources containing ALA are seen as indirect dietary sources. ALA is commonly found in non-hydrogenated canola oil, linseed oil, soyabean oil, flaxseed, pumpkin and walnuts. Studies investigating the effects of ALA supplementation have not consistently produced the same positive results as for fish oils, most likely due to inefficient conversion of ALA into EPA and DHA. This is reportedly poor in healthy individuals, with only 5–10% of ALA converted to EPA and 2–5% of ALA converted to DHA (Davis & Kris-Etherton 2003). Consequently, the few foods that contain both EPA and DHA in their preformed state offer a significant advantage over other sources. The most concentrated dietary source of both EPA and DHA is fish oil.

DEFICIENCY SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS
Based on epidemiological studies the low levels of n-3 PUFAs are associated with:
- fetal alcohol syndrome (DHA) (Horrocks & Yeo 1999)
- attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (DHA) (Horrocks & Yeo 1999)
- learning deficits (DHA) (Horrocks & Yeo 1999)
- cystic fibrosis (DHA) (Horrocks & Yeo 1999)
- phenylketonuria (DHA) (Horrocks & Yeo 1999)
- cardiovascular disease including an increased risk of sudden death due to heart disease (Siscovick et al 2003).
- inflammatory disorders
- rheumatoid arthritis (Navarro et al 2000)
- unipolar depression (DHA) (Horrocks & Yeo 1999)
- senile dementia.

In addition to these symptoms, lack of dietary EFAs has been implicated in the development or aggravation of numerous diseases such as breast cancer, prostate...
cancer, RA, asthma, pre-eclampsia, depression and schizophrenia (Yehuda et al 2005).

**PRIMARY DEFICIENCY**
Full-term babies fed a skim-milk formula low in ALA are at risk of primary deficiency. In the past, patients fed long-term with fat-free TPN solutions were at risk, but fat emulsions are now in general use and prevent deficiency. Studies have demonstrated lower plasma levels of EPA and DHA in vegetarians and vegans, suggesting they may be at risk of deficiency; however, the findings of a recent cross-sectional study comparing the dietary intakes and plasma levels of 196 meat-eating, 231 vegetarian, and 232 vegan men in the United Kingdom did not suggest there is cause for alarm (Rosell et al 2005). Vegans and vegetarians had significantly lower levels of these fatty acids; however, they remained steady and there is evidence of some conversion of ALA into EPA and DHA.

There is much discussion regarding the inadequate intake of EPA and DHA generally in the Western diet. Recent Australian data, based on dietary intake records from the 1995 National Nutrition Survey, have estimated the average daily intake at 0.008 g EPA and 0.015 g DHA. If correct, this indicates that the majority of Australians are failing to meet recommended amounts (Meyer et al 2003).

**SECONDARY DEFICIENCY**
People with fat malabsorption syndromes, serious trauma or burns are at risk of reduced PUFA levels (Beers et al 2003). A secondary deficiency may also manifest as a result of abnormal or compromised activity of the delta-6 and delta-5 desaturase enzymes, such as in diabetics and patients with a variety of metabolic disorders and those individuals with increased dietary saturated fats, trans fatty acids, alcohol, and the elderly (Davis & Kris-Etherton 2003, Houston 2005).

**MAIN ACTIONS**
As precursors of eicosanoids, PUFAs found in fish oils exert a wide influence over many important physiological processes.

**CARDIOVASCULAR EFFECTS**
Fish oils exert myriad different effects on the heart and vessels, which have been demonstrated in both experimental models and human studies. It is suspected that the summation of many small protective risk factor effects of omega-3 fatty acids adds up to a larger protective effect on mortality and/or cardiovascular events. **Prevent malignant cardiac arrhythmias** Dietary fish or fish oil intake has been shown to prevent cardiac arrhythmias and associated sudden death in numerous animal studies (Billman et al. 1999, 1997; Kang & Leaf 1996, 2000, McLennan et al
1988, 1990). This has been achieved using intakes below those required to alter plasma lipids or blood pressure. It appears that the myocardial membrane phospholipid content of DHA increases with fish intake, but not always EPA. The preferential accumulation of DHA affords protection against ventricular fibrillation induced under a variety of conditions such as ischaemia and reperfusion (McLennan 2001).

Inadequate DHA in myocyte membranes have been reported to be associated with altered sodium, calcium and potassium ion channel functions, mitochondrial function and increased arrhythmia susceptibility with an increased prevalence of sudden cardiac death (Siscovick et al 2003). One in vivo study suggests fish oils electrically stabilise myocytes, increasing the electrical impulse required to produce an action potential by approximately 50% and prolonging the refractory time by 150% (Kang & Leaf 2000).

**Triglyceride-lowering activity** Human studies have revealed the potent ability of EPA and DHA to reduce circulating levels of blood triglyceride levels significantly, which is of interest because only moderate elevations in triglyceride levels have been associated with a progressively increased risk of ischaemic heart disease, independent of other major risk factors including HDL-cholesterol (Jeppesen et al 1998).

**Lipoprotein effects** Concerns raised previously about increased levels of the long-chain PUFAs in lipoproteins increasing the susceptibility to oxidation of the LDLs have recently been moderated, with a demonstrable difference between EPA and DHA on this outcome. While increased levels of EPA (4.8 g/day) did increase the LDL susceptibility to damage, DHA supplementation (4.9 g/day) had no effect on the oxidation process (Mesa et al 2004).

**Improved endothelial function** Studies have indicated that fish oils can improve endothelial relaxation by enhancing NO- and non-NO-induced vasodilatation (Holub 2002).

A double-blind study conducted by Mori et al (2000) showed that relative to placebo, DHA, but not EPA, enhances vasodilator mechanisms and attenuates constrictor responses in the forearm microcirculation.

**Reduce blood pressure** Two meta-analyses have concluded that fish oils exert a significant blood pressure-lowering effect in hypertensive people; however, the effects can only be described as modest, between 2 and 5 mmHg (Geleijnse et al 2002, Morris et al 1993). Hypotensive activity appears to be dose-dependent and DHA may have greater effect than EPA. Alternately, a 2006 Cochrane review found no significant changes to SBP or DBP with n-3 EFA consumption (Hooper et al 2006). The
review assessed studies that used both plant-and fish-based n-3 fatty acids, dietary sources and supplements.

The mechanism responsible is unknown; however, current theories include EPA stimulation of prostacyclin synthesis and increased NO production, both vasodilators. An additional action may be improved autonomic nervous system function, and inhibition of the adrenal activation (Din et al 2004, Ross 2005). Of the n-3 EFAs, hypotensive activity is attributed to DHA.

**Reduce and possibly reverse atherogenesis**  Omega-3 fatty acids alter eicosanoid synthesis and inhibit smooth muscle cell proliferation, suggesting a role in reducing atherosclerotic development (Holub 2002). One controlled study demonstrated that fish oil ingestion had a clinically significant influence on atherosclerosis (von Schacky et al 2001). This randomised double-blind study of 223 patients found that a dose of 1.5 g n-3 fatty acids reduced progression and increased regression of established coronary artery disease as assessed by coronary angiography.

**ANTITHROMBOTIC AND ANTIPLATELET**
Dietary omega-3 EFAs produce a state of enhanced anti-aggregatory and anti-adhesive platelet activity. This is achieved by inducing increased production of the platelet-anti-aggregatory substance prostacyclin $I_2$ and suppressing synthesis of the chemotactic platelet adhesion-promoting substance leukotriene B4 (Kinsella 1987). In animal models of arterial thrombosis, fish-oil-enriched diets have been shown to have an antithrombotic effect; however, there is evidence suggesting that this is most likely to occur when associated with reduced saturated fat intake (Hornstra 1989).

Clinical observations of Eskimos have found lowered platelet counts, inhibition of platelet aggregation and prolonged bleeding times compared with age- and sex-matched Danes. However, intervention studies using fish oil supplements have produced conflicting results (Hellsten et al 1993, Kristensen et al 1989, Radack et al 1990) and overall no significant effect is consistently seen at doses below 10 g.

**ANTI-INFLAMMATORY**
Fish oils induce a series of chemical changes in the body that ultimately produce an anti-inflammatory effect. They partially replace AA in inflammatory cell membranes, and compete with it for the enzymes cyclo-oxygenase (COX) and lipoxygenase (LOX), leading to reduced production of pro-inflammatory metabolites such as 2-series PGs and 4-series leukotrienes (Calder 2002, 2003, Cleland et al 2003).

Besides this, fish oils suppress the production of pro-inflammatory cytokines, according to both animal and human studies and reduce the expression of cell
adhesion molecules, which are critical in recruiting circulating leucocytes to the vascular endothelium (Calder 2002, Din et al 2004).

According to new research, it appears that anti-inflammatory activity may vary among different sources of fish oils due to variations in EPA/DHA content (Bhattacharya et al 2006).

**NEUROLOGICAL EFFECTS**

Fatty acids are major components of the brain and are found in high concentrations in two structural components: the neuronal membrane and the myelin sheath. About 50% of the neuronal membrane is composed of fatty acids (1/3 from the omega-3 family), while in the myelin sheath lipids constitute about 70% (Yehuda et al 2005). The lipid component has a relatively high turnover, in contrast to the protein component, which is especially stable.

Essential fatty acids play an active role in neuronal membrane function and fluidity and the control of neuronal growth factors. Essential fatty acids also potentially influence each step in biogenic amine function, including neurotransmitter synthesis, degradation, release, reuptake and binding (Bruinsma & Taren 2000). Studies indicate that dietary PUFAs may influence noradrenergic and serotonergic neurotransmission and receptor function in the nervous system and, thereby, have a direct effect on function, mood and behaviour. Other actions at the neuronal cell membrane includes suppression of the phosphatidyl-associated signal transduction pathways, blocking of the calcium ion influx through L-calcium channels and direct inhibition of protein kinase C, which are similar actions to those exhibited by pharmaceutical mood stabilisers.

**Prenatal and postnatal neurological development** DHA plays an important, if not critical, role in the growth and functional development of the brain during the third trimester and the early postnatal period when maximal growth occurs (Horrocks & Yeo 1999). Given that 15% of brain growth occurs during infancy, much attention has been paid to the consequences of variable omega-3 levels during late pregnancy and early infancy. It also plays an important role in retinal development, where DHA constitutes 60% of total PUFAs.

**CHEMOPREVENTATIVE EFFECTS**

Marine fatty acids, particularly EPA and DHA, have been consistently shown to inhibit the proliferation of breast and prostate cancer cell lines in vitro and to reduce the risk and progression of these tumours in animal experiments (Bagga et al 2002, Terry et al 2003). Similar effects have also been observed for colorectal and prostate cancers (Calder et al 1998, Lior et al 2003, Stoll 2002).
Chemopreventative actions demonstrated by n-3 EFAs include suppression of neoplastic transformation, cell growth inhibition and enhanced apoptosis, and anti-angiogenicity (Rose & Connolly 1999). The proposed mechanisms for these are extensive, including the suppression of n-6 eicosanoid synthesis; influences on transcription factor activity, gene expression, and signal transduction pathways; effects on oestrogen metabolism; increased or decreased production of free radicals and reactive oxygen species, and influences on both insulin sensitivity and membrane fluidity (Larsson et al 2004). Ongoing research is attempting to elucidate the specific chemopreventative mechanisms of fish oils with the individual cancer cell lines.

**CLINICAL USE**
Hundreds of randomised studies have been conducted in various populations to determine the clinical consequences of eating fish regularly or taking fish oil supplements. Some studies have focused on n-3 fatty acids intake as a whole and included vegetable sources together with marine-based sources. As with many reviews, inconsistent results are often seen. Sometimes this may be explained because the oils used as placebo are not necessarily inert, such as olive oil (Pizzorno & Murray 2006). It is important to note that few studies or reviews have considered the effect of variations in EPA/DHA, the ratio of n-3 FA:n-6 FA or the possible adverse effects relating to heavy metal contamination of fish sources.

**PREVENTION OF MORBIDITY AND MORTALITY OF CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE**
For over 25 years, fish and fish oils have been linked to cardiovascular health. This association was first recognised when significantly lower death rates from acute myocardial infarction (MI) were found among Greenland’s Inuit population, despite only moderate differences between the Inuits’ blood cholesterol levels and those of other populations (Holub 2002). A high dietary omega-3 fatty acid intake in the form of marine mammals (seal, whale) and various fish were thought responsible for the protective effect (Bang et al 1980). In 1989, results from the first large, randomised, clinical trial investigating the effects of fatty fish consumption on survival and risk of secondary MI confirmed a link to cardiovascular health (Burr et al 1989). The DART (Diet and Reinfarction study) found a modest intake of 2–3 portions weekly of fatty fish reduced mortality in men who had previously experienced a MI and produced a relative reduction in total mortality of 29% during the 2-year follow-up, attributed mainly to a reduction in deaths from coronary heart disease (CHD). Increased consumption of fish (RR = 0.66 for 5 or more times per week) was further confirmed in the Nurses Study as significantly reducing risk in both CHD and CHD mortality independent of the cardiovascular status (Hu et al 2002).
Various intervention studies have also been conducted to investigate whether similar or superior effects could be obtained with concentrated fish oil supplements. The largest of these is known as the GISSI trial, which involved 11,324 survivors of MI, and showed that a low-dose fish oil supplement significantly reduced the risk of all-cause death, non-fatal MI, and non-fatal stroke (Stone 2000). This study was re-analysed and subsequently published again in 2002 (Marchioli et al 2002). This time it specifically showed the reduction in risk of sudden cardiac death was nearly significant at 3 months, accounting for 67% of the overall mortality benefit, became significant at 4 months, and was highly significant at 3.5 years, the end of the study, when it accounted for 59% of the n-3 PUFA advantage in mortality. The reduction observed in all-cause mortality and in cardiovascular mortality resulted mainly from the prevention of sudden cardiac death by the n-3 fatty acids.

**Meta-analyses** In 2002, a high-quality systematic review of 11 RCT on the effect of fish-based dietary or supplemental omega-3 fatty acids on cardiovascular morbidity and mortality in people with CHD found a strongly significant benefit (Bucher et al 2002); however, a 2006 Cochrane review came to a different conclusion (Hooper et al 2006). The review assessed 48 studies that compared at least 6 months of omega-3 fats (vegetable- and fish-based) with placebo or control and used data involving 36 913 participants. Meta-analysis of the studies assessing the effects of increased omega-3 fats on total mortality or combined cardiovascular events found strongly significant statistical heterogeneity. When randomised studies considered to be at medium or high risk of bias were removed, there was no significant effect of omega-3 fats on total mortality; the relative risk was 0.87 (95% confidence interval 0.73 to 1.03, with significant heterogeneity) whereas the cohort studies suggested significant protection, the relative risk was 0.65 (95% confidence interval 0.48 to 0.88, no significant heterogeneity).

It is important to note that until the publication of the DART-2 trial in 2003 (Burr et al 2003), the evidence showed that omega-3 from oily fish or supplements reduced the risks of fatal MI, sudden death, and overall mortality among people with existing disease. Inclusion of the DART-2 trial in the Cochrane review had a major influence on the conclusion, as removing it produced relative risks similar to those in the Bucher review (fatal MI: RR 0.70, 95% confidence interval 0.54 to 0.91; sudden death: RR 0.68, 95% confidence interval 0.42 to 1.10; overall mortality: RR 0.83 (95% confidence interval 0.75 to 0.91). The DART-2 trial included 3114 men with stable angina and tested the hypothesis that the main benefit of omega-3 fat is derived from its anti-arrhythmic action in the presence of chronic disease. Surprisingly, it did not confirm this, showing an excess of sudden and total cardiac deaths most clearly in
participants taking fish oil capsules rather than eating oily fish. Authors of the Cochrane review report that something about the DART-2 study is different from the other included studies; however, further investigation has failed to clarify the issue.

It is possible that, based on this latest review, the effect of omega-3 fats on CVD is smaller than previously thought or that effects in people who have had a MI are protective of death, but the effects in men with angina and no MI are not.

Clinical note — The n-3:n-6 fatty acid balance: implications in cardiovascular disease and cancer
In recent years, attention has been drawn to the importance of not only n-3 fatty acid intake but also its relation to concurrent n-6 fatty acid intake. When there is increased n-3 PUFA in the diet and in our bodies, a shift in AA metabolism occurs, which results in the production of metabolites that have beneficial effects on cardiovascular physiology and cancer incidence and promotion (Leaf 2002). For example, when EPA is available to compete with AA, production of thromboxane A2 (a potent vasoconstrictor and platelet activator) is reduced and production of thromboxane B3 results, which is only weakly active. Additionally, several forms of research implicate n-6 PUFAs as stimulating processes that promote human cancer development and progression, whereas n-3 PUFAs have the opposite effect (Weisburger 1997). Once again, competition with AA is thought to be involved, although several other protective mechanisms have also been identified. Overall, it seems that in order to obtain maximal cardiovascular and chemopreventative benefits, intake of n-3 PUFAs should be increased and intake of n-6 PUFAs must be reduced.

It has been estimated that the ratio of n-6 to n-3 essential fatty acids in the Western diet is some 15:1 to 20:1 or higher, whereas the optimal ratio appears to be closer to 2:1 or 1:1 (Leaf 2002, Simopoulos 1999).

ELEVATED TRIGLYCERIDE LEVELS
DHA and EPA supplementation significantly reduces triglyceride levels and is used as sole therapy in cases of elevation or as adjunctive therapy with cholesterol-lowering medication when indicated. According to Din et al, omega-3 fatty acids reduce triglyceride concentrations in a dose-dependent manner, with intakes of about 4 g/day lowering serum triglycerides by 25–30% (Din et al 2004).

Overall, it appears that the smallest amount of omega-3 PUFA needed to lower serum triglyceride levels significantly is approximately 1 g/day, as provided by a fish diet, or as little as 0.21 g EPA and 0.12 g DHA/day for those with hyperlipidaemia (Weber & Raederstorff 2000).
HYPER TENSION

According to two meta-analyses fish oils have a significant but modest effect dose-dependent, on blood pressure in hypertension (Geleijnse et al 2002, Morris et al 1993). The DHA component is likely to have stronger effects than EPA. In contrast, a 2006 Cochrane review found no significant changes to SBP or DBP with n-3 EFA consumption of vegetable or fish origin (Hooper et al 2006).

The first meta-analysis was of 31 placebo-controlled trials involving 1356 subjects and detected a statistically significant dose–response effect on blood pressure when studies were grouped by omega-3 fatty acid dose: −1.3/−0.7 mmHg at doses ≤3 g/day, −2.9/−1.6 mmHg at 3.3–7 g/day, and −8.1/−5.8 mmHg at 15 g/day (Morris et al 1993). The hypotensive effect was strongest in hypertensive subjects and those with clinically evident atherosclerotic disease or hypercholesterolaemia, whereas no effect was detected in healthy subjects.

The 2002 meta-regression analysis considered the results from 36 trials, of which 22 had a double-blind design, to determine whether fish oil had a significant effect on blood pressure (Geleijnse et al 2002). Fish oil intake (median dose: 3.7 g/day) was found to reduce SBP by 2.1 mmHg and DBP by 1.6 mmHg when all trials were considered. When restricted to double-blind studies only, effects were not as large, but still apparent. Overall, the effects of fish oil on blood pressure tended to be greater in older people (>45 years) and in hypertensive populations (BP ≥140/90 mmHg).

In contrast, the 2006 Cochrane review discussed at length in the previous section failed to detect a significant hypotensive effect for n-3 fatty acids of vegetable or fish origin (Hooper et al 2006).

Would you like methylmercury with that?

There has been increasing public awareness and concern regarding mercury exposure due to the consumption of fish in the diet. This has been partly in response to the health warnings issued by Food Standards Australia and New Zealand (FSANZ) in March 2004 regarding maximal intake of select species of fish during pregnancy and childhood (Bambrick & Kjellstrom 2004). Interestingly, while the main public concern relates to neurodevelopmental toxicity, emerging data shows a relationship between increasing methylmercury (MeHg) exposure and cardiovascular disease, in particular MI (Stern 2005). Mechanisms postulated for this effect include the known oxidative stress and reactive oxygen species observed with in vitro exposures to MeHg, as well as impaired calcium homeostasis and kidney function.

MeHg concentrations in fish and shellfish species, which represent 80–90% of the mercury present, range from <0.1 ppm for shellfish, such as oysters and

Fish oils 433

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
mussels, to multiple parts per million in large predatory fish such as tuna, marlin, swordfish and shark. Consequently, MeHg intake depends on the species of fish consumed, as well as the quantity of fish eaten. Previous American data determined that adults consumed an average of 18 µg MeHg/day, with 80–90% coming from fish and shellfish (Mahaffey et al 2004).

In contrast to the beliefs of many, it is the organic form of mercury, which is a natural geological product and not an industry byproduct, that is toxic to human beings. Inorganic mercury is readily excreted in the urine whereas MeHg accumulates in erythrocytes across a wide range of exposures (Mahaffey et al 2004). Multiple international studies have assessed levels of MeHg exposure to reveal that approximately 10% of the samples have high blood levels. American studies have identified populations who appear to be at greater risk, among them a subpopulation consuming a substantial amount of fish in pursuit of health benefits. Blood MeHg analysis revealed blood mercury levels up to 90 µg/L (Hightower & Moore 2003). This is of concern because levels >5 µg/L have been reported as potentially detrimental in women of childbearing age.

Some researchers propose that the potentially cardiotoxic effects of MeHg is countered by the presence of the omega-3 oils also found within fish, and interestingly there is some overlap between those species with the highest concentrations of both (Bambrick & Kjellstrom 2004). However, there is also concern that the converse is true and MeHg could counteract the health-giving benefits of fish.

While there remains little doubt that the discriminating inclusion of fish is an important and healthy part of the diet, more research is required to better weigh up the risks and benefits of dietary fish. In contrast to the concerns of some consumers, fish oil supplements are not a major source of mercury and as such there is no need to restrict their intake (FSANZ 2004).

**NEUROLOGICAL EFFECTS**

There is evidence that alterations to n-3 fatty acid metabolism and the composition of the phospholipids in serum and membranes are involved in the pathogenesis of some neurological disorders (Ulbricht & Basch 2006). As a result, there has been much interest in understanding the effects of supplemental n-3 fatty acids in neurological development, cognitive function, depression, schizophrenia, and behavioural problems.

**Cognitive function** Low serum DHA level is considered a significant risk factor for the development of Alzheimer’s dementia (Conquer et al 2000). Additionally, both...
DHA and total n-3 fatty acid levels are significantly lower in cognitively impaired but non-demented people and people with other dementias. One of the first interventional studies was a small RCT of 4.3 g/day DHA in 20 elderly nursing home residents, assessing the efficacy of fish oil in the treatment of vascular dementia. DHA supplementation resulted in a small improvement in dementia rating scores within 3 months of treatment (Terano et al 1994).

The results from numerous animal studies, demonstrating neuroprotection from the n-3 EFAs and some slowing of neurodegeneration, appear promising (Hashimoto et al 2005, Mucke & Pitas 2004); however, more clinical trials are required to confirm these positive findings.

Alzheimer’s dementia  A 2003 prospective study conducted with a random sample of 815 older volunteers (aged 65–94 years) who initially were unaffected by Alzheimer’s dementia (AD) found that consumption of fish once weekly was associated with a 60% reduced risk of developing the disease compared with those who rarely or never ate fish, after adjustment for age and other risk factors (Morris et al 2003). A review of the evidence prepared for the US Department of Health and Human Services in 2005 concluded that there is a significant correlation between fish consumption and reduced incidence of AD. Total n-3 EFA and DHA consumption correlated with this risk reduction; however, ALA and EPA did not (Maclean et al 2005). A recent Cochrane review came to a similar conclusion and reported that there is a growing body of evidence from biological, observational and epidemiological studies to suggest a protective effect of omega-3 PUFAs against dementia; however, further research is required before firm conclusions can be made (Lim et al 2006).

Pregnancy, breast feeding and infants  Despite numerous studies demonstrating a positive relationship in mothers and infants consuming greater amounts of EFAs on subsequent cognitive development and IQ of their offspring (Cohen et al 2005, Helland et al 2003, Williams et al 2001), the findings of the Evidence Report/Technology Assessment prepared for the Agency of Healthcare Research and Quality US Department of Health and Human Services concludes that based on the small number of current well-designed studies there is no conclusive evidence of any benefit Lauritzen et al 2001 (Moher 2005). It makes the observation that studies observing a positive relationship between omega-3 oils and cognition are those which assessed children under 1 year of age, whereas studies of older children did not maintain a significant statistical relationship.

According to the WHO and FAO the pregnant woman should take at least 2.6 g of n-3 EFAs, incorporating 100–300 mg of DHA, daily to look after the needs of the fetus (Bambrick & Kjellstrom 2004). Postnatal deficiencies have been associated with
reduced visual acuity, poor neurodevelopment and ill effects on behaviour. Breast-fed infants generally receive sufficient DHA if the maternal diet is adequate, but it is not known whether formula-fed infants receive adequate amounts if their formula does not contain PUFAs.  

Depression  The balance between n-6 and n-3 fatty acids influences the metabolism of biogenic amines, an interaction that may be relevant to changes in mood and behaviour (Bruinsma & Taren 2000). In several observational studies, low concentrations of n 3 PUFAs predicted impulsive behaviours and greater severity of depression. Additionally early research by Horrobin et al (1999) revealed that almost all studies on depression have found increased PG₂ series or related thromboxanes and there is evidence that the older antidepressants (i.e. MAOIs and TCAs) either inhibit PFG synthesis or are powerful antagonists of their actions. Going one step further are the findings of a number of studies showing a correlation between low erythrocyte n-3 EFAs and suicide attempts; one of these demonstrated an eightfold difference in suicide attempt risk between the lowest and highest RBC EPA level quartiles (Huan et al 2004). Researchers from Belgium have also speculated about a seasonal variation in EFA status that correlates with seasonal patterns of suicide (De Vriese et al 2004); however, studies on larger populations of depressed people are required to confirm this link.

In spite of a plethora of epidemiological data correlating n-3 status with a range of depressive disorders, including major depression, postpartum depression and seasonal affective disorder, there are very few interventional studies. One conducted in 2005 involved 77 patients with depression who were randomly assigned to receive either 8 g/day of DHA-enriched (1.23%) fish oil or olive oil, in addition to existing medication, over 12 weeks. Interestingly, the fish oil group did not show significant improvement over the olive oil group, but both groups improved in mood over baseline. This was significant at 2 weeks and remained so throughout the study (Silvers et al 2005).

In response to a lack of demonstrated benefit, the authors of this trial note that previous successful interventions have predominantly used purified fish oil preparations, particularly ethyl-EPA, and therefore variable make-up of standard fish oil preparations may explain the inconsistency of results. Adding to the riddle is a question over optimal dosage and whether olive oil was in fact an inert placebo devoid of activity (2002).

A randomised study was conducted of 28 children aged between 6 and 12 years who were diagnosed as having depression according to the Children’s Depression Rating Scale (CDRS), Children’s Depression Inventory (CDI), and Clinical Global
Impression (CGI) (Nemets et al 2006). After 1 month of treatment, omega-3 fatty acid supplementation was shown to have highly significant effects on symptoms using the above three scales.

**Aggressive behaviour**  The DHA component of fish oils has been used to reduce aggressive behaviour in children and adolescents. One placebo-controlled study of 42 college students showed that DHA supplementation (1.5–1.8 g/day) prevented an increase in aggression toward others at times of mental stress (Hamazaki et al 1996); however, another placebo-controlled trial found that DHA supplementation had no effect on aggressive behaviour under non-stressful conditions (Hamazaki et al 1998).

**Attention-deficit hyperactivity disorder**  It has been reported that many children with ADHD have EFA deficiency (mainly n-3 FA) with a high correlation between severity of symptoms and severity of deficiency (Yehuda et al 2005). Deficiency may be due to insufficient dietary intake or inefficient conversion of EFA to longer chain fatty acids. Several studies have investigated the effects of supplemental fatty acids to children with ADHD with mixed results; however, interpretation of findings is difficult because of the use of different treatments, measurements and subject selection (Richardson & Puri 2000).

**Schizophrenia**  According to a 2003 review, four out of five placebo-controlled double-blind trials of EPA in the treatment of schizophrenia have produced positive results (Peet 2003).

**CANCER**

It is well established that dietary fat has an influence on human cancer development and progression. Several forms of research implicate n-6 PUFAs as stimulators of these reactions, whereas n-3 PUFAs have the opposite effect and have been shown to inhibit development and progression (Leitzmann et al 2004, Weisburger 1997). Therefore, it is the ratio of n-3 to n-6 PUFAs intake that appears to be an important factor influencing cancer incidence and progression.

This observation is supported by both animal and epidemiologic studies. The largest to date involved 24 European countries and identified a significant inverse correlation with fish and fish oil consumption, when expressed as a proportion of total or animal fat, for both male and female colorectal cancer and for female breast cancer (Caygill et al 1996). Importantly, the protective effects were only detected in countries with a high animal fat intake, suggesting that fish oil protects against the promotional effects of animal fat in carcinogenesis.

**Breast and prostate cancer**  A 2003 review has found that overall the evidence remains unclear as to whether dietary fish or fish oil consumption exerts a protective effect against the development of breast and prostate cancers (Terry et al 2003). The
assessment of EPA and DHA intake and their relation to n-6 fatty acid intake and cancer incidence still requires further examination before conclusions can be confidently made. An updated review conducted by the same researchers in 2004 (Terry et al 2004) also reached a similar conclusion; however, they also observed that those studies that assess omega-3 intake concomitant with the omega-6 consumption were most likely to yield a statistically significant inverse relationship between fish oils and breast and prostate cancers. Once again this reinforces the understanding that the fats due to interrelated metabolism and actions should not be viewed independently.

A prospective cohort study in the USA of 47 866 men aged 40–75 years with no cancer history were assessed using a 131-item semiquantitative food-frequency questionnaire administered annually over 14 years, as part of the Health Professionals Follow-Up study. Nutrient intake data from this trial suggests an association between ALA and advanced prostate cancer, but an inverse relationship with the ALA metabolites, EPA and DHA. Earlier studies investigating the relationship between ALA and prostate cancer have had mixed results while the inverse relationship with EPA/DHA appears to be largely supported. Again the authors demonstrate that ratios of omega 3:6 appear to be highly influential in conveyed risk (Leitzmann 2004).

**Colorectal cancer**  Both EPA and DHA and their main dietary source, fish oil, have been shown to exert antineoplastic effects in colorectal cancer (Llor et al 2003). Fish oil supplementation, in one study, providing 4.1 g EPA and 3.6 g DHA per day in patients with sporadic adenomatous colorectal polyps was reported to reduce the percentage of cells in the S-phase in the upper crypt of the rectal mucosa (Antl et al 1992). The evidence to date as reviewed in 2004 by Roynette et al suggests a primary preventative effect but some residual ambiguity over the safety of n-3 PUFAs with respect to secondary tumour formation.

**DIABETES**
Increasing the intake of n-3 FAs has been shown to be both preventative in a healthy population and beneficial in people with diabetes (Montori et al 2000, Nettleton & Katz 2004, Sirtori and Galli 2002, Sirtori et al 1997). Although there have been random reports of improved glucose control with fish oil supplementation, a review published in 2004 cites two large meta-analyses of trials with n-3 long-chain PUFAs or fish oil in subjects with diabetes, which confirmed no adverse or positive effect on glucose control or impact on glycated haemoglobin.

A meta-analysis of 18 trials found that fish oil supplementation lowers plasma triglyceride levels in type 2 diabetic subjects; however, a possible rise in plasma LDL-cholesterol may occur (Montori et al 2000). Additionally, no significant effect occurs
on glycaemic control, total cholesterol or HDL-cholesterol. In addition to this, more recent studies reveal an average of 7.4% increase in HDL levels concomitant with a 25% reduction in tryglycerides in response to 203 g of EPA/DHA supplementation over 6 months (Sirtori et al 1998). Such findings are supported by the results of other trials in the diabetic population (Nettleton & Katz 2005).

**WEIGHT REDUCTION**
To date there is only limited evidence that n-3 EFAs may be associated with reduced incidence of obesity, ease of weight loss, and maintenance of body weight in this population (Nettleton & Katz 2004).

**INFLAMMATORY DISEASES**
Numerous clinical trials have investigated the effects of fish oil supplementation in several inflammatory and autoimmune diseases, such as rheumatoid arthritis, Crohn’s disease, ulcerative colitis, lupus erythematosus and migraine headaches (Belluzzi 2002, Belluzzi et al 1996, Miura et al 1998, Simopoulos 2002). Although not all trials have produced positive results, many of the placebo-controlled trials reveal significant benefit in chronic disease, including decreased disease activity and sometimes, reduced requirement for anti-inflammatory medicines (Adam et al 2003).

**Rheumatoid arthritis** Of the inflammatory diseases, the use of fish oil supplementation is most widely seen in RA. According to multiple randomised, controlled studies, fish oil supplements have been consistently shown to reduce symptoms in RA, such as the number of tender joints on physical examination and the amount of morning stiffness (Adam et al 2003, Cleland et al 2003, Kremer 2000, Ulbricht & Basch 2006, Volker et al 2000). Generally, supplements are taken daily as adjuncts to standard therapy with clinical effects appearing after 12 weeks. A dose ranging from 30 mg to 40 mg/kg of EPA and DHA daily has been used successfully, although some studies have found a minimum of 3 g/day is required.

Results from a double-blind crossover study suggest that the beneficial effects obtained from fish oil capsules is further enhanced when combined with an anti-inflammatory diet providing less than 90 mg/day of AA (Adam et al 2003).

Although the anti-inflammatory activity of fish oil supplementation is thought to be chiefly responsible for symptom relieving effects, there is also evidence that n-3 fatty acids can modulate the expression and activity of degradation factors that cause cartilage destruction (Curtis et al 2000).

In spite of these positive findings, an evidence report conducted for the US Department of Health and Human Services in 2004 concludes that, upon meta-analysis of the trials to date, there is little evidence of statistically significant relief of
either objective or subjective features of RA, including swollen joint count and erythrocyte sedimentation rate, with the use of fish oils (MacLean et al 2004). While the studies incorporated met the strict methodological inclusion criteria of the review committee, it is important to note that the studies selected are all of reasonably small sample size and were conducted in the early 1990s, with more recent evidence failing to be incorporated.

A 2005 randomised study published after the above report was released has found that fish oil supplements (3 g/day), whether taken alone or in combination with olive oil (9.6 mL) produced a statistically significant improvement ($P < 0.05$) compared to placebo on several clinical parameters in RA (Berbert et al 2005). Significant improvements were observed for joint pain intensity, right and left handgrip strength after 12 and 24 weeks, duration of morning stiffness, onset of fatigue, Ritchie’s articular index for pain joints after 24 weeks, ability to bend down to pick up clothing from the floor, and getting in and out of a car after 24 weeks. The group using a combination of oils showed additional improvements with respect to duration of morning stiffness after 12 weeks, patient global assessment after 12 and 24 weeks, ability to turn taps on and off after 24 weeks, and rheumatoid factor after 24 weeks. In addition, this group showed a significant improvement in patient global assessment compared with fish oils alone after 12 weeks.

Based on these results, it appears that while fish oils will not improve all parameters of RA, overall they have demonstrated symptomatic relief in the majority and result in significantly reduced use of anti-inflammatory and corticosteroid use, a fact MacLean et al (2004) acknowledges and which is confirmed by a 2005 review by Stamp et al. There appears to be little evidence of sustained improvements following cessation of the supplements.

A large prospective cohort study ($n = 57,053$) investigating the association between dietary factors and risk of RA found that each increase in intake of 30 g fatty fish ($\geq 8$ g fat/100 g fish) per day was associated with 49% reduction in the risk of RA ($P = 0.06$); however, a medium intake of fatty fish (3–7 g fat/100 g fish) was associated with significantly increased risk of RA (Pedersen et al 2005). No associations were found between risk of RA and intake of a range of other dietary factors, including long-chain fatty acids, olive oil, vitamins A, E, C and D, zinc, selenium, iron, and meat. The authors caution that due to the limited number of patients who developed RA during follow up, it is not yet possible to make firm conclusions.
ASTHMA
Because n-3 PUFAs exhibit anti-inflammatory activity and epidemiological evidence has demonstrated a correlation between fish intake and a decreased risk of asthma and improved lung function, they have been used in the management of asthma (Wong 2005). Recent evidence suggests this protective effect may extend back as far as adequate fetal n-3 EFA exposure and a reduced incidence of asthma in the offspring (Salam et al 2005).

A 2002 Cochrane review of nine RCT conducted between 1986 and 2001 concluded that there was no consistent effect on any of the analysable outcomes: forced expiratory volume in 1 second, peak flow rate, asthma symptoms, asthma medication use or bronchial hyperreactivity (Woods et al 2002). One of the RCTs, conducted with children, showed that when fish oil supplementation was combined with dietary changes, positive results were obtained, as evidenced by improved peak flow and reduced asthma medication use.

Since then, a number of positive studies have been published. The equivocal nature of the results in asthma trials, as documented by a review in the Journal of the American Dietetic Association (Wong 2005) may be clarified in future with the identification of a subtype of asthma more likely to respond to EFA manipulation. Interestingly in recent years the attention has moved away from investigating atopic asthma towards other populations such as athletes.

One randomised, double-blind, crossover study of 16 non-atopic asthmatic patients with documented exercise-induced bronchoconstriction (EIB) compared the effects of 3.2 g of EPA and 2.0 g DHA per day and placebo capsules for 3 weeks. During treatment with fish oils, subjects demonstrated improved pulmonary function to below the diagnostic EIB threshold, which was associated with a concurrent reduction in bronchodilator use. Measurement of leukotriene B(4) and B(5) levels also confirmed a significant reversal of the inflammatory picture (Mickleborough et al 2006).

DERMATITIS
Atopic dermatitis  A double-blind multicentre study involving 145 patients with moderate to severe atopic dermatitis showed that n-3 fatty acids (6 g/day) improved clinical symptom scores by 30% after 4 months’ treatment (Soyland et al 1994). The results were confirmed by the total subjective clinical score reported by the patients. An earlier, 12-week, prospective double-blind study produced similar results with a dose of 10 g/day (fish oil) improving overall severity of atopic dermatitis and reducing scaling (Bjorneboe et al 1989).
OTHER USES
Fish oil supplements are also used in the management of acute respiratory distress syndrome, psoriasis, multiple sclerosis, osteoporosis and dysmenorrhoea, and in children with dyslexia.

DOSAGE RANGE
- Fish should be considered part of a healthy diet for everybody and be consumed at least twice a week. Care should be taken to avoid intake of fish known or suspected to contain higher levels of mercury.
- Additional administration of n-3 PUFA supplements should be considered in specific groups.
- Fish meals should consist of deep sea oily fish, whereas fried or processed fish containing partially hydrogenated fats and salted or pickled fish should be avoided.

CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE
Secondary prevention trials after MI indicate that consumption of 0.5–1.8 g/day of EPA and DHA from fish or fish oil supplements may be beneficial. Intake of marine-derived omega-3 fatty acids can be increased through diet or with fish oil supplements.
- An expert US panel of nutrition scientists has recommended an intake of 0.65 g/day whereas the British Nutrition Foundation’s recommendation is 1.2 g/day (Din et al 2004).
- National Heart Foundation/Cardiac Society of Australia and New Zealand: >2 serves/week.
- Patients who have experienced coronary artery bypass surgery with venous grafts: 4 g/day of n-3 PUFA.
- Moderate hypertension: 4 g/day of fish oils.
- Elevated triglyceride levels: 1–4.6 g/day of fish oils.

OTHER CONDITIONS
- Aggression induced by mental stress: DHA supplementation, 1.5–1.8 g/day.
- Atopic dermatitis: 6 g/day fish oils.
- Colorectal cancer: 4.1 g EPA + 3.6 g DHA daily
- Dementia: DHA supplementation, 4.32 g/day.
- Exercise-induced asthma in non-atopic individuals: 3.2 g EPA + 2.0 g DHA daily
- Pregnancy: According to the WHO and FAO the pregnant woman should take at least 2.6 g of n-3 EFAs, incorporating 100–300 mg of DHA daily to look after the needs of the fetus.
- Rheumatoid arthritis: 30–40 mg/kg body weight of EPA and DHA daily.
ADVERSE REACTIONS
Fish oil supplementation is generally safe and well tolerated. The few side-effects reported are usually mild and can include gastrointestinal discomfort and loose bowels, halitosis, and a fishy odour of the skin and urine.

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS

ANTIPLATELET AGENTS
Theoretically, concomitant use with antiplatelet agents may increase the risk of bleeding; however, one study has suggested that the combined effects may be beneficial (Engstrom et al 2001) — observe patients taking this combination.

ANTICOAGULANTS
Bleeding time is increased at very high doses of 12 g/day according to one clinical study. Doses <12 g should be used with caution and very high doses >12 g avoided unless under medical supervision.

NSAIDS
Additional anti-inflammatory effects are theoretically possible with concurrent use of fish oil supplements, suggesting a beneficial interaction. Drug dosage may require modification.

PRAVASTATIN
Low-dose pravastatin combined with fish oil supplementation is more effective than pravastatin alone for changing the lipid profile after renal transplantation, according to one clinical study — potential beneficial interaction.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
One area of concern is the growing problem of heavy metal contamination found in fish, specifically mercury. In areas where contamination is possible, fish oil supplements may represent a safer option. According to the Australia New Zealand Food Standards Code fish with higher levels of mercury include: swordfish, southern bluefin tuna, barramundi, ling, orange roughy, rays and shark. Fish considered to have lower levels of mercury include: mackerel, silver warehou, atlantic salmon, canned salmon and canned tuna in oil, herrings and sardines.

People with bleeding disorders should take fish oil supplements under medical supervision. Suspend use of high dose supplements (>10 g) 1 week before major surgery.

PREGNANCY USE
Fish oils appear to be safe during pregnancy at dietary doses.
PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING

- As precursors of eicosanoids, polyunsaturated fatty acids found in fish oils exert a wide influence over many important physiological processes.
- They have demonstrated anti-inflammatory, immunological, neurological, antiplatelet and chemopreventative effects, and a range of beneficial actions within the cardiovascular system.
- Daily ingestion of at least 1 g EPA and DHA (equivalent to fish eaten at least twice weekly) may result in a reduction in total mortality, cardiovascular mortality and morbidity.
- Trials generally support the use of supplements in a range of inflammatory and autoimmune diseases, such as rheumatoid arthritis and atopic dermatitis, elevated triglycerides, hypertension and other cardiovascular conditions, poor cognitive function and diabetes. Preliminary research suggests a possible role in depression.
- People with bleeding disorders should take fish oil supplements under medical supervision and high doses should be avoided 1 week prior to major surgery.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What will this supplement do for me?
Regular consumption of fish oils may reduce total mortality, cardiovascular mortality, and morbidity. Additionally, beneficial effects have been demonstrated in a wide variety of conditions.

When will it start to work?
This will depend on the dosage taken and indication for use.

Are there any safety issues?
People with bleeding disorders or taking blood thinning drugs should take fish oil supplements under medical supervision. High-dose fish oil supplements should be avoided prior to major surgery to avoid risk of excessive bleeding.

REFERENCES


Fish oils 445


Houston MC. Nutraceuticals, vitamins, antioxidants, and minerals in the prevention and treatment of hypertension. Progr Cardiovasc Dis 47.6 (2005): 396-449.


Fish oils 446


Fish oils 448

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
**Flaxseed oil**

**Historical note.** For over 5000 years flaxseed in its various forms has been a part of the diet of people in Asia, Africa and Europe. It has a long history of use as both a food and a medicine, with the seed being most commonly used. The oil was also popular and has been a traditional food of the Egyptians from the time of the Pharaohs to the present day. The oil is also consumed by the Chinese, who documented its medicinal properties in the Pen-T’s AO, the Great Chinese Pharmacopeia (Judd 1995). Its Latin name *usitatissimum* means ‘most useful’, suggesting its various uses have been recognised for centuries (Kolodziejczyk & Fedec 1995). Interestingly research into its nutritional properties and effects on human health were not studied in earnest until the 1980s (Cunane & Thompson 1995). In Australia in 1981, cultivation of a low alpha-linolenic acid variety, now known as Linola, was pioneered in an attempt to improve the stability of the oil and increase its commercial viability as a cooking oil. Such modifications were successful and resulted in ALA content <3.0% and a higher concentration of linoleic acid than the naturally occurring form (Bhatty 1995). These modified oils are not used for medicinal purposes.

**OTHER NAMES**
Flax oil and linseed oil.

Internationally it is accepted that ‘flaxseed’ refers to products for human consumption whereas ‘linseed oil’ refers to products that have been denatured, made unfit for human consumption, and used in commercial products, such as paints and varnishes.

**BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY**
*Linium usitatissimum* (family Linaceae)

**PLANT PART USED**
Fixed oil is derived from the seeds of the plant. Due to the highly polyunsaturated nature of the oil (≈73%), extracts are obtained by cold-pressing rather than heat extraction. Flaxseed oil (FSO) is highly susceptible to photo-oxygenation, so it is packaged in opaque bottles. It is also susceptible to auto-oxidation, resulting in the production of hydroperoxides and aldehydes that can give a rancid flavour.
Encapsulated FSO is considered more stable, particularly when anti-oxidants are added (Kolodziejczyk & Fedec 1995).

**CHEMICAL COMPONENTS**

Flaxseed oil contains several types of fatty acids (FAs). It contains a high concentration of alpha-linolenic acid (ALA), ranging from 40% to 60%, and is the most concentrated plant source of omega-3 FA identified to date.

FSO also contains unsaturated FAs, such as linolenic, linolenic acid, linoleic acid and oleic acid. Linoleic acid (LA or C18:2n-6) and oleic acid each contribute 15% to the total FA content of the oil. Due to the range of FA present, it contains precursors for the omega-3, -6 and -9 families. FSO may also contain varying amounts of the lignan, secoisolariciresinol diglycoside (SDG), which is a precursor to enterodiol and enterolactone.

Flax seeds contain 41% fat, 28% dietary fibre, 21% protein and significantly higher amounts of lignans, which behave as phytoestrogens (Morris 2001).

However, this review focuses on FSO.

---

**Clinical note — Is FSO equivalent to the fish oils?**

Flaxseed oil has been commercially promoted as the vegetarian or vegan alternative to fish oils, with many of the health benefits ascribed to fish oils also being attributed to the oil. A review of the literature suggests that FSO is unlikely to be equipotent with fish oils in the treatment of a variety of conditions.

The ALA present in FSO can theoretically undergo desaturation and elongation to synthesise eicosapentanoic acid (EPA) and docosahexaenoic (DHA), which are found in fish oil; however, most studies using oral FSO intake demonstrate only moderate increases in EPA and DHA remains unchanged (Allman et al 1995, Kelley et al 1993, Mantzioris et al 1994, Nestel et al 1997). Although results from one early study suggest that increases in DHA levels may be achieved with long-term supplementation (Cunnae et al 1993), more recent studies fail to confirm this result (Harper et al 2006, Hussein et al 2005).

Conversion rates of ALA to EPA and docosapentanoic acid (DPA) are reported to be <10% (Harris et al 1997) and approximately 8%, respectively, whereas the DHA yield ranges from 0% to 0.5%. One explanation for this is that DHA synthesis is under separate regulatory control, a hypothesis supported by enzymatic studies (Burdge 2004). This means a 20 mL serve of FSO, providing 11.1 g of ALA, would result in a maximum of 880 mg DPA and 5 mg of DHA.

Adding to this puzzle is a wide range of other variables that can inhibit the conversion of ALA into its metabolites. For instance, high dietary intake of linoleic
acid (LA), common in Western cultures, inhibits both the uptake of ALA and its conversion to long-chain metabolites. An interesting study conducted in 1998, which used radioactively labelled ALA, showed that a diet high in omega-6 fats reduced conversion by 40–50% (Gerster 1998). This adds weight to the argument that the ratios of FAs may have the primary influence on their resultant health benefits. The authors of this study suggest that the ratio of omega-6:omega-3 should not exceed 4.

Other studies have reported abnormal or compromised activity of the delta-6 and delta-5 desaturase enzymes in the elderly, diabetics and patients with a variety of metabolic disorders, as well as those individuals with increased dietary intake of saturated fats, trans-fatty acids and alcohol (David & Kris-Etherton 2003). Studies using radioisotopes of ALA have revealed significant gender differences in conversion capability, with women demonstrating higher levels of FA metabolites. It is believed this is due to their higher oestrogen levels, a theory supported by the increased conversion capacity evident in women taking synthetic oestrogens and speculated as representing a physiological adaptation that ensures adequate EFA delivery to the foetus in pregnancy (Burdge 2004).

**MAIN ACTIONS**

The main actions of FSO have been attributed to its high ALA content. ALA is subject to three different metabolic fates: (a) incorporation into structural, transport or storage pools, (b) beta-oxidation as an energy source and (c) elongation and further desaturation to form EPA, DPA and DHA. It appears that all three contribute to the biological effects of this oil.

ALA’s direct role in cell membrane structure is likely to be minor, with ALA representing less than 0.5% of the total FA in cell membranes and blood lipids in healthy adults. However, its limited propensity to generate the n-3 metabolites, EPA and DHA, the major FAs in cell membranes, could represent an indirect effect via this mechanism (Burdge 2004).

Studies exploring the metabolism of ALA have revealed that 22% of ALA undergoes beta-oxidation in women and 33% in men. Once broken down the carbon chain can be used as fuel or in the synthesis of cholesterol and other fatty acids such as palmitic, palmitoleic, stearic and oleic acids de novo (Burdge 2004). FSO also influences the eicosanoid production cascade via conversion of the n-3 and n-6 parent FAs in FSO to their respective metabolites.
It is also thought that some of the actions of FSO may be independent of its FA content and can be attributed to the lignan SDG. This has been partly supported by research conducted by Prasad et al in 1998 and again in 1999.

**ANTI-INFLAMMATORY**

Metabolites of ALA and LA act as substrates for the formation of the anti-inflammatory eicosanoids, comprising prostaglandins, thromboxanes, and leukotrienes (Gerster 1998). ALA suppresses AA production by interfering with the conversion of LA to AA, and reduces the biosynthesis of inflammatory eicosanoids, although not to the same extent as EPA and DHA (Morris 2001). Cytokines, another important group of inflammatory mediators, are generated in response to these eicosanoids and are influenced by changes in the n-3:n-6 ratios in cell membranes (James et al 2000). In one study, ingestion of FSO (equivalent to 13.7 g/day ALA) for 4 weeks by healthy male subjects resulted in a 30% reduction in TNF-alpha, 31% reduction in IL-1-beta, 29% reduction in eicosanoids thromboxane B(2) and 30% reduction in PGE2 (Caughey et al 1996).

In animal models ALA has consistently demonstrated eicosanoid-mediated anti-inflammatory effects; however, the extent of these has been dependent on the levels of both ALA and LA in the diet, duration of use and type of tissue studied (Cunnane & Thompson 1995).

**IMMUNE EFFECTS**

Evidence of ALA deficiency has been reported in patients on prolonged TPN, which resulted in reduced T-helper cells to below the normal range and impaired proliferation of peripheral blood mononuclear cells. Although supplementation with small doses of ALA corrected these abnormalities, the effect of ALA on human immune cells appears to be paradoxical, with evidence of immune function inhibition at higher doses (≥40 mL/day FSO) (Kelley 1995).

**CARDIOVASCULAR EFFECTS**

FSO and ALA have been studied as possible agents in the prevention or treatment of cardiovascular disease because ALA can be converted to long-chain (n-3) PUFA in humans and may potentially reproduce the beneficial effects of fish oils on risk factors. The numerous studies available have suggested that FSO and ALA exert a myriad of different mechanisms in the body, which can be beneficial in cardiovascular disease; however, inconsistent results have meant that much is still unknown and more research is required.
ANTITHROMBOTIC AND ANTIPLATELET ACTIVITY
The question of whether supplementation with ALA affects platelet aggregation remains unclear. A major determinant appears to be the degree of conversion to EPA (Garg et al 1989). When there is an increase in total EPA and reduced AA, due to ALA inhibition of LA conversion, the result is EPA replacing AA in the cell membrane and a decrease in thromboxane synthesis. In addition, SDG, another component of FSO, is metabolised to enterolactone and enterodiol and these substances may have antiplatelet-activating factor activity. Due to the variable lignan content of FSO it is difficult to determine the clinical significance of this (Prasad 1999). Studies assessing the actual anti-aggregatory effect of FSO in humans have produced mixed results.

REDUCED ENDOTHELIAL INFLAMMATION
A number of studies have confirmed that consumption of high-dose FSO reduces endothelium inflammation. One study assessing the cardiovascular effects of a diet in which 6.5% of total kilocalorie intake was contributed by ALA and compared with the Standard American Diet (SAD) showed that the ALA-enriched diet produced a 75% reduction in C-reactive protein, a 19% reduction in cellular adhesion molecule, and a 15.6% reduction in vascular cellular adhesion molecule (VCAM) (Zhao et al 2004). An earlier study had reported these findings, demonstrating a 28% reduction in VCAM with additional reductions in soluble E-selectin (17%) (Thies et al 2001).

LIPID-LOWERING
Whole flaxseed is the form most commonly investigated in lipid-lowering studies, because the high fibre content and ALA appear to act synergistically, whereas there are few studies using FSO. Those that have been conducted with FSO have produced conflicting results with an almost 50/50 weighting of research showing no effect or a positive one. At worst FSO has resulted in increases in fasting triacylglycerol concentrations and lower HDL-cholesterol (Bemelmans et al 2002, Finnegan et al 2003, Wilkinson et al 2005) and at best it has been described in earlier studies as having comparable effects with bio-equivalent doses of fish oils (Harris 1997, Singer et al 1986). The reality probably lies somewhere in between; however, further investigation is required. The results of the small study of 57 men by Wilkinson et al (2005), who substituted 45 g of fat per day with 15 g/day ALA derived from FSO over 12 weeks adds to the puzzle. While confirming the mixed cardiovascular effects noted above, this treatment group also demonstrated a reduction of total cholesterol by 12.3% in comparison to a reduction of 7.3% in the group receiving equivalent LA.
The same equivocal trend is evident from studies assessing the effects of FSO on lipoproteins. Zhao’s trial (2004) using an ALA-enriched diet showed that this change resulted in a reduction in apolipoproteins A1 and B, the latter by almost 10%.

**ANTI-ARRHYTHMIC**

Three recent studies have identified an anti-arrhythmic effect mediated by ALA (Albert et al 2005, Ander et al 2004, Christensen et al 2005) although one meta-analysis concluded otherwise (Mathan et al 2005). Although the majority of research has been conducted in animals, one of the most interesting human trials involved 106 women with a mean age of 59.5 years referred for coronary angiography due to suspected coronary artery disease. Following adipose sampling for ALA levels and monitoring of 24-hour heart rate variability (HRV), it was concluded that a positive and independent association was present between ALA in adipose tissue and HRV, which was even stronger in smokers (Christensen et al 2005).

**ANTI-ATHEROGENIC**

Earlier positive findings and recent promising epidemiological data have been substantially challenged by RCTs of FSO in atherosclerosis. Following earlier positive outcomes in cardiovascular disease trials with whole flaxseed, a 1999 study showed that a low-ALA variety could produce comparable results with the earlier trials, suggesting that the anti-atherogenic properties of flaxseed are independent of its ALA content (Prasad 1999).

More recent large-scale epidemiological studies continue to suggest a relationship between higher ALA intake and reduced coronary artery calcification (Djousse et al 2005); however, there is ongoing criticism that important variables have not been sufficiently accounted for, such as corresponding reductions in trans-FAs (Harris 2005, Wilkinson et al 2005).

**ANTIPROLIFERATIVE**

ALA has demonstrated the capacity to inhibit tumour progression in animal models of mammary tumour (Chen et al 2002, Cognault et al 2000); however, the clinical significance of these findings needs to be examined further. An immunostimulant action, which is both eicosanoid and non-eicosanoid mediated, has been suggested as one possible mechanism of action. Another theory suggests that through ALA’s competitive inhibition of LA, tumour cells may not receive sufficient LA, which would inhibit further cell growth (Johnston 1995). It is interesting to observe that higher dietary ALA intake is associated with a reduction in cancer deaths; however, this is not seen with higher EPA/DHA intakes, suggesting that the protective effect is not reliant on the conversion of ALA to EPA/DHA (Cunnane 1995). In addition, results from
epidemiological studies show an association between low ALA consumption in humans and increased cancer deaths in general (Dolecek 1992).

Animal studies testing SDG and its metabolites from the seeds have produced promising results and suggest that they may act as selective oestrogen receptor modulating agents and therefore play a protective role against oestrogen-dependent cancers (Kitts et al 1999, Wang et al 2005).

**INSULIN SENSITISING**

Preliminary animal studies suggest a protective role for ALA against the development of insulin resistance and an ability to counter the associated oxidative stress (Ghafoorunissa & Natarajan 2005, Suresh & Das 2003). Clinical trials are required to determine the significance of these findings.

**CLINICAL USE**

**REDUCED MORTALITY IN CORONARY HEART DISEASE**

The most likely mechanism by which ALA may prevent coronary heart disease (CHD) mortality is by reducing cardiac arrhythmia. In Western populations, almost 50% of all deaths from cardiovascular disease can be attributed to sudden cardiac death and the majority of sudden deaths are directly caused by acute ventricular arrhythmia (Brouwer et al 2004). A review in 2001 (Lanzmann-Petithory) and a meta-analysis of three studies in 2004 (Brouwer et al) both found in favour of a protective effect from increased ALA consumption against fatal CHD (RR 0.24). The dose associated with this trend was small; only 1–3 g/day ALA higher than controls (Brouwer et al 2004). A study published in 2005, which derived data from the Nurses’ Health Study (Albert et al), found that women consuming ALA in the highest two quintiles had a 38–40% lower risk of sudden cardiac death than women in the lowest quintile; however, the protective effect did not extend to other fatal forms of CHD or non-fatal myocardial infarction.

Much criticism has been directed at those researchers wanting to extrapolate prescriptive advice from these findings. An editorial by Harris (2005) notes that only one primary prevention study with ALA in CHD has been conducted and that was in the 1960s. The 1-year trial involved 13,578 Norwegian men and compared 10 g of FSO (providing 5.5 g/day ALA) with a sunflower seed placebo. In the analysis there was no demonstrable difference in end-points between the two groups. Recent attempts to explain this lack of effect, such as high baseline n-3 consumption by this population, appear to be well founded (Mozaffarian et al 2005).

There is an urgent need for RCTs using FSO in suitable populations to clarify the relationship between ALA and CHD mortality.
ANTICLOTTING

There has been a surprising number of studies investigating the influence of ALA from FSO on coagulation and fibrinolysis, and enormous variation in results. Methodological issues have plagued the overall quality of evidence, with small sample sizes, inconsistent methodologies and diverse sample characteristics making interpretation difficult.

One early study compared different dietary ratios of n-6 and n-3 EFAs in relation to prostanooid production in a group of normolipidaemic men (Kelley et al 1993). The high ALA dietary intervention constituted an overall n-6:n-3 ratio of 2.7 versus control ratios of up to 27.4. Following the 18 days of the intervention, groups showed significant differences in measured outcomes, notably, that 6-keto-PGF$_{1\alpha}$ was significantly higher following the high ALA diet but no evidence of significant effect on bleeding time or thromboxane B2 production. A second study published in the same year also failed to show an effect on clotting; however, the dose of FSO used was only 4.3 g/day (Kelley et al 1993). In contrast, the results of a study using a much larger dose of 40 g/day of FSO over 23 days in 11 healthy men showed that FSO significantly reduced collagen-induced aggregation response when compared to 40 g/day sunflower seed oil (Allman et al 1995).

A follow-up study of 29 healthy males that was conducted over 6 weeks investigated the effects of a diet in which approximately 7% of the total kilocalories from polyunsaturated fat was made up of either an ALA-rich (n-3:n-6 = 1:1.2) or LA-rich diet (n-3:n-6 = 1:21). The ALA-enriched diet resulted in triple the EPA phospholipid levels compared to the LA-enriched diet, but had no demonstrable effect on coagulation or fibrinolysis, other than an increase in the ratio of activated protein C. The authors speculated that the latter finding may still prove significant, but suggest that future studies should be conducted in patients with vascular pathology, as healthy clotting profiles may have obscured the true effects of FSO (Allman-Farinelli et al 1999).

In the same year another group of Australian researchers published the results of their study of 17 vegetarian men who were assigned to either a low- or high-ALA diet (derived from FSO) for 28 days following a run-in baseline diet for 14 days. Again there were no significant differences in prothrombin time, activated partial thromboplastin time, or plasminogen activities with the different ALA diets, despite increases in EPA and DPA levels (Li et al 1999).

Since 1994 Mutanen and Freese have conducted many studies assessing the effect of ALA and LA:ALA ratios on haemostatic factors (Freese & Mutanen 1997, Freese et al 1994, Mutanen & Freese 2001). Their 1997 study was the largest and involved a
sample of 46 subjects who were given FSO to provide 5.9 g/day ALA or a fish/sunflower oil combination equal to 5.2 g/day EPA/DHA over 4 weeks. Extensive analysis of the sample throughout the intervention, as well as at the 12-week follow-up, revealed no difference in collagen-induced platelet aggregation, thromboxane production or bleeding time between the two groups, suggesting equivalent anticoagulant effects for FSO and fish oil when consumed in comparable quantities. This was despite smaller increases in EPA levels in the platelets of the subjects taking FSO.

The largest and most recent trial (Finnegan et al 2003) compared the effects of small increases in ALA (4.5 or 9.5 g/day) and EPA and DHA (0.8 or 1.7 g/day EPA+DHA) intake on blood coagulation and fibrinolytic factors over 6 months. The randomised, placebo-controlled, parallel study of 150 moderately hyperlipidaemic subjects found no significant differences in coagulation or fibrinolysis for any intervention.

Currently the evidence is equivocal, but may indicate a minor anti-aggregatory role for FSO in high doses. Further research, with more heterogeneous designs, is required to form any valid conclusion.

ENDOTHELIAL FUNCTION
In one 12-week study of healthy subjects aged 55–75 years, low levels of ALA (equivalent to approximately 5 mL/day of FSO) were shown to decrease some markers of endothelial activation (Thies et al 2001). More specifically, ALA decreased the plasma concentrations of soluble VCAM-1 by 16% and soluble E-selectin by 23%.

LIPID-LOWERING
The largest and most recent trial involved over 150 moderately hyperlipidaemic patients in a double-blind placebo-controlled 5-arm parallel design conducted over 6 months. Two groups received FSO at different doses (equivalent to 4.5 g/day and 9.5 g/day of ALA), two groups received bioequivalent levels of EPA/DHA and one group received LA and served as a control group. Although the higher ALA dose induced comparable changes in serum and cell membrane EPA levels to the fish oil group, ALA failed to significantly lower lipid levels, whereas EPA and DHA reduced triacylglycerides (Finnegan et al 2003).

Alternatively, a shorter study of only 2 weeks supplementing with much higher doses of FSO (60 mL/day) or sunflower oil or 130 g/day of mackerel in hypertensive males produced positive results. Subjects taking either FSO or consuming fish experienced an equal decrease in serum triglycerides, total cholesterol, and LDL-cholesterol (Singer et al 1986). Interestingly, FSO intake resulted in only marginal
increases in EPA levels, suggesting lipid-lowering activity is not reliant on conversion to EPA.

One possible explanation for this comes from the results of a number of trials conducted by Prasad (Prasad 1997, 1999, Prasad et al 1998), who investigated low-ALA FSO and later isolated extracts of the lignan SDG and found significant lipid-lowering effects in animal models. In rabbits, administration of the lignan at high doses produced significant changes to blood lipids, including a 33% reduction in total cholesterol, 35% reduction in LDL-cholesterol and an astonishing increase of over 140% in HDL-cholesterol by week 8 (Prasad 1999). As exciting as these results are, it is difficult to determine the clinical significance of these findings because the lignan content of FSO is variable. It is possible that the high dose of FSO (60 mL/day used by Singer 1986) contained a substantial amount of SDG, which could explain the effects seen; however, this is speculation.

**Clinical Note — Are vegetarians at risk of omega-3 deficiency?**

Omnivores can obtain n-3 long-chain PUFAs in two ways: from the partial conversion of dietary ALA or directly through the consumption of fish, eggs, or animal products (Li et al 1999). Lacto-ovo vegetarians obtain n-3 EFAs from the conversion of plant-based ALA and a limited amount of preformed EPA and DHA from milk, dairy products, and eggs; however, their EFA content is highly dependent upon the animals’ diet. In contrast, strict vegetarians and vegans are at risk of inadequate n-3 EFA, DHA and EPA intake because they are solely reliant on plant-based ALA, which has poor conversion to n-3 EFA metabolites in the body and they have no dietary intake of preformed DHA or EPA.

This has been demonstrated in studies in which lower plasma and platelet levels of n-3 EFAs have been identified in vegetarians compared with omnivores, together with lower EPA and DHA levels. For vegetarians and vegans, increased consumption and conversion of ALA has been proposed as a strategy to ensure omega-3 adequacy; however, the evidence to date suggests this is not effective (Burdge 2004, Phinney et al 1990).

Average daily intake of ALA has been estimated at 1.5 g in the general population and may be lower in vegetarians and vegans. Based on current conversion calculations, general consumption levels already fall short of EPA and DHA requirements. Studies investigating increased ALA consumption at 9.5 g/day, the equivalent of approximately 17 mL FSO, found this increased EPA and DPA, yet failed to improve DHA concentrations, which is further proof that ALA is not an effective substitute for animal-derived omega-3 EFAs (Burdge 2004).
To complicate matters, there is evidence suggesting that high intakes of ALA downregulate the delta-6-desaturase enzyme, therefore inhibiting its own conversion (Gerster 1998). Vegetarian diets are also notoriously rich in the n-6 EFA, LA, which if consumed in significantly higher quantities than omega-3 will further retard conversion of ALA (Kris-Etherton & Skulas 2005).

Vegans and vegetarians are recommended to consume additional sources of ALA, such as algae, that may contain some preformed EPA and DHA in an attempt to reduce risk of deficiency (Kris-Etherton & Skulas 2005, Li et al 1999).

**INSULIN SENSITIVITY/METABOLIC SYNDROME**

It has been proposed that FSO may be of benefit in insulin resistance (IR) based on its possible cardioprotective activities; however, direct evidence of improved insulin sensitivity remains elusive. One small study published in 1997 demonstrated improved systemic arterial compliance in 12 subjects with suspected IR, fed a high dose of ALA over 12 weeks, although an additional finding in this study was evidence of slight deterioration in insulin sensitivity (Nestel 1997). Another study using relatively low-dose FSO (1.7 g/day ALA) in normoglycaemic adults found no changes in glycaemic response (Curran et al 2002). Further investigation using higher doses of FSO and ALA is required to determine whether there is a role for FSO in this condition.

**ANTICANCER EFFECTS**

**Breast and colon cancer** Bougnoux et al (1994) made an important observation when they demonstrated an inverse relationship between ALA levels in breast tissue and risk of lymph node involvement and visceral metastases in breast cancer. This has been followed up with larger studies of similar design (Klein et al 2000, Maillard et al 2002) and one meta-analysis, all yielding comparable results (Saadatian-Elahi et al 2004). The data indicate that those women with the highest breast tissue concentrations of ALA have a relative risk of breast cancer between 0.36 and 0.39, while other FA levels fail to exhibit a statistically significant relationship. Interestingly, an epidemiological study has identified an association between low consumption of ALA in humans and increased cancer deaths in general (Dolecek 1992). Currently the only evidence from interventional studies using FSO as a chemoprotective agent is provided by animal trials, which demonstrate that dietary FSO is effective in preventing colon tumour development and malignant mammary tumours (Dwivedi et al 2005).

**Prostate cancer** There is much debate surrounding research into the hypothesised link between ALA and the risk of prostate cancer. Giovannucci, a prolific prostate cancer researcher, has contributed to numerous papers on this topic, deriving data...
from large epidemiological or prospective cohort studies including The Health Professionals Follow-Up, The Physician’s Health Study and the Alpha-Tocopherol, Beta-Carotene Cancer Prevention Study (Gann et al 1994, Giovannucci et al 1993, Leitzmann et al 2004, Mannisto et al 2003). The conclusions oscillate between a positive independent association between increased ALA intake and prostate cancer risk (Gann et al 1994, Giovannucci et al 1993, Leitzmann et al 2004) to no significant association (Mannisto et al 2003). Further support of ALA as a risk factor has come from a large Norwegian epidemiological study (Harvei et al 1997), a review by Astorg and a meta-analysis by Brouwer et al in 2004. Although the majority of published data appear to implicate ALA as a prostate cancer risk factor, it is worthy of note that none of the trials were interventional and many rely exclusively on food frequency questionnaires rather than independent biochemical indices of ALA. Other researchers have also presented sound arguments against this theory, such as those articulated by de Lorgeril and Salen (2004), which query the quality of evidence being considered, the exclusion of trials that demonstrated minor risk reduction with increased ALA intake (Schuurman et al 1999) and other weaknesses of the study designs. Additional criticisms include the lack of distinction in the sources of dietary ALA, with red meat, an independent risk factor for prostate cancer, being a major dietary source of ALA in some studies (Brouwer et al 2004). Until interventional trials are conducted a resolution on the matter is not possible.

**DOSAGE RANGE**

- Anticlotting: 5.9 g/day ALA
- Improved endothelial function: 2 g/day ALA
- Lipid-lowering: 60 mL/day FSO
- Reduced CHD mortality: 1–3 g/day ALA

A key consideration with FSO supplementation is product quality. Due to the high potential for FSO to become oxidised, ingestion of inadequately manufactured or preserved FSO could result in higher intakes of peroxides. It is recommended that only refrigerated FSO packaged in opaque containers be used. Once opened, the product should be consumed within a few weeks of opening and kept stored in the fridge.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**

Flaxseed oil may cause loose stools in some individuals. There is a report of an allergic reaction to FSO, with a 40-year-old woman experiencing ocular pruritis and weeping followed by generalised urticaria and nausea, and vomiting within 10 minutes of taking a spoonful of linseed oil. A subsequent skin prick test produced a positive response to linseed. It remains unclear, however, whether this patient consumed FSO.
or linseed oil, which is denatured and unfit for human consumption (Alonso et al 1996).

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**
None known

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**
- Hypersensitivity to flaxseed/linseed
- Prostate cancer

There are a number of studies that link increased ALA intake with a higher risk of prostate or aggressive prostate cancer. Although the evidence is preliminary and widely debated, it is recommended that at-risk individuals avoid high dose consumption of FSO and only consume FSO that is packaged in opaque containers and refrigerated.

**PREGNANCY USE**
There is no evidence to suggest safety concerns for FSO.

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**
- Good quality, cold-pressed FSO is a good source of the essential fatty acid alpha-linolenic acid (ALA), which is often deficient in the Western diet.
- The polyunsaturated fatty acids found in FSO, particularly ALA, are precursors of eicosanoids and influence many important physiological processes. Additional actions may be attributed to the variable amount of lignan present in FSO, but which is found in higher concentrations in the actual seed.
- FSO has demonstrated anti-inflammatory, immunological, minor antiplatelet and chemopreventive effects and a range of beneficial actions within the cardiovascular system; however, large RCTs are still required to determine the role of FSO in clinical practice.
- FSO is not an adequate substitute for animal sources of n-3 EFAs. Most studies of oral FSO demonstrate only moderate increases in EPA, while DHA remains unchanged. Strict vegetarians and vegans using FSO as n-3 EFA substitute may be at risk of EPA and DHA deficiency.
- There is some evidence to suggest that daily ingestion of an additional 1–3 g of ALA (equivalent to 5 mL FSO) may reduce the incidence of some cancers and coronary heart disease mortality; however, this remains speculative.
ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What will this supplement do for me?
Regular consumption of flaxseed oil, in the presence of balanced linoleic acid (omega-6) intake, may reduce cardiovascular mortality and possibly reduce the risk of some cancers; however, this remains speculative.

When will it start to work?
This will depend on the dosage taken and indication for use.

Are there any safety issues?
Long-term high doses may compromise immune function in susceptible individuals.

Preliminary evidence suggests a possible link between high ALA intake and increased risk of prostate cancer; however, this is controversial.

REFERENCES
Das UN. A defect in the activity of delta6 and delta5 desaturases may be a factor predisposing to the development of insulin resistance syndrome. Prostagland Leukot Essent Fatty Acids 72(3) (2005): 343-50.


Gerster H. Can adults adequately convert alpha-linolenic acid (18: 3n-3) to eicosapentaenoic acid (20: 5n-3) and docosahexaenoic acid (22: 6n-3)? Int J Vitam Nutr Res 68(3) (1998): 159-73.


Historical note  Folic acid was isolated from spinach leaves in 1941 and synthesised in 1946, hence its name comes from the Latin *folium*, which means leaf.

**BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS**
Folate is the generic term for a large family of chemically similar trace compounds that fall within the vitamin B group. Folate is also known as folacin and vitamin B9. Folic acid (pteroylmonoglutamic acid or PGA) is the most oxidised and stable form of folate and the one most often used in supplements and food fortification. Folate found in animal sources is present in a ‘free form’ and is readily absorbed; however, aside from the organ meats, animal products are notoriously poor sources. Folic acid found in plant foods exists in a conjugated form, which has to be converted in the gut prior to absorption. This deconjugation process requires a zinc-dependent intracellular enzyme (Kelly 1998), which then makes folate available for absorption in the small intestine. This is inhibited by chronic alcohol ingestion and some foods, including oranges and legumes (Gropper et al 2005).

The average bioavailability of natural folate is between 50% and 66%, although synthetic forms, such as those found in fortified foods or supplements, show almost a twofold increase in bioavailability (Carmel 2006, Kelly 1998). Small amounts of folacin are endogenously produced by bacteria in the intestines, but this appears to be predominantly lost via faeces (Gropper et al 2005). Conversion into folate’s active forms is a multistep pathway beginning within the intestinal cell wall and finishing in the liver. Secretion into the bile of these tetrahydrofolate (THF) derivatives and their subsequent reabsorption through the enterohepatic circulation enables redistribution throughout the body. Distribution of folate appears to be regulated via an unknown mechanism, ensuring increased availability to those tissues demonstrating rapid cell division (Gropper et al 2005). Although many of the biochemical pathways in which folate is involved act to regenerate the nutrient, there is still a significant amount that is broken down and eliminated, chiefly in the urine.

**CHEMICAL COMPONENTS**
Folate derived from the diet requires a complicated conversion to a variety of THF derivatives. In contrast, the synthetic form of folate, known as folic acid or PGA, is used in food fortification and supplements because it is more stable and offers better...
bioavailability. A pharmaceutical form known as folinic acid (5-formyl-THF) acts as an immediate precursor to the primary metabolite (Kelly 1998).

**Clinical note — Is synthetic folate the superior form?**
Given its profound instability in processing, poor bioavailability, and complex conversion to active forms, adequate folate appears more difficult to achieve with the natural form than with synthetic forms, because the latter are comparatively stable and some act as an immediate precursor to the primary metabolite (Kelly 1998). Importantly, when synthetic folate is taken with food, it offers a higher bioavailability than dietary forms, 85–100% compared with 50–66% respectively. As such, both supplementation and fortification of grains and cereals may actually be a more reliable manner of increasing tissue levels. Accurate assessment of an individual's folate status may therefore require an adjustment made for increased bioavailability of synthetic forms using the equation:

\[
1 \text{ dietary folate equivalent} = 1 \mu g \text{ of dietary folate} \\
= 0.6 \mu g \text{ of folic acid from a fortified source or supplement taken with food} \\
= 0.5 \mu g \text{ of folic acid from a supplement taken on an empty stomach (NHMRC 2005).}
\]

One residual concern regarding high dose exposure to folic acid is due to the passive diffusion of unmodified PGA across the epithelium and into the bloodstream. This monoglutamate form is not naturally seen in human blood and the discovery of high levels in supplemented patients has raised questions regarding its biological effects (Lucock 2004). Until further research is conducted in this area, the implications are unclear.

**FOOD SOURCES**
Good dietary sources are fresh green leafy vegetables, such as cabbage and spinach, asparagus, broccoli, sprouts, mushrooms, legumes, nuts and fortified cereals, and organ meats.

Food preparation and processing can destroy up to 100% of the naturally occurring folate, as it is sensitive to light and air but especially heat; therefore, raw foods, as well as fortified foods, are considered superior sources, which in Australia provide 100 µg per serve (Gropper et al 2005, Hickling et al 2005).
Clinical note — Food fortification with folate: still not enough for pregnant women?

In 1995, legislation allowing voluntary fortification of Australian foods with folate was introduced with the goal of improving the population’s folate status, especially that of pregnant women without putting certain groups at risk of masked pernicious anaemia. In the years following the introduction of fortification, a study evaluating mean serum levels of folate in over 20,000 Australian women aged 14–45 years found that although a mean increase in serum concentrations of 19% was evident, the prevalence of poor folate status in this age group was only reduced from 8.5% to 4.1% (Metz et al 2002). More recently, a smaller study conducted in Perth found a 38% increase in mean serum folate in subjects post-fortification, which correlates with a 30% reduction in the incidence of neural tube defect in Western Australia (Hickling et al 2005).

Although food fortification provides some measure of protection for women of reproductive age, it is still insufficient and personal supplementation is required. Unfortunately, widespread public health campaigns have had limited success and many women remain unaware of the need to take folic acid supplements prior to pregnancy or are aware but still fail to use supplements (Metz et al 2002). In a systematic review of 52 studies, in approximately 20 (mainly Western) countries between 1992 and 2001, the reported periconceptional supplement use ranged from 0.5% to 52% (Ray et al 2004). The situation is similar in Australia, with research demonstrating that only 36% and 46% of new mothers in Victoria and New South Wales, respectively, took folate supplements, with even lower rates reported for women of low socioeconomic or non-English speaking backgrounds (Watson et al 2006).

DEFICIENCY SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Folate deficiency is not uncommon and can develop within only 4 months of an inadequate diet (Carmel 2006, Gropper et al 2005, Wilson et al 1991).

In light of folate’s fundamental role in DNA synthesis, deficiency of this nutrient will predictably impact most on those cells and tissues that exhibit a high turnover (e.g. blood and the cells in the gastrointestinal tract), which also applies to those stages of development with increased rates of growth, such as pregnancy and fetal tissue development.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS OF DEFICIENCY

- Macrocytic/megaloblastic anaemia.
- Fatigue.
• Psychological symptoms such as irritability and depression (Reynolds 2002).
• Headache.
• Hair loss.
• Nausea.
• Insomnia (Pelton et al 2000).
• Peripheral neuropathy.
• Tendon hyperreflexivity.
• Diarrhoea.
• Weight loss.
• Cerebral disturbances (Botez 1976) and cognitive decline.
• Increased blood levels of homocysteine.

**PRIMARY DEFICIENCY**
This develops in response to inadequate dietary intake and can be caused by a diet generally lacking in fresh, lightly cooked vegetables. Risk is increased in patients with MTHFR (N5,10-methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase) deficiency or 677C→T polymorphisms of the *MTHFR* gene, in people receiving TPN, chronic alcoholics, phenylketonuria patients on restricted diets, patients with sickle cell anemia and the institutionalised elderly (Carmel 2006, Wahlqvist et al 2002).

**SECONDARY DEFICIENCY**
This is caused by compromised absorption, increased excretion or increased demands or losses. Inadequate absorption can occur in malabsorption syndromes such as coeliac and Crohn’s disease, with long-term use of certain medications such as phenytoin, sulfasalazine, cimetidine, antacids and OCP, in congenital malabsorption states and in blind loop syndrome (Beers et al 2003), especially when combined with suboptimal dietary intake (Carmel 2006). Significantly impaired absorption has also been observed in HIV patients (Revell et al 1991).

Besides impaired absorption, inadequate use can occur with concurrent vitamin B12 or C deficiency or chronic alcoholism. A genetic variation in folate requirement has also been identified, as a congenital enzyme deficiency exists in approximately 13% of the Western population (Ma et al 1994). In these cases, total or partial absence of the enzyme responsible for the final step in converting folate to its major active metabolite (methylene tetrahydrofolate reductase) results in decreased plasma levels (Kumar & Clarke 2002). Therefore, these individuals have a higher folate requirement than others without this congenital enzyme deficiency and display increased susceptibility to folate deficiency.
A number of pharmaceutical drugs, such as folic acid antagonists (e.g. methotrexate), can affect folic acid status by interfering with absorption, use and conversion to its active forms. In such cases, oral folic acid supplements are sometimes given to reduce side-effects, although it may marginally reduce drug efficacy (Kumar & Clarke 2002, Strober & Menon 2005).

Additionally, there are several subpopulations with increased demands for folic acid, such as pregnant and lactating women, the elderly and patients with malignancies, haemolytic anaemias such as sickle cell disease, chronic exfoliative skin disorders, or achlorhydria (Gropper et al 2005). Extra losses have also been reported in haemodialysis patients.

**MAIN ACTIONS**

**COENZYME**
The primary role of folate and its active derivatives in the body is related to its capacity to act as a methyl donor in multiple biochemical pathways. In this way, it is involved in a variety of reactions important for the metabolism of amino acids and nucleic acids.

**DNA and RNA synthesis** Folate plays an essential part in the production of purines and pyrimidines that make up DNA, making it a critical nutrient in relation to cell division and repair of genetic material, and is generally required for genomic stability. Subsequently, folate plays an indirect role in the synthesis of transfer RNA.

**Production of the active form of B12** Folate and B12 are closely interwoven; for example, the conversion of B12 into methylcobalamin is dependent upon the presence of a THF coenzyme.

**Reduction of homocysteine levels** Folate, in the presence of B12, primes the homocysteine molecule for methylation by an activated B12. With the additional assistance of B6, together they effectively lower homocysteine levels in the blood through regeneration of methionine.

**Synthesis of S-adenosyl-L-methionine (SAMe)** A THF derivative is critical for the regeneration of methionine from homocysteine. The methyl group donated in this process is taken up by SAMe, which provides it with the ability to become a carbon donor in multiple transmethylation reactions throughout the body including the synthesis of adrenaline, melatonin and creatine (Hendler & Rorvik 2001).

**Amino acid metabolism** Folate is involved in the synthesis of some of the non-essential amino acids such as serine and glycine. It is also required for the conversion of histidine into glutamate (Gropper et al 2005).
CLINICAL USE
The conditions for which folate is indicated as a potential treatment are primarily due to an existing deficiency, through either primary or secondary pathways. Research has focused particularly on those conditions in which folate deficiency is a consequence of medication use and benefits of improved folate status.

PREVENTION AND TREATMENT OF DEFICIENCY
Commonly, folic acid supplements are used to correct identifiable deficiency states, such as macrocytic anaemia, or given as preventative treatment to those patients at risk of deficiency, such as in malabsorption syndromes or taking long-term folate antagonist medication. Increased oral intake of folate has been found to be effective even in cases of malabsorption due to the passive diffusion evident with pharmacological doses (Carmel 2006).

PRECONCEPTION AND DURING PREGNANCY
Poor folate status either 1 month before conception or during the first trimester of pregnancy is an independent risk factor for neural tube defects (NTD) in the newborn. One study has suggested the increased risk could be as high as 10-fold (Daly et al 1995).

Intervention trials for pregnancy have routinely used 400 µg folic acid/day; however, there is some suggestion that routine ingestion of only 100 µg folate from fortified food would prevent the majority of NTDS. Studies have also been conducted on women with a previous NTD birth, with benefits demonstrated at doses of 4 mg/day. There is a general consensus among researchers and health authorities that due to the inconsistent nature of natural food sources, taking a supplement or incorporating fortified foods is the only reliable way to increase levels sufficiently (Cuskey et al 1996).

Our understanding of folate’s role in healthy pregnancies has progressed significantly in the last several years, with the ongoing identification of associated birth defects including Down syndrome (Eskes 2006) and cleft lip and/or palate (Bleka et al 2006). Higher folate levels are linked to the prevention of miscarriages, decreased risk of intrauterine growth retardation, increased birth weight in the offspring of smoking mothers (Sram et al 2005) and increased rates of twin pregnancies, from both natural and IVF conception (Haggarty et al 2006).

OCP-INDUCED FOLATE DEFICIENCY
Long-term use of the oral contraceptive pill (>5 years) has historically been associated with a progressive decrease in serum folate levels, of up to 40%, which could feasibly result in changes to cognition and mood, increased risk of macrocytic anaemia and
increased risk of NTD in newborns once use has ceased. Results from recent studies suggest this last concern may be unfounded (Lussana et al 2003, Sütterlin et al 2003).

There are a number of proposed mechanisms for folate depletion with OCP use, including concurrent depletion of B12, which is involved in the regeneration pathway of THF (Bielenberg 1991), and impaired folate resorption (Sütterlin et al 2003).

**HYPERHOMOCYSTEINAEMIA**
Together with vitamins B12 and B6, folic acid has been shown to reduce high plasma levels of homocysteine. Of the three, folate appears to have the strongest activity (Voutilainen et al 2001). Although elevated homocysteine has been implicated as a risk factor in cardiovascular disease (including atherosclerosis and coronary artery disease), cerebrovascular disease, peripheral vascular disease and venous thromboembolism (Clarke et al 1991, den Heijer 1996, Malinow et al 1989, Selhub 1995), exudative age-related macular degeneration, noise-related hearing loss, cognitive dysfunction, and adverse pregnancy outcomes (Gok et al 2004, Nowak et al 2005), cognitive dysfunction, and adverse pregnancy outcomes (Bjorde Monsen & Ueland 2003), clinical trials are currently underway to determine the clinical relevance of this association.

**Cardiovascular protection** Although folate adequacy remains protective against primary cardiovascular disease it may not be a useful intervention in those patients with established disease. In spite of promising results from earlier studies (Hendler & Rorvik 2001, Verhaar et al 2002), lowering homocysteine levels failed to exert a significant protective effect against cardiovascular events in a large study of 3749 men and women post-infarction. Combinations of 800 µg of folate, 400 µg B12 and 40 mg B6 were used in the 40-month study and appeared to increase risk (RR 1.22) (Bønaa et al 2006).

**Alzheimer’s dementia and impaired cognitive function in the elderly** Findings such as the prevalence of folate deficiency in the elderly, increasing homocysteine levels with age and evidence of an inverse relationship total plasma homocysteine levels and cognitive function have attracted attempts to link the phenomena and provide an explanation for neuropsychiatric disorders in this population.

Currently, an abundance of epidemiological evidence and a limited number of studies have shown a positive correlation between folate status and dementia. For example, a 2002 review has estimated that 71% of medical patients admitted acutely to hospital with severe folate deficiency have been observed with organic brain syndrome compared with 31% of controls (Reynolds 2002).
A 2003 Cochrane review examined the effects of folic acid supplementation, with or without vitamin B12, in elderly healthy and demented people, in preventing cognitive impairment or retarding its progress (Malouf et al 2003). The review analysed data from four RCT and concluded that there was no beneficial effect of 750 µg of folic acid/day on measures of cognition or mood in older healthy or cognitively impaired people. It also noted that the available studies are limited in size and scope and more studies are needed.

Renal transplant recipients  Combination vitamin B treatment (folate, B12 and B6) may be of benefit in renal transplant patients, according to a RCT of 56 renal transplant patients, which found that vitamin supplementation with folic acid (5 mg/day), vitamin B6 (50 mg/day) and vitamin B12 (400 µg/day) for 6 months reduced the progression of atherosclerosis, as evidenced by a significant decrease in carotid intima-media thickness. Additionally, a significant decrease in homocysteine levels was observed (Marcucci et al 2003).

Restenosis after percutaneous coronary intervention  A RCT found that treatment with vitamin B12 (cyanocobalamin 400 µg/day), folic acid (1 mg/day) and vitamin B6 (pyridoxine hydrochloride 10 mg/day) for 6 months significantly decreased the incidence of major adverse events, including restenosis, after percutaneous coronary intervention (Schnyder et al 2002). In contrast, a more recent trial demonstrated an increased risk of in-stent restenosis in those patients intravenously administered 1 mg of folic acid, 5 mg of vitamin B6, and 1 mg of vitamin B12 followed by daily oral doses of 1.2 mg of folic acid, 48 mg of vitamin B6, and 60 µg of vitamin B12 for 6 months (Lange et al 2004). Further research with more consistent study designs are required to elucidate the true effects.

Recurrent spontaneous miscarriage  Maternal hyperhomocysteinemia and poor folate status are risk factors for recurrent embryo loss and for a first early embryo loss (George et al 2002). There has also been conflicting evidence in relation to the role of MTHFR polymorphism and pregnancy, although many studies point towards increased risk of recurrent spontaneous abortion. One explanation for the discrepant results may be that the numbers of study participants have been relatively small (Zetterberg 2004). Although researchers encourage the periconceptional use of both folate and B12 to reduce these risks, there is a lack of interventional studies in this area.

CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE PROTECTION INDEPENDENT OF HOMOCYSTEINE STATUS
In the absence of a causal relationship between homocysteine and cardiovascular disease, what remains most promising for folate are studies illustrating its protective
effects, mediated through other mechanisms. This has led some researchers to suggest that folate deficiency may be the primary cause of an increased vascular risk and that elevated homocysteine levels should principally be considered a marker for low folate status rather than a pathogenetic marker (Verhaar et al 2002).

Demonstrations of in vitro antioxidant activity, effects on cofactor availability and direct and indirect interactions with the endothelial NO synthase enzyme have been proposed as plausible mechanisms, through which folate may prevent endothelial dysfunction (Das 2003, Verhaar et al 2002).

Several studies show the cardiovascular protective effects of folic acid, including the predictive value of low folate status on stroke risk (Verhaar et al 2002, Bazzano et al 2002). Few interventional studies have been conducted and on the whole results have been disappointing, which may be because the trials are commonly looking at folate in secondary prevention rather than primary. One such study was an open label trial of 500 μg/day folate over 2 years in 593 patients, which failed to reduce cardiovascular events (Liem et al 2003).

ANTICONVULSANT-INDUCED FOLATE DEFICIENCY
Anticonvulsant medications such as phenytoin, carbamazepine and valproate reduce serum folate status. Individual studies have estimated an incidence of 15% folate deficiency in this group, compared with 2% for control groups (Froscher et al 1995). However, the figure may be as high as 97% with long-term phenytoin therapy (Rivey et al 1984). This may be due to increased use of folate in drug metabolism and/or decreased mucosal absorption (Berg et al 1992, Pelton et al 2000). Sometimes, folic acid supplements are recommended to avoid deficiency, but this requires close supervision to ensure drug efficacy is not substantially reduced (Rivey et al 1984).

PSYCHIATRIC ILLNESS
Over the past three decades, a vast number of case reports, open studies and, to a lesser extent, case–control studies have been published on the topic of psychopathology and folate deficiency. Many report a high incidence of serum folate deficiency in patients with symptoms of depression and various psychiatric disorders, particularly in geriatric populations (Reynolds 2002). For instance, one review identified that serum folate deficiency varied between 8% and 50% in patients with various psychiatric disorders including depression and schizophrenia (Young and Ghadirian 1989). Two large studies involving over 350 patients diagnosed with acute psychiatric presentations identified low folate levels or frank deficiency (31% and 12% respectively). The patients with the most marked deficiency were also the group with the highest percentage of inpatients (Carney et al 1990). Recently, another study of
similar design found 30% of 224 newly admitted psychiatric patients had low serum folate (<3.5 ng/mL) compared to only 2.4% of controls and that patients with low folate were 3.5-fold more likely to present with depressive features (Lerner et al 2006). Disturbingly the researchers also identified a significant trend between folate deficiency and hospital readmissions.

DEPRESSION
The relationship between folate and depression has been linked to hyperhomocysteinaemia, as well as its role in neurotransmitter synthesis and methylation, independent of homocysteine (Bottiglieri et al 2005, Lerner et al 2006). Overall, it has been estimated that between 15% and 38% of depressed people also have a folate deficiency (Alpert & Fava 1997). Studies have demonstrated that dietary folate consumption below the median (256 µg/day) (Tolmunen et al 2004), serum folate <3.5 ng/mL (Lerner et al 2006) and a MTHFR C677T genotype are all independently associated with an increased risk of depression (Kelly et al 2004). Preliminary evidence from a study of geropsychiatric patients has found evidence of neuropathology in the absence of frank folate deficiency prompting a reassessment of the currently accepted ‘healthy range’ for this subpopulation (Scott et al 2004).

A Cochrane systematic review of three controlled trials involving 247 depressed people suggested that, on the evidence available, folate shows potential, but whether its effectiveness is restricted to only those patients with an existing deficiency remains unclear (Taylor 2003). The studies assessed used 500 µg folic acid, 15 mg methyltetrahydrofolate and 50 mg methyltetrahydrofolate once daily and lasted from 8 weeks to 6 months. Two studies used folate as an adjunct to standard therapy.

Given the volume of evidence linking folate with depression it is surprising that so few clinical trials have been conducted using folic acid.

Affects response to standard antidepressants    Research investigating folate’s effects on the success of antidepressant treatment has escalated in recent years and there is now evidence of a reduced response to fluoxetine with declining folate levels, from 44.7% in subjects with normal serum folate to 7.1% of patients with folate deficiency (<2.5 ng/mL) (Papakostas et al 2004a,b). Reduced folate levels have also been associated with reduced response to sertraline (Alpert et al 2003). In addition to this, poor folate status appears to negatively impact response time (+1.5 weeks) (Papakostas et al 2005) and relapse rates during continuation of fluoxetine (42.9% relapse in patients with low folate levels vs 3.2%) (Papakostas et al 2004a,b), independent of B12 and homocysteine levels.
**SCHIZOPHRENIA**

Folate has been implicated in the causality of schizophrenia since the 1950s and aberrations of one-carbon metabolism were proposed as a distinct hypothesis at around the same time (Regland 2005). With our current knowledge linking the two there has been renewed interest in the role of folate in this disorder. One key issue relates to a controversial association between low folate levels and schizophrenia incidence (Muntjewerff & Blom 2005). A review of seven case-control studies concluded that three of these demonstrated a relationship, although overall the evidence was undermined by methodological shortcomings (Muntjewerff & Blom 2005). In spite of this, elevated homocysteine and a high incidence of the MTHFR C677T genotype are reportedly frequent findings in this population (Kemperman et al 2006, Regland 2005), with several case reports of success using 15–30 mg folate in combination with B12 injections (1 mg every 10 days) and N-acetyl cysteine (200 mg twice daily) (Regland 2005).

**CHEMOPREVENTATIVE ROLE**

Epidemiological, animal and human studies all suggest that folate status affects the risk of developing cancers in selected tissues. The exact nature of this relationship continues to elude researchers (Bollheimer et al 2005, Powers 2005). Previously, high folate intake was purported to have a protective effect, although there were some anomalies. An extensive review of the role of the MTHFR C677T polymorphism in cancer risk concluded that, in spite of the poor folate status and activity associated with this polymorphism, many studies identify it as protective against a range of cancers (Sharp & Little 2004). To add to this a group of Swedish researchers have demonstrated that the relationship between serum folate and colorectal cancer follows a bell-shaped curve distribution (Van Guelpen et al 2006). Speculation regarding the role of additional co-factors involved in folate activity has also emerged (Powers 2005).

However, folate’s actions still represent a plausible modulator of cancer risk due to its critical role in the production, methylation and repair of DNA, regulation of cell turnover and suppression of excessive proliferation (Choi et al 2000, 2002).

**Colon cancer** The link between folate status and colorectal cancer was first suggested in the 1990s when clinical studies identified an inverse association between folate and colorectal carcinogenesis. Subsequent rodent studies further strengthened the theory when chemically induced colorectal carcinogenesis was shown to be tremendously enhanced under dietary folate deprivation and reduced with folate administration (Cravo et al 1992, Kim et al 1996).
In 2005, a major review of in vitro, animal and various clinical and epidemiological studies concluded that high folate intake does not lead to an independent, overall chemopreventative effect on colorectal carcinogenesis, although results from two large studies suggest that folate deficiency might have a particular impact on proximal colon cancer in females (Bollheimer et al 2005).

Since then, a recent study demonstrated improved response in patients with adenomatous polyps using a combination of 100 µg of folate and 5 mg riboflavin over folate alone (Powers 2005).

**Cervical cancer**  The potential role of folate in the prevention of cervical cancer has been equivocal and results from intervention studies on cervical cancer have been inconsistent (Henao et al 2005, Kwanbunjan et al 2005, Sedjo et al 2003). Many of these studies have methodological limitations, including a lack of information on high-risk human papillomavirus (HR-HPV) infection, a risk factor for cervical cancer. This is notable as folate deficiency may increase the risk of cervical cancer in individuals infected with HR-HPV (Piyathilake et al 2004).

The most promising RCT involved 47 patients taking an OCP who demonstrated mild to moderate intraepithelial dysplasia. A dose of 10 mg folic acid daily over 3 months resulted in significantly lower biopsy scores in the treatment group and a significant reduction in cytology scores from baseline (Butterworth et al 1982). Other studies have shown that folic acid treatment does not alter the course of disease in patients with pre-established cervical dysplasia (Childers et al 1995).

**PERIODONTAL DISEASE**
A series of RCTs has shown that rinsing with a solution of folate (5 mg/dose) twice daily alleviates gingival inflammation in all age groups and in pregnant and non-pregnant women (Pack 1984, Thomson & Pack 1982). Treatment results in a significant reduction in inflammation without altering plaque levels or folate serum status and appears to be more successful than oral supplements (Vogel et al 1976).

Preliminary evidence suggests that topical folate may also have a role in controlling gingival hyperplasia associated with long-term phenytoin use (Drew et al 1987).

**METHOTREXATE TOXICITY**
Methotrexate is a cytotoxic drug with folate antagonist properties. In part, its efficacy is dependent on this effect, but severe deficiency symptoms such as macrocytic anaemia are sometimes induced (Lambie et al 1985). Co-administration of folic acid or folinic acid has been investigated as preventative treatment, with both forms capable of reducing drug side-effects (Ortiz et al 1998, Strober & Menon 2005).
**SICKLE CELL ANAEMIA**
In the past, folate supplements were recommended to patients with sickle cell anaemia, but more recent studies show that clinically significant folate deficiency occurs in a very small percentage of these patients and other nutrients may be indicated (Reed et al 1987).

**VITILIGO**
Although a number of uncontrolled studies testing combination treatments have been promising, folate has never been assessed as a sole treatment. As such, it is difficult to determine its role in the treatment of this condition. In previous studies, a combination of oral folic acid and vitamin B12, together with increased sun exposure, has produced response rates in the vicinity of 50% (Juhlin & Olsson 1997). A more recent controlled study by a different group of researchers found that exposure to a specific band width of UV radiation produced repigmentation in 92% of subjects, irrespective of vitamin supplementation (Tjioe et al 2002).

**DOSAGE RANGE**

**AUSTRALIAN RDI**
- 400 µg/day for adults; up to 1 mg/day in deficiency states (NMMRC 2005).
- 600 µg/day in pregnancy.
- 500 µg/day during lactation.

**ACCORDING TO CLINICAL STUDIES**
- Preconception care or early pregnancy supplementation: 400–600 µg /day.
- Preconception and pregnancy supplementation in women with a previous NTD birth: 4 mg/day.
- Anticonvulsant-induced deficiency: 15 mg/day (under supervision).
- Prevention of cervical cancer: 800–10 000 µg/day.
- Prevention of colorectal cancer in ulcerative colitis patients: 1–5 mg/day.
- Alzheimer’s dementia and cognitive changes in the elderly: doses adequate to correct deficiency if present.
- Depression: 50 mg methylfolate daily.
- Hyperhomocysteinaemia: 500–5000 µg/day.
- Methotrexate toxicity: 5 mg/week.
- OCP-induced folate deficiency: 2 mg/day.
- Periodontal disease: rinse mouth with a solution of folate (5 mg/dose) twice daily.

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
• Prevention of restenosis after percutaneous coronary intervention: 1 mg in combination with vitamin B12 (400 µg) and vitamin B6 (10 mg) daily.
• Sickle cell anaemia: 1 mg/day.
• Ulcerative colitis: 15 mg/day.
• Vitiligo: 2–10 mg/day.

ADVERSE REACTIONS
Adverse reactions appear to be limited to oral doses greater than 5 mg/day. Reactions include a generalised urticaria associated with an allergic response, nausea, flatulence and bitter taste in the mouth, irritability and excitability.

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS

ANTACIDS
Reduce folic acid absorption — separate doses by 2–3 hours.

GASTRIC ACID INHIBITORS (PROTON-PUMP INHIBITORS)
Reduced folic acid absorption — separate doses by 2–3 hours.

ZINC
At high doses (>15 mg/day), minor zinc depletion may develop (Carmel 2006, Kelly 1998) — observe patients for signs and symptoms of zinc deficiency.

CHOLESTYRAMINE (E.G. QUESTRAN)
Reduced folate absorption — observe patient for signs and symptoms of folate deficiency and separate doses by at least 4 hours.

ANTICONVULSANTS (PHENYTOIN)
Reduced folate levels frequently develop with long-term use, but macrocytic anaemia is rare (Lambie et al 1985). Supplementation can reduce toxicity, which is a beneficial interaction, although medical supervision is advised.

ORAL CONTRACEPTIVES
Folate levels are reduced with long-term use of the OCP, particularly those with high oestrogen content; therefore, increased intakes may be required for women undertaking long-term use.

METHOTREXATE
Methotrexate is a folate antagonist drug. Folate supplementation can reduce toxicity, which is a beneficial interaction; however, it may reduce the efficacy of methotrexate — medical supervision advised.
**PANCREATIN**
Reduced folate absorption (Kelly 1998) — separate doses by 2–3 hours.

**PYRIMETHAMINE (E.G. MALOPRIM)**
Impairs the use of folate and, as such, supplementation with folic acid may be beneficial.

**SULFASALAZINE**
Folic acid can reduce drug absorption — separate doses by 2–3 hours.

**TRIMETHOPRIM**
Trimethoprim is a folate antagonist drug. Supplementation can reduce toxicity, which is a beneficial interaction — medical supervision advised.

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**
Use of folate supplements may mask a B12 deficiency state by correcting an apparent macrocytic anaemia without altering progression of neurological damage. It is recommended that patients be screened for vitamin B12 deficiency.

**PREGNANCY USE**
According to the Australian Drug Evaluation Committee (1999), folate is considered to be safe to take in both pregnancy and lactation. Retrospective analysis of a trial of folate in pregnancy in the 1960s has suggested a possible increase in all-cause mortality and breast cancer in pregnant women taking 5 mg/day folate; however, this finding could be due to a number of factors unrelated to folate (Bland 2005, Charles et al 2004). The only context requiring special consideration is those pregnant women taking anticonvulsant medication (see Significant Interactions).

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**
- Folate is involved in a number of important biochemical pathways required for health and wellbeing, in particular development and cell growth.
- Folate supplements are often given to correct deficiencies or prevent deficiency in people at risk, such as those with malabsorption syndromes (e.g. coeliac disease and Crohn’s disease), long-term use of certain medications such as phenytoin, sulfasalazine, cimetidine, antacids and the OCP, in congenital malabsorption states and blind loop syndrome, chronic alcoholism, the institutionalised elderly, pregnant and lactating women and HIV infection.
- It is considered to be the most important supplement to be taken by women in the weeks leading up to conception and during the first 12 weeks of pregnancy, in order to significantly reduce the risk of NTD in newborns. Food fortification is not considered sufficient.
• Other uses for folic acid supplements include reducing homocysteine levels (often in combination with vitamins B12 and B6), reducing primary cardiovascular disease risk and cancer risk in general, periodontal disease (as a topical application), depression and vitiligo, but only in patients who exhibit a deficiency.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What will this supplement do for me?
Folic acid is essential for health and wellbeing. Supplements have a critical role in preventing NTD in newborns and may also reduce the risk of primary cardiovascular disease, improve brain function in Alzheimer’s dementia and non-Alzheimer’s dementia and depression. It can also reduce the toxic effects of some medicines and may reduce the risk of developing some forms of cancer.

When will it start to work?
This depends on the indication.

Are there any safety issues?
The major concern with high doses of folate is that it may mask an underlying vitamin B12 deficiency and allow it to progress unnoticed, which means that a vitamin B12 deficiency should be excluded. It also interacts with some drugs in both a potentially harmful and beneficial way.

REFERENCES


Henao O et al. Women with polymorphisms of methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase (MTHFR) and methionine synthase (MTHFR) are less likely to have cervical intraepithelial neoplasia (CIN) 2 or 3. Int J Cancer 113.6 (2005): 991-7.


van Goolpen B et al. Low folate levels may protect against colorectal cancer. Gut (2006) [Epub ahead of print].
Garlic

Historical note  Garlic has been used as both a food and a medicine since antiquity. Legend has it that garlic was used in ancient Egypt to increase workers’ resistance to infection and later used externally to prevent wound infection. Other ancient civilizations have also used it medicinally. Sanskrit records document the use of garlic approximately 5000 years ago and the Chinese have been using it for over 3000 years. One of the uses of garlic was as a treatment for tumours, a use which extends back to the Egyptian Codex Ebers of 1550 BC (Hassan 2004). Louis Pasteur was one of the first scientists to confirm that garlic had antimicrobial properties. Garlic was used to prevent gangrene and treat infection in both world wars. Traditionally, garlic has been used as a warming and blood cleansing herb to prevent and treat colds and flu, coughs, menstrual pain and expel worms and other parasites.

COMMON NAME
Garlic

OTHER NAMES
Ail, ajo, allium, camphor of the poor, da-suan, knoblauch, la-juan, poor man’s treacle, rustic treacle, stinking rose

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Allium sativum (family Liliaceae)

PLANT PART USED
Bulb, and oil from the bulb

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Garlic bulbs contain organosulfur compounds, protein (mainly alliinase), amino acids (such as arginine, lysine, threonine and tryptophan), fibre, lipids, phytic acid, saponins, beta-sitosterol and small quantities of vitamins and minerals such as vitamin C, vitamin E, beta-carotene, chromium, iron and selenium (Duke 2003).

Of the numerous constituents present, it is the alliin component and resultant degradation products, such as allicin and ajoene, that produce much of the herb’s pharmacological activity. These are formed when garlic is crushed or chewed and alliin is exposed to the enzyme alliinase.
According to Commission E, 1 mg of alliin produces 0.458 mg of allicin (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**MAIN ACTIONS**

**ANTIOXIDANT**
Garlic has strong antioxidant activity and is capable of directly scavenging free radicals, and indirectly by enhancing endogenous antioxidant systems such as glutathione, superoxide dismutase, catalase and glutathione peroxidase (Wei & Lau 1998).

**INHIBITS PLATELET AGGREGATION AND ANTITHROMBOTIC EFFECTS**
It appears that the method of garlic preparation has a great influence over its antiplatelet activity in humans (Lawson et al 1992, Rahman & Billington 2000). Additionally, antithrombotic activity has been identified under clinical conditions (Ali & Thomson 1995).

**STIMULATES FIBRINOLYSIS**
A significant increase in fibrinolysis has been observed in several clinical tests for both raw and fried garlic (Bordia et al 1998, Chutani & Bordia 1981, Gadkari & Joshi 1991).

**REDUCES SERUM CHOLESTEROL LEVELS**
A 2000 meta-analysis of 13 clinical trials concluded that garlic is superior to placebo in reducing total cholesterol levels, exerting a modest effect (Stevinson et al 2001). The mechanism of action involves inhibition of cholesterol synthesis by deactivating HMG-CoA reductase via enhanced phosphorylation, but not changing the amount of the enzyme, according to in vitro research (Liu & Yeh 2002). The compounds containing an allyl-disulfide or allyl-sulfhydryl group are most likely responsible for the inhibition of cholesterol synthesis by garlic and that this inhibition is likely to be mediated at sterol 4-alpha-methyl oxidase (Singh & Porter 2006). Clinical evidence also suggests it raises HDL levels and reduces triglyceride levels (Bordia et al 1998).

**ANTIHYPERTENSIVE ACTIVITY**
Numerous clinical studies have identified antihypertensive activity with garlic (Andrianova et al 2002, Silagy & Neil 1994). Although the mechanism of action has not been fully elucidated, evidence from in vivo research suggests that both the renin–angiotensin system and the NO system are responsible for this activity (Mohamadi et al 2000).
ANTIMICROBIAL AND IMMUNE-ENHANCING ACTIVITY
Garlic appears to exert both direct and indirect effects against various pathogens, as it enhances macrophage and T-lymphocyte function (Lau et al 1991) and has direct antibacterial, antifungal, antiviral and antiparasitic activity.

Allicin is believed to be chiefly responsible for garlic’s antimicrobial activity. More specifically, it has been found to exert antibacterial activity against a wide range of Gram-negative and Gram-positive bacteria, including multidrug-resistant enterotoxigenic strains of Escherichia coli, Staphylococcus aureus, Mycobacterium tuberculosis, Proteus spp., Streptococcus faecalis and Pseudomonas aeruginosa; antifungal activity particularly against Candida albicans; antiparasitic activity against some of the major human intestinal protozoan parasites such as Entamoeba histolytica and Giardia lamblia; and antiviral activity (Ankri & Mirelman 1999). Ajoene is another important antimicrobial constituent, with greater antiviral activity than allicin, according to one in vitro test (Weber et al 1992).

Helicobacter pylori infection  Several in vitro and in vivo tests have shown that garlic has activity against H. pylori (Chung et al 1998, Jonkers et al 1999, O’Gara et al 2000); however, results from clinical studies are equivocal. Two studies found that a combination of garlic and omeprazole produced synergistic effects against H. pylori (Cellini et al 1996, Jonkers et al 1999).

ANTINEOPLASTIC AND CHEMOPREVENTATIVE EFFECTS
Many studies have reported antineoplastic effects of both oil and water soluble allyl sulfur compounds from garlic, but the effect is generally greater for the lipid-soluble compounds (Knowles & Milner 2001). Diallyl disulfide, one of the most studied oil-soluble organosulfur compounds in garlic, has demonstrated antineoplastic activity against both hormone-dependent and hormone-independent breast cancer cell lines (Nakagawa et al 2001). It also inhibits the proliferation of human tumour cell lines for colon, lung and skin cancer (Sundaram & Milner 1996). Garlic derivatives inhibit proliferation of human prostate cancer cell lines and human breast cancer cell lines (Pinto & Rivlin 2001). In vitro results also show ajoene induces apoptosis in human leukaemic cells (Dirsch et al 2002), whereas allicin, but not its precursor alliin, inhibits proliferation of human mammary, endometrial, and colon cancer cells (Hirsch et al 2000).

Several mechanisms appear to be involved. Notable among these is a depression in nitrosamine formation and a reduction in carcinogen bioactivation (Milner 2001). This is thought to involve an inhibitory effect on CYP2E1, one of the isoenzymes responsible for the activation of a number of carcinogens (Yang et al 2001). Some of the organosulfur compounds may also aid detoxification by enhancing glutathione S-
transferases, thereby reducing carcinogen loads (Bianchini & Vainio 2001). Suppression of proliferation associated with a depression in cell cycle progression and the induction of apoptosis has also been observed (Knowles & Milner 2001).

**ANTIATHEROSCLEROTIC ACTIVITY**


Similar results have been obtained using ultrasound techniques in a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled clinical trial, involving 152 people (Koscielny et al 1999). Not only did high-dose garlic powder significantly reduce arteriosclerotic plaque volume, it also induced a slight regression in plaque spread within the 4-year test period. Later, these results were found to be significant only in females.

Results from several recently published animal studies further confirm anti-atherogenic effects and have investigated the mechanisms responsible (Durak et al 2002, Ferri et al 2003, Kwon et al 2003). One in-vivo study found that garlic activated antioxidant systems and decreased peroxidation in aortic tissue (Durak et al 2002) whereas ajoene inhibited smooth muscle cell proliferation in another (Ferri et al 2003).

**OTHER ACTIONS**

**HYPOGLYCAEMIC ACTIVITY**

Over a decade ago, one double-blind study reported that 800 mg garlic powder taken daily for a period of 4 weeks reduced blood glucose concentrations by 11.6% (Kiesewetter et al 1993). However, a more recent study using a higher dose of 3 g/day over 26 weeks found no effects (Ali & Thomson 1995).

**ANTI-INFLAMMATORY ACTIVITY**

Fresh garlic extracts and garlic oil have been shown to inhibit COX activity in test tube and animal studies (Bordia et al 1996, Thomson et al 2000).

**HEPATOPROTECTIVE EFFECTS**

Aged garlic extract has a glutathione-sparing effect in the liver and specifically elevates reduced glutathione content, thereby enhancing endogenous protective mechanisms, according to in vitro tests (Wang et al 1999).
Enhances Microcirculation

Jung et al (1991) found that 5 hours after the administration of garlic powder (Kwai: total dose 900 mg garlic powder) a significant increase in capillary skin perfusion (55%) occurred in the healthy volunteers, whereas Kiesewetter et al (1993) showed a 48% increase with a dose of 800 mg garlic.

Modulates Cytochrome P450

Garlic may have the potential to alter CYP450 enzymes; however, results from in vitro, animal and human studies are confusing. Garlic oil induced CYP450 according to one animal study (Dalvi 1992), whereas in vitro tests failed to identify an inhibitory effect on cytochrome P450 (2C9*1, 2C19, 3A4, 3A5 and 3A7) (Foster et al 2001). Other researchers using human volunteers found that garlic oil reduced CYP2E1 activity by 39%, but had no effect on CYP1A2, CYP2D6 or CYP3A4 activity (Gurley et al 2002).

Recently, an interaction between saquinivir and garlic has been reported, suggestive of a CYP induction effect, but human tests do not support this theory (Piscitelli et al 2002).

Clinical Use

Most studies have used a non-enteric coated dehydrated garlic powder preparation standardised to 1.3% alliin content (Kwai, Lichtwer Pharma) or an aged garlic extract (Kyolic, Wakunaga of America).

Cardiovascular Disease

Epidemiologic studies show an inverse correlation between garlic consumption and progression of CVD in general (Rahman & Lowe 2006).

This review will consider the evidence for garlic in the management of specific risk factors such as hypertension and hyperlipidaemia. Additionally, investigation into the effects of garlic directly on the atherosclerotic and arteriosclerotic processes is presented.

Hypertension

A meta-analysis of seven clinical trials using a garlic preparation, produced commercially as Kwai, found that three showed a significant reduction in SBP and four in DBP (Silagy & Neil 1994). Kwai was used in these studies in the dosage of 600–900 mg daily. Garlic treatment resulted in a mean reduction in SBP of 7.7 mmHg and 5.0 mmHg in DBP compared with placebo.

In 2000, the Agency for Health Care Research and Quality analysed results from 27 randomised, placebo-controlled trials and reported that results were mixed (Mulrow et al 2000). When significant reductions in blood pressure were observed, these were small.

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
Several newer trials have since been published further confirming that the effect on blood pressure is small and sometimes non-significant (Andrianova et al 2002, McMahon & Vargas 1993, Zhang et al 2001a).

**Atherosclerosis and arteriosclerosis** Garlic indirectly affects atherosclerosis by reduction of hyperlipidaemia, hypertension, and prevention of thrombus formation.

Koscielny et al conducted a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled clinical trial involving 152 volunteers to determine whether garlic powder supplements (Kwai 900 mg daily) directly alter plaque volumes in carotid and/or femoral arteries (Koscielny et al 1999). After 4 years' treatment, garlic intake significantly reduced the expected increase in arteriosclerotic plaque volume by 5–18%, with a slight regression also observed. A subsequent re-evaluation of the results found that significant effects were limited to women only (Siegel & Klussendorf 2000).

**Hyperlipidaemia** In 2000, a meta-analysis of 13 clinical trials concluded that garlic reduces total cholesterol levels significantly more than placebo; however, the effects can only be described as modest (Stevinson et al 2001). The same year, a systematic review and meta-analysis were published by the Agency for Health Care Research and Quality, which analysed results from 44 studies with lipid outcomes (Mulrow et al 2000a). Most studies involved fewer than 100 volunteers and randomisation techniques were unclear in 82% of studies. Pooled data from the placebo-controlled trials reporting changes in total cholesterol levels found a significant average reduction in total cholesterol levels of 7.2 mg/dL after 4–6 weeks using any form of garlic and a reduction of 17.1 mg/dL at 8–12 weeks. Results at 20–24 weeks were not significant and thought to be due to low statistical power, fewer long-term studies or a time-dependant effect of garlic.

Since then several new studies have been published, with most showing no significant reduction to total cholesterol levels (Gardner et al 2001, Kannar et al 2001, Peleg et al 2003, Turner et al 2004, Zhang et al 2001b, Ziaei et al 2001). According to one review, non-enteric coated tablets containing dehydrated garlic powder (standardised to 1.3% allicin) produce the most consistent results (Ulbricht & Basch 2005).

**Comparative studies** Two clinical studies have compared different garlic preparations with pharmaceutical cholesterol-lowering medicines. Garlic taken as 300 mg three times daily (Kwai) produced similar lipid-lowering effects to 200 mg bezafibrate (a hypolipidaemic fibrate) three times daily in subjects with primary hyperlipidaemia (Holzgartner et al 1992) whereas clofibrate 500 mg was more effective than an essential oil extract of 50 g raw garlic (Arora & Arora 1981).
Commission E approves the use of garlic as an adjunct to dietary changes in the treatment of hyperlipidaemia (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**Diabetics with hyperlipidaemia** A 12-week placebo-controlled, single-blind, randomised study of 70 patients with type 2 diabetes and newly diagnosed dyslipidaemia found that treatment with a garlic tablet (Garlex-Bosch Pharmaceuticals: 300 mg, containing 1.3% alliin) twice daily, together with a diet and exercise plan, resulted in a significant reduction in total cholesterol of 28 mg/dL (12.03%) compared to placebo (Ashraf et al 2005).

**Clinical note — Not all garlic preparations are the same**
One of the difficulties encountered when interpreting the research available for garlic is comparing the effects of different preparations, which often have not been tested for the presence of important constituents or alliin-releasing potential. It is known that fresh garlic and dried garlic powder contain alliin and the enzyme allinase required for biotransformation, but some other forms may only contain alliin, and not the necessary allinase component, thus compromising alliin-releasing potential. An example of the manufacturing process affecting potency has been suggested for a commercial garlic product known as Kwai, which has often been used in cholesterol research (Lawson et al 2001). According to a 2001 experiment, substantial differences were found between tablets manufactured before 1993 (the years when all but one of the positive trials were conducted) and those manufactured after 1993 (the years when all of the negative trials were conducted). Kwai products manufactured after 1993 released only one-third as much allicin as older preparations. Those preparations from before 1993 disintegrated more slowly, protecting alliinase from acid exposure and inactivation.

**Antiplatelet effects** Antiplatelet effects of garlic are well recognised, but the dose at which this becomes significant remains uncertain. Results from a 2001 double-blind study have identified a dose of 7.2 g/day of aged garlic extract as significantly inhibiting platelet aggregation and adhesion (Steiner et al 1996).

**PERIPHERAL ARTERIAL OCCLUSIVE DISEASE**
In 2000, Mulrow et al reported on two double-blind, placebo-controlled trials in participants with atherosclerotic lower extremity disease (Mulrow et al 2000b). One study of 64 participants showed that pain-free walking increased by approximately 40 metres with standardised dehydrated garlic (Kwai 800 mg daily) compared with approximately 30 metres with placebo over 12 weeks. Cochrane reviewers report that the effect was not significant (Jepson et al 2000). The other study of 100 participants (Mulrow et al 2000b) showed that a combination treatment of garlic oil macer-
ate soya lecithin hawthorn oil wheat germ oil significantly increased the maximum walking distance (114%) compared to placebo (17%) \( (P < 0.05) \).

**INFECTION**

Garlic oil is effective against numerous bacteria, viruses and fungi including *Staphylococcus aureus*, MRSA, and several species of *Candida*, *Aspergillus* and *Cryptococcus neoformans* in vitro (Davis et al 1994, Tsao & Yin 2001, Yoshida et al 1987). As such, it has been used both internally and externally to treat various infections and prevent wound infection.

**Tinea pedis, tinea corporis, tinea cruris**  A trial comparing the effects of three different strengths of ajoene cream (0.4%, 0.6% and 1%) with 1% terbinafine applied twice daily found the cure rate to be 72% for 0.6% ajoene, 100% for 1% ajoene, and 94% for 1% terbinafine after 60 days (Ledezma et al 2000).

**Vaginitis**  Taken internally as a 'natural antibiotic' or applied topically in a cream base, garlic is used to treat vaginitis. The considerable antibacterial activity of garlic provides a theoretical basis for its use in this condition, but controlled studies are not available to determine effectiveness.

**Common cold prevention**  A 12-week, double-blind randomised study involving 146 people demonstrated that allicin-containing garlic preparations significantly reduce the incidence of colds and accelerate recovery compared with placebo (Josling 2001). More specifically, the number of symptom days in the placebo group was 5.01 compared with 1.52 days in the garlic treated group. Additionally, garlic reduced the incidence of developing a second cold whereas placebo did not.

**Helicobacter pylori infection**  It has been suggested that gastrointestinal lesions, such as gastric ulcers, duodenal ulcers and gastric cancers, are strongly associated with *H. pylori* infection (Scheiman & Cutler 1999). Medical treatment consisting of 'triple therapy' has a high eradication rate, yet is associated with side-effects and has started to give rise to antibiotic resistance. Since garlic intake has been associated with a lowered incidence of stomach cancer, researchers have started investigating whether garlic has activity against *H. pylori*. Several in vitro and in vivo tests have shown garlic to be effective against *H. pylori* (see MAIN ACTIONS). However, to date only a few small clinical trials have been conducted with disappointing and controversial results (Aydin et al 2000, Graham et al 1999, McNulty et al 2001).

A small pilot study of dyspeptic patients with confirmed *H. pylori* infection found that treatment with 4 mg garlic oil capsules taken four times daily with meals for 14 days did not alter symptoms or lead to *H. pylori* eradication (McNulty et al 2001). Another small study using garlic oil 275 mg three times a day (allicin 800 \( \mu g \) capsule) either as stand-alone treatment or in combination with omeprazole (20 mg twice
daily) found that both treatments produced similar results (Aydin et al 2000). These results were confirmed in another small clinical study (Graham et al 1999).

**PROTECTIVE EFFECTS AGAINST CANCER**

A 2001 critical review of the epidemiological evidence suggests a preventive effect for garlic consumption in stomach and colorectal cancers, but not other cancers (Fleischauer & Arab 2001). In regard to gastric cancer protection, case-control studies suggested a protective effect for raw and/or cooked garlic when eaten at least once a week whereas protective effects against colorectal cancer seem to require at least two servings of garlic per week. A similar view was reported in a 2003 review by Ernst, which stated that the weight of evidence to support the use of allium vegetables, such as garlic, in cancer is clearly positive.

**Intervention study in colorectal cancer**  A preliminary double-blind, randomised clinical trial in patients with colorectal adenomas—precancerous lesions of the large bowel produced promising results with the use of high-dose aged garlic extract (AGE 2.4 mL/day) (Tanaka et al 2006). The study of 51 patients measured the number and size of adenomas at baseline and at 6 and 12 months and found that AGE significantly suppressed both the size and the number of colon adenomas in patients after 1 year of treatment ($P = 0.04$). In comparison, the number of adenomas increased linearly in the control group from the beginning.

**OTHER USES**

Some early research suggests that it may prevent the incidence of altitude sickness (Fallon et al 1998, Kim-Park & Ku 2000) and reduce mosquito numbers (Jarial 2001). It has also been used to assist in heavy metal detoxification. Studies with experimental animal models provide some support for its use in this way (Bone & Morgan 2005).

**DOSAGE RANGE**

**GENERAL GUIDE**

- Fresh garlic: 2–5 g/day (ensure it is bruised, crushed or chewed).
- Dried powder: 0.4–1.2 g/day.
- Aged-garlic extracts have been studied in amounts ranging from 2.4 to 7.2 g/day.
- Oil: 2–5 mg/day.
- Garlic preparations that will provide 4–12 mg alliin daily.
- Fluid extract (1:1): 0.5–2 mL three times daily.

**ACCORDING TO CLINICAL STUDIES**

- Hypertension: 600–900 mg/day in divided doses (delivering approximately 5000–6000 µg allicin potential).
• Hyperlipidaemia: 600–9000 mg/day.
• Fungal infection: topical 0.4–0.6% ajoene cream applied twice daily.
• Occlusive arterial disease: 600–800 mg/day.

   It is important to be aware of the thiosulfinate content, in particular allicin-releasing ability, of any commercial product to ensure efficacy.

ADVERSE REACTIONS

INTERNAL USE
Breath and body odour, allergic reactions, nausea, heartburn, flatulence, abdominal discomfort and diarrhoea have been reported (Berthold et al 1998).

   Headache, myalgia and fatigue were reported in one study using a dose of 900 mg garlic powder (standardised to 1.3% alliin) (Holzgartner et al 1992).

TOPICAL USE
An ajoene 0.6% gel produces a transient burning sensation after application, according to one study (Ledezma et al 1999). Contact dermatitis can occur — one study using patch testing found that 5.2% of volunteers had contact sensitisation (Lembo et al 1991).

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS

SAQUINAVIR
A clinical study showed that garlic reduces blood levels of saquinavir and therefore may reduce efficacy of drug — avoid using concurrently (Piscitelli et al 2002).

ANTICOAGULANTS
Potentiation effects are possible when using garlic at high doses (>4 g) in excess of usual dietary amounts. Avoid high doses in patients taking anticoagulants unless under professional supervision.

ANTIPLATELET DRUGS
Potentiation effects are possible when using garlic at high doses in excess of usual dietary amounts. Use high doses with caution in patients taking antiplatelet drugs.

ANTIHYPERTENSIVE AGENTS
Theoretically, potentiation effects are possible when using garlic at high doses in excess of usual dietary amounts.

ANTIHYPERLIPIDAEMIC AGENTS
Theoretically, potentiation effects are possible when using garlic at high doses in excess of usual dietary amounts however the effect is likely to be minimal — observe.
HELICOBACTER PYLORI TRIPLE THERAPY
Additive effects are theoretically possible. While it is prudent to observe the patient for adverse reactions, the interaction may be beneficial.

HEPATOTOXIC DRUGS
Garlic may exert hepatoprotective activity against liver damage induced by drugs according to in vitro tests, which suggests a beneficial interaction.

PARACETAMOL
In vivo protection from garlic and ajoene on paracetamol-induced hepatotoxicity has been observed (Hsu et al 2006) — beneficial interaction.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Patients with bleeding abnormalities should avoid therapeutic doses of garlic. Although usual dietary intakes are likely to be safe prior to major surgery, suspend the use of high-dose garlic supplements 1 week before, as garlic may increase bleeding risk.

If being used as part of a topical application, a test patch is advised before more widespread application.

PREGNANCY USE
Garlic is not recommended at doses greater than usual dietary intakes.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Garlic is both a food and a therapeutic medicine capable of significant and varied pharmacological activity.
- It has antioxidant, antimicrobial, antiplatelet, antithrombotic, antihypertensive, lipid-lowering, anti-atherosclerotic and vasoprotective activity.
- It also enhances microcirculation and may have hypoglycaemic, anti-inflammatory and immunostimulant activity.
- Garlic is used as a treatment for many common infections, to reduce the incidence of colds, improve peripheral circulation and manage hyperlipidaemia and hypertension.
- Increased consumption of garlic has been associated with a decreased risk of stomach and colorectal cancer, according to a review of the epidemiological evidence.
- Several important drug interactions are possible with garlic (refer to significant interactions).

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What will this herb do for me?
Garlic has many different actions in the body and is used to treat conditions such as elevated blood pressure, cholesterol levels, poor peripheral circulation and common infections such as the common cold, flu and athletes foot. Research suggests it may be effective in all of these conditions; however, in some cases, the effect is small.

When will it start to work?
This varies greatly, depending on the reason for use. For example, garlic has been shown to improve microcirculation within 5 hours of ingestion, whereas slowing down of the atherosclerotic process or cancer protective effects are likely to require several years’ continuous use.

Are there any safety issues?
When garlic is taken at doses above the usual dietary levels, it may interact with a number of medications. Also, it should not be taken by people with bleeding disorders and use should stop at least 2 weeks before major surgery.

REFERENCES


Singh DK, Porter TD. Inhibition of sterol 4alpha-methyl oxidase is the principal mechanism by which garlic decreases cholesterol synthesis. J Nutr 136.3 [Suppl] (2006): 759-64S.


**Gentian**

**Historical note** The genus *Gentiana* is derived from Gentius, king of ancient Ilyra who is attributed with the discovery of its therapeutic effects (Blumenthal et al 2000). In ancient Greece and Rome it was used to relieve common gastrointestinal symptoms, much as it is used today. It was first noted in the Chinese medical literature in 50 BC (Willard 1991).

**OTHER NAMES**
Gentiana, yellow gentian, wild gentian

**BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY**
*Gentiana lutea* (family Gentianaceae)

**PLANT PARTS USED**
Root and rhizome

**CHEMICAL COMPONENTS**
Secoiridoid bitter glycosides, oligosaccharides, phenolic acids, phytosterols, polysaccharides (inulin and pectin), tannin, lupeol, beta-amyrin triterpenes, xanthones and essential oil.

**MAIN ACTIONS**
The active principals in gentian root are the bitter constituents, gentiopicroside and amarogentin.

**DIGESTIVE STIMULANT**
The bitter principals induce reflex excitation of taste receptors and increased saliva, gastric juice and bile secretion thereby stimulating appetite and digestion according to in vivo experiments. The small human study confirmed oral administration of gentian root extract increases gastric juice secretion and emptying of the gall bladder (ESCOP 2003).

**OTHER ACTIONS**
A gentian root preparation inhibited *Helicobacter pylori* in vitro (Mahady et al 2005). Antioxidant activity has been observed in vitro for the ethyl acetate and chloroform fractions of gentian (Calliste et al 2001). Animal studies with amarogentin have identified antileishmanial properties (Medda et al 1999). Traditionally, gentian is
considered to have stomachic, anthelmintic, antiseptic, anti-inflammatory and tonic activity (Willard 1991).

**CLINICAL USE**

Gentian root preparations have not been significantly investigated under clinical trial conditions, so evidence is mainly derived from traditional, in vitro and animal studies.

**DYSPEPSIA AND FLATULENCE**

The considerable bitter taste of gentian provides a theoretical basis for its use in dyspepsia and flatulence for which increased saliva and gastric acid secretion would be beneficial. Commission E and ESCOP approve its use for this indication (Blumenthal et al 2000, ESCOP 2003).

**LOSS OF APPETITE**

The considerable bitter taste of gentian provides a theoretical basis for its use in anorexia when increased saliva and gastric acid secretion would be beneficial. Commission E and ESCOP approve its use for this indication (Blumenthal et al 2000, ESCOP 2003).

**OTHER USES**

Traditionally, gentian has also been used for gout, amenorrhea, diarrhoea and worms in the stomach and bowel (Willard 1991). Gentian is also used in alcoholic drinks such as brandy, medicinal wines and vermouth.

---

**Clinical note — Herbs in alcoholic drinks**

The maceration of herbs and spices in wine was common practice in antiquity, and the invention of aromatised wine, the ancestor of vermouth, has been attributed to Hippocrates (Liddle & Boero 2003). Herbs are still commonly used in alcoholic drink production today, either as flavourings, or as both fermentation substrates and flavouring agents. The volatile components of a herb will provide its distinctive odour, whereas non-volatile constituents can affect some gustatory reactions and produce a physiological effect. Herbs such as gentian are used for flavour, but also because they contain a significant amount of fermentable sugars that can be converted by strains of yeast into ethanol in an alcoholic fermentation process. Examples of other herbs that are used in brandies, flavoured spirits, liqueurs, medicinal wines and vermouth are anise, caraway, cardamom, coriander, dandelion, sage and yarrow (Veljkovic & Stankovic 2003).
DOSAGE RANGE

GENERAL GUIDE
- Cut root or dried extract: 2–4 g/day.
- Fluid extract (1:1): 1–2 mL taken 1 hour before meals up to three times daily.
- Tincture (1:5): 3–12 mL/day.
- Infusion: 1–2 g in 150 mL boiled water taken 1 hour before meals and up to three times daily.

ADVERSE REACTIONS
Headaches have been reported (ESCOP 2003) and nausea and vomiting with high doses.

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
Interactions are unknown.

CONTRAINdicATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Contraindicated in gastric or duodenal ulcers and hyperacidity according to Commission E (Blumenthal et al 2000).

PREGNANCY USE
There is insufficient reliable information available to make a recommendation.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Gentian root and its preparations are extremely bitter.
- Gentian preparations stimulate salivation, gastric juice and bile secretion.
- They are used to improve digestion, relieve flatulence and stimulate appetite.
- Little clinical investigation has been undertaken with the herb so evidence of efficacy relies on traditional and animal studies.
- It should not be used in cases of gastric or duodenal ulcer or hyperacidity.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this herb do for me?
Gentian preparations stimulate taste buds when taken orally, and increase gastric juice secretion, thereby improving digestion.

When will it start to work?
Effects are expected within several minutes of ingestion.

Are there any safety issues?
It should not be used by people with gastric or duodenal ulcers or with gastric hyperacidity.
REFERENCES


Ginger

Historical note  Ginger has been used as both a food and a medicine since ancient times. Confucius wrote about it in his Analects, the Greek physician, Dioscorides, listed ginger as an antidote to poisoning, as a digestive, and as being warming to the stomach in De Materia Medica, and the Koran, the Talmud and the Bible all mention ginger. Records suggest that ginger was highly valued as an article of trade and in 13th and 14th century England, one pound of ginger was worth the same as a sheep (Rosengarten 1969). Ginger is still extremely popular in the practice of phytotherapy, particularly in TCM, which distinguishes between the dried and fresh root. It is widely used to stimulate circulation, treat various gastrointestinal disorders and as a stimulant heating agent.

OTHER NAMES
African ginger, Indian ginger, Jamaica ginger, common ginger, rhizoma zingiberis, shokyo (Japanese)

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Zingiber officinale Roscoe (family Zingiberaceae)

PLANT PART USED
Rhizome

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
The ginger rhizome contains an essential oil and resin known collectively as oleoresin. The composition of the essential oil varies according to the geographical origin, but the chief constituents, sesquiterpene hydrocarbons, which are responsible for the characteristic aroma, are fairly constant.

The oleoresin contains:
- sesquiterpenes: zingiberene, ar-curcumene, beta-sesquiphellandrene and beta-bisabolene
- pungent phenolic compounds: gingerols and their corresponding degradation products, shogaols, zingerone, and paradol. Zingerone and shogaols are found in small amounts in fresh ginger and in larger amounts in dried or extracted products (Govindarajan 1982)

MAIN ACTIONS

ANTI-EMETIC
Ginger has demonstrated anti-emetic activity in both experimental models and human studies, the exact mechanism of which is still unknown although both shogaols and gingerols have been shown to have anti-emetic activity (Kawai et al 1994).

It appears that several key constituents and several different mechanisms are responsible. According to both animal and human studies, ginger reduces emesis due to a peripherally acting mechanism, acting on the gastrointestinal tract alone (Holtmann et al 1989). One constituent found in ginger, galanolactone, is a serotonin receptor antagonist, which may partly explain the anti-emetic effect (Huang et al 1991a, Mustafa et al 1993, Yamahara et al 1990). It also explains the inhibitory effect of ginger on serotonin-induced diarrhoea and antispasmodic effects on visceral and vascular smooth muscle.

Ginger has been shown to blunt gastric dysrhythmias and nausea evoked by acute hyperglycaemia in humans. The anti-arrhythmic and anti-emetic effects are thought to be due to a blockade of prostaglandins rather than inhibition of their release (Gonlachanvit 2001). Ginger has also been shown to reduce radiation-induced gastrointestinal distress and emesis in rat models, which is thought to be due at least in part to its antioxidant properties and the ability to scavenge free radicals and inhibit lipid peroxidation (Sharma et al 2005).

GASTROINTESTINAL ACTIVITY
Ginger exerts several effects in the gastrointestinal tract. It stimulates the flow of saliva, bile and gastric secretions (Platel & Srinivasan 1996, 2001, Yamahara et al 1985) and has been shown to increase gastrointestinal motility without affecting gastric emptying in several animal models and human studies (Gupta & Sharma 2001, Micklefield et al 1999, Phillips et al 1993). Ginger has also been observed to have prokinetic activity in mice in vivo and antispasmodic activity in vitro (Ghayur & Gilani 2005). These findings appear to support the traditional use of ginger in the treatment of gastrointestinal discomfort, colic, diarrhoea and bloating and its use as a carminative agent.
**Anti-ulcer activity**

A number of in vivo studies have identified antiulcer activity for ginger extract and several of its isolated constituents. The orally administered acetone extract of ginger at a dose of 1000 mg/kg and zingiberene, the main terpenoid in this extract, at 100 mg/kg significantly inhibited gastric lesions by 97.5% and 53.6%, respectively. Additionally, the pungent principle, 6-gingerol at 100 mg/kg, significantly inhibited gastric lesions by 54.5%. These results suggest that both zingiberene and 6-gingerol are important constituents responsible for ginger’s anti-ulcer activity (Yamahara et al 1988). Other constituents demonstrating antiulcer properties in gastric ulcer models in rats include beta-sesquiphellandrene, beta-bisabolene, ar-curcumene and shogaol (Sertie et al 1992, Yoshikawa et al 1994).

In addition to direct anti-ulcer activity, ginger exerts synergistic effects with the antibiotic clarithromycin in inhibiting different *Helicobacter pylori* isolates independent of the organisms’ susceptibility to clarithromycin (Nostro et al 2006).

**Hypolipidaemic**

High doses of an aqueous extract of ginger (500 mg/kg) significantly reduced serum cholesterol according to an animal study that used oral doses of a raw aqueous extract of ginger administered daily for a period of 4 weeks (Thomson et al 2002).

Effects on triglyceride levels are more difficult to determine, as one study demonstrated that 250 µg ginger extract/day reduced serum triglyceride levels by 27% in mice (Fuhrman et al 2000), whereas another study using a high dose of 500 mg/kg found no significant effects (Thomson et al 2002).

An ex-vivo study found that 250 µg/day of a standardised ginger extract significantly reduced plasma LDL-cholesterol levels, the LDL basal oxidative state, as well as LDL-cholesterol and serum cholesterol’s susceptibility to oxidation and aggregation, compared with placebo. Ginger also reduced aortic atherosclerotic lesions by 44% in atherosclerotic mouse aorta (Fuhrman et al 2000).

**Anti-inflammatory and Analgesic**

The anti-inflammatory effects of ginger may be due to its effects on the arachidonic acid cascade, as COX-1 and -2 and lipoxygenase inhibition has been shown in vitro (Kobayashi et al 1987) and high oral doses of an aqueous extract of ginger (500 mg/kg) significantly lowered serum PGE2 and thromboxane B2 levels in rats (Thomson et al 2002).

Ginger also suppresses leukotriene biosynthesis by inhibiting 5-lipoxygenase, thus distinguishing ginger from NSAIDs. Additionally, ginger extract has been shown to inhibit thromboxane synthase (Langner et al 1998) and a ginger extract (EV.EXT.77) has been found to inhibit the induction of several genes involved in the inflammatory
response. These include genes encoding cytokines, chemokines, and the inducible enzyme COX-2, thus providing evidence that ginger modulates biochemical pathways activated in chronic inflammation (Grzanna et al 2005).

No one single constituent seems to be responsible for the anti-inflammatory effect of ginger. An acetone extract containing gingerols, shogaols and minor compounds like gingerenone A, [6]-gingerdial, hexahydrocurcumin and zingerone have been shown synergistically to produce dose-dependent anti-inflammatory effects (Schuhbaum & Franz 2000). Other studies have identified the gingerols and diarylheptanoids and gingerdione as the key compounds responsible (Flynn et al 1986, Kiuchi et al 1992).

Gingerol and 8-gingerol have been found to evoke capsaicin-like intracellular Ca$^{2+}$ transients and ion currents in vitro and it has been suggested that gingerols represent a novel class of naturally occurring vanilloid receptor agonists that contribute to ginger’s medicinal properties (Dedov et al 2002). This is supported by the finding that topical application of ginger creams or compresses produce an analgesic capsaicin-like effect on the release of the immunoreactive substance P from primary afferent neurons (Onogi et al 1992). In an animal study of chemically induced inflammation, ginger extract reduced oedema that was partly caused by serotonin-receptor antagonism (Penna et al 2003). Additionally, ginger oil has shown anti-inflammatory activity, significantly suppressing both paw and joint swelling in severe adjuvant arthritis in rats (Sharma et al 1994).

**ANTIPLACELET**
It has been suggested that gingerols and their derivatives represent a potential new class of platelet activation inhibitors, with synthetic gingerols being found to inhibit the arachidonic acid-induced platelet release reaction in vitro in a similar dose range as aspirin possibly due to an effect on COX activity in platelets (Koo et al 2001, Lu 2005, Nurtjahja-Tjendraputra et al 2003, Tjendraputra et al 2001).

Powdered ginger exerted an antiplatelet activity when taken in very high doses of at least 10 g, according to one human study (Bordia et al 1997). A randomised double-blind study found that doses up to 2 g of dried ginger had no effect on bleeding time, platelet aggregation or platelet count (Lumb 1994). This lack of effect has been demonstrated in healthy volunteers (Janssen et al 1996) and those with type 1 diabetes mellitus or coronary artery disease (Bordia et al 1997).

**ANTIMICROBIAL AND ANTIPARASITIC**
Ginger extract and several of its main constituents exhibit antimicrobial activity in vitro and in vivo. Ginger extract has been shown to have an antibacterial effect against...
Staphylococcus aureus, Streptococcus pyogenes, S. pneumoniae and Haemophilus collected from throat swaps of infected individuals. The minimum inhibitory concentration of ginger ranged from 0.0003–0.7 µg/mL, and the minimum bactericidal concentration ranged from 0.135–2.04 µg/mL (Akoachere et al 2002). Ginger has also shown antischistosomal activity. Gingerol (5.0 ppm) completely abolished the infectivity of Schistosoma spp. (blood flukes) in animal studies (Adewunmi et al 1990). Gingerol and shogaol exhibited potent molluscicidal activity in vivo.

Gingerols demonstrated antibacterial activity against Bacillus subtilis and Escherichia coli in vitro (Yamada et al 1992), and the essential oils of ginger have been shown to have antimicrobial activity against Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria, yeasts and filamentous fungi in vitro (Martins et al 2001). Shogaol and gingerol have demonstrated anti-nematode activities; 6.25 µg/mL 6-shogaol destroyed Anisakis larvae within 16 hours in vitro, whereas the antinematodal medication pyrantel pamoate had no lethal effect at 1 mg/mL (Goto et al 1990). Ginger constituents have also been shown to be antifungal and antiviral. Shogaol and zingerone strongly inhibited Salmonella typhi, Vibrio cholerae and Tricophyton violaceum. Aqueous extracts have also been shown to be effective against Trichomonas vaginalis (Henry & Piggott 1987). Several sesquiterpenes, but especially beta-sesquiphellandrene, isolated from ginger have also been shown to have antirhinoviral activity in vitro (Denyer et al 1994).

**ANTIOXIDANT**
According to in vivo research, ginger exerts significant direct and indirect antioxidant effects. Orally administered ginger significantly lowered levels of free radicals and raised the activities of endogenous antioxidants superoxide dismutase and catalase and had a sparing effect on vitamins C and E (Jeyakumar et al 1999).

**IMMUNOMODULATION**
In vitro and in vivo research suggests ginger extract exerts some degree of immunomodulatory activity and has been shown to significantly prolong the survival of cardiac allografts in mice (Wilasrusmee et al 2003). Ginger oil has also been shown to have immunomodulatory activity in mice, with dose-dependent inhibition of T lymphocyte proliferation and IL-1-alpha secretion in vitro and reduced delayed type of hypersensitivity response in vivo (Zhou et al 2006).

**HEPATOPROTECTIVE**
Ginger has significant hepatoprotective effects comparable to those of silymarin, according to research with experimental models of alcohol-induced liver damage (Bhandari et al 2003).
OTHER ACTIONS

ANTIHISTAMINE
Shogaols and certain gingerols exhibit dose-dependent inhibition of drug-induced histamine release from rat peritoneal mast cells in vitro (Yamahara et al 1995).

ANXIOLYTIC
A combination of ginger and Ginkgo biloba has been shown to reduce anxiety in an animal model (elevated plus-maze test). The effect was similar to diazepam (Hasenohrl et al 1996). A highly non-polar fraction of a ginger extract has been shown to possess anticonvulsant, anxiolytic and anti-emetic activities in animals (Vishwakarma et al 2002).

ANTIFIBROTIC
Supplementation with 5 g ginger not only prevented a decrease, but also significantly increased fibrinolytic activity in 30 healthy adult volunteers who consumed 50 g fat in a meal in an open clinical study (Verma & Bordia 2001).

APOPTOSIS
A pungent phenolic substance found in ginger (6-paradol) effectively inhibits tumour promotion in mouse skin carcinogenesis. 6-Paradol and structurally related derivatives have also been shown to induce apoptosis through a caspase-3-dependent mechanism (caspase is a ‘suicidal’ cell protein that, when activated, induces the cell to destroy itself) (Keum et al 2002).

POSITIVE INOTROPE
Gingerols and shogaols isolated from ginger have positive inotropic activity, as demonstrated on isolated heart muscle (Shoji et al 1982, Yamahara et al 1995). The effect of gingerol seems to be rather specific to SR Ca$^{2+}$–ATPase activity (Kobayashi et al 1987).

THERMOGENIC
Ginger helps to maintain body temperature and inhibit serotonin-induced hypothermia in vivo (Huang et al 1991b, Kano et al 1991). However, the addition of a ginger-based sauce to a meal did not produce any significant effect on metabolic rate in humans (Henry & Piggott 1987).

CLINICAL USE
Although ginger is used in many forms, including fresh ginger used in cooking or chai (Indian spicy tea), pickled or glazed ginger, ethanol extracts and concentrated powdered extracts, preparations made with the root are used medicinally. Depending
on the specific solvent used, the resultant preparation will contain different concentrations of the active constituents and may differ markedly from crude ginger. Although the great majority of research refers specifically to the species *Zingiber officinale*, there is the potential for confusion with other species or even with other genera (Canter 2004). Furthermore, there are reported to be wide variations in the quality of commercial ginger supplements with concentrations of gingerols ranging from 0.0 to 9.43 mg/g. As such, the results of specific research can not necessarily be extrapolated to different preparations (Schwertner et al 2006).

**PREVENTION OF NAUSEA AND VOMITING**


A recent systematic review of 24 RCTs covering 1073 patients suggest that results for the treatment of nausea and vomiting in pregnancy are encouraging; however, results for postoperative nausea and vomiting and motion sickness are unclear and daily doses of up to 6 g of ginger seems to have few side-effects (Betz et al 2005). More recent reviews provide further encouragement and suggest that ginger may indeed be effective in nausea associated with pregnancy (Boone & Shields 2005) and the postoperative period (Chaiyakunapruk et al 2006).

**Clinical note — Morning sickness**

Nausea and vomiting are the most common symptoms experienced in early pregnancy, with nausea affecting between 70% and 85% of women. About half of pregnant women experience vomiting (Jewell 2002). Hyperemesis gravidarum is more severe and affects between 0.3% and 2% of all pregnant women. It is a multifactorial disease in which pregnancy-induced hormonal changes associated with concurrent gastrointestinal dysmotility and possible *Helicobacter pylori* infection function as contributing factors (Eliaikim et al 2000).

**Nausea of pregnancy** There are many studies, including an observational study (Portnoi et al 2003) and at least six RCTs (Fischer-Rasmussen et al 1990, Keating & Chez 2002, Portnoi et al 2003, Smith et al 2004, Sripramote & Lekhyananda 2003,
Vutyavanich et al 2001, Willetts et al 2003), as well as multiple systematic reviews, including a Cochrane review, that suggest that ginger powder or extract may be safe and effective in treating nausea and vomiting of pregnancy (Boone & Shields 2005, Borrelli et al 2005, Bryer 2005, Dib & El-Saddik 2004, Ernst & Pittler 2000, Jewell 2003). The most recent review, which considers six double-blind RCTs with a total of 675 participants, and a prospective observational cohort study of 187 women, suggest that ginger is superior to placebo and as effective as vitamin B6 in relieving pregnancy-related nausea and vomiting and that there is an absence of significant side-effects and adverse pregnancy outcomes (Borrelli et al 2005).

In three double-blind, placebo-controlled, randomised trials of ginger for pregnancy related-nausea and vomiting, including one trial on hyperemesis gravidarum, 1 g ginger in divided doses was significantly more effective than placebo in reducing nausea and vomiting (Fischer-Rasmussen et al 1990, Keating & Chez 2002, Vutyavanich et al 2001). In a further double-blind of 120 women, 25 mg of the ginger extract EV.EXT35 (equivalent to 1.5 g of dried ginger) four times daily was useful in patients experiencing nausea and retching, although no significant result was seen for vomiting (Willetts et al 2003).

In two further randomised, double-blind, controlled trials, one involving 138 women and the second 291 women, 1–1.5 g of ginger was found to be equivalent to vitamin B6 in helping to reduce pregnancy-related nausea, dry retching, and vomiting (Smith et al 2004, Sripramote & Lekhyananda 2003).

**Postoperative nausea** Ginger may be useful for the prevention of postoperative nausea; however, not all studies have produced positive results and as the ginger preparations used have not been standardised, it is difficult to directly compare studies. A recent meta-analysis of five randomised trials, however, including a total of 363 patients found that a fixed dose of at least 1 g of ginger was more effective than placebo for the prevention of postoperative nausea and vomiting (Chaiyakunapruk et al 2006).

Most of the studies on postoperative nausea and vomiting have been done on patients undergoing gynaecological surgery. In two such randomised, placebo-controlled, double-blind studies, ginger significantly reduced the incidence of postoperative nausea and vomiting (Bone et al 1990, Phillips et al 1993), although two further studies failed to show any benefit with ginger (Arfeen et al 1995, Eberhart et al 2003). A fifth study of 80 women undergoing gynaecological laparoscopy found that 1 g of ginger taken 1 hour before surgery was significantly superior to placebo in reducing the incidence of nausea 2–4 hours afterwards;
however, it failed to show statistical significance for an observed reduction in the incidence and frequency of vomiting (Pongrojpaw & Chiamchanya 2003).

Although other types of surgery have not been as extensively studied as gynaecological surgery, there is a report on 6 months of clinical anaesthetic experience that suggests that a nasocutaneously administered 5% solution of essential oil of ginger given pre-operatively, together with conventional therapies, to general anaesthesia patients at high risk for postoperative nausea and vomiting is a safe and cost-effective way of reducing nausea and vomiting post anaesthesia (Geiger 2005).

In the only double-blind, placebo-controlled study of postoperative nausea and vomiting in patients undergoing middle ear surgery, ginger was ineffective and the use of 1 g of ginger 1 hour before surgery was associated with significantly more postoperative nausea and vomiting than the use of ondansetron or placebo (Gulhas et al 2003).

**Motion sickness** Commission E approves the use of ginger root for the prevention of motion sickness (Blumenthal et al 2000) and several clinical studies have assessed its effects as either prophylaxis or treatment. An early double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled study involving 80 naval cadets found that ginger was significantly superior to placebo in reducing symptoms of vomiting and cold sweats due to seasickness. Fewer symptoms of nausea and vertigo were also reported with ginger, but the difference was not statistically significant (Grontved & Hentzer 1986). In another randomised double-blind study of seasickness involving over 1700 tourists on a whale-watching safari 300 km north of the Arctic circle, 500 mg ginger was found to be as effective for the treatment of motion sickness as several common anti-emetic medications (cinnarizine, cyclizine, dimenhydrinate, domperidone, meclizine and scopolamine) with ginger preventing seasickness in 80% of the subjects during the 6-hour boat trip, although the incidence of severe vomiting did not differ significantly between treatment groups (Schmid et al 1994).

At least three studies have had mixed results from experimental models of motion sickness whereby subjects are seated in a rotating chair. The first study involving 28 volunteers found no significant protective effects for powdered ginger (500 mg or 1000 mg) or fresh ginger root (1000 mg) (Stewart et al 1991), whereas a second study involving 36 undergraduate men and women who reported very high susceptibility to motion sickness found that ginger was superior to dimenhydrinate (Mowrey & Clayson 1982). More recently, another double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled crossover study showed positive benefits with ginger pretreatment on prolonging time before nausea, shortening recovery time and effectively reducing...
nausea (Lien et al 2003). This study used pretreatment doses of 1000 mg and 2000 mg, which were also shown to reduce tachygastria and plasma vasopressin.

**Chemotherapy-induced nausea** In an open study, 1.5 g ginger was found to decrease psoralen-induced nausea in 11 patients treated with photopheresis for cutaneous T-cell lymphoma (Meyer et al 1995).

Powdered ginger root effectively reduced cyclophosphamide-induced nausea and vomiting in a randomised, prospective, crossover double-blind study, with the anti-emetic effect of ginger being equal to metoclopramide (Sontakke et al 2003). Ginger was found to have similar efficacy to metoclopramide in reducing cisplatin-induced emesis in a randomised, double-blinded, crossover study of 48 gynaecologic cancer patients receiving chemotherapy (Manusirivithaya et al 2004).

**MUSCULOSKELETAL DISORDERS**

Ginger is described in Ayurvedic (traditional Indian) and Tibb (traditional Arabian) systems of medicine to be useful in inflammation and rheumatism and this traditional use is supported by modern studies demonstrating ginger’s anti-inflammatory activity.

A randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, multicentre, parallel-group 6-week study of 261 patients found that a highly purified and standardised ginger extract (EV.EXT 77) moderately reduced the symptoms of OA of the knee (Altman & Marcussen 2001). Similarly, 250 mg of the ginger extract (Zintona EC) four times daily for 6 months was shown to be significantly more effective than placebo in reducing pain and disability in 29 OA patients in a double-blind, placebo-controlled, crossover study (Wigler et al 2003).

These studies are supported by an open retrospective study involving 56 patients (28 with RA, 18 with OA, 10 with muscular discomfort) that revealed that more than three-quarters experienced varying degrees of relief of pain and swelling from the long-term use of powdered ginger (Srivastava & Mustafa 1992). Further support comes from studies comparing ginger to NSAIDs.

In one double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled trial involving 120 patients, 30 mg of an ethanolic ginger extract equivalent to 1 g of ginger and prepared from fresh ginger purchased from a local market in India was found to be significantly more effective than placebo and was as effective as 1.2 g of ibuprofen in the symptomatic treatment of OA (Haghighi et al 2005). In another double-blind crossover study 170 mg of the ginger extract EV.ext-33 with a standardised content of hydroxy-methoxy-phenyl compounds given twice daily was found to be significantly more effective than placebo but not as effective as ibuprofen in reducing pain and disability in 75 patients with OA before the crossover period, whereas no
A statistical difference was seen between ginger and placebo in the analysis after the crossover period. The authors commented that the washout period may have been insufficient and that ginger might need to be administered for longer than 3 weeks, and possibly in a higher dosage, to be clinically effective (Bliddal et al 2000).

**DYSPEPSIA**
Ginger stimulates the flow of saliva, bile and gastric secretions and therefore is traditionally used to stimulate appetite, reduce flatulence and colic, gastrointestinal spasms and generally act as a digestive aid. Commission E approves the use of ginger root for the treatment of dyspepsia (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**MIGRAINE**
Ginger is used to prevent and treat migraine headache. Its ability to inhibit thromboxane A2 and exert antihistamine, anti-inflammatory and gastric actions makes it a theoretically attractive choice (Mustafa & Srivastava 1990b). This use is supported by an open-label study of 30 migraine sufferers that reported that treatment with a sublingual ginger and feverfew preparation (GelStat MigraineO) in the initial phase of a migraine resulted in most patients being satisfied with the therapy and being pain-free or only having mild headache post-treatment (Cady et al 2005).

**OTHER USES**
Ginger has been used orally to treat dysmenorrhoea, and ginger cream or compress is used externally for mastitis.

**DOSAGE RANGE**
The recommended dose ranges widely from 500 mg to 9 g/day dried root or equivalent; however, as there are wide variations in the gingerol concentrations in commercial ginger supplements (Schwertner et al 2006) the effective dosage will depend on the preparation and the indication for use.

- Liquid extract (1:2): 0.7–2.0 mL/day.
- Dried root: 1–3 g daily in divided doses or 1–2 g taken as a single dose for nausea and vomiting.
- Infusion: 4–6 slices of fresh ginger steeped in boiling water for 30 minutes.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
Gastric irritation, heartburn and bloating have been reported in clinical trials (Arfeen et al 1995). Contact dermatitis of the fingertips has also been reported (Seetharam & Pasricha 1987) with topical use.
SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
Controlled studies are not available for many interactions; therefore they are based on evidence of activity and are largely theoretical and speculative.

WARFARIN
Due to the herb's antiplatelet effects there is a theoretical risk of increased bleeding at high doses (>10 g) although this is not evident clinically. There is no evidence of an interaction with warfarin at the usual dietary and therapeutic intakes (Jiang et al 2005, Stenton et al 2001, Vaes & Chyka 2000), and ginger has been shown not to alter prothrombin times in pooled human plasma collected from male volunteers between the ages of 18 and 57 years (Jones et al 2001). A standardised ginger extract, EV.EXT 33, has demonstrated no significant effect on coagulation parameters or on warfarin-induced changes in blood coagulation in rats (Weidner & Sigwart 2000) and ginger was found not to affect clotting status or the pharmacokinetics or pharmacodynamics of warfarin in healthy human subjects (Jiang et al 2005). Avoid high-dose supplements unless under medical supervision.

ANTIPLATELET DRUGS
Theoretically, increased antiplatelet and anti-inflammatory effects may occur with high-dose ginger preparations, but the clinical significance of this is unknown. Caution should be exercised with doses >10 g — possible beneficial effect.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Ginger in high doses is not recommended for children under 6 years of age due to the pungent nature of ginger. However, ginger lollies or ginger ale is sometimes used and a dose of 250 mg every 4 hours for motion sickness is safe.

Commission E suggests people with gallstones consult with their physician before using ginger. People with gastric ulcers or reflux should use this herb with caution. Suspend use of high dose supplements (> 10 g) 1 week before major surgery.

PREGNANCY USE
Although Commission E suggests that ginger is contraindicated in pregnancy, more recent research suggests that ginger is not contraindicated in pregnancy — doses up to 2 g/day of dried ginger root have been used safely.

No adverse effects on pregnancy were observed in multiple studies of ginger or nausea and vomiting (Boone & Shields 2005, Borrelli et al 2005, Bryer 2005, Dib & El-Saddik 2004, Ernst & Pittler 2000, Jewell 2003).
PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING

- Ginger is most often used for its anti-emetic, anti-inflammatory and gastrointestinal effects.
- There is clinical support for the use of ginger in the treatment of nausea and vomiting associated with motion sickness, the postoperative period, pregnancy and chemotherapy.
- Ginger is traditionally used for gastrointestinal disorders including dyspepsia, poor appetite, flatulence, colic, vomiting, diarrhoea and spasms, as well as a diaphoretic in the treatment of the common cold and influenza.
- Ginger is also used as an anti-inflammatory agent for arthritis, although large controlled studies have yet to produce strong support for this use.
- Although antiplatelet effects have been reported, this requires very large doses and is not likely to be significant in normal therapeutic doses or dietary intake levels.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What will this herb do for me?
Ginger may be useful in the treatment of nausea and vomiting associated with motion sickness, postoperative nausea, vomiting in pregnancy and seasickness. It is also useful for treating symptoms of dyspepsia and may have symptom-relieving effects in arthritis, although this is less certain.

When will it start to work?
In the case of dyspepsia and motion sickness prevention, ginger will have an almost immediate effect, with improvement reported within 30 minutes. For motion sickness, 0.5–1.0 g ginger should be taken 30 minutes before travel and repeated 4 hourly. For nausea of pregnancy it should be taken for at least 4 days.

Are there any safety issues?
Ginger is well tolerated, although it should be used with caution by people with gallstones, gastric ulcers or reflux.

REFERENCES


Canter PH. Ginger: Do we know what we are talking about? Focus Altern Complement Ther 9.3 (2004): 184-5.


Ginkgo biloba

Historical note  *Ginkgo biloba* is one of the world’s oldest living tree species, earning it the name ‘living fossil’. Its existence can be traced back more than 200 million years and it was commonly found in North America and Europe before the Ice Age. Ginkgo was first introduced into Europe in 1690 by the botanist Engelbert Kaempfer, who described it as the ‘tree with duck feet’. Ginkgo has been used medicinally for many centuries and is now one of the most popular therapeutic agents prescribed in Europe by medical doctors. It has been estimated that in Germany and France, prescriptions for ginkgo make up 1% and 1.3%, respectively, of total prescription sales (Pizzorno & Murray 2006). Also popular in the United States, it was the top selling herbal medicine in 1999 with sales of US$148 million.

**COMMON NAME**
Ginkgo

**OTHER NAMES**

**BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY**
*Ginkgo biloba* (family Ginkgoaceae)

**PLANT PARTS USED**
In modern times the leaf is used, but traditionally the nut was also used.

**CHEMICAL COMPONENTS**
Important constituents present in the leaves are the terpene trilactones (i.e. ginkgolides A, B, C and J and bilobalide), many flavonol glycosides, biflavones, proanthocyanidins, alkylphenols, simple phenolic acids, 6-hydroxykynurenic acid, 4-O-methylpyridoxine and polyprenols (van Beek 2002).

There has been some interest in ginkgo alkylphenols (ginkgolic acids) because of their allergenic properties, so most manufacturers limit the concentration of alkylphenols to 5 ppm.
Clinical note — Ginkgo extract used in practice
The standardised ginkgo extract is made from dried ginkgo leaves extracted in 60% acetone. Only a fraction of the leaf matter is extracted, 98% is not extracted. Of the 2% extracted the flavones account for 25%, the ginkgolides 3% and the bilobalide 3%. The remaining 69% is not specified (Keller 2001). The drug ratio may vary from 35:1 to 67:1 (average ratio 50:1). This means that, on average, it takes 50 kg dried leaf to produce 1 kg of extract. Standardised ginkgo extract (e.g. EGB 761) must be standardised to 22–27% flavone glycosides, 5–7% terpenes lactones (2.8–3.4% ginkgolides A, B and C, and 2.6–3.2% bilobalide). The content of ginkgolic acids must be less than 5 ppm (Blumenthal et al 2000). Although the standardisation is very specific, the compounds are considered to be marker compounds as the active constituents of Ginkgo biloba have not been fully identified (unpubl data: Keller K, Chair of the Herbal Medicinal Products Working Group, European Medicines Evaluation Agency. Quality Assurance of Herbal Medicines, March 2001, Australia Technology Park).

MAIN ACTIONS
The many and varied pharmacological actions of ginkgo preparations are related to the presence of several classes of active constituents.

ANTIOXIDANT
Ginkgo biloba extract and several of its individual constituents, such as quercetin and kaempferol, have demonstrated significant antioxidant properties in vitro (Hibatallah et al 1999, Sloley et al 2000).

The antioxidant effects of G. biloba have been shown to reduce the effects of UV radiation on skin (Aricioglu et al 2001, Hibatallah et al 1999, Kim 2001, Lin & Chang 1997). When applied topically, ginkgo increases the activity of superoxide dismutase within skin, thereby enhancing the skin’s natural defences.

VASOREGULATION
Vasodilation  Ginkgo promotes vasodilation and improves blood flow through arteries, veins and capillaries. Increases in microcirculatory blood flow occur rapidly and have been confirmed under randomised crossover test conditions 1 hour after administration (Jung et al 1990).

Several mechanisms of action are responsible. Currently, these are considered to be: inhibition of NO release, activation of Ca²⁺-activated K⁺ (KCa) channels, and increased prostacyclin release (Nishida & Satoh 2003).

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
**Reduces oedema** Various flavonoids including anthocyanosides and *G. biloba* extracts have been shown to be effective against experimentally induced capillary hyperfiltration (Cohen-Boulakia et al 2000).

**ANTIPLATELET AND ANTICOAGULANT**

There have been several case reports of *G. biloba* causing haemorrhage during or after surgery (Hauser et al 2002, Schneider et al 2002) and there is evidence that one of its components, ginkgolide B, is a platelet-activating factor antagonist (Smith et al 1996). However, three placebo-controlled studies have failed to detect a significant effect for *G. biloba* on platelet function or coagulation (Bal Dit et al 2003, Jiang et al 2003, Kohler 2004). One was an escalating dose study that found that 120 mg, 240 mg or 480 mg given daily for 14 days did not alter platelet function or coagulation (Bal Dit et al 2003).

**ALTERS NEUROTRANSMITTERS**

**Monoamine oxidase (MAO) inhibition** In vitro tests in rat brains suggest that Egb 761 may exert MAO-A and MAO-B inhibitor activity (Wu & Zhu 1999). Tests with isolated constituents kaempferol, apigenin and chrysin have demonstrated these to be potent MAO inhibitors, with greater effect on MAO-A than MAO-B (Sloley et al 2000). It is unclear whether MAO inhibition occurs in vivo.

**Serotonin** Another in vitro study found that oral Egb 761 significantly increases the uptake of serotonin, but not dopamine, in cerebral cortex samples from mice (Ramassamy et al 1992) and another in vivo study identified an anti-aggressive effect mediated by 5-HT$_{2A}$ receptors (Shih et al 2000).

**Cholinergic effects** Considering that *G. biloba* appears to be as effective as anticholinesterase drugs, several researchers have investigated whether it exerts cholinergic effects. Evidence from behavioural, in vitro and ex vivo tests with *G. biloba* has shown both direct and indirect cholinergic activity (Das et al 2002, Nathan 2000). The extract appears to increase the rate of acetylcholine turnover and stimulate the binding activity of ligands to muscarinic receptors in the hippocampus (Muller 1989).

**GABA receptors** Bilobalide in *G. biloba* is a competitive antagonist for GABA-A receptors according to in vitro tests (Huang et al 2003). The effect is almost as potent as bicuculline and picrotoxinin.

**Corticosterone** In vivo tests have found Egb 761 has stress-alleviating properties mediated through its moderation of corticosterone levels (Puebla-Perez et al 2003).

**NEUROPROTECTION**

*Ginkgo biloba* leaf extract (Egb 761) has demonstrated neuroprotective effects in a variety of studies ranging from molecular and cellular, to animal and human;
however, the cellular and molecular mechanisms remain unclear (Smith et al 2002). Of the constituents studied, it appears that the bilobalide constituent is chiefly responsible for this activity, although others are also involved (DeFeudis & Drieu 2000).

Up until recently, it was believed that the antioxidant, membrane stabilising and platelet-activating factor antagonist effects were chiefly responsible for neuroprotection, but new evidence suggests MAO inhibitor activity and effects at the mitochondria may also be important contributing mechanisms.

**Beta-amyloid**  *Ginkgo biloba* extract EGB 761 protects cells against toxicity induced by beta-amyloid in a concentration-dependent manner, according to in vitro tests (Bastianetto & Quirion 2002a, b, Bastianetto et al 2000). More recently in vivo studies have confirmed that ginkgo extract has an anti-amyloid aggregation effect (Luo 2006). It appears that ginkgo increases transthyretin RNA levels in mouse hippocampus, which is noteworthy because transthyretin is involved in the transport of beta-amyloid and may provide a mechanism to reduce amyloid deposition in brain (Watanabe et al 2001). There is also evidence that *G. biloba* modulates alpha-secretase, the enzyme that cuts the amyloid precursor protein and prevents amyloidogenic fragments from being produced (Colciaghi et al 2004).

**Cerebral ischaemia** There is evidence from experimental and clinical studies that *G. biloba* extract protects tissues from ischaemia/reperfusion damage (Janssens et al 2000). According to investigation with an experimental model, EGB 761 could prevent and treat acute cerebral ischaemia, but the effect was most pronounced when administered prophylactically (Peng et al 2003).

**Stabilisation and protection of mitochondrial function** Several in vitro tests have demonstrated that EGB 761 stabilises and protects mitochondrial function (Eckert et al 2005, Janssens et al 2000). These observations are gaining the attention of researchers interested in neurodegenerative diseases as it is suspected that the mitochondria and the phenomenon of mitochondrial permeability transition play a key role in neuronal cell death and the development such diseases (Beal 2003, Shevtsova et al 2005).

**IMMUNOSTIMULANT**
Immunostimulatory activity has been demonstrated in several experimental models (Puebla-Perez et al 2003, Tian et al 2003, Villasenor-Garcia et al 2004). The beneficial effects of EGb 761 on immune function are based on its antioxidant properties, as well as the cell proliferation-stimulating effect.
**ANTI-INFLAMMATORY**

The anti-inflammatory activity of ginkgo has been investigated for the whole extract and an isolated biflavonoid component known as ginkgetin, with both forms demonstrating significant anti-inflammatory activity.

**Ginkgo extract** Intravenously administered ginkgo extract produced an anti-inflammatory effect that was as strong as the same dose of prednisolone (i.e. 1 mg GBE = 1 mg prednisolone) in an experimental model. Ginkgo extract was also found to significantly reduce the concentration of PGE₂, TNF-alpha and NO production in vitro (Ilieva et al 2004). Studies with subcutaneously administered G. biloba extract in experimental models have also identified significant anti-inflammatory activity, with the addition of antinociceptive effects (Abdel-Salam et al 2004).

**Ginkgetin** Ginkgetin showed a stronger anti-inflammatory activity than prednisolone when administered by intraperitoneal injection in an animal model of arthritis. Histological examination of the knee joints confirmed the effect (Kim et al 1999). When used topically in an animal model of chronic skin inflammation and pro-inflammatory gene expression, it was found to inhibit ear oedema by approximately 26% and PGE₂ production by 30% (Lim et al 2006). Histological comparisons revealed that ginkgetin reduced epidermal hyperplasia, inhibited phospholipase A2, and suppressed COX-2 and iNOS expression (Lim et al 2006).

**ANTICANCER**

Studies conducted with various molecular, cellular and whole animal models have revealed that leaf extracts of G. biloba may have anticancer (chemopreventive) properties that are related to its antioxidant, anti-angiogenic and gene-regulatory actions (DeFeudis et al 2003). Both the flavonoid and terpenoid constituents are thought to be responsible for many of these mechanisms, meaning that the whole extract is required for activity. Studies in humans have found that ginkgo extracts inhibit the formation of radiation-induced (chromosome-damaging) clastogenic factors and UV-induced oxidative stress, both effects that may contribute to the overall chemopreventive activity. As a result of these observations, there has been a call by some academics for ginkgo to be more widely investigated and used in the prevention and treatment of cancer (Eli & Fasciano 2006).

**OTHER ACTIONS**

Inhibition of CYP3A4 has been demonstrated in vitro (Budzinski et al 2000); however, two clinical studies have produced contradictory results (Chavez et al 2006).

Evidence from a recent in vitro study that investigated the effect of individual constituents in ginkgo suggests that several constituents found within ginkgo have
significant inhibitory activity; however, the principal components (terpene trilactones and flavonol glycosides) do not (von Moltke et al 2004). Ultimately, the clinical importance of these potential inhibitors will depend on their concentration within a commercial product and the extent of their bioavailability.

CLINICAL USE

*Ginkgo biloba* is a complex herb that contains many different active constituents and works by means of multiple mechanisms. In practice, its therapeutic effect is a result of interactions between constituents and mechanisms, giving it applications in many varied conditions. To date, most of the research conducted in Europe has used a standardised preparation known as EGb 761, available commercially as Rokan, Tanakan or Tebonin.

DEMENTIA, MEMORY IMPAIRMENT

*Ginkgo biloba* has been used and studied as a cognitive activator in a variety of populations, such as cognitively intact people, those with cerebral insufficiency, age-related memory impairment, Alzheimer’s dementia or multi-infarct dementia (Itil et al 1998, Le Bars et al 2000, 2002, Oken et al 1998, Wettstein 1999).

A 2002 Cochrane review of the scientific literature concluded that *G. biloba* produces benefits superior to placebo within 12 weeks’ treatment in people with acquired cognitive impairment, including dementia, of any degree of severity (Birks et al 2002). Cognition, activities of daily living and measures of mood and emotional function show significant benefit for ginkgo compared with placebo.

Some clinical studies have also found that EGB 761 improves the capacity of geriatric patients to cope with the stressful demands of daily life (Clostre 1999).

**Clinical note — What is cerebral insufficiency?**

Cerebral insufficiency is a syndrome characterised by a collection of symptoms, although it is not associated with any clear pathological changes. The 12 symptoms associated with this condition are: difficulties of memory and concentration; being absent-minded; confusion; lacking energy; tiredness; decreased physical performance; depressive mood; anxiety; dizziness; tinnitus; and headaches (Kleijn & Knipschild 1992). Some of these symptoms are also described as early symptoms of dementia and appear to be associated with decreased cerebral blood flow, although frequently no explanation is found.

**Use in healthy subjects**  A number of double-blind studies have investigated the effects of *G. biloba* (150–600 mg/day) in healthy subjects; however, it remains unclear whether benefits can be expected in this population (Cieza et al 2003, Mix &

A 6-week, double-blind placebo-controlled trial using a dose of 180 mg/day EGB 761 extract in healthy elderly subjects found that active treatment produced significantly better improvements on a task assessing speed of processing abilities compared with placebo (Mix & Crews 2000). Subjectively, more people rated their ability to remember as improved by the end of treatment with ginkgo compared with placebo, but no significant differences were found between the groups on any of the four objective memory measures. Another randomised, double-blind placebo-controlled study involving 31 subjects (aged 30–59 years) compared the effects of four different doses of ginkgo extract with placebo over 2 days (Rigney et al 1999). Once again, treatment improved various aspects of cognition with the strongest effects seen on memory. A dose of 120 mg ginkgo extract daily produced the best effects, and cognitive-enhancing effects were most apparent in the group aged 50–59 years.

Two more clinical studies to investigate ginkgo in cognitively intact older adults have produced conflicting results (Mix & Crews 2002, Solomon et al 2002). Solomon et al used a dose of 120 mg/day over 6 weeks under double-blind conditions and found no significant differences between treatment and control groups on any outcome measure that included standard neuropsychological tests for memory and concentration. There have been several points of controversy regarding this particular trial, chiefly in regard to the non-identical placebo that was used (a soft gelatin capsule for placebo whereas the ginkgo product was a film-coated tablet). Mix and Crews used a higher dose of 180 mg/day over 6 weeks under the same test conditions and found that people receiving EGB 761 exhibited significantly more improvement on several neuropsychological tests, indicating improved aspects of memory. Additionally, the results of self-rated surveys found that memory improvements were of sufficient magnitude as to be detected by participants in the ginkgo treatment group.

Comparisons with anticholinesterase drugs The type of CNS effects produced by EGB 761 in elderly dementia patients is similar to those induced in tacrine responders and those seen after the administration of other ‘cognitive activators’, according to a small randomised study involving 18 elderly people diagnosed with mild to moderate dementia (possible or probable Alzheimer’s disease) (Itil et al 1998). The results also demonstrated that 240 mg EGB produced typical cognitive activator ECG profiles (responders) in more subjects (8 of 18) than 40 mg tacrine (3 of 18 subjects). A later review concluded that ginkgo extract and second-generation
cholinesterase inhibitors (donepezil, rivastigmine, metrifonate) should be considered equally effective in the treatment of mild to moderate Alzheimer’s dementia (Wettstein 2000).

Commission E approves the use of standardised ginkgo extract in dementia syndromes, including vascular, primary degenerative and mixed types (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**Dementia prevention** The many mechanisms attributed to ginkgo make it an ideal candidate for the long-term prevention of many age-related diseases such as dementia. Currently, a large study involving more than 3000 volunteers is underway in the United States. The Ginkgo Evaluation of Memory (GEM) study will evaluate whether long-term ginkgo use will reduce the incidence of all-cause dementia and Alzheimer’s dementia (Colciaghi et al 2004). Secondary outcomes of the trial include measuring effects on the rate of cognitive and functional decline, incidence of cardiovascular and cerebrovascular events, and mortality.

**Acute ischaemic stroke** *Ginkgo biloba* extract is widely used in the treatment of acute ischaemic stroke in China. A Cochrane systematic review identified 14 trials of which 10 (792 patients) were included (Zeng et al 2005). In those 10 trials, follow-up was performed at 14–35 days after stroke and in all studies neurological outcome was assessed, but none of them reported on disability (activities of daily living function) or QOL and only three trials reported adverse events. Nine of the trials were considered to be of inferior quality. Overall results from the 10 studies found that *G. biloba* extract was associated with a significant increase in the number of improved patients. Of note, one placebo-controlled trial, assessed to be of good quality, failed to show an improvement of neurological deficit at the end of treatment. In view of the short-comings of many trials and limited evidence, high-quality and large-scale randomised controlled trials are still required to determine its efficacy.

**DEPRESSION**

Although studies investigating the effects of *G. biloba* in cerebral insufficiency, a syndrome that is often characterised by depression, have shown positive results, no clinical studies are available that have investigated its use in clinical depression.

One randomised, double-blind placebo-controlled study has investigated its effects in seasonal affective disorder (SAD). *Ginkgo biloba* extract PN246, in tablet form (Bio-Biloba), was tested in 27 patients with SAD over 10 weeks or until they developed symptoms, starting in a symptom-free phase about 1 month before symptoms were expected. In this trial, *G. biloba* failed to prevent the development of SAD (Lingaerde et al 1999).
More recently, Cieza et al. (2003) tested Egb 761 (240 mg/day) on the subjective emotional well-being of healthy older subjects (50–65 years) in a randomised, double-blind study. Ginkgo treatment produced a statistically significant difference for the VAS mental health and for QOL, as well as for the Subjective Intensity Score Mood in week 2 compared with placebo. At the end of the study, statistically significant improvement in the Egb 761 group was observed for the variables: depression, fatigue and anger.

**GENERALISED ANXIETY DISORDER**
Egb 761 has demonstrated stress-alleviating and anxiolytic-like activity in preclinical studies, and most recently in a randomised study of 107 patients with GAD ($n = 82$) or adjustment disorder with anxious mood ($n = 25$) (Woelk et al. 2006). Ginkgo biloba was tested in two different doses (480 mg and 240 mg/day) against placebo over 4 weeks and found to be significantly superior with a dose-response trend being identified. Beneficial effects were observed after 4 days of treatment.

**PERIPHERAL VASCULAR DISEASES**
Ginkgo has been used in the treatment of intermittent claudication, Raynaud’s syndrome and chilblains (Pittler & Ernst 2000, Mouren et al. 1994).

**Intermittent claudication** In 2000, a meta-analysis of eight clinical trials found a significant difference in the increase in pain-free walking distance in favour of G. biloba over placebo in intermittent claudication (Pittler & Ernst 2000). An earlier randomised study measuring transcutaneous partial pressure of oxygen during exercise showed that a dose of 320 mg/day Egb 761 taken for 4 weeks significantly decreased the amount of ischaemic area by 38% compared with no change with placebo (Mouren et al. 1994).

A more recent 2004 meta-analysis confirmed that ginkgo is more effective than placebo in intermittent claudication (Horsch & Walther 2004). Nine double-blind studies of Egb 761 for intermittent claudication were assessed in a total of 619 patients. A sensitivity analysis of a homogeneous sample in terms of design, treatment duration, inclusion and exclusion criteria and methods of measurement confirms these findings. Most studies have used a dose of 120 mg/day taken in divided doses, although one trial found 240 mg/day gave better results. It should be recommended as long-term therapy and as an adjunct to exercise for the best results.

Commission E approved the use of standardised ginkgo extract for intermittent claudication (Blumenthal et al. 2000).
Clinical note — Peripheral arterial disease

Peripheral arterial disease (PAD) is the chronic obstruction of the arteries supplying the lower extremities. The most frequent symptom is intermittent claudication, which results from poor oxygenation of the muscles of the lower extremities and is experienced typically as an aching pain, cramping, or numbness in the calf, buttock, hip, thigh, or arch of the foot. Symptoms are induced by walking or exercise and are relieved by rest. Presently, medical treatment revolves around lifestyle changes, such as increased exercise, and surgery as a final option.

Raynaud’s syndrome A standardised G. biloba extract (Seredrin) taken over a 10-week period significantly reduced the number of attacks per week (from 13.2 to 5.8) compared with placebo, according to a randomised study (Muir et al 2002).

Vertigo, Tinnitus and Sudden Deafness

Ginkgo is used to treat these and other symptoms of vestibule-cochlear disorders.

In 1999, a systematic review of five RCTs testing standardised G. biloba extracts in people whose primary complaint was tinnitus concluded that treatment with G. biloba may result in significant improvements in tinnitus (Ernst & Stevinson 1999). Three years later, a review of eight controlled trials in tinnitus confirmed these findings, stating that ginkgo is significantly superior to placebo or reference drugs when used for periods of 1–3 months (Holstein 2001).

However, results of two double-blind studies conducted more recently have shifted the evidence against the use of G. biloba in tinnitus. The first was a large, double-blind, placebo-controlled study involving 1121 people aged between 18 and 70 years with tinnitus and 978 matched controls, which found that 12 weeks of treatment with ginkgo extract, LI 1370 (Lichtwer Pharma, Berlin, Germany), 50 mg, three times daily resulted in no significant differences when subjects assessed their tinnitus in terms of loudness and how troublesome it was (Drew & Davies 2001). A more recent double-blind, placebo-controlled, randomised study of 66 subjects with tinnitus failed to show benefits with active treatment using a dose of 120 mg extract daily over 12 weeks (Rejali et al 2004). The primary outcome measures used were the Tinnitus Handicap Inventory, The Glasgow Health Status Inventory and the average hearing threshold at 0.5, 1, 2 and 4 kHz. In 2004, Rejai et al conducted a meta-analysis of clinical trials and found that 21.6% of patients with tinnitus reported benefit from G. biloba versus 18.4% of patients who reported benefit from a placebo.

A 2004 Cochrane systematic review came to a similar conclusion, reporting that the limited evidence currently available does not support the use of ginkgo in tinnitus; however, the authors also pointed out that if a greater level of understanding and...
diagnostic accuracy could be reached about the different aetiologies of tinnitus, this may naturally highlight subgroups of patients in whom further controlled trials of G. biloba are worth considering (Hilton & Stuart 2004).

**Salicylate-induced tinnitus** One in vivo study investigating the effects of ginkgo in salicylate-induced tinnitus found a statistically significant decrease in the behavioural manifestation of tinnitus for ginkgo in doses of 25, 50 and 100 mg/kg/day (Jastreboff et al 1997).

**Sudden deafness** Ginkgo extract was as effective as pentoxifylline in the treatment of sudden deafness, according to one randomised double-blind study (Reisser & Weidauer 2001). Both treatments equally reduced associated symptoms of tinnitus and produced the same effects on the return to normal of speech discrimination. Subjective assessment suggested that G. biloba extract was more beneficial than pentoxifylline. EGB 761 (240 mg/day) has also been shown to accelerate and secure recovery of acute idiopathic sudden sensorineural hearing loss, observable within 1 week of treatment under randomised double-blind test conditions (Burschka et al 2001).

Commission E approves the use of standardised ginkgo extract in these conditions when of vascular origin (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**MACULAR DEGENERATION, GLAUCOMA AND RETINOPATHY**

In regard to these ophthalmological conditions, ginkgo has numerous properties that should theoretically make it a useful treatment, such as increasing ocular blood flow, antioxidant and platelet-activating factor inhibitor activity, NO inhibition and neuroprotective abilities.

**Macular degeneration** Although some positive evidence exists, a 2000 Cochrane review has suggested overall there is insufficient evidence currently available to conclude that Ginkgo biloba treatment is effective in macular degeneration, with further testing required (Evans 2000).

**Glaucoma** In regard to glaucoma, the little research conducted so far appears promising.

Researchers using colour Doppler imaging have observed significantly increased end-diastolic velocity in the ophthalmic artery after treatment with EGB (120 mg/day) in a placebo-controlled, randomised crossover study (Chung et al 1999). A randomised, double-blind crossover study found that EGB 761 (120 mg/day) taken for 4 weeks produces positive effects in normal tension glaucoma (Quaranta et al 2003). Furthermore, ginkgo treatment did not significantly alter intraocular pressure, blood pressure or heart rate and was well tolerated.
**Chloroquine retinopathy**  In vivo tests using electroretinography have identified protective effects against the development of chloroquine-induced retinopathy using *Ginkgo biloba* (Droy-Lefaix et al 1992). This has been observed in both acute and chronic chloroquine toxicity of the retina (Droy-Lefaix et al 1995).

**PREVENTION OF ALTITUDE SICKNESS**
Four randomised studies have investigated *G. biloba* as prophylactic treatment against altitude sickness, producing mixed results (Chow et al 2005, Gertsch et al 2002, 2004, Roncin et al 1996). One study involving 44 subjects found that a dose of 160 mg/day taken for 5 days as prophylactic treatment resulted in no subject developing the cerebral symptoms of acute mountain sickness versus 41% of subjects in the placebo group. Whereas only three subjects (13.6%) in the EGB 716 group developed respiratory symptoms of acute mountain sickness, 18 (81.8%) in the placebo group developed these symptoms. Besides effectively preventing mountain sickness for moderate altitude (5400 m), treatment also decreased vasomotor disorders of the extremities (Roncin et al 1996). A second study showed that *G. biloba* 180 mg/day started 24 hours before rapid ascent from sea level to 4205 m significantly reduced altitude sickness under double-blind test conditions (Gertsch et al 2002). The two more recent studies compared ginkgo to placebo and acetazolamide and found no significant effects for ginkgo (Chow et al 2005, Gertsch et al 2004). The largest study was conducted by Gertsch et al and involved 487 healthy Western hikers. It compared the effects of ginkgo, acetazolamide (250 mg), combined acetazolamide and ginkgo, and placebo. Participants took at least 3–4 doses before ascent above 4000 m in the Nepal Himalayas. The incidence of acute mountain sickness was 34% for placebo, 12% for acetazolamide, 35% for ginkgo and 14% for combined ginkgo and acetazolamide. Chow et al conducted a smaller study of 57 healthy unacclimatised subjects using a randomised, placebo-controlled design. Subjects were taken to an elevation of 3800 m within 24 hours, with acetazolamide producing significantly better effects than ginkgo or placebo using the Lake Louise Acute Mountain Sickness Scoring System. Subjects receiving ginkgo were as likely as placebo to experience acute mountain sickness whereas acetazolamide was protective.

**PREMENSTRUAL SYNDROME**
A randomised double-blind study evaluating the effects of EGB 716 in treating congestive symptoms of PMS in a group of 165 women found that treatment over two menstrual cycles (from day 16 until day 5 of the next cycle) was successful.
Treatment was particularly effective in reducing breast symptoms, although neuropsychological symptoms were also alleviated (Tamborini & Taurelle 1993).

**VITILIGO**
A dose of 120 mg/day ginkgo extract significantly stopped active progression of depigmentation in slow-spreading vitiligo and induced repigmentation in some treated patients under double-blind, placebo-controlled study conditions (Parsad et al 2003). Although the mechanism of action responsible is unknown, antioxidant activity is thought to be important.

**ASTHMA**
Ginkgo significantly reduced airway hyperreactivity, improved clinical symptoms and pulmonary function in asthmatic patients in one placebo-controlled study (Li et al 1997). Platelet-activating factor inhibitor, antioxidant and anti-inflammatory activities are likely to be involved.

**SEXUAL DYSFUNCTION**
Due to its vasodilatory effects, ginkgo has been used in the management of sexual dysfunction in cases where compromised circulation is suspected. One open study has been conducted with subjects experiencing sexual dysfunction associated with antidepressant use (Cohen & Bartlik 1998).

Ginkgo extract (average dose 209 mg/day) was found to be 84% effective in treating antidepressant-induced sexual dysfunction, predominantly caused by SSRI, in a study of 63 subjects (Cohen & Bartlik 1998). A relative success rate of 91% was observed for women compared with 76% for men and a positive effect was reported on all four phases of the sexual response cycle: desire, excitement (erection and lubrication), orgasm and resolution. Although this was an open trial, the results are encouraging when one considers the placebo effect is about 25% from past randomised trials of FDA-approved medications for erectile dysfunction (Moyad 2002).

More recently, a small triple-blind (investigator, patient, statistician), randomised, placebo-controlled, trial of G. biloba (240 mg/daily for 12 weeks) was undertaken with 24 subjects experiencing sexual impairment caused by antidepressant drugs (Wheatley 2004). The authors report some spectacular individual responses in both groups, but no statistically significant differences, and no differences in side-effects.

**PARKINSON’S DISEASE**
There is great interest in the application of safe substances, such as G. biloba, in neurodegenerative diseases such as Parkinson’s disease because of their
neuroprotective and mitochondrial protective effects. Currently, investigation with ginkgo is limited to animal studies of experimentally induced Parkinson’s disease, which have shown it to afford some protection against neuronal loss (Ahmad et al 2005, Kim et al 2004).

**OTHER USES**

*Ginkgo biloba* is used for many other indications, including improving connective tissue conditions such as haemorrhoids, common allergies, reducing the effects of exposure to radiation and to prevent some of the complications associated with diabetes. In the UK and other European countries, the cardioprotective effects of EGb 761 in myocardial ischaemia and reperfusion are currently being investigated in preclinical studies.

**ADJUNCT IN CANCER TREATMENT**

As a herb with significant antioxidant activity, ginkgo has been used to reduce the toxic side-effects of some chemotherapeutic drugs. Evidence from in vivo studies demonstrate protective effects against nephrotoxicity induced by cisplatin and cardiotoxicity induced by doxorubicin (Naidu et al 2002, Ozturk et al 2004). Clinical trials are not yet available to determine its effectiveness in practice.

**CANCER PREVENTION**

A 2006 review puts forward the case that *G. biloba* should be more widely used as a safe, preventative agent for reducing cancer incidence. This recommendation is based on results from numerous in vitro and experimental studies showing that ginkgo affects many factors associated with the incidence and mortality of cancer (Eli & Fasciano 2006).

**DOSAGE RANGE**

The recommended dose varies depending on indication and condition treated.

**GENERAL GUIDE**

- Dried herb: 9–10 g/day.
- 120–240 mg of a 50:1 standardised extract daily in divided doses (40 mg extract is equivalent to 1.4–2.7 g leaves).
- Fluid extract (1:1): 0.5 mL three times daily.

**ACCORDING TO CLINICAL STUDIES**

- Asthma: 40 mg three times daily.
- Dementia and memory impairment: 120–240 mg standardised extract daily in divided doses.
• Intermittent claudication, vertigo: 120–320 mg standardised extract daily in divided doses.
• Normal tension glaucoma: 120 mg standardised extract daily.
• Prevention of altitude sickness: 160 mg standardised extract daily starting 5 days prior to ascent.
• Sexual dysfunction associated with antidepressant drugs: 200 mg standardised extract daily.
• Vitiligo: 120 mg standardised extract daily.

Although some studies report positive effects after 4–6 weeks’ continual use, a trial of at least 12 weeks is recommended in chronic conditions.

ADVERSE REACTIONS
Tolerability in 98% of the clinical studies is good or very good (Bilia 2002). In a few cases (less than 0.001%), gastrointestinal upset, headaches and dizziness were reported. It does not appear to alter heart rate and blood pressure, change cholesterol and triglyceride levels or increase intraocular pressure in clinical studies (Chung et al 1999).

Rare case reports of subarachnoid haemorrhage, subdural haematoma, intracerebral haemorrhage, subphrenic haematoma, vitreous haemorrhage and postoperative bleeding have been documented.

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
PLATELET INHIBITOR DRUGS
Due to its platelet-activating factor antagonist activity, Ginkgo biloba may theoretically enhance the effects of these drugs and increase risk of bruising or bleeding; however, three clinical trials have cast doubt on the clinical significance of this activity — observe patients taking this combination.

WARFARIN
Theoretically, ginkgo may increase bleeding risk when used together with warfarin; however, two randomised double-blind studies have found that Ginkgo biloba does not affect the pharmacokinetics, pharmacodynamics, INR or clinical effects of warfarin (Engelson et al 2003, Jiang et al 2003), and two clinical trials have not found evidence of significant effects on bleeding (Bal Dit et al 2003, Kohler et al 2004). Due to the potential seriousness of such an interaction, caution is still advised.
**CHOLINERGIC DRUGS**
Cholinergic activity has been identified for ginkgo; therefore, combined use may theoretically increase drug activity — observe patients using this combination, although the effects may be beneficial when used under supervision.

**DOXORUBICIN**
In vivo research suggests that ginkgo can prevent doxorubicin-induced cardiotoxicity suggesting a potentially beneficial interaction, although no human studies are available to confirm clinical significance (Naidu et al 2002).

**ANTIDEPRESSANT DRUGS**
*Ginkgo biloba* may reduce the sexual dysfunction side-effects of these drugs and improve sleep continuity; however, results from clinical studies are mixed — possible beneficial interaction.

**VALPROATE, DILANTIN, DEPAKOTE**
There is a report of two patients using valproate who experienced seizures with ginkgo use (Chavez et al 2006). There is also a report of a patient taking Dilantin and Depakote and ginkgo, together with other herbal medicines, who suffered a fatal breakthrough seizure, with no evidence of non-compliance with anticonvulsant medications (Kupiec & Raj 2005). The autopsy report revealed subtherapeutic serum levels for both anticonvulsants Depakote and Dilantin; however, it is uncertain whether effects can be attributed to ginkgo — observe patient taking ginkgo with these medicines.

**HALOPERIDOL**
In three clinical trials, the effectiveness of haloperidol was enhanced when co-administered with 360 mg daily of ginkgo (Chavez et al 2006) — beneficial interaction.

**CISPLATIN**
As a herb with significant antioxidant activity, it has also been employed as a means of reducing the nephrotoxic effects of cisplatin, a use supported by one in vivo study (Ozturk et al 2004) — possible beneficial interaction; however, use only under professional supervision.

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**
If unusual bleeding or bruising occurs, stop use immediately. Although new clinical evidence suggests that *G. biloba* does not affect clotting times, it may be prudent to suspend use for 1 week prior to major surgery.
**CEREBRAL HAEMORRHAGE AND EPILEPSY**
Recent, rare case reports have suggested that ginkgo should be used with caution in people with known risk factors for cerebral haemorrhage and epilepsy until further investigation can clarify its safety (Benjamin et al 2001, Granger 2001, Vale 1998).

**PREGNANCY USE**
Not recommended in pregnancy as insufficient reliable evidence is available to determine safety.

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**
- *Ginkgo biloba* is a complex herb that contains many different active constituents and works by means of multiple mechanisms. Therefore, it has applications in many varied conditions.
- It is an effective treatment in conditions of acquired cognitive impairment, including dementia of any degree of severity and intermittent claudication, according to evidence from meta-analyses.
- Positive evidence also exists for premenstrual syndrome, sudden deafness, Raynaud’s syndrome and depression when associated with cognitive decline.
- Largely based on the herb’s physiological actions, ginkgo is also used to treat chilblains, haemorrhoids, prevent macular degeneration, glaucoma, sexual dysfunction, impotence, allergies and asthma and improve wellbeing.
- The form of ginkgo most often tested and used is a preparation known as EGB 761, which is standardised to 24% ginkgo flavonol glycosides and 6% terpene lactones.
- Overall, *Ginkgo biloba* is a very safe herb and is extremely well tolerated.

**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**
**What will this herb do for me?**
Ginkgo is a very popular herbal treatment that increases peripheral circulation, beneficially influences brain chemicals, protects nerve cells from damage, and may stimulate immune function and reduce inflammation. Scientific evidence has shown it can improve brain function in both healthy and memory-impaired people. It has also been found to improve symptoms of intermittent claudication and may be useful in chilblains, PMS, vitiligo and seasonal affective disorder and possibly sexual dysfunction such as impotence.

**When will it start to work?**
This will depend on the condition treated and the dose used. Generally, *Ginkgo biloba* is a slow-acting herb that can take anywhere from 4 weeks to 3 months to exert maximal effects.
Are there any safety issues?
Ginkgo has been extensively studied and appears to be extremely safe with virtually no side-effects in healthy people. Some contraindications and interactions are possible, so it is recommended it be taken under professional supervision.

REFERENCES


Itil TM et al. The pharmacological effects of ginkgo biloba, a plant extract, on the brain of dementia patients in comparison with tacrine. Psychopharmacol Bull 34.3 (1998): 391-7.


Ginseng—Korean

Historical note  Gin refers to man and seng to essence in Chinese, whereas Panax is derived from the Greek word pan (all) and akos (cure), referring to its use as a cure-all. Ginseng is a perennial herb native to Korea and China and has been used as a herbal remedy in eastern Asia for thousands of years. It is considered to be the most potent Qi or energy tonic in TCM. Modern indications include low vitality, poor immunity, cancer, cardiovascular disease and enhancement of physical performance and sexual function. However, a recent systematic review of RCT found that the efficacy of ginseng root extract could not be established beyond doubt for any of these indications (Coon & Ernst 2002).

COMMON NAME
Korean ginseng

OTHER NAMES
Ren shen (Mandarin), red ginseng, white ginseng

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Panax ginseng C.A. Meyer (family Araliaceae)

It should be differentiated from P. aquifolium (American ginseng), P. notoginseng (Tien chi, pseudoginseng), Eleutherococcus senticosis (Siberian ginseng) and other ginsengs.

PLANT PART USED
Main and lateral roots. The smaller root hairs are considered an inferior source. There are two types of preparations produced from ginseng: white ginseng, which is prepared by drying the raw herb, and red ginseng, prepared by steaming before drying. Cultivated ginseng differs from wild ginseng and plants from different countries or regions may also differ greatly. Processing of the crude herb to produce red ginseng appears to increase its potency. Steaming has been shown to alter the composition of the ginsenosides; for example, steaming produces the active 20(S)-ginsenoside-Rg(3) (Matsuda et al 2003) and makes certain ginsenosides more cytotoxic (Park et al 2002a).
The British Herbal Pharmacopoeia (1983) stipulates that ginseng should contain not less than 20% solids (70% ethanol). The German Pharmacopoeia requires not less than 1.5% total ginsenosides calculated as ginsenoside Rg 1.

Chewing gums containing ginseng saponins have also been developed and demonstrate therapeutic effects in some trials (Ding et al 2004).

**CHEMICAL COMPONENTS**

The most characteristic compounds in the ginseng roots are the ginsenosides, and most biological effects have been ascribed to these compounds. The ginsenosides are dammarane saponins and can be divided into two classes: the protopanaxatriol class consisting primarily of Rg1, Rg2, Rf and Re, and the protopanaxadiol class consisting primarily of Rc, Rd, Rb1 and Rb2. Ginseng also contains other saponins, polysaccharides, amino acids (in particular glutamine and arginine) (Kuo et al 2003), essential oils and other compounds. Three new sesquiterpene hydrocarbons have also recently been isolated from the essential oil: panaxene, panaginsene and ginsinsene (Richter et al 2005).

Ginsenosides Rh1, Rh2, and Rg3 are obtained from red ginseng as artifacts produced during steaming. It is likely that ginsenoside is actually a prodrug that is converted in the body by intestinal bacterial deglycosylation and fatty acid esterification into an active metabolite (Hasegawa et al 2004) and therefore extrapolation from in vitro studies or studies in which ginseng or isolated constituents were given by injection must be made very cautiously.

Commercial ginseng preparations are variable in quality. An analysis of 50 products sold in 11 countries show that there is a large variation in the concentration of ginsenosides (from 1.9% to 9.0%). Some products were even found to be void of any specific ginsenosides. Some ginseng products have also been discovered to be contaminated with ephedrine. Therefore, it is essential that only quality ginseng products are used (Cui et al 1994). Although the root hairs have a higher level of total ginsenosides than the main root, the main and lateral roots are the preferred medicinal parts. In all probability, it is the ratio of ginsenosides that is important and that other important compounds are also active.
MAIN ACTIONS
ADAPTOGEN

Clinical note — Adaptogens
Adaptogens are innocuous agents, non-specifically increasing resistance against physical, chemical or biological factors (stressors), having a normalising effect independent of the nature of the pathological state (original definition of adaptogen by Brekhman & Dardymov 1969).

Adaptogens are natural bioregulators, which increase the ability of the organism to adapt to environmental factors and to avoid damage from such factor (revised definition by Panossian et al 1999).

(Refer to the Siberian ginseng monograph for more information about adaptogens and allostasis.)

The pharmacological effects of ginseng are many and varied, contributing to its reputation as a potent adaptogen. The adrenal gland and the pituitary gland are both known to have an effect on the body’s ability to respond to stress and alter work capacity (Filaretov et al 1988), and ginseng is thought to profoundly influence the hypothalamic–pituitary–adrenal axis (Kim et al 2003d). The active metabolites of protopanaxadiol and protopanaxatriol saponins reduce acetylcholine-induced catecholamine secretion in animal models (Tachikawa & Kudo 2004, Tachikawa et al 2003) and this may help to explain the purported antistress effects of ginseng.

Ginseng has been shown in numerous animal experiments to increase resistance to a wide variety of chemical, physical and biological stressors. Ginseng extract or its isolated constituents have been shown to prevent immunosuppression induced by cold water swim stress (Luo et al 1993), to counter stress-induced changes from heat stress (Yuan et al 1989), food deprivation (Lee et al 1990), electroshock (Banerjee & Izquierdo 1982) and radiation exposure (Takeda et al 1981). As there are more than 1500 studies on ginseng and its constituents, it is outside the scope of this monograph to include all studies, so we have attempted to include those studies most relevant to the oral use of ginseng.

Animal models suggest that ginseng is most useful for chronic rather than acute stress, significantly reducing elevated scores on ulcer index, adrenal gland weight, plasma glucose, triglycerides, creatine kinase activity, and serum corticosterone during chronic stress (Rai et al 2003).

CARDIOVASCULAR EFFECTS
According to in vitro and animal studies ginseng may benefit the cardiovascular system ‘through diverse mechanisms, including antioxidant, modifying vasomotor
function, reducing platelet adhesion, influencing ion channels, altering autonomic neurotransmitters release, improving lipid profiles', and glycaemic control (Zhou et al 2004).

**Antihypertensive**  Red ginseng has been used as an antihypertensive agent in Korea, but its clinical effect is unclear despite several in vivo and in vitro experimental studies. Recent preliminary data suggests that the antihypertensive effects may be partly attributed to an angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitory effect demonstrated by *P. ginseng* extract in vitro (Persson et al 2006). These effects were additive to the traditional ACE inhibitor enalapril.

A study of isolated muscle preparations of animal heart and aorta with an alcohol-based extract of ginseng suggest that the hypotensive effect of ginseng is associated with a direct inhibition of myocardial contractility due to a reduction of calcium ion influx into cardiac cells, as well as the inhibition of catecholamine-induced contractility of vascular smooth muscles (Hah et al 1978).

In a prospective, randomised, double-blind placebo-controlled study of 30 healthy adults, 200 mg ginseng extract given for 28 days was found to increase the QTc interval and decrease diastolic blood pressure 2 hours after ingestion on the first day of therapy. These changes, however, were not thought to be clinically significant (Caron et al 2002).

**Antiplatelet**  Although reports from recent in vitro and in vivo assays claim that *P. ginseng* is not one of the herbs that contributes to the antiplatelet effects of a Korean combination formula known as Dae-Jo-Hwan (Chang et al 2005), a number of studies have found that several ginsenosides inhibit platelet aggregation. Panaxynol has been shown to inhibit platelet aggregation induced by adenosine diphosphate (ADP), collagen and arachidonic acid. Panaxydol and ginsenosides Ro, Rg, and Rg2 inhibit rabbit platelets while panaxydol prevented platelet aggregation and thromboxane formation (Kuo et al 1990).

**Antihyperlipidaemic**  Ginsenoside Rb1 has been shown to lower triglyceride and cholesterol levels via cAMP-production in the rat liver (Park et al 2002b). *P. ginseng* extract (6 g/day) for 8 weeks resulted in a reduction in serum total cholesterol, triglyceride, LDL and plasma malondialdehyde levels and an increase in HDL (Kim & Park 2003) in eight males. Ginseng has also been reported to decrease hepatic cholesterol and triglyceride levels in rats, indicating a potential use of ginseng in the treatment of fatty liver (Yamamoto et al 1983).

**Other cardiovascular effects**  Ginsenoside Rb2 has been shown to enhance the fibrinolytic activity of bovine aortic endothelial cells (Liu et al 2003). In animal studies ginseng inhibits cardiomyocyte apoptosis induced by ischaemia and reperfusion.
(Zeng et al 2004) and the crude saponins have been shown to reduce body weight, food intake, and fat content in rats fed a high-fat diet (Kim et al 2005a).

**GASTROINTESTINAL**

**Hepatorestorative** Oral administration of Korean red ginseng (250 and 500 mg/kg) on liver regeneration has been investigated in 15 dogs with partial hepatectomy. All haematological values except leukocyte counts were within normal ranges for 3 days postoperatively. The levels of AST and ALT in the ginseng groups were significantly decreased compared with those in the control group ($P < 0.05$). The numbers of degenerative cells and area of connective tissue were significantly decreased in the livers of the dogs treated with ginseng ($P < 0.01$) (Kwon et al 2003).

**Antiulcerative** Ginseng has been shown in several studies to protect against ulceration. Among the hexane, chloroform, butanol and water fractions, the butanol fraction of a ginseng extract has been shown to be the most potent inhibitor of HCl-induced gastric lesions and ulcers induced by aspirin, acetic acid and Shay (ulcer induced by pylorus ligation). The butanol fraction showed significant increase in mucin secretion, and inhibited malondialdehyde and H$^+/K^+$ ATPase activity in the stomach. These results indicate that the effectiveness of ginseng on gastric damage might be related to inhibition of acid secretion, increased mucin secretion and antioxidant properties (Jeong 2002).

**Effects on peristalsis** Ginseng root extract, and its components, ginsenoside Rb1(4) and ginsenoside Rd(7), have been shown to significantly ameliorate chemically induced acceleration of small intestinal transit in vivo. The test results suggest that the protective mechanism involves both an inhibitory effect on the cholinergic nervous system and a direct suppressive effect on intestinal muscles (Hashimoto et al 2003).

**ANTI-INFLAMMATORY**

Both a crude and a standardised extract (G115) of ginseng varying in saponin concentrations have been found to protect against muscle fibre injury and inflammation after eccentric muscle contractions in rats on a treadmill. The oral ginseng extracts significantly reduced plasma creatine kinase levels by about 25% and lipid peroxidation by 15%. Certain markers of inflammation were also significantly reduced (Cabral de Oliveira et al 2001). In a later study, pretreatment with ginseng extract (3, 10, 100 or 500 mg/kg) administered orally for 3 months to male Wistar rats resulted in a 74% decrease in lipid peroxidation caused by eccentric exercise (Voces et al 2004).
The many and varied effects of ginseng may be partly associated with the inhibition of transcription factor NF-kappa B, which is pivotal in the regulation of inflammatory genes. Inhibition of NF-kappa B may reduce inflammation and protect cells against damage.

Topical application of several ginsenosides (Rb1, Rc, Re, Rg1, Rg3) significantly attenuated chemically induced ear oedema in mice. The ginsenosides also suppressed expression of COX-2 and activation of NF-kappa B in the skin. Of the ginsenosides tested, Rg3 was found to be most effective (Surh et al 2002).

**IMMUNOMODULATION**

The immunomodulatory effect of ginseng is based on the production of cytokines, activation of macrophages, stimulation of bone marrow cells and stimulation of iNOS, which produces high levels of NO in response to activating signals from Th1-associated cytokines and plays an important role in cytotoxicity and cytostasis (growth inhibition) against many pathogenic microorganisms. In addition to its direct effector function, NO serves as a potent immunoregulatory factor.

Ginseng enhances IL-12 production and may therefore induce a stronger Th1 response, resulting in improved protection against infection from a variety of pathogens (Larsen et al 2004), including *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* lung infection in animal models (Song et al 2005), although other studies suggest that it may also assist in the correction of Th1-dominant pathological disorders (Lee et al 2004a).

Ginseng polysaccharides have been shown to increase the cytotoxic activity of macrophages against melanoma cells, increase phagocytosis and to induce the levels of cytokines, including TNF-alpha, IL-1-beta, IL-6 and IFN-gamma in vitro (Shin et al 2002). Ginseng has been shown to be an immunomodulator and to enhance antitumour activity of macrophages in vitro (Song et al 2002). Ginseng has also been shown significantly to enhance NK function in an antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity of peripheral blood mononuclear cells in vitro (See et al 1997).

Incubation of macrophages with increasing amounts of an aqueous extract of ginseng showed a dose-dependent stimulation of iNOS. Polysaccharides isolated from ginseng showed strong stimulation of iNOS, whereas a triterpene-enriched fraction from an aqueous extract did not show any stimulation. As NO plays an important role in immune function, ginseng could modulate several aspects of host defence mechanisms due to stimulation of the iNOS (Friedl et al 2001).

Ginseng promotes the production of granulocytes in the bone marrow (granulocytopoiesis). The ginseng saponins have been shown to directly and/or indirectly promote the stromal cells and lymphocytes to produce human granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF) and other cytokines and induce
bone marrow haemopoietic cells to express GM-CSF receptors, leading to a proliferation of human colony-forming units for granulocytes and macrophages in vitro (Wang et al 2003).

Ginseng polysaccharides have been shown to have potent antisepticaemic activity by stimulating macrophages and helping modulate the reaction against sepsis induced by *Staphylococcus aureus*. Ginseng polysaccharides have been shown to reduce the intracellular concentration of *S. aureus* in macrophages in infected animals by 50% compared with controls. Combination of the ginseng polysaccharides with vancomycin resulted in 100% survival of the animals whereas only 67% or 50% of the animals survived, respectively, when treated with the ginseng polysaccharides or vancomycin alone (Lim et al 2002a).

According to animal studies long-term oral administration of ginseng extract may potentiate humoral immune response but suppress spleen cell functions (Liou et al 2005).

**ANTICANCER**
Oral intake of standardised *P. ginseng* extract demonstrates a dose dependant (1, 3 or 10 mg/kg) chemoprotective and antimutagenic effect in animal studies (Panwar et al 2005) and ginsenoside Rg3 has recently been produced as an antiangiogenic anticarcinogenic anticarcinogenic drug in China (Shibata 2001).

**Chemoprotection** Oral administration of red ginseng extracts (1% in diet for 40 weeks) significantly (*P < 0.05*) suppressed spontaneous liver tumour formation in male mice. Oral white ginseng was also shown to suppress tumour promotion in vitro and in vivo (Nishino et al 2001).

Dietary administration of red ginseng in combination with 1,2-dimethylhydrazine suppresses colon carcinogenesis in rats (rats were fed 1% ginseng for 5 weeks). It is thought that the inhibition may be partly associated with inhibition of cell proliferation in the colonic mucosa (Fukushima et al 2001).

Oral administration of 50 mg/kg/day for 4 weeks of a ginseng intestinal metabolite has been shown to partially protect against doxorubicin-induced testicular toxicity in mice. The metabolite significantly (*P < 0.01*) prevented decreases in body weight, spermatogenic activities, serum levels of lactate dehydrogenase and creatine phosphokinase induced by doxorubicin. It also significantly attenuated germ cell injuries (Kang et al 2002).

The methanol extract of red ginseng has been shown to attenuate the lipid peroxidation in rat brain and scavenge superoxides in differentiated human promyelocytic leukaemia (HL-60) cells. Topical application of the same extract, as well as purified ginsenoside Rg3, has been demonstrated to suppress skin tumour
promotion in mice. Rg3 also suppresses COX, NF-kappa B and extracellular-regulated protein kinase, which are all involved in tumour promotion (Surh et al 2001).

Pretreatment with oral red ginseng extract significantly reduced the development of cancer from diethylnitrosamine-induced liver cancer nodules in rats (the developmental rate of liver cancer in the experimental group was 14.3% compared with 100% in the control group). When ginseng was given concomitantly with diethylnitrosamine, the hepatoma nodules were smaller than those of the control group, the structure of hepatic tissue was well preserved and the structure of hepatocytes was normal. Ginseng also prolonged the average life span. These findings suggest benefits of ginseng in the prevention and treatment of liver cancer (Wu et al 2001).

Irradiation protection  Ginsenosides and specifically panaxadiol have been shown to have radioprotective effects in mice irradiated with high-dose and low-dose gamma radiation. Jejunal crypts were protected by pretreatment with extract of whole ginseng (50 mg/kg body weight intraperitoneally at 12 and 36 hours before irradiation, \( P < 0.005 \)). Extract of whole ginseng (\( P < 0.005 \)), total saponin (\( P < 0.01 \)) or panaxadiol (\( P < 0.05 \)) administration before irradiation (50 mg/kg body weight IP at 12 and 36 hours before irradiation) resulted in an increase in the formation of the endogenous spleen colony. The frequency of radiation-induced apoptosis in the intestinal crypt cells was also reduced by pretreatment with extract of whole ginseng, total saponin and panaxadiol (Kim et al 2003).

These radioprotective effects are partly associated with the immunomodulatory effect of ginseng. Ginsan, a purified polysaccharide isolated from ginseng, has been shown to have a mitogenic activity, induce lymphokine-activated killer cells and increase levels of several cytokines. Ginsan reduced mutagenicity in a dose-dependent manner when applied to rats 30 min before or 15 min after 1.5 Gy of gamma-irradiation. The radioprotective effect of ginsan has been partly attributed to a reduction in radiation-induced genotoxicity (Ivanova et al 2005). Ginsan has also been found to increase the number of bone marrow cells, spleen cells, granulocyte-macrophage colony-forming cells and circulating neutrophils, lymphocytes and platelets significantly in irradiated mice (Song et al 2003).

One of the causes of radiation damage is lipid peroxidation, which alters lysosomal membrane permeability leading to the release of hydrolytic enzymes. Ginseng has been shown to markedly inhibit lipid peroxidation and protect against radiation damage in testes of mice (Kumar et al 2003).

Antitumour, antiproliferative, antimetastatic and apoptosis-inducing  Stimulation of the phagocytic activity of macrophages may play a role in
the anticarcinogenic and antimetastatic activities demonstrated for ginseng in vivo (Shin et al 2004b) and research has continually found tumour inhibitory effects, especially in the promotion and progression phases (Helms 2004).

Ginsenosides Rg3, Rg5, Rk1, Rs5 and Rs4 have been shown to be cytotoxic to Hep-1 hepatoma cancer cells in vitro. Their 50% growth inhibition concentration (GI50) values were 41, 11, 13, 37, and 13 micromol/L respectively. Cisplatin had a GI50 of 84 micromol/L in the same assay conditions (Park et al 2002a).

Constituents in ginseng have also been shown to inhibit proliferation of cancer cells. Panaxatriol isolated from red ginseng was shown to have significant dose-dependent cytotoxicity activity and inhibit DNA synthesis in various tumour cells tested (Kim et al 2002a). Ginsenoside Rg3 has displayed inhibitory activity against human prostate cancer cells in vitro (Liu et al 2000).

Ginsenosides, especially 20(R)-ginsenoside Rg3, has been shown to specifically inhibit cancer cell invasion and metastasis (Shibata 2001) and ginsenoside Rh2 has been shown to inhibit human ovarian cancer growth in mice (Nakata et al 1998). It is likely that the anti-tumour promoting activity of Rg3 is mediated through down-regulation of NF-kappa B and other transcription factors (Keum et al 2003).

Oral administration of 20(S)-protopanaxatriol (M4), the main bacterial metabolite of protopanaxatriol-type ginsenosides, has been shown to inhibit melanoma growth in mice and pretreatment was shown to reduce metastases to the lungs. This effect is thought to be due to stimulation of NK-mediated tumour lysis (Hasegawa et al 2002).

The antitumour effects of ginseng are related to inhibition of the adhesion and invasion of tumour cells and also to antiangiogenesis activity. Ginsenosides Rg3 and Rb2 have been shown to significantly inhibit adhesion of melanoma cells to fibronectin and laminin, as well as preventing invasion into the basement membrane in vitro. Other experiments have demonstrated that the saponins exert significant antiangiogenic activity, decreasing the number of blood vessels oriented toward the tumour mass (Mochizuki et al 1995, Sato et al 1994).

Ginseng saponins have also been found to promote apoptosis (programmed cell death) in cancer cells in vitro (Hwang et al 2002).

**NEUROLOGICAL**

**Analgesia** Intraperitoneal administration of ginsenoside Rf has been shown to potentiate opioid-induced analgesia in mice. Furthermore, ginsenosides prevented tolerance to the opiate that was not associated with opioid or GABA receptors (Nemmanvi & Ramarao 2003).

**Neuroprotection** Ginseng saponins have demonstrated dose-dependent neuroprotective activity in vitro and in vivo (Kim et al 2005b). Ginsenosides Rb1 and
Rg1 have a partial neurotrophic and neuroprotective role in dopaminergic cell cultures (Radad et al 2004) and Rg3 has been shown to inhibit chemically induced injuries in hippocampal neurons (Kim et al 2002b). Pretreatment with ginsenosides (50 or 100 mg/kg IP for 7 days) has been shown to be neuroprotective in vivo (Lee et al 2002a). An in vitro survival assay demonstrated that ginsenosides Rb1 and Rg1 protect spinal cord neurons against damage. The ginsenosides protect spinal neurons from excitotoxicity induced by glutamate and kainic acid, as well as oxidative stress induced by H2O2. The optimal doses are 20–40 micromol/L for ginsenosides Rb1 and Rg1 (Liao et al 2002). The lipophilic fraction of ginseng has been shown to induce differentiation of neurons and promote neuronal survival in the rat cortex. The effect is thought to be mediated via protein-kinase-C-dependent pathways (Mizumaki et al 2002).

It has been suggested that the neuroprotective effects of ginseng against hypoperfusion/reperfusion induced brain injury demonstrated in animal models, suggests a potential for use in CVD (Shah et al 2005).

**Cognitive function** Following oral consumption, the active metabolites of protopanaxadiol saponins may reactivate neuronal function in Alzheimer’s disease according to in vivo evidence (Komatsu et al 2005). Ginseng also enhances the survival of newly generated neurons in the hippocampus which may contribute to the purported benefits of ginseng for improving learning tasks (Qiao et al 2005).

**Anticonvulsant** Pretreatment (30 minutes) with 100 mg/kg ginseng significantly protected rats against pentylenetetrazole-induced seizures (Gupta et al 2001).

**ANTIDIABETIC**

**Hypoglycaemic/antihyperglycaemic effects** Human and animal studies have found American ginseng to lower blood glucose level (Vuksan et al 2000a, b, c, Vuksan et al 2001a, b). Results for Korean ginseng are less consistent (Sievenpiper et al 2003, 2004). Both ginseng root and berry (150 mg/kg) have been shown to significantly decrease fasting blood glucose levels in hyperglycaemic rats (Dey et al 2003). Intraperitoneal administration of glycans (polysaccharides known as panaxan) and other unidentified compounds have demonstrated hypoglycaemic activity in both normal and alloxan-induced hyperglycaemic mice (Waki et al 1982).

Oral administration of *P. ginseng* root (125.0 mg/kg) three times daily for three days reduced hyperglycaemia and improved insulin sensitivity in rats fed a high-fructose chow suggesting a possible role in delaying or preventing insulin resistance (Liu et al 2005). However, these doses are very high and human trials need to be conducted to confirm these results.
Diabetic complications Aqueous extract of ginseng was shown to exert no significant effect on weight in normal rats, while it prevented weight loss in rats with streptozotocin-induced diabetes. Cell proliferation in the dentate gyrus of diabetic rats was increased by ginseng treatment, but it had no effect on cell proliferation in normal rats. These results suggest that ginseng may help reduce the long-term central nervous system complications of diabetes mellitus (Lim et al 2002b).

According to experimental studies ginseng may also inhibit the formation of glycated hemoglobin due to its anti-oxidative activity (Bae & Lee 2004).

STEROID RECEPTOR ACTIVITY
Ginseng has been shown to increase the mounting behaviour of male rats and increase sperm counts in rabbit testes. The effect is not by a direct sex-hormone-like function, but probably via a gonadotropin-like action. Ginsenoside Rb1 has been shown to increase LH secretion by acting directly on the anterior pituitary gland in male rats (Tsai et al 2003). Ginsenoside Rg1 failed to activate the glucocorticoid and androgen receptors, but did demonstrate an interaction with oestrogen receptors in vitro. The effect was much weaker than 17-beta-oestradiol. Ginseng is therefore considered to contain phyto-oestrogens (Lee et al 2003). However, there are conflicting reports about oestrogen binding activity which may in part be explained by the presence or absence of zearalenone, an oestrogenic mycotoxin contaminant (Gray et al 2004).

OTHER ACTIONS
PREVENTION OF DAMAGE FROM TOXINS
Ginseng extract has been shown to be beneficial in the prevention and treatment of testicular damage induced by environmental pollutants. Dioxin is one of the most potent toxic environmental pollutants. Exposure to dioxin either in adulthood or during late fetal and early postnatal development causes a variety of adverse effects on the male reproductive system. The chemical decreases spermatogenesis and the ability to conceive and carry a pregnancy to full term. Pretreatment with 100 or 200 mg/kg ginseng aqueous extract intraperitoneally for 28 days prevented toxic effects of dioxin in guinea pigs. There was no loss in body weight, testicular weight or damage to spermatogenesis (Kim et al 1999). In guinea pigs P. ginseng also improves the survival and quality of sperm exposed dioxin (Hwang et al 2004).

PROMOTING HAEOMPOIESIS
Ginseng is traditionally used to treat anaemia. The total saponin fraction, and specifically Rg1 and Rb1, have been shown to promote haemopoiesis by stimulating proliferation of human granulocyte-macrophage progenitors (Niu et al 2001).
ANTIOXIDANT
In vitro studies did not find various extracts of ginseng to be particularly potent antioxidants against several different free radicals (Kim et al 2002c). However, animal models have demonstrated effects in type 2 diabetes (Ryu et al 2005), particularly for the leaf, which may suppress lipid peroxidation in diabetic rats (Jung et al 2005). Ginseng extract has also been shown to protect muscle from exercise-induced oxidative stress in animal studies (Voces et al 2004).

Whether these effects are directly due to the antioxidant activity of ginseng components or secondary to other mechanisms, such as blood glucose regulation, is unclear. Additionally ginseng compounds may require in vivo conversion to active metabolites in order to exert their full effects.

HAIR GROWTH
Red ginseng extract (more so than white ginseng), and especially ginsenoside Rb1 and 20(S)-ginsenoside Rg3, has been shown to promote hair growth in mouse hair follicles in vitro (Matsuda et al 2003).

ANTI-ALLERGIC ACTIVITY
Ginsenosides have been demonstrated to have anti-allergic activity in vitro. One of the metabolites, 20-O-beta-D-glucopyranosyl-20(S)-protopanaxadiol, was found to inhibit beta-hexosaminidase release from rat basophil leukaemia cells and potently reduce passive cutaneous anaphylaxis reaction. The inhibitory activity of protopanaxadiol was more potent than that of disodium cromoglycate, an anti-allergic drug. The compound stabilised membranes but had no effect on hyaluronidase and did not scavenge free radicals. These results suggest that the anti-allergic action of protopanaxadiol originates from its cell membrane-stabilising activity and that the ginsenosides are prodrugs with anti-allergic properties (Choo et al 2003).

ANXIOLYTIC EFFECTS
Ginsenosides, and especially ginsenoside Rc, regulate GABA-A receptors in vitro (Choi et al 2003a) and animal models have demonstrated an anxiolytic effect for ginseng saponins (Park et al 2005a).

WOUND HEALING
Ginsenoside Rb2 has been reported to improve wound healing. It is believed that ginsenoside Rb2 enhances epidermal cell proliferation by enhancing the expressions of protein factors related to cell proliferation, such as epidermal growth factor and fibronectin (and their receptors), keratin and collagenase (Choi 2002). Ginsenoside Re may also enhance tissue regeneration by inducing angiogenesis (Huang et al 2005).
**IMPROVES ACNE**
In an animal model of acne, ginseng extracts reduced the size of comedones by altering keratinisation of the skin and desquamating horny cells in comedones. In a study of experimentally induced hyperkeratosis, ginseng reduced the accumulation of lipids in the epidermis by regulating enzymes associated with epidermal metabolism (Kim et al 1990).

**CLINICAL USE**
In the scientific arena, ginseng and the various ginsenosides are used in many forms and administered via various routes. This review will focus primarily on those methods commonly used in clinical practice.

**CANCER PREVENTION**
The various anticancer actions of *P. ginseng*, as demonstrated in animal and in vitro trials, support its use as an agent to prevent the development and progression of cancer. A 5-year prospective study of 4634 patients over 40 years of age found that ginseng reduced the relative risk of cancer by nearly 50% (Yun 1996).

A retrospective study of 905 case-controlled pairs taking ginseng showed that ginseng intake reduced the risk of cancer by 44% (odds ratio equal to 0.56). The powdered and extract forms of ginseng were more effective than fresh sliced ginseng, juice or tea. The preventative effect was highly significant ($P < 0.001$). There was a significant decline in cancer occurrence with increasing ginseng intake ($P < 0.05$) (Yun & Choi 1990).

Epidemiological studies in Korea strongly suggest that cultivated Korean ginseng is a non-organ-specific human cancer preventative agent. In case-control studies, odds ratios of cancer of lip, oral cavity and pharynx, larynx, lung, oesophagus, stomach, liver, pancreas, ovary and colorectum were significantly reduced by ginseng use. The most active compounds are thought to be ginsenosides Rg3, Rg5 and Rh2 (Yun 2003).

Ginseng polysaccharide (18 mg/day) has also been shown to be effective in improving immunological function and quality of life in elderly patients with non-small cell lung cancer (Zhang et al 2004).

**Chemotherapy** Overexpression of P-glycoprotein or multidrug resistance-associated protein may lead to multidrug resistance of cancer cells. Protopanaxatriol ginsenosides have been shown to sensitisce cancer cells to chemotherapeutic agents in vitro by increasing the intracellular accumulation of the drugs through direct interaction with P-glycoprotein (Choi et al 2003b, Kim et al 2003b). The ginsenoside Rh2 possesses strong tumour-inhibiting properties and sensitises multidrug-resistant breast cancer cells to paclitaxel (Jia et al 2004) and animal models demonstrate a
synergistic antitumour effect for ginseng acidic polysaccharides and paclitaxel (Shin et al 2004a).

 Panax ginseng polysaccharide (12 mg IV daily) has also been trialled during treatment for ovarian cancer and the authors suggest that it is ‘effective, safe and reliable for reducing the toxic effects of chemotherapy’ (Fu et al 2005).

**DIABETES**

The putative effects of Korean ginseng on blood glucose and lipid regulation, oxidative stress, and protein glycation suggests a possible role as an adjunctive therapy in the management of diabetes and diabetic complications.

A double-blind, placebo-controlled study with 36 subjects found that 200 mg ginseng elevated mood, improved psychophysical performance and reduced fasting blood glucose and body weight in patients with newly diagnosed type 2 diabetes (Sotaniemi et al 1995).

**CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE**

Although there are reports of ginseng causing hypertension, red ginseng is actually used as an antihypertensive agent in Korea.

Acute administration of an aqueous preparation of Korean ginseng (100 mg/kg body weight) to 12 healthy, non-smoking male volunteers resulted in an increase in NO levels and a concomitant reduction in mean blood pressure and heart rate (Han et al 2005).

Ginseng is often used in practice as an adjuvant to both conventional and CAM treatments. An open clinical study of 44 hypertensive patients found red ginseng, 1.5 g three times daily (4.5 g/day), to be useful as an adjuvant to antihypertensive medication (Han et al 1995). A combination of red ginseng and digoxin was found to be more beneficial than either drug alone in an open study of advanced congestive heart failure. There were no adverse reactions (Ding et al 1995). A combination of ginseng and ginkgo extracts has been found to improve circulation and lower blood pressure in a controlled single-dose study of 10 healthy young volunteers (Kiesewetter et al 1992).

Korean red ginseng has also been shown to improve vascular endothelial function in patients with hypertension. The effect is thought to be mediated through increasing the synthesis of nitric oxide (Sung et al 2000).

**HYPERLIPIDAEMIA**

In a small trial of eight males receiving 2 g Panax ginseng extract three times daily (total PGE 6 g/day) for 8 weeks, serum total cholesterol, LDL, and triglyceride
concentrations were decreased by 12%, 45% and 24%, respectively and a 44% increase in HDL was reported (Kim & Park 2003).

Red ginseng, 1.5 g three times daily before meals for 7 days, reduced liver cholesterol, decreased the atherogenic index and elevated HDL-cholesterol in 11 patients (5 normal subjects and 6 with hyperlipidaemia). Serum cholesterol was not significantly altered, but serum triglycerides were significantly decreased (Yamamoto & Kumagai 1982).

**IMMUNOMODULATION**

Ginseng has been shown to significantly enhance NK function in healthy subjects and those suffering from chronic fatigue syndrome or AIDS ($P < 0.01$) (See et al 1997).

Ginseng polysaccharide injection has been shown, in a randomised study, to improve immunity in 130 patients with nasopharyngeal carcinoma and to reduce adverse reactions to radiotherapy compared with controls (Xie et al 2001).

Red ginseng powder has been shown to restore immunity after chemotherapy and reduce the recurrence of stage III gastric cancer. The 5-year disease-free survival and overall survival rates were significantly higher in patients taking the red ginseng powder during postoperative chemotherapy versus control (68.2% vs 33.3%, 76.4% vs 38.5%, respectively, $P < 0.05$). Despite the limitation of a small number of patients ($n = 42$), these findings suggest that red ginseng powder may help to improve postoperative survival in these patients. Additionally, red ginseng powder may have some immunomodulatory properties associated with CD3 and CD4 activity in patients with advanced gastric cancer during postoperative chemotherapy (Suh et al 2002).

**Vaccine adjuvant activity**

Ginseng extract (100 mg ginsan G115/day) improved the response to an influenza vaccine in a multicentre, randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled two-arm study of 227 subjects. Compared with vaccine without the ginseng, the addition of ginseng resulted in fewer cases of influenza and common cold. Ginseng increased NK activity and increased antibody production (Scaglione et al 1996).

The addition of 2 mg ginseng dry extract per vaccine dose has been shown to potentiate the antibody response of commercial vaccines without altering their safety. The enhancing effect of ginseng was demonstrated during the vaccination of pigs against porcine parvovirus and *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae* infections using commercially available vaccines (Rivera et al 2003).
COGNITIVE FUNCTION

There is some contention about the benefits of ginseng for improving memory, concentration and learning (Persson et al 2004). Well-controlled clinical trials are lacking and variations in dosage and standardisation may affect study results.

Some studies have demonstrated that ginseng improves the quality of memory and associated secondary memory (Kennedy et al 2001a). In a randomised, placebo-controlled, double-blind, balanced crossover study of healthy, young adult volunteers, 400 mg ginseng was shown to improve secondary memory performance on a Cognitive Drug Research computerised assessment battery and two serial subtraction mental arithmetic tasks. Ginseng also improved attention and the speed of performing the memory tasks (Kennedy et al 2002). In a later double-blind, placebo controlled, balanced, cross-over study of 30 healthy young adults, acute administration of ginseng (400 mg) was again shown to improve speed of attention (Sunram-Lea et al 2005).

In a double-blind, placebo-controlled study of healthy young subjects, ginseng extract (G115) improved accuracy and slowed responses during one of two computerised serial subtraction tests (Serial Sevens), and it was also shown to improve mood during these tasks (Kennedy et al 2001b).

In a double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled 8–9-week trial standardised ginseng extract 400 mg was found significantly to improve abstract thinking ($P < 0.005$) and reaction time (not significant) in 112 healthy subjects over 40 years of age. Ginseng was found not to affect concentration or memory (Sorensen & Sonne 1996).

In clinical practice Korean ginseng and Ginkgo biloba are frequently used in combination for cognitive benefits. Combining ginseng with ginkgo dramatically improves memory, concentration and speed of completing mental tasks (Kennedy et al 2001a, Scholey & Kennedy 2002). In clinical trials ginseng directly modulates cerebroelectrical activity on EEG recordings to a greater extent than Ginkgo biloba (Kennedy et al 2003).

In a double-blind, placebo-controlled study, post-menopausal women aged 51–66 years were randomly assigned to 12 weeks’ treatment with a combination formula containing 120 mg Ginkgo biloba and 200 mg Panax ginseng ($n = 30$), or matched placebo ($n = 27$). The combination appeared to have no effect on mood or cognition after 6 and 12 weeks; however, these doses may be too low (Hartley et al 2004). According to other trials it would appear that doses of 400–900 mg of ginseng are required for best results and 200 mg doses have been associated with ‘cognitive costs’, slowing performance on attention tasks (Kennedy & Scholey 2003).
**MENOPAUSAL SYMPTOMS**

Korean red ginseng is used to alleviate symptoms associated with menopause; 6 g ginseng for 30 days was shown in a small study of 20 women significantly ($P < 0.001$) to improve menopausal symptoms, in particular fatigue, insomnia and depression. The women treated had a significant decrease in cortisol and cortisol-to-dehydroepiandrosterone ratio ($P < 0.05$). No adverse effects were recorded (Tode et al 1999).

**ERECTILE DYSFUNCTION**

Korean red ginseng has been shown to alleviate erectile dysfunction and improve the ability to achieve and maintain erections even in patients with severe erectile dysfunction (Price & Gazewood 2003). Ginsenosides can facilitate penile erection by directly inducing the vasodilatation and relaxation of the penile corpus cavernosum. Moreover, the effects of ginseng on the corpus cavernosum appear to be mediated by the release and/or modification of release of NO from endothelial cells and perivascular nerves (Murphy & Lee 2002). In men with type 2 diabetes, oxidative stress has been suggested as a contributing factor to erectile dysfunction and animal studies suggest that ginseng can preserve ‘potency’ via its antioxidant effect (Ryu et al 2005).

In a double-blind crossover study, 900 mg Korean red ginseng was found to significantly improve the Mean International Index of Erectile Function scores compared with placebo. Significant subjective improvements in penetration and maintenance were reported by participants and penile tip rigidity on the RigiScan showed significant improvement for ginseng versus placebo (Hong et al 2002).

A significant improvement in erectile function, sexual desire, and intercourse satisfaction was demonstrated in 45 subjects following 8 weeks’ oral administration of Korean red ginseng (900 mg three times daily) in a double-blind, placebo-controlled, crossover trial. Subjects demonstrated significant improvement in mean International Index of Erectile Function scores compared with placebo (baseline, $28 \pm 16.7$; Korean red ginseng, $38.1 \pm 16.6$; placebo, $30.9 \pm 15.7$) (Hong et al 2003).

**QUALITY OF LIFE**

An 8-week, randomised, double-blind study found that 200 mg/day ginseng ($n = 15$, placebo: $n = 15$) improved aspects of mental health and social functioning after 4 weeks’ therapy but that these differences disappeared with continued use (Ellis & Reddy 2002). A review of eight clinical studies with ginseng found some improvement in QOL scores. However, the findings were equivocal. Despite some positive
results, improvement in overall health-related QOL cannot, given the current research, be attributed to P. ginseng. However, the possibility that various facets of QOL may have improved and the potential of early transient effects cannot be discounted (Coleman et al 2003). A double-blind, placebo-controlled, randomised clinical trial of 83 subjects also did not find ginseng to enhance psychological wellbeing in healthy young adults (Cardinal & Engels 2001).

A double-blind, placebo-controlled crossover study found that 1200 mg ginseng was only slightly more effective than placebo and not as effective as a good night’s sleep in improving bodily feelings, mood and fatigue in 12 fatigued night nurses. Volunteers slept less and experienced less fatigue but rated sleep quality worse after ginseng administration (Hallstrom et al 1982).

A recent double-blind, placebo-controlled, balanced crossover design of 30 healthy young adults taking P. ginseng extract (200 mg or 400 mg) or placebo, demonstrated improvements in performance and subjective feelings of mental fatigue during sustained mental activity. It has been hypothesised that this effect may be due in part to the ability of ginseng to regulate blood glucose levels (Reay et al 2005).

**ADAPTOGENIC AND TONIC EFFECTS**

A randomised double-blind study involving 232 subjects between the ages of 25 and 60 years found that extract equivalent to about 400 mg ginseng root for 4 weeks significantly improved fatigue. Side-effects were uncommon, with only two subjects withdrawing from the study (Le Gal & Cathebras 1996).

A randomised double-blind study of 83 subjects found that extract equivalent to 1 g ginseng root for 4 months decreased the risk of contracting a common cold or bronchitis, improved appetite, sleep, wellbeing and physical performance (Gianoli & Riebenfeld 1984).

Ginseng is used by many athletes to improve stamina and to facilitate rapid recovery from injuries. To examine the effects of ginseng supplements on hormonal status following acute resistance exercise, eight male college students were randomly given water (control group) or 20 g ginseng root extract treatment immediately after a standardised training exercise. Human growth hormone, testosterone, cortisol, and insulin-like growth factor 1 levels were determined by radioimmunoassay. The responses of plasma hormones following ginseng consumption were not significant between the control and the ginseng groups during the 2-hour recovery period (Youl et al 2002).

Although ginseng is commonly used to improve endurance, a double-blind study of 19 healthy active women found that 400 mg of a ginseng extract (G115) did not
improve supramaximal exercise performance or short-term recovery. Analysis of variance using pre-test to post-test change scores revealed no significant difference between the ginseng and placebo study groups for the following variables measured: peak anaerobic power output, mean anaerobic power output, rate of fatigue, and immediate post-exercise recovery heart rates (Engels et al 2001). A recent study by the same authors also failed to find any benefit from ginseng (400 mg/day G115; equivalent to 2 g *P. ginseng* C.A. Meyer root material for 8 weeks) on improving physical performance and heart rate recovery of individuals undergoing repeated bouts of exhausting exercise (Engels et al 2003).

OTHER USES

**GASTROPROTECTION DURING HEART SURGERY**

In a trial of 24 children undergoing heart surgery for congenital heart defects, 12 children received 1.35 mg/kg ginsenoside compound or placebo intravenously before and throughout the course of cardiopulmonary bypass surgery. Ginseng administration resulted in attenuation of gastrointestinal injury and inflammation (Xia et al 2005).

**RESPIRATORY DISEASE**

Ginseng extract (G115) has been shown significantly (*P* < 0.05) to improve pulmonary function test, maximum voluntary ventilation, maximum inspiratory pressure and maximal oxygen consumption (VO₂max) in a study of 92 patients suffering moderately severe chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (*n* = 49, G115 100 mg twice daily for 3 months) (Gross et al 2002).

**HELICOBACTER PYLORI**

*Helicobacter pylori* can provoke gastric inflammation, ulceration and DNA damage, resulting in an increased risk of carcinogenesis (Park et al 2005b). As preliminary evidence suggests that *P. ginseng* inhibits the growth of *H. pylori* (Kim et al 2003c) and can inhibit adhesion (Lee et al 2004b) it may be useful as a gastroprotective agent against *H. pylori*-associated gastric mucosal cell damage (Park et al 2005b).

**HIV INFECTION**

Long-term intake of Korean ginseng slows the depletion of CD4+ T cells and may delay disease progression in people with HIV type 1 (Sung et al 2005). Long-term intake (60 ± 15 months) has also been shown to delay the development of resistance mutation to zidovudine (Cho et al 2001).

**DOSAGE RANGE**

- Extract equivalent to 0.9–3 g crude ginseng root (Bensky & Gamble 1986).
Standardised extract: 1.5–4.0% total ginsenosides calculated as ginsenoside Rg1.
Liquid extract (1:2): 1–6 mL/day.
Cognitive function: doses of 400–900 mg are recommended. Lower doses may be associated with ‘cognitive costs’ and slowing performance on attention tasks (Kennedy & Scholey 2003).
Cardiovascular use: 1.5–2 g three times daily.

Many of the clinical studies published in the scientific literature have used a proprietary extract of ginseng standardised to 4% total ginsenosides (G115 or ginsana produced by Pharmaton, Switzerland).

Ginseng is usually given in the earlier part of the day. It should not be given in the evening unless it is used to promote wakefulness. Ginseng is usually not given to children.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**

Ginseng abuse syndrome (hypertension, nervousness, insomnia, morning diarrhoea, inability to concentrate and skin reactions) has been reported and there has been a report of a 28-year-old woman who had a severe headache after ingesting a large quantity of ethanol-extracted ginseng. Cerebral angiograms showed ‘beading’ appearance in the anterior and posterior cerebral and superior cerebellar arteries, consistent with cerebral arteritis (Ryu & Chien 1995). High doses (15 g/day) have been associated with confusion, depression and depersonalisation in four patients (Coon & Ernst 2002).

However, the majority of the scientific data suggest that ginseng is rarely associated with adverse events or drug interactions. A systematic review found that the most commonly experienced adverse events are headache, sleep and gastrointestinal disorders. Data from clinical trials suggest that the incidence of adverse events with ginseng mono-preparations is similar to that of placebo. Any documented effects are usually mild and transient. Combined preparations are more often associated with adverse events, but causal attribution is usually not possible (Coon & Ernst 2002).

A case of suspected ginseng allergy has recently been reported in the scientific literature. The case involved a 20-year-old male who developed urticaria, dyspnoea and hypotension after ingesting ginseng syrup. The subject recovered fully and was discharged after 24 hours (Wiwanitkit & Taungjararuwinai 2004).

While ginseng use has been associated with the development of hypertension it has actually been shown to reduce blood pressure in several studies (Coon & Ernst 2002).
Ginseng has very low toxicity. Subacute doses of 1.5–15 mg/kg of a 5:1 ginseng extract did not produce negative effect on body weight, food consumption, haematological or biochemical parameters, or histological findings in dogs (Hess et al 1983) and no effects have been observed from the administration of similar doses in two generations of rat offspring (Hess et al 1982).

Traditionally, ginseng is not recommended with other stimulants such as caffeine and nicotine and a case report exists of a 39-year-old female experiencing menometrorrhagia, arrhythmia and tachycardia after using oral and topical ginseng along with coffee and cigarettes (Kabalak et al 2004).

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**

**ALBENDAZOLE**

*Panax ginseng* significantly accelerated the intestinal clearance of the anthelmintic, albendazole sulfoxide, when co-administered to rats (Merino et al 2003).

**ALCOHOL**

Ginseng may increase the clearance of alcohol from the blood according to an open trial of 14 healthy volunteers (Coon & Ernst 2002) — beneficial interaction possible.

**CHEMOTHERAPY, RADIOTherAPy AND GENERAL ANAESTHETICS**

Preliminary evidence suggests that *P. ginseng* saponins may reduce nausea and vomiting associated with chemotherapy, radiotherapy and general anaesthetics by antagonising serotonin (5-hydroxytryptamine, 5HT) type 3A receptors (Min et al 2003). Ginseng may also help to sensitise cancer cells to chemotherapeutic agents according to preliminary evidence.

**DIGOXIN**

Ginseng contains glycosides with structural similarities to digoxin which may modestly interfere with digoxin results (Dasgupta et al 2003). These naturally occurring glycosides may cause false elevation of fluorescence polarisation and falsely low microparticle enzyme results, although Tina-quant results appear unaffected (Dasgupta et al 2005). There are no confirmed case reports of actual interaction (Chow et al 2003, Dasgupta et al 2003).

**DRUGS METABOLISED CHIEFLY BY CYP1A AND CYP2D6**

Mixed reports exist as to whether ginseng may act as an inhibitor of cytochrome CYP1A (Gurley et al 2005, Lee et al 2002b, Yu et al 2005) or CYP2D6 (Gurley et al 2005) and if so whether the effect is likely to be clinically significant. Observe for increased drug bioavailability and clinical effects.
NIFEDIPINE
Ginseng increased the mean plasma concentration of the calcium channel blocker nifedipine by 53% at 30 minutes in an open trial of 22 healthy subjects. Effects at other time points were not reported (Smith et al 2001). Caution.

VANCOMYCIN
In animal studies the combination of ginseng polysaccharides with vancomycin resulted in a 100% survival rate for animals treated for Staphylococcus aureus compared to only 67% or 50% survival in animals treated with ginseng polysaccharides or vancomycin alone (Lim et al 2002b). A beneficial additive effect is possible but clinical use in humans has not yet been established.

WARFARIN
No affects on the pharmacokinetics or pharmacodynamics of either S-warfarin or R-warfarin were revealed in an open-label, crossover randomised trial of 12 healthy male subjects who received a single 25-mg dose of warfarin alone or after 7 days’ pretreatment with ginseng (Jiang et al 2004). Whether these effects are consistent in less ‘healthy’ people likely to be taking warfarin or for prolonged concurrent use is unclear.

There have been two case reports of ginseng reducing the antithrombotic effects of warfarin (Janetzky & Morreale 1997, Rosado 2003). Additionally, it inhibits platelet aggregation according to both in vitro and animal studies. Avoid using this combination unless under medical supervision to monitor antithrombotic effects.

ZIDOVUDINE
Long-term intake (60 ± 15 months) of Korean red ginseng in HIV-1-infected patients has been shown to delay the development of resistance mutation to zidovudine (Cho et al 2001).

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Korean ginseng is generally contraindicated in acute infections with fever, and in persons who are very hot, tense and overly stimulated. Overuse may result in headache, insomnia and palpitation (Bensky & Gamble 1986). Ginseng should not be taken concurrently with other stimulants including caffeine and should be discontinued 1 week before major surgery. Use in hypertension should be supervised however it may prove beneficial for this indication.

PREGNANCY USE
Ginseng is traditionally used in Korea as a tonic during pregnancy. The Commission E does not list any restrictions (Blumenthal 2001). However, due to the potential
teratogenicity of some compounds (ginsenoside Rb1) observed under experimental conditions, ginseng should be used cautiously during the first trimester of pregnancy (Chan et al 2003).

In a two-generation rat study, a ginseng extract fed at doses as high as 15 mg/kg/day did not produce adverse effects on reproductive performance, including embryo development and lactation (Hess et al 1982).

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**

**TRADITIONAL USE**

Ginseng is traditionally used for deficiency of Qi (energy/life force) manifested by shallow respiration, shortness of breath, cold limbs, profuse sweating and a weak pulse (such as may occur from severe blood loss). Ginseng is also used for wheezing, lethargy, lack of appetite, abdominal distention and chronic diarrhoea. Ginseng may also be used for palpitations with anxiety, insomnia, forgetfulness and restlessness associated with low energy and anaemia (Bensky & Gamble 1986).

**Scientific evidence**

There is some scientific evidence for the beneficial effects of ginseng for the following conditions. In practice, it is mostly used as a supportive treatment and combined with other herbs to treat a specific condition.

- Prevention and supportive treatment of cancer.
- Chronic immune deficiency.
- Menopausal symptoms.
- Erectile dysfunction.
- Chronic respiratory disease.
- Enhancement of psychomotor activity, memory and concentration.
- Adaptogenic effects in any chronic condition and for the elderly and infirm.
- Type 1 diabetes.
- Cardiovascular disease (the effects on hypertension remain to be fully investigated).
- Quality of life (equivocal scientific support).

Commission E recommends ginseng as a tonic for invigoration and fortification in times of fatigue, debility and convalescence, or declining capacity for work and concentration. The World Health Organization suggests that ginseng can be used as a prophylactive and restorative agent for enhancement of mental and physical capacities, in cases of weakness, exhaustion, tiredness and loss of concentration and during convalescence (Blumenthal 2001).
ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this herb do for me?
Ginseng is a safe herb used to support the body during times of prolonged stress or
chronic disease and to restore mental and physical functioning during the rehabilitative
process. Numerous studies have identified a range of pharmacological activites
that suggest it may be useful in the treatment of many conditions.
When will it start to work?
In practice, it generally appears that ginseng has a quick onset of action with the
condition continuing to improve with long-term use; however, this will vary
depending on the individual and the indication.
Are there any safety issues?
Ginseng may interact with warfarin and other blood thinning drugs and should not
be used with these medications unless under medical supervision. Avoid use in
children or in hypertension unless under supervision. Use with caution in pregnancy.

REFERENCES
Bae J, Lee M. Effect and putative mechanism of action of ginseng on the formation of glycated hemoglobin in
Banerjee U, Izquierdo JA. Antistress and antifatigue properties of Panax ginseng: comparison with piracetam.
Brekhman II, Dardymov IV. Pharmacological investigation of gycosides from Ginseng and Eleutheroxoccus.
British Herbal Medicine Association Scientific Committee. British Herbal Pharmacopoeia. Lane House,
Cabral de Oliveira AC, Perez AC, Merino G, Prieto JG, Alvarez AI. Protective effects of Panax ginseng on muscle
injury and inflammation after eccentric exercise. Comp Biochem Physiol C Toxicol Pharmacol 130.3
Cardinal BJ, Engels HJ. Ginseng does not enhance psychological well-being in healthy, young adults: results of
Caron MF, Hotsko AL, Robertson S et al. Electrocardiographic and hemodynamic effects of Panax ginseng. Ann
Chan L, Chiu P, Lau T. An in-vitro study of ginsenoside Rb1-induced teratogenicity using a whole rat embryo
medicine, Dae-Jo-Whan, on platelet-activating factor-induced platelet aggregation. J Ethnopharmacol 102.3
Cho YK, Sung H, Lee HJ, Joo CH, Cho GJ. Long-term intake of Korean red ginseng in HIV-1-infected patients:
development of resistance mutation to zidovudine is delayed. Int Immunopharmacol 1.7 (2001): 1295-305.
Choi SE et al. Effects of ginsenosides on GABA(A) receptor channels expressed in Xenopus oocytes. Arch
Choi CH, Kang G, Min YD. Reversal of P-glycoprotein-mediated multidrug resistance by protopanaxatriol

Ginseng—Korean 569

© 2007 Elsevier Australia

Ginseng—Korean 570

© 2007 Elsevier Australia


Kennedy DO, Scholey AB, Wesnes KA. Modulation of cognition and mood following administration of single doses of Ginkgo biloba, ginseng, and a ginkgo/ginseng combination to healthy young adults. Physiol Behav 75.5 (2002): 739-51.


Historical note  Siberian ginseng has been used for over 2000 years, according to Chinese medical records, where it is referred to as Ci Wu Jia. It was used to prevent colds and flu and to increase vitality and energy. In modern times, it has been used by Russian cosmonauts for improving alertness and energy, and to aid in adaptation to the stresses of life in space. It has also been used as an ergogenic aid by Soviet athletes before international competitions and was used after the Chernobyl accident to counteract the effects of radiation.

OTHER NAMES
Ci Wu Jia, devil’s bush, devil’s shrub, eleuthero, eleutherooccus, eleuther root, gokahi, ogap’I, russisk rod, taigawurzel, touch-me-not, Wu Jia Pi

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Eleutherococcus senticosus (synonym: Acanthopanax senticosus) (family Araliaceae)

PLANT PART USED
Root

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Glycosides (eleutherosides A–M, includes saponins, coumarins, lignans, phenylpropanoids, oleanolic acids, triterpenes, betulinic acid and vitamins); steroid glycoside (eleutheroside A); lignan (eleutheroside D, sesamine); glycans (eleutherans A–G); triterpenoid saponins; saponin (protoprimulagenin A); hydroxycoumarin (isofraxidin); phenolics; polysaccharides; lignans; coumarins; resin.

Nutrients include magnesium 723 μg/g, aluminium 188 μg/g and manganese 37 μg/g, vitamins A and E (Meacham 2002, Nissen 2003, Skidmore-Roth 2001).

MAIN ACTIONS
ADAPTOGENIC (MODULATES STRESS RESPONSE)
Siberian ginseng appears to alter the levels of different neurotransmitters and hormones involved in the stress response, chiefly at the HPA axis. It degrades the enzyme (catechol-O-methyl transferase), and increases levels of noradrenaline and serotonin in the brain and adrenaline in the adrenal glands, according to animal studies (Abramova et al 1972). Eleutherosides have also been reported to bind to receptor sites for progestin, oestrogen, mineralocorticoids and glucocorticoids in vitro.
and therefore may theoretically exert numerous pharmacological actions important for the body’s stress response (Pearce et al 1982).

Owing to such actions, herbalists and naturopaths describe the herb’s overall action as ‘adaptogenic’, whereby the body is better able to adapt to change and homeostasis is more efficiently restored. More recently, the term ‘allostasis’ is being adopted in the medical arena to describe ‘the ability to achieve stability through change’.

**Clinical note — Allostasis**

Allostasis is the body’s adaptation to stress. Allostatic (adaptive) systems are critical to survival and enable us to respond to changes in our physical state (such as asleep, awake, standing, sitting, eating, exercising, infection) and psychological states (such as anticipation, fear, isolation, worry and lack of control). The consumption of tobacco, alcohol and our dietary choices also induce allostatic responses (McEwan 1998). These systems are complex and have broad boundaries, in contrast to the body’s homeostatic systems (e.g. blood pH and body temperature), which are maintained within a narrow range.

Most commonly, allostatic responses involve the sympathetic nervous system and the HPA axis. Upon activation (e.g. a challenge is perceived), catecholamines are released from nerves and the adrenal medulla, corticotrophin is secreted from the pituitary and cortisol is released from the adrenal cortex. Once the threat has passed (e.g. environment is more comfortable or infection is controlled), the system is inactivated and levels of cortisol and catecholamine secretion return to baseline.

Chronic exposure to stress can lead to allostatic load, a situation resulting from chronic overactivity or underactivity of allostatic systems. The situation is characterised by maladaptive responses whereby systems become inefficient or do not turn off appropriately. Currently, there is much interest in understanding the association between numerous diseases such as cardiovascular disease and overwhelming allostatic load.

One measure that is used to gauge an individual’s allostatic response is the cortisol response to a variety of stressors. As such, cortisol is seen as the classical ‘stress’ hormone.

Although the mechanism of action responsible is still unclear, several theories have been proposed to explain the effect of Siberian ginseng on allostatic systems, largely based on the pharmacological actions observed in test-tube and animal studies.

Siberian ginseng increases levels of noradrenaline, serotonin, adrenaline and cortisol that are able to induce both positive and negative feedback responses.
(Abramova et al 1972, Gaffney et al 2001a). Therefore, for example, if allostatic load is such that responses have become inadequate, then the resulting increase in hormone levels would theoretically induce a more efficient response. Alternatively, situations of chronic overactivity, also due to allostatic load, would respond to Siberian ginseng in a different way, with negative feedback systems being triggered to inactivate the stress response (Gaffney et al 2001a). As a result, Siberian ginseng could theoretically induce quite different effects, largely dependent on whether allostatic responses were underactive or overwhelmed.

**IMMUNOMODULATION**

Siberian ginseng appears to exert an immunomodulatory rather than just an immunosuppressive or stimulating action; however, evidence for the immune enhancing effects of Siberian ginseng is contradictory. Clinical studies in vitro and in vivo have revealed stimulation of general non-specific resistance and an influence on T-lymphocytes, NK cells and cytokines (Bohn et al 1987, Schmolz et al 2001), although other studies suggest that Siberian ginseng does not significantly stimulate the innate macrophage immune functions that influence cellular immune responses (Wang et al 2003). Alternatively, another in vitro study has demonstrated that activation of macrophages and NK cells does occur and may be responsible for inhibiting tumor metastasis both prophylactically and therapeutically (Yoon et al 2004).

The main constituents responsible appear to be lignans (seamin, syringin) and polysaccharides such as glycans, which demonstrate immunostimulant effects in vitro (Davydov & Krikorian 2000, Wagner et al 1984). Additionally, effects on the HPA axis will influence immune responses.

It has been suggested that eleutheroside E may be responsible for the improved recovery from reduced NK activity and the inhibition of corticosterone elevation induced by forced swimming in mice (Kimura & Sumiyoshi 2004) and may contribute to the antifatigue action.

**ANTIVIRAL**

In vitro studies show a strong antiviral action, inhibiting the replication of RNA type viruses such as human rhinovirus, respiratory syncytial virus and influenza A virus (Glatthaar-Saalmuller et al 2001).

**ANABOLIC ACTIVITY**

Siberian ginseng extracts have been reported to provide better usage of glycogen and high energy phosphorus compounds and improve the metabolism of lactic and pyruvic acids (Farnsworth et al 1985). Additionally, preliminary evidence of possible
anabolic effects makes this herb a popular treatment among athletes in the belief that endurance, performance and power may improve with its use.

While initial animal studies showed promise for improving weight gain and increasing organ and muscle weight (Farnsworth et al 1995, Kaemmerer & Fink 1980), clinical studies confirming whether anabolic effects occur also in humans could not be located.

OTHER ACTIONS

ANTICOAGULANT AND ANTIPLATELET EFFECTS
A controlled trial using Siberian ginseng tincture for 20 days in 20 athletes detected a decrease in the blood coagulation potential and activity of the blood coagulation factors that are normally induced by intensive training of the athletes (Azizov 1997). Whether the effects also occur in non-athletes is unknown. The 3, 4-dihydroxybenzoic acid constituent of Siberian ginseng has demonstrated antiplatelet activity in vivo (Yun-Choi et al 1987).

VASCULAR RELAXANT
In vitro studies have demonstrated vasorelaxant effects for Siberian ginseng. The effect is thought to be endothelium-dependent and mediated by NO and/or endothelium-derived hyperpolarising factor, depending on the size of the blood vessel. Other vasorelaxation pathways may also be involved (Kwan et al 2004).

ANTI-ALLERGIC
In vitro studies demonstrate that Siberian ginseng has anti-allergic properties in mast-cell-mediated allergic reactions (Jeong et al 2001).

RADIOPROTECTIVE
Animal studies have found that administration of Siberian ginseng prior to a lethal dose of radiation produced an 80% survival rate in mice (Miyanomae & Frindel 1988). This result suggests that Siberian ginseng may protect against radiation toxicity.

NEUROPROTECTIVE
Preliminary animal studies have suggested possible neuroprotective effects in transient middle cerebral artery occlusion in Sprague-Dawley rats. Infarct volume was reduced by 36.6% by inhibiting inflammation and microglial activation in brain ischaemia after intraperitoneal injection of a water extract of Siberian ginseng (Bu et al 2005). Similarly, intraperitoneal injection of Siberian ginseng was found to relieve damage to neurons following hippocampal ischaemia hypoxia and improve the learning and memory of rats with experimentally induced vascular dementia (Ge et al 2004). The saponins present in Siberian ginseng have also been shown to protect...
against cortical neuron injury induced by anoxia/reoxygenation by inhibiting the release of NO and neuron apoptosis in vitro (Chen et al 2004).

**HEPATOPROTECTIVE**
Animal studies have demonstrated that an intravenous extract of Siberian ginseng decreased thioacetamide-induced liver toxicity when given before and after thioacetamide administration (Shen et al 1991). More recently oral administration of aqueous extract and polysaccharide was found to attenuate fulminant hepatic failure induced by D-galactosamine/lipopolysaccharide in mice, reducing serum AST, ALT and TNF-alpha levels (Park et al 2004). The protective effect is thought to be due to the water-soluble polysaccharides.

**REDUCES OBESITY**
Animal studies have demonstrated that the inclusion of Siberian ginseng attenuated the 'weight gain, serum LDL-cholesterol concentration and liver triglycerides accumulation in mice with obesity induced by high-fat diets' (Cha et al 2004).

**GLYCAEMIC CONTROL AND INSULIN-SENSITISING EFFECT**
Animal studies have indicated a potential for hypoglycaemic effects when used intravenously. Eleutherens A–G exert marked hypoglycaemic effects in normal and alloxan-induced hyperglycaemic mice (Hikino et al 1986) and eleutherosides show an insulin-like action in diabetic rats (Dardymov et al 1978). However, these effects have not been borne out in human studies (Farnsworth et al 1985) and may not relate to oral dosages of Siberian ginseng.

A small, double-blind, randomised, multiple-crossover study using 12 healthy participants actually showed an increase in postprandial plasma glucose at 90 and 120 minutes when 3 g Siberian ginseng was given orally 40 minutes before a 75-g oral glucose tolerance test (Sievenpiper et al 2004). More recently, oral administration of an aqueous extract of Siberian ginseng was shown to improve insulin sensitivity and delay the development of insulin resistance in rats (Liu et al 2005). As a result further trials in people with impaired glucose tolerance and/or insulin resistance are warranted.

**CLINICAL USE**

**STRESS**
Siberian ginseng is widely used to treat individuals with nervous exhaustion or anxiety due to chronic exposure to stress, or what is now termed ‘allostatic load situations’. The biochemical effects on stress responses observed in experimental and human...
studies provide a theoretical basis for this indication (Abramova et al 1972, Gaffney et al 2001a).

One placebo-controlled study conducted over 6 weeks investigated the effects of an ethanolic extract of Siberian ginseng (8 mL/day, equivalent to 4 g/day dried root). In the study, active treatment resulted in increased cortisol levels, which may be consistent with animal research suggesting a threshold of stress below which Siberian ginseng increases the stress response and above which it decreases the stress response (Gaffney et al 2001b).

FATIGUE
Siberian ginseng is used to improve physical and mental responses during convalescence or fatigue states. Its ability to increase levels of noradrenaline, serotonin, adrenaline and cortisol provide a theoretical basis for its use in situations of fatigue. However, controlled studies are limited.

A randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of 300 mg/day (E. senticosus dry extract) for 8 weeks assessed health-related QOL scores in 20 elderly people. Improvements were observed in social functioning after 4 weeks of therapy but did not persist to the 8-week time point. It would appear that improvements diminish with continued use (Cicero et al 2004), which may help to explain the practice of giving Siberian ginseng for 6 weeks with a 2-week break before repeating.

A recent randomised placebo-controlled trial evaluated the effectiveness of Siberian ginseng in chronic fatigue syndrome (CFS). No significant improvements were demonstrated overall; however, sub-group analysis showed improvements in fatigue in CFS sufferers with less severe fatigue (Hartz et al 2004). Further studies are required to determine whether Siberian ginseng may be a useful therapeutic option in cases of mild to moderate fatigue.

Commission E approves the use of Siberian ginseng as a tonic in times of fatigue and debility, for declining capacity for work or concentration, and during convalescence (Blumenthal et al 2000). In practice, it is often used in low doses in cases of fatigue due to chronic stress (Gaffney et al 2001a).

ERGOGenic AID
Siberian ginseng extracts have been reported to provide better usage of glycogen and high-energy phosphorus compounds and improve the metabolism of lactic and pyruvic acids (Farnsworth et al 1985). Additionally, preliminary evidence of possible anabolic effects makes this herb a popular treatment among athletes in the belief that endurance, performance and power may improve with its use.
While initial animal studies showed promise, recent randomised, controlled clinical trials have produced inconsistent results in healthy individuals and athletes (Eschbach et al 2000, Dowling et al 1996, Mahady et al 2000) and a recent review concluded that only poorer quality trials have demonstrated benefit while well-designed trials have not shown significant improvement in endurance performance, cardiopulmonary fitness, or fat metabolism during exercise ranging in duration from 6 to 120 minutes (Goulet & Dionne 2005).

In the mid 1980s, a Japanese controlled study conducted over 8 days showed that Siberian ginseng extract (2 mL twice daily) improved work capacity compared with placebo (23.3% vs 7.5%) in male athletes, owing to increased oxygen metabolism (Asano et al 1986). Increased stamina was also seen.

More recently, a randomised, double-blind crossover trial using a lower dose of 1200 mg/day Siberian ginseng for 7 days reported that treatment did not alter steady-state substrate use or 10 km cycling performance time (Eschbach et al 2000). Additionally, an 8-week, double-blind placebo-controlled study involving 20 experienced distance runners failed to detect significant changes to heart rate, oxygen consumption, expired minute volume, respiratory exchange ratio, perceived exertion or serum lactate levels compared with placebo. Overall, both submaximal and maximal exercise performance was unchanged (Dowling et al 1996).

Clinical studies investigating whether anabolic effects observed in experimental studies occur in humans are lacking.

PREVENTION OF INFECTION
Due to the herb’s ability to directly and indirectly modulate immune responses, it is also used to increase resistance to infection. One double-blind study of 1000 Siberian factory workers supports this, reporting a 50% reduction in general illness and a 40% reduction in absenteeism over a 12-month period, following 30 days’ administration of Siberian ginseng (Farnsworth et al 1985).

More recently, a 6-month controlled trial in males and females with recurrent herpes infection found that Siberian ginseng (2 g/day) successfully reduced the frequency of infection by 50% (Williams 1995).

In practice, Siberian ginseng is generally used as a preventative medicine, as administration during acute infections is widely thought to increase the severity of the illness, although this has not been borne out in controlled studies using Siberian ginseng in combination with other herbs. A small RCT demonstrated a significant reduction in the severity of familial Mediterranean fever in children using a combination of Siberian ginseng with licorice, andrographis and schisandra (Amaryan et al 2003) and a combination of Siberian ginseng with schisandra and rhodiola was
found to expedite the recovery of patients with acute non-specific pneumonia (Narimanian et al 2005).

**OTHER USES**
Given the herb’s ability to increase levels of serotonin and noradrenaline in animal studies (Abramova 1972), a theoretical basis exists for the use of Siberian ginseng in depression.

In TCM, Siberian ginseng is used to encourage the smooth flow of Qi and blood when obstructed, particularly in the elderly, and is viewed as a general tonic. It is therefore used for a myriad of indications, usually in combination with other herbal medicines.

**DOSAGE RANGE**
- 1–4 g/day dried root or equivalent preparations.
- Fluid extract (1:2): 2–8 mL/day (15–55 mL/week).
- Tincture (1:5): 10–15 mL/day.
- Extracts with standardised levels of eleutheroside E (>0.5 mg/mL) are recommended.

In practice, all ginsengs tend to be prescribed for no more than 1–3 months at a time with a break of at least several weeks before resuming treatment.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
Clinical trials of 6 months’ duration have shown no side-effects from treatment (Bohn et al 1987). High doses may cause slight drowsiness, irritability, anxiety, mastalgia, palpitations or tachycardia although these side effects may be more relevant to *Panax ginseng*.

---

**Clinical note — Case reports of Siberian ginseng need careful consideration**
Some adverse reactions attributed to Siberian ginseng have subsequently been found to be due to poor product quality, herbal substitution and/or interference with test results. For example, initial reports linking maternal ginseng use to neonatal androgenisation are now suspected to be due to substitution with another herb, *Periploca sepium* (silk vine), as American herb companies importing Siberian ginseng from China have been known to be supplied with two or three species of *Periploca* (Awang 1991). Additionally, rat studies have failed to detect significant androgenic action (Awang 1991, Waller et al 1992) for Siberian ginseng.

Another example is the purported interaction between digoxin and Siberian ginseng, which was based on a single case report of a 74-year-old man found to
have elevated digoxin levels for many years (McRae 1996). It was subsequently purported that the herbal product may have been adulterated with digitalis. Additionally, Siberian ginseng contains glycosides with structural similarities to digoxin that may modestly interfere with digoxin (Dasgupta & Reyes 2005, Dasgupta et al 2003). Considering that clinical symptoms of digoxin toxicity were not observed, it appears likely that an interference with the test methods used is responsible.

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**

As controlled studies are not available, interactions are currently speculative and based on evidence of pharmacological activity and case reports. Studies have reported that normal doses of Siberian ginseng are unlikely to affect drugs metabolised by CYP2D6 or CYP3A4 (Donovan et al 2003).

**ANTICOAGULANTS**

An in vivo study demonstrated that an isolated constituent in Siberian ginseng has anticoagulant activity (Yun-Choi et al 1987) and a clinical trial found a reduction in blood coagulation induced by intensive training in athletes (Azizov 1997). Whether these effects also occur in non-athletes is unknown. Observe.

**CHEMOTHERAPY**

An increased tolerance for chemotherapy and improved immune function has been demonstrated in women with breast cancer undergoing chemotherapy treatment (Kupin 1984, Kupin et al 1986). Caution, as co-administration may theoretically reduce drug effects. However, beneficial interaction may be possible under medical supervision.

**DIABETIC MEDICATIONS**

Claims that Siberian ginseng has hypoglycaemic effects are based on intravenous use in animal studies and not observed in humans for whom oral intake may actually increase postprandial glycaemia (Sievenpiper et al 2004). Observe diabetic patients taking ginseng.

**INFLUENZA VIRUS VACCINE**

Ginseng may reduce the risk of post-vaccine reactions (Zykov & Protasova 1984), a possible beneficial interaction.

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**

Some authors suggest that high-dose Siberian ginseng should be avoided by those with cardiovascular disease or hypertension (BP >80/90 mmHg) (Mahady et al 2000). Others merely suggest a caution, as reports are largely unsubstantiated (Holford &
Cass 2001). As such, it is recommended that people with hypertension should be monitored if using high doses. A study in elderly people with hypertension over 8 weeks did not affect blood pressure control (Cicero et al 2004).

Due to possible effects on glycaemic control (Sievenpiper et al 2004), care should be taken in people with diabetes until safety is established. Suspend use 1 week before major surgery.

Traditional contraindications include hormonal changes, excess energy states, fever, acute infection, concurrent use of other stimulants and prolonged use.

**PREGNANCY USE**

Insufficient reliable information is available, but the herb is not traditionally used in pregnancy.

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**

- Siberian ginseng appears to alter the levels of different neurotransmitters and hormones involved in the stress response, chiefly at the HPA axis.
- It is widely used to treat individuals with nervous exhaustion or anxiety due to chronic exposure to stress, or what are now termed ‘allostatic load situations’. It is also recommended during convalescence or fatigue to improve mental and physical responses.
- Siberian ginseng may increase resistance to infection and has been shown to reduce frequency of genital herpes outbreaks with long-term use.
- The herb is popular among athletes in the belief that endurance, performance and power may improve with its use, but clinical studies have produced inconsistent results.
- It is not recommended for use in pregnancy and people with hypertension should be monitored if using high doses.

**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

**What will this herb do for me?**

Siberian ginseng affects many chemicals involved in switching on and off the body’s stress responses. As such, it is used to improve wellbeing during times of chronic stress; however, scientific research has yet to fully investigate its use in this regard. It may also boost immune function and reduce the frequency of genital herpes outbreaks. Evidence for improved performance in athletes is unconvincing.

**When will it start to work?**

Effects on stress levels should develop within 6 weeks, whereas immune responses develop within 30 days.
Are there any safety issues?
It should not be used in pregnancy and high doses should be used with care by those with hypertension.

REFERENCES
Awang DVC. Maternal use of ginseng and neonatal androgenization (so-called Siberian ginseng is probably Periploca sepium, or silk vine) [Letter.] JAMA 266.3 (1991): 363.
Azizov AP. Effects of eleutherococcus, elton, leuzea, and leveton on the blood coagulation system during training in athletes, Eksp Klin Farmakol 60.5 (1997): 58-60 [in Russian].


Kupin VI, Polevaa EB. Stimulation of the immunological reactivity of cancer patients by Eleutherococcus extract. Vopr Onkol 32.7 (1986): 21-6 [in Russian].


Meacham S et al. Nutritional assessments for cancer patients can be improved when mineral concentrations in dietary supplements are considered during medical nutrition therapy consultations. J Nutr Nov 132.11 (2002): 3547S.


Schmolz MW, Sacher F, Aicher B. The synthesis of Rantes, G-CSF, IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL-12 and IL-13 in human whole-blood cultures is modulated by an extract from Eleutherococcus senticosus L. roots. Phytother Res 15.3 (2001): 268-70.


Wagner H et al. Immunostimulant action of polysaccharides (heteroglycans) from higher plants: Preliminary communication. Arzneimittelforschung 34.6 (1984): 659-61 [in German].


Globe artichoke

Historical note  Artichoke has a long history of use as a vegetable delicacy and medicinal agent, and its cultivation in Europe dates back to ancient Greece and Rome. Traditional use of artichoke has always pertained to the liver where it is considered to increase bile flow and act as a protective agent against various toxins. As such, it has been used for jaundice, dyspepsia, nausea, gout, pruritis and urinary stones. It is still a popular medicine in Europe today.

COMMON NAME
Artichoke

OTHER NAMES
Alcachofa, artichaut, alcaucil, carciofo, cynara

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Cynara scolymus L. (family [Compositae] Asteraceae)

PLANT PART USED
Leaf

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Key constituents of the leaf include phenolic acids, mainly caffeic acid derivatives (e.g. chlorogenic acid), sesquiterpenes, lactones (e.g. cynaropicrin) and flavonoids (e.g. cynaroside, luteolin derivatives), phytosterols, inulin and free luteolin.

MAIN ACTIONS
The main pharmacologically active constituents are thought to be the phenolic acids and flavonoids.

ANTIOXIDANT
Artichoke leaf extract exerts antioxidant effects, according to in vitro tests (Speroni et al 2003).

HEPATOPROTECTIVE
Improved hepatic regeneration, improved hepatic blood flow, increased hepatocyte counts, increased hepatic RNA concentrations and a stimulation of hepatic cyto genesis have been associated with artichoke extract in animal studies (Ursapharm Arzneimittel 1998).
Tests with primary hepatocyte cultures suggest that artichoke extracts have marked antioxidative and hepatoprotective potential (Gebhardt 1997).

**CHOLERETIC AND CHOLAGOGUE**
A significant increase in bile flow has been demonstrated in studies using isolated perfused rat liver in vivo after acute treatment, as well as after repeated administration (Saenz et al 2002). Choleretic activity has also been reported in a double-blind placebo controlled study, with maximal effects on mean bile secretion observed 60 minutes after a single dose (Kirchhoff et al 1994).

A study that evaluated the effects of four extracts and phenolic content on bile flow and liver protection demonstrated that the extract with the highest concentration of phenolic derivatives exerted the strongest effect (Speroni et al 2003).

One study determined that treatment does not produce changes to the liver enzymes gamma-GT, AST, ALT or glutamic dehydrogenase (Pittler et al 2002).

**DIURETIC**
Artichoke administration stimulated urine excretion in animal studies (Ursapharm Arzneimittel 1998).

**LIPID-LOWERING**
Artichoke leaf extract inhibited cholesterol biosynthesis in primary cultured rat hepatocytes (Gebhardt 1998) and indirect modulation of hydroxymethylglutaryl-CoA-reductase activity is the most likely inhibitory mechanism. When several known constituents were screened for activity, cynaroside, and particularly its aglycone luteolin, were mainly responsible for the effect. These results have been confirmed recently (Gebhardt 2002).

**OTHER ACTIONS**
Artichoke administration had beneficial effects on lowering blood glucose levels in alloxan-treated rabbits (Ursapharm Arzneimittel 1998). One study using artichoke leaf juice showed it improved endothelial reactivity, most likely by its antioxidant constituents (Lupattelli et al 2004). According to German commission E, human studies have confirmed carminative, spasmolytic and anti-emetic actions (Blumenthal et al 2000).

### Clinical note — Inulin: a natural prebiotic
Inulin is a plant-derived carbohydrate that is not digested or absorbed in the small intestine, but is fermented in the colon by beneficial bacteria. It functions as a prebiotic, stimulating growth of bifidobacteria in the intestine and has been associated with enhanced function of the gastrointestinal system and immune response.
system (Lopez-Molina et al 2005). Increasing levels of beneficial bacteria, such as bifidobacteria, allows them to ‘out compete’ potentially detrimental organisms and improve the health of the host. Inulin also increases calcium and magnesium absorption, influences blood glucose levels and reduces the levels of cholesterol and serum lipids. Globe artichoke contains 3% of fresh-weight inulin and smaller amounts are found in the leaves.

**CLINICAL USE**

**HYPERLIPIDAEMIA**

Data are available from both controlled and uncontrolled studies that have investigated the effects of artichoke leaf extract in hyperlipidemia. Most studies use Hepar SL forte® or Valverde Artichoke bei Verdauungsbeschwerden (artichoke dry extract) containing 450 g of herbal extract as a coated tablet.

Data from five uncontrolled studies and case series suggests that artichoke leaf extract and cynarin have lipid-lowering effects and a possible role as adjunctive therapy in hyperlipidaemia (Ulbricht & Basch 2005).

A Cochrane systematic review that analysed the results of two controlled studies concluded that artichoke leaf extract appears to have a modest positive effect on the levels of total cholesterol and LDL; however, there is insufficient evidence to recommend it as a treatment option for hypercholesterolaemia and trials with larger samples sizes are still required (Pittler et al 2002).

One of the studies was a randomised, placebo-controlled, double-blind, multicentre trial involving 143 subjects with total cholesterol levels >7.3 mmol/L (>280 g/dL) (Englisch et al 2000). A dose of 1800 mg artichoke leaf extract was administered daily for 6 weeks. Active treatment resulted in 18.5% decrease in serum cholesterol compared with 8.6% for placebo, a result that was significant. No differences were observed between the groups for blood levels of either HDL or triglycerides. Although dietary habits were recorded, the food intake was not strictly controlled in the entire patient sample. The second randomised, placebo-controlled, double-blind study involved 44 healthy volunteers and compared 1920 mg artichoke extract daily to placebo over a 12-week treatment period. No significant effects on serum cholesterol levels were observed in this study; however, subgroup analyses suggested that patients with higher initial total cholesterol levels experienced a significant reduction in total cholesterol levels compared to placebo.

ES COP approves the use of artichoke leaf as an adjunct to a low-fat diet in the treatment of mild to moderate hyperlipidaemia (ESCOP 2003).
**DYSPEPSIA**

Artichoke leaf extract has been studied as a bile secretion stimulant and primarily recommended in this way for non-ulcer dyspepsia.

A double-blind, randomised, placebo controlled trial of 247 patients with functional dyspepsia (persistent or recurrent pain or discomfort in the upper abdomen with one or more of the following symptoms: early satiety, postprandial fullness, bloating, and nausea) found that treatment with two capsules of 320 mg artichoke leaf extract LI 220 (HeparSL(R) forte) taken three times daily significantly improved overall symptoms over the 6 weeks compared with the placebo (Holtmann et al 2003). Additionally, active treatment significantly improved global QOL scores compared with the placebo.

A randomised, open study of 454 subjects investigated the efficacy of a low-dose artichoke leaf extract (320 mg or 640 mg daily) on amelioration of dyspeptic symptoms and improvement of QOL (Marakis et al 2002). Both doses achieved a significant reduction of all dyspeptic symptoms, with an average reduction of 40% in global dyspepsia score. Although no differences in primary outcome measures were reported between the two treatment groups, the higher dosage resulted in greater improvements in anxiety.

An uncontrolled study of 553 patients with non-specific digestive disorders (dyspeptic discomforts, functional biliary colic, and severe constipation) experienced a significant reduction of symptoms after 6 weeks of treatment with artichoke extract. Symptoms improved by an average of 70.5%, with strongest effects on vomiting (88.3%), nausea (82.4%), abdominal pain (76.2%), loss of appetite (72.3%), constipation (71.0%), flatulence (68.2%), and fat intolerance (58.8%). In 85% of patients the global therapeutic efficacy of artichoke extract was judged by the physicians as excellent or good. (Fintelmann 1996).

The German Commission E approves artichoke leaf and preparations made from artichoke leaf as a choleric agent for dyspeptic problems (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**IRRITABLE BOWEL SYNDROME**

Artichoke leaf extract appears to have substantial benefits in IBS, according to the available evidence; however, large controlled studies are required to confirm these observations.

A subgroup of patients with IBS symptoms was identified from a sample of subjects with dyspeptic syndrome who were being monitored for 6 weeks (Walker et al 2001). Analysis of the data revealed 96% of patients rated artichoke leaf extract as better than or at least equal to previous therapies administered for their symptoms. Physicians also provided favourable reports on its effects in these patients.
More recently, a study of 208 adults with IBS observed before and after a 2-month intervention period of changes in symptoms (Budy et al 2004). A significant reduction in the incidence of IBS by 26.4% and a significant shift in self-reported usual bowel pattern toward ‘normal’ were also reported after treatment. The Nepean Dyspepsia Index (NDI) total symptom score significantly decreased by 41% after treatment and a significant 20% improvement in the NDI total QOL score.

**REDUCING ALCOHOL-INDUCED HANGOVER**
Artichoke extract does not prevent the signs and symptoms of alcohol-induced hangover in healthy adults according to a small randomised, double-blind, crossover trial (Pittler et al 2003). The dose used in the study was 960 mg taken immediately before and after consuming alcohol for 2 days.

**OTHER USES**
Traditional uses include treatment for jaundice, dyspepsia, nausea, gout, pruritis and urinary stones. Due to its choleretic effect, it has also been used to improve digestion of fats.

**DOSAGE RANGE**
- 1:2 liquid extract: 3–8 mL/day in divided doses.
- 6 g daily of dried cut leaves, pressed juice of the fresh plant or equivalent.

**ACCORDING TO CLINICAL STUDIES**
- Hyperlipidaemia: 4–9 g/day of dried leaves or 1800 mg/day artichoke leaf extract.
- Dyspepsia: artichoke leaf extract 640 mg/day.
- IBS: artichoke leaf extract 640 mg/day.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
Studies with hyperlipidaemic subjects indicate that globe artichoke leaf extract is generally well tolerated. Mild symptoms of flatulence, hunger and weakness were reported in approximately 1% of subjects when the fresh plant was used (Fintelmann 1996). Contact dermatitis is possible with the fresh plant and urticaria–angio-oedema has been reported in one case of ingestion of raw and boiled herb (Mills & Bone 2005).

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**
None known.

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**
Not to be used by people with known allergy to globe artichoke or other members of the Asteraceae/Compositae family of plants.

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
Herbs with choleretic and cholangogue activity should be used with caution by people with bile duct obstruction (Blumenthal et al 2000), acute or severe hepatocellular disease (e.g. cirrhosis), septic cholecystitis, intestinal spasm or ileus, liver cancer or with unconjugated hyperbilirubinaemia (Mills & Bone 2005).

PREGNANCY USE
Safety has not been scientifically established for the leaf extract.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Artichoke leaf extract has antioxidant, choleretic, diuretic and lipid-lowering activity and possibly hepatoprotective, anti-emetic and spasmolytic effects.
- According to a Cochrane review of two controlled studies, the effect on lipids is modest and further large scale trials are required. ESCOP recommends that a low-fat diet should also be undertaken when artichoke leaf extract is used for mild to moderate hyperlipidaemia.
- Artichoke leaf extract is an effective symptomatic treatment for non-ulcer dyspepsia and shows promise for IBS.
- The extract is well tolerated with few side-effects, but should not be used by people with known allergy to globe artichoke or other members of the Asteraceae/Compositae family of plants and used with caution in bile duct obstruction, acute or severe hepatocellular disease (e.g. cirrhosis), septic cholecystitis, intestinal spasm or ileus, liver cancer or people with unconjugated hyperbilirubinaemia.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this herb do for me?
Artichoke leaf extract effectively reduces symptoms in non-ulcer dyspepsia and possibly IBS. It may also modestly reduce cholesterol levels and improve digestion, flatulence and nausea.

When will it start to work?
Symptomatic relief in dyspepsia and IBS appear after 2–3 weeks of treatment; however, further improvements are possible with longer term use. A reduction in cholesterol may take 4–6 weeks and is best achieved when combined with a low-fat diet.

Are there any safety issues?
The extract is well tolerated with few side-effects, but should not be used by people with known allergy to globe artichoke or other members of the Asteraceae/Compositae family of plants and used with caution in bile duct obstruction, acute or severe hepatocellular disease (e.g. cirrhosis), septic cholecystitis,
intestinal spasm or ileus, liver cancer or people with unconjugated hyperbilirubinaemia.

REFERENCES
Glucosamine

OTHER NAMES
D-Glucosamine, amino monosaccharide, glucosamine sulfate, glucosamine hydrochloride, glucosamine hydroiodide, N-acetyl D-glucosamine, 2-amino-2-deoxy-beta-D-glucopyranose

BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS
Glucosamine is a naturally occurring substance that is required for the production of proteoglycans, mucopolysaccharides and hyaluronic acid, substances that make up joint tissue, such as articular cartilage, tendons and synovial fluid. It is also a component of blood vessels, heart valves and mucus secretions (Kelly 1998).

Glucosamine sulfate is 90% absorbed after oral administration. The bioavailability is approximately 20% after first-pass metabolism (Aghazadeh-Habashi et al 2002). Unbound glucosamine is concentrated in the articular cartilage and the elimination half-life is 70 hours, with excretion as CO₂ in expired air, as well as by the kidneys and in faeces (Setnikar 1993). A study of the pharmacokinetics of glucosamine sulfate in humans found that it is rapidly absorbed after oral administration and its elimination half-life was tentatively estimated to average 15 hours, therefore supporting once-daily dosing (Persiani et al 2005). Twice daily dosing with 500 mg of a time-release formula has also been shown to provide comparable serum levels after 24 hours as three divided doses of 500 mg (Basak et al 2004).

Another study of the pharmacokinetics of glucosamine hydrochloride in horses found that the levels attained in serum and synovial fluid were 500-fold lower than those reported to modify chondrocyte anabolic and catabolic activities in tissue and cell culture experiments, leading to the suggestion that the therapeutic benefit of dietary glucosamine may be secondary to its effects on non-articular tissues, such as the intestinal lining, liver, or kidney because these tissues are exposed to much higher levels (Laverty et al 2005).

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
2-amino-2-deoxy-D-glucose

FOOD SOURCES
Glucosamine is present in chitin from the shells of prawns and other crustaceans. As a supplement, glucosamine is derived from marine exoskeletons or produced synthetically and is available in salt forms, including glucosamine sulfate, glucosamine
hydrochloride, glucosamine hydroiodide and N-acetyl glucosamine. Glucosamine salts are likely to be completely ionised in the stomach, although clinical equivalence of the different salts has not been established. The purity and content of products has been questioned in the USA, where glucosamine is regarded as a food supplement and its quality is unregulated (Consumer-labs).

**MAIN ACTIONS**

**CHONDROPROTECTIVE EFFECT**

Glucosamine is a primary substrate and stimulant of proteoglycan biosynthesis and inhibits the degradation of proteoglycans. Glucosamine may also stimulate synovial production of hyaluronic acid, a compound responsible for the lubricating and shock-absorbing properties of synovial fluid (McCarty 1998, McCarty et al 2000). Glucosamine has been found to cause a statistically significant stimulation of proteoglycan production by chondrocytes from human osteoarthritic cartilage culture (Bassleer et al 1998). Glucosamine sulfate has been also found to modify cultured osteoarthritis chondrocyte metabolism by acting on protein kinase C, cellular phospholipase A2, protein synthesis and possibly collagenase activation (Piperno et al 2000). N-acetyl glucosamine also has been found to produce proliferation of matured cartilaginous tissues and matured cartilage substrate in experimentally produced cartilaginous injuries in rabbits (Tamai et al 2003), and oral administration of glucosamine has been shown to have limited site-specific, partial disease-modifying effect in an animal model of OA (Tiraloche et al 2005). The results of one in-vitro study suggest that the experimental effects of glucosamine are sensitive to the experimental model, the doses and length of treatment and that in the model using bovine chondrocytes pharmacological doses of glucosamine induced a broad impairment in the metabolic activity of the chondrocytes, leading to cell death (de Mattei et al 2002).

Glucosamine was found to have no effect on type 2 collagen fragment levels in serum or urine in a 6-month RCT of 137 subjects with OA of the knee (Cibere et al 2005) and exogenous glucosamine was found not to stimulate chondroitin sulfate synthesis by human chondrocytes in vitro. Furthermore these cells were found to have the capacity to form amounts of glucosamine from glucose far in excess of that provided by levels achievable through oral administration (Mroz & Silbert 2004).

**ANTI-INFLAMMATORY**

It has been suggested that glucosamine may also have an anti-inflammatory action (Hua et al 2002). Glucosamine, but not N-acetyl glucosamine, inhibited human neutrophil functions such as superoxide generation, phagocytosis, granule enzyme

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
release and chemotaxis in vitro (Hua et al 2002), and it has been shown that glucosamine and N-acetyl glucosamine both inhibit IL-1-beta- and TNF-alpha-induced NO production in normal human articular chondrocytes (Shikhman et al 2001). Glucosamine has been also found to restore proteoglycan synthesis and prevent the production of inflammatory mediators induced by the cytokine IL-1-beta in rat-articular chondrocytes in vitro (Gouze et al 2001). Furthermore, glucosamine has been found to suppress PGE\textsubscript{2} production and partly suppress NO production in chondrocytes in vitro (Mello et al 2004, Nakamura et al 2004), as well as suppressing the production of matrix metalloproteases in normal chondrocytes and synoviocytes (Nakamura et al 2004).

**GLUCOSE METABOLISM**

Preliminary evidence from rats suggests that glucosamine may cause changes in glucose metabolism and insulin secretion similar to those seen in type 2 diabetes in both rats (Balkan & Dunning 1994, Giaccari et al 1995, Lippiello et al 2000, Shankar et al 1998) and humans (Monauni et al 2000); however, these findings have been disputed (Echard et al 2001) and to date clinical studies in humans have not demonstrated an effect on glucose metabolism (Anderson et al 2005, Tannis et al 2004).

**GASTROINTESTINAL PROTECTION**

Glycoproteins are important in protecting the bowel mucosa from damage, and the breakdown of glycosaminoglycans is an important consequence of inflammation of mucosal surfaces (Salvatore et al 2000). Abnormalities in colonic glycoprotein synthesis have been implicated in the pathogenesis of ulcerative colitis and Crohn’s disease (Burton & Anderson 1983, Winslet et al 1994).

**OTHER ACTIONS**

Glucosamine might have some activity against HIV. Preliminary evidence suggests that it inhibits intracellular viral movement and blocks viral replication (Bagasra et al 1991). Recent studies have shown that glucosamine has immunosuppressive properties and can prolong graft survival in mice (Ma et al 2002). Oral, intraperitoneal and intravenous glucosamine has been shown to also significantly reduce CNS inflammation and demyelination in an animal model of multiple sclerosis (Zhang et al 2005).
CLINICAL USE
OSTEOARTHRITIS

There is strong evidence to suggest that glucosamine is effective in treating the symptoms of OA, as well as being effective in slowing the disease progression. A Cochrane review of 16 RCTs has concluded that ‘there is good evidence that glucosamine is both effective and safe in treating osteoarthritis’ and that ‘glucosamine therapy may indeed represent a significant breakthrough in the pharmacological management of osteoarthritis’ (Towheed et al 2003). Although most studies have been of OA of the knee, there is some clinical evidence that it is also active against OA of the spine (Giacovelli 1993) and temporomandibular joint (Shankland 1998).

The first placebo-controlled clinical trials investigating glucosamine in OA were published in the early 1980s. Drovanti et al showed that a dose of 1500 mg glucosamine sulfate significantly reduced symptoms of OA, almost twice as effectively and twice as fast as placebo (Drovanti et al 1980). Perhaps the most exciting results were found when electron microscopy analysis of cartilage showed that those taking glucosamine sulfate had cartilage more similar to healthy joints than the placebo group. Based on this finding, researchers suggested that glucosamine sulfate had not only provided symptom relief but also had the potential to induce rebuilding of the damaged cartilage.

Since that time, multiple human clinical trials lasting from a few weeks (Crolle & D’Este 1980, Drovanti et al 1980, Lopes Vaz 1982, McAlindon 2001, Pujalte et al 1980, Qiu et al 1998) to 3 years (Pavelka et al 2002, Reginster et al 2001), as well as systematic reviews (Poolsup et al 2005, Towheed et al 2003, 2006) and meta-analyses (McAlindon et al 2000, Richy et al 2003) have shown that glucosamine sulfate (1500 mg/day) can significantly improve symptoms of pain and functionality measures in patients with OA of the knee, with side-effects comparable to those of placebo. There is also evidence from two long-term (3-year) studies (Pavelka et al 2002, Reginster et al 2000) and one year-long study of glucosamine and chondroitin (Rai et al 2004) that in addition to providing symptomatic relief, glucosamine also slows disease progression, as evidenced by a reduction in joint space narrowing.

Reginster et al (2000) compared the effects of 1500 mg glucosamine sulfate with placebo daily over 3 years in 212 patients aged over 50 years with primary knee OA. This was heralded as a landmark study at the time because it not only detected modest symptom-relieving effects, but was the first to identify significant joint-preserving activity with long-term use. Two years later, Pavelka et al confirmed these results in another randomised double-blind study that involved 202 patients with
knee OA (Pavelka et al 2002) and once again observed that long-term treatment with glucosamine sulfate retarded disease progression. A post hoc analysis of these studies found that the disease-modifying effect was evident in 319 post menopausal women (Bruyere et al 2004) and another subanalysis found that patients with less severe radiographic knee OA, who are likely to experience the most dramatic disease progression, may be particularly responsive to treatment with glucosamine (Bruyere et al 2003).

Not all clinical trials of glucosamine for OA have produced positive results. A 12-week, double-blind, randomised placebo-controlled trial of glucosamine performed over the internet involving 205 subjects with symptomatic knee OA found no difference in pain, stiffness, analgesic use or physical function between the glucosamine and placebo groups (McAlindon et al 2004). In another 6-month randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled study of glucosamine sulfate in knee OA there was no significant difference in the time to disease flare, symptoms or analgesic medication use between the glucosamine and placebo groups (Cibere et al 2004). A further controlled trial of 80 OA patients using glucosamine sulfate over 6 months found no difference between the glucosamine group and placebo for symptoms, except for a small but significant difference in knee flexion, which was suggested to be caused by measurement error (Hughes & Carr 2002).

Most clinical trials have used a specific patented oral formulation of glucosamine sulfate from Rottapharm, Italy, which is available as a prescription medicine in Europe. Although other forms of glucosamine are used in practice, there is significantly more evidence supporting the use of glucosamine sulfate than others (Reginster et al 2005). An updated Cochrane review that looked at 20 studies involving a total of 2570 patients found that studies using a non-Rottapharm preparation failed to show benefit in pain and function, whereas studies of the Rottapharm preparation found glucosamine to be superior to placebo in the treatment of pain and functional impairment (Towheed et al 2006).

In a multicentre, randomised, parallel-controlled clinical trial of 142 patients comparing glucosamine sulfate and glucosamine hydrochloride, both agents were found to be equally effective in producing improvement in symptoms of OA of the knee after 4 weeks, with a remnant therapeutic effect also occurring in both groups 2 weeks after discontinuing treatment. The glucosamine sulfate group experienced significantly more adverse events, mainly mild stomach discomfort and constipation (Qiu et al 2005).

**Combination therapy** Chondroitin sulfate and glucosamine are frequently marketed together in combination products and some studies suggest that this
combination is effective in treating symptoms (Das & Hammad 2000, Leffler et al 1999, McAlindon et al 2000, Nguyen et al 2001) and reducing joint space narrowing (Rai et al 2004). This is supported by an in vitro study of horse cartilage that found that a combination of glucosamine and chondroitin was more effective than either product alone in preventing articular cartilage glycosaminoglycan degradation (Dechant et al 2005). Further support for combination therapy comes from an in vivo study of rats, which found that combined treatment with chondroitin and glucosamine prevented the development of cartilage damage and was associated with a reduction in IL-1-beta and matrix metalloprotease-9 synthesis (Chou et al 2005).

The National Institutes of Health (NIH) recently spent US$14 million on a Glucosamine Chondroitin Arthritis Intervention Trial (GAIT), a 24-week, placebo-controlled, parallel, double-blind, five-arm trial involving 1583 patients that aimed to answer the question as to the efficacy of glucosamine hydrochloride and chondroitin by comparing glucosamine alone, glucosamine plus chondroitin, chondroitin alone, placebo and the COX-2 inhibitor celecoxib (Clegg et al 2006, NIH 2002). The results of this study provide good evidence that glucosamine and chondroitin are more effective when given in combination than when either substance is given alone and that combined treatment with glucosamine and chondroitin is more effective than celecoxib for treating moderate to severe, but not mild, arthritis. The design of the GAIT trial can be criticised, however, for the fact that it included a large number of people with very mild disease who were more likely to be susceptible to placebo (as evidenced by the very high (60%) placebo response). Furthermore, the criteria for effectiveness as the primary outcome measure was set very high (20% reduction in WOMAC pain score) and that when the internationally accepted OMERACT-OARSI response criteria for judging clinical trials of OA was used, the combined treatment was significantly better than placebo for patients with either mild or moderate to severe disease (Clegg et al 2006).

Although glucosamine has not been shown to have direct analgesic activity, certain combinations with non-opioid analgesics have demonstrated synergistic (e.g. ibuprofen and ketoprofen), additive (e.g. diclofenac, indomethacin, naproxen and piroxicam), or subadditive (e.g. aspirin and acetaminophen) antinociceptive interactions in the mouse abdominal irritant test, suggesting that combinations of certain ratios of glucosamine and specific NSAIDs might enhance pain relief or provide adequate pain relief with lower doses of NSAIDs (Tallarida et al 2003).

In a 12-week, randomised, placebo-controlled trial of glucosamine and methylsulfonylmethane involving 118 patients, combined therapy was found to
produce a greater and more rapid reduction in pain, swelling and loss of function than either agent alone (Usha & Naidu 2004).

In an in-vivo study of arthritic rats the combination of glucosamine and essence of chicken was more effective in reducing the histopathological severity of arthritis than glucosamine alone (Tsi et al 2003).

A topical preparation containing glucosamine with chondroitin and camphor has been shown to reduce pain from OA of the knee in one RCT (Cohen et al 2003).

Comparisons with NSAIDs There are many studies suggesting that glucosamine is at least as effective as NSAIDs (e.g. 1200 mg ibuprofen) in treating the symptoms of OA (Muller-Fassbender et al 1994, Reichelt et al 1994, Rovati 1992, Ruane & Griffiths 2002), although glucosamine has a slower onset of action, taking 2–3 weeks to establish an effect. The recent GAIT trial (see earlier) found that the combination of glucosamine and chondroitin was more effective than celecoxib in treating moderate to severe OA, whereas glucosamine alone was not (Clegg et al 2006).

OTHER USES

INFLAMMATORY BOWEL DISEASE
It is suggested that glucosamine has an anti-inflammatory action that may include an increased production of heparan sulfate proteoglycans by the vascular endothelium, thereby improving the endothelium’s barrier function (McCarty 1998b). It is further suggested that the step in glycoprotein synthesis involving the amino sugar is relatively deficient in patients with inflammatory bowel disease and this could reduce the synthesis of the glycoprotein cover that protects the mucosa from damage by bowel contents (Burton & Anderson 1983, Winslet et al 1994). In a pilot study, N-acetyl glucosamine proved beneficial in children with chronic inflammatory bowel disease (Salvatore et al 2000).

DOSAGE RANGE

- 1500 mg glucosamine/day (500 mg three times daily).
- A 2–3 month trial is generally used to determine whether it is effective for an individual patient.
- Intramuscular glucosamine sulfate: 400 or 800 mg three times/week (Reichelt et al 1994) for 4–6 weeks or longer if required.
- Glucosamine sulfate, hydrochloride, hydroiodide and N-acetyl forms are available. Most research has been done on the sulfate forms and it is unclear as to the difference between these formulations. Topical, intravenous, intramuscular and intra-articular forms are also available in some countries.
ADVERSE REACTIONS
Glucosamine has been used safely in multiple clinical trials lasting from 4 weeks to 3 years with minimal or no adverse effects (Pavelka et al 2002, Pujalte et al 1980, Lopes Vaz 1982, Reginster et al 2001) and a recent Cochrane systematic review suggests that glucosamine is as safe as placebo (Towheed et al 2006). Short-term adverse effects may include mild gastrointestinal problems, drowsiness, skin reactions and headache (Barclay et al 1998). A critical review of clinical trial data for 3063 human subjects suggests that glucosamine does not affect glucose metabolism, that there are no adverse effects of oral glucosamine administration on blood, urine or faecal parameters and that side-effects were significantly less common with glucosamine than with placebo or NSAIDs (Anderson et al 2005).

In a placebo-controlled, double-blinded, randomised clinical trial of 39 patients, glucosamine supplementation was found to have no clinically significant effect on glycaemic control in patients with type 2 diabetes over 12 weeks, and another 12-week randomised double-blind study found that glucosamine sulfate supplementation did not cause glucose intolerance, with no alterations in serum insulin or plasma glucose levels in 19 healthy subjects (Tannis et al 2004).

There is one case report of asthma being exacerbated by glucosamine–chondroitin supplementation (Talia & Cardone 2002).

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
Controlled studies are not available. Therefore, interactions are based on evidence of activity and are largely theoretical and speculative.

NON-STEROIDAL ANTI-INFLAMMATORY DRUGS
Glucosamine may theoretically enhance the anti-inflammatory activity of NSAIDs — drug dosage may require modification after several weeks’ glucosamine use as this is potentially a beneficial combination.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Although there is a theoretical link between glucosamine and insulin resistance, this has not been clearly demonstrated in human trials. Nevertheless, diabetics using glucosamine should have their blood sugar levels checked regularly.

Glucosamine is made from shellfish and, although it is not extracted from the protein component, it should be used with caution in patients with shellfish allergy.

PREGNANCY USE
Insufficient reliable information is available to advise on safety in pregnancy.
PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING

- Glucosamine is a naturally occurring building block of joint tissue and cartilage.
- Glucosamine is considered effective in treating the pain and disability of OA and it may act to slow the progression of the disease, although several weeks are required before a clinical effect is evident.
- It is considered extremely safe and may reduce the need for NSAIDs (which can have serious side-effects).
- Although chondroitin is sometimes used in conjunction with glucosamine, there is no conclusive evidence that the combination has greater benefit than either substance alone.
- People with severe shellfish allergy should be advised to use a form that is not derived from shellfish.
- Patients with diabetes should monitor their blood glucose levels while taking glucosamine.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What will this supplement do for me?
Multiple scientific studies have shown that glucosamine sulfate reduces symptoms of OA and may also reduce further progression of the condition. Some people find that they do not require NSAIDs as often when taking it.

When will it start to work?
Symptom relief generally takes 2–3 weeks to establish, but joint protection effects occur only with long-term use of several years.

Are there any safety issues?
Although considered very safe for the general population, it should be used with caution in people with severe shellfish allergies, and diabetics are advised to monitor their blood glucose levels during use.

REFERENCES


Consumer-labs 2; Product Review: Glucosamine and chondroitin.


Tamai Y et al. Enhanced healing of cartilaginous injuries by N-acetyl-glucosamine and glucuronic acid.
Historical note  Glutamine and glutamate were originally described in the mid 19th century and their functions began to be examined in the early 20th century. The role of glutamine in the immune system and gastrointestinal tract has been investigated since the 1980s.

BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS

L-glutamine (L-Gln) is a conditionally essential amino acid found in all life forms and the most abundant amino acid in the human body. During conditions of metabolic stress characterised by catabolism and negative nitrogen balance such as trauma (including surgical trauma), prolonged stress, glucocorticoid use, excessive exercise, starvation, infection, sepsis, cancer and severe burns the body is unable to synthesis L-Gln in sufficient quantities to meet biological needs and it becomes essential to have an exogenous intake (Miller 1999, PDRHealth 2006a).

L-glutamine is absorbed from the lumen of the small intestine by active transport (Meng et al 2003) and is then transported to the liver via the portal circulation and enters systemic circulation where it is distributed to various tissues and transported into cells via an active process. Elimination occurs via glomerular filtration and it is almost completely reabsorbed by the renal tubules. Some metabolism of L-Gln takes place in the enterocytes and hepatocytes and it is involved in various metabolic activities, including the synthesis of L-glutamate (catalysed by glutaminase), proteins, glutathione, pyrimidine and purine nucleotides and amino sugars. L-glutamate is converted to L-glutamine by glutamine synthase in the presence of ammonia, ATP and magnesium or manganese.

L-glutamine is predominantly synthesised and stored in skeletal muscles where it comprises around 60% of the free amino acids and makes up 4–5% of muscle protein. In times of metabolic stress, glutamine is released into circulation and transported to tissues in need (Kohlmeier 2003, Miller 1999, PDRHealth 2006a).

Unfortunately L-Gln is not very soluble or stable in solution, especially upon heating for sterilisation, and as a result, until recently, was not included in TPN. The more soluble and stable glutamine dipeptides are now commonly used as the delivery forms in TPN solutions and some nutritional supplements (Kohlmeier 2003, PDRHealth 2000b).
**COMMON FORMS AVAILABLE**

The terms L-glutamine and glutamine are often used interchangeably. L-glutamine is the amide form of L-glutamic acid and contains 15.7% nitrogen (Kohlmeier 2003). It is also known as 2-aminoglutaramic acid, levoglutamido, (S)-2,5-diamino-5-oxopentaenoic acid and glutamic acid 5-amide.

Two synthetic glutamine dipeptides that may be used in TPN are L-alanyl-L-glutamine (Ala-Gln) and glycyI-L-glutamine (Gly-Gln). D-glutamine, the stereoisomer of L-glutamine, has no known biological activity (Kohlmeier 2003, PDRHealth 2006b).

Since the late 1960s L-Gln has been manufactured for pharmaceutical use with fermentation broth. The manufacture of high-quality, low-cost L-Gln requires a strain of microorganism with good production efficiency and minimum by-products. Impurities can then be removed from the broth using a nanofiltration membrane to obtain a fine crystalline powder (Kusumoto 2001, Li et al 2003).

**FOOD SOURCES**

Typical dietary intake of L-Gln is 5–10 g/day (Miller 1999). Sources include animal and plant proteins, vegetable juices (especially cabbage), eggs, wheat, soybeans and fermented foods, such as miso and yoghurt (Kohlmeier 2003, PDRHealth 2006a).

**DEFICIENCY SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS**

Although traditionally considered a nonessential amino acid, L-Gln is now considered ‘conditionally essential’ during periods of metabolic stress characterised by catabolism and negative nitrogen balance. Critical illness, stress, and injury can lead to a significant decrease in plasma levels of L-Gln, which if severe can increase the risk of mortality (Boelens et al 2001, Wischmeyer 2003).

Prolonged protein malnutrition may cause growth inhibition, muscle wasting and organ damage (Kohlmeier 2003). In the absence of sufficient plasma glutamine the body will break down skeletal muscle stores, and gut integrity (gut mucosal barrier function) and immunity will be compromised. Because L-Gln is utilised during exercise a more recent phenomenon of deficiency has been explored and glutamine depletion has been linked with ‘overtraining syndrome’.

**MAIN ACTIONS**

L-glutamine has many important biological functions within the human body. It is an important fuel for the intestinal mucosal cells, hepatocytes and rapidly proliferating cells of the immune system, assists in the regulation of acid balance thus preventing acidosis, acts as a nitrogen shuttle protecting the body from high levels of ammonia, and is involved in the synthesis of amino acids (including L-glutamate), GABA, glutathione (an important antioxidant), purine and pyrimidine...

**GASTROINTESTINAL PROTECTION/REPAIR**

According to in vitro and in vivo research, L-Gln aids in the proliferation and repair of intestinal cells (Chun et al 1997, Rhoads et al 1997, Scheppach et al 1996) and is the preferred respiratory fuel for enterocytes (and also utilised by colonocytes) (Miller 1999). It is thus vital for maintaining the integrity of the intestinal lining and preventing the translocation of microbes and endotoxins into the body. In addition, L-Gln helps to maintain secretory IgA, which functions primarily by preventing the attachment of bacteria to mucosal cells (PDRHealth 2006a, Yu et al 1996).

According to evidence from animal studies it may also assist in preventing atrophy following colostomy (Paulo 2002) and irradiation (Diestel et al 2005), and intestinal injury by inhibiting intestinal cytokine release (Akisu et al 2003). L-glutamine depletion induces apoptosis by triggering intercellular events that lead to cell death (Paquette et al 2005), resulting in altered epithelial barrier competence (increased intestinal permeability), bacterial translocation, and increased mortality. Under experimental conditions, L-Gln may assist in maintaining intestinal barrier function by increasing epithelial resistance to apoptotic injury, reducing oxidative damage, attenuating programmed cell death and promoting re-epithelialisation (Masuko 2002, Ropeleski et al 2005, Scheppach et al 1996) and may thus reduce bacterial and endotoxin translocation (Chun et al 1997).

**IMMUNOMODULATION**

L-glutamine has demonstrated immunomodulatory activity in animal models of infection and trauma, as well as trauma in humans. L-glutamine acts as the preferred respiratory fuel for lymphocytes, is essential for cell proliferation, and can enhance the function of stimulated immune cells.

Extracellular glutamine concentration affects lymphocyte, IL-2 and IFN-gamma proliferation, cytokine production, phagocytic and secretory macrophage activities and neutrophil bacterial killing (Miller 1999, Newsholme 2001, PDRHealth 2006a). In humans, L-Gln may enhance both phagocytosis and reactive oxygen intermediate production by neutrophils (Furukawa et al 2000) and support the restoration of type-1 T-lymphocyte responsiveness following trauma (Boelens et al 2004). In a randomised trial there was a reduced frequency of pneumonia, sepsis and bacteraemia in
patients with multiple trauma who received glutamine-supplemented enteral nutrition (Houdijk et al 1998).

In addition, effects on the gastrointestinal tract may contribute significantly to immune defence by maintaining gut-associated lymphoid tissue and secretory IgA (preventing the attachment of bacteria to the gut mucosa) and maintaining gut integrity (thus preventing the translocation of microbes and their toxins, especially Gram-negative bacteria from the large intestine) (Miller 1999, Yu et al 1996).

**ANTIOXIDANT**
As a precursor to glutathione (together with cysteine and glycine), L-Gln can assist in ameliorating the oxidation that occurs during metabolic stress. Glutathione protects epithelial cell membranes from damage, and its depletion can negatively affect gut barrier function and result in severe degeneration of colonic and jejunal epithelial cells (Iantomasi 1994, Ziegler et al 1999). In animal studies it has also been shown to inhibit fatty acid oxidation, resulting in a reduction in body weight and alleviation of hyperglycaemia and hyperinsulinaemia in mice fed a high-fat diet (Opara et al 1996).

**ANABOLIC/ANTICATABOLIC**
As L-Gln is stored primarily in skeletal muscles and becomes conditionally essential under conditions of metabolic stress, the anticatabolic/anabolic properties of supplemented L-Gln are likely due to a sparing effect on skeletal muscle stores.

Following strenuous exercise, glutamine levels are depleted by approximately 20%, resulting in immunodepression (Castell 2003, Castell & Newsholme 1997, Rogero et al 2002). As a result supplemental L-Gln may be of benefit in athletes to prevent the deleterious effects of glutamine depletion associated with ‘over-training syndrome’. Evidence supporting a direct ergogenic effect is currently lacking.

**CARDIOPROTECTIVE**
In vitro, L-Gln has been shown to assist in the maintenance of myocardial glutamate, ATP and phosphocreatine, and prevention of lactate accumulation (Khogali et al 1998). In addition to its antioxidant properties and effects on hyperglycaemia and hyperinsulinaemia (Opara et al 1996), this may suggest a possible role as a cardioprotective agent.

**CLINICAL USE**
**DEFICIENCY: PREVENTION AND TREATMENT**
During periods of increased need, L-Gln is considered conditionally essential. Glutamine depletion can result in increased intestinal permeability, microbial translocation across the gut barrier, impaired wound healing, sepsis and multiple organ...
failure (Miller 1999). Experimental studies have proposed a number of benefits for patients with conditions that increase glutamine requirements. The suggested mechanisms include effects on pro-inflammatory cytokine expression, gut integrity, enhanced ability to mount a stress response and improved immune cell function, and studies have shown potential benefit with regard to mortality, length of hospital stay, and infection.

To date the results of studies using glutamine dipeptides in TPN have proven to be very promising in treating patients for whom enteral feeding is impossible. Benefits from studies of enteral glutamine supplementation have tended to be less pronounced but preliminary trials have demonstrated benefits in some conditions, especially at high doses (e.g. 30 g/day enterally) (Wischmeyer 2003).

**SURGERY**
In a double-blind RCT 37 patients received a TPN solution with or without synthetic alanyl-glutamine dipeptide (0.5 g/kg) for 5 days following major abdominal surgery. The results indicated improved nitrogen economy and a reduction in the length of hospital stay with a resulting reduction in costs (Mertes et al. 2000). Reduced oral pain and inflammation has been observed in patients receiving radiation and chemotherapy during bone marrow transplantation who are taking 1 g glutamine four times daily (Miller 1999).

**TRAUMA**
In a randomised trial using glutamine-enriched enteral nutrition in patients with multiple trauma there was a reduction in the incidence of pneumonia, sepsis, and bacteraemia (Houdijk et al 1998).

**BURNS**
According to animal studies, oral glutamine supplementation may reduce bacterial and endotoxin translocation after burns by maintaining secretory IgA in the intestinal mucosa (Yu et al 1996).

**INFANTS**
Very-low-birth-weight infants may be susceptible to glutamine depletion due to limited nutrition in the first weeks of life. In a double-blind randomised, placebo-controlled trial of 102 VLBW infants (gestational age <32 weeks or birth weight <1500 g) receiving enteral glutamine supplementation (0.3 g/kg/day) added to breast milk or to preterm formula between days 3 and 30 of life, glutamine supplementation resulted in a significantly lower rate of infectious morbidity (Berg et al 2005).
Experimental data has suggested that by stimulating the rate of recovery of the villi and lipid synthesising enzymes, L-Gln treatments could improve the efficacy of enteral feeding in infants recovering from bowel damage (Ahdieh et al 1998), although this was not confirmed in that study.

**STRENUOUS EXERCISE**

Following strenuous exercise glutamine levels are depleted approximately 20% resulting in immunodepression (Castell 2003, Castell & Newsholme 1997, Rogero et al 2002). The provision of glutamine after exercise has been shown to improve immune status (Castell & Newsholme 1997). In a study of 200 elite runners and rowers given a glutamine or placebo drink immediately after and again 2 hours after strenuous exercise, 151 participants returned questionnaires reporting the incidence of infection over the subsequent 7 days. The percentage of athletes reporting no infections was considerably higher in the glutamine group (81%, n = 72) compared to the placebo group (49%, n = 79, P < 0.001) (Castell et al 1996).

A trial assessing the possible ergogenic effects of glutamine supplementation (0.03 g/kg) to improve high-intensity exercise performance in trained males was unable to determine a beneficial effect (Haub et al 1998).

**Clinical note — Total parenteral nutrition**

L-glutamine is not very soluble or stable in solution, especially upon heating for sterilisation. As a result, until recently it was not included in TPN, resulting in compromised glutamine status in patients for whom reduced immune status and increased intestinal permeability could potentially increase the risk of morbid infection and mortality. The more soluble and stable synthetic glutamine dipeptides (L-alanyl-L-glutamine (Ala-Gln) and glycyrl-L-glutamine (Gly-Gln)) have now been developed as delivery forms of L-Gln for use in TPN. The dipeptide forms can also be used orally and have demonstrated a potential for greater bioavailability than glutamine alone (Macedo Rogero et al 2004).

Numerous studies have now been conducted using glutamine dipeptides in TPN and have shown benefit in preventing deterioration of gut permeability and preserving mucosal structure (Hall et al 1996, Jiang et al 1999, PDRHealth 2006a, van der Hulst et al 1993). In addition, animal studies suggest that glutamine-enriched TPN may attenuate the suppression of CYP3A and CYP2C usually associated with TPN (Shaw et al 2002).

In a meta-analysis of European and Asian RCTs in elective surgery patients, 13 studies (pooled n = 355) met inclusion criteria and demonstrated a significant
GUT REPAIR
Preliminary research on enteral (as well as parenteral) glutamine supplementation suggests promise for the use of glutamine in gut repair by: (i) protecting the intestinal mucosa from damage and promoting repair, thus improving intestinal permeability and reducing subsequent microbial and endotoxin translocation, promoting glutathione and S-IgA, and (ii) improving gut immunity. However, while there is considerable evidence for the use of glutamine in TPN (Hall et al 1996), clinical evidence using oral supplementation is less convincing. As in vitro data suggests that the colonic mucosa receives its nutrients preferentially from the luminal (not vascular) side (Roediger 1986) it has been suggested that glutamine may be more effective when delivered by the enteral route (Kouznetsova et al 1999). This has yet to be determined in clinical trials.

In a 1998 randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, 4-week trial of 24 HIV patients with abnormal intestinal permeability using 0, 4 or 8 g/day of glutamine, the authors reported a dose-dependent trend towards improved intestinal permeability and enhanced intestinal absorption with glutamine supplementation and recommended further studies to be carried out with higher doses (e.g. 20 g/day) over a longer study period (Noyer et al 1998). It is difficult to extrapolate the findings of this study to the wider community for the purpose of gut repair as there are factors involved in HIV/AIDS that may increase the biological demand for glutamine.

L-glutamine enemas, twice daily for 7 days, have been shown to reduce mucosal damage and inflammation in experimental models of colitis in rats (Kaya et al 1999); however, preliminary trials in humans have not confirmed benefit. A 4-week study on 18 children with active Crohn’s disease fed a glutamine-enriched polymeric diet (Akobeng et al 2000) and another 4-week study on 14 patients taking 7 g glutamine three times daily (Hond et al 1999a) showed similarly negative results. Longer term studies may provide more convincing results; however, it is possible that glutamine only stabilises gut barrier function under certain conditions and more research is required to elucidate these.

HIV
L-glutamine has been shown to improve glutathione levels and significantly increase lean body mass in HIV patients (Patrick 2000); however, not all studies confirm this latter effect (Huffman & Walgren 2003). Combined therapy with arginine and the

| L-GLUTAMINE | 616 |
leucine metabolite beta-hydroxy-beta-methylbutyrate has been shown to reverse lean tissue loss in HIV and cancer patients (Rathmacher et al 2004).

During initial HIV infection, the rapid turnover and proliferation of immune cells increases glutamine requirements and later the repeated episodes of infection, fever and diarrhoea may lead to further depletion. As a result the doses used in the trial mentioned above (4 g and 8 g) may have been insufficient to meet the increased requirement in such patients (Noyer et al 1998).

Highly active antiretroviral therapy may be associated with diarrhoea and other gastrointestinal side-effects. In a prospective, randomised, double-blind, crossover study, HIV-infected patients with nelfinavir-associated diarrhoea (for >1 month) received L-Gln (30 g/day) or placebo for 10 days. Glutamine supplementation resulted in a significant reduction in the severity of nelfinavir-associated diarrhoea (Huffman & Walgren 2003). A prospective 12-week trial of 35 HIV-positive men experiencing diarrhoea as a result of nelfinavir or lopinavir/ritonavir therapy was also conducted using probiotics and soluble fibre. When glutamine (30 g/day) was added to the regimen of non-responders at week 4, the response rate improved (Heiser et al 2004).

**CANCER PREVENTION**

In addition to being the major fuel source for rapidly proliferating intestinal and immune cells, L-Gln is also the main fuel source for many rapidly growing tumours and as a result tumour growth is associated with a depletion in glutamine and glutathione stores and a depression of NK cell activity (Fahr et al 1994, Miller 1999). The increased intestinal permeability, immune suppression and oxidative damage that may result may further compromise the body’s ability to deal with the tumour. While concerns exist, and are supported by in vitro evidence, that glutamine supplementation may feed the tumour, animal studies suggest that glutamine supplementation may assist in decreasing tumour growth by enhancing NK cell activity (Fahr et al 1994, Miller 1999). Animal studies have demonstrated that glutamine supplementation prevents the promotion of tumour cells in an implantable breast cancer model (Kaufmann et al 2003). The exact effects in different human tumour cell lines require further elucidation.

**Clinical note — Cancer therapy**

Side-effects of chemotherapy and radiation therapy can significantly affect the QOL of patients undergoing treatment for cancer. A number of trials have demonstrated the benefits of glutamine supplementation for improving side-effects such as oral pain and inflammation, increased gut permeability and reduced lymphocyte count.
Reduced oral pain and inflammation has been observed in patients receiving radiation and chemotherapy during bone marrow transplantation taking 1 g glutamine four times daily (Miller 1999). In another study, L-Gln (4 g twice daily, swish and swallow) was given to 12 patients receiving doxorubicin, 1 receiving etoposide, and 1 receiving ifosfamide, etoposide, and carboplatinum from day 1 of chemotherapy for 28 days or for 4 days past the resolution of any post-chemotherapy mucositis. Oral supplementation with glutamine significantly decreased the severity of chemotherapy-induced stomatitis (Skubitz & Anderson 1996).

In one report, L-Gln (10 g three times daily), given 24 hours after receiving paclitaxel, appeared to prevent the development of myalgia and arthralgia associated with treatment (PDRHealth 2006a).

In a double-blind, placebo-controlled, randomised trial, oral glutamine (18 g/day) or placebo was given to 70 chemotherapy naive patients with colorectal cancer 5 days prior to their first cycle of 5-fluorouracil (5-FU) (450 mg/m²) in association with folinic acid (FA) (100 mg/m²), which was administered intravenously for 5 days. Glutamine treatment was continued for 15 days and was shown to reduce the negative effects on intestinal absorption and permeability induced by the chemotherapy and to potentially reduce diarrhea (Daniele et al. 2001). L-glutamine may also reverse the decrease in goblet cells induced by 5-FU (Tanaka & Takeuchi 2002).

Yoshida et al (1998, 2001) have also shown that 30 g/day L-Gln for 28 days attenuates the increased gut permeability and reduced lymphocyte count observed in patients undergoing cisplatin and 5-FU therapy for oesophageal cancer.

Glutamine may also increase tumour methotrexate concentration and tumoricidal activity and reduce side-effects and mortality rates (Miller 1999, PDRHealth 2006a).

OTHER USES

ALCOHOLISM

Preliminary studies suggested a potential for glutamine to reduce alcohol cravings; however, these effects have not yet been studied in controlled trials on humans (PDRHealth 2006a). More recently, in vitro research has suggested that glutamine supplementation may inhibit the deleterious effects of alcohol on the tight junctions of the gut mucosa and in turn reduce the increased risk for gastrointestinal cancers in alcoholics (Basuroy et al 2005, Seth et al 2004).
**ACUTE PANCREATITIS**

The enteral administration of L-Gln (15 mg/kg/day) to rats with acute pancreatitis resulted in a reduction in necrosis and infectious complications by decreasing the bacterial translocation rate (Avsar et al 2001).

**SICKLE CELL DISEASE**

Orally administered L-Gln improves the nicotinamide adenosine dinucleotide (NAD) redox potential of sickle red blood cells (RBC). Investigations of blood samples taken from five adult patients with sickle cell anaemia who had been on L-Gln (30 g/day) therapy for at least 4 weeks consistently resulted in improvement of sickle RBC adhesion to human umbilical vein endothelial cells compared to the control group. The authors conclude that these results suggest positive physiological effects for L-Gln in sickle cell disease (Niihara et al 2005).

**OTHER CONDITIONS**

Glutamine is a popular supplement in naturopathic practice and sometimes used for conditions that may be associated with compromised intestinal permeability such as food allergies, leaky gut syndrome and malabsorption syndromes, including diarrhoea. It may also be used for conditions such as dermatitis and general fatigue based on the theory that compromised intestinal permeability provides the opportunity for undigested food particles (especially proteins) to enter the systemic circulation and gives rise to an unwanted immune response that manifests as a skin reaction or lethargy.

**DOSAGE RANGE**

Naturally occurring food proteins contain 4–8% of their amino acid residues as glutamine and so the daily consumption is usually less than 10 g/day (Hall et al 1996).

Supplemental L-Gln is available for oral and enteral use (in capsules, tablets and powder form) and in a dipeptide form for parenteral use.

While solubility and stability are primarily factors for TPN solutions, several factors should also be considered when using oral supplements, as powder forms are often mixed into a solution to enable easy administration of higher doses: 1 g of L-Gln dissolves in 20.8 mL of water at 30°C (PDRHealth 2006a) and is stable for up to 22 days if stored at 4°C (Hornsby-Lewis et al 1994). Ideally, powdered formulas should be consumed immediately after mixing.

- Gut repair: 7–21 g taken orally as a single dose or in divided doses.
- Cancer therapy: 2–4 g twice daily swished in the mouth and swallowed (up to 30 g have been used in trials and given orally in divided doses).
- Critical illness: 5 g/500 mL of enteral feeding solution.
- HIV: 30 g/day taken orally as a single dose or in divided doses.
- Infection: 12–30.5 g in an enteral feeding solution.
- Infants: 0.3 g/kg/day added to breast milk or to preterm formula.

ADVERSE REACTIONS
Toxicity studies in rats fed up to 5% of their diet in L-Gln showed no toxic events (Tsubuku et al 2004) and glutamine dose–response studies have demonstrated ‘good tolerance without untoward clinical or biochemical effects’ (Ziegler et al 1999).

Most adverse reactions are mild and uncommon; they include gastrointestinal complaints such as constipation and bloating (PDRHealth 2006a). No evidence of harm has been observed in the studies conducted to date (Wischmeyer 2003).

A report exists of mania in two hypomanic patients after self-medication with up to 4 g/day glutamine (Membane 1984). As glutamine is a pre-cursor of GABA this may provide a possible explanation.

Two cases of a transient increase in liver enzyme levels have also been reported (Hornsby-Lewis et al 1994).

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
RADIATION AND CHEMOTHERAPY
Benefits have been observed for the use of L-Gln during radiation and chemotherapy (see ‘Clinical note – Cancer therapy’).

INDOMETHACIN/NSAIDS
Concomitant use of L-Gln (7 g three times daily) and indomethacin may ameliorate the increased intestinal permeability caused by indomethacin. The inclusion of misoprostol may also have a synergistic effect with this combination (Hond et al 1999b, PDRHealth 2006a, Tanaka & Takeuchi 2002) — beneficial interaction possible.

HUMAN GROWTH HORMONE
In patients with severe short bowel syndrome concomitant use of L-Gln and human growth hormone may enhance nutrient absorption (PDRHealth 2006a).

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
It is contraindicated in patients with hypersensitivity to glutamine or hepatic disease or any condition where there is a risk of accumulation of nitrogenous wastes in the blood, thus increasing the risk of ammonia-induced encephalopathy and coma.

It should only be used in people with chronic renal failure under professional supervision.
PREGNANCY USE
Safety in pregnancy has not been established; however, doses in line with normal dietary intake (approximately 10 g/day) are unlikely to be cause for concern.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this supplement do for me?
L-glutamine is an amino acid that is used by the immune systems and intestinal cells as a fuel source. People with critical illnesses, stress, burns, injury or having undergone surgery or undertaking strenuous physical exercise require an increased intake to restore glutamine levels to normal and avoid loss of muscle mass and compromised immune function. It also promotes gastrointestinal repair and may improve tolerance to some anticancer treatments.

When will it start to work?
This will depend on the indication for which it is being used.

Are there any safety issues?
Glutamine appears to be a safe supplement; however, it should not be used by people who are hypersensitive to this compound, those with liver disease or any condition where there is a risk of accumulation of nitrogenous wastes in the blood (e.g. Reyes syndrome).

It should only be used by people with chronic renal failure under professional supervision.

REFERENCES


© 2007 Elsevier Australia


Nihara Y et al. L-Glutamine therapy reduces endothelial adhesion of sickle red blood cells to human umbilical vein endothelial cells. BMC Blood Disord 5(4) (2005): [Epub ahead of print].


Goldenrod

Historical note  Goldenrod has been used therapeutically for centuries for bladder conditions and wound healing. The name, Solidago, is from the Latin verb ‘to make whole’. In 1934, reports from the US Department of Agriculture suggested that goldenrod was considered as a potential future source of commercially prepared rubber, although it was noted that domestication of the plant would be difficult as it is vulnerable to fungal infection and insect attack.

COMMON NAME
Goldenrod

OTHER NAMES
Aaron’s rod, blue mountain tea, sweet goldenrod, woundwort

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Solidago canadensis (Canadian goldenrod), Solidago virgaurea (European goldenrod) (family Asteraceae [Compositae]). There are numerous species of goldenrod.

PLANT PARTS USED
Dried aerial parts — flowers and leaves

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Flavonoids, including rutin, catechol tannins, triterpene saponins, phenol glycosides, phenolic acids, one essential oil, diterpene lactones, and polysaccharides.

MAIN ACTIONS
The pharmacology of goldenrod has not been significantly investigated; therefore, evidence of activity derives from traditional, in vitro and animal studies.

DIURETIC
Goldenrod is considered an aquaretic medicine, as it promotes fluid loss without an associated disruption to electrolytes. Two animal studies have confirmed diuretic activity (Chodera et al 1991, Leuschner 1995). According to one study, excretion of calcium increases whereas excretion of potassium and sodium decreases (Chodera et al 1991). A review of herbal medicines for the urinary tract concluded that goldenrod is a major diuretic herb (Yarnell 2002).
**ANTISPASMODIC AND ANTI-INFLAMMATORY**
High doses of a commercial preparation of *S. gigantea* extract (Urol mono) has demonstrated anti-inflammatory activity in an animal model, comparable to those of the pharmaceutical anti-inflammatory medicine diclofenac (Leuschner 1995). Other tests with an extract of *S. virgaurea* have also produced similar results (el Ghazaly et al 1992).

The herbal combination consisting of *Populus tremula*, *Solidago virgaurea* and *Fraxinus excelsior* has demonstrated dose-dependent anti-inflammatory, analgesic and antipyretic effects comparable to those of NSAIID in several animal models (Okpanyi et al 1989). Although encouraging, the role of *Solidago* in this study is uncertain.

**OTHER ACTIONS**
Traditionally believed to have an effect on the micro-architecture of the kidney.

**ANTIFUNGAL**
Inhibitory effects on human pathogenic yeasts such as *Candida* and *Cryptococcus* spp. have been demonstrated for triterpenoid glycosides isolated from *S. virgaurea* (Bader et al 1990).

**ANTIBACTERIAL**
A moderate antibacterial activity in vitro against certain strains of bacteria, including species of *Bacillus*, *Proteus* and *Staphylococcus* has been demonstrated from an extract of *S. virgaurea* (Thiem & Goslinska 2002).

**ANTICANCER EFFECTS**
An extract of *S. virgaurea* has demonstrated antineoplastic activity in vitro using a variety of cell lines, including prostate, breast, small cell lung carcinoma and melanoma, and in vivo in a mouse model of prostate cancer (Gross et al 2002).

**CLINICAL USE**
Goldenrod has not been significantly investigated under controlled study conditions, so most evidence is derived from traditional use, in vitro and animal studies.

**CYSTITIS**
The most common use of goldenrod is in the treatment of bladder infections. Both the Commission E (Blumenthal et al 1998) and ESCOP (2003) have approved its use for irrigation of the urinary tract, with ESCOP also indicating usefulness as adjunctive treatment for bacterial UTIs.
**ARTHRITE**

The product Phytodolor contains alcoholic extracts of *Populus tremula*, *Fraxinus excelsior* and *Solidago virgaurea* and is standardised to 0.14 mg/mL of isofraxidine, 1 mg/mL salicine, and 0.07 mg/mL of total flavonoids. As part of this combination, goldenrod has been investigated in patients with RA, osteoarthritis and back pain. Pain was significantly reduced by treatment with Phytodolor in a placebo-controlled study of 47 patients (Weiner & Ernst 2004). Symptom relief was equally effective amongst patients receiving half strength, normal (60 drops three times daily) or double-strength treatment. A shorter placebo-controlled study of 2 weeks duration found that Phytodolor reduced the need for conventional drug doses in subjects with ‘at least one rheumatological diagnosis’ (Weiner & Ernst 2004). Similarly, Phytodolor reduced requirements of diclofenac compared to placebo in a smaller study of 30 patients (Weiner & Ernst 2004). A 2-week placebo-controlled study of 30 subjects with osteoarthritis demonstrated that treatment with Phytodolor significantly reduced pain and improved grip strength (Weiner & Ernst 2004). The role of goldenrod in achieving these results is unclear.

**INFLAMMATION OF THE NASOPHARYNX WITH CATARRH**

Goldenrod is also used to relieve symptoms in this condition. The astringent activity of the tannin components provides a theoretical basis for its use.

**OTHER USES**

In many countries goldenrod is used to prevent urolithiasis and eliminate renal calculi (Skidmore-Roth 2001). It is also used in children with otitis media and nasal catarrh.

**TRADITIONAL USES**

Goldenrod is used both internally and externally for a variety of conditions. Internally it is used to treat upper respiratory tract catarrh, arthritis, menorrhagia and urological complaints, vomiting and dyspepsia, and externally it is used to support wound healing and as a mouth rinse for inflammatory conditions of the mouth and gums.

**DOSAGE RANGE**

- Infusion of dried herb: 0.5–2 g in 150 mL of boiled water for at least 10 minutes.
- Fluid extract (1:1) (g/mL): 0.5–2 mL taken 2–4 times daily between meals.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**

Handling the plant has been associated with allergic reactions ranging from allergic rhinoconjunctivitis and asthma to urticaria. There is one study of a cohort predominantly comprising florists who had presented with complaints relating to the handling of plants found that extensive cross-sensitisation to pollen of several...
members of the Compositae family (e.g. Matricaria, Chrysanthemum and Solidago) and to pollen of the Amaryllidaceae family (Alstroemeria and Narcissus) (de Jong et al 1998).

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**
None known

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**
Commission E cautions against use as irrigation therapy when heart or kidney disease is also present (Blumenthal et al 1998).

People with known allergy to goldenrod or who are allergic to the Compositae (Asteraceae) family of plants should avoid this herb.

**PREGNANCY USE**
From limited use in pregnant women, it appears that no increase in frequency of malformation or other harmful effects have been reported although animal studies are lacking (Mills & Bone 2005).

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**
- Goldenrod has a long history of use but has not been tested in humans to any significant extent.
- Traditionally it has been used internally to reduce upper respiratory catarrh, arthritis, menorrhagia, urological complaints and dyspepsia, and externally to promote wound healing and as a mouth rinse for inflammatory conditions of the mouth and gums.
- In Europe, goldenrod is a popular herb for treating lower UTIs and preventing kidney stones.
- When used as part of the commercial preparation, Phytodolor, it provides effective symptom relief in RA and osteoarthritis according to several clinical studies.
- It is considered an aquaretic herb, which induce diuresis but not potassium and sodium loss.
- Preliminary studies in animal models suggest anti-inflammatory activity comparable to that of NSAIDs, but human studies are not available to confirm the clinical significance of these findings.

**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**
What will this herb do for me?
Goldenrod has diuretic and anti-inflammatory activity, which may be useful in cases of bladder inflammation, although clinical testing has not yet been conducted to confirm this.
When will it start to work?
This is unknown.
Are there any safety issues?
People who are allergic to goldenrod or the Compositae or Asteraceae families of plants should avoid taking this herb.

REFERENCES
Goldenseal

Historical note  Goldenseal is indigenous to North America and was traditionally used by the Cherokees and then by early American pioneers. Preparations of the root and rhizome were used for gastritis, diarrhoea, vaginitis, dropsy, menstrual abnormalities, eye and mouth inflammation, and general ulceration. In addition to this, the plant was used for dyeing fabric and weapons. Practitioners of the eclectic school created a high demand for goldenseal around 1847. This ensured the herb’s ongoing popularity in Western herbal medicine, but unfortunately led to it being named a threatened species in 1997. Today, most high-quality goldenseal is from cultivated sources.

COMMON NAME
Goldenseal

OTHER NAMES
Eye root, jaundice root, orange root, yellow root

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
*Hydrastis canadensis* (family Ranunculaceae)

PLANT PARTS USED
Root and rhizome

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Isoquinoline alkaloids, including hydrastine (1.5–5%), berberine (0.5–6%) and canadine (tetrahydroberberine, 0.5–1.0%). Other related alkaloids include canadaline, hydrastidine, corypalmine and isohydrastidine.

Clinical note — Isoquinoline alkaloids
Isoquinoline alkaloids are derived from phenylalanine or tyrosine and are most frequently found in the Ranunculaceae, Berberidaceae and Papaveraceae families (Pengelly 2004). This is a very large class of medicinally active compounds that include the morphinane alkaloids (morphine, thebaine and codeine), the ipecac alkaloids (emetine and cephaeline), the atropine alkaloid (boldine), and the protoberberines (berberine and hydrastine). Many other plants contain berberine, including *Berberis vulgaris* (barberry), *Mahonia aquifolium*/*Berberis aquifolium*
Main Actions

A wealth of empirical data exists for the medicinal use of goldenseal; however, much of the research has been conducted using the chief constituent berberine. It is recommended that goldenseal products be standardised to contain at least 8 mg/mL of berberine and 8 mg/mL of hydrastine (Bone 2003).

Antimicrobial

In vitro testing has demonstrated antibacterial activity of both the whole extract of goldenseal and the major isolated alkaloids (berberine, beta-hydrastine, canadine and canadaline) against *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Streptococcus sanguis*, *Escherichia coli* and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* (Scazzocchio et al 2001). In one recent study, two flavonoids isolated from goldenseal were shown to exhibit antibacterial activity against the oral pathogens *Streptococcus mutans* and *Fusobacterium nucleatum* (Hwang et al 2003). An added antimicrobial effect against *S. mutans* was noted with the addition of berberine.

The methanolic extract of the rhizome inhibited the growth of 15 strains of *Helicobacter pylori* in vitro (Mahady et al 2003). The authors identified berberine and beta-hydrastine as the main active constituents.

Berberine alone, and in combination with both ampicillin and oxacillin, has demonstrated strong antibacterial activity against all strains of MRSA in vitro (Yu et al 2005); 90% inhibition was demonstrated with 64 µg/mL or less of berberine. Berberine was also found to enhance the effectiveness of ampicillin and oxacillin against MRSA in vitro.

Many of the *Berberis* spp. contain the flavonolignan 5′-methoxyhydnocarpin, which inhibits the expression of the multidrug resistant efflux pumps (Musumeci et al 2003, Stermitz et al 2000a, b); however, it is unknown whether goldenseal contains this compound.

Berberine inhibits the adherence of streptococci to host cells by aiding the release of an adhesin lipoteichoic acid (an acid that is responsible for the adhesion of the bacteria to the host tissue) from the streptococcal cell surface (Sun 1998). Berberine is also able to dissolve lipoteichoic acid–fibronectin complexes once they have been formed. Berberine displays well-defined antimicrobial properties against certain bacteria and such data suggests that it may also be able to prevent adherence and destroy already formed complexes.
Berberine destroys cell wall and sterol biosynthesis in *Candida* spp. in vitro (Park et al 1999).

**ANTIDIARRHOEAL**
Berberine decreases intestinal activity by activating alpha-2-adrenoceptors and reducing cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP) (Hui et al 1991). Berberine also inhibits intestinal ion secretion and inhibits toxin formation from microbes (Birdsall & Kelly 1997).

Berberine has demonstrated efficacy in vitro for many bacteria that cause infective diarrhoea, including *E. coli*, *Shigella dysenteriae*, *Salmonella paratyphi*, *Clostridium perfringens* and *Bacillus subtilis* (Mahady & Chadwick 2001). It has also demonstrated activity in vitro against parasites that cause diarrhoea, including *Entamoeba histolytica*, *Giardia lamblia* and *Trichomonas vaginalis*.

The effects of berberine on cholera toxin-induced water and electrolyte secretion were investigated in an experimental in vivo model (Swabb 1981). Secretions of water, sodium and chlorine were reduced 60–80 minutes after exposure to berberine. Berberine did not alter ileal water or electrolyte transport in the control model. It produced a significant reduction in fluid accumulation caused by infection with *E. coli* in vivo (Khin-Maung & Nwe Nwe 1992). Oral doses of berberine before the toxin was introduced and intragastric injection after infection were both effective. Berberine was shown to inhibit by approximately 70% the secretory effects of *Vibrio cholerae* and *E. coli* in a rabbit ligated intestinal loop model (Sack & Froehlich 1982). As in the other study, the drug was effective when given either before or after enterotoxin binding. In an investigation using pig jejunum, berberine demonstrated a reduction in water and electrolyte secretion after intraluminal perfusion with *E. coli* (Zhu & Ahrens 1982).

Berberine significantly slowed small intestine transit time in an experimental in vivo model (Eaker & Sninsky 1989). Berberine inhibited myoelectric activity, which appears to be partially mediated by opioid and alpha-adrenergic receptors. The antidiarrheal properties of berberine may be partially due to the constituents’ ability to delay small intestinal transit time.

**CARDIOVASCULAR ACTIONS**
Berberine may be effective for congestive heart failure and arrhythmia as it has demonstrated positive inotropic, negative chronotropic, antiarrhythmic and vasodilator properties (Lau et al 2001).

After 8 weeks of treatment oral doses of berberine (10 mg/kg) improved cardiac function and prevented development of left ventricular hypertrophy induced by...
pressure overload in rats (Hong et al 2002, 2003). Berberine was found to reduce left ventricular end-diastolic pressure, improve contraction and relaxation and decrease the amount of the atrophied heart muscle.

Berberine has also been found to increase cardiac output in dogs with left ventricular failure due to ischaemia (Huang et al 1992). Over 10 days, intravenous administration of berberine (1 mg/kg, within 3 minutes) followed by a constant infusion (0.2 mg/kg/min, 30 minutes) increased the cardiac output and decreased left ventricular end-diastolic pressure, DBP and systemic vascular resistance, but did not affect heart rate. This study shows that berberine may be able to improve impaired left ventricular function by exerting positive inotropic effects and mild systemic vasodilatation. These results, although interesting, should be evaluated cautiously as the method of administration was intravenous. The hypotensive effects of the berberine derivative, 6-protoberberine (PTB-6) were studied in spontaneously hypertensive rats (Liu et al 1999). PTB-6 lowered SBP in a dose-dependent manner (5 mg/kg: -31.1 ± 1.6 mmHg; 10 mg/kg: -42.4 ± 3.1 mmHg). The berberine derivative also reduced cardiac output and heart rate. The authors conclude that the antihypotensive effect of PTB-6 is probably caused by a central sympatholytic effect.

**HYPOCHOLESTEROLAEMIC/ANTI-ATHEROGENIC**

Berberine upregulates the LDL receptor (LDLR) by stabilising the LDLR mRNA (Abidi et al 2005, Kong et al 2004). Hamsters fed a high-fat diet for 2 weeks, followed by treatment with oral doses of berberine (100 mg/kg) for 10 days demonstrated a 40% reduction of cholesterol, including a 42% reduction in LDL-cholesterol (Kong et al 2004). No effect on HDL-cholesterol was noted.

Berberine may have potential as an anti-atherosclerotic agent because of a demonstrated inhibition of lysophosphatidylcholine (lysoPC)-induced DNA synthesis and cell proliferation in vascular smooth muscle cells (VSMCs) in vivo (Cho et al 2005). Berberine also inhibited the migration of lysoPC-stimulated VSMCs and the activity of extracellular signal-regulated kinases, reduced transcription factor AP-1 and intracellular reactive oxygen species. This suggests that berberine may be useful for the prevention of atherosclerosis.

**ANTIDIABETIC**

A glucose-lowering effect similar to metformin was observed in vitro for berberine; however, no effect was seen on insulin secretion (Yin et al 2002).

Similarly, fasting blood glucose, total cholesterol and triglyceride levels significantly decreased after 8 weeks of treatment with 187.5 or 562.5 mg/kg of berberine in an experimental model of glucose intolerance (Leng et al 2004). In an additional in
vitro study using insulin secreted from pancreatic cells, incubated with berberine for 12 hours, the authors concluded that berberine increased insulin production. The relationship of these trials to oral doses in humans is unknown.

Blood glucose, blood lipids, muscle triglycerides and insulin sensitivity were measured before and after the ingestion of berberine or metformin in rats fed a high-fat diet (Gao et al 1997). In this trial berberine and metformin improved insulin resistance and liver glycogen levels, but had no effect on blood glucose, insulin, lipid and muscle triglyceride levels. The study was able to demonstrate that berberine was as effective as metformin for improving insulin sensitivity in the rats.

Berberine inhibits alpha-glucosidase and therefore reduces the transport of glucose through the intestinal epithelium (Pan et al 2003).

ANTI-INFLAMMATORY
Berberine inhibits COX-2 transcriptional activity (Fukuda et al 1999, Kuo et al 2005) and reduces PG synthesis in vitro and in vivo (Kuo et al 2004). Berberine has been found to reduce proliferation of human lymphocytes in vitro by inhibiting DNA synthesis in activated cells (Ckless et al 1995).

IMMUNE ACTIVITY
Intragastric administration of the crude extract of goldenseal for 6 weeks increased the production of IgM in vivo (Rehman et al 1999). Berberine has also been found to induce IL-12 p40, a large subunit of IL-12, through the activation of p38 mitogen-activated protein kinase in mouse macrophages (Kang et al 2002). Interleukin-12 is crucial for the development of the Th1 immune response and thus may also have a therapeutic effect in reducing Th2 allergic disorders. A follow-up study demonstrated that pretreatment with berberine induced IL-12 production in stimulated macrophages and dendritic cells (Kim et al 2003). Macrophages pretreated with berberine had an increased ability to induce IFN-gamma and a reduced ability to induce IL-4 in antigen-primed CD4+ T-cells. Increased levels of IL-12 appear to deviate CD4+ T-cells from the Th2 to the Th1 pathway. This inhibition of type 2 cytokine responses indicate that berberine may be an effective anti-allergic compound.

The immunosuppressive effects of berberine were investigated in an induced autoimmune model in vivo (Marinova et al 2000). Berberine was administered daily (10 mg/kg) for 3 days before intravenous induction of tubulo-interstitial nephritis (TIN).

Significantly less damage and an increase in renal function was demonstrated in the animals pretreated with berberine as compared to controls after 2 months. Berberine decreased CD3, CD4 and CD8 lymphocytes in comparison with non-treated

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
animals. These results suggest that berberine may exert an immunosuppressive effect in a TIN model. Clinical trials in human kidney autoimmune diseases are warranted.

**ANTICANCER**

Berberine has demonstrated cytotoxic activity in vitro against many strains of human cancer cells (Hwang et al 2006, Kettmann et al 2004, Kuo et al 2005). This is due in part to the reduction of COX-2 enzymes (Kuo et al 2005, Tai & Luo 2003), damage to the cytoplasmic membrane and DNA fragmentation (Letasiova et al 2005).

The antitumour effects of berberine were investigated on malignant brain tumours in an in vitro and in vivo model (Zhang et al 1990). Berberine (150 mg/mL) demonstrated an ability to kill 91% of cells in six human malignant brain tumour cell lines and 10 mg/kg exhibited an 80.9% cell kill rate against solid brain tumours in vivo. The addition of berberine to 1,3-bis(2-chloroethyl)-1-nitrosourea increased cytotoxicity.

**OTHER ACTIONS**

Anticatarrhal, astringent, bitter, choleretic, depurative, mucus membrane tonic, vulnerary and oxytocic.

**CLINICAL USE**

Goldenseal has not been significantly investigated under clinical trial conditions, so evidence is derived from traditional, in vitro and animal studies. Many of these have been conducted on the primary alkaloids. All results are for the isolated compound berberine, and although this compound appears to have various demonstrable therapeutic effects, extrapolation of these results to crude extracts of goldenseal is premature. It should also be noted that equivalent doses of the whole extract of goldenseal are exceptionally high.

**DIARRHOEA**

A double-blind, placebo-controlled, randomised trial examined the effect of berberine alone (100 mg four times daily) and in combination with tetracycline for acute watery diarrhoea in 400 patients (Khin-Maung et al 1985). Patients were divided into four groups and given tetracycline, tetracycline plus berberine, berberine or placebo; 185 patients tested positive for cholera and those in the tetracycline and tetracycline plus berberine groups achieved a significant reduction in diarrhoea after 16 hours and up to 24 hours. The group given berberine alone showed a significant reduction in diarrhoea volume (1 L) and a 77% reduction in cAMP in stools. Noticeably fewer patients in the tetracycline and tetracycline plus berberine groups excreted vibrios in their stool after 24 hours and interestingly no statistically significant improvements for patients with non-cholera diarrhoea in the tetracycline or berberine group were
shown. A later randomised, double-blind clinical trial compared 200 mg of berberine four times daily plus tetracycline, with tetracycline alone in 74 patients with diarrhoea resulting from *V. cholerae* (Khin-Maung et al 1987). There were no statistically significant differences between the two groups.

An RCT evaluated the effect of berberine sulfate in 165 men with *E. coli* or *V. cholerae*-induced diarrhoea as compared to tetracycline (Rabbani et al 1987). Patients with *E. coli* were given a single 400 mg dose and those with *V. cholerae* were given either a single 400 mg dose or 1200 mg (400 mg every 8 hours), combined with tetracycline. Berberine reduced mean stool volumes by 48% in the *E. coli* group as compared to control over 24 hours. Patients in the *V. cholerae* group who received 400 mg of berberine as a single dose also had a reduction in stool volume after 16 hours as compared to placebo. The combination of berberine and tetracycline did not show any statistical improvement over tetracycline alone in the *V. cholerae* group.

A follow-up randomised, placebo-controlled trial was designed to evaluate the antisecretory and antimicrobial potential of various antidiarrhoeal agents including berberine, in patients with active diarrhoea due to *Vibrio cholerae* or enterotoxic *E. coli* (Rabbani 1996). Berberine at a lower dose of 200 mg resulted in a reduction in stool volume of between 30% and 50% without significant side-effects. Berberine was again shown to be more effective in the treatment of diarrhoea resulting from *E. coli* than in cholera.

Berberine may also be effective in the treatment of giardiasis. A comparison controlled study of 359 children aged between 4 months and 14 years compared berberine (10 mg/kg/day) with metronidazole (20 mg/kg/day) for up to 10 days (Gupte 1975). Negative stool samples were evident in 90% of children receiving berberine after 10 days with 83% remaining negative after 1 month’s duration. The results were comparative with the metronidazole (Flagyl) group (95% after 10 days and 90% after 1 month), without side-effects. In a similar study, 40 children aged 1–10 years with giardiasis were given berberine (5 mg/kg/day), metronidazole (10 mg/kg/day) or placebo (vitamin B syrup) for 6 days (Choudry et al 1972). In the berberine group 48% of children were symptom-free after 6 days and 68% had no giardia cysts on stool analysis as compared to the metronidazole group who experienced a 33% reduction in symptoms and a 100% clearance rate for cysts. These results show that berberine may be more effective than Flagyl for symptom relief, but not as effective for clearing the organism from the gastrointestinal tract. The aforementioned study (Gupte 1975) used a higher dose of berberine (10 mg/kg/day), which produced better results; however, the equivalent amount of goldenseal for
either dose would be exceedingly high based on an average berberine content of 5%, which would be inappropriate.

Small intestinal transit time was evaluated in 30 healthy subjects in a controlled study (Yuan et al 1994). Transit time was significantly delayed from 71.10 ± 22.04 minutes to 98.25 ± 29.03 minutes after oral administration of 1.2 g of berberine. These results suggest that the antidiarrhoal effect of berberine might be partially due to its ability to delay small intestinal transit time.

**HYPERCHOLESTEROLAEMIA**
In a RCT, oral doses of 0.5 g of berberine, given twice daily for 3 months in 32 hypercholesterolaemic patients, resulted in a 29% reduction in serum cholesterol, a 35% reduction in triglycerides and a 25% reduction in LDL-cholesterol (Kong et al 2004). HDL-cholesterol levels remained unchanged. Berberine also significantly improved liver function as noted by liver enzyme levels.

**CHRONIC CONGESTIVE HEART FAILURE**
The efficacy and safety of berberine in chronic congestive heart failure was studied in a randomised, double-blind, controlled study in 156 patients with chronic heart failure (Zeng et al 2003). All patients received conventional treatment and 79 patients in the treatment group also received 1.2–2.0 g/day of berberine for 8 weeks. Quality of life was greatly improved in the berberine group in comparison to controls, as measured by a significant increase in left ventricular ejection fraction, less fatigue and a greater capacity to exercise. A significant reduction in mortality was also noted during the 24-month follow-up (7 in the treatment group as compared to 13).

The acute cardiovascular effects of intravenous berberine (0.02 and 0.2 mg/kg/min for 30 minutes) were studied in 12 patients with refractory congestive heart failure (Marin-Neto et al 1988). At the lower dose, a 14% reduction in heart rate was noted, whereas 0.2 mg/kg resulted in a 48% decrease in systemic vascular resistance and a 41% decrease in pulmonary vascular resistance. Right atrium and left ventricular end-diastolic pressures were reduced by 28% and 32%, respectively. Cardiac index, stroke index, and left ventricular ejection fraction were also significantly enhanced.

**EYE INFECTION**
A controlled clinical trial of 51 patients with ocular trachoma infections investigated the effectiveness of berberine over 3 weeks with a 1-year follow-up (Babbar et al 1982). Subjects who used the 0.2% berberine either by itself or combined with sulfacetamide demonstrated significant symptom improvement and tested negative for Chlamydia trachomatis, with no relapse after 1 year.
A later comparison controlled clinical study also evaluated the effectiveness of the topical treatment of berberine for trachoma in 32 microbiologically confirmed patients (Khosla et al 1992). A 0.2% berberine solution (2 drops in each eye, three times daily) was found to be more effective than sulfacetamide (20%) in reducing both the course of the trachoma and the serum antibody titres against C. trachomatis. Berberine eyedrops were compared to berberine plus neomycin ointment, sulfacetamide and placebo in a double-blind, controlled clinical trial in 96 primary school children (Mohan et al 1982). Patients in the berberine group were asked to use 2 drops (0.2% berberine) of the solution in each eye, three times daily and to additionally apply a berberine ointment (0.2%) at night for 3 months. Children treated with only the berberine had an 87% clinical response rate, compared to 58% in the berberine and neomycin group; however, only 50% tested negative in follow-up microbiological tests.

OTHER USES
Menorrhagia, dysmenorrhoea, peptic ulcer, gastritis, dyspepsia, skin disorders, sinusitis, chronic inflammation of mucous membranes and topically for ulceration and infection.

Traditionally, it is used as a bitter digestive stimulant that improves bile flow and liver function.

DOSAGE RANGE

INTERNAL
- Tincture (1:3): 2.0–4.5 mL/day or 15–30 mL/week (Bone 2003)
- Tincture (1:10): 6–12 mL/day (Mills & Bone 2005)
- Dried rhizome and root: 1.5–3 g/day by decoction (Mills & Bone 2005)

EXTERNAL
- Eyewash: 0.2% berberine solution, 2 drops in each eye, three times daily (Khosla et al 1992)

Clinical note — Berberine absorption
Berberine is poorly absorbed, with up to 5% bioavailability (Pan et al 2002). In vitro data has clearly demonstrated that berberine is a potent antibacterial; however, in vivo data has established low bioavailability. Berberine has been shown to upregulate the expression and function of the drug transporter P-glycoprotein (Pgp) (Lin et al 1999). Pgp belongs to the super family of ATP-binding cassette transporters that are responsible for the removal of unwanted toxins and metabolites from the cell (Glastonbury 2003). It appears that Pgp in normal...
intestinal epithelia greatly reduces the absorption of berberine in the gut. In vivo and in vitro methods have been used to determine the role of Pgp in berberine absorption by using the known Pgp inhibitor cyclosporin A (Pan et al 2002). Co-administration increased berberine absorption six-fold and clearly demonstrated the role of Pgp in absorption.

Increased expression of Pgp can lead to cells displaying multi-drug resistance (Glastonbury 2003). As previously reported a certain flavonolignan in many Berberis spp. has the ability to inhibit the expression of multi-drug resistant efflux pumps (Stermitz et al 2000a, b) allowing berberine and certain antibiotics to be more effective.

ADVERSE REACTIONS
Goldenseal is generally regarded as safe in recommended doses (Blumenthal 2003). Higher doses than 0.5 g of pure berberine may cause lethargy, dizziness, dyspnoea, skin and eye irritation, gastrointestinal irritation, nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, nephritis and kidney irritation (Blumenthal et al 1998).

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
Because controlled studies are not available, interactions are currently speculative and based on evidence of pharmacological activity. No drug interactions have been reported; however, an extract of goldenseal has demonstrated inhibition of cytochrome P450 in vitro (Budzinski et al 2000). Theoretically these findings suggests that any drugs metabolised using this pathway may be affected. The clinical relevance of this possible interaction is unknown.

CYCLOSPORIN A
Berberine increased the blood concentration of cyclosporin A in renal transplant patients in a RCT (Wu et al 2005): 52 patients received 0.2 g of berberine orally three times daily for 3 months. The final blood concentration in the berberine/cyclosporin A group was 29.3% higher than the group given cyclosporin A only. The relevance of this to oral ingestion of goldenseal is unknown — caution advised.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Goldenseal is contraindicated in kidney disease because of inadequate excretion of the alkaloids (Blumenthal et al 2003). Berberine has been found to be a potent displacer of bilirubin (Chen 1993). A review published in 1996 stated that berberine can cause severe acute haemolysis and jaundice in babies with glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency (Ho 1996). Goldenseal is therefore not recommended in pregnancy, lactation or cases of neonatal jaundice. Goldenseal is also contraindicated
in hypertension (BHMA 1983) as large amounts of hydrastine have been reported to restrict peripheral blood vessels and cause hypertension (Genest & Hughes 1969). The dose required to induce this effect is unknown and the ability to reach this threshold using the whole extract is unlikely; however, until this is clarified goldenseal is best avoided in hypertension.

**PREGNANCY USE**

Contraindicated in pregnancy and lactation.

In addition to the preceding concerns about bilirubin, berberine has caused uterine contractions in pregnant and non-pregnant experimental models (Mills & Bone 2005). A recent in vivo study using 65-fold the average human oral dose of goldenseal investigated effects on gestation and birth and found no increase in implantation loss or malformation (Yao 2005). The authors conclude that the low bioavailability of goldenseal from the gastrointestinal tract was likely to explain the differences between in vitro and in vivo effects in pregnancy. Hydrastine (0.5 g) has also been found to induce labour in pregnant women (Mills & Bone 2005). Until more pharmacokinetic studies are done, goldenseal is best avoided in pregnancy.

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**

- Goldenseal has been used traditionally as an antidiarrhoeal agent and digestive stimulant.
- It has been used topically as a wash for sore or infected eyes and as a mouth rinse.
- Goldenseal is a bitter digestive stimulant that improves bile flow and improves liver function.
- Most clinical evidence has been conducted using the chemical constituent berberine. This data has shown effectiveness against diarrhoea, congestive heart failure, infection and cholesterol.
- Goldenseal is not to be used in pregnancy or during breastfeeding.
- Use with caution in patients who have hypertension or taking cyclosporin.

**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

**What will this herb do for me?**

Goldenseal may be used in the treatment of diarrhoea, dyspepsia, infection, diabetes and cholesterol. Most of the available research has been done on the alkaloid berberine. More clinical trials of the whole extract are needed to determine if the same effect will be seen.

**When will it start to work?**

Antibacterial and antidiarrhoeal activity should be apparent quite quickly. The lipid-lowering effects of goldenseal have been reported within 12 weeks.
Are there any safety issues?
The herb should not be taken during pregnancy or lactation and may interact with some medications.

REFERENCES
Grapeseed extract

Historical note  In the 1500s a French expedition in North America found itself trapped in ice and forced to survive on salted meat and stale biscuits. After a time, the crew began to show signs of what we now recognise as scurvy. It is believed that the men survived because a Native American Indian showed them how to make a tea from the bark and needles of pine trees. The French explorer wrote of this encounter in a book that was subsequently read by researcher Jacques Masquelier, also a Frenchman, in the 20th century. Intrigued by the story, he began to investigate the chemistry and properties of pine bark and identified oligomeric proanthocyanidin complexes (OPCs). Several years later, he extracted OPCs from grapeseed extract (GSE), which is now considered the superior source of OPCs (Murray & Pizzorno 1999).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COMMON NAME</th>
<th>grapeseed extract</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY</td>
<td>Vitis vinifera/Vitaceae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLANT PARTS USED</td>
<td>Seeds, grape skins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEMICAL COMPONENTS</td>
<td>The skin of the grapeseed is a rich source of proanthocyanidins (also referred to as procyanidins). Mixtures of procyanidins are referred to as OPCs. Grapeseed extract contains OPCs made up of dimers or trimers of (+)-catechin and (-)-epicatechin (Fine 2000) and also trimers and polymers of proanthocyanidins. Vitis vinifera also contains stilbenes (resveratrol and viniferins) (Bavaresco et al 1999); however, it is unclear whether significant amounts are present in the seeds.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Clinical note — Proanthocyanidins
Proanthocyanidins (PCs) are a group of naturally occurring polyphenolic bioflavonoids that are present in many fruits (e.g. apples, pears, grapes and peaches), vegetables, nuts, beans (e.g. cocoa), seeds, flowers and bark (e.g. pine) (Bavaresco et al 1999). Grapeseeds are a particularly rich source of PCs, containing more than any other grape products, such as red, white or rose wine or grape juice,

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
and more than most commonly available foods (Rasmussen et al 2005a). Proanthocyanidins are also found in many medicinal herbs such as Ginkgo biloba, Camellia sinensis, Hypericum perforatum and Crataegus monogyna; however, GSE is considered the superior source. Proanthocyanidins demonstrate a wide range of biological actions according to various in vitro, in vivo and clinical studies. However, in recent years, bioavailability studies have demonstrated that not all orally ingested PCs are absorbed. In particular, PC polymers have negligible absorption from the gastrointestinal tract whereas low-molecular-weight PCs (monomers, dimers and trimers) are absorbed (Rasmussen et al 2005b). In addition, some PCs are degraded by microflora in the caecum and large intestine into low-molecular-weight phenolic acids, chiefly hydroxyphenylpropionic acid and 4-O-methylgallic acid (Ward et al 2004), which are likely to contribute to the biological effects. These findings have implications when interpreting in vitro data because this method of testing does not take into account variations in bioavailability and metabolism in the body.

**MAIN ACTIONS**
Most evidence of activity derives from in vitro and animal studies for OPCs or GSE; however, some clinical studies are also available. The stilbene resveratrol (3, 4’, 5 trihydroxystilbene) has also been the focus of much investigation and exhibits anti-inflammatory, antithrombotic, anticarcinogenic and antibacterial activities, but it is uncertain whether significant amounts are present in the seeds and GSE (Fremont 2000).

**ANTIOXIDANT**

**INHIBITS PLATELET AGGREGATION**
Grapeseed extract has been shown to inhibit platelet aggregation, and combining extracts of grapeseed and grape skin produces a far greater antiplatelet effect in test tube and ex vivo tests (Shanmuganayagam et al 2002). Inhibition of platelet function was confirmed more recently by Vitseva et al (2005).
**STABILISES CAPILLARY WALLS AND ENHANCES DERMAL WOUND HEALING**

In vivo studies have found that PCs stabilise the capillary wall and prevent increases in capillary permeability when chemically induced in tests such as carrageenan-induced hindpaw oedema (Zafirov et al 1990) and dextran-induced oedema (Robert et al 1990). Components in GSE have the ability to cross-link collagen fibres, thereby strengthening the collagen matrix (Tixier et al 1984). Clinical studies confirm that grapeseed extract improves capillary resistance when used at a dose of 150 mg daily (Lagruè et al 1981). Not unexpectedly, research has also identified wound healing properties.

A 2002 study in mice found that topical application of grapeseed PCs considerably accelerated wound contraction and closure and provided additional support during the wound healing process (Khanna et al 2002). It has been shown that a GSE preparation containing 5000 ppm resveratrol facilitates oxidant-induced vascular endothelial growth factor expression in keratinocytes in vitro, which may account for its beneficial effects in promoting dermal wound healing and resolution of related skin disorders (Khanna et al. 2001).

**ANTICARCINOGENIC, ANTIMITAGENIC**

Several in vitro studies have demonstrated that PCs from *Vitis vinifera* strongly suppress tumour growth and have cytotoxic activity against a range of cancer cells, including breast, lung, prostate and gastric adenoma cells (Bagchi et al 2000b, Joshi et al 2001, Tyagi et al 2003, Ye et al 1999a). More specifically, PCs from grapeseeds exerted antitumour properties in several animal models (Kim et al 2004, Nomoto et al 2004, Ray et al 2005, Zhang et al 2005). One study also found that grapeseed PCs enhanced the growth and viability of human gastric mucosal cells at the same time (Ye et al 1999b).

**ANTI-INFLAMMATORY**


**CARDIOPROTECTIVE EFFECTS**

Considering that GSE demonstrates antioxidant, antiplatelet and anti-inflammatory actions, it may have a role in the prevention of cardiovascular disease. A number of researchers have investigated this issue further, mainly using animal models. One series of studies was conducted by Bagchi et al (2003) using a natural, standardised, water-ethanol extract made from California red grapeseeds, which contained approximately 75–80% oligomeric PCs and 3–5% monomeric PCs. According to in
vivo research, treatment with GSE provided resistance to myocardial ischaemia-reperfusion injury, better post-ischaemic ventricular recovery and reduced incidence of reperfusion-induced ventricular fibrillation and ventricular tachycardia, as compared with corresponding control animals. Another study using a hamster atherosclerosis model found that 50 and 100 mg GSE/kg body weight led to a 49% and 63% reduction in foam cells respectively. Additionally, cholesterol and triglyceride lowering activity has been reported (Yu et al 2002).

OTHER ACTIONS
Protection against chemically induced multi-organ toxicity has also been reported (Bagchi et al 2001). Results from a clinical study suggest that GSE increases the rhodopsin content of the retina or accelerates its regeneration after exposure to bright light (Boissin et al 1988).

CLINICAL USE
Free radical damage has been strongly associated with virtually every chronic degenerative disease, including cardiovascular disease, arthritis and cancer. Clearly, due to the potent antioxidant activity of grapeseed, its therapeutic potential is quite broad. Most clinical studies have been conducted in Europe using a commercial product known as Endotelon®. Due to the poor bioavailability of high-molecular-weight PCs, it is advised that products containing chiefly low-molecular-weight PCs be used in practice.

FLUID RETENTION, PERIPHERAL VENOUS INSUFFICIENCY AND CAPILLARY RESISTANCE
Several clinical studies have investigated the use of GSE in fluid retention, capillary resistance or venous insufficiency, producing positive results (Amsellem et al 1987, Delacroix 1981, Constantini et al 1999, Henriet 1993, Lagrue et al 1981).

Hormone replacement therapy and fluctuations in hormone levels can produce symptoms of venous insufficiency in some women. One large study involving 4729 subjects with peripheral venous insufficiency due to HRT showed that GSE decreased the sensation of heaviness in the legs in just over half the subjects by day 45 whereas 89.4% of subjects experienced an improvement by day 90 (Henriet 1993). According to an open multicentre study of women aged 18–50 years with oedema due to premenstrual syndrome, GSE (Endotelon®) administered from day 14 to 28 improved various symptoms of fluid retention such as abdominal swelling, weight gain and pelvic pain and also venous insufficiency (Amsellem et al 1987). The treatment was taken for four cycles, with most women (60.8%) responding after two cycles and 78.8% responding after four cycles.
An open study involving 24 patients with non-complicated chronic venous insufficiency found that over 80% of subjects receiving OPCs (100 mg/day) reported lessened or absent symptoms after 10 days. Symptoms of itching and pain responded best, completely disappearing during the course of treatment in 80% and 53% of the patients respectively (Costantini et al 1999). A double-blind study of 50 patients with symptoms of venous insufficiency found that GSE (Endotelon® 150 mg daily) improved both subjective and objective markers of peripheral venous insufficiency such as pain (Delacroix 1981).

In some pathological conditions, such as inflammation or diabetes, vascular permeability can be abnormally increased (Robert et al 1990). Two studies investigated the effects of GSE on capillary resistance in hypertensive and diabetic patients under both open and double-blind, placebo controlled conditions with treatment producing significant improvements in both groups (Lagrue et al 1981). The studies used a daily dose of 150 mg (Endotelon®).

**DIABETIC RETINOPATHY**
Grapeseed extract (Endotelon® 150 mg) was found to stabilise diabetic retinopathy in 80% of subjects compared to 47% with placebo, under double-blind test conditions (Arne 1982). These results were obtained by measuring objective markers such as visual acuity, muscular tone, and ocular tone.

**EYE STRAIN**
A double-blind study involving 75 patients with eye strain caused by viewing a computer screen found that GSE 300 mg daily significantly improved objective and subjective measures (Bombardelli & Morazzoni 1995). Grapeseed extract (Endotelon®) has also been shown significantly to improve visual adaptation to and from bright light in a dual centre study involving 100 volunteers (Boissin et al 1998, Corbe et al 1988). A dose of 200 mg daily over 5 weeks was used. It has been proposed that GSE increases rhodopsin content of the retina or accelerates its regeneration after exposure to bright light.

**HYPERLIPIDAEMIA**
A randomised, double-blind study of 40 hypercholesterolaemic subjects compared the effects of placebo, chromium polynicotinate (400 µg/day), GSE (200 mg/day) or a combination of both. Over 2 months, the combination treatment decreased total cholesterol and LDL levels significantly but did not significantly alter homocysteine, HDL or blood pressure among the four groups (Preuss et al 2000).
ENHANCES DERMAL WOUND HEALING
A 2002 study in mice found that topical application of grapeseed PCs considerably accelerate wound contraction and closure and provided additional support during the wound healing process (Khanna et al 2002).

Chloasma  Chloasma is a condition characterised by hyperpigmentation and is generally considered recalcitrant to treatment. Proanthocyanidin-rich GSE successfully reduced hyperpigmentation in women with chloasma after 6 months of oral treatment according to an open study involving 12 subjects (Yamakoshi et al 2004). The study continued for another 6 months but failed to find an additional improvement with further use. The researchers suggested that a preventative effect may be possible with long-term oral GSE when used in the months prior to summer.

PANCREATITIS
It is believed that oxygen-derived free radicals mediate tissue damage in acute and chronic pancreatitis. Therefore, antioxidant treatment is being investigated. A small, open study of three patients with difficult-to-treat chronic pancreatitis found that a commercially available IH636 GSE produced a reduction in the frequency and intensity of abdominal pain, as well as resolution of vomiting in one patient (Bannerjee & Bagchi 2001).

PREVENTING REPERFUSION INJURY
Procyanidin administration reduced the adverse effects of myocardial ischaemia-reperfusion injury during cardiac surgery in several in vivo studies (Facino et al 1999, Maffei et al 1996). This appears to be positively associated with an increase in plasma antioxidant activity.

REDUCES SUN BURN
Topical application of GSE has been shown to enhance sun protection factor in human volunteers (Bagchi et al 2000).

PROTECTION AGAINST MULTI-ORGAN DRUG AND CHEMICAL TOXICITY
The results from a number of in vivo studies have suggested pre-exposure to grapeseed extract can provide multi-organ protection against damage caused by various drugs such as paracetamol, amiodarone, doxorubicin, cadmium chloride and dimethylnitrosamine treatment (Bagchi et al 2000, Bagchi et al 2001).

DOSAGE RANGE
- Fluid extract 1:1 (g/mL): 20–40 mL per week
- Solid dose forms: 12,000 mg of GSE standardised to OPCs* taken 2–3 times daily in order to provide 150–300 mg of OPCs daily.

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
Due to the poor bioavailability of high-molecular-weight PCs, it is advised that products containing chiefly low-molecular-weight PCs be used in practice.

**TOXICITY**
Tests in animal models have found GSE to be extremely safe (Bentivegna & Whitney 2002).

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
Studies using doses of 150 mg/day have found it to be well tolerated.

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**
Controlled studies are not available, therefore interactions are theoretical and based on evidence of pharmacological activity.

**ANTIPLATELET DRUGS**
Additive effect theoretically possible — observe patient.

**ANTICOAGULANT DRUGS**
Increased risk of bleeding theoretically possible — caution.

**IRON AND IRON-CONTAINING PREPARATIONS**
Decreased iron absorption. Tannins can bind to iron, forming insoluble complexes — separate doses by 2 hours.

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**
None known.

**PREGNANCY USE**
Safety has not been scientifically established.

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**
- Grapeseed extract has considerable antioxidant activity and appears to regenerate alpha-tocopherol radicals to their antioxidant form.
- Grapeseed extract also has anti-inflammatory actions, reduces capillary permeability, enhances dermal wound healing and reduces photo-damage, inhibits platelet aggregation and may enhance rhodopsin regeneration or content in the retina.
- It is popular in Europe as a treatment for venous insufficiency and capillary fragility, both of which are supported by clinical evidence. It is also used to relieve eye strain, stabilise diabetic retinopathy and connective tissue disorders.
- Preliminary research has identified cardioprotective effects due to a variety of mechanisms. Possible benefits in pancreatitis and multi-organ protection against
damage caused by several pharmaceutical drugs. Anticarcinogenic activity has also been reported.

- Most clinical research has been conducted in Europe with a commercial grapeseed product known as Endotelon®.
- Due to concerns with bioavailability, it is recommended that only preparations containing low-molecular-weight PCs be used.

**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

**What will this herb do for me?**
There is evidence that GSE is a useful treatment for venous insufficiency and capillary fragility and has considerable antioxidant activity. It is also used to treat eye strain, diabetic retinopathy, and enhance wound healing when applied locally.

**When will it start to work?**
It appears to relieve symptoms of venous insufficiency within 10 days and eye strain within 5 weeks.

**Are there any safety issues?**
Research suggests it is well tolerated and generally safe; however, people taking anticoagulant medicines should refer to their healthcare professional before taking this substance.

**References**


Nomoto H et al. Chemoprevention of colorectal cancer by grape seed proanthocyanidin is accompanied by a decrease in proliferation and increase in apoptosis. Nutr Cancer 49 (2004): 81-8.


Yu H et al. [Effect of grape seed extracts on blood lipids in rabbits model with hyperlipidemia]. Wei Sheng Yan Jiu 31 (2002): 114-16.


Green tea

Historical note  Tea has been a popular beverage for thousands of years and was originally grown in China, dating back 5000 years, where it has been used as part of various ceremonies and to maintain alertness. Green tea and the partially fermented oolong tea have remained popular beverages in Asia since that time, whereas black tea is the preferred beverage in many English-speaking countries. Tea was introduced to the Western culture in the 6th century by Turkish traders (Ulbricht & Basch 2005). Second to water, tea is now considered to be the world’s most popular beverage.

COMMON NAME
Green tea

OTHER NAMES
Chinese tea, camellia tea, gruner tea, Matsu-cha

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Camellia sinensis (family Theaceae)

PLANT PART USED
Leaf

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
The composition of green tea varies according to the growing and harvesting methods, but the most abundant components are polyphenols, which are predominantly flavonoids (e.g. catechin, epicatechin, epicatechin gallate, epigallocatechin gallate, proanthocyanidins). Caffeine content in green tea varies but is estimated at about 3%, along with very small amounts of the other common methylxanthines, theobromine and theophylline (Graham 1992). It also contains many other constituents, such as tannin, diphenylamine, oxalic acid, trace elements and vitamins.

  Epigallocatechin gallate is one of the most abundant polyphenols in tea and is regarded as the most significant pharmacologically active component.

Clinical note — The difference between teas
Black, green and oolong tea are produced from the same plant (Camellia sinensis) but differ in polyphenol content according to the way the leaves are processed.

  Black tea is made from oxidised leaves whereas oolong tea is made from partially
oxidised leaves and green tea leaves are not oxidised at all. Because the oxidising process converts many polyphenolic compounds into others with less activity, green tea is considered to have the strongest therapeutic effects and the highest polyphenol content (Lin et al 2003). Caffeine concentrations also vary between the different teas: black tea > oolong tea > green tea > fresh tea leaf (Lin et al 2003). Variation in caffeine content is further influenced by growing conditions, manufacturing processes and size of the tea leaves (Astill et al 2001). The highest quality leaves are the first spring leaf buds, called the ‘first flush’. The next set of leaf buds produced is called the ‘second flush’ and considered to be of poorer quality. Tea varieties also reflect the area they are grown in (e.g. Darjeeling in India), the form produced (e.g. pekoe is cut, gunpowder is rolled) and processing method (black, oolong or green) (Ulbricht & Basch 2005).

MAIN ACTIONS
It is suspected that the polyphenol content is chiefly responsible for the chemoprotective, antiproliferative, antimicrobial and antioxidant activity of green tea. The caffeine content is predominantly responsible for central nervous system activity and an interaction between both appears necessary for increasing thermogenesis.

ANTIOXIDANT
Green tea has consistently demonstrated strong antioxidant activity. In a recent controlled human trial, 24 healthy women consumed 2 cups of green tea (250 mg catechins/day) for 42 days (Erba et al 2005). The results showed a significant increase in plasma antioxidant status, reduced plasma peroxides and reduced LDL-cholesterol when compared with controls. Several other in vitro animal and human studies have also demonstrated that green tea inhibits lipid peroxidation and scavenges hydroxyl and superoxide radicals (Leenen et al 2000, MCS et al 2002, Rietveld & Wiseman 2003, Sung et al 2000).

ANTIBACTERIAL ACTIVITY
Green tea extract has moderate and wide-spectrum inhibitory effects on the growth of many types of pathogenic bacteria, according to in vitro tests, including seven strains of Staphylococcus spp., seven strains of Streptococcus spp., one strain of Corynebacterium suis, 19 strains of Escherichia coli and 26 strains of Salmonella spp. (Ishihara et al 2001). Green tea has also been found to inhibit Helicobacter pylori in an animal model (Matsubara et al 2003). According to one study, which compared the antibacterial activity of black, green and oolong tea, it seems that fermentation adversely affects antibacterial activity, as green tea exhibited the strongest effects, and black tea the weakest (Chou et al 1999). An in vitro study has demonstrated that
green tea can significantly lower bacterial endotoxin-induced cytokine release and therefore may reduce mortality from sepsis (Chen et al 2005).

**Oral pathogens** Both in vitro and in vivo tests have identified strong antibacterial activity against a range of oral pathogens, such as Streptococcus mutans, S. salivarius and E. coli (Otake et al 1991, Rasheed & Haider 1998). The mechanism of action appears to involve anti-adhesion effects, with the strongest activity associated with epigallocatechin gallate and epicatechin gallate. Green tea catechins have also showed an antibacterial effect against Porphyromonas gingivalis and Prevotella spp. in vitro (Hirasawa et al 2002). Furthermore, green tea polyphenols, especially epigallocatechin gallate, have been found to completely inhibit the growth and adherence of P. gingivalis on buccal epithelial cells (Sakanaka et al 1996).

**ANTIVIRAL ACTIVITY**

**ANTICARCINOGENIC**

The mechanism of action by which tea polyphenols exert antimutagenic and antitumorigenic effects is still largely speculative. However, the following has been observed: inhibition of the large multicatalytic protease and metalloproteinases, which are involved in tumour survival and metastasis, respectively, and inhibition of many tumour-associated protein kinases, while not affecting kinase activity in normal cells (Kazi et al 2002, Wang & Bachrach 2002). Tea polyphenols have also been found to inhibit some cancer-related proteins that regulate DNA replication and transform-
More recently, there is increasing evidence that catechins possess anti-angiogenic properties (Sachinidis & Hescheler 2002).

**THERMOGENIC ACTIVITY**

Although the thermogenic activity of green tea is often attributed to its caffeine content, an in vivo study has shown that stimulation of brown adipose tissue thermogenesis occurs to a greater extent than would be expected from the caffeine content alone (Dulloo et al. 2000). The interaction between catechin polyphenols and caffeine on stimulating noradrenaline release and reducing noradrenaline catabolism may be responsible. Clinical investigation has produced similar results, with green tea consumption significantly increasing 24-hour energy expenditure and urinary noradrenaline excretion, whereas an equivalent concentration of caffeine had no effect on these measures (Dulloo et al. 2000).

**OTHER ACTIONS**

Green tea exhibits a variety of other pharmacological actions, such as anti-inflammatory activity, CNS stimulation, inhibition of platelet aggregation, stimulation of gastric acid secretion and diuresis, increased mental alertness, relaxation of extracerebral vascular and bronchial smooth muscle, and reduced cholesterol, triglyceride and leptin levels (Fassina et al. 2002, Sayama et al. 2000).

**CLINICAL USE**

Evidence is largely based on epidemiological studies with few clinical studies available.

**CANCER PREVENTION**

Epidemiological studies have generally shown a decreased occurrence of cancer in those individuals who drink green tea regularly, although this has not been observed in all studies. A 2003 prospective cohort study using 13-year follow-up data found increased green tea consumption was associated with an apparent delay of cancer onset and death, and all cause deaths (Nakachi et al. 2003). A phase 2 RCT evaluated the effects of green tea on oxidative DNA damage in 143 heavy smokers over 4 months and found a significant reduction in damage as evaluated from urine and plasma (Hakim et al. 2003). A small, controlled, pilot study concluded with similar results when cells from the oral mucosa of smokers showed much less oxidative damage when compared with controls (Schwartz et al. 2005). These trials indicate that green tea may be effective in reducing cancer in smokers, but much larger trials are needed. In contrast, a 2001 prospective study in Japan found no association between green tea consumption and cancer incidence (Nagano et al. 2001).
CANCER TREATMENT
Overall, the current evidence does not support the use of green tea as a cancer treatment; however, there are some exceptions, which suggest an adjunctive role. Green tea increased the survival rate of patients with epithelial ovarian cancer in a cohort of 309 Chinese women (Zhang et al 2004). Most (77.9%) of the women in the treatment group were alive at the 3-year follow-up as compared with 47.9% of the control group.

In a RCT, 90 patients with cervical lesions infected with human papilloma virus were given either a capsule containing 200 mg of (-)-epigallocatechin-3-gallate (EGCG) and/or an ointment containing 200 mg of polyphenol E to be applied daily (Ahn et al 2003). There was a 69% responder rate when compared with placebo, with the ointment showing the best effects.

CARDIOVASCULAR PROTECTION
Epidemiological studies suggest that green tea consumption is associated with a reduced risk of cardiovascular disease (Maeda et al 2003). A 2000 prospective cohort study of 8552 people in Japan found that those consuming more than 10 cups per day, compared with those consuming fewer than 3 cups, had a decreased relative risk of death from cardiovascular disease (Nakachi et al 2000). One cross-sectional study involving 1371 men aged over 40 years found that increased green tea consumption was associated with decreased serum concentrations of total cholesterol and triglyceride and an increase in HDL, together with a decrease in LDL- and VLDL-cholesterols (Imai & Nakachi 1995).

DENTAL CARIES AND GINGIVITIS
Green tea extract tablets and chewable oral preparations have been investigated for effects on dental plaque formation and gingival health under RCT conditions, overall producing favourable results (Liu & Chi 2000).

A double-blind study investigated the effects of green tea catechins and polyphenols on the gingiva when used in the form of chewable oral sweets (Krahwinkel & Willershausen 2000). Compared with placebo, the green tea product chewed eight times a day significantly decreased gingival inflammation and improved periodontal structures before the 21-day test period was complete.

Another study investigated Chinese green tea polyphenol tablets for effects on plaque formation in 150 volunteers (Liu & Chi 2000). The randomised, controlled crossover study showed that green tea polyphenol tablets used for 2 weeks were able to reduce the plaque index compared with placebo treatment.
SUNBURN PROTECTION
More than 150 in vitro and in vivo studies have reported the benefits of green tea for the skin (Hsu 2005). Many mechanisms appear to be responsible; green tea protects against UV and PUVA-induced carcinogenesis and DNA damage and is a potent antioxidant, antiinflammatory, anticanerogenic and vulnerary (Hsu 2005). Research with human volunteers has found that topical application of green tea to skin half an hour before UV exposure protects against the development of sunburn and epidermal damage (Elmets et al 2001). The effect is dose dependent and strongest for the epigallocatechin gallate and epicatechin gallate polyphenols.

WEIGHT LOSS
Animal studies have found that green tea consumption reduces food intake, decreases leptin levels and body weight and increases thermogenesis. However, little clinical evidence is available to determine whether similar effects are seen in humans (Sayama et al 2000). One open study did find that a green tea extract AR25 (80% ethanolic dry extract standardised at 25% catechins) taken by moderately obese patients resulted in a 4.6% decrease in body weight and 4.5% decrease in waist circumference after 3 months' treatment (Chantre & Lairon 2002). However, a recent double-blind, placebo-controlled parallel trial, with 46 women attempting a weight-loss program over 87 days, showed no difference between the green tea group and the placebo group (Diepvens et al 2005). Both groups lost the same amount of weight and displayed similar metabolic parameters at the end of the study period.

OTHER USES
Green tea has many other uses, based on results of animal or in vitro tests or on the known pharmacological activity of constituents such as tannin and caffeine. Some of these other uses are treatment of diarrhoea, Crohn’s disease, dyspepsia and other digestive symptoms, promoting alertness and cognitive performance, reducing symptoms of headache and promoting diuresis.

COLITIS
Animal studies have shown anti-inflammatory activity in colitis (Varilek et al 2001).

RENAL FAILURE
Green tea extract blocks the development of cardiac hypertrophy in experimental renal failure and reduces oxidative stress, according to the results of investigation with animal models (Priyadarshi et al 2003, Yokozawa et al 1996).
**DIABETES**
Animal studies have identified that green tea polyphenols reduce serum glucose levels and improve kidney function in diabetes (Sabu et al 2002, Rhee et al 2002).

**DOSSAGE RANGE**
In general, it appears that 8–10 cups of green tea/day are required.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
Due to the caffeine content of the herb, CNS stimulation and diuresis is possible when consumed in large amounts.

One clinical study found an absence of any severe adverse effects when 15 green tea tablets were taken daily (2.25 g green tea extracts, 337.5 mg EGCG and 135 mg caffeine) for 6 months (Fujiki et al 1999).

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**
Controlled studies are not available for green tea, so interactions are speculative and based on evidence of pharmacological activity. Therefore, clinical significance is unknown.

**ANTICOAGULANTS**
Antagonistic interaction — a case of excessive consumption (2.25–4.5 L of green tea/day) was reported to inhibit warfarin activity and decrease the INR (Taylor & Wilt 1999). Intake of large quantities of green tea should be done with caution.

**HYPOGLYCAEMIC AGENTS**
Caffeine-containing beverages can increase blood sugar levels when used in sufficient quantity (200 mg of caffeine); however, hypoglycaemic activity has been reported for green tea, which could theoretically negate this effect (Ulbricht & Basch 2005) — the outcome of this combination is uncertain, therefore observe patient.

**IRON**
Tannins found in herbs such as *Camellia sinensis* can bind to iron and reduce its absorption — separate doses by at least 2 hours. Protein and iron have also been found to interact with tea polyphenols and decrease their antioxidant effects in vitro (Alexandropoulou et al 2006). The clinical significance of this is as yet unknown.

**CNS STIMULANTS**
Based on the caffeine content of the herb, high intakes of green tea can theoretically increase the CNS stimulation effects of drugs such as nicotine and beta-adrenergic agonists (e.g. salbutamol); however, the clinical significance of this is unknown — observe patient.
**CNS DEPRESSANTS**
Based on the caffeine content of the herb, high intakes of green tea can theoretically decrease the CNS depressant effects of drugs such as benzodiazepines; however, the clinical significance of this is unknown — observe patient.

**DIURETICS**
Based on the caffeine content of the herb, high intakes of green tea can theoretically increase the diuretic effects of drugs such as frusemide; however, the clinical significance of this is unknown — observe patient.

**DRUGS METABOLISED BY CYP1A2**
The inhibitory effect of caffeine on CYP1A2 may cause other interactions, but this is speculative for green tea.

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**
Excessive intake will increase the likelihood of adverse effects due to the caffeine content and therefore is not recommended for people with hypertension, cardiac arrhythmias, severe liver disease, anxiety disorders or insomnia.

**PREGNANCY USE**
Usual dietary intakes appear safe; however, excessive use is not recommended due to the caffeine content of green tea.

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**
- Green tea is made from the same plant as black tea, but it contains greater amounts of polyphenols and generally less caffeine.
- Green tea has been found to have significant antioxidant activity and protect against sunburn when applied topically.
- It has antibacterial activity and is used in oral preparations to reduce plaque and improve gingival health.
- Several in vitro and animal studies have shown anticarcinogenic activity for a range of cancers and some epidemiological evidence further suggests cancer protective effects may occur; however, further research is required.
- Epidemiological evidence suggests green tea may reduce cardiovascular disease.
- Preliminary evidence from animal studies has shown that it increases thermogenesis, decreases appetite, reduces inflammation in colitis, reduces glucose levels in diabetes and may be useful in renal failure.
- It is not known whether use will promote weight loss in humans as research results are inconsistent.
ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What will this herb do for me?
Green tea has strong antioxidant effects and some population studies suggest that regular consumption may reduce the risk of cancer and cardiovascular disease. Early research has found it may be useful for sunburn protection, reducing dental plaque formation, colitis, diabetes, renal disease and as an antiseptic. However, further research is required.

When will it start to work?
This will depend on the reason it is being used. Preventative health benefits are likely to take several years of regular daily tea consumption. Effects on oral health care appear to develop more quickly, within 2 weeks.

Are there any safety issues?
Research suggests that green tea is a safe substance when used in usual dietary doses, but excessive consumption may produce side-effects, chiefly because of the caffeine content.

REFERENCES


Guarana

Historical note Guarana has been used by the Amazonian Indians of South America for centuries to enhance energy levels, suppress appetite, increase libido and protect them from malaria. More recently, hot guarana beverages have been adopted by the greater population as a tonic to enhance wellbeing, in much the same way coffee is drunk in Australia.

COMMON NAME
Guarana

OTHER NAMES
Brazilian cocoa, guarana gum, guarana paste, quarana, quarane, uabano, uaranzeiro, zoom

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Paullinia cupana (family Sapindaceae)

PLANT PART USED
Seeds

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Guarana seeds are a rich source of caffeine, containing 3–6% on a dry weight basis (Saldana et al 2002). Other major compounds include theobromine, theophylline, tannins, resins, protein, fat and saponins (Duke 2003).

MAIN ACTIONS
A review of the scientific literature reveals that guarana itself has only recently been the subject of clinical studies. As such, studies pertaining to caffeine are sometimes used to explain the herb’s action, an approach that presupposes the other constituents are either inactive or of such weak effect they need not be recognised. Although this approach is convenient and provides us with some understanding of the herb’s pharmacological effects, the results of three recent clinical studies suggest that guarana’s effects on cognitive function are due to more than its caffeine content.

CNS STIMULANT
Although guarana has not been clinically investigated for its effects on the CNS there is a great deal of evidence to show that caffeine is an antagonist of the adenosine receptor, which produces a net increase in CNS activity because the inhibitory action
of adenosine is blocked (Smith 2002). This results in the release of a variety of neurotransmitters (e.g. noradrenaline, acetylcholine, dopamine, and the GABA/benzodiazepine system).

OTHER ACTIONS

INHIBITS PLATELET AGGREGATION
Guarana inhibits platelet aggregation both in vitro and in vivo (Bydlowski et al 1988, 1991). Decreased thromboxane synthesis may in part explain this activity.

MAY INCREASE GASTRIC ACID SECRETION AND DELAY GASTRIC EMPTYING
This has been demonstrated in a clinical study using a herbal combination known as ‘YGD’, which contains yerbe mate (leaves of *Ilex paraguayensis*), guarana (seeds of *Paullinia cupana*) and damiana (leaves of *Turnera diffusa* var. *aphrodisiaca*) (Andersen & Fogh 2001). Whether stand-alone treatment with guarana will produce similar effects is unknown.

CHEMOPROTECTIVE
Guarana has been shown to be chemoprotective in a mouse hepatocarcinogenesis model (Fukumatsu et al 2005). The herb was found to reduce the cellular proliferation of preneoplastic cells.

ANTIBACTERIAL
In vitro data has demonstrated the antibacterial and antioxidant effects of the ethanolic extract of guarana, thought to be due to the phenolic compounds (Basile et al 2005). Guarana was shown to be effective against many pathogens of the digestive tract including *Escherichia coli*, *Salmonella typhimurium* and *Staphylococcus aureus*. This adds weight to the traditional use of guarana for diarrhoea.

OTHER ACTIONS RELATING TO CAFFEINE CONTENT
Although these have not been tested for guarana directly, the caffeine content, which is well absorbed from the herb, may cause mild dilation of the blood vessels; an increase in blood pressure, renin and catecholamine release, urine output, metabolic rate, lipolysis, respiration, intestinal peristalsis; and inhibition of CYP1A2. Caffeine also possesses thermogenic properties (Astrup 2000).

CLINICAL USE

ALERTNESS
Although clinical studies using guarana are not available, anecdotal evidence has suggested that it may produce similar effects to caffeine on subjective feelings of wellbeing, energy, motivation and self-confidence (Mumford et al 1994). Guarana
may exert a mild antidepressant effect as demonstrated in forced-swimming and open field tests in mice (Campos et al 2005).

**ENHANCED COGNITIVE FUNCTION AND ALERTNESS**

Two recent double-blind studies have confirmed that guarana has significant effects on cognitive function and provide evidence that these effects are not just mediated by the herb’s caffeine content (Haskell et al 2005, Kennedy et al 2004).

One double-blind, placebo-controlled study assessed the effects of four different doses of guarana (37.5, 75, 150 and 300 mg) in 22 subjects (Haskell et al 2005). Cognitive performance and mood were assessed at baseline and again 1, 3 and 6 hours after each dose using the Cognitive Drug Research computerised assessment battery, serial subtraction tasks, a sentence verification task and visual analogue mood scales. All doses improved picture and word recognition, results on the Bond–Lader visual analogue scales and caffeine research visual analogue scales showing improvements in alertness and reduced ratings of headache. The two lower doses produced better results than the two higher doses, which were associated with impaired accuracy of choice reaction and on one of the subtraction tests. Several observations suggest that these effects were not due to caffeine alone. Firstly, effects were still apparent 6 hours after administration and secondly, better results were obtained with a dose of 37.5 mg than 300 mg with a caffeine content of less than 5 mg in the lowest dose.

Another double-blind, placebo controlled study investigated the effects of a single dose of guarana (75 mg) on cognition, in combination with and in comparison to ginseng (*Panax ginseng* 200 mg) in 28 healthy volunteers (Kennedy et al 2004). Guarana was shown to produce comparable effects to ginseng in improved task performance with all three treatments better than placebo. However, guarana was superior to ginseng in improving the speed of performed tasks. Once again, given the low caffeine content (9 mg) of the guarana extract used in that study, the effects are unlikely to be attributable to its caffeine content alone, particularly as the dose was shown to be as effective as a 16-fold dose of pure caffeine.

Two previous randomised, double-blind studies have investigated the effects of guarana on cognitive function and produced negative results (Galduroz & Carlini 1994, 1996). One study involving 45 healthy elderly volunteers found that guarana treatment was ineffective (Galduroz & Carlini 1996), which confirmed the findings of a previous study conducted by the same authors (Galduroz & Carlini 1994). Studies in some animal models have produced positive results for both single-dose and long-term administration of guarana, observing a positive effect on memory acquisition and memory maintenance (Espinola et al 1997).
ERGOGENIC AID
Guarana is also used as an ergogenic aid by some athletes, most likely because caffeine and theophylline have been used in this way, to improve performance in training and competition (Graham 2001). No human studies testing guarana for effects on physical performance could be located. Referring to caffeine studies, it appears that ergogenic effects are observed under some conditions but not others (Doherty et al 2002, Hunter et al 2002, Ryu et al 2001). Testing guarana in several animal models has also produced contradictory results. Significant increases in physical capacity have been observed with a dose of 0.3 mg/mL of a guarana suspension after 100 and 200 days’ treatment. However, the same effect was not seen with a concentration of 3.0 mg/mL nor of a solution of caffeine 0.1 mg/mL (Espinola et al 1997).

APPETITE SUPPRESSANT AND WEIGHT-LOSS AID
Weight-loss products often contain guarana, in the belief that it suppresses appetite and may have thermogenic and diuretic activities. An animal study designed to evaluate the effects of guarana and decaffeinated guarana found that only the caffeinated herb was effective for weight loss (Lima et al 2005). To date, most clinical studies have investigated the effects of guarana in combination with other herbs. A double-blind, RCT testing a combination of yerbe mate (leaves of Ilex paraguayensis), guarana (seeds of Paullinia cupana) and damiana (leaves of Turnera diffusa var. aphrodisiaca) found that the preparation significantly delayed gastric emptying, reduced the time to perceived gastric fullness and induced significant weight loss over 45 days in overweight patients (Andersen & Fogh 2001). Another randomised double-blind placebo-controlled trial evaluated the effects of guarana in combination with Ma Huang (Ephedra spp.) and concluded that the formula was effective for weight-loss in overweight men after 8 weeks of treatment (Boozer et al 2001). Although encouraging, the effects of guarana as a stand-alone treatment need to be confirmed.

OTHER USES
Traditionally, guarana has been used as an aphrodisiac, treatment for diarrhoea, and as a beverage in some cultures.

DOSAGE RANGE
ACCORDING TO CLINICAL TRIALS
• Cognition, alertness and mood: doses between 37.5 and 75 mg are sufficient to provide effects for at least 6 hours.
For other indications, guarana has not been significantly researched. Based on caffeine content, it is advised that doses should not exceed that amount that will provide approximately 250 mg of caffeine daily. This is equivalent to 2.5–4 g guarana/day, depending on the caffeine content of the preparation.

**TOXICITY**
Animal tests have shown that high doses of 1000–2000 mg/kg (intraperitoneal and oral) do not induce significant alterations in parameters for toxicological screening, suggesting an absence of toxicity (Mattei et al 1998).

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
Due to a lack of clinical studies testing guarana as a stand-alone treatment, it is difficult to determine what adverse reactions may exist.

Based on caffeine content, the following adverse effects may theoretically occur at high doses: agitation, tremor, anxiety, restlessness, headache, seizures, tachycardia and premature ventricular contractions, diarrhoea, gastrointestinal cramping, nausea and vomiting and diuresis.

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**
Controlled studies are not available, therefore interactions are theoretical and based on evidence of pharmacological activity with uncertain clinical significance.

**CNS STIMULANTS**
Additive stimulant activity is theoretically possible — use with caution.

**CNS SEDATIVES**
Antagonistic effects are theoretically possible due to the herb’s CNS stimulant activity. However, one in vivo study found no interaction with pentobarbital. Observe patients taking this combination.

**DIURETICS**
Additive diuresis effects are theoretically possible — use this combination with caution.

**ANTICOAGULANTS**
Increased bleeding is theoretically possible as in vitro and in vivo research has identified antiplatelet activity for guarana — use this combination with caution.

**ANTIHYPOTENSIVE DRUGS**
Antagonist effects theoretically possible — use caution.
ANTIPLATELET DRUGS
Additive effects are theoretically possible as in vitro and in vivo research has identified antiplatelet activity for guarana — observe patients taking this combination.

DIGOXIN
Long-term use of high-dose supplements can result in reduced potassium levels, which lowers the threshold for drug toxicity. Avoid long-term use of high-dose guarana preparations.

DRUGS METABOLISED BY CYP1A2
The inhibitory effect of caffeine on CYP1A2 may cause other interactions, but this is highly speculative for guarana.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Caffeine is no longer a prohibited substance under the Olympic Games antidoping code.
   Refer to the following website for further information —
   Contraindicated in hypertension and cardiac arrhythmias.
   Use with caution in anxiety states, hypertension, diabetes, gastric ulcers and chronic headache.
   Suspend use of concentrated extracts 1 week before major surgery.

PREGNANCY USE
The use of caffeine-containing preparations should be limited during pregnancy; therefore, the caffeine content of guarana products should be checked before use.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Guarana has mild CNS stimulant properties and may increase alertness, cognitive function and possibly mood.
- Current evidence is inconclusive as to whether guarana also enhances physical stamina.
- It has been used in combination with other herbs as a weight-loss aid with some degree of success. However, it is unknown what role guarana played in achieving these results.
- In some sensitive individuals, guarana may produce CNS stimulant-related side-effects, such as elevated heart rate and blood pressure, tremor, restlessness and excitability.
- Guarana also shows antimicrobial and chemoprotective activities in preliminary studies.
ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this herb do for me?
Guarana is a herbal stimulant that increases alertness, cognitive function and possibly mood.

When will it start to work?
Effects are expected 1–2 hours after ingestion, although this will vary depending on the individual and the current level of wakefulness.

Are there any safety issues?
Used in small amounts, it is likely to have a degree of stimulant activity and decrease fatigue; however, as with all stimulants, excessive use or long-term use can be detrimental to health. Guarana should be used with caution in people with hypertension, anxiety states, gastric ulcers, diabetes and some types of cardiovascular disease. It may also interact with a variety of medicines and therefore it is recommended to consult your healthcare professional if you are currently taking pharmaceutical medication.

REFERENCES


© 2007 Elsevier Australia
Gymnema sylvestre

Historical note  Gymnema has been called the sugar destroyer because the leaf suppresses the ability to taste sweet on the tongue. It has been used to treat diabetes, as well as to aid metabolic control when combined with other herbal medicines.

COMMON NAME
Gymnema

OTHER NAMES
Asclepias geminate, gur-mar (sugar destroyer), gnmema melicida, gokhru, gulmaro, gumar, gurnara, gurnarbooti, kar-e-khask, kharak, merasingi, meshasringi, masabedda, Periploca sylvestris, sirukurinjan

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Gymnema sylvestre (family Asclepiadaceae)

PLANT PART USED
Leaf

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Gymnema contains gymnemasaponins, gynemmasides, gymnemic acids and gypenosides (Duke 2003), as well as a range of nutrients including ascorbic acid, beta-carotene, chromium, iron, magnesium and potassium. The main active chemical components appear to be the gymnemic acids, gymnemasaponins and the polypeptide gurmarin.

MAIN ACTIONS
SWEET TASTE SUPPRESSION
The constituent, gymnemic acid, inhibits the ability to taste sweetness in animal models (Fushiki et al 1992, Harada & Kasahara 2000, Kurihara 1969, 1992) and humans (Frank et al 1992). In humans, the administration of 5 mmol/L gurmarin to the tongue raised the threshold ability to taste sucrose from 0.01 mol/L to 1 mol/L for several hours. It is suggested that gurmarin acts on the apical side of the taste cell, possibly by binding to the sweet taste receptor protein (Miyasaka & Imoto 1995).
**ANTIDIABETIC**

Gymnema's antidiabetic activity appears to be due to a combination of mechanisms, including reduction of intestinal absorption of glucose (Shimizu et al 2001), inhibition of active glucose transport in the small intestine (Yoshioka 1986), suppression of glucose-mediated release of gastric inhibitory peptide (Fushiki et al 1992), increased activity of the enzymes responsible for glucose uptake and use (Shanmugasundaram et al 1983), stimulation of insulin secretion (Persaud et al 1999, Sugihara et al 2000) and increasing the number of islets of Langerhans and number of pancreatic beta cells (Prakash et al 1986, Shanmugasundaram et al 1990). *Gymnema montanum* (a related species) has also been shown to have antidiabetic, antiperoxidative and antioxidant effects in diabetic rats (Ananthan et al 2003) and antioxidant activity evident in the liver, kidney (Ananthan et al 2004) and brain tissue (Ramkumar et al 2004).

Animal studies suggest that gymnema will reduce blood sugar levels in response to a glucose load in streptozotocin-induced mildly diabetic rats (Okabayashi et al 1990) and alloxan-induced diabetic rats (Shanmugasundaram et al 1983, Srivastava et al 1985), but will not affect blood sugar levels in normal or spontaneously hypertensive rats (Preuss et al 1998). Gymnema extract has been found to return blood sugar and insulin levels to normal in streptozotocin-induced diabetic rats after 20–60 days and to double the number of pancreatic islet and beta cells (Shanmugasundaram et al 1990), as well as maintaining stable blood glucose levels in rats given beryllium nitrate (Prakash et al 1986).

There are currently two negative studies. One study using a dose of 120 mg/kg/day oral gymnema did not find improvements in insulin resistance in insulin-resistant, streptozotocin-induced diabetic rats (Tominaga et al 1995) and the other study, from Brazil using dried powdered leaves of gymnema, found no effect on blood glucose, body weight or food or water consumption in non-diabetic and alloxan-diabetic rats (Galletto et al 2004).

Gymnemic acids have demonstrated hypoglycaemic activity in dexamethasone-induced hyperglycaemic mice (Gholap & Kar 2005) and gymnema, together with other ayurvedic herbs, has been shown to have hypoglycaemic activity in streptozotocin-induced diabetic mice (Mutalik et al 2005) and rats (Babu & Prince 2004). Gymnema has also been shown to protect the lens against sugar-induced cataract by multiple mechanisms (Moghaddam et al 2005) and protect against the adverse effects of lipid peroxidation on brain and retinal cholinesterases, suggesting a use in preventing the cholinergic neural and retinal complications of hyperglycaemia in diabetes (Ramkumar et al 2005).
REDUCES CHOLESTEROL LEVELS
Gymnema extract reduces fat digestibility and increases faecal excretion of cholesterol, neutral sterols and acid steroids, as well as reducing serum cholesterol and triglyceride levels, according to two animal studies (Nakamura et al 1999, Shigematsu et al 2001). Nakamura et al also found that oral administration of gymnema decreased body weight and food intake.

ANTIMICROBIAL ACTIVITY
The ethanolic extract of Gymnema sylvestre leaves demonstrated antimicrobial activity against Bacillus pumilis, B. subtilis, Pseudomonas aeruginosa and Staphylococcus aureus (Satdive et al 2003). Antiviral activity has also been reported (Porchezhian & Dobriyal 2003).

OTHER ACTIONS
Gymnema has been found to contain an ATPase inhibitor, which has been shown to block the effect of ATPase from snake venom (Manjunatha & Veerabasappa 1982). According to one animal study, oral administration of gymnema reduces body weight and food intake (Nakamura et al 1999).

CLINICAL USE
SWEET TASTE SUPPRESSION AND WEIGHT LOSS
A controlled trial of normal volunteers found that an aqueous gymnema extract with concentrated gymnemic acid reduced sweetness perception by 50%, resulting in reduced caloric consumption 1.5 hours after the sweetness-numbing effect stopped (Brala & Hagen 1983). This result supports the findings of animal studies. In a 6-week randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled study, a multi-herbal formula that included gymnema was found to significantly reduce body weight and fat loss in obese adults after 6 weeks (Woodgate & Conquer 2003); however, the role of gymnema in achieving these results is unknown.

DIABETES TYPE 1 AND TYPE 2
Orally, gymnema leaf is used to treat both type 1 and type 2 diabetes and hyperglycaemia. There are two clinical trials that suggest that gymnema may be useful in reducing blood glucose levels in both type 1 and type 2 diabetes. In one study the ability of the GS4 extract (400 mg/day) to supplement the use of conventional oral hypoglycaemic agents (glibenclamide or tolbutamide) was studied in 22 patients with type 2 diabetes over 18–20 months. Treatment resulted in a significant reduction in fasting blood glucose (174 ± 7 vs 124 ± 5 mg/dL), HbA1c (11.91 ± 0.3 vs 8.48 ± 0.13%) and glycosylated plasma protein levels (3.74 ± 0.07
vs 2.46 ± 0.05 µg hexose/mg protein) and raised insulin levels, whereas no changes were observed in the control group. This allowed for a decrease in conventional drug dosage and in five cases, blood glucose homeostasis was maintained with GS4 alone, suggesting that beta-cell function may have been restored (Baskaran et al 1990). In a second study, 27 type 2 diabetes patients were treated with 400 mg of an aqueous extract of gymnema in addition to insulin. Insulin requirements were reduced, as were fasting blood sugar levels, HbA1c, glycosylated plasma protein levels and serum lipids (Shanmugasundaram et al 1990).

A small, double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled trial of a multi-herbal Ayurvedic formula containing gymnema showed significantly improved glucose control and reduced HbA1c levels in patients with type 2 diabetes within the 3-month test period (Hsia et al 2004).

**Clinical note — Herbs and diabetes**

Diabetes has been recognised since ancient times and as early as 700–200 BC two types of diabetes were recorded in India, one of which was diet related and the other was described as genetic. Diabetes has also been recognised in China for thousands of years, where it is attributed to yin deficiency and treated with an integrated approach that involves more than lowering blood glucose. At least 30 different herbal medicines are used in the management of diabetes and its complications, with several of these having outstanding beneficial potential.

**HYPERCHOLESTEROLAEMIA AND HYPERTRIGLYCERIDAEMIA**

Short-term animal studies have shown that gymnema extracts are able to reduce serum cholesterol and triglyceride levels in experimentally induced hyperlipidaemic rats (Bishayee & Chatterjee 1994) and in spontaneously hypertensive rats (Preuss et al 1998), as well as in humans with type 2 diabetes (Shanmugasundaram et al 1990). These results have not yet been established by long-term studies.

**OTHER USES**

Gymnema has been used as a snake bite cure because it inhibits venom ATPase (Manjunatha & Veerabasappa 1982), and has also been used as a leaf paste to treat toe mycosis.

In Ayurvedic medicine, gymnema is used as an antimalarial, digestive stimulant, laxative and diuretic and as a treatment for cough, fever, urinary conditions and diabetes.
**DOSAGE RANGE**
The typical therapeutic dose of an extract, standardised to contain 24% gymnemic acids, is 400–600 mg/day. When used to regulate blood sugar, gymnema may best be administered in divided doses with meals.

**DIABETES**
- Liquid extract (1:1): 25–75 mL/week or 3.6–11.0 mL/day.
- 6–60 g/day of dried leaf infusion

**SWEET CRAVING AND REDUCING SWEET PERCEPTION**
- Liquid extract (1:1): 1–2 mL dropped onto the tongue and rinsed off — repeat every 2–3 hours as required.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
Theoretically, gastric irritation can occur, because of the saponin content. There are two case reports of hepatotoxicity resulting from the consumption of a weight-loss formula containing gymnema and other herbs, including *Garcinia cambogia*, willow bark, glucomannan, green tea and guarana (Stevens et al 2005). In one study, gymnema was found to have a toxic effect in mice, producing increased lipid peroxidation at doses of 26.8 mg/kg, but was safe and antiperoxidative at doses of 13.4 mg/kg (Gholap & Kar 2005). In another study it was concluded that there was no toxic effect in rats treated with gymnema at doses of more than 500 mg/kg for 52 weeks (Ogawa et al 2004).

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**
Controlled studies are not available; therefore, interactions are based on evidence of activity and are largely theoretical and speculative.

**HYPOGLYCAEMIC AGENTS AND INSULIN**
Gymnema may enhance the blood-glucose-lowering effects of insulin and hypoglycaemic agents, so should be used with caution. In practice the interaction may be useful, as a reduction in the drug dose could theoretically be achieved under professional supervision.

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**
Blood glucose levels should be monitored closely when used in conjunction with insulin and hypoglycaemic agents.

**PREGNANCY USE**
There is insufficient reliable information available about the safety of gymnema in pregnancy.
PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING

- Gymnema suppresses the ability to taste sweet on the tongue.
- It may be useful as a weight-loss aid.
- Clinical studies have shown that gymnema can be used to help control blood sugar levels in diabetes.
- When used with hypoglycaemic medications, blood sugar levels need to be monitored to prevent hypoglycaemia.
- Preliminary research suggests that it may also have a role in elevated cholesterol and triglyceride levels.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What will this herb do for me?
Gymnema has the uncanny ability to reduce the tongue’s perception of sweetness. It can also stabilise blood sugar levels and may be useful as a weight-loss aid.

When will it start to work?
It reduces the taste of sweetness rapidly, lasting for several hours, but effects on blood sugar develop with long-term use.

Are there any safety issues?
Diabetic patients on medication should carefully monitor their blood sugar levels when taking this herb, because it may further reduce levels.

REFERENCES


Hawthorn

Historical note  The name ‘hawthorn’ comes from ‘hedgethorn’, after its use as a living fence in much of Europe. Dioscorides and Paracelsus praised hawthorn for its heart-strengthening properties and it is also known in TCM. It has since been shown to have many different positive effects on the heart and is a popular prescription medicine in Germany for heart failure (Rigelsky & Sweet 2002).

COMMON NAME
Hawthorn

OTHER NAMES
Aubepine, bianco spino, crataegi (azarolus, flos, folium, folium cum flore [flowering top], fructus [berry], nigra, pentagyna, sinaica boiss), English hawthorn, Chinese hawthorn, fructus oxyacanthae, fructus spinae albae, hagedorn, hedgethorn, maybush, maythorn, meidorn, oneseed hawthorn, shanzha, weissdorn, whitehorne

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Crataegus laevigata, C. cuneata, C. oxyacantha, C. monogyna, C. pinnatifida (family Rosaceae [Rose])

PLANT PARTS USED
Extracts of the leaf and flower are most commonly used, although the fruit (berries) may also be used.

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Leaves and flowers contain about 1% flavonoids, such as rutin, quercitin, vitexin, hyperisise, 1–3% oligomeric procyanidins including catechin and epicatechin, triterpenes, sterols, polyphenols, coumarins, tannins (Blumenthal et al 2000). Although the therapeutic actions cannot be attributed to single compounds, the herb has been standardised to flavonoid content (hyperoside as marker) and procyanidins (epicatechin as marker). RP WS 1442 is a hydro-alcoholic extract of hawthorn prepared from leaves and blossoms and standardised to 18.75% oligomeric procyanidins. It has been found that bioequivalent extracts as determined by noradrenaline-induced contraction of isolated guinea pig aorta rings can be obtained using 40–70% ethanol or methanol as the extraction solvent, whereas aqueous
extracts had markedly different constituents and pharmacological effects (Vierling et al 2003).

**MAIN ACTIONS**

**CARDIOVASCULAR EFFECTS**

Hawthorn has been extensively studied, and there is good research evidence to support cardiovascular actions that include increasing the force of myocardial contraction (positive inotropic action), increasing coronary blood flow, reducing myocardial oxygen demand, protecting against myocardial damage, improving heart rate variability, as well as hypotensive and antiarrhythmic effects (Mills & Bone 2000). Hawthorn therefore differs from other inotropic agents, which reduce the refractory period and increase the risk of arrhythmias (Joseph et al 1995).


Hawthorn flavonoids have also been shown to decrease the cytotoxicity of hypoxia to human umbilical vein endothelial cells in vitro (Lan et al 2005), as well as protect against delayed cell death caused by ischaemia/reperfusion brain injury in gerbils (Zhang et al 2004). These effects have been attributed to improving energy metabolism, scavenging oxygen free radicals and inhibiting production of free radicals in ischaemic myocardium (Min et al 2005, Zhang et al 2004).

Dose-dependent increases in coronary blood flow have been shown in isolated human coronary arteries and it has been suggested that this is caused by membrane hyperpolarisation of vascular smooth-muscle cells due to potassium channel activation (Siegel et al 1996). Other in vitro evidence suggests that phosphodiesterase inhibition may underlie the myocardial action of hawthorn (Schussler et al 1995).

Much of hawthorn’s cardiovascular activity is attributed to its flavonoid constituents (Nemec 1999) and hawthorn extract is classified as a flavonoid drug in Germany. Studies using isolated guinea pig hearts suggest that the oligomeric procyanidins contribute to the vasodilating and positive inotropic effects of hawthorn (Schussler et al 1995), and ischaemia–reperfusion studies in rats suggest that these compounds are also responsible for cardioprotective effects (Chatterjee et al 1997).

Several procyanidins have shown ACE inhibition in vitro, in a reversible and non-competitive manner (Uchida et al 1987). Although the original study identifying this
activity tested isolated procyanidins from another herb, they are found in relatively high concentration in hawthorn extracts (Murray 1995).

**ANTIOXIDANT**

It has been suggested that the part of the mechanism for hawthorn’s cardiovascular protective effects may be due to protection against human LDL from oxidation or indirect protection via maintenance of alpha-tocopherol (Zhang et al 2001), as hawthorn extract has been found to possess antioxidant activity in vitro (Periera et al 2000, Rajalakshmi et al 2000) with effective inhibition of oxidative processes, efficient scavenging of \( \text{O}_2^- \) and possible enhancement of glutathione biosynthesis (Ljubuncic et al 2005).

Hawthorn’s free radical scavenging capacity is considered to relate to its total phenolic proanthocyanidin and flavonoid content (Bahorun et al 1996, Rakotoarison et al 1997). This is supported by a study that demonstrated that the capacity of hawthorn extracts to inhibit \( \text{Cu}^{2+} \)-induced LDL oxidation is linked to their content in total polyphenols, proanthocyanidins (global and oligomeric forms), as well as to their content of two individual phenolics: a flavonol, the dimeric procyanidin B2, and a flavonol glycoside, hyperoside (Quettier-Deleu et al 2003). The highest antioxidant activity appears to be found in the flower buds, which are high in proanthocyanidin content, and the leaves, which are high in flavonoid content (Bahorun et al 1994).

**LIPID-LOWERING**

The monomeric catechins and oligomeric procyanidins are thought to contribute to a hypocholesterolaemic effect. This may occur through a variety of mechanisms including an upregulation of hepatic LDL receptors, enhanced degradation of cholesterol to bile acids and suppression of cholesterol biosynthesis (Rajendran et al 1996), as well as inhibition of cholesterol absorption mediated by downregulation of intestinal acyl CoA:cholesterol acyltransferase activity (Zhang et al 2002).

A traditional multi-herbal Chinese formula containing hawthorn has been found to prevent experimental hypercholesterolaemia in rats, probably due to its choleretic function (Cheng et al 2004). A different multi-herbal Chinese formula was also found to protect vascular endothelial cells from excess cholesterol in vivo (Tu et al 2003).

**ANTIVIRAL**

The O-glycosidic flavonoids and the oligomeric proanthocyanidins exhibited significant inhibitory activity against herpes simplex virus type 1 in vitro (Shahat et al 2002).
**ANTI-INFLAMMATORY**
Flavonoids from hawthorn have demonstrated anti-inflammatory and hepatoprotective activity in vitro and in vivo. It is thought that this is achieved by reducing the release of PGE\(_2\) and NO in vitro, as well as decreasing the serum levels of the hepatic enzyme markers, reducing the incidence of liver lesions, such as neutrophil infiltration and necrosis, and decreasing the hepatic expression of iNOS and COX-2 in vivo (Kao et al 2005).

A hydro-alcoholic extract from the flower heads of *C. oxyacantha* has also been found to inhibit thromboxane A2 biosynthesis in vitro (Nemecz 1999).

Hawthorn fruit has been shown to be protective in experimental models of inflammatory bowel disease in mice with restoration of body weight and colon length, increased haemoglobin count, reduced signs of inflammation, such as infiltration by polymorphonuclear leukocytes and multiple erosive lesions, along with improved survival (Fujisawa et al 2005).

**OTHER ACTIONS**
Hawthorn may decrease uterine tone and motility and exert antispasmodic and analgesic effects. The high procyanidin content in the herb provides a theoretical basis for other actions such as antimicrobial, anti-allergic and collagen-stabilising effects.

An aqueous extract of hawthorn leaves exhibited hypoglycaemic activity in streptozotocin-diabetic rats, but not in normal rats, without affecting basal plasma insulin concentrations (Jouad et al 2003). Hawthorn has also been found to have hepatoprotective effects in rats with myocardial infarction, with protection against alterations in tissue marker enzymes of experimentally induced liver injury and a reversal of histological changes (Thirupurasundari et al 2005). A multi-herbal Chinese medicine formula containing hawthorn reversed alcohol-induced fatty liver and liver damage in rats (Kwon et al 2005).

**CLINICAL USE**

**CONGESTIVE HEART FAILURE**
There is considerable experimental and clinical evidence supporting the use of hawthorn as an effective treatment for congestive cardiac failure in patients with slight, mild limitation of activity who are comfortable at rest or with mild exertion (i.e. NYHA class II).

A meta-analysis of rigorous clinical trials of the use of hawthorn extract to treat patients with chronic heart failure (NYHA classes I–III) included eight trials involving 632 subjects. The results of the meta-analysis showed that treatment with standard-
ised hawthorn extracts produced significant improvement in maximal workload, pressure–heart rate product, as well as symptoms such as dyspnoea and fatigue as compared with placebo (Pittler et al 2003). The hawthorn extract most commonly used in these trials was WS 1442, which is standardised to 18.8% oligomeric procyanidins. In some cases, hawthorn extract was used as an adjunct to standard therapy (such as diuretics) and the daily dose ranged from 160 mg to 1800 mg.

A review of the results of 13 clinical trials published from 1981 to 1996, involving over 839 patients, suggests that a daily dose of 900 mg hawthorn extract improves exercise tolerance, anaerobic threshold and ejection fraction, as well as subjective symptoms (Kraft 2000). Studies comparing hawthorn extract LI 132 (Crataegus novo 450, 1 tablet twice daily) to the ACE inhibitor captopril suggests that the LI 132 extract is comparable in effectiveness to a dose of 37.5 mg captopril, but may be better tolerated (Tauchert 1994).

These findings are supported by the results of more recent studies. A recent prospective, cohort study involving 952 patients with NYHA stage II heart failure compared the use of the WS 1442 extract of hawthorn either alone or in conjunction with conventional therapy to conventional medication. After 2 years, the hawthorn cohort was found to have similar or more pronounced improvements than the conventional medication group with reduced fatigue, stress dyspnoea, and palpitations along with marked reduction in the use of drugs such as ACE inhibitors, cardiac glycosides, diuretics and beta-blockers (Habs 2004).

In two further double-blind studies of NYHA class II patients, one using the WS 1442 extract in 40 patients (Zapfe 2001) and another using the Rob 10 standardised extract of fresh hawthorn berries in 88 patients (Rietbrock et al 2001), 3 months’ treatment with hawthorn led to significantly improved exercise tolerance, reduced subjective symptoms, and was found to be safe and well tolerated. In 2003, another placebo-controlled, randomised, parallel-group, multicentre trial confirmed the efficacy and safety of a standardised extract of fresh berries of Crataegus oxyacantha L. and C. monogyna Jacq. (crataegusian) in patients with cardiac failure NYHA class II (Degnering et al 2003). This study of 143 patients (mean age 64.8 years) used a dose of 30 drops of the extract taken three times daily for 8 weeks and found a significant increase in exercise tolerance, but no difference in symptoms or blood pressure–heart rate product. Researchers suggested that dyspnoea and fatigue do not occur until a significantly higher wattage had been reached in the bicycle exercise testing and that further improvements were likely to occur if treatment time was extended.

In another RCT of patients with marked limitation of activity, who were comfortable only at rest (NYHA class III), 209 patients received standardised extract

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
WS 1442 at doses of either 900 mg or 1800 mg or placebo in addition to pre-existing diuretic treatment. After 16 weeks, significant dose-dependent improvements in exercise capacity and clinical signs and symptoms were seen with the herbal extract, with patients on the higher dosage experiencing less adverse events such as dizziness and vertigo (Tauchert et al 2002). A large, international, multicentre double-blind study is investigating the influence of the WS 1442 extract on mortality of up to 2300 cardiac patients over 24 months (Holubarsch et al 2000).

In an observational cohort study of 212 patients, a homeopathic hawthorn preparation was found to be non-inferior to standard treatment (ACE inhibitor/diuretics) for mild cardiac insufficiency in all parameters except blood pressure reduction (Schroder et al 2003).

As well as being shown to be effective when used alone, hawthorn is effective in reducing symptoms of congestive heart failure when used in combination with other herbs such as camphor. This was demonstrated in an open study of 319 patients (Harder & Rietbrock 1990), as well as in a double-blind study of 190 patients (Schmidt et al 2000).

Commission E supports the use of hawthorn leaf and flower to treat decreased cardiac output (NYHA class II) (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**ARRHYTHMIAS, HYPERTENSION AND ATHEROSCLEROSIS**

In addition to treating congestive cardiac failure, hawthorn has traditionally been used to treat arrhythmias, hypertension and atherosclerosis, with some evidence to support these uses, although large controlled clinical studies are required (Petkov 1979).

In one double-blind RCT of 92 subjects aged 40–60 years, a hydro-alcoholic extract of Iranian hawthorn (C. curvisepala Lind) given three times daily was found to produce a significant decrease in both systolic and diastolic blood pressure after 3 months. Antihypertensive activity was also observed in one uncontrolled study that used hawthorn berry tincture (equivalent to 4.3 g/day of berry) (Mills & Bone 2000), whereas three randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, clinical trials have shown that a combination of natural D-camphor and an extract from fresh hawthorn berries was effective in treating orthostatic hypotension (Georg Belz & Loew 2003, Hempel et al 2005, Kroll et al 2005).

One study that focused primarily on mild hypertension compared the hypotensive effect of low dose hawthorn extract (500 mg) and magnesium supplements, individually and in combination, to placebo. Walker et al found hawthorn treatment significantly reduced resting diastolic blood pressure at week 10 compared with the other groups. In addition, a trend towards a reduction in anxiety was also observed.
with hawthorn treatment, which is an interesting observation as sedative effects have been observed in animal models.

**HYPERLIPIDAEMIA**
Hawthorn fruit extract has been reported to reduce serum lipid levels, as well as to reduce lipid deposits in the liver and aortas of rats (Shanthi et al. 1994) and rabbits (Zhang et al. 2002) fed a hyperlipidaemic diet. In combination with other traditionally used Chinese herbs, hawthorn has been shown to also reduce serum lipid levels in both animals (He et al. 1990, la Cour et al. 1995) and humans (Chen et al. 1995, Guan et al. 1995).

**ADJUSTMENT DISORDER**
The results of a double-blind trial of 182 people suggest that hawthorn in combination with other herbs such as passiflora and valeriana may be beneficial for people with adjustment disorder with anxious mood (Bourin et al. 1997). Another double-blind trial of 264 people found that a combination containing *Crataegus oxyacantha* and *Eschscholtzia californica* along with magnesium was effective in treating mild-to-moderate anxiety disorder (Hanus et al. 2004).

**OTHER USES**
As it has a high flavonoid content, hawthorn is also used to strengthen connective tissue, decrease capillary fragility, and prevent collagen destruction of joints and therefore may be beneficial in the treatment of certain connective tissue disorders (Mills & Bone 2000). Hawthorn has been traditionally used as a diuretic and to treat kidney and bladder stones. In practice, it is also used at the first signs of a herpes simplex infection, to prevent lesion formation and halt infection.

**DOSAGE RANGE**
- Infusion of dried herb: 0.2–2 g three times daily.
- Tincture of leaf (1:5): 3.5–17.5 mL/day.
- Fluid extract (1:2): 3–6 mL/day.
- Herpes simplex outbreak: 4 mL three times daily at the first sign of infection for a maximum of 2 days.

**TOXICITY**
No target toxicity to 100-fold the human dose of the WS 1442 extract is defined (Schlegelmilch & Heywood 1994). This is in contrast to inotropic drugs, such as digoxin, which generally have a low therapeutic index.
ADVERSE REACTIONS
Sweating, nausea, fatigue and a rash on the hands have been reported in one clinical trial using a commercial preparation containing 30 mg hawthorn extract standardised to 1 mg procyanidins (Iwamoto et al 1981). Headache, sweating, dizziness, palpitations, sleepiness, agitation, and gastrointestinal symptoms have also been reported (Rigelsky & Sweet 2002).

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
Controlled studies are not available; therefore, interactions are based on evidence of activity and are largely theoretical and speculative.

CARDIAC GLYCOSIDES
Hawthorn may theoretically potentiate the effects of cardiac glycosides, as both in vitro and in vivo studies indicate that it has positive inotropic activity. Furthermore, the flavonoid components of hawthorn may also affect P-glycoprotein function and cause interactions with drugs that are P-glycoprotein substrates, such as digoxin. In practice, however, a randomised crossover trial with eight healthy volunteers evaluating digoxin 0.25 mg alone for 10 days and digoxin 0.25 mg with Crataegus special extract WS 1442 (hawthorn leaves with flowers) 450 mg twice daily for 21 days found no significant difference to any measured pharmacokinetic parameters, suggesting that hawthorn and digoxin in these doses may be co-administered safely (Tankanow et al 2003). Caution — use under professional supervision and monitor drug requirements.

ANTIHYPERTENSIVE DRUGS
Theoretically, hawthorn may potentiate blood pressure-lowering effects, thereby requiring modified drug doses. Observe patients taking this combination and monitor drug requirements — interaction may be beneficial under professional supervision.

PREGNANCY USE
In vivo and in vitro evidence of uterine activity has been reported, therefore this herb should not be used in pregnancy (Newell et al 1996).

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Hawthorn has positive inotropic action, increases coronary blood flow, reduces myocardial oxygen demand, protects against myocardial damage, improves heart rate variability, as well as having hypotensive and antiarrhythmic effects.
- Although considered relatively effective, heart disease can be a very serious medical condition with a rapidly changing course and should not be treated without close
medical supervision. In particular, chest pain and shortness of breath are extremely serious symptoms that require immediate medical attention.

- It may take 2–6 weeks' treatment to notice a benefit of treatment with hawthorn, and heart rate and blood pressure should be monitored.
- Hawthorn also exhibits antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, antiviral and lipid-lowering activity.
- Great care should be exercised if hawthorn is to be combined with other drugs that affect the heart.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What will this herb do for me?
Hawthorn appears to be useful in treating a variety of heart conditions such as high blood pressure, hyperlipidaemia and heart failure.

When will it start to work?
Studies suggest it will start to have effects in 2–6 weeks.

Are there any safety issues?
Heart conditions are potentially serious, therefore professional supervision is required.

REFERENCES


Joseph G, Zhao Y, Klaus W. Pharmacologic action profile of crataegus extract in comparison to epinephrine, atenolol, milrinone and digoxin in the isolated perfused guinea pig heart. Arzneimittelforschung 1995; 45(12): 1261-5.


Honey

Historical note  Honey has been used since ancient times as a healing agent for wounds and a treatment for gastric complaints. In ancient Greece, Hippocrates recommended honey and vinegar for pain and honey combinations for fever. It is also recommended by the Bible and Koran as a medicinal agent. Over the past few decades, scientific research has confirmed its role as a successful wound treatment. It is also known as honig and miel blanc.

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Caffeic acids, benzoic acid and its esters, phenolic acid and its esters, flavanoids, beeswax, inhibin, glucose oxidase and catalase, although other as yet unidentified constituents also exist (Aysan et al 2002).

The composition of a particular honey greatly depends on the composition of the nectar it originated from, and therefore the plant species involved in its production.

MAIN ACTIONS
ANTIBACTERIAL
The type of plant species involved in honey production is significant, as some confer greater antibacterial properties than others. Currently, evidence suggests honey produced from the tea trees Leptospernum scoparium (New Zealand manuka) and Lipolygalifolium (Australian jelly bush) are the most effective, but batch testing is still required to verify the antibacterial activity of commercially produced preparations. However, other honeys, not specifically promoted for their anti-bacterial qualities, may still have antibacterial activity (Lusby et al 2005).

Several mechanisms of action account for the antibacterial effect of honey.

Hydrogen peroxide content  Hydrogen peroxide has antiseptic properties and is naturally produced in honey. The relative levels of two enzymes, glucose oxidase and catalase, within honey influence the amount of hydrogen peroxide produced. Additionally, diluting full-density honey encourages greater hydrogen peroxide and gluconic acid production from glucose (Aysan et al 2002). Differences in antimicrobial activity among honeys from various floral sources may, in part, be a reflection of these natural variations.

High osmolarity  Honey has a high sugar and low water content, with sugar concentration reaching up to 80% in some seasons. Its high osmolarity is considered
important because sugar molecules bind existing water molecules, thereby reducing the amount of water available to bacteria.

**Low pH** Honey is an acidic substance and therefore unfavourable to the growth of certain bacteria. In vitro testing shows that *Leptospermum* honey can inhibit the growth of several important bacterial pathogens, including *Escherichia coli*, *Salmonella typhimurium*, *Shigella sonnei*, *Listeria monocytogenes*, *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Bacillus cereus* and *Streptococcus mutans* (Steinberg et al 1996, Taormina et al 2001).

Honey has also been tested for efficacy against a range of drug-resistant bacteria, with positive results (Cooper et al 2002). Eighteen strains of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* and 27 strains of vancomycin-sensitive and resistant enterococci isolated from infected wounds and hospital surfaces were sensitive to concentrations below 10% w/v of manuka honey and pasture honey. Artificial honey was also effective, but concentrations three times greater were required to produce similar results.

**Phenolic compounds** The antioxidant activity of honey has been associated with the levels of phenolic compounds found in a range of floral honeys, with antioxidant activity varying between 43.0% and 95.7%. The responsible compounds suggested include p-coumaric acid, kaempferol, chrysin and apigenin (Baltrusaityte et al 2006). The variation in the concentration of the phenolic compounds between different floral honeys is further confirmed through another study, which found millefiori honey highest in polyphenols, flavonoids, and a corresponding high antioxidant activity, when compared with *Acacia* honey (Blasa et al 2006).

**DEODORISES WOUNDS**
Bacteria use the glucose found in honey in preference to amino acids, thereby producing lactic acid instead of malodorous products (Molan 2001).

**DEBRIDING**
The topical application of honey to a wound tends to lift debris to the surface, allowing for easier cleaning, which may be related to its high osmolarity. Honey does not adhere to the surface, allowing for easier and less painful wound dressing changes (Subrahmanyam 1998).

**ENHANCES WOUND HEALING**
Clinical evidence suggests that the application of honey hastens granulation and epithelialisation of necrotic tissue by various mechanisms. It appears to stimulate the growth of new blood capillaries and cytokine production, thereby stimulating tissue regeneration. The high viscosity of honey and its hygroscopic character allows it to
form a physical barrier, creating a moist environment and a reduction in local oedema (Aysan et al 2002). Clinically, it appears that epithelialisation is accelerated between day 6 and 9 (Subrahmanyam 1998), and that honey is more beneficial than EUSOL as a wound dressing agent (Okeniyi et al 2005).

**ANTIOXIDANT**
The phenolic compounds found in honey, namely the flavonoids, render it a good source of antioxidants (Al-Mamary et al 2002, Schramm et al 2003). In vitro tests have confirmed a significant link between absorbance and antioxidant power, with darker, more opaque honeys having stronger antioxidant power than lighter, clearer honeys (Taormina et al 2001). More specifically, manuka honey has been identified to be a specific scavenger of superoxide anions (Inoue et al 2005).

**IMMUNOMODULATION**
An animal study has shown that both immunocompetent and immunodeficient mice had increased humoral immunity following administration with honey (Karmakar et al 2004).

**OTHER ACTIONS**
An in vitro study showed that honey prevented binding of Salmonella interiditis to intestinal epithelial cells (Alnaqdy et al 2005) at dilutions of up to 1:8.

Preliminary studies suggest honey may have an impact on reducing the intoxicating effects of alcohol; however, that research was of questionable quality, and a better standard of research is required to validate this effect (Onyesom 2004, 2005).

Honey may also have an antimitogenic activity against a common food carcinogen and mutagen Trp-p-1 (Wang et al 2002).

**CLINICAL USE**

**BURNS**
Honey-dressed wounds had a more rapid reduction in local inflammation, better infection control and more rapid healing than for standard treatment with silver sulfadiazine (SSD) in a randomised clinical trial (Subrahmanyam 1998). Of the 25 patients with wounds, 84% treated with honey achieved satisfactory epithelialisation by day 7 and 100% by day 21 compared with 72% and 84% respectively with SSD. Histological evidence confirmed honey’s superiority, with 80% of wounds showing significant reparative activity and decreased inflammation by day 7 compared with 52% with SSD.
**WOUND HEALING**

Honey applications have been used to treat various types of wounds, such as leg ulcers and bed sores. Honey has also been used to enhance postoperative wound healing and partial-thickness wounds such as split-thickness skin graft donor sites.

One study involving 59 patients with wounds or ulcers not responding to conventional treatment were treated with topical unprocessed honey. Of these, 58 cases were reported as showing remarkable recovery, with all sterile wounds remaining sterile until healed and infected wounds becoming sterile within 1 week. The one case that did not respond involved a malignant ulcer. Clinically, honey promoted rapid debridement of wounds, epithelialisation and reduced oedema surrounding the ulcers (Efem 1988). Vardi et al (1998) found that 5–10 mL of unprocessed honey applied twice daily to infants not responding to at least 2 weeks of conventional treatment was able to produce a marked clinical improvement within 5 days and complete wound closure after 21 days.

A non-randomised, prospective open study compared the effects of honey-impregnated gauze, paraffin gauze, hydrocolloid dressings and saline-soaked gauzes in 88 patients who underwent skin grafting (Misirlioglu et al 2003). Honey gauzes produced a faster epithelialisation and reduced the sensation of pain compared with paraffin and saline-soaked gauzes. This effect was the same as that observed for hydrocolloid dressings.

A honey-medicated dressing was tested for ease of use and efficacy in a study involving 60 patients with chronic, complicated surgical or acute traumatic wounds (Ahmed et al 2003). In 59 patients, the preparation was considered easy to use and helpful in cleaning wounds.

A RCT of 101 haemodialysis patients compared thrice-weekly application of Medihoney with mupirocin for the healing of catheter exit sites. This study found the honey to be safe, effective and more affordable than mupirocin for this group (Johnson et al 2005).

**FOURNIER’S GANGRENE**

In 1996, the effects of topical unprocessed honey, together with traditional treatment in a rare condition known as Fournier’s gangrene (FG) were investigated (Hejase et al 1996). FG is an extensive fulminant infection of the genitals, perineum or the abdominal wall and is generally regarded as a difficult-to-manage infectious disease. The major gross pathological findings are oedema and necrosis of the subcutaneous tissues when the male genitalia are involved, necessitating aggressive treatment.

In this study, 38 patients admitted with the diagnosis of FG were treated with broad-spectrum triple antimicrobial therapy, broad debridement, exhaustive cleaning
and application of unprocessed honey dressings daily for 2 weeks. Rapid changes to wound healing rate occurred after 10 days' honey use — advancing necrosis ceased, wounds became sterile, odour was reduced and fluid was absorbed from wounds. Honey also enhanced the growth and multiplication of epithelial cells from the wound edges and reduced the need for scrotal plastic surgery. As a result of the impressive results obtained, these researchers highly recommend honey dressings in gangrenous wounds, suggesting that it significantly improved patient outcomes.

OTHER USES

ALLERGIC RHINOCONJUNCTIVITIS
Honey does not reduce symptoms of allergic rhinoconjunctivitis, according to results from a randomised study of 36 volunteers (Rajan et al 2002). The study compared the effects of unpasteurised unfiltered honey with filtered and pasteurised honey and corn syrup with synthetic honey flavouring and found that an oral dose of 1 tablespoon daily of either honey produced the same results as placebo.

HELICOBACTER PYLORI INFECTION

PERIODONTAL DISEASE
In vitro tests show that honey can inhibit the growth of oral bacteria (Steinberg et al 1996). As a follow-up investigation, 10 volunteers were asked to swish 5 mL of honey around their mouths for 4 minutes then swallow. At 10 minutes after honey use, oral bacterial counts were significantly decreased.

ECZEMA
Topically applied honey is sometimes used to enhance skin healing and prevent infection in eczema. Although controlled trials are not available, the clinical evidence generally supporting efficacy in wound healing provides a theoretical basis for its use in this condition.

COLON CANCER
Preliminary animal studies on experimentally induced colon cancer show the potential for reduced disease development (Duleva & Bajkova 2005), but further study is necessary to validate this for clinical use.

DYSBIOSIS
Honey may assist in inhibiting the growth of the pathogenic bacteria *Clostridium perfringens* and *Eubacterium aerofaciens*, while not affecting, or possibly promoting,
the growth of beneficial *Bifidobacterium* spp. (*B. longum*, *B. adolescentis*, *B. breve*, *B. bifidum* and *B. infantis*) (Shin & Ustunol 2005).

**DOSAGE RANGE**
Honey is applied topically (see ‘Tips on how best to use honey in practice’ below).

**TOXICITY**
Not applicable — used externally.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
A mild transient stinging may occur when applied to open wounds. If this is too uncomfortable, honey can be washed away with warm water.

Allergic reactions have also been reported, but these are considered rare.

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**
None known

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**

**DIABETICS**
Honey contains a large concentration of glucose. If applied to large open wounds, it may theoretically elevate blood sugar levels — monitor blood sugar levels.

**PREGNANCY USE**
Safety has not been scientifically established, but historical use suggests that it is safe.

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**
- Topical application of honey has been used to enhance wound healing and infection control.
- Honey has a deodorising and debriding effect on wounds, accelerates epithelialisation and reduces inflammation and pain.
- Effects are generally seen within 7 days of use.
- Not all honeys have significant antibacterial properties; however, research has identified the New Zealand *Leptospermum* (manuka honey) and Australian jelly bush honey as having potent activity.
- The honey to be used as a topical wound-healing agent or dermatological treatment should ideally be sterile and tested for clinical activity.

**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**
What will honey do for me?
If you apply a honey preparation that has tested positive for antibacterial activity, it will enhance wound healing, reduce pain and inflammation, and reduce the risk of wound infection.
When will it start to work?
Studies have found that by the 7th day of use, most wounds show considerable improvement and healing.

Are there any safety issues?
Using sterile honey preparations is recommended.

**Tips on how best to use honey in practice**
- Ensure that there is an even coverage of the wound surface.
- Cavities may be filled by pouring in slightly warmed honey.
- Spreading honey on a dressing pad or gauze rather than on the wound directly will be more comfortable for the patient.
- The amount of honey needed depends on the amount of fluid leaking from the wound — if honey becomes diluted, it will be less effective; typically, 20 mL of honey is used on a 10 cm × 10 cm dressing.
- Cover with absorbent secondary dressings to prevent honey oozing out from the dressing. Change the dressings more frequently if the honey is being diluted — otherwise change every day or two.

*Adapted from www.worldwidewounds.com and www.manukahoney.co.uk.

**REFERENCES**
Hops

Historical note  Although hops are most famous for producing the bitter flavour in beer, this plant has been used since ancient times to treat digestive complaints and for its slight narcotic and sedative actions. The climbing nature of the herb influenced its common name, as this is derived from the Anglo-Saxon hoppan, which means ‘to climb’.

COMMON NAME
Hops

OTHER NAMES
Common hops, European hops, hop strobile, hopfen, houblon, humulus, lupulus, lupulin

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Humulus lupulus (family Cannabinaee)

PLANT PART USED
Dried strobiles

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Resinous bitter principles (mostly alpha-bitter and beta-bitter acids) and their oxidative degradation products, polyphenolic condensed tannins, volatile oil, polysaccharides, mainly monoterpenes and sesquiterpenes, flavonoids (xanthohumol, isoxanthohumol, kaempferol, quercetin and rutin), phenolic acids, and amino acids (Blumenthal et al 2000).

MAIN ACTIONS
Traditionally, hops are viewed as a bitter tonic with antispasmodic, relaxant and sedative actions.

SEDATIVE
A long history of use within well-established systems of traditional medicine, together with scientific testing, have suggested that hops have significant sedative activity (Blumenthal et al 2000). A recent in vivo study found that both the extract of hops and a fraction containing alpha-bitter acids had significant sedative properties in mice (Zanoli et al 2005). Both extracts were also found to have an antidepressant action.
ANTIMICROBIAL
Hops extract and hops oil have activity against the Gram-positive bacteria (*Bacillus subtilis* and *Staphylococcus aureus*) and the fungus *Trichophyton mentagrophytes var. interdigitale*, but almost no activity against the Gram-negative bacterium *Escherichia coli* and the yeast *Candida albicans* (Langezaal et al 1992). A review of the antimicrobial properties concluded that hops were also effective against the parasite *Plasmodium falciparum* and a range of viruses including HSV types 1 and 2, cytomegalovirus and HIV (Gerhauser 2005a). The mechanism of anti-HIV activity is not fully understood, but it is thought that the flavonoid xanthohumol may inhibit transcription (Wang et al 2004).

OESTROGENIC EFFECTS
Hops showed significant competitive binding to alpha and beta oestrogen receptors and upregulation of progesterone receptors in vitro (Liu et al 2001). The oestrogenic activity is thought to be due to the constituent 8-prenylnaringenin (Milligan et al 1999, 2000), which is converted by intestinal microflora from isoxanthohumol (Possemiers et al 2005).

POSSIBLE CHEMOPREVENTATIVE EFFECTS
A chalcone flavonoid, xanthohumol and a flavone isomer of xanthohumol found in hops act as antiproliferative agents in vitro (Miranda et al 1999, Stevens & Page 2004). In vitro data has demonstrated that hops induces detoxification enzymes, in particular quinone reductase, which may contribute to its chemoprotective effects (Dietz et al 2005). A review concluded that this compound has the ability to protect in the initiation, promotion and progression stages of cancer (Gerhauser 2005b).

OTHER ACTIONS
CYTOCHROME P450 INDUCTION
Colupulone, a beta-bitter acid, was reported to induce the cytochrome P450 system and increase mRNA levels of cytochrome 2B and 3A in rats (Shipp et al 1994). Another study found that the flavonoids from hops inhibit the cytochrome P450 system in humans, in particular cytochromes 1A1, 1b1, 1A2, but not 2E1 or 3A4 (Henderson et al 2000). A recent review concluded that hops inhibits phase 1 detoxification and enhances phase two by inducing quinone reductase (Gerhauser et al 2002, Stevens & Page 2004). The clinical significance of these findings is unknown.

ANTI-INFLAMMATORY
Hops may demonstrate an anti-inflammatory action. The chalones, including xanthohumol, from hops significantly reduced NO by suppressing iNOS in mouse
macrophage cells (Zhao et al 2003, 2005). Xanthohumol has also been reported to inhibit COX-1 and COX-2 activity (Gerhauser 2005b).

**CLINICAL USE**
In practice, the herb is prescribed in combination with other herbal medicines, such as valerian and passionflower. As is representative of clinical practice, most studies have investigated the effects of hops in combination with other herbs.

**RESTLESSNESS AND ANXIETY**
Based on the herb’s sedative activity, it is likely to have some effect in the treatment of restlessness and anxiety, but careful dosing would be required to avoid sedation. This indication has been approved by Commission E and ESCOP (Blumenthal et al 1998).

**SLEEP DISTURBANCES**
Although there have been no clinical studies to support hops as a stand-alone sedative agent, several studies have demonstrated formulas combining hops with other sedative herbs are effective for insomnia.

Two randomised double-blind studies have investigated the effects of an oral preparation of hops and valerian in sleep disorders (Gerhard et al 1996, Schmitz & Jackel 1998). One study observed equivalent efficacy and tolerability of a hops–valerian preparation comparable to benzodiazepine treatment, with withdrawal symptoms only reported for benzodiazepine use (Schmitz & Jackel 1998). Improvement in subjective perceptions of sleep quality was confirmed in another study, which also reported that a hops–valerian combination was well tolerated compared with flunitrazepam (Gerhard et al 1996).

A pilot study (Fussel et al 2000) tested a preparation containing a fixed combination of valerian extract (500 mg) and hops extract (120 mg) known as Ze 91019 in 30 subjects with mild-to-moderate, non-organic insomnia. The treatment was used at bedtime and found to reduce sleep latency and wake time as diagnosed by polysomnographic examination.

Hops has also been used as a bath additive for sleep disturbances. A randomised double-blind study involving 40 patients found that taking three hops baths (4 g hops in a concentrated extract) on successive days significantly improved both objective and subjective sleep quality (Bone 1996).

Commission E and ESCOP support the use of hops for sleep disturbances, such as difficulty falling asleep and insomnia (Blumenthal et al 2000).

Based on the available evidence, further investigation is required to determine whether hops acts as a mild sedative independently, as a synergist, or does not have sedative action.
MENOPAUSE
A randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of a standardised extract of hops (100 µg and 250 µg 8-prenylnaringenin) demonstrated a significant reduction in menopausal discomfort, in particular hot flushes, after 12 weeks of treatment in 67 women (Heyerick et al 2005). Interestingly, no dose–response relationship could be made, as the lower standardised dose was shown to be more effective.

INDIGESTION
Due to the herb’s bitter nature, it is used to stimulate digestion and in the treatment of common digestive complaints such as dyspepsia and indigestion.

OTHER USES
Traditionally, hops are also used to treat neuralgia, depression and pain, and to wean patients off pharmaceutical sedative medicines. Topically it is used to treat leg ulcers and oedema.

DOSEAGE RANGE
- Infusion or decoction: 0.5 g in 150 mL water.
- Fluid extract (1:1) (g/mL): 0.5 mL/day; 0.5–1 mL three times daily.
- Tincture (1:5) (g/mL): 1–2.5 mL/day.
- Also used as a bath additive (4 g hops in a concentrated extract) and in pillows.

TOXICITY
Not known

ADVERSE REACTIONS
Drowsiness is theoretically possible at excessive doses. Contact with the herb or oil has resulted in reports of systemic urticaria, allergic dermatitis, respiratory allergy and anaphylaxis (Pradalier et al 2002).

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
Interactions reported here are theoretical and have yet to be tested clinically for significance.

PHARMACEUTICAL SEDATIVES
Additive effects are theoretically possible — observe the patient (this interaction may be beneficial).

DRUGS METABOLISED CHIEFLY WITH CYP2B OR CYP3A
Altered drug effect — CYP induction and inhibition has been demonstrated. However, it is unknown if these effects are clinically significant — observe the patient for signs of altered drug effectiveness.
ANTI-OESTROGENIC DRUGS
Hops may alter the efficacy of these medicines; use with caution in patients taking anti-oestrogenic drugs.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
According to one source, hops should be used with caution in depression (Ernst et al 2001). Due to the herb’s oestrogenic activity, disruption to the menstrual cycle is considered possible. Use is contraindicated in patients with oestrogen-dependent tumours.

PREGNANCY USE
Caution in pregnancy because of possible hormonal effects.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Hops is often used as a mild sedative in combination with other herbs such as valerian and passionflower.
- Several randomised trials have found that the combination of hops and valerian improve sleep quality, without next-day drowsiness; however, further investigation is required to determine the role of hops in achieving this effect.
- Although generally taken orally, it has also been successfully used as a bath additive and in aromatherapy pillows to induce sleep.
- It is traditionally used to treat anxiety, restlessness, pain, neuralgia and indigestion.
- It should not be used in patients with oestrogen-dependent tumours, and should be used with caution in pregnancy.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this herb do for me?
Hops may be a useful treatment for anxiety and restlessness, and when combined with other sedative herbs, such as valerian or passionflower, improves sleep quality without inducing next-day hangover effects.

When will it start to work?
Several doses may be required; however, effects are generally seen within 2 weeks.

Are there any safety issues?
 Constituents in the herb appear to have some oestrogenic activity, therefore people with oestrogen-dependent tumours should avoid its use.

REFERENCES


Horse chestnut

Historical note  The horse chestnut tree is commonly found in ornamental gardens throughout Europe, growing up to 35 metres in height. The seeds are not edible due to the presence of alkaloid saponins, but both the dried seeds and bark of the horse chestnut tree have been used medicinally since the 16th century. The seeds are also used for the children’s game ‘conkers’ and were used to produce acetone during World Wars I and II. In modern times, a dry extract referred to as horse chestnut seed extract (HCSE) is standardised to contain 16–21% triterpene glycosides (anhydrous escin). HCSE has been extensively researched for its beneficial effects and is commonly used by general practitioners in Germany for the treatment of chronic venous insufficiency. Homoeopathic preparations of both the leaf and seed are also used for treating haemorrhoids, lower back pain, and varicose veins and the buds and flower are used to make the Bach flower remedies chestnut bud and white chestnut. The active component escin is also used intravenously and topically in cosmetics (Bombardelli et al 1996, Herbalgram 2000, PDRHealth 2006).

OTHER NAMES
Aescule, buckeye, chestnut, Castaño de Indias, graine de marronier d’inde, escine, eschilo, hestekastanje, hippocastani semen, marron european, marronnier, roßkastaniensamen, Spanish chestnut

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Aesculus hippocastanum (family [Sapindaceae] Hippocastanaceae).

It should be differentiated from A. chinensis, A. turbinata, A. indica, A. californica and A. glabra.

PLANT PARTS USED
Seed. Less commonly bark, flower, and leaf.

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Horse chestnut seed contains 3–6% escin (aescin), a complex mixture of triterpene saponins (including the triterpene oligoglycosides escins Ia, Ib, IIa, IIb, and IIIa) (Yoshikawa et al 1996), the acylated polyhydroxyleanene triterpene oligoglycosides escins IIb, IV, V, and VI and isoeescins Ia, Ib, and V (Yoshikawa et al 1998), and the sapogenols hippocaesculin and barringtogenol-C (Konoshima & Lee 1986), flavonoids
(including flavonol oligosides of quercetin and kaempferol) (Hubner et al 1999), condensed tannins, quinines, sterols (including stigmasterol, alpha-spinasterol, and beta-sitosterol) (Senatore et al 1989), sugars (including glucose, xylose, and rhamnose) (Hubner et al 1999), and fatty acids (including linolenic, palmitic, and stearic acids) (Herbalgram 2000). It also contains the toxic glycoside esculin (aesculin), a hydroxycoumarin that may increase bleeding time due to antithrombin activity (NMCD 2006).

Horse chestnut bark and flowers also contain the sterols stigmasterol, alpha-spinasterol and beta-sitosterol (NMCD 2006).

Although the majority of trials in the scientific literature have focused on the benefits of the HCSE extract, some authors suggest that the flavonoids contained in A. hippocastanum may provide additional benefits (Mills & Bone 2000).

**MAIN ACTIONS**

The major benefits of *A. hippocastanum* are related to its ability to prevent the degradation of vascular walls, maintaining vascular integrity and in turn preventing vascular hyperpermeability and the resulting oedema.

**VASOPROTECTIVE/NORMALISES VASCULAR PERMEABILITY**

Horse chestnut appears to prevent the activation of leucocytes and therefore inhibit the activity of lysosomal enzymes (hyaluronidase and possibly elastase) involved in the degradation of proteoglycan (the main component of the extravascular matrix), thus reducing the breakdown of mucopolysaccharides in vascular walls (Pittler & Ernst 2004). Escin is the major constituent thought to be responsible for the inhibitory effects on hyaluronidase. Interestingly, ruscogenins found in *Ruscus aculeatus* L. (butcher’s broom) while ineffective on hyaluronidase activity exhibits significant anti-elastase activity (Facino et al 1995), which may explain the practice by many herbalists of combining the two herbs.

By reducing degradation, the synthesis of proteoglycans is able to occur, which reduces capillary hyperpermeability, preventing the leakage of fluid into intercellular spaces that results in oedema. The anti-exudative activity appears to be mediated by PGF$_{2\alpha}$ (Berti et al 1977). In animal studies the escins Ia, Ib, Ila, and IIb have been shown to reduce capillary hyperpermeability induced by histamine, ascetic acid, carrageenan and serotonin (Guillaume & Padioleau 1994, Matsuda et al 1997).

*Aesculus hippocastanum* promotes the proliferation behaviour of human endothelial cells in vitro in a dose-dependent manner (Fallier-Becker et al 2002) and may therefore also play a role in maintaining as well as protecting vascular walls.
By improving vascular tone, horse chestnut standardised extract (HCSE) may improve the flow of blood back to the heart, as demonstrated in animal studies in which it significantly increased, within normal arterial parameters, femoral venous pressure and flow, as well as thoracic lymphatic flow (Guillaume & Padioleau 1994).

**ANTI-OEDEMA**
By inhibiting the degradation of vascular walls, horse chestnut prevents the excessive exudation of fluid through the walls of the capillaries that would result in oedema. In animal experiments HCSE reduces oedema of both inflammatory and lymphatic origin (Guillaume & Padioleau 1994). Escin also appears to possess a weak diuretic activity (Mills & Bone 2000, NMCD 2006), which may support its anti-oedematous action.

**ANTI-INFLAMMATORY**
In animal studies the escins Ia, Ib, Ila, and IIb have been shown to reduce capillary hyperpermeability induced by histamine, ascetic acid, carrageenan and serotonin (Guillaume & Padioleau 1994, Matsuda et al 1997). A sterol extract of horse chestnut bark was shown to have anti-inflammatory effects comparable to calcium phenylbutazone in a study of rats with carrageenan-induced paw oedema (Senatore et al 1989).

**ANTIOXIDANT**
HCSE dose-dependently inhibits both enzymatic and non-enzymatic lipid peroxidation in vitro (Guillaume & Padioleau 1994).

**OTHER ACTIONS**
Animal studies have demonstrated that isolated escins Ia, Ib, Ila, and IIb inhibit gastric emptying time and ethanol absorption, and exert a hypoglycaemic activity in the oral glucose tolerance test in rats (Matsuda et al 1999, Yoshikawa et al 1996).

**CLINICAL USE**
HCSE is chiefly used in chronic pathological conditions of the veins where there is increased activity of lysosomal enzymes resulting in damage to and hyperpermeability of vascular walls (Herbalgram 2000). Numerous pharmacological and clinical trials have confirmed the efficacy of HCSE in stabilising the walls of the venous system and improving conditions such as chronic venous insufficiency (Blekic 1996).

**CHRONIC VENOUS INSUFFICIENCY**
There is strong evidence that HCSE is an effective treatment for chronic venous insufficiency (CVI). A recent Cochrane review that assessed 17 RCT of HCSE capsules (standardised to escin) concluded that signs and symptoms of CVI improve with HCSE as compared with placebo (Pittler & Ernst 2006). Six of seven placebo-controlled trials...
reported a significant reduction in leg pain for HCSE compared with placebo, another study reported a statistically significant improvement compared with baseline and one study reported that HCSE may be as effective as treatment with compression stockings. Pruritus was assessed in eight placebo-controlled trials. Four trials \( (n = 407) \) showed a statistically significant reduction compared with placebo and two trials showed a statistically significant difference in favour of HCSE compared with baseline, whereas one trial found no significant differences for a score including the symptom pruritus compared with compression. Meta-analysis of six trials \( (n = 502) \) suggested a reduction in leg volume compared with placebo, as did the studies in which the circumference at calf and ankle was assessed overall. Adverse events were usually mild and infrequent.

An earlier meta-analysis of 13 RCT \( (n = 051) \) and 3 observational studies \( (n = 10,725) \) found that HCSE reduced leg volume by 46.4 mL \( (95\% \text{ CI}, 11.3–81.4 \text{ mL}) \) and increased the likelihood of improvement in leg pain 4.1-fold \( (95\% \text{ CI}, 0.98–16.8) \), oedema 1.5-fold \( (95\% \text{ CI}, 1.2–1.9) \) and pruritus 1.7-fold \( (95\% \text{ CI}, 0.01–3.0) \). Observational studies reported significant improvements in pain, oedema, and leg fatigue/heaviness (Siebert et al 2002).

A case observational study involving more than 800 general practitioners and more than 5,000 patients with CVI taking HCSE reported that symptoms of pain, tiredness, tension and swelling in the leg, as well as pruritis and tendency to oedema, all improved markedly or disappeared completely, with the additional advantage of better compliance than compression therapy (Greens & Pohlmann 1996). In an open study carried out to assess the safety and tolerability of A. hippocastanum, 91 subjects received a tablet (equiv. 50 mg escin) twice daily for 8 consecutive weeks. At the end of the study the majority of patients rated horse chestnut to be good or very good for Widmer stage I and II CVI (Dickson et al 2004).

In patients suffering from CVI, oedema can give rise to trophic skin changes, inflammatory lesions, and an increase in blood coagulability with the associated risk of thrombosis development. Therapy should therefore be aimed at providing protection against oedema at the earliest possible stage of venous disease (Widmer CVI stages I or II) to prevent complications (Pohlmann et al 2000). As HCSE therapy appears to provide more significant benefits in the earlier stages (less so with the advancement of the condition) (Ottillinger & Greens 2001) it would appear prudent to initiate HCSE therapy early in order to prevent or delay the need for compression therapy, which is associated with discomfort and poor patient compliance. In the later stages combined treatment with compression stockings and HCSE may provide added benefit (Blaschek 2004, Pittler & Ernst 2004).
Although the standard dose used in clinical trials appears to be equivalent to 50 mg escin twice daily, one study observed that reducing the dose to 50 mg escin once daily at 8 weeks appeared to maintain similar benefits to the twice daily routine at the end of the 16-week observation period (Pohlmann et al 2000).

VENOUS LEG ULCERATION
Chronic venous leg ulceration (VLU) is a common recurrent problem in the elderly population and may result in immobility, with 45% of patients being housebound (Baker & Stacey 1994). As a result, individuals with VLU frequently experience depression, anxiety, social isolation, sleeplessness and reduced working capacity (Leach 2004). CVI, which is characterised by an increase in capillary permeability, inflammatory reactions, decreased lymphatic reabsorption, oedema and malnutrition of tissues, is a precursor to VLU. As HCSE increases venous tone while reducing venous fragility and capillary permeability and possesses anti-oedematous and anti-inflammatory properties, it has been speculated that by improving microcirculation, ulceration may be delayed or prevented (Blaschek 2004).

A preliminary 12-week triple-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled trial of 42 participants with active VLU suggested a potential role for HCSE; however, further large scale trials are required to fully elucidate the potential use in practice (Leach 2004). The second stage of this trial was a descriptive survey exploring current opinion and usage of such therapies. The author concluded that positive results from clinical trials may facilitate the incorporation of the extract into clinical practice, although the integration into mainstream medicine may be ‘constrained by medical and organizational gate keeping’ (Leach 2004).

HAEMORRHOIDS
Horse chestnut is also used both orally and topically for the treatment of haemorrhoids. Although it has not been investigated for this indication, escin has been shown to significantly improve signs and symptoms according to a placebo-controlled double-blind study of 72 volunteers with haemorrhoids. Symptom relief was experienced by 82% of subjects compared with 32% for placebo, and swelling improved in 87% compared with 38% for placebo (Sirtori 2001). Symptom improvement required at least 6 days of treatment to become established and the dose used was 40 mg escin three times daily.

OTHER USES
Traditionally the seeds are used to treat conditions affecting the veins, including haemorrhoids, phlebitis and varicose veins; bruising, diarrhoea, fever, enlarged prostate, eczema, menstrual pain, painful injuries, sprains, swelling, and spinal
problems. The leaf is used for soft tissue swelling from bone fracture and sprains, complaints after concussion, cough, arthritis, and rheumatism, and the bark for malaria and dysentery, and topically for SLE and skin ulcers (NMCD 2006, PDRHealth 2006).

There is some evidence to support its use for preventing post-operative oedema (Sirtori 2001) and the antioxidant, vascular toning and anti-inflammatory effects of A. hippocastanum, as well as the presence of flavonoids and other active constituents, may support some of the other traditional uses (Wilkinson & Brown 1999).

**DOSAGE RANGE**

- CVI: HCSE standardised to 50–100 mg escin twice daily. The dose may be reduced to a maintenance dose of 50 mg escin once daily after 8 weeks (Pohlmann et al 2000).
- Australian manufacturers recommend 2–5 mL/day of 1:2 liquid extract.
- 1–2 g dried seed daily (Mills & Bone 2005).

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**

According to clinical trials A. hippocastanum and HCSE appear to be well tolerated with only mild, infrequent reports of adverse reactions including gastric irritation, skin irritation, dizziness, nausea, headache and pruritus. Post marketing surveillance reports adverse effects of 0.7% (Micromedex 2003, NMCD 2006, PDRHealth 2006, Pittler & Ernst 2004, Siebert et al 2002).

Horse chestnut contains a toxic glycoside esculin (aesculin), a hydroxycoumarin that may increase bleeding time because of its antithrombin activity and may be lethal when the raw seeds, bark, flower or leaves are used orally. Poisoning has been reported from children drinking tea made with twigs and leaves (NMCD 2006).

Symptoms of overdose include diarrhoea, vomiting, reddening of the face, severe thirst, muscle twitching, weakness, loss of coordination, visual disturbances, enlarged pupils, depression, paralysis, stupor and loss of consciousness (NMCD 2006, PDRHealth 2006).

Horse chestnut can also cause hypersensitivity reactions, which occur more commonly in people who are allergic to latex (Diaz-Perales et al 1999).

Isolated cases of kidney and liver toxicity have occurred after intravenous and intramuscular administration (Micromedex 2003, Mills & Bone 2005, NMCD 2006).

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**

**ANTIPLATELET/ANTICOAGULANT MEDICATIONS**

Properly prepared HCSE should not contain esculin and should not carry the risk of antithrombin activity — observe. Clinical significance unclear.
HYPOGLYCAEMIC AGENTS
Due to possible hypoglycaemic activity, blood glucose levels should be monitored when horse chestnut or HCSE and hypoglycaemic agents are used concurrently (Yoshikawa et al 1996) — observe. Clinical significance unclear.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
As saponins may cause irritation to the gastric mucosa and skin, A. hippocastanum should be taken with food, should not be applied topically to broken or ulcerated skin and should be avoided by people with infectious or inflammatory conditions of the gastrointestinal tract, including coeliac disease and malabsorption disorders.

Horse chestnut flower, raw seed, branch bark, or leaf may be toxic and are not recommended (Tiffany et al 2002).

Avoid use in the presence of hepatic or renal impairment (Micromedex 2003, NMCD 2006, PDRHealth 2006).

PREGNANCY USE
Safety in pregnancy and lactation has not been well established.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Horse chestnut extract has been extensively researched for its beneficial effects and is commonly used by general practitioners in Germany for the treatment of CVI. There is strong evidence to support its use for this indication.
- In practice, a dry extract is used (HCSE standardised to contain 16–21% triterpene glycosides (anhydrous escin)).
- HSCE is also used for venous leg ulceration because it increases venous tone while reducing venous fragility and capillary permeability, and possesses anti-oedematous and anti-inflammatory properties.
- HSCE is also used in the treatment of haemorrhoids. Although it has not been investigated for this indication, escin has been shown to significantly improve signs and symptoms under double-blind study conditions.
- HSCE is well tolerated with only mild, infrequent reports of adverse reactions including gastric irritation, skin irritation, dizziness, nausea, headache and pruritis.
- Horse chestnut can cause hypersensitivity reactions, which occur more commonly in people who are allergic to latex.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this herb do for me?
Horse chestnut standardised extract (HSCE) will relieve signs and symptoms of chronic venous insufficiency such as pain, pruritis and oedema. It may also be of benefit in

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
alleviating signs and symptoms in people with haemorrhoids and has been used in venous leg ulceration.

**When will it start to work?**
Beneficial effects in chronic venous insufficiency have been reported within 3–6 weeks; however, 12 weeks may be required in some cases. Escin provided symptom relief in haemorrhoids after 6 days of treatment.

**Are there any safety issues?**
HSCE is well tolerated with only mild, infrequent reports of adverse reactions including gastric irritation, skin irritation, dizziness, nausea, headache and pruritus. It can cause hypersensitivity reactions, which occur more commonly in people who are allergic to latex.

**REFERENCES**

© 2007 Elsevier Australia


Natural Medicines Comprehensive Database (NMCD online) Horse chestnut: Monograph, 2006. Available at www.naturaldatabase.com (accessed 10-01-06)


PDRHealth (online). Horse chestnut, 2006. Available at: www.pdrhealth (accessed 10-01-06)


**Horseradish**

**Historical note**  Horseradish is a commonly used spice with a long history of use in traditional medicine. The leaves are used in cooking and as a salad green. Horseradish is one of the ‘five bitter herbs’ of the biblical Passover.

**COMMON NAME**
Horseradish

**OTHER NAMES**
*Amoraciae rusticanae* radix, great mountain root, great raifort, mountain radish, pepperrot, red cole

**BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY**
*Armoracia rusticana*, synonym *Armoracia lopathifolia*; *Cochlearia armoracia*, *Nasturtium armoracia*, *Roripa armoracia* (family Brassicaceae [Cruciferae])

**PLANT PARTS USED**
Fresh or dried roots and leaves

**CHEMICAL COMPONENTS**
Horseradish root contains volatile oils: glucosinolates (mustard oil glycosides); gluconasturtiin and sinigrin (S-glucosides); coumarins (aesculetin, scopoletin); phenolic acids, including caffeic acid derivatives and hydroxycinnamic acid derivatives, ascorbic acid; asparagin; resin; and peroxidase enzymes. Horseradish is one of the richest plant sources of peroxidase enzymes, which are commonly used as oxidising agents in commercial chemical tests.

**MAIN ACTIONS**
Horseradish is widely known for its pungent burning flavour. The pungency of horseradish is due to the release of allyl isothiocyanate and butylthiocyanate upon crushing (Yu et al 2001). These mustard oil constituents may irritate the mucous membranes upon contact or inhalation and may act as circulatory and digestive stimulants; however, the mechanism of action has not been fully elucidated (Blumenthal et al 2000, Jordt et al 2004). It has been found that topical application of allyl isothiocyanate to the skin activates sensory nerve endings producing pain, inflammation and hypersensitivity to thermal and mechanical stimuli due to
depolarising the same sensory neurons that are activated by capsaicin and
tetrahydrocannabinol (THC) (Jordt et al 2004).

**CIRCULATORY STIMULANT**
The mustard oils released when horseradish is crushed may be responsible for this
activity.

**DIGESTIVE STIMULANT**
Again, it is suspected that the mustard oils may be responsible.

**OTHER ACTIONS**
Isothiocyanates may inhibit thyroxine formation and be goitrogenic (Langer 1965) although this has not been demonstrated clinically.

The peroxidase enzymes assist in wound healing, whereas the sulphur-containing compounds may decrease the thickness of mucus by altering the structure of its mucopolysaccharide constituents (Mills & Bone 2000). Antispasmodic and antimicrobial effects have also been reported (Blumenthal et al 2000, Newell et al 1996).

Horseradish has been found to lower plasma cholesterol and faecal bile acid excretion in mice fed a cholesterol enriched diet possibly due to interference with exogenous cholesterol absorption (Balasinska et al 2005).

Horseradish has also been found to contain compounds that inhibit tumour cell growth and COX-1 enzymes (Weil et al 2005).

**CLINICAL USE**
The therapeutic effectiveness of horseradish has not been significantly investigated.

**NASAL CONGESTION AND SINUSITIS**
Horseradish is widely used in combination with other ingredients such as garlic in herbal decongestant formulations. Although clinical research is not available to confirm efficacy, anecdotal evidence suggests that a mild, transient decongestant effect occurs.

**OTHER USES**
It has been used traditionally to treat both bronchial and urinary infections, joint and tissue inflammation, as well as treating gall bladder disorders, reducing oedema and as an abortifacient (Skidmore-Roth 2001).

**DOSAGE RANGE**
- The typical dose of horseradish is 2–20 g/day of the root or equivalent preparations.
Topical preparations with a maximum of 2% mustard oil content are commonly used (Blumenthal et al 2000).

ADVERSE REACTIONS
Despite the potential for severe irritation, horseradish is generally recognised as safe for human consumption in quantities used as food. Consuming large amounts of horseradish can cause gastrointestinal upset, vomiting and diarrhoea, and irritation of mucous membranes. Skin contact with fresh horseradish can cause irritation and blistering or allergic reactions.

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
None known.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Internal use should be avoided in people with stomach and intestinal ulcers and kidney disorders, as well as in children under the age of 4 years (Blumenthal et al 2000).

Traditionally, horseradish is considered a warming herb that will exacerbate any ‘hot’ condition and is specifically indicated for ‘cold’ conditions.

PREGNANCY USE
The mustard oils released upon crushing are potentially toxic, therefore doses exceeding dietary intakes are contraindicated (Newell et al 1996).

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Horseradish has been used as a vegetable, condiment, diuretic and treatment for bronchial and urinary infections, joint and tissue inflammation, and swelling.
- It is widely used together with other herbal ingredients such as garlic, as a decongestant in the treatment of colds and sinusitis.
- No scientific investigation has been undertaken to support its use, although anecdotal evidence suggests it may be useful.
- Horseradish is generally safe when the root is ingested in usual dietary amounts, although excessive intake may cause irritation to the stomach, respiratory tract and kidneys.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this herb do for me?
Anecdotal evidence suggests it may have decongestant effects and is a very popular treatment when combined with other herbs such as garlic, to relieve the symptoms of colds and sinusitis.
When will it start to work?
It may relieve symptoms within the first few doses, but scientific tests are not available to confirm this.

Are there any safety issues?
Horseradish can be quite irritating for some people due to its bitter and pungent characteristics.

REFERENCES
Iodine

BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS

Iodine is an essential trace element required for the proper functioning of the thyroid gland. It is mainly consumed as iodide salts obtained from sea salt, shellfish and seawater fish and vegetables, which are more bioavailable than the organic form of iodine. The iodine content of soil is considered to be one of the most variable of all mineral levels, influenced by local geography and the type and quantity of fertiliser used in agriculture (Gropper et al 2005). The amount of iodine present in local drinking water (0.1–100 µg/L) is reported to be a good indication of soil levels (Geissler & Powers 2005). In iodine-deficient areas, the iodide concentration in drinking water is <2 µg/L (<15.8 nmol/L), whereas in areas close to the sea, the drinking water contains 4 to 10 µg/L (31.5–78.8 nmol/L) (Beers 2005).

Iodide is rapidly absorbed from the small intestine and distributed via the blood to a range of tissues, most notably the thyroid, which traps absorbed iodide through an ATP-dependent iodide pump. The thyroid contains 80% of the body’s iodine pool, which is approximately 15 mg in adults. Some is also found in the salivary, gastric and mammary glands (exclusively during pregnancy and lactation in the latter), as well as in the ovaries. As is the case with the thyroid, uptake into these tissues is regulated by thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) (Gropper et al 2005, Kohlmeier 2003).

Iodine is excreted via the kidneys and excretion occurs when the needs of the thyroid have been met and an excess remains (Kohlmeier 2003). The amount of iodine excreted in the urine reflects plasma levels and has been used since the middle of the 20th century to assess iodine status. Interestingly there is no renal conservation mechanism for this mineral and the only evidence of iodine preservation comes from the scavenging and recycling of thyroid hormones by the selenium-dependent deiodinase DII (Kohlmeier 2003). Of the total amount excreted, 20% occurs via faeces and additional losses can occur through sweat, which, although a minor eliminatory pathway under normal circumstances, can be a significant contributor for people living in hot climates with low dietary consumption (Gropper et al 2005).

Kohlmeier (2003) notes the Wolff-Chaikoff effect, which is the reduction in thyroid hormone production in response to acute large doses of iodine and was first described over 50 years ago. It is reported to occur through the downregulation of the active-transport mechanism present in the thyroid in response to high blood
levels. Other evidence points to temporary inhibition of thyroid peroxidase and therefore reduced thyroglobulin iodination reactions (Markou et al 2001).

**FOOD SOURCES**
Iodine can occur in foods as either an inorganic or organic salt, or as thyroxine in animal sources. Unlike many other essential nutrients, the organic form of iodine found in animal products has poor bioavailability, whereas the iodide salts found in the sea are almost completely absorbed (Jones 2002).

However, irrespective of whether it is animal or plant derived, food from the land has enormous variability in terms of iodine content, from 1 to 10 µg/kg, (Geissler & Powers 2005) due to iodine’s high solubility, which results in it leaching from the soil with heavy rain and weathering (Wahlqvist 2002).

Additionally, chemicals known as goitrogens are naturally found in some foods (e.g. brassica [cabbage] family) and these interfere with iodine utilisation and thyroid hormone production.

**BEST SOURCES**
Due to the high levels in the ocean of bioavailable iodide, all sea-dwelling creatures, animal or plant, are considered superior dietary sources.
- Seawater fish
- Shellfish
- Sea vegetables such as seaweeds
- Sea salt
- Iodised salt (fortified form of table salt)
- Commercially manufactured breads due to the iodate dough oxidisers
- Dairy milk (variable)

In Australia milk no longer supplies a significant amount of iodine, whereas in the United Kingdom it is still an important dietary source because of the use of both supplemented feeds and iodine-based antiseptics in the dairy industry (Geissler & Powers 2005).

**DEFICIENCY SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS**

**PRIMARY DEFICIENCY**
Iodine deficiency results when iodide intake is <20 µg/day (Kasper et al 2005). In situations of moderate deficiency, TSH induces thyroid hypertrophy in order to concentrate iodide, resulting in a goitre. Most of these cases remain euthyroid, but in cases of severe iodine deficiency, myxoedema may result in adults and cretinism in infants, both of which are serious conditions.
Myxoedema is characterised by swelling of the hands, face, feet and peri-orbital tissues and can lead to coma and death if sufficiently severe and left untreated. Endemic cretinism is divided into two forms, neurologic or myxoedematous, depending on the interplay of genetics and iodine deficiency. Usually children with neurologic cretinism are mentally deficient and often deaf mute but of normal height and strength and may have goitre. Myxoedematous cretinism is characterised by dwarfism, mental deficiency, dry skin, large tongue, umbilical hernia, muscular incoordination and puffy facial features. Concomitant selenium deficiency may be a contributing factor in myxoedematous cretinism. Early treatment with thyroid hormone supplementation can promote normal physical growth; however, intellectual disability may not be prevented and in very severe cases death may ensue.

The term 'iodine deficiency disorders' (IDD) has been coined to refer to the collection of health problems that result from iodine deficiency, ranging from the mild and common (e.g. goitre) to severe and life threatening (e.g. cretinism and myxoedema) (Gropper et al 2005).

Although severe iodine deficiency is rare in Australia and New Zealand, many parts of the world are well known for their low iodine levels. Countries where iodine deficiency is a primary concern include China, Latin America, South-East Asia and the eastern Mediterranean (Wahlqvist 2002). A report conducted by the World Health Organization in 2005 found that while many countries had succeeded in reaching optimal iodine nutrition through enhanced monitoring and fortification programs over the past decade, an estimated 285 million school-age children and close to 2 million adults worldwide still suffer from iodine deficiency (Andersson et al 2005).

**Fetal deficiency**  The fetus depends solely on maternal thyroid hormones during the first trimester of pregnancy (Soldin et al 2002). From week 11 of gestation, thyroid hormone synthesis usually begins but remains dependent on the maternal provision of iodine. Consequently adequate functioning of both the maternal and the fetal thyroid glands plays a critical role in fetal neuropsycho-intellectual development. A range of studies has confirmed that ‘mild but measurable’ psychomotor deficits in early childhood are the potential sequelae of subclinical hypothyroidism and hypothyroxaemia caused by mild to moderate iodine deficiency in pregnancy (Soldin et al 2002).

Because of the severe neurological consequences of untreated congenital hypothyroidism, neonatal screening programs have been established in some developed countries.
SECONDARY DEFICIENCY
High consumption of goitrogens can induce a secondary deficiency state. Goitrogens are substances that inhibit iodine metabolism and include thiocyanates found in the cabbage family (e.g. cabbage, kale, cauliflower, broccoli, turnips and Brussels sprouts) and in linseed, cassava, millet, soybean and competing entities, such as other members of the halogen family (e.g. bromine, fluorine and lithium, as well as arsenic) (Gropper et al 2005). Most researchers agree, however, that moderate intake of goitrogens in the diet is not an issue, except when accompanied by low iodine consumption (Gropper 2005, Kohlmeier 2003). A very rare cause of secondary iodine deficiency and hypothyroidism is TSH deficiency.

Low selenium intake
Low dietary intake of selenium is a factor that exacerbates the effects of iodine deficiency. Selenium is found in the thyroid gland in high concentrations, and while iodine is required for thyroid hormone synthesis, selenium-dependent enzymes are required for the peripheral conversion of thyroxine (T₄) to its biologically active form triiodothyronine (T₃) (Higdon 2003), as well as the general recycling of iodine. Selenium deficiency results in decreased T₄ catabolism, which leads to increased production of peroxide and thyroid cell destruction, fibrosis and functional failure.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS
MILD HYPOTHYROIDISM
This refers to biochemical evidence of thyroid hormone deficiency in patients who have few or no apparent clinical features of hypothyroidism.

CONGENITAL HYPOTHYROIDISM
According to Isselbacher (2005), the majority of infants appear normal at birth and <10% are diagnosed based on clinical features:
- prolonged jaundice
- feeding problems
- hypotonia
- enlarged tongue
- delayed bone maturation
- umbilical hernia.
  Importantly, permanent neurologic damage results if treatment is delayed.

ADULT HYPOTHYROIDISM
According to Beers (2005), the clinical signs of hypothyroidism in adults are:
- weakness, tiredness and sleepiness
- dry skin

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
• cold intolerance
• hair loss and diffuse alopecia
• poor memory and difficulty concentrating
• constipation
• reduced appetite and weight gain
• dyspnoea
• hoarse voice
• increased susceptibility to infectious diseases
• increased susceptibility to cardiovascular diseases
• paraesthesia
• puffy hands, feet and face and peripheral oedema
• impaired hearing
• menorrhagia (later amenorrhoea)
• carpal tunnel and other entrapment syndromes are common, as is impairment of muscle function with stiffness, cramps, and pain
• reduced myocardial contractility and pulse rate, leading to a reduced stroke volume and bradycardia.

MAIN ACTIONS
THYROID HORMONE PRODUCTION
Iodine is essential for the manufacture of T4 and T3, which are hormones that influence growth, maturation, thermogenesis, oxidation, myelination of the CNS and the metabolism of all tissues (Jones 2002). The thyroid hormones, especially T3, exert their effects by binding to nuclear receptors on cell surfaces, which in turn triggers binding of the zinc fingers of the receptor protein to the DNA (Gropper 2005).

OTHER ACTIONS
Due to the concentration of appreciable iodine levels in a range of other tissues, including salivary, gastric and lactating mammary glands, as well as the ovaries, questions remain about the potential for additional actions of iodine. One currently proposed model suggests iodine is an indirect antioxidant, via its capacity to reduce elevated TSH, a trigger of increased peroxide levels in the body (Smyth 2003).

CLINICAL USE
Increased iodine intake can be achieved through dietary modification and supplementation with tablets. Dietary modification usually refers to increased intake of iodised salt, but may also refer to use of iodised water, iodised vegetable oil or seafood.
**TREATMENT AND PREVENTION OF DEFICIENCY**

Iodine deficiency is accepted as the most common cause of brain damage worldwide, with IDD affecting 740 million people (Higdon 2003). Although it is well accepted that severe deficiency is responsible, evidence is now emerging that mild deficiency during pregnancy is also important and can have subtle effects on brain development, lowering intellectual functioning and inducing psychomotor deficits in early childhood. Preliminary data are also emerging to suggest an association between iodine deficiency hypothyroidism of pregnancy and the incidence of ADHD in the offspring; however, this still requires confirmation in larger studies (Soldin et al 2002, Vermilio et al 2004).

**PREGNANCY**

Severe iodine deficiency is uncommon in Western countries, such as Australia and New Zealand, but several local surveys have identified that mild to moderate deficiency is more prevalent than once thought. A research group at Monash Medical Centre in Melbourne screened 802 pregnant women and found that 48.4% of Caucasian women had urinary iodine excretion (UIE) concentrations below 50 μg/L compared to 38.4% of Vietnamese women and 40.8% of Indian/Sri Lankan women (Hamrosi et al 2005). These figures are disturbing when the WHO defines healthy UIE levels as greater than 100 μg/L, mild deficiency is diagnosed at 51–100 μg/L and moderate to severe deficiency at <50 μg/L (Gunton et al 1999). A study conducted at a Sydney hospital involving 81 women attending a ‘high’ risk clinic found moderate to severe iodine deficiency in 18.8% of subjects and mild iodine deficiency in another 29.6% (Gunton et al 1999), the former clearly too close to the WHO maximum acceptable level of 20%. This study also revealed that almost 5% of the sample had UIE <25 μg/L.

Based on such results it may well be expected that endemic cretinism could emerge, and that it has not yet occurred in Australia may be due to a low to moderate intake of goitrogens and adequate selenium levels.

**INFANTS**

Results of a study investigating TSH levels in a group of infants within 72 hours of birth at the Royal North Shore Hospital in Sydney suggest that endemic IDD may be emerging (McEldruff 2002). Currently, the WHO recommends that less than 3% of newborns should have TSH levels greater than 5 mIU/L and of the 1773 infants enrolled in the study, 5–10% had a TSH reading >5 mIU/L, which is clearly outside WHO recommendations and provides evidence of insufficient iodine levels during pregnancy.
**CHILDREN AND ADOLESCENTS**

Evidence of iodine deficiency is not limited to pregnant women and newborns and has also been demonstrated in Australian schoolchildren (Li et al 2006). Iodine status in schoolchildren is based on median UIE values and is categorised as normal (UIE \(\geq 100 \mu g/L\)) or as mild (UIE 50–99 \(\mu g/L\)), moderate (UIE 20–49 \(\mu g/L\)) and severe deficiency (UIE <20 \(\mu g/L\)). The UIE is considered in combination with the child’s sex, year of school and presence of goitre.

A study of Melbourne schoolchildren aged 11–18 years found that 76% (439/577) had abnormal UIE values, with 27% (156/577) having values consistent with moderate–severe iodine deficiency (McDonnell et al 2003). The median UIE value in girls was lower than that in boys (64 \(\mu g/L\) vs 82 \(\mu g/L\)), and girls had significantly lower UIE values overall \((P < 0.002)\). A study of 324 schoolchildren aged 5–13 years from the Central Coast of New South Wales produced similar results and there was a median UIE concentration of 82 \(\mu g/L\), with 14% of children having levels below 50 \(\mu g/L\) (Guttikonda et al 2003).

More recently, these findings were confirmed in the Australian National Iodine Nutrition Study, which identified inadequate iodine intake in the Australian population and called for the urgent implementation of mandatory iodisation of all edible salt in Australia (Li et al 2006). The study consisted of a survey of 1709 schoolchildren aged 8–10 years in the five mainland Australian States and was conducted between July 2003 and December 2004. It found that, overall, children in mainland Australia are borderline iodine deficient, with a national median UIE of 104 \(\mu g/L\). On a State basis, children in Victoria and New South Wales are mildly iodine deficient, with median UIE levels of 89 \(\mu g/L\) and 73.5 \(\mu g/L\), respectively, South Australian children are borderline iodine deficient, with a median UIE of 101 \(\mu g/L\), whereas both Queensland and Western Australian children are iodine sufficient, with median UIE levels of 136.5 \(\mu g/L\) and 142.5 \(\mu g/L\), respectively. Researchers attributed the decline in iodine intake to changes within the dairy industry, with chlorine-containing sanitisers now replacing iodine-containing sanitisers and decreased intake of iodised salt.

In 2001 an iodine supplementation program was initiated in Tasmania because it was identified as an area of endemic goitre by the Department of Health Services. The programme involves the use of iodised salt in 80% of Tasmania’s bread production and aims to reduce the incidence of iodine deficiency. Despite encouraging preliminary data (Doyle & Seal 2003), iodine levels are still inadequate according to the WHO standards. There have been conflicting opinions about the success of this programme, with the largest study demonstrating evidence of ongoing iodine deficiency (Seal et al 2003, Guttikonda et al 2002).
Iodine deficiency in children and adolescents is associated with poorer school performance, reduced achievement motivation and a higher incidence of learning disabilities (Tiwari et al 1996). A meta-analysis of 18 studies from 8 countries of people aged between 2 and 30 years showed that iodine deficiency alone reduced mean IQ scores by 13.5 points in children (Bleichrodt et al 1996). From both a public health and a socioeconomic perspective, these findings have significant repercussions.

ADULTS
A study of non-pregnant adults in 1999 demonstrated iodine deficiency in 26.3% of ‘healthy’ subjects and 34.1% of diabetic subjects (Gunton et al 1999).

Clinical note — Why is iodine deficiency on the rise?
The emergence or re-emergence of iodine deficiency is not limited to Australia. One study found that the median UIE had declined by more than 50% in between 1971 and 1994 in the United States (Gunton et al 1999).

Three reasons have been proposed to explain the emergence of iodine deficiency in developed countries. First, milk has traditionally been viewed as a good dietary source of iodine; however, since the 1990s its iodine content has reduced significantly because iodine-containing sanitisers have been gradually replaced with chlorine-containing sanitisers. The significance of this change within the dairy industry was recently shown by Li et al (2006) who compared the iodine content of Australian milk products from 1975 and 2004. They identified mean iodine concentrations of 593.5 µg/L and 583 µg/L from samples taken from Victoria and NSW respectively in 1975 compared to a median concentration of 195 µg/L in 2004 (250 mL providing 50–60 µg iodine). Interestingly, the same researchers demonstrated that dairy products and water in northern and central Queensland contain higher iodine levels, which may explain the lower incidence of iodine deficiency in these areas (Li et al 2006). In spite of this, a survey of dietary habits of Tasmanian schoolchildren has revealed that consumption of dairy products is associated with improved iodine status (Hynes et al 2004), a case of some being better than none.

A second reason may relate to public health campaigns that have resulted in increased awareness of the potential adverse effects of salt and reduced its consumption, but failed to highlight the potential benefits of a moderate intake of iodised salt. In addition, few food manufacturers use iodised salt in their products, further reducing exposure to iodine (Gunton et al 1999).

Lastly, the mineral depletion of soils is another possible contributing factor, in particular the depletion of selenium. Considering its role in iodine utilisation,
selenium deficiency would potentiate the effects of iodine deficiency. Other theoretical considerations include increased environmental exposure to halogens, such as fluorine and chlorine, and increased consumption of goitrogens, such as soy, in the diet.

Although identifying the key factors responsible for the growth of iodine deficiency is important (Thomson 2004), many authors argue that implementation of national iodine monitoring and surveillance of the iodine content in foods is the most immediate concern (Laurberg & Nohr 2006, Li et al 2006, McDonnell et al 2001). Lessons learnt from Tasmania’s iodine supplementation program, where state-wide bread fortification failed to reduce the prevalence of iodine deficiency in children, indicate that greater efforts are required to create significant improvements in iodine status.

NON-TOXIC GOITRE THYROIDECTOMY
One 12 month study involving 139 patients who had undergone thyroidectomy for non-toxic goitre identified that supplementing L-thyroxine therapy with iodised salt produced significant improvements in thyroid function compared with stand alone L-thyroxine therapy (Carella 2002).

OTHER USES
PREVENTION OF ATTENTION-DEFICIT HYPERACTIVITY DISORDER?
Emerging data from research conducted over the past 15 years suggest a possible link between low maternal iodine status and increased risk of ADHD in the offspring. According to a report published in 2004, 11 of 16 children born to women living in a moderately iodine-deficient region in Italy developed ADHD compared to no offspring from the 11 control mothers living in a marginally iodine-deficient region (Vermiglio et al 2004).

On the other hand, another group of researchers investigated whether T4 levels at birth could represent a biomarker for later development of ADHD and found that all newborns in the sample had T4 within the normal range and no correlation between values and risk could be demonstrated (Soldin 2002, Soldin et al 2003). This evidence invalidated TSH levels as a biomarker of risk, but does not disprove a link between iodine and ADHD, as earlier studies found that those newborns who later developed ADHD were all euthyroid at birth (Vermiglio et al 2004).

Although further investigation is required to clarify these observations, they have provided a new avenue for ADHD research.
FIBROCYSTIC BREAST DISEASE AND CYCLIC MASTALGIA
A 1993 review that focused on three clinical studies suggests that iodine supplementation may improve objective and subjective outcomes, including pain and fibrosis, for women with fibrocystic breast disease and cyclic mastalgia (Ghent et al. 1993). Together the trials involved 1000 women and used a variety of different forms, the most successful being molecular iodine at a dose of 0.08 mg/kg (approximately equivalent to 500 µg/day in a 60 kg woman) (Ghent et al. 1993).

Recently a placebo-controlled trial conducted with 11 euthyroid women with cyclic mastalgia tested different doses of molecular iodine ranging from 1.5 to 6 mg/day and showed that after 3 months of treatment, 50% of patients consuming 3 or 6 mg/day experienced a significant decrease in pain (Kessler 2004). Although no dose-related adverse events were detected, further investigation is required to confirm both efficacy and safety.

BREAST CANCER
There is suggestive evidence of a preventive role for iodine in breast cancer. As far back as 1896 research has suggested a link between iodine deficiency, thyroid disease and breast cancer (Smyth 2003). More recently, epidemiological data have demonstrated a correlation between increased incidence of breast cancer and a range of thyroid conditions, most notably hypothyroidism (Smyth 2003). In addition, the observed low rates of breast cancer in Japan are speculated to be partly due to a high dietary iodine intake, further suggesting a protective effect.

It is noteworthy that both the thyroid and the breast share the capacity to concentrate iodide, which exerts an antioxidant effect and protects cells from peroxidative damage (Venturi 2001). Whereas the thyroid retains this capacity throughout life, the breast can only concentrate iodide during pregnancy and lactation, states associated with a reduced risk of breast cancer. It has been theorised that with iodine insufficiency during pregnancy and lactation, the protective effect of iodide may be compromised, concomitant with diminished antioxidant activity. Researchers speculate that this scenario may be compounded by coexisting selenium deficiency (Turken et al. 2003).

Besides the diminished antioxidant effect, studies with animal models show that iodine deficiency results in changes in the mammary gland that makes it more sensitive to the effects of oestradiol (Strum 1979). Oestradiol stimulates cell division, which eventually results in cyst formation, and dietary supplementation with iodine can improve these alterations.

At present the only interventional evidence comes from studies of rats, which found that administration of Lugol’s iodine or iodine-rich Wakame seaweed...
suppressed the development of induced mammary tumours (Funahashi et al 2001) and rigorous human studies are required.

WATER PURIFICATION
Iodine-releasing tablets and iodine tincture have been used for many years to decontaminate water and have been used by the United States Army since WWII. A weak aqueous solution of 3–5 ppm of elemental iodine can destroy a wide range of enteroviruses, amebae and their cysts, bacteria and their spores, as well as algae. Under temperate conditions of 25°C the disinfection process takes 15 minutes, longer in colder conditions. Adding to the versatility of iodine as a water decontamination agent is its ability to act over a wide range of pH and still be effective in the presence of ammonia and amino ions from nitrogenous wastes that may be also present in the water (Kahn & Visscher 1975).

ANTISEPTIC
Iodine solution is widely used as a topical antiseptic in the treatment of superficial wounds. It is a highly effective method of decontaminating intact skin and minor wounds and has a low toxicity profile. Povidone-iodine preparations have replaced older iodine solutions and are now the most widely used form. Although the treatment is considered safe, a number of recent reports of iodine toxicity in newborns receiving ongoing treatment with topical iodine-based solutions suggests that it should be used with caution as an ongoing treatment in this group and TSH monitoring considered where appropriate (Khashua 2005).

DOSAGE RANGE
AUSTRALIAN RDI
• Infants
  0–6 months: 90 µg/day
  7–12 months: 110 µg/day
• Children
  1–3 years: 90 µg/day
  4–8 years: 90 µg/day
  9–14 years: 120 µg/day
  >14 years: 150 µg/day
• Adults: 150 µg/day
• Pregnancy: 220 µg/day
• Lactation: 270 µg/day
• Upper level of intake
  1–3 years: 200 µg/day

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
4–8 years: 300 µg/day
9–13 years: 600 µg/day
14–18 years
   (including pregnancy, lactation): 900 µg/day
Adults >18 years
   (including pregnancy, lactation): 1100 µg/day

These are the newly revised Australian RDIs, which are more closely aligned with the WHO recommendations than previously.

**ACCORDING TO CLINICAL STUDIES**
- ADHD prevention: adequate intake to prevent maternal deficiency (approximately 250 µg/day).
- Fibrocystic breast disease and cyclic mastalgia: 500 µg to 6 mg molecular iodine/day.
- Breast cancer prevention: dose is unknown; however, it is suggested that women meet RDI to prevent deficiency.
- Water disinfectant: 3–5 ppm in water or 8 drops of 2% tincture to approximately 1 L of water.

**TOXICITY**
Chronic iodine toxicity results when iodide intake is approximately 2 mg daily or greater (Beers 2005). Overconsumption of iodine can induce both hypo- and hyperthyroidism, depending on the patient’s pre-existing susceptibility (Wahlqvist 2002). Excess iodine during pregnancy has also been associated with increased risk of postpartum thyroiditis (Guan et al 2005). Alternatively, there are many cases in which excesses have been tolerated without any overt consequences (Geissler & Powers 2005, Gropper et al 2005). Intake of very high doses can lead to a brassy taste in the mouth, increased salivation, gastric irritation and acneiform skin lesions.

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**

**GOITROGENS**
These are substances that interfere with iodine utilisation or thyroid hormone production and include thiocyanates found in the cabbage family (e.g. cabbage, kale, cauliflower, broccoli, turnips and Brussels sprouts) and in linseed, cassava, millet and soybean — separate intake of iodine and goitrogens where possible.

**SOY**
The actions of this particular goitrogen are two-fold: ingestion of soy appears to inhibit iodine absorption to some extent (particularly when presented in its thyroxine
form in the gut) and also high levels of the isoflavones genistein and daidzein can inhibit \(T_3\) and \(T_4\) production — separate intake of iodine and goitrogens where possible. Particular attention should be paid to minimising soy consumption in individuals taking thyroid hormone supplementation, as it has been shown that soy consumption can increase dosage requirements.

**SELENIUM**
Selenium is intrinsic to the metabolism and activity of the thyroid hormones, facilitating the conversion of \(T_4\) to \(T_3\) and is also responsible for the only iodine recycling pathway of the body through the action of the deiodinases on excess or unnecessary thyroid hormones to release the iodine — beneficial interaction.

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**

**THYROID CONDITIONS**
Due to the complex and diverse causes of thyroid conditions, it is advised that iodine supplementation should be avoided unless under the supervision of a medical practitioner.

**PREGNANCY USE**
Up until 2006, the Australian recommended daily intake of iodine was 150 \(\mu\)g for pregnant women and 170 \(\mu\)g for lactating women; however, as a reflection of new research, the Australian RDI levels for pregnancy have been revised. Care should be taken to avoid ingestion of excessive amounts during pregnancy due to suspected links with increased rates of postpartum thyroiditis and other disorders of thyroid function (Guan et al 2005).

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**
- Iodine is an essential trace element required for healthy functioning of the thyroid gland and for normal growth and development.
- It is mainly consumed as iodide salts from sea salt, shellfish, seawater fish and vegetables.
- Iodine is essential for the manufacture of thyroxine (\(T_4\)) and triiodothyronine (\(T_3\)), which are hormones that influence growth, maturation, thermogenesis, oxidation, myelination of the CNS and the metabolism of all tissues (Jones 2002).
- Iodine supplementation is commonly used to prevent and treat deficiency. There is also some evidence that it may reduce pain in fibrocystic breast disease and cyclic mastalgia and suggestive evidence of a protective role against breast cancer; however, rigorous research is required to confirm these observations.
• Current evidence points to widespread mild to moderate iodine deficiency in Australia, suggesting that dietary intake is inadequate and supplementation or fortification of foods with additional iodine may be required.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What will this supplement do for me?
Adequate intake of iodine is critical for healthy thyroid function and normal growth and development. Ensuring adequate intake becomes critical during pregnancy and breastfeeding when the infant is solely dependent on the mother’s intake for normal growth and brain development. Currently there is some suggestive evidence that adequate iodine particularly during the female reproductive years may be protective against breast cancer and supplementation may relieve symptoms of breast pain in fibrocystic breast disease and cyclic mastalgia.

When will it start to work?
The time frames depend on the indication it is being used to treat and the level of deficiency. In the case of breast pain, studies suggest 3 months of treatment are required to attain significant symptom relief.

Are there any safety issues?
People with pre-existing thyroid conditions should only increase iodine intake under professional supervision. Doses in excess of the RDI should be avoided unless under the supervision of a medical practitioner.

REFERENCES


Iron

BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS
Iron is an essential mineral found in the body in haem or non-haem form. The average human body contains 2–4 g of iron. Although the metal exists in several oxidation states in nature, only the ferrous (Fe$^{2+}$) and ferric (Fe$^{3+}$) forms are stable in the aqueous environment of the body (Groff & Gropper 2000).

Iron is found in the body in: haemoglobin (65%); myoglobin (10%); enzymes (1–5%); the transport form, transferrin (0.05%); and the storage forms ferritin (4–9%) and haemosiderin (1–4%).

The haem form of iron is more soluble than the non-haem form and is absorbed 2–3 times more readily. It is absorbed via mucosal cells in the small intestine. Non-haem iron is bound to other substances in food, and must first be liberated by gastric secretions such as hydrochloric acid and pepsin. As such, absorption is best in the acidic environment of the stomach (Groff & Gropper 2000).

Clinical note — Factors affecting the absorption of iron
If the dietary intake of iron is adequate, it is often assumed that a patient’s iron levels will be within the normal range. In practice, this is not always the case as absorption is significantly affected by a number of factors, thereby increasing or decreasing the amount of ingested dietary iron that reaches the systemic circulation.

Here is a brief summary of the main influences on absorption.

SOLUBILITY ENHANCERS OF NON-HAEM IRON
- Acids (including ascorbic acid) aid solubility of non-haem iron, thus improving absorption; the addition of 20 mg ascorbic acid has been shown to increase non-haem iron absorption by 39% (Hallberg et al 2003).
- Sugars (e.g. fructose) aid absorption.
- Meat stimulates digestive secretions, and breakdown products such as cysteine-containing peptides aid absorption (Hurrell et al 1988). The addition of red meat increases non-haem iron absorption by 85% (Hallberg et al 2003). This appears to be dose-dependent, as a recent study found that the addition of 60 g Danish pork meat three times daily improved the absorption of non-haem iron from 5.3% to 7.9% (Bach-Kristensen et al 2005) although addition of smaller amounts were not as effective (Baech et al 2003).
Alcohol appears to improve iron uptake. The consumption of up to two alcoholic drinks per day is associated with reduced risk of iron deficiency and more than two can increase the risk of iron overload (Ioannou et al 2004).

**SOLUBILITY INHIBITORS OF NON-HAEM IRON**
- Polyphenols, including tannin derivatives of gallic acid (tea has been reported to reduce iron absorption by 60%, coffee by 40%) (Kaltwasser et al 1998, Morck et al 1983). A number of studies have shown that tea catechins can inhibit intestinal non-haem iron absorption (Ullmann et al 2005); however, polyphenols do not have chelating effects on cooked haem iron (Breet et al 2005). Recent studies suggest that impaired absorption is unlikely to be significant in people with normal iron stores (Breet et al 2005, Ullmann et al 2005). The addition of milk to tea may reduce the chelating effects.
- Phytic acid (whole grains).
- Oxalic acid (spinach, chard, chocolate, berries).
- Calcium — single-meal studies have established that calcium (including calcium phosphate and foods such as milk) reduces iron absorption by up to 70% (Hallberg et al 1991); however, the effect may not be as pronounced when calcium is served as part of a whole diet. For instance, the consumption of a glass of milk or the equivalent amount of calcium from fortified food does not appear to decrease non-haem iron absorption (Grinder-Pedersen et al 2004). Although it remains to be shown in iron-deficient persons, long-term iron status does not seem to be compromised by high calcium intake (Molgaard et al 2005).
- Zinc competes with iron for absorption (Solomons 1983) — inorganic zinc supplements may reduce iron absorption by 66–80% (Crofton et al 1989), and supplements containing both iron and zinc may not be as efficacious as the same doses given in isolation (Fischer Walker et al 2005, Lind et al 2003), but nutrients consumed in a meal may not be as affected (Whittaker 1998).
- Manganese may reduce absorption by 22–40% (Rossander-Hulten 1991).
- Rapid intestinal transit time.
- Malabsorption syndromes.
- *Helicobacter pylori* infection (Ciacci et al 2004).
- Gastrointestinal blood loss (Higgins & Rockey 2003).
- Insufficient digestive secretions (including achlorhydria).
- Antacids and PPI.
CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Ferrous sulfate is the most widely studied form. Other ferrous forms include ascorbate, carbonate, citrate, fumarate, gluconate, lactate, succinate and tartarate (non-haem iron). Iron from ferrous sulfate has a significantly greater bioavailability than ferrous glycine chelate or ferric EDTA (Ferreira da Silva et al 2004). Other ferric forms include ammonium citrate, chloride, citrate, pyrophosphate and sulfate. Amino acid chelates, such as iron glycine, are also available. Dietary ferritin is equally well absorbed as ferrous sulfate and therefore food sources are likely to be effective (Davila-Hicks et al 2004). Cooking in iron pots may also improve iron status (Geerligs et al 2003).

FOOD SOURCES
The average Western diet is estimated to contain 5–7 mg iron/1000 kcal.

HAEM IRON
About 50–60% of the iron in animal sources is in the haem form. Sources include liver, lean red meat, poultry, fish, oysters, clams, shellfish, kidney and heart.

NON-HAEM IRON
This is found in plant and dairy products in the form of iron salts and makes up about 85% of the average intake. Sources include nuts, legumes, fruit, dried fruit, vegetables including beetroot, grains and tofu. Dairy is a relatively poor source of iron.

A number of iron-fortified foods are also available and include egg yolks, dried fruit, dark molasses, wholegrain and enriched bread, pasta, cereal, soy sauce, Thai fish sauce, milk, orange juice and wines.

Considering that minerals such as calcium may reduce iron absorption, fortification of some foods may be relatively ineffectual unless absorption enhancers such as vitamin C are also included (Davidsson et al 1998).

DEFICIENCY SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS
Iron deficiency is the most common nutritional deficiency in the world (Gillespie et al 1991) and may occur with or without anaemia.

Iron deficiency anaemia, also known as hypochromic microcytic anaemia, results in reduced work capacity in adults and a reduced ability to learn in children. Signs and symptoms include:
- fatigue and lethargy
- decreased resistance to infection
- cardiovascular and respiratory changes, which can progress to cardiac failure if left untreated

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
• increased lead absorption, which in turn inhibits haem synthesis
• decreased selenium and glutathione peroxidase levels
• pale inside lower eyelid or mouth
• pale-coloured nail bed
• pale lines on stretched palm (palmar creases)
• ridged, spoon-shaped, thin flat nails
• brittle hair
• impaired cognitive and motor function
• adverse pregnancy outcomes and increased perinatal maternal mortality (NMCD 2006)
• reduced thyroid function and ability to make thyroid hormones (Beard et al 1990)
• difficulty maintaining body temperature in a cold environment.

**PRIMARY DEFICIENCY**
Primary deficiency is most common in vegetarians, the elderly, those with protein-calorie malnutrition, and during periods of increased iron requirement due to expanded blood volume in infancy, adolescence and pregnancy.

**SECONDARY DEFICIENCY**
Underlying causes of iron-deficiency anaemia include blood loss, inefficient absorption due to gastrointestinal disturbances and increased destruction of red blood cells.
• Blood loss (menstruation, menorrhagia, bleeding haemorrhoids, parasites, bleeding peptic ulcer, malignancy, *H. pylori* infection, gastrointestinal bleeding due to medication such as NSAIDs).
• Inefficient absorption (chronic gastrointestinal disturbances, malabsorption syndromes, coeliac disease) (Annibale et al 2001).
• Increased destruction of red blood cells (malaria, high-intensity exercise).

**MAIN ACTIONS**
Iron plays a central role in many biochemical processes in the body.

**OXYGEN TRANSPORT AND STORAGE**
The key function of iron is to facilitate oxygen transport by haemoglobin, the oxygen-carrying pigment of erythrocytes. It is also involved in oxygen storage by myoglobin, an iron-containing protein that transports and stores oxygen within muscle and releases it to meet increased metabolic demands during muscle contraction.

**IMMUNITY**
Iron is vital for the proliferation of all cells including those of the immune system. Iron deficiency causes several defects in both humoral and cellular immunity (Bowlus 2007).
2003), including a reduction in peripheral T cells secondary to atrophy of the thymus and inhibition of thymocyte proliferation (Bowlus 2003) and a reduction in IL-2 production (Bergman et al 2004). Reduced IL-2 production may partly explain the increased susceptibility to infections and cancer in patients with iron deficiency anaemia (Bergman et al 2004). Supplementation of ferrous sulfate (60 mg Fe) once daily for 8 weeks has been shown to reduce the incidence and duration of upper-respiratory tract infections in children (de-Silva et al 2003).

However, there is also preliminary evidence that iron may be implicated in the pathogenesis of auto-immune disorders, including SLE, scleroderma, type 1 diabetes, Goodpasture syndrome, multiple sclerosis and RA (Bowlus 2003). Current evidence suggests that moderately elevated iron stores may be associated with an overall increased risk for cancer, especially colorectal cancer (McCarty 2003). Additionally, it has been proposed that iron may increase HIV replication and the rate of progression of HIV infection, although doses of 60 mg of elemental iron twice weekly for 4 months did not appear to affect HIV-1 viral load in clinical studies (Olsen et al 2004). Although maintaining adequate iron status may be important for immunity, the benefits of routine supplementation in the absence of deficiency cannot be justified.

**ENZYME SYSTEMS**
Both haem and non-haem iron are a part of many enzymes that are involved in:
- cellular respiration
- amino acid metabolism (e.g. carnitine)
- detoxification (as part of cytochrome P450 enzymes in the liver)
- protection against free radical damage
- synthesis of nutrients such as vitamin A
- synthesis of hormones and neurotransmitters (serotonin and noradrenaline)
- synthesis of collagen and elastin.

**CLINICAL USE**
Iron supplementation is administered using various routes (e.g. by injection or orally). This review will only focus on oral supplementation as this is the form generally used by the public and available OTC.

**IRON DEFICIENCY**
Iron supplementation is used to rectify deficiency states resulting from inadequate intake, increased requirements such as pregnancy, increased losses such as menstruation and where absorption is affected due to gastric bypass or chronic gastrointestinal disturbances. Currently, researchers are attempting to clarify the best forms,
administration routes and dosage regimens to use in different iron deficiency situations.

**Clinical note — Testing for iron deficiency**
As isolated haemoglobin has both low specificity and low sensitivity for determining iron status, the optimal diagnostic approach is to also measure the serum ferritin as an index of iron stores and the serum transferrin receptor as an index of tissue iron deficiency (Cook 2005, Flesland et al 2004, Mei et al 2005).

**Iron deficiency anaemia** Current evidence suggests that weekly administration of iron is an effective strategy for the treatment and prevention of iron deficiency and iron deficiency anaemia in most population groups including pregnant women and children (Agarwal et al 2003, Mukhopadhyay et al 2004, Siddiqui et al 2004, Sungthong et al 2004, Yang et al 2004) and is associated with lower cost, fewer side-effects and improved compliance (Haidar et al 2003).

Sixty children (age 5–10 years) with iron deficiency anemia were given ferrous sulfate (200 mg) daily or weekly for 2 months with similar efficacy and fewer side-effects in the once weekly group (Siddiqui et al 2004). In another study children receiving weekly doses of ferrous sulfate (300 mg) had similar improvements in haemoglobin, but a significantly higher increase in IQ than those taking the same dose of iron 5 days per week (Sungthong et al 2004). The doses used in these trials may be higher than those actually required to correct deficiency.

Patients, such as the elderly, who are particularly vulnerable to the dose-dependent adverse effects of iron supplementation should be given the lowest effective dose. A randomised trial of 90 hospitalised elderly patients demonstrated that 15 mg of liquid ferrous gluconate produced similar improvements in haemoglobin and ferritin over 60 days to 150 mg of ferrous calcium citrate tablets without the negative side-effects (Rimon et al 2005).

In all cases the lowest safe and effective dose at the lowest frequency of dosing should be used to correct iron deficiency with or without anaemia.

**Pregnancy** A supplement of 40 mg ferrous iron/day from 18 weeks of gestation appears adequate to prevent iron deficiency in 90% of the women and iron deficiency anaemia in at least 95% of the women during pregnancy and postpartum (Milman et al 2005). A single weekly dose of 200 mg elemental iron, however, may be sufficient as this has been shown to be comparable with 100 mg elemental iron daily on erythrocyte indices (Mukhopadhyay et al 2004). Although iron supplementation is often used as stand-alone treatment in pregnant iron-deficient women, one RCT indicated that a combination of iron and folate therapy (80 mg iron protein
succinylate, with 0.370 mg folinic acid daily) for 60 days produces a better therapeutic response than iron-only supplementation (Juarez-Vazquez et al 2002).

Due to the possibility of uncontrolled lipid peroxidation, predictive of adverse effects for mother and foetus, iron supplementation should be prescribed on the basis of biological criteria, not on the assumption of anaemia alone (Lachili et al 2001).

Postpartum anaemia  Postpartum anaemia is associated with breathlessness, tiredness, palpitations, maternal infections and impaired mood and cognition. A 2004 Cochrane review suggested that further high-quality trials were required before the benefits of iron supplementation or iron-rich diets in the treatment of postpartum anaemia could be established (Dodd et al 2004). Since then a randomised placebo-controlled study of iron sulfate (80 mg daily) for 12 weeks starting 24–48 hours after delivery demonstrated an improvement in haemoglobin levels and iron stores (Kraft et al 2005) and supplementation of ferrous sulfate (125 mg) with folate (10 µg) and vitamin C (25 mg) demonstrated improvements in cognitive function, as well as depression and stress compared with folate and vitamin C alone (Beard et al 2005). However, further studies are still warranted.

Unexplained fatigue without anaemia  Iron supplementation is sometimes used in women who are not anaemic (haemoglobin >117 g/L) yet complain of fatigue. A recent, double-blind, randomised placebo-controlled trial designed to determine the subjective response to iron therapy in non-anaemic women (haemoglobin >117 g/L) with unexplained fatigue found that supplementation with oral ferrous sulfate (80 mg/day elemental iron) for 4 weeks reduced the level of fatigue in the iron group by 29% compared with 13% in the placebo group. Subgroup analysis showed that only women with ferritin concentrations <50 µg/L improved with oral supplementation. This was common in 85% of subjects and 51% of subjects had ferritin concentrations <20 µg/L (Verdon et al 2003). This study suggests that iron deficiency anaemia may be present despite haemoglobin and ferritin levels being within the ‘normal’ range and that the lower reference levels for women may need to be revised.

Improving athletic performance in marginally deficient people  Sports anaemia is a common finding among professional and non-professional athletes engaging in strenuous physical activity. Possible mechanisms include: dilutional pseudoanaemia, which is caused by plasma volume expansion greater than that of the red blood cell mass, but does not reflect actual blood loss and will generally normalise within 3–5 days of ceasing training; intravascular haemolysis due to mechanical trauma such as ‘foot strike haemolysis’, which can result in urinary loss of iron; or transient ischaemia resulting from vasoconstriction of the splanchnic and

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
renal vessels, which can also result in blood loss from the gastrointestinal and urinary tracts (Merkel et al 2005).

In a placebo-controlled trial, iron supplementation (50 mg ferrous sulphate twice daily) for 6 weeks significantly improved iron status and maximal oxygen uptake ($V_{\text{O}_2, \text{max}}$) after 4 weeks’ concurrent aerobic training in previously marginally deficient and untrained women (Brownlie et al 2002). In a later randomised double-blind placebo-controlled study of 41 untrained iron-deficient women without anaemia, ferrous sulfate (100 mg) for 6 weeks improved endurance capacity after aerobic training (Brownlie et al 2004).

Due to the potential side-effects of inappropriate iron supplementation and the possibility of masking more serious underlying complaints, athletes should only be supplemented if iron deficiency is established on the basis of biological criteria (Zoller & Vogel 2004). Supplementing antioxidants (vitamin E 500 mg/day, vitamin C 1 g/day, beta-carotene 30 mg/day) may assist in preventing exercise-induced decreases in iron status and antioxidant defences (Aguilo et al 2004) and may be a safer option in iron-replete athletes.

**Perioperative care**  Iron is sometimes given before surgery to reduce postoperative decreases in haemoglobin (Andrews et al 1997). However, this use is contentious and numerous studies have failed to report benefits for preoperative autologous blood collection (Cid et al 2005) or for correcting anaemia associated with cardiac surgery (Madi-Jebara et al 2004) or orthopaedic surgery, such as hip or knee arthroplasty (Mundy et al 2005, Weatherall & Maling 2004).

**Cognitive function**  Iron supplementation has been shown to improve cognitive function and depression in postpartum anaemic women (Beard et al 2005); however, the majority of trials in this area focus on childhood development. An association between iron-deficiency anaemia and poor cognitive and motor development with behavioural problems has been observed, and attention deficit may be substantially improved with iron supplementation (elemental iron 5 mg/kg/day) for up to 3 months (Otero et al 2004). Two-month supplementation of 15 mg iron (and multivitamin) versus multivitamin alone in iron-deficient anaemic preschoolers resulted in improvements in discrimination (specifically selective attention), accuracy and efficiency (Metallinos-Katsaras et al 2004).

Recently however, a systematic review reported no effects on motor development scores and only modest improvements in mental development scores, although these were more prevalent in those who were initially anaemic or iron-deficient (Sachdev et al 2005). Preventing iron deficiency appears to be a rapid and effective means of
improving infant lead levels, even in non-anaemic infants (Wolf et al 2003) and this may also contribute to benefits in some children.

Improving cognition in children and postpartum women appears to be the result of correcting iron deficiency and it cannot be inferred that iron supplementation will benefit cognitive function in iron-replete individuals.

OTHER USES
Iron has also been suggested for use in attention-deficit disorder and aphthous stomatitis, although positive clinical trials to support these uses are lacking.

Breath-holding spells Iron supplementation may significantly reduce the incidence of breath holding spells, especially in iron-deficient children as shown in a RCT (Daoud et al 1997).


DOSAGE RANGE
• Therapeutic dose: 2–5 mg/kg/day; however, in many cases the equivalent of this dose may be given weekly.
• In cases of deficiency, initial effects on haemoglobin and erythrocyte concentrations take about 2 weeks but it may take 6–12 months to build iron stores (Groff & Gropper 2000).
• The Australian Iron Status Advisory Panel advocates dietary intervention as the first treatment option for mild iron deficiency (serum ferritin 10–15 µg/L) (Patterson et al 2001). Trials have shown a significant increase in serum ferritin levels (26%) using dietary intervention alone (Heath et al 2001).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Australian RDI</th>
<th>Dosage (mg/day)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Infants (0–6 months; breastfed)</td>
<td>0.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infants (7–12 months)</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Children (1–13 years)</td>
<td>8–9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Girls (14–18 years)</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boys (14–18 years)</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Men (&gt;19 years)</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Women (19 to menopause)</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>After menopause</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pregnancy/lactation</td>
<td>9–27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Iron is expressed as a range to allow for differences in bioavailability of iron from different Australian foods.

Studies have shown that there can be a significant sex difference in haemoglobin and other indicators of iron status during infancy. Some of these may be genetically determined, whereas others seem to reflect an increased incidence of true iron deficiency in boys (Domellof et al 2002).

**TOXICITY**
Iron toxicity causes severe organ damage and death. The most pronounced effects are haemorrhagic necrosis of the gastrointestinal tract, which manifests as vomiting, bloody diarrhoea and hepatotoxicity.

Conditions that increase risk of toxicity include:
- Haemochromatosis (iron overload) — excess storage of iron in the body, which can cause organ and tissue damage (especially liver and heart) and an increased risk for hepatic carcinoma. It may be caused by an excessive oral intake, a genetic defect that causes the body to absorb more iron than normal, or repeated blood transfusions.
- Haemosiderosis — iron overload without tissue damage.
- Iron-loading anaemias — thalassaemia and sideroblastic anaemia.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
Oral supplements may cause gastrointestinal disturbances such as nausea, diarrhoea, constipation, heartburn and upper gastric discomfort.

Taking supplements with food appears to reduce the possibility of gastrointestinal side-effects.

Iron toxicity and subsequent organ damage can develop from long-term excessive intake. Liquid iron preparations can discolor teeth — brush teeth after use.

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**
Iron interacts with a variety of foods, herbs and drugs through several different mechanisms. Most commonly, the formation of insoluble complexes occurs whereby both iron and drug absorption is hindered. Separation of doses by several hours will often reduce the severity of this type of interaction. Additionally, substances that alter gastric pH have the theoretical ability to reduce iron absorption. A summary of interactions has been presented in table form for easy reference.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug/therapeutic substance</th>
<th>Mechanism</th>
<th>Possible outcome</th>
<th>Action required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ACE inhibitors</td>
<td>Reduced absorption of ACE inhibitors. A small clinical trial found that concomitant iron administration reduced area-under-the-curve plasma levels of unconjugated captopril by 37% (Lee et al 2001, Schaefer et al 1998)</td>
<td>Reduced drug effect</td>
<td>Separate doses by at least 2 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antacids and products containing aluminium, calcium or magnesium</td>
<td>Reduces iron absorption (O’Neil-Cutting &amp; Crosby 1986)</td>
<td>Reduced effect of iron</td>
<td>Separate doses by at least 2 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ascorbic acid</td>
<td>Increases iron absorption</td>
<td>Increased effects of iron</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible — caution in haemochromatosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cholestyramine and colestipol</td>
<td>In vitro investigations have shown that cholestyramine and colestipol both bind iron citrate (Leonard et al 1979)</td>
<td>Reduced effect of iron</td>
<td>Monitor for iron efficacy if cholestyramine is being used concurrently. Separate doses by 4 hours. Increased iron intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cimetidine</td>
<td>Iron can bind cimetidine in the gastrointestinal tract and reduce its absorption (Campbell et al 1993)</td>
<td>Reduced effect of iron and drug</td>
<td>Separate doses by at least 2 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dairy products and eggs</td>
<td>May reduce iron absorption</td>
<td>Reduced effect of iron</td>
<td>Monitor for iron efficacy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Erythropoietin</td>
<td>Pharmacodynamic interaction (Carnielli et al 1998)</td>
<td>Additive pharmacological effect possible</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug/therapeutic substance</td>
<td>Mechanism</td>
<td>Possible outcome</td>
<td>Action required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H₂-receptor antagonists (antiulcer drugs)</td>
<td>Iron absorption is dependent upon gastric pH; therefore, medications that affect gastric pH may interfere with absorption of iron (Aymard et al 1988)</td>
<td>Reduced effect of iron</td>
<td>Monitor for iron efficacy if these drugs are being used concurrently</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haloperidol</td>
<td>May cause decreased blood levels of iron (Leenders et al 1994, Threlkeld 1998)</td>
<td>Reduced effect of iron</td>
<td>Monitor for iron efficacy if these drugs are being used concurrently. Increased iron intake may be required with long-term therapy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-dopa and carbidopa</td>
<td>May reduce bioavailability of carbidopa and L-dopa (van Woert 1977)</td>
<td>Reduced drug effect</td>
<td>Separate doses by 2 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Omeprazole and other proton-pump inhibitors</td>
<td>Reduced iron absorption due to changes in gastric pH</td>
<td>Reduced effect of iron</td>
<td>Monitor for iron efficacy if omeprazole is being used concurrently</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penicillamine</td>
<td>Reduced drug and iron absorption</td>
<td>Reduced drug and iron effect</td>
<td>Separate doses by at least 2 hours. Sudden withdrawal of iron during penicillamine use has been associated with penicillamine toxicity and kidney damage (Harkness &amp; Blake 1982) — caution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quinolone antibiotics (e.g. norfloxacin)</td>
<td>Reduced drug absorption (Brouwers 1992)</td>
<td>Reduced drug effect</td>
<td>Take drug 2 hours before or 4–6 hours after iron dosing. Monitor patient for continued antibiotic efficacy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulfasalazine</td>
<td>May bind together, decreasing the absorption of both (Dukes &amp; Duncan 1995)</td>
<td>Reduced drug and iron effect</td>
<td>Separate doses by at least 2 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug/therapeutic substance</td>
<td>Mechanism</td>
<td>Possible outcome</td>
<td>Action required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tannins — herbs with significant tannin content (e.g. green tea, bilberry, raspberry leaf)</td>
<td>Tannin can bind to iron and reduce its absorption</td>
<td>Reduced effect of iron</td>
<td>Monitor for iron efficacy if these herbs are being used concurrently Separate doses by 2 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tetracycline antibiotics (e.g. minocycline, doxycycline) (Neuvonen 1976)</td>
<td>Reduced drug and iron absorption</td>
<td>Reduced drug effect</td>
<td>Monitor for iron efficacy if tetracyclines are being used long term Separate doses by 4 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-thyroxine</td>
<td>Decreased drug absorption possible. Iron supplements may decrease absorption of thyroid medication; however, iron deficiency may impair the body’s ability to make thyroid hormones</td>
<td>Reduced drug effect</td>
<td>Thyroid function should be monitored and L-thyroxine dose may need alteration during treatment with iron Separate doses by at least 2–4 hours (Shakir et al 1997)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
<td>Iron supplementation may cause a redistribution of retinol inducing vitamin A deficiency in infants with marginal vitamin A status (Wieringa et al 2003)</td>
<td>Redistribution of retinol</td>
<td>Iron supplementation in infants should be accompanied by measures to improve vitamin A status</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Iron poisoning can occur due to accidental ingestion of excess iron supplements. As such, iron supplements should be kept in childproof bottles and out of the reach of children.

Caution should be exercised when supplementing iron to infants or children with apparently normal growth when the iron status of the child is unknown. A double-blind placebo-controlled trial showed that while iron therapy produced a significant improvement of mean monthly weight gain and linear growth in iron-deficient children, it significantly decreased the weight gain and linear growth of iron-replete children (Majumdar et al 2003). This study confirms the results of earlier studies (Dewey et al 2002).

- Iron supplements should not be used in haemochromatosis, haemosiderosis, or iron-loading anaemias (thalassaemia, sideroblastic anaemia).
- Daily oral iron supplementation providing 50 mg elemental iron for 8 weeks did not result in increased oxidative damage in the plasma of college-aged women, although this does not rule out oxidative damage in tissues as demonstrated in animal studies (Gropper et al 2003). While the use of iron supplements may potentially result in oxidative damage, this is not likely to be significant in lower doses used to correct deficiency states; however, risk should always be assessed against benefit before prescribing iron supplements.
- Elevated levels of serum ferritin have been implicated in the pathogenesis of vascular (and other) diseases, although this remains controversial (McCarty 2003, Zacharski et al 2004).
- Haem-rich flesh foods may need to be limited in people with insulin resistance due to a possible link with increased cancer risk mediated by iron excess in such populations (McCarty 2003).
- Iron supplementation should be prescribed on the basis of biological criteria, not on the assumption of anaemia alone, as unnecessary iron supplementation can result in adverse effects. The lowest safe and effective dose and frequency of dose should be recommended.

PREGNANCY USE
Oral iron preparations are considered safe in pregnancy; however, unnecessary iron supplementation can result in uncontrolled lipid peroxidation, predictive of adverse effects for mother and foetus. Supplementation should be prescribed on the basis of biological criteria, not on the assumption of anaemia alone (Lachili et al 2001).
PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING

- Iron is an essential mineral that facilitates oxygen transport and storage in the body and is part of many enzyme systems.
- Haem iron, found in animal products, is absorbed 2–3-fold better than non-haem forms found in vegetable sources. However, iron absorption is influenced by many factors, such as other foods ingested, medicines and gastric activity.
- Iron deficiency is the most common nutritional deficiency in the world and may occur with or without anaemia. Excessive blood loss during menstruation is the most common cause.
- Supplements are generally used to treat or prevent deficiency. Excess iron can be dangerous and lead to organ damage and death.
- As inappropriate iron supplementation can inhibit growth in non-deficient children and adversely affect pregnancy outcomes, iron status should be tested before administration.
- Correction of iron deficiency with or without anaemia may be achieved with lower doses than those recommended in some trials. In many cases, once weekly dosing of iron is as effective as daily dosing and improves compliance while reducing side-effects and cost.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What will this supplement do for me?
Iron is necessary for health and wellbeing. It facilitates oxygen transport and storage in the body and is part of many enzyme systems. Iron deficiency is the most common deficiency in the world.

When will it start to work?
Iron deficiency responds to supplementation within 2 weeks; however, 6–12 months may be required to build up the body’s iron stores.

Are there any safety issues?
Excess iron can be dangerous and ultimately lead to severe organ damage and death.

REFERENCES


© 2007 Elsevier Australia


Kava kava

Historical note  For many centuries, Pacific Islanders have used the kava kava root to prepare a beverage used in welcoming ceremonies for important visitors. Drinking kava is not only done to induce pleasant mental states but also to reduce anxiety and promote socialising. It is believed that the first report about kava came to the West from Captain James Cook during his voyages through the Pacific region.

COMMON NAME
Kava kava

OTHER NAMES
Kawa, awa, intoxicating pepper, rauschpfeffer, sakau, tonga, yagona

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Piper methysticum (family Piperaceae)

PLANT PARTS USED
Root and rhizome

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
The most important constituents responsible for the pharmacological activity of kava rhizome are the fat-soluble kava lactones (kavapyrones), mainly methysticin, dihydromethisticin, kavain, dihydrokavain and desmethoxyangonin and flavonoids (flavokavains).

MAIN ACTIONS

CNS EFFECTS
The kava lactones reach a large number of targets that influence CNS activity. They interact with dopaminergic, serotonergic, GABA-ergic and glutamatergic neurotransmission, seem to inhibit monoamine oxidase B and exert multiple effects on ion channels, according to in vitro and in vivo research (Grunze et al 2001). Additionally, animal studies show that kava lactones are chiefly responsible for these effects that give rise to many of the herb’s clinical actions (Cairney et al 2002).

Hypnotic  Although the exact mechanism of action is not yet understood, it has been observed that sleep promotion may be due to the preferential activity of D,L-
kavain and kava extract on the limbic structures and, in particular, the amygdalar complex (Holm et al 1991) in the brain. In an EEG brain-mapping study it was demonstrated that D,L-kavain could induce a dose-dependent increase in delta-, theta- and alpha-1 power, as well as a decrease in alpha-2 and beta power. These results indicate a sedative effect at the higher dose range (Frey 1991).

**Anxiolytic effects**  
A recent study showed that kava extract produces a statistically significant dose-dependent anxiolytic-like behaviour change in rat models of anxiety (Garrett et al 2003). The effect is not mediated through the benzodiazepine binding site on the GABA-A receptor complex, as flumazenil, a competitive benzodiazepine receptor antagonist, did not block this effect.

**ANALGESIC AND LOCAL ANAESTHETIC**  
Both the aqueous and lipid-soluble extracts of kava exhibit antinociceptive properties in experimental animal models (Jamieson & Duffield 1990). The effect is not mediated by an opiate pathway, as naloxone does not reduce the effects when administered in doses that reverse the effects of morphine. More recently, in vitro research has identified several compounds found in kava that have the ability to inhibit COX-1 and to a lesser extent COX-2 enzyme activities (Wu et al 2002).

The local anaesthetic effect of kava is well known for topical use and has been described as similar to procaine and cocaine (Mills & Bone 2000).

**ANTISPASMODIC ACTIVITY**  
Antispasmodic activity for skeletal muscle has been observed in vitro and in vivo for both kava extract and kava lactones (Mills & Bone 2000). In vivo research suggests that kavain impairs vascular smooth muscle contraction, likely through inhibition of calcium channels (Martin et al 2002).

**OTHER ACTIONS**  
**CYTOCHROME INHIBITION**  
Although in vitro studies published in 2002 suggested whole kava extract and kavalactones have widespread inhibitory effects on various cytochrome enzymes, such as CYP3A4 (Unger et al 2002), more recent in vivo tests found no effects on CYP3A4/5, CYP1A2 or CYP2D6, but did demonstrate significant inhibition (approximately 40%) of CYP2E1 (Gurley et al 2005).

**CLINICAL USE**  
Kava extracts are popular in Europe and have been investigated in numerous clinical trials, primarily in European countries. As a result, many research papers have been
published in languages other than English. In order to provide a more complete description of the evidence available, secondary sources have been used where necessary.

**NERVOUS ANXIETY**
A 2000 Cochrane review of the scientific literature assessed the results from seven, double-blind, randomised placebo-controlled trials and concluded that kava extract has significant anxiolytic activity and is superior to placebo for the symptomatic treatment of anxiety (Pittler & Ernst 2000). An update of this review was published in 2003 and analysed results from 12 clinical studies involving 700 subjects (Pittler & Ernst 2003). The results of 7 studies that used the Hamilton Anxiety Scale (HAM-A) score were pooled and a significant reduction in anxiety was observed for kava treatment compared with placebo. The results of the five studies that were not submitted to meta-analysis largely support these findings. The extract most commonly tested was WS 1490 at a dose of up to 300 mg daily. Preliminary evidence suggests it may be equivalent to benzodiazepines for non-psychotic anxiety.

**Safety**  According to the authors of the review, none of the trials reported any hepatotoxic events and seven trials measured liver enzyme levels as safety parameters and reported no clinically significant changes.

**MENOPASUAL AND PERIMENOPASUAL ANXIETY**
A randomised placebo-controlled study conducted with 40 menopausal women found that using kava extract, together with HRT, led to significant reductions in anxiety, as measured by the HAM-A scale at both 3- and 6-month follow-up (De et al 2000).

A 3-month, randomised, open study of 68 perimenopausal women showed that treatment with kava (100 mg/day) significantly reduced anxiety ($P < 0.001$) at 1 month and 3 months. This was significantly greater than that spontaneously occurring in controls ($P < 0.009$) (Cagnacci et al 2003).

**GENERALISED ANXIETY DISORDER**
An 8-week randomised, double-blind, multicentre clinical trial involving 129 outpatients with GAD showed that kava kava LI 150 (400 mg/day) was as effective as buspirone in the acute treatment of GAD, with about 75% of patients responding to treatment (Boerner et al 2003).

**Comparative studies**  Comparative studies suggest the absence of significant differences between benzodiazepines and kavain or kava extract as treatments for anxiety. A 1993 double-blind comparative study involving 174 subjects over 6 weeks demonstrated that 300 mg/day of a 70% kava lactone extract produced a similar
improvement in anxiety level, as measured by HAM-A scores, to 15 mg oxazepam or 9 mg bromazepam taken daily (Woelk et al 1993). D,L-kavain produced equivalent anxiolytic effects to oxazepam in 38 outpatients with neurotic or psychosomatic disturbances, under double-blind study conditions (Lindenberg & Pitule-Schodel 1990).

Benzodiazepine withdrawal Kava may have a role in reducing anxiety and improving subjective wellbeing during benzodiazepine withdrawal, according to a 2001 randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled study (Malsch & Kieser 2001). During the first 2 weeks of that study, kava dose was increased from 50 mg to 300 mg/day while benzodiazepine use was tapered off during the same period. Kava extract was superior to placebo in reducing anxiety as measured by the HAM-A scale and improved subjects’ feelings of wellbeing according to a subjective wellbeing scale (Bf-S total scores).

Lack of tolerance The results from a randomised, double-blind trial conducted over 25 weeks have found that physical tolerance does not develop to kava kava extract and it is well tolerated (Volz & Kieser 1997). Evidence from a randomised double-blind study conducted with 84 patients has shown that treatment with kavain (one of the active constituents of kava kava) produces continuous improvements in parameters such as memory function, vigilance, fluency of mental functions and reaction time. Interestingly, these effects were reported over a relatively short period of 3 weeks (Scholing & Clausen 1977). Another randomised double-blind trial conducted with 52 patients over 28 days not only confirmed anxiolytic activity but also found that kavain promoted subjective vitality-related performance (Lehmann et al 1989).

Commission E approves the use of kava in conditions of nervous anxiety and restlessness (Blumenthal et al 2000).

INSOMNIA
The hypnotic activity of kava extract was confirmed in a RCT in which a single dose of 300 mg kava extract was found to improve the quality of sleep significantly (Emser & Bartylla 1991, as reported by Ernst et al 2001). In vivo experiments with D,L-kavain have shown that it reduces active wakefulness and significantly prolongs sleep, compared with placebo (Holm et al 1991).

OTHER USES
Traditionally, the herb has been used to treat urinary tract infections, asthma, conditions associated with pain, gonorrhoea and syphilis, and to assist with weight
reduction, muscle relaxation and sleep. Topically, it has been used as a local anaesthetic and to treat pruritus.

**DOSAGE RANGE**
- Cut rhizome: 1.7–3.4 g/day.
- Dried rhizome: 1.5–3 g/day in divided doses or equivalent to 60–120 mg kavapyrones daily.
- Fluid extract (1:2): 3–8.5 mL/day in divided doses.
- Ideally, ethanolic extracts should contain > 20 mg/mL kava lactones.

**ACCORDING TO CLINICAL STUDIES**
- Anxiety: generally doses up to 300 mg daily of kava extract WS 1490 providing 105–210 mg kavalactones. A kava extract LI 150 (400 mg/day) was used successfully in generalised anxiety disorder.
- Insomnia — a single dose of 300 mg kava extract.
- Benzodiazepine withdrawal — 300 mg/day of kava extract.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
In RCT, the incidence of adverse effects to kava kava has been found to be similar to placebo. Two post-marketing surveillance studies involving more than 6000 patients found adverse effects in 2.3% and 1.5% of patients taking 120–240 mg standardised extract (Ernst 2002). The most common side-effects appear to be gastrointestinal upset and headaches.

**HEPATOTOXICITY**
A systematic review assessing the safety of kava which included a total of 7078 patients taking kava extract equivalent to 10 mg to 240 mg kavalactones per day for 5–7 weeks identified no cases of hepatotoxicity (Stevinson et al 2002). Considering that case reports of hepatotoxicity exist, they should be considered a very rare event based on the evidence.

**LONG-TERM USE**
Most adverse effects, such as yellow discolouration of the skin, hair and nails, have been associated with excessive long-term use. This temporary condition is known as ‘kava dermopathy’ and reverses once kava use is discontinued. A 2003 report found no evidence of brain dysfunction in heavy and long-term kava users (Cairney et al 2003).

**Clinical note — Commercial kava products and links to hepatotoxicity**
Conflicting reports abound. On 15 August 2002, the TGA initiated a voluntary recall of all products containing kava kava. The response was undertaken due to incoming
details from European countries of case reports of hepatotoxicity apparently associated with the use of commercial kava products. The decision to remove kava from the market has been viewed as controversial and questioned by many people. Toxicological and clinical studies have shown that kava extracts are virtually devoid of toxic effects and when assessed primarily by the British regulatory authority (MCA) and a German research group, a critical analysis of the suspected cases in Germany reveals that a very probable causal relationship could be established in only one patient (Teschke et al 2003). It is suspected that a rare, immunologically mediated, idiosyncratic mechanism may be responsible (Schulze et al 2003) and the extraction process used to produce kava products also had an influence. It now appears that the aqueous method results in extraction of glutathione, in addition to kava lactones, an important factor for protecting the liver from potential damage, whereas the acetone extraction method does not (Whitton et al 2003). As a result, kava products made with the acetone extraction process are more toxic than those produced via aqueous extraction methods. This is an important distinction to make as most European products were made using acetone extraction, whereas Australian products were chiefly made via aqueous extraction. Interestingly, fulminant hepatic failure has not been documented with traditional use in Pacific countries nor in the Northern Territory where Aboriginal kava drinkers consume kava lactones in doses estimated to be 10–50-fold the recommended levels (Currie & Clough 2003). Several reports published in 2003 have found no evidence of aqueous kava extracts inducing irreversible liver toxicity in vivo (Singh & Devkota 2003) or in humans (Clough et al 2003). One study involving long-term users of aqueous kava extracts found that although changes to liver function could occur at moderate levels of consumption, they are reversible and begin to return to baseline after 1–2 weeks’ abstinence from kava. Genetic polymorphism of many cytochrome enzymes, leading to inter-individual variation in drug metabolism, may be another important factor in the marked discrepancy in hepatotoxic response to kava (Singh 2005).

Australia was not alone, and other countries also issued health advisory cautions or banned kava-containing products from sale. Although these actions effectively removed kava products from the market, the traditional kava beverage continued to be consumed in the Pacific Islands and the kava-producing countries of the Pacific found the controversy surprising given the long history of apparent safe use in the Pacific. In January 2003 the Kava Evaluation Group was established in Australia to review the accumulating safety data and by August that same year the Complementary Medicine Evaluation Committee recommended to the TGA that certain forms of
Kava could be considered safe. The TGA accepted these recommendations and amended the regulations accordingly. Currently, there is a limit of 125 mg kavalactones allowable per tablet or capsule and all products must not provide more than 250 mg kavalactones in the recommended daily dose.

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**

**ALCOHOL**
Potentiation of CNS sedative effects has been reported in an animal study; however, one double-blind placebo-controlled study found no additive effects on CNS depression or safety related performance (Herberg 1993). Alternatively, a study of 10 subjects found that when alcohol and kava were combined, kava potentiated both the perceived and measured impairment compared to alcohol alone (Foo & Lemon 1997). Caution.

**BARBITURATES**
Additive effects are theoretically possible. Use with caution and monitor drug dosage. However, interaction may be beneficial under professional supervision.

**BENZODIAZEPINES**
Additive effects are theoretically possible. Use with caution and monitor drug dosage. However, interaction may be beneficial under professional supervision. The combination has been used successfully to ease symptoms of benzodiazepine withdrawal.

**L-DOPA MEDICATION**
Antagonistic effects are theoretically possible, thereby reducing the effectiveness of L-dopa. Avoid concurrent use unless under professional supervision.

**METHADONE AND MORPHINE**
Additive effects with increased CNS depression are theoretically possible, so use with caution, although interactions may be beneficial under professional supervision.

**SUBSTRATES FOR CYP3A4**
Although in vitro evidence suggests that kava inhibits CYP3A4, in vivo tests found no such effect. Until further research is conducted to determine whether the effect is clinically significant, interactions with drugs chiefly metabolised by CYP3A4 are speculative.

**SUBSTRATES FOR CYP2E1**
Inhibition of CYP2E1 has been demonstrated in vivo — serum levels of CYP2E1 substrates may become elevated — use caution.
CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Endogenous depression — according to Commission E (Blumenthal et al 2000).
Although clinical studies indicate no adverse effects on vigilance, the herb’s CNS effects may slow some individuals’ reaction times, thereby affecting ability to drive a car or operate heavy machinery. Additionally, it should not be used by people with pre-existing liver disease and long-term continuous use should be avoided unless under medical supervision. It should be used with caution in the elderly and in those with Parkinson’s disease.

PREGNANCY USE
Not recommended for use in pregnancy.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Kava kava is a scientifically proven treatment for the symptoms of anxiety and stress states. Its anxiety-reducing effects are similar to those of 15 mg oxazepam or 9 mg bromazepam, yet physical tolerance and reduced vigilance have not been observed.
- It also reduces symptoms of anxiety related to menopause when used together with HRT, and reduces withdrawal symptoms associated with benzodiazepine discontinuation.
- It has anxiolytic, sedative, antispasmodic, analgesic and local anaesthetic activity.
- Although the herb is considered to have a low incidence of adverse effects, long-term use should be carefully supervised because of the possibility of developing adverse reactions.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this herb do for me?
Kava kava is an effective herbal relaxant that reduces symptoms of anxiety and restlessness. It is also used to relieve anxiety in menopause, insomnia and symptoms of benzodiazepine withdrawal.

When will it start to work?
Anxiety-relieving effects are usually seen within the first few weeks of use.

Are there any safety issues?
Taking high doses long term has been associated with a number of side-effects and should be avoided.

REFERENCES


Grunze H et al. Kava pyrones exert effects on neuronal transmission and transmembrane cation currents similar to established mood stabilizers: a review. Prog Neuropsychopharmacol Biol Psychiatry 25.8 (2001): 1555-70.


Lavender

Historical note  Lavender was used as an antiseptic in ancient Arabian, Greek and Roman medicines. Its generic name comes from the Latin lavare, to wash, and it was used as a bath additive as well as an antiseptic in the hospitals and sick rooms of ancient Persia, Greece and Rome (Blumenthal et al 2000). In the 17th century, Culpeper described lavender as having ‘use for pains in the head following cold, cramps, convulsions, palsies and faintings’ (Battaglia 1995). Lavender was also used traditionally to scent bed linen and to protect stored clothes from moths. This was such a well-accepted practice that the phrase ‘laying up in lavender’ was used metaphorically to mean ‘putting away in storage’ (Kirk-Smith 2003). Lavender is now widely used to scent perfumes, potpourri, toiletries and cosmetics, as well as to flavour food. Lavender is commonly adulterated with related species that can vary in their constituents. Spike lavender yields more oil but is of lower quality. Lavandin is a hybrid of spike lavender and true lavender.

COMMON NAME  Lavender

OTHER NAMES  Common lavender, English lavender, French lavender, garden lavender, Spanish lavender, spike lavender, true lavender

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Lavandula angustifolia (synonyms: L. officinalis, L. vera, L. spica); L. dentata; L. latifolia; L. pubescens; L. stoechas (family Labiatae)

PLANT PARTS USED
Flower

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Lavender flowers contain between 1% and 3% essential oil. The oil is a complex mixture of many different compounds, the amounts of which can vary between species. The most abundant compounds include linalyl acetate (30–55%), linalool (20–35%), cineole, camphor, coumarins and tannins (5–10%) (Schulz et al 1998), together with 1,8-cineole, thymol and carvacrol (Aburjai et al 2005). Perillyl alcohol and α-limonene have been shown to exert anticancer effects (see clinical note).
Clinical note — Perillyl alcohol and anticancer effects?
Perillyl alcohol and α-limonene are monoterpenes found in lavender (also cherries, mint and celery seeds) and have shown chemotherapeutic and chemoprotective effects in a wide variety of in vitro and animal models (Shi & Gould 2002) and are currently being examined in human clinical trials (Gould 1997, Kelloff et al 1999). Perillyl alcohol treatment has resulted in 70–99% inhibition of ‘aberrant hyperproliferation’, a late-occurring event preceding mammary tumourigenesis in vivo (Katzdare et al 1997) and, together with limonene, perillyl alcohol has been shown to induce the complete regression of rat mammary carcinomas by what appears to be a cytostatic and differentiation process (Shi & Gould 1995). Perillyl alcohol has also been shown to inhibit human breast cancer cell growth in vitro and in vivo (Yuri et al 2004) and inhibit the expression and function of the androgen receptor in human prostate cancer cells (Chung et al 2006).

A variety of mechanisms has been proposed to explain these effects. The compounds may act via interfering with RAS signal transduction pathways that regulate malignant cell proliferation (Hohl 1996) and have been found to promote apoptosis in pancreatic adenocarcinoma cells (Stayrook et al 1997) and liver tumours in vivo (Mills et al 1995). Perillyl alcohol, together with α-limonene, has been found to preferentially inhibit HMG-CoA reductase in tumour cells (Elson et al 1999), as well as inhibit ubiquinone synthesis and block the conversion of lathosterol to cholesterol, which may add to its antitumour activity (Ren & Gould 1994). Limonene is oxidised by the CYP2C9 and CYP2C19 enzymes in human liver microsomes (Miyazawa et al 2002a) and there are reported sex-related differences in the oxidative metabolism of limonene by liver microsomes in rats (Miyazawa et al 2002b).

Although in vitro and animal studies have demonstrated the ability of perillyl alcohol to inhibit tumourigenesis in the mammary gland, liver, and pancreas, the results are not yet conclusive and one animal study testing perillyl alcohol detected a weakly promoting effect early in nitrosamine-induced oesophageal tumourigenesis in rats (Liston et al 2003). In initial phase II clinical trials, perillyl alcohol administered orally, four times daily, at a dose of 1200 mg/m² had no clinical antitumour activity on advanced ovarian cancer (Bailey et al 2002), metastatic androgen-independent prostate cancer (Liu G et al 2003), or metastatic colorectal cancer (Meadows et al 2002).

MAIN ACTIONS
Lavender and several of its constituents have been tested for pharmacological activity.
SEDATIVE/ANXIOLYTIC
The sedative properties of the essential oil and its main constituents (linalool and linalyl acetate) were shown to have a dose-dependent effect in mice and to reverse caffeine-induced hyperactivity in mice (Buchbauer et al 1991, Lim et al 2005), as well as reduce stress, as indicated by modulation of ACTH, catecholamine and gonadotropin levels in experimental menopausal rats (Yamada et al 2005), and reduce cortisol responses in infant Japanese macaques (Kawakami et al 2002). Inhalation of lavender has also been shown to produce a dose-dependent anticonvulsant effect in both rats and mice (Yamada et al 1994).

In human trials, inhalation of lavender has been shown to induce relaxation and sedation (Schulz et al 1998) and to alter EEG responses (Diego et al 1998, Dimpfel et al 2004, Lee et al 1994, Sanders et al 2002, Yagyu 1994), as well as significantly decreasing heart rate and increasing high-frequency spectral components to produce calm and vigorous mood states in healthy volunteers (Kuroda et al 2005). Transdermal absorption of linalool without inhalation produced a decrease in systolic blood pressure and a smaller decrease of skin temperature with no effects on subjective evaluation of wellbeing in healthy human subjects (Heuberger et al 2004), and another study found that lavender scent was associated with lower fatigue following an anxiety-provoking task (Burnett et al 2004).

These positive studies are contrasted by studies with negative findings. Lavender aromatherapy did not significantly improve scores on the Hospital Anxiety and Depression Scale or the Somatic and Psychological Health Report (SPHERE) in a RCT of 313 patients undergoing radiotherapy (Graham et al 2003) and a study of 169 subjects, including both depressed and non-depressed subjects, showed lavender increased fatigue, tension, confusion, and total mood disturbance, and decreased vigour (Goel & Grasso 2004).

ANTIMICROBIAL
Various in vitro data suggest that lavender oil has antibacterial (Dadalioglu & Evrendilek 2004, Larrondo & Calvo-Torras 1995), antifungal (Inouye et al 2001) and mitocidal activities (Perrucci et al 1996, Refaat et al 2002), with both lavender and linalool having fungistatic and fungicidal activity against Candida albicans strains at high concentrations and inhibiting germ tube formation and hyphal elongation at low concentrations, suggesting it may be useful for reducing fungal progression and the spread of infection in host tissues (D’Auria et al 2005). Lavender has been shown to be active alone and to work synergistically with tea tree oil against the fungi responsible for tinea and onychomycosis (Cassella et al 2002).
The fungistatic properties of linalool have led to the suggestion that it could be used to complement environmental measures in preventing fungal contamination in storage areas of libraries (Rakotonirainy & Lavedrine 2005).

CARMINATIVE
Linalool, one of lavender’s major components, demonstrated spasmolytic activity when tested on an in vitro preparation of guinea-pig ileum smooth muscle (Lis-Balchin & Hart 1999).

ANTINEOPLASTIC EFFECTS
In vitro and animal studies suggest that perillyl alcohol and D-limonene (see Clinical note) may have useful chemotherapeutic and chemoprotective effects in a range of cancers, including cancer of the colon, liver, lung, breast, pancreas and prostate, as well as in melanoma (Micromedex database 2003). These results have not yet been confirmed in human studies.

OTHER ACTIONS
When applied topically, lavender oil has rubefacient properties (Fisher & Painter 1996) and is thought to have analgesic, antihistaminic and anti-inflammatory activities. A small study comparing the effects of a bath containing lavender oil, synthetic lavender oil, and distilled water in reducing perineal discomfort after childbirth found lower mean discomfort scores in the lavender group; however, the differences between groups were not significant (Cornwell & Dale 1995).

Traditionally, lavender oil is considered to have a balancing effect on the CNS, acting as an aromatic stimulant or calming agent.

Extracts of L. multifida have been found to have topical anti-inflammatory activity in mice, with some extracted compounds having activity comparable to that of indomethacin (Sosa et al 2005). At high concentrations (0.1%) lavender oil has also been found to suppress TNF-alpha-induced neutrophil adherence (Abe et al 2003). Lavender has also demonstrated powerful anti-oxidant activity (Gulcin et al 2004), as well as antimutagenic activity (Evandri et al 2005) and antiplatelet and antithrombotic properties demonstrated both in vitro and in vivo (Ballabeni et al 2004).

CLINICAL USE
Although few scientific or clinical studies have been conducted with lavender oil, much of the evidence supporting its use is based on the known pharmacological actions of the constituents and a long history of traditional use.
ANXIETY, INSOMNIA AND MOOD ENHANCEMENT

A number of controlled trials and observational studies suggest that inhalation of ambient lavender oil has a relaxing effect and is able to reduce anxiety and improve mood, concentration and sleep.

In a study of 31 healthy volunteers intermittent exposure to ambient lavender oil over a 30-minute period was found to increase the percentage of deep or slow-wave sleep in men and women with corresponding reports of higher vigour the morning after lavender exposure (Goel et al 2005). That study also reported gender-specific effects with increased stage 2 (light) sleep, as well as decreased rapid-eye movement sleep and the amount of time needed to reach wakefulness after first falling asleep in women, and opposite effects in men. In a 4-week randomised double-blind, pilot study lavender tincture (1:5 in 50% alcohol) 60 drops/day was not as effective as imipramine for treating depression; however, a combination of lavender tincture and imipramine was found to be more effective than imipramine alone with better and earlier improvement (Akhondzadeh et al 2003). In another randomised, placebo controlled, pilot study, using a crossover design, lavender aromatherapy produced a non-significant improvement in insomnia compared with exposure to almond oil (Lewith et al 2005). A case study of four geriatric patients with impaired sleep also found that lavender aromatherapy increased sleep time and was comparable in effectiveness to hypnotics or tranquillisers (Hardy & Stretch 1995). A double-blind study of 140 patients found that an essential oil spray or gargle containing lavender with 14 other essential oils significantly reduced snoring as reported by bed partners (Prichard 2004).

In hospitalised patients, aromatherapy with lavender oil was found to significantly reduce anxiety in a study of 14 female haemodialysis patients (Itai et al 2000). Another controlled trial of 200 subjects found that lavender aromatherapy reduced anxiety and improved mood in patients waiting for dental treatment (Lehrner et al 2005).

A number of studies have examined the use of lavender aromatherapy and massage with lavender oil (see below) for reducing agitation in dementia patients; however, these studies are generally small and results have been mixed. A placebo-controlled study found that lavender aromatherapy effectively reduced agitated behaviour in 15 patients with severe dementia (Holmes et al 2002), but it had no effect on reducing agitation in another controlled trial of 7 severely demented patients (Snow et al 2004), nor was there effect on reducing resistive behaviour in 13 people with dementia in a residential aged care facility (Gray & Clair 2002).
In a RCT involving 80 non-depressed women, adding lavender oil to a bath was found to enhance the general mood-enhancing effects of daily bathing and produce a reduction in pessimism (Morris 2002). It has been suggested that the relaxing effects may be useful in the treatment of chronic pain (Buckle 1999) and this is supported by a study reporting that while lavender did not elicit a direct analgesic effect it did alter affective appraisal of the pain experience with retrospective impression of pain intensity and pain unpleasantness from experimentally-induced heat, pressure, and ischaemic pain being reduced after treatment with lavender aromatherapy (Gedney et al 2004).

**When used in combination with massage** Overall, the evidence supporting the use of lavender oil in massage is encouraging; however, most studies are relatively small and there are mixed reports of its efficacy.

A controlled trial of 122 patients found massage with lavender oil improved mood and perceived levels of anxiety in 122 intensive care patients (Dunn et al 1995). In a RCT, eight sessions of acupressure using lavender essential oil over 3 weeks was found to be effective in relieving pain, neck stiffness and stress in 32 adults with sub-acute non-specific neck pain (Yip & Tse 2006). In another controlled trial, a 2-week lavender aromatherapy hand massage program produced significant improvements in emotion and aggressive behaviour in elderly people with Alzheimer’s type dementia (Lee 2005). Alternatively, one RCT involving 42 subjects found that the addition of lavender essential oil did not appear to increase the beneficial effects of massage for patients with advanced cancer (Soden et al 2004).

**Use in animals** Lavender aromatherapy has also been found to produce increased resting and reduced movement and vocalisation in dogs housed in a rescue shelter (Graham et al 2005).

Commission E supports the use of oral lavender in mood disturbances such as restlessness and insomnia (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**IMPROVED CONCENTRATION**

In a RCT, exposure to lavender aromatherapy during breaks resulted in significantly higher concentration levels during the afternoon period when concentration was found to be lowest in a control group (Sakamoto et al 2005). Lavender oil aromatherapy has also been found to reduce mental stress and increase arousal rate (Motomura et al 2001), elicit a subjective sense of ‘happiness’ (Vernet-Maury et al 1999) and to produce increased relaxation, less depressed mood and faster and more accurate mathematical computations (Field et al 2005). In a RCT, lavender aromatherapy tended to enhance calculating speed and calculating accuracy in female but not male subjects (Liu et al 2004), but results from another study suggest...
that lavender reduced working memory and impaired reaction times for both memory and attention-based tasks compared with controls (Moss et al 2003).

A controlled study of dementia patients found that a blend of lavender, sweet marjoram, patchouli and vetiver essential oils in a cream massaged 5 times/day for 4 weeks onto the bodies and limbs of 56 aged care facility residents with moderate to severe dementia produced a small but significant improvement in Mini Mental State Examination associated with increased mental alertness and awareness and resistance to nursing care procedures compared with massage with cream alone (Bowles et al 2002).

**DYSPHAGIA AND BLOATING**
Although there have been no clinical trials to investigate its use, lavender is commonly recommended for gastrointestinal disorders as a carminative and antiflatulent to soothe indigestion, colic, dyspepsia and bloating (Blumenthal et al 2000). Based on the antispasmodic actions of a key constituent, linalool, lavender may be useful in these conditions. No controlled clinical studies could be located to determine its effectiveness for these indications.

**ALOPECIA**
A RCT of scalp massage using thyme, rosemary, lavender and cedarwood essential oils in 86 patients with alopecia areata found a significant improvement in hair growth after 7 months (Hay et al 1998). Although the efficacy of lavender as a stand-alone treatment was not clarified with this trial, it is known that the herb has some antibacterial and antifungal activity that may play a role. In a single case study, topical application of lavender, together with other essential oils, was reported to assist in treating scalp eczema (De Valois 2004).

**PERINEAL DISCOMFORT FOLLOWING CHILDBIRTH**
A RCT in 635 women following childbirth found that using lavender oil in bath water was safe and pleasant to use and that there was a tendency towards lower discomfort scores between the third and fifth day (Dale & Cornwell 1994). In that study, 6 drops of pure lavender oil was added to the bath.

**INSECT BITES**
In vitro and animal studies suggest that lavender oil inhibits immediate-type allergic reactions by inhibition of mast-cell degranulation (Kim & Cho 1999).

**OTHER USES**
Lavender has a long history of use as a sedative, antidepressive, antimicrobial, carminative (smooth muscle relaxant), as a topical agent for burns and insect bites.
(Cavanagh & Wilkinson 2002) and as an insect repellant. Lavender has also been used to treat migraines and neuralgia, as an astringent to treat minor cuts and bruises, and is used externally for strained muscles, as well as acne, eczema and varicose ulcers (Fisher & Painter 1996). It is also used in a gargle for loss of voice.

In Australia, lavender essential oil is the most popular aromatherapy oil, out-selling the second most popular (orange) oil by more than seven times (F Kheery (In Essence) pers. commun. 2002). It is often combined with bergamot and cedarwood oils for relieving anxiety and stress and combined with marjoram to induce sleep.

**DOSAGE RANGE**

Probably no other herb is available in as many forms as lavender.

- **Infusion (tea):** 1.5 g dried flowers in 150 mL water.
- **Internal:** 1–4 drops (20–80 mg) on a sugar cube.
- **Liquid extract (1:2):** 2–4.5 mL/day.
- **External use:** mix 20 drops of oil with 20 mL of carrier oil such as almond oil. May be applied undiluted to insect bites or stings.
- **As a bath additive:** 20–100 g lavender flowers are commonly steeped in 2 L boiling water, strained, and then added to the bathwater.
- **Aromatherapy:** use a few drops of lavender oil on a suitable oil diffuser or on a pillow slip to assist sleep.

Lavender oil is quickly absorbed by the skin and constituents linalool and linalyl acetate have been detected in the blood 5 minutes after administration. Blood levels peak after 19 minutes and are negligible by 90 minutes.

**TOXICITY**

Although there are no specific reports of toxicity, it is suggested that no more than two (2) drops be taken internally. There is the potential for irritant or allergenic skin reactions with the topical use of lavender oil as it has been found to be cytotoxic to human skin cells in vitro (endothelial cells and fibroblasts) at a concentration of 0.25% (v/v), possibly due to membrane damage. The activity of linalool was found to reflect the cytotoxicity of the whole oil, whereas the cytotoxicity of linalyl acetate was found to be higher than that of the oil, suggesting suppression of its activity by an unknown factor in the oil (Prashar et al 2004).

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**

Controlled studies are not available; therefore, interactions are based on evidence of activity and are largely theoretical and speculative.
**PHARMACEUTICAL SEDATIVES**
Theoretically, lavender can potentiate the effects of sedatives, so observe patients taking this combination closely — beneficial interaction possible under professional supervision.

**ANTIDEPRESSANTS**
Lavender tincture may have additive effects when used with these medicines — beneficial interaction possible.

**PREGNANCY USE**
No restrictions known for external use.
Safety of internal use has not been scientifically established.

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**
- The active part of lavender is the volatile oil, which has relaxing, sedative, antispasmodic and antiseptic activity.
- Lavender can be taken as a tincture or tea, or the oil can be applied topically, used in baths or inhaled from a diffuser.
- It is advised that topical preparations be tested on a small area of skin before widespread application.
- Lavender has traditionally been used for sleep disorders, anxiety and nervous stomach, as well as to treat minor cuts, burns, bruises and insect bites and is commonly found in cosmetics and toiletries.
- Lavender contains substances that are currently being studied for cancer prevention.

**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**
**What will this herb do for me?**
Lavender oil is used to assist in relaxation, digestive problems and as first aid for minor skin conditions.

**When will it start to work?**
As a relaxant, effects may be felt on the first day of use, but this will depend on the dose and form used.

**Are there any safety issues?**
Although lavender has not been scientifically studied as extensively as some other herbal medicines, historical use suggests it is generally safe.

**REFERENCES**


Dadalioglu I, Evrendilek GA. Chemical compositions and antibacterial effects of essential oils of Turkish oregano (Origanum minutifolium), bay laurel (Laurus nobilis), Spanish lavender (Lavandula stoechas L.), and fennel (Foeniculum vulgare) on common foodborne pathogens. J Agric Food Chem 52(26) (2004): 8255-60.


Kuroda K et al. Sedative effects of the jasmine tea odor and (R)-(−)-linalool, one of its major odor components, on autonomic nerve activity and mood states. Eur J Appl Physiol 95(2-3) (2005): 107-14.
Lee SY. The effect of lavender aromatherapy on cognitive function, emotion, and aggressive behavior of elderly with dementia. Taehan Kanho Hakhoe Chi 35(2) (2005): 303-12.

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
Micromedex. Lavender. Thomson 2003; www.micromedex.com
Rakotonirainy MS, Lavedrine B. Screening for antifungal activity of essential oils and related compounds to control the biocontamination in libraries and archives storage areas. Int Biodeterior Biodegrad 55(2) (2005): 141-7.
Lemon balm

Historical note  Lemon balm was used in ancient Greece and Rome as a topical treatment for wounds. In the Middle Ages it was used internally as a sedative and by the 17th century, English herbalist Culpeper claimed it could improve mood and stimulate clear thinking. Nowadays, it is still used to induce a sense of calm and help with anxiety, but is also added to cosmetics, insect repellants, furniture polish and food.

COMMON NAME
Lemon balm

OTHER NAMES
Balm mint, bee balm, blue balm, common balm, cure-all, dropsy plant, garden balm, sweet balm

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Melissa officinalis (family Labiatae)

PLANT PART USED
Aerial parts

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Flavonoids, phenolic acids, tannins, triterpenes, essential oil and sesquiterpenes. Of note, the herb contains citronellal, caffeic acid, eugenol, rosmarinic acid and choline (Wake et al 2000). Growing and harvesting methods have a major influence on the amount of volatile oil present in the leaves. It has been found that the oil content in the herb is highest in the top third and lowest in the bottom two-thirds (Mrlianova et al 2002).

MAIN ACTIONS
ANXIOLYTIC AND SEDATIVE
Over the years, a number of studies involving rodents have suggested specific anxiolytic or sedative effects (Kennedy et al 2002, Soulimani et al 1991). More recently, a double-blind placebo-controlled study has confirmed anxiolytic activity is clinically significant for lemon balm essential oil (Ballard et al 2002). In 2005 a double-blind, placebo-controlled, randomised, crossover trial of a whole extract of lemon balm (300 and 600 mg) in 18 healthy adults found a significant reduction in...
stress in the volunteers taking 600 mg (Kennedy et al 2004). A number of possible active components of the dried leaf and essential oil of the herb may be responsible for these effects, such as eugenol and citronellol, which bind to GABA-A receptors and increase the affinity of GABA to receptors (Aoshima & Hamamoto 1999).

**ANTIVIRAL**
A lemon balm extract was found to have significant virucidal effects against HSV-1 within 3 and 6 hours of treatment in vitro and in animal tests (Dimitrova et al 1993). The volatile oils from *M. officinalis* have also been shown to inhibit the replication of HSV-2 in vitro (Allahverdiyer et al 2004).

**ANTIBACTERIAL AND ANTIFUNGAL**
One in vitro study found that lemon balm extract exhibited activity against bacteria, filamentous fungi and yeasts (Larrondo et al 1995). It is likely that the constituent eugenol is chiefly responsible, as it has well established antibacterial activity against such organisms as *Escherichia coli* and *Staphylococcus aureus* (Walsh et al 2003).

**CHOLINERGIC**
Lemon balm exhibits CNS acetylcholine receptor activity, with both nicotinic and muscarinic binding properties (Wake et al 2000). In vitro data has demonstrated that lemon balm is a weak inhibitor of acetylcholinesterase and has a moderate affinity to the GABA-A benzodiazepine receptor site (Salah & Jager 2005). This indicates that lemon balm may have a role to play in the treatment of Alzheimer’s disease and epilepsy. However, a 2003 randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, crossover trial demonstrated that lemon balm did not inhibit cholinesterase. The trial demonstrated improved cognitive function and mood and concluded that for these reasons it was a valuable adjunct to Alzheimer’s therapy (Kennedy et al 2003).

**Clinical note**
Long before the current biologically based theory of cholinergic abnormalities in Alzheimer’s dementia emerged, western European medicine systems have traditionally used several herbs that are now known to exert cholinergic activity (such as sage and lemon balm) for their dementia-treating properties.

**ANTI-INFLAMMATORY, ANALGESIC AND ANTISPASMODIC**
The plant extract exerts analgesic activity at high doses in vivo (Soulimani et al 1991). Two constituents in lemon balm have documented anti-inflammatory activity, achieved through different mechanisms of action. Rosmarinic acid, a naturally occurring constituent found in *M. officinalis*, inhibits several complement-dependent inflammatory processes (Englberger et al 1988, Peake et al 1991). Eugenol, another
important component, inhibits COX-1 and -2 activities in vitro (Huss et al 2002, Kelm et al 2000). Both the whole volatile oil and its main component citral have demonstrated antispasmodic ability on isolated rat ileum (Sadraei et al 2003).

**ANTIOXIDANT**
Lemon balm has shown antioxidant activity in several studies (Hohmann et al 1999). According to a 2003 study, concentrations of antioxidants within lemon balm are > 75 mmol/100 g (Dragland et al 2003).

**CARDIOVASCULAR EFFECTS**
Aqueous extracts of lemon balm have been shown to slow cardiac rate but not alter the force of contraction in isolated rat hearts (Gazola et al 2004). An extract of lemon balm reduced blood cholesterol and lipid levels in rats fed a high fat and alcohol diet (Bolkent et al 2005). Interestingly, the extract also increased glutathione levels and reduced lipid peroxidation in the liver, demonstrating a hepatoprotective effect.

**OTHER ACTIONS**
In vitro testing has also identified anti-HIV activity with inhibitory activity against HIV-1 reverse transcriptase (Yamasaki et al 1998), inhibition of TSH binding to thyroid plasma membranes and the extrathyroidal enzymic T4-5'-deiodination to T3 (Auf‘mkolk et al 1984a), and antitumour activity (Chlabicz & Galasinski 1986, Galasinski 1996, Galasinski et al 1996).

**CLINICAL USE**
In clinical practice, lemon balm is often prescribed in combination with other herbal medicines. As a reflection of this, many clinical studies have investigated the effects of lemon balm as an ingredient of a herbal combination, making it difficult to determine the efficacy of this herb individually.

**ANXIETY**
Although used traditionally as a treatment for anxiety, most modern-day evidence comes from in vivo studies, as the herb has not been clinically tested to a significant degree. However, the essential oil of lemon balm has been investigated under double-blind placebo-controlled conditions and found to be a safe and effective treatment for clinically significant agitation in people with severe dementia (Ballard et al 2002). The trial, which involved 71 subjects, found that after 1 month’s treatment, patients were less agitated, less socially withdrawn and spent more time in constructive activities than those in the placebo group.

Commission E approves the use of lemon balm in the treatment of anxiety and restlessness (Blumenthal et al 2000).
COGNITIVE FUNCTION
Lemon balm has been used for centuries to improve cognitive function and encouraging results from a 2002 clinical study confirm that it can influence memory. The randomised, double-blind crossover study involving 20 healthy young volunteers found that single doses of lemon balm were able to modulate both mood and cognitive performance in a dose- and time-dependent manner (Kennedy et al 2002). In this study, treatment with the lowest dose (300 mg) increased self-rated ‘calmness’ within 1 hour whereas the 600 mg and 900 mg doses produced significant effects on memory task performance, observable at both 2.5 hours and 4 hours after administration. The highest tested dose (900 mg) was found to significantly reduce alertness within 1 hour, suggesting a dose–response effect.

ALZHEIMER’S DISEASE
A randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial demonstrated the efficacy and safety of M. officinalis in 42 patients aged 65–80 with mild to moderate Alzheimer’s disease who were given 60 drops/day for 4 months (Akhondzadeh et al 2003). Outcome measures included significantly better cognition and reduced agitation.

INSOMNIA
In clinical practice, lemon balm is often prescribed in combination with other herbs such as valerian in the treatment of insomnia. As a reflection of this, a randomised, double-blind multicentre study investigated the effects of a commercial valerian and lemon balm herbal combination (Songha Night) in 98 healthy subjects (Cerny & Schmid 1999). Treatment was administered over a 30-day period and consisted of 3 tablets taken half an hour before bedtime, providing a total dose of 1–6 g valerian and 1–2 g lemon balm. Herbal treatment was found to significantly improve sleep quality and was well tolerated.

Another randomised, double-blind crossover study found that the same combination of valerian and lemon balm taken over 9 nights was as effective as triazolam in the treatment of insomnia (Dressing et al 1992). The dose used was equivalent to 1.4 g dried valerian and 0.9 g dried lemon balm.

As with all herbal combination studies, it is difficult to determine the contribution each individual herb made to the end result. As such, these studies are encouraging but the role of lemon balm as a stand-alone treatment for insomnia remains unclear.

Commission E approves the use of lemon balm in the treatment of insomnia (Blumenthal et al 2000).
GASTROINTESTINAL CONDITIONS ASSOCIATED WITH SPASM AND NERVOSNESS

To date, only studies using lemon balm in combination with other herbs are available. A 15-day open study involving 24 subjects with chronic non-specific colitis investigated whether a combination of lemon balm, St John’s wort, dandelion, marigold and fennel could provide symptom relief (Chakurski et al 1981). Excellent results were obtained by the end of the study, with herbal treatment resulting in the disappearance of spontaneous and palpable pains along the large intestine in 95.83% of patients. A double-blind study using a herbal tea prepared from chamomile, lemon balm, vervain, licorice and fennel in infantile colic has also been conducted. A dose of 150 mL offered up to three times daily was found to eliminate symptoms of colic in 57% of infants, whereas placebo was helpful in only 26% after 7 days’ treatment (Weizman et al 1993).

Commission E supports the use of lemon balm for functional gastrointestinal conditions (Blumenthal et al 2000).

HERPES SIMPLEX TYPE I — EXTERNAL USE

The topical use of lemon balm preparations for HSV infection is very popular in Europe. Results from a randomised double-blind study in 66 subjects with a history of recurrent herpes labialis (>3 episodes/year) found that standardised lemon balm ointment (700 mg crude herb per gram) applied four times daily for 5 days significantly shortened healing time, prevented infection spread and produced rapid symptom relief (Koytchev et al 1999). Decreased symptoms and increased rate of healing were also observed in another double-blind study of lemon balm cream in 116 subjects (Woelbling & Leonhardt 1994).

OTHER USES

Animal studies have identified a dose-dependent anti-ulcerogenic activity for lemon balm extract, which has been histologically confirmed. This activity is associated with a reduced acid output and an increased mucin secretion, an increase in PGE₂ release and a decrease in leukotrienes (Khayyal et al 2001).

DOSAGE RANGE

- Fresh herb: 1.5–4.5 g two–three times daily.
- Infusion: 1.5–4.5 g in 150 mL water.
- Fluid extract (1:1) (g/mL): 6–12 mL/day.
- Ointment: 700 mg/g ointment applied four times daily for herpes simplex infection.

TOXICITY

Not known

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
ADVERSE REACTIONS
Lemon balm is well tolerated according to one double-blind, randomised crossover study (Kennedy et al 2002).

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
Controlled clinical studies are not available, so interactions are speculative and based on evidence of activity.

BARBITURATES
Increased sedative effects: one animal study (Soulimani et al 1991) found that concomitant administration of lemon balm extract with pentobarbital produced an increased sedative effect — observe patients taking this combination.

CHOLINERGIC DRUGS
Additive effects are theoretically possible and may be beneficial — observe patients taking this combination.

CONTRAINdications and Precautions
Hypothyroidism — one in vitro study found that an extract of M. officinalis inhibited both the extrathyroidal enzymic T4-5'-deiodination to T3 and the T4-5'-deiodination (Auf 'mkolk et al 1984b). Whether this has any clinical significance has yet to be determined.

Pregnancy Use
Safety has not been scientifically established and is unknown.

Practice Points/patient Counselling
- Lemon balm has been used traditionally to treat insomnia, irritability, restlessness, anxiety and dementia. It is also used to relieve gastrointestinal symptoms associated with spasms and nervousness.
- Used topically as a cold sore treatment, it significantly reduces symptoms, shortens the healing period and prevents infection spread. It may be suitable both as an active treatment and as a preventative agent in cases of chronic recurrent herpes simplex infections.
- Lemon balm may have some anti-inflammatory and antispasmodic activity.
- The essential oil is used in aromatherapy to relieve anxiety and promote calm and a sense of wellbeing, which has been confirmed in one clinical study.
- One clinical study has found that it can modulate both mood and cognitive performance in a dose- and time-dependent manner.
ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What will this herb do for me?
Lemon balm has several different actions and is used for a number of different conditions. Taking the herb internally may help reduce anxiety and improve mood and mental concentration. When taken together with valerian, it can relieve insomnia. It may also relieve stomach spasms associated with nervousness, or in chronic, non-specific colitis when taken as part of a specific herbal combination. Melissa cream applied four times daily to herpes simplex infections can reduce symptoms, accelerate healing and reduce the chance of the infection spreading.

When will it start to work?
Approximately 1 month’s treatment with the essential oil is required for calming effects on agitation in dementia to be seen. Taken internally with valerian, effects on sleep may be seen after 9 days’ use. Improved memory occurred within 2.5 hours according to one study; however, it is not known if and when effects are seen in dementia. Melissa cream has been shown to significantly reduce symptoms of herpes simplex within 2 days, when applied four times daily.

Are there any safety issues?
One study using lemon balm in tablet form found that it was well tolerated. Drug interactions are theoretically possible and this herb should be used cautiously in people with hypothyroidism.

REFERENCES


Lemon balm 785

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
Licorice

Historical note  Licorice root has been used in Europe since prehistoric times, and its medicinal use is well documented (Fiore et al 2005). References to licorice date back to approximately 2500 BC on Assyrian clay tablets and Egyptian papyri. It has been used as both a food and a medicine since ancient times. The genus name, meaning ‘sweet root’, is attributed to the first century Greek physician Dioscorides. The herb is also popular in traditional Chinese and Ayurvedic medicine (Blumenthal et al 2000).

OTHER NAMES
Alcacuz, Chinese licorice, licorice root, liquorice, sweet root, gan cao, kanzo, radix glycyrrhizae, yashimadhu

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Glycyrrhiza glabra L. (family Leguminosae)
It should be differentiated from: G. uralensis (synonyms: Chinese licorice, gan cao, licorice root, sweet root), G. inflata (synonyms: gan cao, zhigancao), G. pralidiflora, G. glandifera, G. pallida, G. tyica and G. violacea, although some studies do not always clearly state which form is used.

PLANT PARTS USED
Root and stolon

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Licorice contains several triterpenoid saponins, the most studied of which is glycyrrhizin (GL, also known as glycyrrhizic acid or glycyrrhizinic acid).
Other important constituents include: flavonoids (isoflavonoids, liquiritin, isoliquiritin, liquiritigenin, formononetin, glabridin and the chalcones [isoliquiritinogenin, licochalcone A and B]); sterols (beta-sitosterol); polysaccharides (arabinogalactans); coumarins (glycerrhin); glabrol; amines; glucose, sucrose; resin; and volatile oil (Blumenthal et al 2000).
Among different samples of G. glabra there may be significant differences in the content of active constituents and biological activity (Statti et al 2004). The lack of standardisation of herbs such as licorice provides a challenge for demonstrating reproducible efficacy in clinical settings.
Clinical note — Glycyrrhizin (GL), glycyrrhetinic acid (GA) and side-effects

GL is mainly absorbed after presystemic hydrolysis to glycyrrhetinic acid (GA; 18-beta-glycyrrhetinic acid (glycyrrhetic acid; the aglycone of glycyrrhizin)). On excretion via the bile it may be reconjugated to GA by commensal bowel flora and then reabsorbed (Gunnarsdottir & Johannesson 1997, Hattori et al 1983, Ploeger et al 2001). GL and GA are associated with the side-effects encountered with high-dose or long-term licorice use, such as elevated blood pressure and fluid retention. In people with prolonged gastrointestinal transit time, GA can accumulate after repeated intake. As GA is 200–1000-fold more powerful an inhibitor of 11-beta-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase (11HSD) than GL, this may lead to more significant mineralocorticoid effects (Ploeger et al 2001). In order to minimise the risk of side-effects, practitioners often use a deglycyrrhizinised form of licorice (DGL).

While G. glabra, G. uralensis and G. inflata are often seen as similar remedies, there are some differences in the constituents, such as the phenolic contents (Mills & Bone 2000).

MAIN ACTIONS

MINERALOCORTICOID EFFECT

The GA constituent in licorice (and its metabolite 3-monoglucuronyl-glycyrrhetinic acid) inhibits the enzyme 11HSD (Kato et al 1995), which catalyses the conversion of cortisol into its inactive metabolite, cortisone. This results in delayed excretion and prolonged activity of cortisol. Additionally, GL and GA bind to mineralocorticoid and glucocorticoid receptors and may displace cortisol from its carrier molecule, transcortin (Nissen 2003).


A case report suggests that the symptoms occur despite low plasma levels of aldosterone (Nobata et al 2001). Decreased plasma renin activity (Bernardi et al 1994, Epstein et al 1977) and increased cortisol levels result in vasoconstriction of vascular smooth muscle (Dobbins & Saul 2000, Walker et al 1992), which may further exacerbate the hypertensive effects. This may be of particular significance in patients with prolonged intestinal transit time where GA levels can accumulate (Ploeger et al 2001).
**ANTI-INFLAMMATORY**
The anti-inflammatory action of GA is largely mediated by cortisol, an endogenous hormone with anti-inflammatory action (Teelucksingh et al 1990). Several studies have found that GA inhibits the activity of 11HSD and hepatic delta-4-5-beta-steroid reductase, preventing the conversion of cortisol to its inactive metabolite, cortisone (Kageyama et al 1997, MacKenzie et al 1990, Soma et al 1994, Whorwood et al 1993). As such, cortisol activity is prolonged and levels may rise, thereby increasing its anti-inflammatory effects.

For this reason licorice has also been investigated for its ability to potentiate the effects of steroid medications (Teelucksingh et al 1990).

This mechanism alone does not fully account for the anti-inflammatory effects of licorice as oral doses of GL also appear to exert an effect in adrenalectomised rats (Gujral et al 2000). The DGL also exerts anti-inflammatory effects. Steroid-like activity has also been attributed to the liquiritin constituent (Bradley 1992) and in vitro studies of *G. inflata* reveal that the licochalcone flavonoids A and B inhibit the formation of leukotrienes B4 and C4, cyto-B-induced lysosomal enzyme, platelet-activating factor, N-formyl-methionyl-leucyl-phenylalanine and calcium ionophore A (Kimura et al 1993a). The anti-inflammatory response may also be enhanced by inhibition of the generation of reactive oxygen by neutrophils (Akamatsu et al 1991).

**MUCOPROTECTIVE**
Early investigation into the mucoprotective qualities of licorice led to the development of an anti-inflammatory and antiulcer medication, carbenoxolone, an ester derivative of GA, used to treat gastric and oesophageal ulcer disease. Researchers have suggested that it may exert its mucoprotective effects by increasing mucosal blood flow as well as mucus production, and by interfering with gastric prostanoid synthesis (Guslandi 1985). Animal studies indicate that licorice preparations such as DGL improve the environment in the stomach by increasing mucus production, thereby allowing for proliferation of tissue and healing to occur. DGL increases mucus production by increasing the number of fundus glands and the number of mucus-secreting cells on each gland (van Marle et al 1981).

The increase in mucus production seen with carbenoxolone and licorice appears to occur in a number of epithelial tissues other than the digestive tract. It has been reported in the lungs and also bladder, according to in vivo studies (Mooreville et al 1983), and in the trachea, accounting for its expectorant properties (Bradley 1992).
ANTI-ULCER EFFECTS
Licorice demonstrates the ability to promote mucosal repair and reduce symptoms of active ulcer (Larkworthy & Holgate 1975).

The anti-ulcer effects of licorice are due to inhibition of 15-hydroxyprostaglandin dehydrogenase, (which converts PGE_2 and F_2alpha to their inactive forms) and delta 13-PG reductase. Licorice-derived compounds therefore increase the local concentration of PGs that promote mucus secretion and cell proliferation in the stomach, leading to healing of ulcers (Baker 1994).

Anti-inflammatory activity (as described above) further contributes to the herb’s symptom-relieving action.

ANTIVIRAL
Both oral and injectable dose forms of licorice have been tested and found to have activity against a range of viruses. This effect is mediated by the constituents GL and GA (Jeong & Kim 2002). It should be noted that current studies focus largely on GL, which is converted in the gut to GA and may not produce the same results as those demonstrated for GL in vitro.

SARS-associated coronavirus In vitro studies have shown GL to inhibit SARS-CV (clinical isolates FFM-1 and FFM-2) replication by inhibiting adsorption and penetration of the virus in the early steps of the replicative cycle. Glycyrrhizin was most effective when given both during and after the adsorption period. High concentrations of GL (4000 mg/L) were found to completely block replication of the virus (Cinatl et al 2003). The ability of GL to reduce platelet accumulation in the lungs (Yu et al 2005) may also support this use and provide a possible therapeutic option for further investigation.

HIV Preliminary evidence indicates that intravenous administration of GL may reduce replication of HIV. High-dose GL (1600 mg/day) was most effective in reducing HIV type 1 p24 antigen and increasing lymphocytes (Hattori et al 1989). In vitro, GL has the potential to inhibit viral replication in cultures of peripheral blood mononuclear cells from HIV-infected patients infected with a non-syncytium-inducing variant of HIV (Sasaki et al 2002–03).

Influenza Animal studies have shown that GL offers protection against influenza virus in mice through stimulation of IFN-gamma production by T cells (Utsunomiya et al 1997).

Epstein–Barr virus In vitro studies suggest that GL may interfere with an early step of the EBV replication cycle (possibly penetration) (Lin 2003a).

Herpes simplex virus 1 In Kaposi sarcoma-associated herpes virus (KSHV), GL reduced the synthesis of a viral latency protein and induced apoptosis of infected cells...
(Cohen 2005) terminating KSHV latent infection of B lymphocytes (Bradbury 2005). Early in vitro studies found that GL inactivated HSV irreversibly (Pompei et al 1979). Animal studies show that intraperitoneal administration of GL reduces HSV-1 viral replication and improves survival from herpetic encephalitis in mice (Sekizawa et al 2001). Whether GL may act against other latent herpes viruses or be suitable for clinical use against KSHV requires further elucidation (Bradbury 2005).

**ANTIBACTERIAL**
A number of constituents in licorice, including phenolic compounds (glicophenone and glicoisoflavanone), licochalcone A and isoflavones, were found to have antibacterial effects on MRSA and MSSA in vitro (Hatano et al 2000).

**EXpectorant**
Expectorant effects may be attributed to the ability of licorice to stimulate tracheal mucus secretion, facilitating the elimination of mucus from the respiratory tract (Bradley 1992).

**ANTITussive**
In animal studies licorice produces a persistent antitussive effect, which is mediated by liquiritin apioside in the earlier phase and liquiritin and liquiritigenin (a metabolite of liquiritin apioside) in the later phase (Kamei et al 2005).

**ANTIOXIDANT**
In vitro research has identified seven antioxidant compounds from an acetone extract of licorice: four isoflavans (hispaglabridin A, hispaglabridin B, glabridin and 4'-O-methylglabridin), two chalcones (isoprenylchalcone derivative and isoliquiritigenin) and an isoflavone (formononetin) (Vaya et al 1997). Isoflavones from licorice were also shown to be effective in protecting mitochondrial function against oxidative stresses (Haraguchi 2000).

*Reduces lipid peroxidation*  Macrophage-mediated oxidation of LDL-cholesterol plays a major role in early atherogenesis. In animal models glabridin accumulates in macrophages and inhibits macrophage-mediated oxidation of LDL by up to 80% (Aviram 2004). DGL (100 mg/day for 2 weeks) was found to reduce lipid peroxidation of LDL-cholesterol after 1 week’s use according to a placebo-controlled trial (Fuhrman et al 1997).

**ANTICANCER EFFECTS**
Licorice has demonstrated potent anti-angiogenic and antitumour activity in animal studies (Sheela et al 2005). Animal and in vitro studies have shown licorice components to be effective in reducing the occurrence and number of tumour cells in...
including apoptosis and potentiating the effect of paclitaxel and vinblastine chemo-
therapy (Rafi et al 2000). In vitro research reveals that chalcone and isoliquiritigenin
significantly inhibit the proliferation of prostate cancer cell lines in a dose- and time-
dependent manner and that beta-hydroxy-DHP inhibits breast and prostate tumour
cells (Kanazawa et al 2003, Maggiolini et al 2002, Rafi et al 2002). Isoliquiritigenin
has also been shown to significantly inhibit the proliferation of lung and colon cancer
cells, restrain cell cycle progression and induce apoptosis (Ii et al 2004, Takahashi et al
2004).

Although the exact mechanism of action is still being determined, a 2001 review
indicates that licorice and its derivatives may protect against carcinogen-induced DNA
damage and that GA is an inhibitor of lipo-oxygenase and cyclo-oxygenase, inhibits
protein kinase C, and down-regulates the epidermal growth factor receptor (Wang &
Nixon 2001).

COGNITIVE FUNCTION
Glycyrrhiza glabra has shown promise as a memory-enhancing agent in both
exteroceptive and interoceptive behavioural models of memory in mice. The effect is
possibly due to facilitation of cholinergic transmission in the mouse brain (Dhingra
et al 2004, Parle et al 2004). Effects on humans have yet to be demonstrated; however, a clinical trial of 170 elderly subjects is currently planned (Bielenberg
2005).

HEPATOPROTECTIVE EFFECTS
Animal studies demonstrate that licorice protects hepatocytes by inhibiting exper-
imentally induced lipid peroxidation (Rajesh & Latha 2004). In vitro studies have
shown hepatoprotective effects of GL against aflatoxin B1-induced cytotoxicity in
human hepatoma cells (Chan et al 2003) and animal studies have shown GA exerts
hepatoprotective effects against carbon tetrachloride-induced liver injury (Jeong et al
2002).

Several mechanisms appear to be responsible for the hepatoprotective effect.
Glycyrrhizic acid enhances the detoxifying activity of the liver enzyme CYP1A1 and
 glutathione S-transferase and protects against oxidative stress, when induced by
 aflatoxin (Chan et al 2003).

Animal studies have found that GA inhibits expression of the liver enzyme CYP2E1.
Once again, antioxidant mechanisms appear to be involved, as GA prevented
 glutathione depletion, an increase in ALT, AST activity, and hepatic lipid peroxidation
in a dose-dependent manner when carbon tetrachloride exposure occurred (Jeong et
al 2002). In addition isoliquiritigenin may stimulate the proliferation of human hepatocytes according to in vitro studies (De Bartolo et al 2005).

**ANTIPLATELET EFFECT**
Isoliquiritigenin purified from licorice has been shown to inhibit platelet aggregation in vitro and in vivo (Francischetti et al 1997, Kimura et al 1993a, Tawata et al 1992). Whether the effect is clinically significant for licorice remains to be determined. New data indicates that GL is an effective thrombin inhibitor in vivo (Mendes–Silva et al 2003).

**OTHER ACTIONS**

**SEX HORMONES**

**Testosterone** Whether licorice consumption affects testosterone levels is still unknown, as conflicting results have been obtained from clinical studies. Armanini et al have conducted a series of trials investigating the effects of licorice on testosterone levels in males with mixed results (Armanini et al 1999, 2003a).

One study showed that licorice (7 g/day equivalent to 0.5 g GA) was able to reversibly reduce testosterone levels within 7 days, by inhibiting 17,20-lyase (involved in the conversion of 17-hydroxyprogesterone to androstenedione) and 17-beta-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase (involved in the conversion of androstenedione to testosterone) (Armanini et al 1999). Another study twice attempted to replicate these results, but was unable to detect an effect on testosterone levels in either study; the authors suggest that inappropriate use of statistical tests in the first study may explain the varying results (Josephs et al 2001).

More clinically promising are the results from a small trial of nine healthy women (22–26 years) in the luteal phase of their menstrual cycle. The women received 3.5 g licorice (containing 7.6% w/w of GL) daily for two cycles. Total serum testosterone decreased from 27.8 (±8.2) to 19.0 (±9.4) ng/dL in the first month and to 17 (±6.4) ng/dL in the second month of therapy (Armanini et al 2004). Further larger scale trials are required to confirm these effects in women with conditions of elevated testosterone such as hirsutism and PCOS.

**Oestrogen** Licorice contains isoflavones, including licochalcone-A, which are also known as ‘phyto-oestrogens’ because they act as partial oestrogen agonists in the body (Setchell & Cassidy 1999). Additionally, in vitro studies suggest that stimulation of aromatase activity promotes oestradiol synthesis (Takeuchi et al 1991).

Liquiritigenin and isoliquiritigenin have displayed oestrogenic affinity to sex hormone-binding globulin and oestrogen receptors in vitro (Hillerns et al 2005) and
glabridin and glabrene have both demonstrated oestrogen-like activities similar to oestradiol-17(bet) in animal studies (Somjen et al 2004a).

In vitro studies also suggest the potential for glabridin to enhance osteoblast function (Choi 2005). As a result glabridin has been proposed as a possible therapeutic aid in the prevention of osteoporosis and inflammatory bone diseases (Choi 2005), as well as cardiovascular diseases and bone disorders, in postmenopausal women (Somjen et al 2004a, b).

IMMUNOMODULATION
Although immunostimulating effects have been observed in experimental models (Lin et al 1996), elevated cortisol levels, which are also induced by licorice, may theoretically reduce this effect (Padgett & Glaser 2003).

INHIBITION OF ALDOLASE REDUCTASE
In vitro studies show that licorice may suppress sorbitol accumulation in red blood cells by inhibiting aldolase reductase (Zhou & Zhang 1990). The isoliquiritigenin component appears to be responsible (Aida et al 1990a). This may have positive implications in diabetes.

ANTIDEPRESSANT (SEROTONIN REUPTAKE INHIBITION)
Several flavonoid constituents in licorice (glabridin 60%, 4’-O-methylglabridin 53% and glabrene 47%) inhibit serotonin reuptake in a dose-dependent manner, according to in vitro research. An antidepressant activity could theoretically result, although this remains to be tested clinically (Ofir et al 2003).

CLINICAL USE
PEPTIC ULCER AND DYSPEPSIA
The anti-inflammatory, mucoprotective and anti-ulcer activities of licorice make it an attractive treatment for peptic ulcer. While these effects have been attributed to the GL and GA constituents, the DGL, which contains <3% GL, has also been investigated and appears to produce the most promising results when used long term (Bardhan et al 1978, Larkworthy & Holgate 1975). DGL also promotes differentiation of undifferentiated cells to mucous cells and stimulates mucus production and secretion (van Marle et al 1981).

In an uncontrolled trial of 32 patients with chronic duodenal ulcer, 3800 mg/day of DGL (in five divided doses) produced signs of healing in all cases and total restoration of mucosa in a majority of subjects. Although treatment continued for 24 weeks, considerable improvement was seen in 56% of patients by week 12 and in
78% by week 16 (Larkworthy & Holgate 1975). A shorter 4-week trial of 96 patients with gastric ulcer failed to produce the same positive results (Bardhan et al 1978).

DGL plus antacid (Caved-S; 2 tablets chewed three times daily between meals) was as effective as cimetidine (200 mg three times daily plus 400 mg at night) after 6 weeks, according to one randomised single-blind trial of 100 volunteers with peptic ulcer. The two treatments continued to produce similar results after 12 weeks and recurrence rates after both medications were reduced were also similar (Morgan et al 1982).

Commission E approves the use of licorice for the treatment of gastric and duodenal ulcers (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**DERMATITIS**

The anti-inflammatory effect induced by GA provides a theoretical basis for its use as a topical anti-inflammatory agent (much like hydrocortisone) in the treatment of dermatitis.

In practice, GA has been used to potentiate the effects of weak steroids (such as hydrocortisone) in order to increase pharmacological effects without the need for stronger corticosteroids (Teelucksingh et al 1990). It is assumed that increasing corticosteroid activity in this way will not attract an increase in adverse effects; however, no studies have yet confirmed this.

An early study comparing the effects of hydrocortisone- and GA-containing ointments in dermatitis found that hydrocortisone was usually superior in acute and infantile eczemas, whereas GA was superior for chronic and subacute conditions (Evans 1958).

It should be noted that GA is many times more powerful an inhibitor of 11HSD than GL and therefore should theoretically induce far stronger anti-inflammatory effects. GA is not present in licorice but is produced in the gastrointestinal tract from GL; therefore, it is uncertain whether topical preparations containing pure licorice are likely to produce significant anti-inflammatory effects.

**VIRAL INFECTIONS**

The antiviral activity demonstrated in animal and in vitro trials provide a theoretical basis for its use in the treatment of SARS-associated CV (Cinatl et al 2003), HIV (Hattori et al 1989, Sasaki et al 2002–03), influenza (Utsunomiya et al 1997), EBV (Lin 2003a) and HSV-1 (Pompei et al 1979, Sekizawa et al 2001). Until controlled studies are available, the clinical effectiveness of this treatment remains unknown.
**RESPIRATORY TRACT INFECTIONS**
Licorice increases mucous production within the respiratory tract and exerts an expectorant action. When combined with its anti-inflammatory, antiviral and possible immune-enhancing effects, it is a popular treatment for upper and lower respiratory tract infections. In practice, it is often used to treat coughs (especially productive types) and bronchitis (Bradley 1992).

Commission E approves the use of licorice for catarrhs of the upper respiratory tract (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**CHRONIC STRESS**
Traditionally, licorice is viewed as an ‘adrenal tonic’, most likely due to its ability to slow cortisol breakdown. It may be of benefit in patients experiencing allostatic load due to chronic stress and who are therefore unable to mount a healthy stress response. This is also known as adrenocorticoid insufficiency. Currently, controlled trials are not available to determine its effectiveness in this situation.

Whether this effect is desirable in patients without adrenocorticoid insufficiency and for whom increased cortisol levels may prove problematic is open to conjecture. Chronically high cortisol levels have been associated with desensitisation of the HPA axis, insulin resistance, depression and immunosuppression (Blackburn-Munroe 2001, Jessop 1999, Mitchell & Mitchell 2003). In the initial stages of stress, increased cortisol levels trigger negative feedback mechanisms to keep stress under control and, therefore, short-term use may be warranted but is unlikely to be beneficial unless some adrenocorticoid insufficiency exists.

(For more information see ‘Clinical note — Allostasis and adaptation to stress’ in the Siberian ginseng monograph.)

**OTHER USES**
Licorice has also been used traditionally as a sweetener and aromatic flavouring agent.

Although controlled trials are lacking, licorice is also used for a number of other conditions, largely based on evidence of pharmacological activity.

**CHRONIC FATIGUE SYNDROME**
The ability of licorice to slow cortisol catabolism may provide a theoretical basis for its use in cases of CFS accompanied by low cortisol levels. A case report exists of a patient experiencing improved physical and mental stamina and recovery from CFS following use of licorice dissolved in milk (2.5 g/500 mL/day) (Baschetti 1995, 1996).
**POLYCYSTIC OVARY DISEASE**
The possibility that licorice may lower testosterone levels in women provides a theoretical basis for its use in PCOS (Armanini et al 2004). While trials using licorice as a stand-alone treatment are lacking, studies of licorice in combination with other herbal medicines such as peony have produced promising results, showing reductions in LH:FSH ratio, ovarian testosterone production and improvements in ovulation (Takahashi & Kitao 1994, Takahashi et al 1988).

**PREVENTING DIABETIC COMPLICATIONS**
In diabetic patients with neuropathy, retinopathy or nephropathy, sorbitol:glucose ratios are significantly higher than in those without these complications and ratios increase as complications become more severe (Aida et al 1990b). As licorice and its component isoliquiritigenin have been shown to inhibit aldolase reductase and suppress sorbitol accumulation in red blood cells in vitro (Aida et al 1990b, Zhou & Zhang 1990), a theoretical basis exists for its use in the prevention of diabetic complications.

**MENOPAUSE**
Inhibition of serotonin reuptake and possible oestrogenic activity provide a theoretical basis for its use in pre- and postmenopausal women with mild to moderate depression (Ofir et al 2003, Takeuchi et al 1991).

Constituents in licorice may bind to oestrogen receptors, enhance osteoblast function and attenuate vascular injury and atherosclerosis (Choi 2005, Somjen et al 2004a, b) suggesting a possible role in the prevention of bone disorders and cardiovascular diseases in postmenopausal women.

**WEIGHT LOSS**
The action of GA in blocking 11HSD type 1 at the level of fat cells may help to explain preliminary evidence suggesting an ability to reduce body fat mass and the thickness of thigh fat (Armanini et al 2003b, 2005).

**ADDISON’S DISEASE**
The ability of licorice to reduce cortisol breakdown provides a theoretical basis for its use in Addison’s disease, either as a stand-alone treatment, when adrenocortical function is not severely impaired, or as an adjunct to cortisone therapy. While studies in the 1950s confirm this use (Borst et al 1953, Calvert 1954, Pelser et al 1953), recent studies are not available. A case report exists of an 11-year-old boy with hypoparathyroidism and Addison’s disease developing hypermineralocorticoidism following excessive intake of licorice (300–400 g/day, equiv. 600–800 mg GL) concurrently with hydrocortisone and 9-alpha-fluorocortisol.
Pseudohyperaldosteronism persisted after treatment with 9-alpha-fluorocortisol was withdrawn and hydrocortisone was reduced; however, symptoms only diminished after the complete withdrawal of licorice. It was suggested that inhibition of 11HSD by licorice was responsible due to increased levels of free cortisol (Doeker & Andler 1999).

**DOSAGE RANGE**
- Fluid extract (1:1): 2–4 mL three times daily or 15–40 mL/week (Australian manufacturer recommendations).
- Root: 5–15 g/day (equivalent to 200–600 mg of glycyrrhizin).
- Tea: pour 150 mL boiling water over 1 teaspoon (2–4 g) licorice root, simmer for 5 minutes and filter through a tea strainer after cooling.
- Chronic gastritis: 1 cup of licorice tea after each meal.

**ACCORDING TO CLINICAL STUDIES**
- Chronic duodenal ulcers: 3800 mg/day of DGL (in five divided doses) before meals and at bedtime.
- Ideally, licorice extracts should contain >30 mg/mL GL.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
Many of the adverse effects attributed to licorice are due to GA at doses above 100–400 mg/day. For this reason, the DGL may be safer and more appropriate in cases where GL or GA are not required for efficacy.

- Side-effects may be more pronounced in people with essential hypertension who appear to be more sensitive to the inhibition of 11HSD by licorice than normotensive subjects (Sigurjonsdottir et al 2003).
- Hypokalaemia — may present as hypotonia and flaccid paralysis, peripheral oedema, polyuria, proximal myopathy, lethargy, paraesthesiae, muscle cramps, headaches, tetany, breathlessness and hypertension (deKlerk et al 1997, Eriksson et al 1999). In practice, licorice is often mixed with the potassium-rich herb dandelion leaf, which also has mild diuretic effects.
- Hypokalaemic paralysis — although rare, some cases have been reported as a result of chronic licorice use (Corsi et al 1983, Lin et al 2003b, Shintani et al 1992, vanden-Bosch et al 2005).
- Rhabdomyolysis — a number of cases are reported in the scientific literature (Firenzuoli & Gori 2002, van-den-Bosch et al 2005) as a result of severe hypokalaemia.

- Dropped head syndrome — a case report exists of DHS (isolated weakness of the extensor muscles of the neck) due to licorice-induced hypokalemia (Yoshida & Takayama 2003).

- Hypertension encephalopathy may occur even at low doses in susceptible patients with 11-beta-HSD deficiency (Russo et al 2000).

- Reduced 11-beta-HSD activity may have a role in increased sodium retention in pre-eclampsia, renal disease and liver cirrhosis. Reduced placental levels may explain the link between reduced birth weight and adult hypertension (the Barker hypothesis) (Quinkler & Stewart 2003).

- Juvenile hypertension — inhibition of 11HSD may also contribute to a rare form of juvenile hypertension (Chamberlain & Abolnik 1997, White et al 1997).

- Visual disturbance — ingestion of high doses of licorice (110–900 g) has been reported to elicit symptoms of visual disturbance in a case series of five patients. This may be attributed to the possible ability of licorice to ‘stimulate retinal and occipital vasospasm and vasospasm of vessels supplying the optic nerve’ (Dobbins & Saul 2000).

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**

Controlled trials exist that have identified drug interactions. However, in most cases, the interactions are based on evidence of pharmacological activity, case reports or theoretical reasoning. The DGL form is considered safer and less likely to result in drug interactions.

**ANTICOAGULANTS**

Isoliquiritigenin inhibits platelet aggregation and GL inhibits prothrombin according to in vitro and in vivo tests (Francischetti et al 1997, Kimura et al 1993a, Tawata et al 1992). Whether the effect is clinically significant for licorice remains to be determined — use high doses with caution.

**ANTIHYPERTENSIVES**

High-dose GL taken long term can lead to increased blood pressure, thereby reducing drug efficacy. Caution — monitor blood pressure when high-dose licorice preparations are taken for longer than 2 weeks.
**CHEMOTHERAPY (PACLITAXEL AND VINBLASTINE)**

A constituent of licorice has demonstrated significant potentiation of paclitaxel and vinblastine chemotherapy in vitro (Rafi et al 2000). Observe — beneficial interaction is theoretically possible under medical supervision.

**CORTICOSTEROIDS**

Concurrent use of licorice preparations potentiates the effects of topical and oral corticosteroids (e.g. prednisolone). Some practitioners employ licorice to minimise requirements for or aid in withdrawal from corticosteroid medications. Beneficial interaction is possible under professional supervision, but patients should be monitored closely for corticosteroid excess (Chen et al 1991, Homma et al 1994).

**DIGOXIN**

Hypokalaemia increases sensitivity to cardiac glycoside drugs, therefore increased digoxin toxicity is possible when licorice is used in high doses for more than 2 weeks. A case report exists of congestive heart failure caused by digitalis toxicity in an elderly man taking a licorice-containing Chinese herbal laxative (Harada et al 2002). Avoid long-term use of high-dose licorice preparations and digoxin concurrently.

**ORAL CONTRACEPTIVE PILL**

An increased risk of side-effects such as hypokalaemia, fluid retention and elevated blood pressure due to increased mineralocorticoid effect exists. This has been demonstrated in case reports (Bernardi et al 1994, deKlerk et al 1997) — use this combination with caution when licorice is used in high dose or for more than 2 weeks and observe patients closely.

**DIURETICS (INCLUDING LOOP, THIAZIDE AND POTASSIUM-SPARING)**

Case reports exist in which patients experience hypokalaemia and hypertension with concomitant use of licorice and diuretics (deKlerk et al 1997, Farese et al 1991, Folkerson et al 1996) due to increased potassium excretion. Avoid long-term use of licorice and diuretics concurrently unless under professional supervision. Monitor potassium levels.

**TESTOSTERONE**

DICLOFENAC SODIUM (NSAID)
In vitro studies have shown that the addition of GL enhanced the topical absorption of diclofenac sodium (Nokhodchi et al 2002), which may be a beneficial interaction.

POTASSIUM
Licorice may reduce the effect of potassium supplementation. A case report exists of a 69-year-old female developing hypokalaemia while taking potassium supplements and a mouth freshener containing licorice concurrently. The daily intake of GA was estimated at 6–10 mg/day (Kageyama et al 1997). In many cases potassium supplementation may be beneficial in reducing the hypokalaemic side-effects of licorice.

DRUGS METABOLISED BY LIVER ENZYMES CYP3A4, 2B6, 2C9, 2E1 OR 1A1
Licorice inhibits CYP3A4 in vitro (Budzinski et al 2000), the glabridin constituent inhibits CYP2B6, 2C9 and 3A4 in vitro (Kent et al 2002), GA inhibits expression of CYP2E1 in animal studies (Jeong et al 2002) and GL enhances the detoxifying activity of CYP1A1 (Chan et al 2003). Until testing in humans can establish whether the effects are clinically significant and relevant to licorice in therapeutic doses, caution is advised if licorice is administered with drugs chiefly metabolised by these enzymes. (See chapter on Interactions for more information.)

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Licorice should be used with caution in people with hypertension (or a genetic predisposition to hypertension) or fluid retention, and is contraindicated in hypotonia, severe renal insufficiency, hypokalaemia, liver cirrhosis and cholestatic liver disease (Blumenthal et al 2000). The effects are likely to be dose-dependent and more likely in people with essential hypertension with a particular tendency to 11HSD inhibition by licorice (Sigurjonsdottir et al 2001, 2003). It is also contraindicated in people with a deficiency in 11HSD (Russo et al 2000).

Long-term use (>2 weeks) at therapeutic doses should be monitored closely due to the potential side-effects. Additionally, a high-potassium low-sodium diet should be consumed during treatment (Bradley 1992, McGuffin et al 1997).

As licorice may questionably reduce testosterone levels in men, it should be used with caution in men with a history of impotence, infertility or decreased libido (Armanini et al 1999, Zava et al 1998).

PREGNANCY USE
Licorice is contraindicated in pregnancy. A Finnish trial found that high consumption of licorice during pregnancy increased the likelihood of early delivery but did not significantly affect birth weight or maternal blood pressure (Strandberg et al 2001).
PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Licorice has been used as a food, flavouring agent and medicine since ancient times.
- It exhibits mineralocorticoid, anti-inflammatory, antioxidant, mucoprotective and ulcer-healing activity in humans. Antiviral, antibacterial, antitumour, expectorant and hepatoprotective effects have also been demonstrated in animal or test tube studies. Significant effects on oestrogen and testosterone levels remain to be established in controlled trials as evidence is inconsistent.
- Licorice is a popular treatment for respiratory tract infections, gastrointestinal ulcers and dyspepsia. It is also used to treat chronic stress and numerous other conditions, largely based on evidence of pharmacological activity.
- Glycyrrhetinic acid has been used topically as an anti-inflammatory agent and also together with cortisone preparations to increase effects.
- High-dose licorice (>100 mg glycyrrhizin) used for more than 2 weeks can induce hypokalaemia and pseudoaldosteronism in susceptible individuals. As such, it should be used with caution and under professional supervision. Additionally, it interacts with numerous medicines. The DGL form is considered safer.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this herb do for me?
Licorice has many effects in the body, the most well-established ones being reducing inflammation; enhancing healing of peptic ulcers; and treating infections such as bronchitis and cough.
When will it start to work?
Beneficial effects in peptic ulcer occur within 6–12 weeks, although DGL is usually used to avoid side-effects. Symptoms of dyspepsia should respond within the first few doses. Effects in bronchitis will vary between individuals.
Are there any safety issues?
Used in high doses for more than 2 weeks, licorice can induce several side-effects such as raised blood pressure and fluid retention and may interact with a number of drugs. The DGL form is considered safer.

REFERENCES
Armanini D, Nacamulli D, Francini-Pesenti F, Battagin G, Ragazzi E, Fiore C. Glycyrrhetinic acid, the active principle of licorice, can reduce the thickness of subcutaneous thigh fat through topical application. Steroids 70(8) (2005): 538-42.


Licorice 804

Licorice 804

© 2007 Elsevier Australia


© 2007 Elsevier Australia
Licorice 806

© 2007 Elsevier Australia


Lutein and Zeaxanthin

BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS

Lutein and its isomer zeaxanthin are yellow-coloured, xanthophyll carotenoids that are not converted into vitamin A. The bioavailability of lutein and zeaxanthin from food sources is influenced by the food matrix and the type and extent of food processing, but most notably by the presence of fat in the diet (Castenmiller et al 1999), with dietary fat intake being inversely related to serum levels (Nolan et al 2004). Cooking may increase their bioavailability by disrupting the cellular matrix and protein complexes, and supplemental sources may be significantly more bioavailable than food sources (Castenmiller et al 1999). One clinical study found that plasma lutein was higher when lutein was consumed with a high-fat spread (207% increase) than with a low-fat spread (88% increase) (Roodenburg et al 2000). This was supported by a small in vitro study showing that dietary lutein is absorbed more efficiently with 24 g of avocado oil or 150 g of avocado fruit (Unlu et al 2005). For each 10% increase in dietary lutein and zeaxanthin, serum levels are seen to increase by 1% (Gruber et al 2004).

When ingested, lutein and zeaxanthin are transported from the intestine to the liver via chylomicrons. They are then transported via LDL and HDL to various parts of the body (Yeum & Russell 2002). Lutein and zeaxanthin are present in the eye, blood serum, skin, cervix, brain, breast and adipose tissue. In the eye lutein is more prominent at the edges of the retina and in the rods (Bernstein 2001, Bone 1997). Lutein appears to undergo some metabolism in the retina to meso-zeaxanthin. Zeaxathin is primarily concentrated in the centre of the retina and the cones, where it is present in concentrations nearly 1000-fold those found in other tissues, thus giving the macula lutea or yellow spot of the retina its characteristic colour (Krinsky et al 2003).

Lower serum concentrations of zeaxanthin have been associated with male gender, smoking, younger age, lower non-HDL cholesterol, greater ethanol consumption and higher BMI (Brady et al 1996). Lutein and zeaxanthin, together with other carotenoids, have also been found to be lower in people with chronic cholestatic liver disease, which can be attributed to malabsorption of fat-soluble vitamins, as well as other mechanisms of hepatic release (Floreani et al 2000). In an epidemiological study involving 7059 participants, lower serum lutein and zeaxanthin levels was significantly associated with smoking, heavy drinking, being white, female, or not being physically active.
active, having lower dietary lutein and zeaxanthin, a higher percentage of fat mass, a higher waist-hip ratio, lower serum cholesterol, a higher white blood cell count, and high levels of C-reactive protein (Gruber et al 2004).

In a pharmacokinetic study involving 20 healthy volunteers, serum zeaxanthin levels were found to have an effective half-life for accumulation of 5 days and a terminal elimination half-life of around 12 days (Hartmann et al 2004). This was confirmed by another study that also found that lutein did not affect the concentrations of other carotenoids in healthy volunteers (Thurmann et al 2005). Similarly, high doses (50 mg) of beta-carotene over 5 years were not found to influence serum levels of lutein and zeaxanthin (Mayne et al 1998). It has been suggested that the associations between macula pigment density and serum lutein, serum zeaxanthin and adipose lutein concentrations are stronger in men (Broekmans et al 2002, Johnson et al 2000) and that the processes governing accumulation and/or stabilisation of zeaxanthin in fat tissue are different for males and females (Nolan et al 2004). This is supported by the finding that serum lutein and zeaxanthin concentrations vary with the menstrual cycle, with levels being higher in the late follicular than in the luteal phase (Forman et al 1998).

**CHEMICAL COMPONENTS**
Lutein and zeaxanthin are isomers and have identical chemical formulas, differing only in the location of a double bond in one of the hydroxyl groups. Lutein is known as beta, epsilon-carotene-3,3′-diol whereas zeaxanthin is known as all-trans beta-carotene-3,3′-diol.

**FOOD SOURCES**
Foods differ in their relative amounts of lutein and zeaxanthin, with lutein generally being more abundant. Lutein is found in dark green leafy vegetables such as spinach and kale, as well as in sweet corn and egg yolks, whereas zeaxanthin is found in sweet corn, egg yolk, orange peppers (capsicums), persimmons, tangerines, mandarins and oranges.

Lutein and zeaxanthin are primarily extracted from marigold flowers (Tagetes erecta) for use in supplements and are available in either free or esterified form. The esters typically contain two fatty acid groups that must be cleaved by pancreatic esterases and their absorption requires higher levels of dietary fat (Roodenburg et al 2000).
DEFICIENCY SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS
It has been suggested that zeaxanthin and lutein be considered conditionally essential nutrients because low serum levels or low dietary intake are associated with low macular pigment density and increased risk of ARMD (Semba & Dagnelie 2003).

Epidemiological studies have also found an association between low serum carotenoid levels, including lutein and zeaxanthin levels, with all-cause mortality (De Waart et al 2001), the risk of inflammatory polyarthritis (Pattison et al 2005), breast cancer (Tamimi et al 2005), prostate cancer (Jian et al 2005), colon cancer (Nkondjock & Ghadirian 2004), cervical cancer (Garcia-Closas et al 2005, Kim et al 2004), human papilloma virus persistence (Garcia-Closas et al 2005), type 2 diabetes and impaired glucose metabolism (Coyne et al 2005), chronic cholestatic liver diseases (Floreani et al 2000), Alzheimer’s disease and vascular dementia (Polidori et al 2004), and low fruit and vegetable consumption (Al-Delaimy et al 2005).

Carotenoids have also emerged as an excellent tissue marker for a diet rich in fruits and vegetables, and measurement of plasma and tissue carotenoids is considered to have an important role in defining optimal diets (Al-Delaimy et al 2005, Brevik et al 2004, Handelman 2001).

MAIN ACTIONS
ANTIOXIDANT
Lutein and zeaxanthin are both powerful antioxidants, with activity having been demonstrated in a number of in vitro tests (Higashi-Okai et al 2001, Iannone et al 1998, Naguib 2000). In vitro studies of human lens epithelial cells also indicate that their antioxidant activity may protect the lens from UVB radiation (Chitchumroonchokchai et al 2004). According to animal studies, lutein increases glutathione levels and reduces retinal apoptosis following ischaemic reperfusion (Dilsiz et al 2005).

BLUE LIGHT FILTER
The yellow colour of lutein and zeaxanthin is due to their ability to absorb blue light, which is believed to contribute to their protective function because blue light is at the high energy, and therefore the most damaging, end of the visible spectrum (Krinsky et al 2003). Lutein and zeaxanthin thus serve as an optical filter for blue light, reducing chromatic aberration and preventing damage to the photoreceptor cell layer (Krinsky et al 2003).

MACULAR PIGMENT DEVELOPMENT
Lutein and zeaxanthin are entirely of dietary origin and are initially absent in newborns but gradually accumulate over time (Nussbaum et al 1981). It has been
generally accepted that macular pigment density decreases with age; however, there are conflicting results. In one prospective, observational study involving 390 patients, macular pigment density was not found to change significantly with age, even when elderly subjects with cataracts and ARMD were considered (Ciulla & Hammond 2004). Other studies, however, have found that macular pigment does indeed decline with age in both normal eyes (Beatty et al 2001, Bernstein et al 2002) and those with ARMD (Bernstein et al 2002) and Stargardt macular dystrophy (Zhao et al 2003), but not in retinitis pigmentosa or choroideremia (Zhao et al 2003).

Although lutein and zeaxanthin levels in the serum, diet, and retina correlate, the nature of the relationships between lutein and zeaxanthin in foodstuffs, blood and the macula are confounded by many variables, including processes that influence digestion, absorption, and transport and accumulation and stabilisation of the carotenoids in the tissues (Beatty et al 2004). It is suggested, however, that lutein and zeaxanthin are transported into an individual’s retina in the same proportions found in his or her blood (Bone 1997).

Two clinical studies have demonstrated that increasing lutein intake will increase macular pigment density within 4 weeks (Berendschot et al 2000, Hammond et al 1997). More recently, a clinical study confirmed the association between macular pigmentation, dietary lutein intake and serum lutein levels (Burke et al 2005).

**IMMUNOMODULATION**
Lutein modulates cellular and humoral-mediated immune responses, according to animal studies (Kim et al 2000a, b). In particular, high levels of C-reactive protein and a high white blood cell count have been identified in individuals with low serum levels of lutein (Gruber et al 2004). In a case-controlled study serum lutein and zeaxanthin, together with other carotenoids, were also found to be lower in children with acute phase infections compared to healthy controls (Cser et al 2004).

**PHOTOPROTECTION**
According to an animal study, lutein reduces the risk of sunburn, as well as the local UVB-radiation-induced immune suppression and reactive oxygen species generation that are implicated in photocarcinogenesis (Lee et al 2004). A protective effect on skin cancer, however, has not been observed in human cohort studies. One prospective cohort study involving 43,867 men and 85,944 women found no significant inverse association between intake of lutein and squamous cell carcinoma (Fung et al 2003), and an increased risk of squamous cell carcinoma was observed for people with multiple prior non-melanoma skin cancers and high serum levels of lutein and zeaxanthin (Dorgan et al 2004). The clinical significance of these findings is uncertain.
CLINICAL USE

AGE-RELATED MACULAR DEGENERATION

The evidence that lifetime oxidative stress plays an important role in the development of ARMD is now compelling (Hogg & Chakravarthy 2004). ARMD is thought to be the result of free radical damage to photoreceptors within the macula, and therefore it is suspected that inefficient macular antioxidant systems play a role in disease development. Low levels of lutein and zeaxanthin in the diet, serum or retina, as well as excessive exposure to blue light and cigarette smoking, are therefore considered to increase the risk of ARMD (Bone et al 2003). People with cystic fibrosis are theoretically at increased risk of ARMD because they have reduced lutein in the macular pigment (Schupp et al 2004).

Epidemiological and autopsy studies have found an inverse relationship between lutein and zeaxanthin intake and macular pigment density (Bone et al 2001, Curran-Celentano et al 2001). Plasma lutein and macular pigment density have also been demonstrated to increase with lutein supplementation in ARMD patients (Bernstein et al 2002) and healthy controls (Koh et al 2004), suggesting that ARMD is not associated with intestinal malabsorption of carotenoids and that a diseased macula can accumulate and stabilise lutein and/or zeaxanthin (Koh et al 2004). Conclusive evidence as to whether increased intake of lutein or zeaxanthin will reduce the incidence of ARMD is still unavailable (Berendschot et al 2002, Broekmans et al 2002, Hammond et al 1997).

Interestingly, two case-controlled studies have found that lycopene, rather than lutein or zeaxanthin, was reduced in the serum of ARMD patients (Cardinault et al 2005, Mares-Perlman et al 1995). It was suggested that this result could be due to antioxidant protection of lutein and zeaxanthin by lycopene or different dietary habits.

Recent studies have produced encouraging results for people with pre-existing ARMD. Improvements of up to 92% in visual acuity tests were observed when subjects consumed a diet designed to contain approximately 150 g of spinach 4–7 times a week (Richer 1999), and in 30 patients with early ARMD and visual acuity of 6/9 or better daily supplementation with lutein, vitamin E and nicotinamide for 180 days improved macular function (Falsini et al 2003). The results from the Lutein Antioxidant Supplementation Trial provide further support for lutein supplementation in ARMD (Richer et al 2004). This was a double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled study involving 90 subjects with atrophic ARMD who were given 10 mg lutein, 10 mg lutein plus broad spectrum antioxidants/vitamins/minerals, or placebo for 1 year. At baseline and every 4 months during the study period, subjects were
examined for changes in macular pigment density (MPD), photostress recovery, contrast sensitivity, and visual acuity. Both the lutein and lutein + antioxidant groups achieved an increase of 36% and 43%, respectively, in MPD, whereas the placebo group experienced a slight decrease. Significant improvements in visual acuity, objective visual function parameters, photostress recovery, and contrast sensitivity were also observed with lutein therapy (Richer et al 2004).

**Clinical note — ARMD**
ARMD is the leading cause of blindness in people over 65 years of age (Pratt 1999). Its exact aetiology is unknown; however, several risk factors have been established such as lighter iris colour, positive family history, lifestyle factors (e.g. cigarette smoking), hypertension, female gender and low serum concentrations of carotenoids (Cardinault et al 2005). The disease causes a loss of central vision and can impair most activities essential for independent living, such as reading, driving and writing. The prevalence of ARMD and its social and economic consequences are increasing in line with the ageing population.

**CATARACTS**
Lens density has been found to inversely correlate to macular lutein and zeaxanthin levels (Hammond et al 1997) and numerous observational studies have found that increased consumption of foods high in lutein and zeaxanthin is associated with a decreased risk for cataracts (Brown et al 1999, Tavani 1996). In one study involving 77,466 female nurses from the Nurses Health Study, those with the highest quintile for consumption of zeaxanthin and lutein were found to have a 22% reduction in the risk of cataract extraction (Chasan-Taber et al 1999). These results contrast with those from a cohort study of 478 women without previously diagnosed cataracts, which failed to detect a significant inverse relationship between lutein intake and lens opacities over a 13–15-year follow-up period (Jacques et al 2001).

The link between lutein and cataracts is supported by a small randomised placebo-controlled trial of 17 patients with clinically diagnosed age-related cataracts that found that supplementation with lutein 15 mg three times weekly for up to 2 years resulted in improved visual performance (visual acuity and glare sensitivity) compared with placebo (Olmedilla et al 2003).

**RETINITIS PIGMENTOSA**
Daily supplementation with 40 mg of lutein over 9 weeks followed by 20 mg for a further 16 weeks was found to significantly improve visual acuity in a 26-week trial.
involving 16 subjects with retinitis pigmentosa, many of whom were also taking other supplements (Dagnelie et al 2000).

**ATHEROSCLEROSIS**

Oxidative modification of LDL in the vascular wall seems to be a key factor in atherosclerosis development and thus lipid-soluble antioxidants that can protect LDLs may have a role in atherosclerosis prevention (Cherubini et al 2005); however, the relationship between lutein and zeaxanthin status and atherosclerosis is unclear.

Plasma levels of lutein, beta-cryptoxanthin and zeaxanthin were correlated to carotid intima–media thickness in a 3-year case-controlled study of 231 subjects (Iribarren et al 1997), as well as in an 18-month epidemiological study of 573 subjects, suggesting that these carotenoids may be protective against early atherosclerosis (Dwyer et al 2004). Lutein intake has also been found inversely associated with the risk of ischaemic stroke in an observational study involving 43,738 males (Ascherio et al 1999), as well as being inversely associated with the risk of subarachnoid haemorrhage in a cohort study of 26,593 male smokers (Hirvonen et al 2000). Serum levels of lutein and zeaxanthin, however, were not associated with atherosclerosis risk in a case-control study involving 108 cases of aortic atherosclerosis in an elderly population (Klipstein-Grobusch et al 2000).

The foregoing findings contrast with those from two case-controlled studies that found a positive correlation between lutein and zeaxanthin levels and cardiovascular risk. A nested, case-control study of 499 cases of cardiovascular disease with matched controls taken from the Physicians’ Health Study found that concentrations of plasma lutein, zeaxanthin and retinol corresponded to a moderate increase in cardiovascular disease (Sesso et al 2005). Similarly, myocardial infarction risk was positively associated with lutein and zeaxanthin levels in adipose tissue and the diet in a case-controlled study of 1456 cases of first acute myocardial infarction and matched controls (Kabagambe et al 2005). The clinical significance of these findings is unclear and requires further investigation.

**ALZHEIMER’S DEMENTIA**

Dementia has been found to be associated with increased protein oxidative modification and the depletion of a large spectrum of antioxidant micronutrients, including lutein and zeaxanthin (Polidori et al 2004). A clinical study of 25 subjects with mild cognitive impairment, 63 subjects with AD and 56 healthy individuals found that serum lutein levels were lowest in the first two groups, particularly those with AD (Rinaldi et al 2003).
CANCER PREVENTION


Lung cancer The link between carotenoid intake and lung cancer has undergone extensive scrutiny and extensive epidemiological evidence suggests a reduction in lung cancer risk with high dietary intake of carotenoids (Cooper et al 1999). Initial research used food composition tables and therefore focused on beta-carotene, for which data was available; however, the dietary intake of beta-carotene and other carotenoids such as lutein and zeaxanthin are highly correlated (Ascherio et al 1992) and as food composition data for these nutrients has become available studies have suggested a link between dietary lutein intake and reduced lung cancer risk (Cooper et al 1999).

Three large population studies of diet and lung cancer have revealed a non-significant association between high lutein intake and lower risk of lung cancer (Ito et al 2003, Michaud et al 2000, Ziegler et al 1996), and a significant trend was observed in another population-based case-control study (Le Marchand et al 1993). A nested case control study also found that serum lutein and zeaxanthin were lower in those with lung cancer than in controls (Comstock et al 1997). These results are contrasted with those from a case-control study of 108 cases of lung cancer in a Chinese occupational cohort that found that higher serum carotenoid levels, including lutein and zeaxanthin, were significantly associated with increased lung cancer risk among alcohol drinkers, while having a possible protective association among non-drinkers (Ratnasinghe et al 2000).

Cervical cancer A recent systematic review suggests that lutein/zeaxanthin is likely to have a protective effect for cervical neoplasia and possibly for human papilloma virus persistence (Garcia-Closas et al 2005).

Endometrial cancer An epidemiological study involving 232 patients with endometrial cancer and 639 controls found that an intake of more than 7.3 mg/day of lutein was associated with a 70% reduced risk of endometrial cancer (McCann et al 2000).

Ovarian cancer A case-control study found that weekly intake of lutein of more than 24 mg was associated with a 40% reduction in the risk for developing ovarian cancer compared with weekly consumption of less than 3.8 μg (Bertone et al 2001).
**Breast cancer** High lutein and zeaxanthin intake has been related to reduced risk of breast cancer (Dorgan et al 1998, Toniolo et al 2001). High lutein intake (>7 mg/day) was associated with a 53% reduction in the risk of developing breast cancer compared with low consumption (<3.7 mg/day) in a population-based case-control study of 608 premenopausal women over age 40 (Freudenheim et al 1996). Similar risk reductions were found in a nested case-control study of 540 New York women (Toniolo et al 2001) and another nested case-control study of 969 cases of breast cancer and matched controls from the Nurses’ Health Study found that the risk of breast cancer was 25–35% less for women with the highest quintile compared with that for women with the lowest quintile of lutein/zeaxanthin and total carotenoid intake (Tamimi et al 2005). Although this association is encouraging, another study of 4697 women followed over 25 years found no significant relationships between lutein intake and breast cancer risk (Jarvinen et al 1997).

**Gastric cancer** High serum lutein levels have been associated with a higher incidence of gastric carcinoma, according to a cohort study of 29,584 patients with oesophageal and stomach cancer (Abnet et al 2003); however, this association requires further investigation.

**Bowel cancer** The relationship between lutein and zeaxanthin intake and colon cancer is uncertain. A case-control study involving 1993 cases of colon cancer and 2410 controls found that lutein intake, as measured by a food frequency score, was inversely associated with colon cancer and another case-control study of 223 subjects with histologically confirmed colon or rectal cancer identified a non-significant inverse association with lutein (Levi et al 2000). A cohort analysis of 5629 women, however, found no such association (Terry et al 2002). More recently, a case-controlled study found that women with high intakes of long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acids had an inverse association between lutein and zeaxanthin intake and the risk of colon cancer risk (Nkondjock & Ghadirian 2004). Further investigation is required to clarify these findings because animal studies suggest low doses of lutein inhibit aberrant crypt foci formation, whereas high doses may increase the risk by 9–59% (Raju et al 2005).

**Prostate cancer** Overall, epidemiological evidence suggests that lutein and zeaxanthin intake has no influence over the risk of prostate cancer (Bosetti et al 2004, Gann et al 1999, Giovannucci et al 1995, Huang et al 2003, Lu et al 2001, Nomura et al 1997, Schuurman et al 2002). However, when lutein was included as part of a mixed carotenoid and tocopherol extract, the combination was effective in an in vitro study of prostate cancer cell lines (Lu et al 2005) and a case-controlled study of 130 patients with adenocarcinoma of the prostate found that prostate cancer risk was seen to decline with increasing consumption of carotenoids, including lycopene,

**Laryngeal cancer** A case-control study involving 537 subjects identified an inverse relationship between dietary lutein and zeaxanthin intake, together with the intake of other carotenoids, and the risk of laryngeal cancer (Bidoli et al 2003).

**OTHER USES**
Lutein and zeaxanthin may be used as part of a general antioxidant supplement, often taken in conjunction with other carotenoids in cases where there is known or suspected increased oxidative load.

**DOSAGE RANGE**
**ACCORDING TO CLINICAL STUDIES**
- Macular protection: lutein 6–20 mg/day; zeaxanthin 2–5 mg/day.
- Cataracts — improving visual performance: lutein 15 mg three times weekly.

**TOXICITY**
Lutein and zeaxanthin are generally recognised as safe in doses up to 2 mg/kg.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
Insufficient reliable information available.

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**

**VITAMIN C**
Lutein showed increased antioxidant efficacy with vitamin C in an animal study (Blakeley et al 2003). Further to this, a small in vivo study showed 2000 mg of vitamin C enhanced the absorption of lutein (Tanumihardjo et al 2005).

**VITAMIN E**
Vitamin E showed increased antioxidant efficacy with lutein according to an animal study (Blakeley et al 2003).

**PHYTOSTEROLS**
High dietary intake of phytosterol esters (6.6 g/day) reduced plasma levels of lutein by 14% in a small clinical trial; however, this was reversed by increasing fruit and vegetable intake (Clifton et al 2004).

**ORLISTAT**
Theoretically, long-term use of orlistat leads to reduced plasma levels of lutein due to reduced gastric absorption (Australian Medicines Handbook) — increased dietary intake of lutein should be considered.
OLESTRA
Lutein and zeaxathin levels have been found to decrease with long-term use of olestra (Tulley et al 2005) — increased dietary intake of lutein should be considered.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Lutein and zeaxathin is contraindicated in people with a hypersensitivity to these carotenoids or their food sources.

PREGNANCY USE
Eating dietary amounts of foods rich in lutein and zeaxathin is likely to be safe. Women at risk of premature rupture of the membranes are cautioned against very high intake because one study observed a fourfold greater risk of membrane rupture with high serum lutein levels (Matthews & Neil 2005).

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Lutein and zeaxanthen are antioxidant carotenoids found in spinach, corn, egg yolk, squash and greens.
- Lutein and zeaxanthen are essential for the development of macular pigment, which protects photoreceptor cells in the retina from free radical damage.
- Epidemiological studies have generally found an inverse relationship between lutein and zeaxanthen intake and macular degeneration; however, conclusive evidence as to whether increased intakes will reduce the incidence of ARMD is still unavailable.
- One controlled study has found that long-term use of lutein supplements may increase visual performance in people with pre-existing cataracts.
- High dietary intake of lutein has been associated with reduced risk of some cancers, most notably endometrial and ovarian cancer, but not all cancers, according to epidemiological evidence.
- Supplements containing lutein and zeaxanthen should be taken with food as dietary fat improves their absorption.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this supplement do for me?
Lutein and zeaxathin is important for eye health and may also reduce the risk of developing endometrial and ovarian cancer over time.

When will it start to work?
Increased intake of lutein can improve macular health within 4 weeks; however, clinical effects develop slowly and may not be detected for 6 months. In regard to improving visual performance in people with pre-existing cataracts, effects take even longer (≈2 years).
Are there any safety issues?
Lutein and zeaxanthin are generally considered safe.

REFERENCES
Dagnelie G, Zorge IS, McDonald TM. Lutein improves visual function in some patients with retinal degeneration: a pilot study via the Internet. Optometry 71 (2000): 147-64.
Higashi-Oka K et al. Identification and antioxidant activity of several pigments from the residual green tea (Camellia sinensis) after hot water extraction. J Univ Occup Environ Health 23.4 (2001): 335-44.
Unlu NZ et al. Carotenoid absorption from salad and salsa by humans is enhanced by the addition of avocado or avocado oil. J Nutr 135.3 (2005): 431.
Lycopene

BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS
Lycopene is a fat-soluble, non-provitamin A carotenoid that imparts the red colour to tomatoes, guava, rosehip, watermelon and pink grapefruit. Animals and humans do not synthesise lycopene, so they must depend on dietary sources. Research shows that bioavailability of lycopene varies depending on factors such as food source, other foods in the diet, the presence of other carotenoids and dietary fat, cooking temperatures and processing.

Processing, and heating in particular, has been found to significantly increase lycopene bioavailability, as it induces the isomerisation of lycopene from the trans- to cis-configuration (Shi & Le Maguer 2000). In other words, lycopene is best absorbed from tomato products such as pastes and sauces, rather than from unprocessed fresh tomatoes.

Lycopene is widely distributed in the human body and is one of the major carotenoids found in human serum (between 21% and 43% of total carotenoids). High concentrations are found in the adrenal gland and testes, although significant amounts are also found in the liver, adipose tissue, prostate, kidney and ovaries (El Sohemy et al 2002, Gerster 1997, Johnson 1998, Stahl et al 1992). Lycopene has also been detected in high concentrations in ciliary body and retinal pigment epithelium (Khachik et al 2002).

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Lycopene is a 40-carbon acyclic carotene with 11 conjugated and 2 unconjugated double bonds, normally in the all-trans-configuration, but the double bonds are subject to isomerisation, and various cis-isomers (mainly 5, 9, 13 or 15) are found in plasma and plants (Holloway et al 2000). The cis-isomer has better bioavailability from foods.

FOOD SOURCES
The richest sources of lycopene are red tomatoes and processed tomato products. Other sources include watermelon, pink grapefruit and papaya. The lycopene content of food depends on the cultivars grown and the growing conditions.

It is currently estimated that daily intake from all dietary sources ranges between 0.5 and 27 mg/person/day or 0.08 and 0.45 mg/kg/day (Jonker et al 2003).
DEFICIENCY SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS
Although lycopene is not considered an essential nutrient, it is important for wellbeing and optimal health. As such, deficiency signs and symptoms are unknown.

MAIN ACTIONS

ANTIOXIDANT
The many conjugated double bonds of lycopene make it a powerful antioxidant and its activity in vitro is nearly twice as great as beta-carotene (Cantrell et al 2003, Shi & Le Maguer 2000).

REDUCES LDL-CHOLESTEROL LEVELS AND LIPID OXIDATION
A significant 14% reduction in plasma LDL-cholesterol concentrations has been shown for a dose of 60 mg/day lycopene taken over 3 months by healthy volunteers. While the mechanism of action is unclear, in vitro testing suggests HMG-CoA reductase inhibition and enhancement of LDL receptor activity in macrophages (Fuhrman et al 1997). Lycopene also prevents oxidation of lipids and LDL cholesterol, according to a clinical study by Agarwal & Rao (1998).

CHEMOPREVENTATIVE ACTIVITY
Anticancer activity of lycopene has been demonstrated in cell and tissue culture studies and animal tumour models. Lycopene appears to inhibit human cancer cell growth by interfering with growth factor receptor signalling and cell cycle progression without producing toxicity or apoptosis (Heber & Lu 2002, Stahl et al 2000). In vitro and in vivo evidence supports the theory that antiproliferative activity is achieved by upregulation of a gene, connexin 43, which restores direct intercellular gap junctional communication, usually deficient in many human tumours. This restoration of normal intercellular gap junctional communication is associated with decreased proliferation. Investigation using animal models also suggests that lycopene may exert its chemopreventative effects by modulating lipid peroxidation and enhancing the activities of phase 2 enzymes, specifically those in the glutathione redox cycle (Bhuvaneswari et al 2001, Bhuvaneswari & Nagini 2005, Velmurugan et al 2002). A cell culture study using endometrial, mammary and lung human cancer cells has identified that lycopene has stronger antiproliferative activity than alpha- and beta-carotenes (Levy et al 1995).

Of special significance in prostate cancer prevention is the finding that lycopene interferes with local testosterone activation by reducing the expression of 5-alpha-reductase I in prostate tumours in a rat model (Siler et al 2004). As a consequence, several androgen target genes in the tumours were drastically downregulated.
OTHER ACTIONS
The Antioxidant Supplementation in the Atherosclerosis Prevention (ASAP) study showed that low plasma levels of lycopene were associated with an 18% increase in intima–media thickness (IMT) of the common carotid artery wall in men as compared with men in whom plasma levels were higher than median (Rissanen et al 2002). Lycopene also shows anti-inflammatory activity (Bhuvaneswari & Nagini 2005).

CLINICAL USE
The clinical effects of lycopene are studied in relation to dietary intake and oral supplementation. It should be noted that the assessment of dietary lycopene intake varies with the method used to collect dietary information and the food composition databases used to estimate nutritional content (Shils 2006).

CANCER PREVENTION
Lycopene is often included as an ingredient in antioxidant combination supplements and is thought to contribute to risk reduction for cancer. Some studies have investigated the effects of lycopene on risk of disease, although many consider it as part of the carotenoid group and study its effects in this way.

Total cancer risk A 2002 Japanese study involving 2444 people who were followed for 9 years found that high serum levels of lycopene, total carotenes and carotenoids were significantly and inversely associated with subsequent mortality from all causes and cancers of all sites after adjusting for gender, age and serum levels of total cholesterol, alpha-tocopherol and retinol (Ito et al 2002).

In particular, there is some evidence that lycopene levels are inversely proportional to cancers of the prostate, stomach and cervix.

Prostate cancer A review of 15 epidemiological studies concluded that although results are not yet definitive, overall the data suggest that increased consumption of lycopene from tomatoes and tomato-based products may be prudent in order to reduce the risk of prostate cancer (Giovannucci 2002). More specifically, five studies found a 30–40% reduction in prostate cancer risk associated with high tomato or lycopene consumption, three found a non-significant 30% reduction in risk, and seven were not supportive of an association. The largest epidemiological study was conducted by the Harvard Medical School, which assessed the diets of 47,894 volunteers and identified several foods as significantly associated with lower prostate cancer risk (Giovannucci et al 1995). They were tomato sauce, tomatoes and pizza, which are primary sources of lycopene. Additionally, consumption of more than 10 servings per week was required for protective effects to be observed.

Besides the epidemiological data on primary prevention, there are some reports of short- to medium-term clinical intervention trials with lycopene supplement or

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
tomatoes. A small study of men with high-grade prostate intraepithelial neoplasia (HGPIN), a precursor of prostate cancer, showed that supplementation with 4 mg lycopene twice daily for 1 year had a chemopreventative effect, preventing progression of HGPIN to prostate cancer (Mohanty et al 2005). Three of four studies found that either lycopene or tomatoes significantly reduces serum levels of prostate-specific antigen (PSA) (Ansari & Gupta 2004, Bowen et al 2002, Clark et al 2006, Kucuk et al 2002). Kucuk et al conducted a randomised study involving 26 men, which found that taking a tomato oleoresin extract containing 30 mg lycopene for 3 weeks resulted in smaller prostate tumours, less involvement of surgical margins and/or extra-prostatic tissues with the cancer and less diffuse involvement of the prostate by high-grade prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia compared with controls (Kucuk et al 2001). Additionally, plasma PSA levels were reduced. Another study, by Bowen et al (2002), involving 32 patients with localised prostate cancer found that consuming tomato sauce-based pasta dishes for 3 weeks (providing 30 mg lycopene/day) reduced serum PSA levels by 17.5% and, overall, significantly reduced DNA damage in both leukocyte and prostate tissue. A lycopene supplement (Lycored softules) for 3 months in 20 patients with metastatic hormone refractive prostate cancer (HRPC) significantly reduced PSA levels and provided relief in bone pain and lower urinary tract symptoms (Ansari & Gupta 2004). HRPC was defined as an increase in PSA levels of more than twice the normal value (0–4 ng/mL) confirmed in two consecutive determinations at 2-week intervals in the presence of castrate levels of testosterone. In contrast, no effect on PSA levels was observed in a dose-escalating study of 36 men, which tested high doses of lycopene in biochemically relapsed prostate cancer (Clark et al 2006). The doses studied were 15, 30, 45, 60, 90, and 120 mg/day taken for 1 year and significant elevations of plasma lycopene were noted at 3 months and then appeared to plateau for all six dose levels.

**Stomach** Although mixed results were previously obtained from case–control studies, recent evidence is supportive of lycopene as a protective agent in stomach cancer (De Stefani et al 2000, Garcia-Closas et al 1999, Tsugane et al 1992, Yuan et al 2004).

The relationship between pre-diagnostic serum levels of carotenoids and risk of gastric cancer was determined in a study involving 761 middle-aged or older men in Shanghai, China, with a follow-up of 12 years (Yuan et al 2004). High serum levels of alpha- and beta-carotenes and lycopene were significantly associated with reduced risk of developing gastric cancer (all P values for trend ≤0.05) whereas no statistically significant relationships among the serum levels of beta-cryptoxanthin,
lutein/zeaxanthin, retinol, alpha-tocopherol and gamma-tocopherol were identified with gastric cancer risk.

**Cervix** Results from two case–control studies have found an association between low serum lycopene levels and existing cervical cancer, but it is uncertain whether this can be interpreted as a risk factor because depleted levels may be a result of tumour usage, the increased burden of oxidative stress or both (Nagata et al 1999, Palan et al 1996).

**PREVENTION OF CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE** Recent epidemiological studies have shown an inverse relationship between tissue and serum levels of lycopene and risk of acute coronary event or stroke and degree of IMT of the common carotid artery (Kohlmeier et al 1997, Rissanen et al 2002, 2003, Sesso et al 2004).

Strong population-based evidence comes from the large Women’s Health Study (n = 39,876), the European Community Multicenter Study on Antioxidants, Myocardial Infarction and Breast Cancer (EURAMIC) study and the Kuopio Ischaemic Heart Disease Risk Factor study (Kohlmeier et al 1997, Rissanen et al 2003, Sesso et al 2004).

In the Women’s Health Study, higher plasma lycopene concentrations were associated with a lower risk of cardiovascular disease (Sesso et al 2004). Specifically, for cardiovascular disease, exclusive of angina, women in the upper three quartiles had a significant multivariate risk reduction of 50% compared with those in the lowest quartile. For the EURAMIC study, 1379 individuals (662 patients, 717 controls) from 10 European countries were recruited (Kohlmeier et al 1997). Needle aspiration biopsy samples of adipose tissue were taken shortly after myocardial infarction, and levels of alpha- and beta-carotenes, lycopene, and alpha-tocopherol were measured. After adjusting for age, body mass index, socioeconomic status, smoking, hypertension, and maternal and paternal history of heart disease, only lycopene levels were found to be protective. The effect also appeared to be dose-dependent.

In the Kuopio Ischaemic Heart Disease Risk Factor study, 1028 middle-aged men (aged 46–64 years) from Finland were examined and classified into quartiles according to their serum lycopene concentration (Rissanen et al 2003). The men in the lowest quartile had a significantly higher mean IMT of the common carotid artery (CCA-IMT) and maximal CCA-IMT than the others. Once again, a dose-dependent effect was observed as the mean and maximal CCA-IMT increased linearly across the quartiles of serum lycopene concentration. This particular finding is important because increased IMT of the CCA has been shown to predict coronary events.
**REDUCING RISK OF MACULAR DEGENERATION**

Lycopene supplements are sometimes used to reduce the risk of developing macular degeneration and generally support eye health. In general, it is taken in combination with other carotenoids, such as zeaxanthin and lutein, for this indication for which there is supportive evidence (Cardinault et al 2005). Few studies are available to determine whether lycopene as a sole agent exerts clinically significant protective effects. One cohort study of 159 older people found no inverse association between lycopene intake and 5-year incidence of early age-related macular degeneration (ARMD) (Flood et al 2002). Alternatively, a recent study comparing 34 patients with ARMD to 21 control subjects found that of the serum carotenoid concentrations measured, only lycopene was decreased significantly in the serum LDL and HDL fractions ($P < 0.05$).

**CATARACT PREVENTION**

Studies have identified protective effects for lycopene against oxidative changes in human lens epithelial cells in vitro and reduced incidence and grading of cataract in test animals (Gupta et al 2003, Mohanty et al 2002, Pollack et al 1996). A cross-sectional survey of 372 older volunteers also produced positive results, finding the risk of cortical cataract was lowest in people with the highest plasma concentrations of lycopene (Gale et al 2001).

**PROTECTION AGAINST UV-INDUCED PHOTODAMAGE**

**Oral ingestion** Increasing lycopene intake to 16 mg/day (using tomato paste) over a 10-week period has been shown to provide significant protection against erythema formation following UV irradiation, compared with placebo (Stahl & Sies 2002). The protective effects appear to develop slowly, as tests conducted at 4 weeks found no significant changes. Protective effects were also seen in another study that compared the synthetic lycopene with concentrated tomato extract (Lyc-o-mato) (Aust et al 2005). The daily dose of lycopene was approximately 10 mg/day, which was lower in than the previous study. Again, 12 weeks were required to detect significant protective effects against UV-induced erythema and the effect was more pronounced in the group using a natural lycopene source.

**Topical use** Results from an experimental model show that topical lycopene also has protective effects against acute UV-induced photodamage (Andreassi et al 2004, Fazekas et al 2003). Furthermore, it may act as a preventative agent via inhibition of epidermal ornithine decarboxylase activity, reducing inflammatory responses, maintaining normal cell proliferation, and possibly preventing DNA damage, as indicated by blocking the necessitating step of apoptosis following UVB injury.
OTHER USES
General antioxidant nutrient.

DOSAGE RANGE
BASED ON AVAILABLE EVIDENCE
- Hypercholesterolaemia: 60 mg/day.
- One large study on lycopene and prostate cancer suggested that a daily intake of approximately 6.5 mg was protective (Giovannucci et al 1995).
- Sunburn protection: 10–16 mg/day.

TOXICITY
Animal studies have shown that 600 mg lycopene/kg/day is not toxic (Jonker et al 2003).

ADVERSE ReACTIONS
Animal studies have demonstrated that 600 mg lycopene/kg/day does not produce adverse effects, and is well tolerated (Jonker et al 2003). This level is far in excess of usual dietary intake in humans.

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
DRUGS REDUCING FAT ABSORPTION (E.G. CHOLESTYRAMINE, ORLISTAT)
Drugs that reduce fat absorption, such as cholestyramine, colestipol and orlistat, may also reduce the absorption of lycopene — separate doses by at least 2 hours.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Hypersensitivity to lycopene or its food sources.

PREGNANCY USE
Eating dietary amounts of foods rich in lycopene is likely to be safe.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Lycopene is a fat-soluble, non-provitamin A carotenoid that imparts the red colour to tomatoes and is most bioavailable from processed food sources such as tomato paste.
- Lycopene has antioxidant and cholesterol-lowering activity and may reduce the risk of developing cardiovascular disease, according to epidemiological evidence.
- Epidemiological evidence generally suggests that higher intakes of tomato-based products reduce the risk of prostate cancer and possibly stomach cancer and cataracts.
• Preliminary evidence suggests that intervention with tomato-enriched products or lycopene may decrease tumour size in localised prostate cancer and reduce prostate specific antigen levels.
• Increased intake of lycopene has also been associated with reduced risk of cortical cataract and sunburn. Preliminary evidence also suggests topical application of lycopene protects against UV-induced erythema (sunburn).

**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

**What will this supplement do for me?**
Lycopene is an antioxidant vitamin that may reduce the risk of developing prostate and stomach cancer, cardiovascular disease and cataracts. It also protects the skin from sunburn and may reduce cholesterol levels when ingested in high doses.

**When will it start to work?**
Risk reduction is likely to be a result of many years of consistently high intakes. Protective effects against sunburn have been reported after 10 weeks.

**Are there any safety issues?**
Safety studies conducted in animals suggest that lycopene is very safe and well tolerated.

**REFERENCES**

Lycopene 831


L-Lysine

BACKGROUND
L-Lysine is absorbed from the small intestine and is transported to the liver via the portal circulation where it is involved in protein biosynthesis and partly metabolised.

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
L-Lysine is the biologically active stereoisomer of lysine.

MAIN ACTIONS

ESSENTIAL AMINO ACID
The human body cannot synthesise L-lysine so it must be taken in through the diet. The richest sources of L-lysine are animal proteins such as meat and poultry. It is also found to lesser extents in eggs, beans and dairy products (Bratman & Kroll 2000).

ANTIVIRAL
L-Lysine has an inhibitory effect on the multiplication of HSV in cell cultures (Griffith et al 1981, Milman et al 1980). It appears to act as an antimetabolite and competes with arginine for inclusion into viral replicative processes (Griffith et al 1981). As such, lysine retards the viral growth promoting action of arginine.

CALCIUM REGULATION
L-Lysine may be involved in the cellular absorption, regulation and use of calcium (Civitelli et al 1992). In vitro tests with human osteoblasts indicate that lysine has a positive effect on osteoblast proliferation, activation and differentiation (Toricelli et al 2003).

OTHER ACTIONS
L-Lysine is required for biosynthesis of carnitine, collagen and elastin.

CLINICAL USE

HERPES SIMPLEX — PREVENTION AND TREATMENT

One randomised, double-blind crossover study found that supplementation with 1248 mg/day of L-lysine decreased the recurrence rate of HSV attacks in non-
immunocompromised subjects, but did not shorten healing time during an outbreak (McCune et al 1984). Another double-blind trial compared the effects of 1000 mg L-lysine three times daily for 6 months with placebo treatment in 52 subjects. This time, not only was L-lysine found to decrease recurrence rates, but also symptoms were significantly diminished in severity and healing time significantly reduced (Griffith et al 1987). An open study of 45 patients with recurring HSV infection found that L-lysine supplementation accelerated recovery and reduced recurrence. The doses used were between 312 and 1200 mg/day in single or multiple doses (Griffith et al 1978). Thein and Hurt (1984) conducted a 12-month, double-blind crossover trial involving 26 subjects with recurring herpes lesions and found that a dose of 1000 mg/day had protective effects against lesion formation. Furthermore, once supplementation ceased, an increase in lesion frequency occurred. This study went further than others, identifying that serum lysine levels need to exceed 165 nmol/mL in order for clinical effects to become significant.

Two further double-blind studies produced negative results. Doses of 1000 mg or 1200 mg/day were tested, both failing to produce prophylactic or treatment effects for herpes simplex (Digiovanna & Blank 1984, Milman et al 1980).

However, an epidemiological survey of 1543 volunteers asking about the perceived effectiveness of lysine supplements to treat herpes infections over a 6-month trial period indicated positive results (Walsh et al 1983). Of those people with cold sores or fever blisters, 92% claimed lysine supplements were ‘very effective’ or ‘an effective form’ of treatment and 81% of those with genital herpes and who had tried other forms of treatment also claimed positive results.

In practice, doses of >3000 mg/day are used as treatment during an acute episode, based on the positive findings of the Griffith study. This is combined with a diet low in arginine-rich foods, such as chocolate, peas, nuts and beer, and high in lysine-rich foods such as baked beans and eggs.

**OTHER USES**

**OSTEOPOROSIS PREVENTION**

Two studies have investigated the effects of oral L-lysine supplementation on calcium use to determine whether L-lysine has a role in the prevention of osteoporosis. In these tests, oral L-lysine was shown to significantly increase intestinal absorption of calcium and decrease renal excretion in both healthy women and those with osteoporosis (Civitelli et al 1992).
ANXIETY AND MOOD DISTURBANCES
According to a randomised, double-blind trial, fortification of lysine in a wheat-based (L-lysine deficient) diet significantly reduced anxiety score in males, but not females with high baseline anxiety. It is suspected that L-lysine’s action as a 5-HT4 receptor antagonist and benzodiazepine receptor agonist are responsible for the observed effect (Smriga et al 2004). In contrast, a prospective study of 29 133 men (aged 50–69 years) found no association between L-lysine intake and depressed mood (Hakkareainen et al 2003).

DOSAGE RANGE
HERPES SIMPLEX INFECTIONS
• Prevention: 1000–3000 mg/day.
• Acute treatment: minimum 3000 mg/day in divided doses taken between meals until lesions have healed.

OSTEOPOROSIS PREVENTION
• 400–800 mg L-lysine taken together with calcium supplementation.

TOXICITY
Not known

ADVERSE REACTIONS
Doses greater than 10–15 g/day may cause gastrointestinal discomfort with symptoms of nausea, vomiting and diarrhoea.

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
CALCIUM
Clinical tests have found L-lysine enhances intestinal absorption and decreases renal excretion of calcium (Civitelli et al 1992) — potentially beneficial interaction.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Contraindicated in people with the rare genetic disorder hyperlysinaemia/hyperlysinuria (Hendler et al 2001). High-dose lysine supplements should be used with caution in hypercalcaemic states, and by people with kidney or liver disease.

PREGNANCY USE
Safety is unknown for high-dose supplements; however, dietary intake levels are safe.
**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**
- L-Lysine is an essential amino acid found in foods such as animal proteins, eggs and milk.
- It has been shown to inhibit HSV multiplication in vitro.
- Supplemental L-lysine is popular as a prophylactic and treatment for HSV.
- Studies have yielded inconsistent results suggesting that there may be individual variation in responses.
- Doses used as prophylaxis range from 1000–3000 mg/day with treatment doses generally above 3000 mg/day.
- L-Lysine may also enhance intestinal absorption of calcium and reduces its renal excretion.

**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

**What will this supplement do for me?**
L-Lysine supplements may reduce the frequency and severity of herpes simplex outbreaks. It may also improve the way the body absorbs and retains calcium.

**When will it start to work?**
Studies suggest that several months’ treatment may be required, with a long-term approach recommended.

**Are there any safety issues?**
L-Lysine appears to be a very safe supplement, although safety has not been established in pregnancy and lactation for high-dose supplements.

**REFERENCES**


Magnesium

Historical note  The word magnesium comes from the name of the Greek city Magnesia, where large deposits of magnesium were found. Magnesium, in the form of Epsom salts, has long been used therapeutically as a laxative although it is also used in many other ways, such as a foot soak to soften rough spots and absorb foot odour and as a bath additive to ease muscle aches and pains.

BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS
Magnesium (Mg) is the fourth most abundant cation in the body, with 50–60% sequestered in the bone and the remaining being distributed equally between muscle and non-muscular soft tissue. Only about 1% of total body Mg is found in the extracellular fluid.

Dietary intake, renal and intestinal function finely balance and maintain plasma magnesium concentrations.

Absorption of dietary Mg starts within 1 hour of ingestion, with salts of high solubility having the most complete absorption (e.g. magnesium citrate). Magnesium absorption also requires selenium, parathyroid hormone and vitamins B6 and D and is hindered by phytate, fibre, alcohol, excess saturated fat, phosphorus or calcium intake (Johnson 2001, Saris et al 2000). Healthy people absorb 30–40% of ingested Mg; this can increase to 70% in cases of low intake or deficiency (Braunwald et al 2003). Once absorbed, it is transported to the liver, enters the systemic circulation and is transported around the body and ultimately excreted via the kidneys.

Clinical note — Magnesium citrate: the superior supplement
Several forms of Mg are available in OTC supplements; however, not all exhibit the same bioavailability. According to a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled study, magnesium amino chelate and magnesium citrate are better absorbed than magnesium oxide in healthy individuals (Walker et al 2003). Of the three, magnesium citrate led to the greatest increase in mean serum Mg concentration, a result evident after acute dosing (24 hours) and chronic dosing (60 days). Furthermore, although mean erythrocyte Mg concentration showed no differences among groups, chronic magnesium citrate supplementation resulted in the greatest mean salivary Mg concentration compared with all other treatments.
**FOOD SOURCES**

Good dietary sources of Mg include legumes, wholegrain cereals, nuts, dark green leafy vegetables, cocoa, soy flour, seeds, nuts, mineral water and hard water.

**DEFICIENCY SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS**

When reduced intakes or increased losses of magnesium, potassium or phosphorus occur (the three major intracellular elements), losses of the others generally follow. As such, many deficiency symptoms are also due to alterations in potassium and/or phosphorus status and manifest as neurological or neuromuscular symptoms.

Symptoms of deficiency include:

- muscle spasms
- anorexia
- nausea and vomiting
- muscular weakness and spasms
- lethargy
- insomnia
- depression
- mental confusion and decreased attention span
- personality changes
- hyper-irritability and excitability
- vertigo
- cardiac arrhythmia, tetany and ultimately convulsions can develop if deficiency is prolonged.

Although Mg deficiency is a common clinical problem, serum levels are often overlooked or not measured in patients at risk for the disorder. About 10% of patients admitted to hospitals and up to 65% of patients in intensive care units may be Mg deficient (Braunwald et al 2003).

Low Mg states are associated with several serious diseases such as congestive heart failure, ischaemic heart disease, cardiac arrhythmias, hypertension, mitral valve prolapse, metabolic syndrome, diabetes mellitus, hyperlipidaemia, pre-eclampsia and eclampsia (Fox et al 2001, Guerrero-Romero & Rodriguez-Moran 2002). Epidemiological evidence suggests that a low dietary intake of Mg is also associated with impaired lung function, bronchial hyperreactivity and wheezing, and risk of stroke (Ascherio et al 1998, Hill et al 1997). Magnesium deficiency may also play a role in the pathophysiology of Tourette’s syndrome (Grimaldi 2002).

**PRIMARY DEFICIENCY**

A primary deficiency is rare in healthy people as the kidneys are extremely efficient at maintaining Mg homeostasis. However, deficiency is possible in protein–calorie
malnutrition (e.g. kwashiorkor). Experiments have shown that people fed low Mg diets develop deficiency symptoms such as anorexia, nausea and vomiting, weakness and lethargy within weeks.

Marginal deficiencies are far more common and very often undiagnosed. There is evidence that daily Mg intake has declined substantially since the beginning of last century, with dietary surveys showing the average intake in Western countries is often below the RDI (Saris et al 2000).

**SECONDARY DEFICIENCY**

Most Mg deficiencies occur due to a combination of insufficient dietary intake and/or intestinal malabsorption and increased Mg depletion. There are many factors that predispose to deficiency and these are listed in the table below.

**Medicines increasing risk of deficiency** Many pharmaceutical drugs have the potential to cause hypomagnesaemia (e.g. loop diuretics, cisplatin, corticosteroids, cyclosporin, antibiotics such as tetracyclines and aminoglycosides).

### RISK FACTORS FOR MAGNESIUM DEPLETION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dietary</th>
<th>Excessive intake of ethanol, salt, phosphoric acid (soft drinks), caffeine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Protein–energy malnutrition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endocrine disorders</td>
<td>Hyperaldosteronism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hyperparathyroidism with hypercalcaemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hyperthyroidism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Diabetes mellitus and glycosuria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lifestyle</td>
<td>Profuse sweating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Intense, prolonged stress</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gastrointestinal disorders</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Coeliac disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inflammatory bowel diseases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malabsorption syndromes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pancreatitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Partial bowel obstruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vomiting/diarrhoea</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pharmaceutical drugs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aminoglycoside antibiotics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisplatin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corticosteroids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclosporin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loop diuretics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tetracycline antibiotics</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Renal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Metabolic disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acidosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nephrotoxic drugs (e.g. cisplatin, cyclosporin)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hyperthermia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypercatabolic states such as burns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phosphate depletion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potassium depletion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pregnancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lactation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excessive menstruation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long-term parenteral nutrition combined with loss of body fluids (e.g. diarrhoea)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parasitic infection (e.g. pinworms)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MAIN ACTIONS
Magnesium plays an essential role in a wide range of fundamental biological reactions in the body. It is involved in over 300 essential enzymatic reactions and is necessary for every major biological process. It is especially important for those enzymes that use nucleotides as cofactors or substrates and plays a role in many processes that are of central importance in the biochemistry of each cell, particularly in energy metabolism. It is also required for many other important biological functions such as:
- nerve conduction
- regulation of vascular tone
- muscle activity
- amino acid and protein synthesis
- DNA synthesis and degradation
- immune function.

INTERACTION WITH OTHER NUTRIENTS
Magnesium is extremely important for the metabolism of calcium, potassium, phosphorus, zinc, copper, iron, sodium, lead, cadmium and the intracellular homeostasis and activation of thiamine (Johnson 2001). It acts as a calcium antagonist and interacts with nutrients such as potassium, phosphorus, vitamin B6 and boron.

OTHER ACTIONS
In its macro form, oral Mg salts have a laxative and antacid activity and are practically insoluble in water.

CLINICAL USE
In practice, Mg is administered by various routes such as intramuscular injection and intravenous infusion. This review will focus only on oral Mg, as this is the form most commonly used by the general public, outside the hospital setting.

DEFICIENCY: TREATMENT AND PREVENTION
Magnesium supplementation is traditionally used to correct deficiency states or avoid deficiency in people at increased risk, such as people with malabsorption syndromes and chronic alcoholics (Saris et al 2000). Low serum Mg levels <0.7 mmol/L (1.8 mg/dL, 1.5 meq/L) are indicative of Mg deficiency, although symptoms occur when serum Mg is <0.5 mmol/L (1.2 mg/dL, 1.0 meq/L) (Braunwald et al 2003).

CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE
Low Mg states are associated with several cardiovascular diseases, such as congestive heart failure, ischaemic heart disease, cardiac arrhythmias, hypertension, mitral valve

Although the pathophysiology of each condition is multifactorial, the multiple biological effects of Mg in the cardiovascular system suggest an important cardioprotective role. In the heart, it acts as a calcium-channel blocker and promotes resting polarisation of the cell membrane, thereby reducing arrhythmias (Shatockey et al 1987). It also helps prevent serum coagulation (Frisman et al 2005). Low Mg selectively impairs the release of NO from the coronary endothelium, resulting in vasoconstriction and possibly coronary embolism.

In experimental animals, dietary Mg deficiency exacerbates atherosclerosis and vascular damage because it has a modulatory role in controlling lipid metabolism in the arterial wall.

Mitral valve prolapse  It has been suggested that hypomagnesaemia is common in patients with mitral valve prolapse and therefore supplementation to correct this deficiency could exert beneficial clinical effects (Kitlinski et al 2004). In 1997, one study of 141 subjects with symptomatic mitral valve prolapse confirmed this suspicion by identifying hypomagnesaemia in 60% of patients (Lichodziejewska et al 1997). A randomised, double-blind, crossover study followed those Mg-deficient people and found that 5 weeks’ Mg supplementation significantly alleviated symptoms of weakness, chest pain, dyspnoea, palpitation and anxiety (Lichodziejewska et al 1997). The dose regimen used was 3 tablets of magnesium carbonate 600 mg (7 mmol elementary Mg) daily for the first week followed by 2 tablets daily until the fifth week.

Symptoms of coronary artery disease (CAD)  In 2003, the results from a multicentre, multinational, prospective, randomised, double-blind and placebo-controlled trial showed that 6 months’ oral Mg supplementation in patients with CAD results in a significant improvement in exercise tolerance, exercise-induced chest pain, and QOL (Shechter et al 2003). The study used oral magnesium citrate (15 mmol twice daily) as Magnosolv-Granulat (total Mg 365 mg). Previously, randomised placebo-controlled studies have shown that oral Mg supplementation in CAD patients is associated with significant improvement in brachial artery endothelial function and inhibits platelet-dependent thrombosis, providing several potential mechanisms by which Mg could beneficially alter outcomes in these patients (Shechter et al 1999, 2000).

Hypertension  Magnesium supplementation produces a modest dose-dependent blood pressure-lowering effect according to a 2002 meta-analysis of 20 randomised trials that involved 1220 subjects (Jee et al 2002). For each 10 mmol/day increase in
Mg intake, a further reduction of 4.3 mmHg in SBP and of 2.3 mmHg in DBP was observed.

**Stroke** A prospective study of 43,738 men (Health Professional Follow-Up Study) conducted over 8 years showed an inverse association between dietary Mg intake and the risk of total stroke (Ascherio et al 1998). The inverse association was stronger in hypertensive than normotensive men and was not materially altered by adjustments for blood pressure levels. The study also identified an inverse association between low dietary fibre intake and stroke.

**Dyslipidaemia** Oral Mg supplementation (magnesium oxide 12 mmol/day) taken over 3 months effectively reduced plasma lipids compared with placebo in people with ischaemic heart disease (Rasmussen et al 1989). The double-blind study showed that Mg produced a 13% increase in molar ratio of apolipoprotein A1:apolipoprotein B compared with a 2% increase in the placebo group, which was statistically significant. This was caused by a decrease in apolipoprotein B concentrations, which were reduced by 15% in the Mg group as compared with a slight increase in the placebo group. Additionally, triglyceride levels decreased by 27% after Mg treatment. Overall, these beneficial results are associated with a decrease in cardiovascular mortality.

**Arrhythmia prevention in congestive heart failure** Although Mg is usually administered intravenously when indicated in this condition, one controlled study using oral Mg showed that it significantly reduced the incidence of arrhythmias in patients with stable congestive heart failure (Bashir et al 1993). The double-blind crossover study used magnesium chloride (3204 mg/day in divided doses).

**MIGRAINE HEADACHES: PREVENTION**

People who suffer with recurrent migraines appear to have lower intracellular Mg levels (demonstrated in both red blood cells and white blood cells) than those who do not experience migraines. (See ‘Feverfew’ monograph for more information about migraine aetiology.)

Two randomised, double-blind studies using high-dose oral Mg have found it to be useful in migraine sufferers, reducing frequency and/or number of days with migraine headache (Peikert et al 1996, Taubert 1994). One placebo-controlled study using a lower dose found no benefit in reducing the frequency of migraine headaches (Pfaffenrath et al 1996).

A dose of 24 mmol Mg (600 mg trimagnesium dicitrate) taken daily over 12 weeks produced a 42% reduction in frequency of attack compared with 16% with placebo in one study of 81 patients, with a mean attack frequency of 3.6 migraine headaches each month (Peikert et al 1996). Effects were observed after week 9 and treatment...
also significantly decreased the number of days with migraine. Significant decreases in migraine frequency were also observed in a crossover study that used the same dose and form of oral Mg (Taubert 1994).

**Menstrual migraine headache** Oral Mg supplementation decreases pain, premenstrual symptoms and the number of days with migraine headache, according to one double-blind placebo-controlled study (Facchinetti et al 1991a). Treatment consisted of 360 mg/day of Mg (pyrrolidone carboxylic acid) starting on day 15 of the menstrual cycle and continuing until the onset of menses.

**Migraine prophylaxis in children** Oral magnesium oxide (9 mg/kg/day) given in three divided doses with food may decrease headache frequency and severity according to a multicentre, randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial (Wang et al 2003). The 16-week study involved children aged 3–17 years who reported a 4-week history of at least weekly, moderate-to-severe headache with a throbbing or pulsatile quality, associated anorexia/nausea, vomiting, photophobia, sonophobia, or relief with sleep, but no fever or evidence of infection. Of note, 27% of subjects (n = 42 magnesium oxide; n = 44 placebo) failed to complete the study, thereby hindering interpretation of the results.

**Clinical note — What is the link between magnesium and migraine?**
Magnesium seems to play a significant role in the pathogenesis of migraine, with low brain levels and impaired Mg metabolism reported in migraine sufferers (Thomas et al 2000). Magnesium has an effect on serotonin receptors, NO synthesis and release, and a variety of other migraine-related receptors and neurotransmitters. It is also essential for mitochondrial function within the cell. The available evidence suggests that up to 50% of patients during an acute migraine attack have lowered levels of ionised Mg (Mauskop & Altura 1998). Pilot studies of migraine patients have suggested that disordered energy metabolism or Mg deficiencies may be responsible for hyperexcitability of neuronal tissue in migraine patients (Boska et al 2002). As such, factors that decrease neuronal excitability, such as Mg, may alter the threshold for triggering attacks (Boska et al 2002).

**KIDNEY STONE PREVENTION**
Magnesium deficiency is one of many risk factors for the development of kidney stones (Anderson 2002). Others include nutritional deficiencies of water, calcium, potassium and vitamin B6, excessive intakes of animal protein, fat, sugar, oxalates, colas, alcohol, caffeine, salt and vitamin D, lifestyle factors, and a positive family history.
A prospective double-blind study of 64 patients who were randomly assigned to receive placebo or potassium-magnesium citrate (42 mEq potassium, 21 mEq magnesium and 63 mEq citrate) daily for up to 3 years showed that the combination supplement reduced the risk of developing recurrent calcium oxalate kidney stones by 85% (Ettinger et al 1997).

**PREMENSTRUAL SYNDROME**

Three double-blind studies using oral Mg supplements in women with PMS have produced positive results for decreasing symptoms such as fluid retention and mood swings (Facchinetti et al 1991b, Rosenstein et al 1994, Walker et al 1998). According to all studies, clinical effects develop slowly, starting during the second menstrual cycle.

Although it is not clear what mechanism of action is responsible, a number of studies have identified decreased Mg concentrations in both red blood cell and mononuclear blood cells of women with PMS (Rosenstein et al 1994).

**Dysmenorrhoea**  A Cochrane review of seven randomised trials investigating the effects of various treatments for dysmenorrhoea included three trials comparing Mg with placebo. Overall, Mg was found to be more effective than placebo for pain relief and resulted in less extra medication being required (Wilson & Murphy 2001).

**OSTEOPOROSIS PREVENTION**

Magnesium comprises about 1% of bone mineral and is involved in a number of activities supporting bone strength, preservation, and remodelling. As the Mg content of bone mineral decreases, bone calcium crystals become larger and more brittle. Therefore, low Mg states increase the risk of osteoporosis. Several studies have investigated the effects of supplemental Mg on bone density, generally finding it has positive effects.

One long-term study has reported an increase in bone density for magnesium hydroxide supplementation in a group of menopausal women (Sojka & Weaver 1995). After the 2-year test period, fracture incidence was also reduced. Another 2-year study showed that Mg supplementation in postmenopausal women with osteoporosis results in increased bone mass at the wrist after 1 year, with no further increase after 2 years of supplementation (Stendig-Lindberg et al 1993). The regimen used here was oral Mg 750 mg/day for the first 6 months followed by 250 mg/day thereafter.

**Clinical note — Peak bone mass**

The best opportunity to influence bone mass occurs early in life. It has been estimated that approximately 40% of peak bone mass is accumulated during
adolescence with peak bone mass in the hip achieved by age 16–18 years (Weaver 2000). The spinal vertebrae are still able to increase in mass until the third decade of life, when total peak bone mass reaches 99% by age 26.6 years (±3.7 years). As such, ensuring an adequate intake of calcium and Mg early in life is essential for attaining optimal bone mass.

ASTHMA
Magnesium is sometimes used in the treatment of acute asthma because it can influence bronchial vasomotor tone, pulmonary vascular muscle contractility, mast-cell granulation and neurohumoral mediator release (Mathew & Altura 1988). Although it is most often used as an infusion or in an inhaled form for this indication, results of two randomised, double-blind studies suggest that oral supplements also significantly alleviate asthma symptoms (Bede et al 2003, Hill et al 1997). Hill et al found that treatment improved symptoms, although it failed to change objective measures of airflow or airway reactivity and Bede et al found a significant decrease in bronchodilator use after 8 weeks compared with placebo. This was a 12-week study using oral magnesium citrate in 89 children (4–16 years) with mild or moderate persistent bronchial asthma. The dose used was 200 mg daily for children aged 7 years and 290 mg for those older than 7 years.

PREGNANCY
A 2001 Cochrane review of seven studies involving 2689 women concluded that although not all trials were positive, oral Mg taken before the 25th week of gestation was associated with a lower frequency of preterm birth, a lower frequency of low birthweight, and fewer small-for-gestational-age infants.

Additionally, fewer hospitalisations during pregnancy and fewer cases of antepartum haemorrhage were associated with Mg use.

Unfortunately, a lack of high-quality evidence currently exists to conclusively state that dietary Mg supplementation during pregnancy is beneficial, according to the authors, with further research still required to confirm these findings (Makrides & Crowther 2001).

Pregnancy-induced leg cramps A 2002 Cochrane review of five randomised trials of treatments for leg cramps in pregnancy concluded that the best evidence is for magnesium lactate or citrate taken as 5 mmol in the morning and 10 mmol in the evening for pregnant women experiencing leg cramps (Young & Jewell 2002).
**DIABETES MELLITUS**
A strong association between Mg, diabetes and hypertension has been reported in the literature (Ascherio et al 1998). Deficiency aggravates insulin resistance and predisposes diabetics to cardiovascular diseases.

Several randomised studies investigating oral Mg supplementation have shown improvements in diabetic control (Paolisso et al 1992, Rodriguez-Moran & Guerrero-Romero 2003). The most recent double-blind trial that involved 63 patients with type 2 diabetes (treated with glibenclamide) and reduced serum Mg levels demonstrated that the addition of oral Mg over 16 weeks significantly improves insulin sensitivity and metabolic control (Rodriguez-Moran & Guerrero-Romero 2003).

**CONSTIPATION**
In high doses Mg exerts a laxative effect, which is used in practice for the short-term treatment of constipation and in order to get the bowel ready for surgical or diagnostic procedures. It is often used in the form of magnesium hydroxide (milk of magnesia) or magnesium sulfate (Epsom salts).

**DYSPEPSIA**
As magnesium hydroxide (milk of magnesia), Mg is used to reduce symptoms of dyspepsia and gastric acidity and acts as an antacid by forming magnesium chloride in the stomach. Magnesium oxide is also used for its antacid properties, which are greater than magnesium carbonate and sodium bicarbonate (Reynolds et al 1982). Magnesium trisilicate is the form used when a prolonged antacid activity is required.

**CHRONIC LEG CRAMPS**
Two randomised, double-blind studies have investigated the use of oral Mg supplements in people with leg cramps. Frusso et al (1999) conducted a crossover trial involving 45 individuals who had experienced at least six cramps during the previous month. Subjects were given 1 month of oral magnesium citrate (900 mg twice daily) followed by a matching placebo for 1 month, or visa versa. This treatment regimen failed to reduce the severity, duration or number of nocturnal leg cramps. In contrast, Roffe et al (2002) tested magnesium citrate equivalent to 300 mg magnesium in subjects suffering regular leg cramps and identified a trend towards fewer cramps with active treatment ($P = 0.07$). Significantly more subjects thought that the treatment had helped after magnesium than after placebo (36 (78%) and 25 (54%) respectively). Interestingly, in both studies patients improved over time regardless of the treatment they received.
OTHER USES
Oral Mg supplements are used in a variety of different conditions, most notably those involving muscle spasm or tension, pain and/or psychological and physical symptoms of stress and hyperexcitability. This includes IBS, restless legs syndrome, fibromyalgia, chronic fatigue syndrome, anxiety states, tension headaches, ADHD and insomnia. Together with vitamin B6, Mg is a popular treatment in autism. Preliminary evidence also suggests it may be beneficial for women with detrusor muscle instability (incontinence) or sensory urgency.

DOSAGE RANGE
AUSTRALIAN RDI FOR ADULTS
- Men
  - 19–30 years: 400 mg/day.
  - > 30 years: 420 mg/day.
- Women
  - 19–30 years: 310 mg/day.
  - > 30 years: 320 mg/day.
- Pregnancy
  - ≤ 18 years: 400 mg/day.
  - > 18 years: 350 mg/day.
- Lactation
  - ≤ 18 years: 360 mg/day.
  - > 18 years: 310 mg/day.

ACCORDING TO CLINICAL STUDIES
- Hypertension: 360–600 mg/day.
- Arrhythmia prevention in congestive heart failure: magnesium chloride 3204 mg/day in divided doses.
- Migraine: 600 mg trimagnesium dicitrate daily.
- Migraine prophylaxis in children: magnesium oxide (9 mg/kg/day).
- PMS fluid retention symptoms: 200 mg magnesium (as magnesium oxide) daily.
- PMS mood swings: magnesium pyrrolidone carboxylic acid (360 mg) taken three times daily, from day 15 of the menstrual cycle to the onset of menstrual flow.
- Mitral valve prolapse: 3 tablets magnesium carbonate 600 mg (7 mmol of elementary Mg) daily for the first week followed by 2 tablets daily.
- Coronary artery disease symptoms: oral magnesium citrate (15 mmol twice daily as Magnosolv-Granulat, total magnesium 365 mg).

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
• Diabetes type 2: 50 mL magnesium dichloride solution (containing 50 g/1000 mL solution) daily.
• Kidney stone prevention: magnesium hydroxide 400–500 mg/day.
• Nocturnal leg cramps: magnesium citrate equivalent to 300 mg magnesium daily.
• Asthma: magnesium citrate 200–290 mg daily.
• Osteoporosis prevention: 250 mg taken at bedtime on an empty stomach, increased to 250 mg three times daily for 6 months, followed by 250 mg/day for 18 months.

ADVERSE REACTIONS
The most common adverse effects of oral supplements are diarrhoea (18.6%) and gastric irritation (4.7%) (Peikert et al 1996). Typically, doses above 350 mg/day (elemental) may be associated with adverse effects.

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
The interactions included in this section are relevant for oral supplementation and do not refer to other administration routes, although there may be an overlap.

AMINOGLYCOSIDES (E.G. GENTAMYCIN)
Drug may reduce absorption of Mg — monitor for signs and symptoms of Mg deficiency, as increased Mg intake may be required with long-term therapy.

CALCIUM-CHANNEL BLOCKERS
Magnesium may enhance the hypotensive effect of calcium-channel blockers: monitor patients and their drug requirements — possible beneficial interaction.

FLUOROQUINOLONES
Magnesium may decrease absorption of fluoroquinolone antibiotics — separate doses by at least 2 hours before or 4 hours after oral Mg.

LOOP DIURETICS AND THIAZIDE DIURETICS
Increased Mg intake may be required with long-term therapy because these drugs increase Mg loss — monitor Mg efficacy and status with long-term drug use.

TETRACYCLINE ANTIBIOTICS
Tetracyclines form insoluble complexes with Mg, thereby reducing absorption of both — separate doses by at least 2 hours.

ANTIARRHYTHMIC DRUGS
Additive effect theoretically possible because high-dose oral Mg exerts antiarrhythmic activity according to one clinical study — observe patients taking this combination.
**POTASSIUM-SPARING DIURETICS**
May increase the effects of supplemental Mg — observe patients taking this combination.

**CONTRAINdications AND PRECAUTIONS**
- Magnesium supplementation is contraindicated in renal failure and heart block (unless a pacemaker is present).
- Hypermagnesaemia can develop in patients with renal failure and receiving Mg-containing antacids or laxatives and with accidental Epsom salt ingestion.
- Overuse of magnesium hydroxide or magnesium sulfate may cause deficiencies of other minerals or lead to toxicity.

**PREGNANCY USE**
Pregnant women and nursing mothers are advised to consume sufficient Mg (see Australian RDI in Dosage Range).

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**
- Magnesium is an essential mineral in human nutrition with a wide range of biological functions.
- Low Mg states are associated with several serious diseases such as congestive heart failure, ischaemic heart disease, cardiac arrhythmias, hypertension, mitral valve prolapse, metabolic syndrome, stroke, diabetes mellitus, hyperlipidaemia, pre-eclampsia and eclampsia.
- Although supplementation is traditionally used to correct or avoid deficiency states, research has also shown a role in the management of numerous disease states, e.g. cardiovascular disease, premenstrual syndrome, dysmenorrhoea, migraine prevention, diabetes, kidney stone prevention, osteoporosis prevention, dyspepsia and constipation. Preliminary research also suggests a possible benefit in asthma, women with detrusor muscle instability (incontinence) and pregnancy-induced leg cramps.
- Oral Mg supplements are also used in a variety of different conditions, most notably, those involving muscle spasm or tension, pain and/or psychological and physical symptoms of stress and hyperexcitability.
- Numerous drug interactions exist, so care should be taken to ensure safe use.

**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**
What will this supplement do for me?
Magnesium is essential for health and wellbeing. Although used to prevent or treat deficiency states, it is also used to alleviate many conditions such as cardiovascular disease and PMS, and prevent migraine and muscular spasms.
When will it start to work?
This will depend on the indication it is being used to treat.

Are there any safety issues?
In high doses, supplements can cause diarrhoea. High-dose supplements should not be used by people with severe kidney disease or heart block.

REFERENCES
Meadowsweet

Historical note  Meadowsweet was one of the most sacred herbs used by ancient Celtic druid priests, hundreds of years ago (Blumenthal et al 2000). Modern-day aspirin owes its origins to the salicin content isolated from meadowsweet in the early 1800s. In fact, the name aspirin relates to this herb’s former genus name ‘Spiracea’.

COMMON NAME
Meadowsweet

OTHER NAMES
Bridewort, dolloff, dropwort, fleur d’ulmaire, gravel root, lady of the meadow, meadow-wort, queen of the meadow, spireae flos

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Filipendula ulmaria (family Rosaceae)

PLANT PART USED
Aerial parts

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Phenolic glycosides, essential oil, tannins, mucilage, flavonoids (up to 6% in fresh flowers) and ascorbic acid. The herb also contains various salicylate constituents including methyl salicylate, salicin and salicylic acid.

MAIN ACTIONS
GASTROPROTECTIVE EFFECTS
In vivo tests have identified protective effects against stomach ulcers induced by acetylsalicylic acid, but no protection was seen against ulcers produced under high acid environments or due to stimulation by histamine (Barnaulov & Denisenko 1980). Based on these observations, it appears that the effect may involve a PG-mediated mechanism.

ANTI-INFLAMMATORY AND ANALGESIC
The high salicylate content of the herb suggests it may have anti-inflammatory and analgesic activity. Clinical studies using another salicylate-containing herb, willowbark, has shown that doses of 120–240 mg salicin daily has analgesic, antinociceptive and anti-inflammatory activity (Marz & Kemper 2002). Whether the
salicin content found in meadowsweet is of sufficient quantity and bioavailability to produce the same effects is unknown.

**OTHER ACTIONS**
In vitro tests have identified antioxidant and anticoagulant activity (Calliste et al 2001, Liapina & Koval’chuk 1993). Bacteriostatic activity has also been reported in vitro against *Staphylococcus aureus*, *S. epidermidis*, *Escherichia coli*, *Proteus vulgaris* and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* (Rauha et al 2000).

**CLINICAL USE**
Meadowsweet has not been significantly investigated under clinical trial conditions, so evidence is largely derived from traditional, in vitro and animal studies.

**SUPPORTIVE THERAPY FOR COLDS**
Commission E approval for this condition is based on historical use in well-established systems of medicine, in vitro tests and animal studies (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**GASTROINTESTINAL CONDITIONS**
Meadowsweet is often used to treat gastrointestinal conditions associated with hyperacidity, such as gastritis, acidic dyspepsia and peptic ulceration. In vivo testing has found a decoction made from flowers of meadowsweet reduced experimentally induced ulcers caused by acetylsalicylic acid. Additionally, it promoted healing of chronic stomach ulcers induced by ethanol (Barnaulov & Denisenko 1980). Currently there is no evidence available to confirm an antacid activity.

**CONDITIONS ASSOCIATED WITH MILD TO MODERATE PAIN**
Based on its significant salicylate content, meadowsweet is also prescribed for conditions associated with mild to moderate pain. However, no clinical study is available to confirm efficacy. Positive clinical evidence does exist for the herb willowbark in these conditions, which similarly contains the important salicylate ingredient ‘salicin’ (see Willowbark monograph).

**OTHER USES**
Meadowsweet has traditionally been used as a treatment for diarrhoea based on the herb’s appreciable tannin content. It has also been used for conditions associated with mild to moderate pain (most likely due to the herb’s significant salicylate content), fever and inflammation.
DOSAGE RANGE
As no clinical trials are available to determine effective doses, the following doses are a general guideline.
- Fresh flowers: 2.5–3.5 g/day.
- Fresh herb: 4–5 g/day.
- Infusion: steep 2–3 g in 150 mL boiled water for 10 minutes and drink as hot as tolerable.
- Fluid extract (1:1) (g/mL): 2–3 mL/day.

TOXICITY
Not known

ADVERSE REACTIONS
Although salicylates are present, they appear to cause less gastrointestinal irritation than acetylsalicylic acid. In fact, a meadowsweet preparation protected against acetylsalicylic acid-induced stomach ulcers in vivo (Barnaulov & Denisenko 1980).

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
Controlled studies are not available, therefore interactions are based on evidence of activity and are largely theoretical and speculative.

WARFARIN
As increased bleeding may occur, observe patients taking warfarin concurrently. The herb has been shown to exert anticoagulant activity in vitro and in vivo, but the clinical significance of these results is unknown (Liapina & Koval’chuk 1993).

ASPIRIN AND SIMPLE ANALGESICS
Theoretically, meadowsweet may enhance anti-inflammatory and antiplatelet effects. Observe patients taking this combination — beneficial interaction possible.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Meadowsweet should not be taken by people with salicylate sensitivity. Suspend use of concentrated extracts 1 week before major surgery.

PREGNANCY USE
Not recommended.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Meadowsweet is traditionally used as a herbal antacid, analgesic and antipyretic, antidiarrhoeal and treatment for urinary tract infections.
- Commission E approves its use as supportive therapy for the common cold.
- It contains several different salicylates that are thought to be responsible for much of its clinical activity.
- Although it contains salicylates, the herb does not appear to cause significant gastrointestinal irritation and may in fact have anti-ulcer activity.
- People who are salicylate sensitive should not take this herbal medicine.
- In practice, it is often combined with herbs such as chamomile and marshmallow in the treatment of gastrointestinal complaints.

**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

**What will this herb do for me?**
Traditionally, the herb has been used to treat gastrointestinal complaints such as dyspepsia and diarrhoea, urinary tract infections and joint aches and pains. It is also used as supportive therapy for the common cold.

**When will it start to work?**
Symptomatic relief should be experienced within the first few doses.

**Are there any safety issues?**
People who are salicylate sensitive should not take meadowsweet.

**REFERENCES**
Barnaulov OD, Denisenko PP. Anti-ulcer action of a decoction of the flowers of the dropwort, Filipendula ulmaria (L.) Maxim. Farmakol Toksikol 43.6 (1980): 700-5.
Mullein

**Historical note** Over the centuries, mullein has been used in various ways. Taken internally, it has been used to treat respiratory conditions and tumours; applied topically, its use has been to relieve itch and dress wounds. It was also used to make candlewicks for casting out evil spirits. Due to its robust nature, mullein is now considered a serious weed pest of roadsides and industrial areas in countries such as the USA.

**OTHER NAMES**
Aaron’s rod, Adam’s flannel, blanket herb, bunny’s ears, candlewick plant, flannel-leaf, great mullein, Jacob’s staff

**BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY**
Verbascum densiflorum, Verbascum phlomides, Verbascum thapsus (family Scrophulariaceae)

**PLANT PARTS USED**
Flower — dried petals, leaves

**CHEMICAL COMPONENTS**
The flower contains water-soluble mucilage, polysaccharides, flavonoids (including apigenin, luteolin, kaempferol and rutin), caffeic acid derivatives, iridoid monoterpenes, triterpene saponins (verbascosaponin), sterols and invert sugar.

One of the most investigated constituents isolated from plants in the *Verbascum* species is verbascoside, an iridoid glucoside. Whether the pharmacological effects demonstrated for this single constituent can be extrapolated to explain those for mullein is uncertain, as the effects of any herb are due to a number of phyto-constituents and their interaction with each other and the body. As such, information about verbascoside is included here in order to provide a further insight into the herb, but it should be interpreted accordingly.

MAIN ACTIONS
Mullein has not been significantly investigated under clinical trial conditions, so evidence is derived from traditional, in vitro and animal studies.

DEMULCENT AND EMOLLIENT
Traditionally, these actions were thought to occur primarily within the respiratory system, especially the lungs. However, topical preparations of mullein also exert an emollient action on the skin (Blumenthal et al 2000). This is most likely due to the herb’s high mucilaginous content.

Clinical note — Natural mucilages found in herbs
Mucilages are large, highly branched polymeric structures made from many different sugar and uronic acid units. They are hydrophilic and are capable of trapping water, causing them to swell in size and develop a gel-like consistency. The gels tend to have soothing properties and can be broken down by bowel flora when taken internally (Mills & Bone 2000). They are known to have beneficial effects on burns, wounds and ulcers when applied externally, and on gastric inflammation and irritation and diarrhoea when taken internally.

ANTIMICROBIAL
Antibacterial action  In vitro studies have demonstrated antibacterial activity for mullein extracts (aqueous, ethanol and methanol) against Klebsiella pneumonia, Staphylococcus aureus, Staphylococcus epidermidis and Escherichia coli (Turker & Camper 2002). Of the three extracts tested, aqueous extract exhibited the strongest antibacterial action.

ANTITUMOUR
Some plants, such as mullein, were used in folk medicine as sources of antitumour remedies. An in vitro study has identified inhibitors of protein biosynthesis in Verbascum thapsiforme flowers. Researchers found that a saponin glycoside and its aglycon, isolated from the flowers, directly inactivates ribosomes (Galasinski et al 1996). The constituent, verbascoside, has been shown to inhibit telomerase activity in human gastric carcinoma cells in test tube studies, resulting in inhibition of tumour growth (Zhang et al 2002). Cytotoxic effects for verbascoside have also been
identified against rat hepatoma and sarcoma cells, and cytostatic activity on human epithelial carcinoma cells (Saracoglu et al 1995).

OTHER ACTIONS
The verbascoside constituent demonstrates antioxidant activity in vitro (Gao et al 1999). The saponins in mullein are thought to exert an expectorant activity; however, further investigation is required to confirm this.

CLINICAL USE
Mullein has not been subjected to significant clinical investigation; therefore, information is generally derived from traditional usage, phytochemical research or evidence of pharmacological activity. In practice, this herbal medicine is often combined with other herbs in order to strengthen clinical effects.

CHRONIC OTITIS MEDIA
To date, no controlled studies are available to determine the clinical effectiveness of mullein as a stand-alone treatment. However, two double-blind studies that tested a herbal combination ear-drop product (containing mullein) in children have produced positive results. The first study involved 103 children aged 6–18 years and found that a naturopathic herbal ear drop known commercially as Otikon (consisting of Allium sativum, Verbascum thapsus, Calendula flowers and Hypericum perforatum in olive oil) was as effective as local anaesthetic ear drops (containing ametocaine and phenazone in glycerin) in the management of ear pain associated with acute otitis media. Treatment lasted for 3 days and produced a statistically significant improvement (Sarrell et al 2001). The second was a randomised, double-blind study involving 171 children aged 5–18 years who had otalgia and clinical findings associated with middle-ear infection (Sarrell et al 2003). Children receiving herbal ear drops containing Allium sativum, Verbascum thapsus, Calendula flowers, Hypericum perforatum, lavender, and vitamin E in olive oil achieved better pain relief than controls; however, the pain appeared to be self-limiting with significant improvements seen in all groups over 3 days. The dose used was 5 drops three times daily.

PRODUCTIVE AND DRY COUGH
Traditionally, mullein is combined with other demulcent or expectorant herbal medicines such as Glycyrrhiza glabra, Tussilago farfara and Althea officinalis in the treatment of productive cough.

Commission E approves the use of mullein flowers for catarrhs of the respiratory tract (Blumenthal et al 2000). This is largely based on traditional use extending back to ancient times, and phytochemical investigation from in vitro and in vivo studies.
**TOPICAL USE**
Mullein is used topically for wounds, burns, bruises, haemorrhoids, pruritus and to soften the skin. The high mucilage and tannin content of the herb provides a theoretical basis for its use in these situations as an antipruritic and astringent agent. To date, no controlled studies are available to determine its effectiveness.

**OTHER USES**
Mullein is included in herbal combination treatments for a variety of respiratory conditions such as bronchitis. Traditionally it is also used for diarrhoea, dysentery, haemorrhoids and laryngitis.

**DOSAGE RANGE**
- Fluid extract (1:1): 1.5–2 mL twice daily.
- Tincture (1:5): 7.5–10 mL twice daily.
- Dried leaf: 12–24 g/day.
- Decoction: 1.5–2 g of herb in 250 mL of cold water, brought to the boil for 10 minutes, taken twice daily.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
A case of contact dermatitis has been reported (Romaguera et al 1985).

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**
Controlled studies are not available.

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**
Insufficient reliable information is available.

**PREGNANCY USE**
Insufficient reliable information is available; however, Commission E states that no restrictions are known (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**
- Mullein flowers have been used since ancient times as an expectorant and anticatarrhal agent in conditions of productive cough and respiratory infections.
- It is most commonly used in combination with other demulcent and expectorant herbal medicines in the treatment of productive and dry cough.
- In vitro studies have identified antiviral and antibacterial activity.
- Mullein has not been subjected to significant clinical investigation; therefore, information is generally derived from traditional usage or evidence of pharmacological activity. As such, Commission E approves its use for catarrhs of the respiratory tract.
• Used in the form of a herbal combination ear drop, significant anaesthetic activity has been demonstrated.

**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

**What will this herb do for me?**

Mullein has been used since ancient times as a treatment for productive coughs and catarrhal states. In modern times, it is also used to treat chronic otitis media, and has antiviral action against influenza virus and HSV. Currently, more scientific investigation is required to confirm efficacy for these indications.

**When will it start to work?**

Ear drops containing mullein within a herbal combination exerted significant anaesthetic effects within 1–2 days.

**Are there any safety issues?**

Although safety has not been scientifically established, a long history of use suggests that it is a safe substance when used at the recommended doses.

**REFERENCES**


Myrrh

Historical note The resin that seeps out of the bark of the Commiphora plant has been considered an important medicinal product in the Middle East, China and India since biblical times. Because of its antimicrobial activity, myrrh has historically been used, alone and in combination with other herbs, to treat infections and inflammations of the oral cavity, in purification rituals, to embalm bodies, dress infected wounds and as a treatment for leprosy.

COMMON NAME
Myrrh

OTHER NAMES
Abyssinian myrrh, bal, bol, common myrrh, heerabol, hirabol myrrh, gum myrrh tree, gummi myrrh, Somali myrrh, Yemen myrrh

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Commiphora molmol (family Burseraceae)

PLANT PARTS USED
Gum resin, stem, leaves

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Myrrh contains three main components: gum resin 30–60%; alcohol-soluble resins 20–40%; volatile oils (2–10%).

Guggul is the oleo-gum-resin exudate from Commiphora mukul, which is also used therapeutically and has been scientifically investigated. Resins are sticky, water-insoluble substances that are secreted where a plant is damaged by incision or natural causes. The viscous substance hardens shortly after secretion, but may be returned to a liquid state with heating. Resins tend to be soluble in alcohol. Guggulipid is extracted from guggul and contains plant sterols (guggulsterones E and Z) which are thought to be its main pharmacologically active constituents (Ulbricht et al 2005).

MAIN ACTIONS
ANTISEPTIC
Antifungal and antibacterial activity has been observed in vitro against standard pathogenic strains of Escherichia coli, Staphylococcus aureus, Pseudomonas aeruginosa and Candida albicans (Dolara et al 2000). The oleo-gum-resin of C. mukul

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
was shown to be comparable to kanamycin against both Gram (+) and Gram (−) bacteria in vitro (Saeed & Sabir 2004).

**LIPID-LOWERING EFFECTS**

Several mechanisms of action are considered responsible for this effect. The guggulsterones act as antagonists of the bile-acid receptor and of the farsenoid X receptor, which are involved in bile acid regulation and cholesterol metabolism. Crude guggul contains ion-exchange resins that may remove bile from the intrahepatic circulation (Urizar et al 2002, Wu et al 2002).

According to one review, eleven clinical studies have generally demonstrated that guggulipid from *C. mukul* significantly reduces triglyceride and total cholesterol levels; however, results from a recent double-blind randomised study were negative (Ulbricht et al 2005).

**ANTI-INFLAMMATORY**

Myrrhanol A, a triterpene isolated from *C. mukul* gum resin, produces potent anti-inflammatory activity, as observed in an animal model of inflammation. In this study, anti-inflammatory activity was more marked than that of hydrocortisone (Kimura et al 2001). An animal model of RA confirmed significant anti-inflammatory effects with oral administration, also resulting in decreased joint swelling (Sharma & Sharma 1977). A small, uncontrolled trial of *C. mukul* for patients with osteoarthritis (*n* = 30) has shown treatment with 500 mg (3.5% guggulsterones) of the herb, three times daily for 2 months resulted in reduced joint inflammation, swelling and pain (Singh et al 2003). Although this suggests the effects may be clinically significant, further investigation is required.

**LOCAL ANAESTHETIC**

Several compounds found within myrrh exert local anaesthetic activity, chiefly by blocking the inward sodium current across membranes (Dolara et al 2000).

**OTHER ACTIONS**

**ANTISPASMODIC**

One major component, T-cadinol, and several minor components possess smooth muscle-relaxing properties according to *ex vivo* tests (Andersson et al 1997, Claeson et al 1991).

**INCREASES GLUCOSE TOLERANCE**

An extract of myrrh effectively increased glucose tolerance in both normal and diabetic rats (Al Awadi & Gumaa 1987).
LOCAL ASTRINGENT AND ENHANCED WOUND HEALING
Myrrh has astringent activity, promotes tissue granulation and enhances wound healing (Blumenthal et al 2000).

CLINICAL USE
TOPICAL TREATMENT OF ORAL OR PHARYNGEAL INFLAMMATION
Often used as a component of gargles, mouthwashes or paints for these indications, there are few controlled clinical trials or in vitro studies on the effects of myrrh on cells derived from the human oral cavity. A 2003 in vitro study investigating the effects of myrrh oil on a number of key cells implicated in gingivitis found that low concentrations of myrrh oil reduced gingival fibroblast production of proinflammatory cytokines and, therefore, the participation of these cells in gingival inflammation associated with gingivitis and periodontitis (Tipton 2003). This is thought to be, at least in part, due to inhibition of PGE\(_2\) (Tipton et al 2005).

Commission E approved myrrh for these indications (Blumenthal et al 2000).

EXTERNAL TREATMENT OF MINOR INFLAMMATORY CONDITIONS AND WOUNDS
Myrrh is incorporated into salves and topical preparations for the treatment of bed sores, minor wounds and haemorrhoids. Although no clinical trials are available, the antimicrobial, anti-inflammatory, astringent and local anaesthetic activities of myrrh provide a theoretical basis for efficacy.

HYPERLIPIDAEMIA, HYPERCHOLESTEROLAEMIA, HYPERTRIGLYCERIDAEMIA
Szapary et al (2005) conducted a double-blind, placebo-controlled, randomised trial with 103 subjects with LDL-cholesterol levels of 3.37–5.19 mmol/L. A standardised dose of 1000 mg of guggulipid (containing 2.5% guggulsterones) was given to one treatment group, while a higher standardised dose of 2000 mg was given to the other, three times daily for 8 weeks. Results showed a decrease of LDL-cholesterol in the placebo group of 5%, an increase of 4% in the 1000 mg group and an increase of 5% in the 2000 mg group. Overall this constituted a 9% and 10% increase in LDL-cholesterol with guggulipid treatment. In comparison, several randomised clinical trials and in vivo tests using various extracts of guggul have reported significant lowering of total cholesterol, triglycerides and LDL-cholesterol levels and increases in HDL-cholesterol (Gopal et al 1986, Malhotra et al 1977, Nityanand et al 1989, Singh et al 1990). In two reports, the duration of the lipid-lowering effect continued for 6–20 weeks after discontinuation of therapy (Gopal et al 1986, Nityanand et al 1989). One clinical study showed the lipid-lowering effects of a preparation of guggul fraction A (1.5 g/day) was similar to clofibrate (2 g/day) (Malhotra et al 1977).
A larger study of 235 volunteers conducted under double-blind randomised conditions showed that patients with hypercholesterolaemia responded better to guggulipid (1.5 g/day) than to clofibrate (1.5 g/day). However, those with hypertriglyceridaemia responded better to clofibrate (Nityanand et al 1989). Many of these trials have been criticised for being small and methodologically flawed or poorly reported (Ulbricht et al 2005). Again, more large-scale clinical trials need to be done to assess the efficacy of guggulipid in hypercholesterolaemia.

OTHER USES
TRADITIONAL INDICATIONS
Myrrh has been used in TCM, Tibetan medicine, Ayurvedic medicine, Middle Eastern medicine and in Europe; therefore, it has numerous traditional indications. Myrrh has been used to treat infections, respiratory conditions, mouth ulcers, gingivitis, pharyngitis, respiratory catarrh, dysmenorrhoea, amenorrhoea, menopausal symptoms, wounds and haemorrhoids. It has also been used to treat arthritis and as an embalming agent.

PARASITIC DISEASES
Schistosomiasis Schistosomiasis is an important trematode infection affecting over 200 million people in the tropics and subtropics (Kumar & Clark 2002). After malaria, it is the next most important parasitic disease with chronic infection causing significant morbidity. Currently, the drug praziquantel is often recommended, but it does not affect the immature stage and may not abort an early infection. Additionally, a drug-resistant strain has developed (Beers & Berkow 2003). Due to these factors, there is great interest in discovering alternative treatments.

One clinical study involving 204 patients with schistosomiasis produced impressive results with a 3 day oral dose regimen producing a cure rate of 92% (Sheir et al 2001). Re-treatment of non-responders increased the overall cure rate to 98%. A field study produced similar results with 97.4% of subjects infected with the Schistosoma haematobium strain and 96.2% infected with the S. mansoni strain successfully clearing the parasite after ingesting 1200 mg of Commiphora molmol daily for 6 days (bo-Madyan et al 2004a). However, two randomised trials, controlled with the drug praziquantel, have both shown little effectiveness of myrrh against the parasite (Barakat et al 2005, Botros et al 2005).

Fascioliasis Human fascioliasis occurs in Europe, Africa, China and South America and is infection with Fasciola hepatica, which is acquired by eating contaminated watercress. The flukes mature in the bile ducts and cause biliary tract obstruction and liver damage (Beers & Berkow 2003).
A small study of seven infected patients found that treatment with myrrh over 6 consecutive days produced alleviation of all symptoms and signs, and a dramatic drop in egg count, with eggs no longer detected 3 weeks after treatment (Massoud et al 2001a). Furthermore, high eosinophil counts, elevated liver enzymes and Fasciola antibody titres returned to normal. A field study showed that myrrh (1200 mg daily for 6 days) cleared the parasite in 94.1% of infected people at the 3-month follow-up (bo-Madyan et al 2004b).

Mosquitocidal  The oil and oleo-resin from the plant extract of *C. molmol* exhibits larvicidal activity against *Culex pipiens* larvae (Massoud et al 2001b).

### Historical note — Myrrh and mummification

Chemical treatments were an essential part of the mummification process in ancient Egypt. Several different plant products were used in the process, one of which was oil of myrrh. Interestingly, modern-day research has discovered that the oil has molluscicidal properties against several Egyptian snail species, suggesting it may have been a wise choice for protecting mummified remains against destruction (Allam et al 2001).

### ACNE

Three months’ treatment with guggulipid (equivalent to 25 mg guggulsterone) was found to be as effective as tetracycline in the treatment of nodulocystic acne in a randomised clinical study of 20 patients (Thappa & Dogra 1994).

### DOSAGE RANGE

**INTERNAL PREPARATIONS — COMMIPHORA MOLMOL**
- Fluid extract (1:1) (g/mL): 2 mL/day.
- Tincture (1:5): 0.5–2 mL three times daily.

**INTERNAL PREPARATIONS — GUGGULIPID**
- Acne: a dose equivalent to 25 mg guggulsterone taken once to twice daily.
- Hyperlipidaemia — 500–1000 mg of standardised guggulipid administered two to three times daily.
  *Guggulipid preparations are often standardised to 2.5–5% of guggulsterones.

**EXTERNAL PREPARATIONS**
- Tincture (1:5) (g/mL) in 90% ethanol can be used in different concentrations to produce different therapeutic products.
- Mouthwash or gargle: 30–60 drops tincture in a glass of warm water.
• Paint: the undiluted tincture can be applied directly to gums or mucous membranes of the mouth two to three times a day.

**TOXICITY**
A dose of 10 mg/kg/day was given to subjects in one study with no serious adverse effects (Sheir et al 2001).

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
Restlessness, mild abdominal discomfort and gastrointestinal symptoms, such as diarrhoea and nausea, have been reported, mainly with orally administered extracts. Allergic dermatitis has also been reported for topical usage. The standardised guggulsterone (guggulipid) preparations tend to be far better tolerated.

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**
Interactions are theoretical and based on in vitro and in vivo data; therefore, clinical significance is unclear and remains to be confirmed.

**DIABETIC MEDICATION**
In vivo studies suggest myrrh may have hypoglycaemic effects and therefore would have additive effects with diabetic medications. Monitor for changes in serum glucose in patients taking these medications.

**LIPID-LOWERING MEDICATION**
Guggul may have cholesterol-lowering activity and therefore have additive effects with other lipid-lowering medications — observe patients taking this combination and monitor drug requirements. Beneficial interaction possible.

**ANTICOAGULANT AND ANTIPLATELET MEDICATION**
Guggul inhibited platelet aggregation in vitro and in a clinical study, therefore concurrent use may theoretically increase the risk of bruising and bleeding (Bordia & Chuttani 1979). It is uncertain what implications this observation has for *C. molmol* use. Observe patients taking these combinations.

**DILTIAZEM**
Reduced efficacy possible. A clinical study confirmed guggulipid reduces bioavailability of this medicine (Dalvi et al 1994). It is uncertain what implications this observation has for *C. molmol* use. Observe patients taking this combination.

**PROPRANOLOL**
Reduced efficacy possible. A clinical study confirmed guggulipid reduces bioavailability of this medicine (Dalvi et al 1994). It is uncertain what implications this observation has for *C. molmol* use. Observe patients taking this combination.
CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Do not use in cases of known allergy. Suspend use of guggul preparations 1 week before major surgery.

PREGNANCY USE
Contraindicated in pregnancy.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Myrrh has been used since ancient times in a variety of forms as an antiseptic, anti-inflammatory and analgesic medicine.
- It has been used as a topical preparation to reduce inflammation and enhance wound healing — in vivo evidence suggests the anti-inflammatory activity of one of the main constituents is stronger than hydrocortisone and local anaesthetic activity is likely.
- Preliminary evidence suggests that it may be a useful treatment in gingivitis and periodontal disease.
- The preparation known as guggulipid, which comes from Commiphora species, may have lipid-lowering effects according to clinical studies; however, evidence is contradictory and further research is required to confirm this.
- Myrrh is not to be used in pregnancy and may interact with a number of medications when used orally.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this herb do for me?
Traditionally, the herb has been used as a mouthwash or topical paint to relieve symptoms of mouth ulcers, sore throats and gum disease. It has also been used as a topical application for inflamed skin conditions and wounds. Scientific research confirms antiseptic, anti-inflammatory and local anaesthetic effects and significant antiparasitic effects. The preparation known as guggulipid, which comes from Commiphora species, may lower total cholesterol levels.

When will it start to work?
A mouthwash or paint should provide rapid symptom relief.
- Antiparasitic activity has been reported within 3 days’ use in some parasitic infestations.
- The lipid-lowering effects of guggulipid have been reported within 12 weeks.

Are there any safety issues?
The herb should not be taken during pregnancy and may interact with some medications.
REFERENCES


Kumar P, Clark M. Clinical Medicine, 5th edn. WB Saunders, 2002.


New Zealand green-lipped mussel

Historical note The Mytilidae are a family of bivalve molluscs that first appeared approximately 400 million years ago (Scotti et al 2001). In New Zealand, they include the green-lipped mussel, which is also known as Perna canaliculus and has the Maori name kuku. Also known as Perna viridis, the green-lipped mussel has been used to treat arthritis by the Maoris for many years.

BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS
There is insufficient reliable information available.

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Green-lipped mussel contains minerals, mucopolysaccharides and numerous other constituents; however, the protein and lipid content is considered the most important for pharmacological activity. Virtually all of the protein content is comprised of pernin, a self-aggregating glycoprotein rich in histidine and aspartic acid (Scotti et al 2001).

A lipid-rich extract, prepared by supercritical fluid (CO₂) extraction of freeze-dried stabilised NZ green-lipped mussel, is commercially available as Lyprinol. The main lipid classes in this preparation are sterol esters, triglycerides, free fatty acids (mainly EPA and DHA), sterols and phospholipids (Sinclair et al 2000).

MAIN ACTIONS
Most investigation has been conducted with one of two commercial preparations: Seatone or Lyprinol.

ANTI-INFLAMMATORY
Significant anti-inflammatory activity has been observed in both humans and animals with NZ green-lipped mussel (Halpern 2000, Miller & Ormrod 1980, Miller et al 1993). The mechanism of action is not well understood, but results from test tube and animal studies suggest inhibition of leukotriene B4 synthesis and PGE₂ production by activated macrophages and prostaglandin inhibitor actions (Miller & Wu 1984, Miller et al 1993).

OTHER ACTIONS
Not known
CLINICAL USE
Few primary sources are available, so secondary sources have been used where necessary in order to provide a more complete description of the evidence available.

RHEUMATOID ARTHRITIS AND OSTEOARTHRITIS
Arthritis is a significant problem in both humans and animals. In dogs, the most common form of joint disease is OA, which has been successfully treated by green-lipped mussel powder in one double-blind randomised study (Bierer & Bui 2002). Active treatment was shown significantly to improve total arthritic score, and alleviate joint pain and swelling at the end of week six compared with controls. More specifically, 83% of dogs in the active treatment group experienced a 30% or greater reduction in total arthritic scores and of these, 18% showed a 70% or greater improvement. Only 7% of controls showed a 30% or greater improvement with no dogs showing a 50% or greater improvement. The doses of green-lipped mussel powder ranged from 450 mg to 1000 mg/day, depending on body weight.

Clinical testing in humans has produced inconsistent results. One randomised clinical trial using Seatone in 35 patients with RA found no significant difference in chemical or clinical parameters compared with placebo, after 6 months' use (Larkin et al 1985). However, another study found that both freeze-dried powder and lipid extract of green-lipped mussel were effective in reducing symptoms in OA and RA (Gibson & Gibson 1998). Unfortunately, further details of this second study are not available. A more recent study, also conducted over 6 months, but this time comparing Lyprinol with placebo, found an improvement in mainly subjective measurements for OA; however, the results overall were still inconclusive (Lau et al 2004).

ASTHMA
Forty-six asthmatics received either two capsules Lyprinol or placebo daily over 8 weeks under double-blind randomised test conditions (Emelyanov et al 2002). Active treatment resulted in a significant improvement on several parameters such as daytime wheeze, reduced concentration of exhaled H₂O₂ and an increase in morning PEF, compared with placebo.

OTHER USES
A preliminary animal study has shown Lyprinol to be of potential benefit in inflammatory bowel disease. As this study compared Lyprinol with both olive oil and fish oil, it suggests that another component, beyond the fatty acid content, is providing the therapeutic benefit (Tenikoff et al 2005).
**DOSAGE RANGE**
The studies of NZ green-lipped mussel have used 210 mg/day of the lipid extract or 1050–1150 mg/day of the freeze-dried powder.

**TOXICITY**
Insufficient reliable information is available.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
Gastrointestinal discomfort, gout, skin rashes and a case of granulomatous hepatitis has been reported (Ahern et al 1980, Brooks 1980).

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**
Insufficient reliable information is available.

**CONTRAINICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**
Contraindicated in people with allergies to shellfish — use with caution in people with hypertension, as the sodium content could theoretically raise blood pressure.

**PREGNANCY USE**
Insufficient reliable information is available to assess safety.

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**
- New Zealand green-lipped mussel has been used to treat arthritis by the Maoris for many years.
- Significant anti-inflammatory activity has been observed in both animals and humans.
- Although a controlled study in dogs showed significant symptom relief for OA, clinical studies have produced inconsistent results.
- One controlled study has identified possible benefits in asthma.
- Insufficient reliable information is available to determine the safety of green-lipped mussel.

**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**
**What will this supplement do for me?**
Some studies have showed that NZ green-lipped mussel exerts significant anti-inflammatory activity, but it is uncertain whether it will relieve symptoms of OA. One small study suggests that it may relieve some symptoms of asthma.

**When will it start to work?**
Effects in asthma were seen after 8 weeks’ use in one study.

**Are there any safety issues?**
It should not be taken by people with allergies to shellfish and should be used with caution by people with high blood pressure.

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
REFERENCES
Historical note  Noni has been used throughout South-East Asia and Polynesia for more than 2000 years as a food source, a medicine and a dye. Polynesian legends tell of heroes and heroines that used noni to survive from famine (Wang et al 2002).

COMMON NAME  Noni

OTHER NAMES  Ba Ji Tian, cheese fruit, Indian mulberry, mengkudu, nhau, nono, nonu

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY  Morinda citrifolia (family Rubiaceae)

PLANT PARTS USED  Roots, stems, bark, leaves, flowers, fruit and juice

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS  Noni contains terpenoids, alkaloids, anthraquinones (e.g. damnacanthal, morindone and rubiadi), the coumarin scopoletin, beta sitosterol, carotene, vitamin A, flavone glycosides, linoleic acid, the orange-red pigment alizarin, L-asperuloside, caproic acid, caprylic acid, ursolic acid, octoanoic acid, potassium, vitamin C, rutin (Hiramatsu et al 1993, Wang et al 2002), as well as a natural precursor for xeronine named proxeronine (Heinicke 1985, 2001).

MAIN ACTIONS  Noni is purported to have many different effects including analgesic, anti-inflammatory, antioxidant, anticancer, antimicrobial, immune enhancement and antihypertensive activity.

ANALGESIC  Noni root extract has exhibited opioid-like properties, with dose-dependent analgesic properties in mice that were reversible by naloxone, together with sedative effects at higher doses (Younos et al 1990). Analgesic activity has also been reported in controlled trials using rats and mice (Wang et al 2002).
**ANTIOXIDANT/ANTI-INFLAMMATORY**

Fruit, leaf and root extracts have all been shown to exhibit antioxidant activity (Kamiya et al 2004, Zin et al 2006) and NO scavenging activity in vitro (Jagetia & Baliga 2004), with some extracts showing comparable antioxidant activity to tocopherol (Zin et al 2002, 2006), grape seed powder and pycnogenol (Wang et al 2002). The neolignan, americanin A, has shown to be a particularly potent antioxidant in vitro (Su et al 2005).

Noni juice has been shown to reduce free radicals and liver damage in the livers of carbon-tetrachloride treated rats (Wang et al 2002). A 1-month double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled trial involving 68 smokers found that 50 mL of noni juice twice daily significantly reduced plasma superoxide radicals and lipid peroxides (Wang et al 2002). Noni juice inhibits the enzymatic activity of COX-1 (Li et al 2003) and COX-2 in vitro (Wang et al 2002). The clinical significance of these findings is yet to be determined.

**ANTITUMOUR**

An alcoholic precipitate of noni juice significantly prolonged the life of mice with implanted tumors (Furusawa et al 2003, Hirazumi et al 1994). It is suggested that this antitumour activity is due to immunostimulatory activity, because the noni precipitate was not directly cytotoxic to tumour cells, but did activate immune cells in vitro with its activity reduced by immunosuppressant drugs (Furusawa et al 2003, Hirazumi et al 1996). Noni juice has also been observed to increase the wet weight of thymus tissue in animals (Wang et al 2002) and protect against DMBA-induced DNA adduct formation in rats (Wang & Su 2001).

Noni also improved survival times in cancer-implanted mice when combined with suboptimal doses of standard chemotherapeutic agents (Hirazumi & Furusawa 1999) and this is supported by in vitro studies demonstrating synergistic effects with chemotherapeutic agents (Furusawa et al 2003, Wang et al 2002).

In vitro studies have also found that noni fruit has antiproliferative activity against SKBR3 human breast adenocarcinoma cells (Moongkarndi et al 2004), and that glycosides extracted from noni inhibit cell transformation (Liu et al 2001) and UVB-induced activator protein-1 activity (Sang et al 2001, 2003). The anthraquinone, damnacanthal, is reported to stimulate UV-induced apoptosis in vitro (Hiwasa et al 1999).

**ANTIMICROBIAL**

 Constituents of noni have been reported to have in vitro activity against *Escherichia coli* (Duncan et al 1998) and *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (Anon 2001), as well as the
parasite Ascaris lumbricoides (Raj 1977); however, the clinical significance of this is undetermined.

**ANTIHYPERTENSIVE**
The antihypertensive effects of the root extract of noni were first investigated in the 1950s (Ho 1955) and a hot-water extract of noni root is reported to have lowered the blood pressure of an anaesthetised dog (Youngken 1958).

**OTHER ACTIONS**
Noni has been shown to inhibit gastric emptying in male rats via a mechanism involving stimulation of cholecystokinin (CCK) secretion and CCK1 receptor activation (Pu et al 2004).

**CLINICAL USE**
Noni has been reported to have benefits for people suffering from arthritis, diabetes, high blood pressure, muscle aches and pains, menstrual difficulties, headache, heart disease, atherosclerosis, AIDS, cancers, gastric ulcers, poor digestion, depression, senility and drug addiction (Wang et al 2002). Noni has not been significantly investigated under clinical trial conditions, so evidence for its use is derived from traditional, in vitro and animal studies.

**ANTICANCER**
There are anecdotal reports of noni being used as an adjuvant immunotherapy for cancer (Wong 2004); however, further research is required to determine its role in clinical practice.

**HEARING AND MENTAL HEALTH**
A small placebo-controlled pilot study involving nine hearing impaired osteopenic or osteoporotic women found that ingestion of approximately 50 mL of noni juice over 3 months resulted in improved mental health and a mild protective effect on hearing. Further studies are required to determine the clinical significance of these findings (Langford et al 2004).

**OTHER USES**
Noni fruit has been used as a food source.

**DOSAGE RANGE**
- There is little human research upon which to make dosage recommendations.
- Juice 25 mL (1 oz.) twice daily (Wang et al 2002).
TOXICITY
No toxic effects have been found in rats (Mancebo et al. 2002) even when given doses up to 80 mL/kg (Wang et al. 2002). No allergic responses were reported from allergenicity studies using guinea pigs (Wang et al. 2002).

Three cases of hepatotoxicity related to noni juice consumption have been reported, with one case requiring urgent liver transplantation (Millonig et al. 2005, Stadlbauer et al. 2005) and the others recovering spontaneously after ceasing noni consumption (Millonig et al. 2005, Stadlbauer et al. 2005).

ADVERSE REACTIONS
There is insufficient reliable information available about the safety of noni.

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
There is one case report of noni juice consumption causing resistance to warfarin (Carr et al. 2004).

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Not known.

PREGNANCY USE
Likely to be safe when consumed in dietary amounts; however, safety is not known when used in larger quantities.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Noni has been traditionally used as food and medicine for a wide range of medical conditions.
- Noni has not been significantly investigated in clinical studies, so its use is based on traditional evidence and laboratory and animal studies.
- Although it is likely to be safe, it is prudent to avoid using noni in amounts greater than those ingested as a food during pregnancy and to monitor clotting profiles if noni is used with anticoagulant medications.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this herb do for me?
Noni has not been significantly investigated under clinical trial conditions, so its use is based on traditional evidence and laboratory and animal studies.

When will it start to work?
There is little published evidence to indicate its speed of action, which will depend on the clinical use.
Are there any safety issues?
Noni is generally considered safe and can be consumed as a food; however, the safety of large intakes is unknown.

REFERENCES

Noni 883
Oats

Historical note  Culpeper (1652) recommended that ‘a poultice made of meal of oats and some oil of bay helpeth the itch and the leprosy’. By the end of the 18th century oats was the main grain used by all levels of the population in Scotland. Students would arrive at university after the summer with a bag of oatmeal to live on during the term. The older Scottish universities still call the autumn mid-term break ‘Meal Monday’ because traditionally at that time the students would return home to replenish their supplies.

OTHER NAMES
Groats, green oats, green tops, haver, oat herb, oatmeal

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Avena sativa (family Poaceae (Graminaceae))

PLANT PARTS USED
The whole flowering plant, including the oat straw and the seed (also used for porridge). Oat bran is also used in some clinical trials.

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Beta-glucan (soluble fibre), triterpenoid saponins (including avenacosides A and B), phenolic compounds (avenanthramides A, B, C), alkaloids (including indole alkaloid, gramine, trigonelline, avinine), sterol (avenasterol), flavonoids, starch, phytates, protein (including gluten) and coumarins.

Nutrients such as silicic acid, calcium, potassium, phosphorus, iron (39 mg/kg), manganese (8.5 mg/kg), zinc (19.2 mg/kg) (Witchl & Bisset 1991), vitamins A, B-complex, C, E and K, and amino acids.

MAIN ACTIONS
LIPID LOWERING
Beta-glucans increase bile acid synthesis and thus decrease serum cholesterol (Andersson et al 2002). The fibre binds to cholesterol, preventing initial absorption and enterohepatic recirculation of cholesterol, and the two are excreted together.

Clinical trials have shown that oat bran contains soluble fibres, such as beta-glucan (e.g. 75 g extruded oat bran, equivalent to 11 g beta-glucan), which nearly
double the serum alpha-HC concentration within 8 hours, indicating increased bile acid synthesis and thus decreased serum cholesterol (Andersson et al 2002).

**ANTIATHEROGENIC EFFECTS**
In vitro studies suggest that the phenolic anti-oxidants known as avenanthramides, present in oats, may exert anti-inflammatory and anti-atherogenic effects (Liu et al 2004) by inhibiting smooth muscle cell proliferation and increasing nitric oxide production (Nie et al 2005).

**ANTIHYPERTENSIVE EFFECTS**
A reduction in blood pressure has been observed in clinical trials; however, the mechanism of action has not been fully elucidated (Pins et al 2002, Saltzman et al 2001).

**HYPOGLYCAEMIC (BLOOD SUGAR CONTROL)**
Oats have been shown in clinical trials to reduce the postprandial glycaemic response (Jenkins et al 2002, Pins et al 2002, Tapola et al 2005). Whilst the mechanism of action is unclear, the ability of beta-glucans to slow stomach emptying and increase the viscosity of food in the small intestine, resulting in delayed glucose absorption, is most likely a factor (Rakel 2003).

**ANTIPRURITIC EFFECTS**
External application of oat preparations has been shown to relieve itch (Matheson et al 2001).

**OTHER ACTIONS**
Due to its vitamin, mineral and amino acid content, oats are a nutritious food. Internally, oats also act as a bulk-forming laxative.

**CLINICAL USE**
Oats are not usually used as a stand-alone treatment and tend to form part of an overall management program.

**HYPERLIPIDAEMIA**
Several clinical trials have shown a marked reduction in total and LDL-cholesterol using oat-based cereals (Karmally et al 2005, Saltzman et al 2001) and also oat milk (6% reduction) (Onning et al 1999).

Oat bran has been shown to reduce LDL-cholesterol by 16% in 140 hypercholesterolaemic subjects consuming 56 g oat bran/day for 12 weeks (Davidson et al 1991). In overweight men consuming an oat-based cereal (14 g dietary fibre) for 12 weeks, LDL-cholesterol was most significantly affected, with a reduction in...
concentrations of small, dense LDL-cholesterol and LDL particle number. No adverse changes occurred in blood triacylglycerol or HDL-cholesterol concentration (Davy et al 2002). In another clinical trial, a group consuming wholegrain oat-based cereals experienced a 24.2 mg/dL reduction in total cholesterol levels and a 16.2 mg/dL decrease in LDL-cholesterol levels (Pins et al 2002). Oats do not generally affect total and LDL-cholesterol levels in people with normal serum cholesterol levels (Chen et al 2005). (See Clinical note: Major lipids affecting cardiovascular disease risk, in monograph on Vitamin B3.)

The lipid-lowering effects of a hypocaloric diet containing oats has been shown in a clinical trial to result in significantly greater decreases in total and LDL-cholesterol than a hypocaloric diet alone (Saltzman et al 2001). In addition, a RCT of moderately hypercholesterolaemic men consuming oat milk, deprived of insoluble fibre but still containing 0.5 g/100 g beta-glucan (750 mL/day) for 5 weeks, also showed a 6% reduction in total and LDL-cholesterol (Onning et al 1999).

**HYPERTENSION**

Results of RCT suggest that consumption of oat-based cereals may reduce SBP and reduce or eliminate requirements for antihypertensive medications in some people (Pins et al 2002, Saltzman et al 2001). The inclusion of wholegrain oat-based cereals was found in a RCT to decrease blood pressure in hypertensive patients and reduce requirements for antihypertensive medications. `Seventy-three percent of participants in the oats group versus 42% in the control group were able to stop or reduce their medication by half. Treatment group participants whose medication was not reduced had substantial decreases in blood pressure’ (Pins et al 2002). In another RCT, overweight subjects consuming a hypocaloric diet containing oats (45 g/4.2 MJ dietary energy/day) for 6 weeks experienced a reduction in SBP that was more significant than a hypocaloric diet alone (oats –6 ± 7 mmHg, control –1 ± 10 mmHg, P = 0.026). Lipid-lowering effects were also noted (Saltzman et al 2001).

**PRURITIS**

A clinical trial assessing the itch experienced by burns patients found that the group using a product with 5% colloidal oatmeal reported significantly less itch and requested significantly less antihistamine treatment than the control group (Matheson et al 2001). Commission E approves topical use in baths for inflammatory and seborrhoeic skin disease, especially with itch (Blumenthal et al 2000).
**BLOOD SUGAR REGULATION**
The ability of oats to delay glucose absorption, and therefore reduce the postprandial glycaemic response, provides a theoretical basis for their use as part of an overall treatment protocol in diabetes and hypoglycaemic conditions. A RCT of 12 patients with type 2 diabetes demonstrated that 30 g oat bran flour, high in beta-glucan, had a low glycaemic response and decreased the postprandial glycaemic response of an oral glucose load in a series of 2-hour meal glucose tolerance tests (Tapola et al 2005).

A RCT has shown that in a 50 g portion of carbohydrate, each gram of beta-glucan reduces the GI by 4 units, making it a useful adjunct to reduce the postprandial glycaemic response without affecting palatability (Jenkins et al 2002). Another trial showed a 15.03 mg/dL drop in plasma glucose levels versus controls when consuming wholegrain oat-based cereals (Pins et al 2002).

**OTHER USES**
Traditionally, oats are considered a nervous system nutritive and therefore used during times of convalescence. More specifically, the straw is prescribed for nervous debility and exhaustion, whereas the seed is considered more stimulating and said to gently improve energy and support an overly stressed nervous system (Chevallier 1996).

Preliminary trials have suggested an improvement in sexual interest and performance in people taking oats in combination with nettles. The effects were more consistent in males than females. Further trials are required to confirm the benefits of oats in isolation (Haroian et al 1987).

Interestingly, oats are also used as supportive therapy during nicotine (Beglinger et al 1977, Schmidt & Geckeler 1976) and morphine withdrawal; however, reliable clinical evidence is currently limited and does not fully support these recommendations.

Due to its high soluble fibre content, oats are also used as an aid to weight loss. Taken before meals, they increase satiety and therefore enable smaller food portions to satisfy hunger.

**DOSAGE RANGE**
- 1–4 g three times daily of oatmeal or straw (Mills 1991).
- Australian manufacturers recommend 20–40 mL/week 1:2 tincture.
- Topically for itch: 5% colloidal oatmeal in a suitable carrier (Matheson et al 2001) or 100 g cut herb in a bath (Blumenthal et al 2000).
The inclusion of wholegrain oat-based cereals or oat bran may be a useful adjunct to the treatment of hyperlipidaemia and hypertension and to delay glucose absorption. 75 g dried oatmeal (equivalent to ≈3 g soluble fibre daily) (Rakel 2003).

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
Excessive intake of fibre from oats or oat bran may cause flatulence and anal irritation.

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**
Controlled studies are largely unavailable; therefore, interactions are based on evidence of activity and are largely theoretical and speculative.

**ANTIHYPERTENSIVES**
Additive effects are theoretically possible (Pins et al 2002); beneficial interaction is possible — observe. Patients taking oats, oat milk or oat bran should be monitored, as medication requirements may alter.

**LIPID-LOWERING MEDICATIONS**
Additive effects are theoretically possible — beneficial interaction is possible. Patients taking oats, oat milk or oat bran should be monitored, as medication requirements may alter. Conversely, two case reports exist of a reduced effect of lovastatin in patients taking 50–100 g oat bran daily (Richter et al 1991). As this is likely to be due to the fibre inhibiting absorption of the drug doses should be separated by 2–3 hours.

**Clinical note — Do oats interfere with nutrient absorption?**
Although the high phytate content of oats would indicate a potential for reduced absorption of trace elements such as zinc, calcium and iron, one clinical trial investigating the effects of oat bran on zinc absorption found no evidence of reduced absorption (Sandstrom et al 2000).

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**

**COELIAC DISEASE**
Although oats are generally considered to be contraindicated in patients with coeliac disease, a moderate amount as part of an otherwise gluten-free diet may improve the nutritional value of the diet (Storsrud et al 2003a) and is generally well tolerated by the majority of adults (Lundin et al 2003) and children (Hogberg et al 2004) with coeliac disease. Both short- and longer-term studies have found no adverse immunological effects associated with the regular consumption of moderate...

Dietary oats should not be used in cases of intestinal obstruction (Skidmore-Roth 2001).

PREGNANCY USE
Oral use is considered to be safe in pregnancy and lactation (NMCD 2003).

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
• Oats are a rich source of nutrients, such as calcium, potassium, phosphorus, iron, manganese, zinc; vitamins A, B-complex, C, E and K, and amino acids. Dietary oats also contain a significant amount of soluble fibre.
• Regular intake of wholegrain oat-based cereals may have positive effects on cardiovascular disease risk factors such as hypertension, hyperlipidaemia and glucose regulation.
• Topical use of the cut herb in the bath or 5% colloidal oatmeal in a suitable carrier is used to relieve itch.
• Traditionally, oats are viewed as a nervous system nutritive and therefore used during times of convalescence.
• Patients with coeliac disease should be able to tolerate moderate amounts of oats in the diet.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this herb do for me?
Oats are a concentrated nutrient source and also contain soluble fibre. They not only provides a range of vitamins and minerals, but can reduce blood pressure, cholesterol and improve blood sugar regulation.

When will it start to work?
Scientific studies have shown that oat bran and oat-based cereals can reduce cholesterol levels and blood pressure within 5–6 weeks.

Are there any safety issues?
Dietary oats should be avoided in cases of intestinal obstruction.

REFERENCES
Olive

Historical note  The olive tree is among the oldest known cultivated trees in the world. Several biblical references to olive suggest its use dates back to ancient times and victors in the early Olympic Games were crowned with its leaves. Olives and its associated products have been used widely as folk medicines in countries such as Spain, Italy, France, Greece, Israel, Morocco, Tunisia, Turkey and the Mediterranean islands. Today, the olive plant is most well known for its fruit crop and oil. The Mediterranean region produces approximately 98% of the world’s total olive crop (≈11 million tons) (Delgado-Pertinez 2000), although the plant is also widespread on the Arabian peninsula, the Indian subcontinent and Asia. More recently, olive plantations have been developed in Australia and research is now being undertaken to identify the best species suited to the subtropical climate.

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Olea europaea L. (family Oleaceae)

PLANT PARTS USED
Fruit and leaf.

Olive oil is made from the fruit and widely used in cooking. This review will focus on olive oil and olive leaf extracts.

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Olive oil contains high levels of monounsaturated fatty acids (chiefly oleic acid) and is also a source of at least 30 phenolic compounds including oleuropein, hydroxytyrosol and tyrosol and also flavonoids, squalene, beta-carotene, and alpha-tocopherol (Stark & Madar 2002).

Olive leaf extract also contains a variety of phenolic compounds, most importantly oleuropein, hydroxytyrosol and tyrosol, and also rutin, luteolin, catechin and apigenin, and various nutrients such as selenium, chromium, iron, zinc, vitamin C, beta-carotene and a wide range of amino acids (Polzonetti et al 2004). Unlike the olive fruit, olive leaf does not contain significant amounts of monounsaturated fatty acids, oleic acid or squalene (Stark & Madar 2002).

It is important to note that not all olive products contain the same concentration of phenolic compounds. Olive leaf extract and extra virgin olive oil (acidity <1%) are
considered superior sources of phenolic compounds (Owen et al 2000), with extra virgin olive oil containing higher amounts than refined virgin olive oil (Visioli & Galli 2002). Of these, olive leaf extract is the most concentrated. According to one test, total phenol levels ranging from 6360 to 8190 mg/L were identified in olive leaf extract (samples from Olive Products Australia) compared to 200–800 mg/L for extra virgin olive oil (unpubl data, Department of Primary Industries Laboratory, Wagga Wagga, NSW, Australia).

MAIN ACTIONS
Most of the pharmacological effects for olive oil and olive leaf extract can be attributed to their main phenolic constituents, in particular oleuropein, hydroxytyrosol and tyrosol; however, several other biologically active constituents are also present.

ANTIOXIDANT
Numerous olive phenolics have strong free radical scavenging capacity and show a synergistic behaviour when combined, as occurs naturally in the fruit and leaf (Benavente-Garcia et al 2000). According to in vitro tests, the flavonoids, rutin, catechin and luteolin exert antioxidant effects almost 2.5-fold those of vitamin C and E and are comparable to that of lycopene (Benavente-Garcia et al 2000).

ANTI-INFLAMMATORY AND ANTITHROMBOTIC
Several constituents within olive oil and/or leaf have demonstrated anti-inflammatory properties, chiefly oleuropein, hydroxytyrosol, oleic acid, luteolin and apigenin (de la Puerta et al 2000, Makin et al 2003).

Oleuropein and hydroxytyrosol are found in both the oil and leaf and inhibit leukotriene B4 generation, which is involved in a wide range of pro-inflammatory pathways (Petroni et al 1997). These polyphenols are able to inhibit platelet aggregation and lipoxygenases and eicosanoid production (Andrikopoulos et al 2002, Manna et al 2004).

Olive oil also contains large amounts of oleic acid, which is an omega-9 monounsaturated fatty acid that is converted to eicosatrienoic acid, which is then converted to leukotriene A3, which is a potent inhibitor of leukotriene B4 synthesis.

ANTI-ATHEROGENIC
The oleic acid component modifies the vascular response to pro-atherogenic chemicals (such as high levels of cholesterol and the advanced glycation end-products of diabetes) and inhibits endothelial adhesion molecule expression, according to test tube studies (Massaro & Caterina 2002).
**ANTIMICROBIAL**

**ANTIHYPERTENSIVE**
Studies have identified the Mediterranean diet, as an entity, and the olive oil in particular, as significantly reducing arterial blood pressure in humans (Ferrara et al 2000, Fito et al 2005, Perona et al 2004, Psaltopoulou et al 2004). The hypotensive effect of olive leaves has been well documented in vivo (Cherif et al 1996, Fehri et al 1994, Khayyal et al 2002, Somova et al 2003). One of the more recent studies tested a specially prepared olive leaf extract (EFLA 943) and confirmed dose-dependent hypotensive activity when given orally to animals (Khayyal et al 2002).

**HYPOGLYCAEMIC ACTIVITY**
Olive leaf extract has demonstrated hypoglycaemic activity in animal models and one of the compounds responsible for this activity is oleuropeoside, which produced antidiabetic activity in animals with alloxan-induced diabetes (Gonzalez et al 1992, Manna et al 2004). The researchers have suggested potentiation of glucose-induced insulin release and increased peripheral uptake of glucose as the most likely mechanisms of action.

**OTHER ACTIONS**
Traditional texts describe the leaves as astringent and antiseptic and useful when boiled in water to create a decoction for the treatment of obstinate fevers. The oil is described as a nourishing demulcent with laxative properties. Oleuropein is the phenolic constituent responsible for the typically bitter and pungent aroma associated with olives, olive oil and leaf (Manna et al 2004).

**ANTIMUTAGENIC**
Luteolin possesses antimutagenic and antitumorigenic properties (Kim et al 2003).

**HYPO-URICAEMIA**
In vivo tests report that olive leaf extract has a hypo-uricaemic effect in treated animals (Serra-Majem L et al 2003).
CLINICAL USE

Olive oil has been studied as a stand-alone entity in some studies; however, it is generally studied as part of the Mediterranean diet where it is the principal source of fat and considered a key contributor to the diet's many healthy benefits (Serra-Majem et al 2003). As a reflection of this, research into the Mediterranean diet is included in this monograph; however, the contribution of olive oil to these results remains unclear. In contrast, olive leaf extract has not been significantly tested under clinically controlled conditions, so evidence is mainly derived from traditional, in vitro and animal studies.

Clinical note — What is the Mediterranean diet?
The Mediterranean diet studied in most trials is based on the traditional diet of Greece. It is low in saturated fat and high in monounsaturated fat (oleic acid:omega-9 = 18:1), mainly from olive oil; high in complex carbohydrates, from legumes; and high in fibre, mostly from vegetables and fruits. Total fat may be high (>40% of total energy intake), but the monounsaturated to saturated fat ratio is around 2. The high content of vegetables, fresh fruits, cereals, and olive oil guarantees a high intake of beta-carotene, vitamins B6, B12, C, and E, polyphenols, and various minerals.

CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE

Prevention It has been speculated that consumption of olive oil reduces the incidence of coronary heart disease, based on the observation that countries where the Mediterranean diet is consumed, chiefly Greece, Italy and Spain, have a lower incidence of coronary heart disease.

In 1999, the Lyon Diet Heart Study was published and is widely claimed to be a landmark study investigating whether a Mediterranean type diet could reduce the rate of myocardial infarction (de Lorgeril et al 1999). It was a randomised secondary prevention trial that used a Mediterranean-type diet (with butter and cream replaced by a margarine based on rapeseed/canola oil and rich in alpha-linolenic acid). At a mean follow-up of 27 months, there was a 73% decrease in combined end-points of cardiac death and non-fatal myocardial infarction, with a 70% decrease in cardiac death in the group eating the Mediterranean-style diet. Benefits were maintained for nearly 4 years after follow-up, which translates to 12 lives saved per 300 people in 27 months. Interestingly, these impressive results were obtained without lowering blood pressure, LDL-cholesterol and triglycerides, or raising HDL-cholesterol.

Several years later, data from the CARDIO2000 multicentre study was used to investigate the association between acute coronary syndromes (ACS) and a
Mediterranean-style diet. Once again it was shown that the Mediterranean diet reduced the risk of developing ACS regardless of the presence of other risk factors such as hyperlipidaemia, type 2 diabetes or a sedentary lifestyle (Panagiotakos et al 2002). In this instance, primary prevention benefits were observed.

Positive results were also seen with the Indo-Mediterranean diet, which has increased intakes of whole grains, walnuts and almonds, fruit and vegetables (Singh et al 2002). The randomised trial involving 1000 patients with angina pectoris, myocardial infarction or other risk factors for coronary artery disease compared the Indo-Mediterranean diet to the Step I National Cholesterol Education Program diet and found total cardiac end-points were significantly fewer with the Indo-Mediterranean diet, as were sudden cardiac deaths and non-fatal myocardial infarctions.

Overall, these results suggest the Mediterranean diet has both primary and secondary prevention effects.

**HYPERTENSION**

Both olive oil and olive leaf extract have demonstrated blood pressure lowering ability in small intervention trials, and long-term dietary intake of olive oil is associated with reduced incidence of hypertension.

**Olive oil** One randomised, double-blind, crossover study compared the effects of monounsaturated (MUFA) (extra-virgin olive oil) and polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFA) (sunflower oil) in 23 hypertensive patients over 6 months (Ferrara et al 2000). MUFA intake resulted in significantly reduced resting blood pressure compared to the PUFA diet, but most impressively, daily drug dosage was significantly reduced with the MUFA diet (~48% vs ~4%, \( P < 0.005 \)).

A randomised, placebo-controlled, crossover study of 40 subjects with stable coronary heart disease compared the antioxidant and antihypertensive effects of two different olive oil supplements with different phenolic compound levels (refined: 14.7 mg/kg vs virgin: 161.0 mg/kg) (Fito et al 2005). Treatment with virgin olive oil rich in phenolic compounds resulted in significantly lower plasma oxidised LDL and lipid peroxide levels, together with higher activities of glutathione peroxidase. Additionally, SBP was significantly decreased in the hypertensive patients; however, no changes in DBP were observed.

Another randomised study involving elderly patients found that increased dietary intake of virgin olive oil significantly reduced total and LDL-cholesterol in normotensive but not hypertensive volunteers, whereas virgin olive oil consumption normalised SBP in this group (136 ± 10 mmHg) compared to treatment with sunflower oil (150 ± 8 mmHg) (Perona et al 2004).
In 2004, results from two large observational studies were published that further suggested olive oil intake has significant effects on blood pressure. One study involved assessing data from the Greek arm of the European Prospective Investigation into Cancer and Nutrition study, which included 20,343 participants (Psaltopoulou et al 2004). Intakes of olive oil, vegetables, and fruit were significantly inversely associated with both SBP and DBP, whereas cereals, meat and meat products, and ethanol intake were positively associated with arterial blood pressure. Mutual adjustment between olive oil and vegetables indicated that olive oil has the dominant beneficial effect on arterial blood pressure in this population.

Another study investigated whether dietary olive oil consumption over time affected the incidence of hypertension (Alonso & Martinez-Gonzalez 2004). Data from 6863 participants with at least 2 years follow-up was used and the study found that olive oil consumption was associated with a reduced risk of hypertension among men; no association was observed among women. The researchers suggested this might be attributed to the overall lower incidence of hypertension among females and the resulting lower statistical power.  

**Olive leaf** A study of olive leaf extract involving 30 subjects with essential hypertension was conducted by the Service de Cardiologie, Hospital Militaire in Tunis (Cherif et al 1996). Olive leaf extract (1600 mg daily) was administered for 3 months, after 15 days treatment with a placebo. Active treatment resulted in a statistically significant decrease in blood pressure ($P < 0.001$) in all patients and was considered well tolerated. Other interesting observations were that patients previously treated with beta-blockers noted a disappearance of gastric symptoms during treatment with olive leaf extract.  

**INFLAMMATORY CONDITIONS**

Olive leaf extract is used to promote symptomatic relief in various inflammatory conditions, such as osteoarthritis and asthma, and as a gargle in tonsillitis and pharyngitis. The anti-inflammatory effects demonstrated by several major components in olive leaf provide a theoretical basis for its use; however, clinical trials are not yet available to determine whether effects are significant and efficacy remains speculative.

Alternately, olive oil supplementation has been tested in some clinical studies.  

**Rheumatoid arthritis** In some studies of RA in which fish oil supplements have been investigated, olive oil has been used as a placebo because it was generally regarded as containing neutral fatty acids; however, in some instances olive oil produced significant improvements in disease activity, prompting further research.
Supplementation for 12 weeks with olive oil resulted in a significant decrease in pain intensity, duration of morning stiffness, time taken to walk 18 metres, and fibrinogen levels and improved trends in erythrocyte sedimentation rate, C3, and right grip strength according to an early study (Darlington & Ramsey 1987). A later double-blind study found subjective measures of mean duration of morning stiffness and analogue pain score improved to the same extent as treatment with fish oil supplements after 12 weeks (Cleland et al 1988).

A 24-week double-blind, randomised study of two different dosages of fish oil (3 g/day and 6 g/day) and a single dosage of olive oil (6.8 g/day of oleic acid) was conducted with 49 subjects with active RA (Kremer et al 1990). The fish oil treatment produced better results overall; however, improvement in patients’ global assessment was only observed with olive oil supplementation.

Another double-blind study of 90 patients comparing treatment with fish oils (2.6 g/day), or fish oils and olive oil (1.3 g/day and 3 g/day, respectively) or olive oil (6 g/day) over 12 months found a significant decrease in Ritchie’s articular index of pain and the number of painful joints after 12 months of olive oil and also after the combined use of fish oil (1.3 g/day) and olive oil (3 g/day) (Geusens et al 1994).

More recently, a study of 43 patients investigated the effects of placebo (soy oil), fish oil (3 g/day), and a combination of fish oil (3 g/day) and 9.6 mL/day of olive oil as an adjunct to standard treatment (Berbert et al 2005). The groups receiving fish oil and the fish oil/olive oil combination experienced a statistically significant improvement in joint pain intensity, hand grip strength, duration of morning stiffness, and onset of fatigue compared with placebo. Parameters that responded after 24 weeks were Ritchie’s articular index for pain joints, the ability to bend down to pick up clothing from the floor, and getting in and out of a car. The group using the fish oil/olive oil combination also experienced improved ability to turn taps on and off and decreased rheumatoid factor after 24 weeks. When groups were compared, the combination treatment was found to be superior, showing a significant improvement in patient global assessment after 12 weeks.

**CANCER PREVENTION**

It has been speculated that consumption of olive oil, chiefly as an ingredient of the Mediterranean diet, may reduce the incidence of some cancers, based on the observation that the incidence of cancer overall in Mediterranean countries is lower than in Scandinavian countries, the United Kingdom, and the United States (Trichopoulou et al 2000, Visoli et al 2004).

One review calculated that up to 25% of the incidence of colorectal cancer, approximately 15% of the incidence of breast cancer, and approximately 10% of the
incidence of prostate, pancreas, and endometrial cancers could be prevented if the populations of highly developed Western countries shifted to the traditional healthy Mediterranean diet (Trichopoulou et al 2000). Although these figures are only estimates, data from observational studies are now considered strong enough to suggest that the traditional Mediterranean diet should be actively promoted in order to reduce the incidence of cancer (Visoli et al 2004).

**DIABETES**

There is anecdotal evidence that people with type 2 diabetes are using olive leaf extract as an adjunct to dietary modification. One report from Morocco found that 80% of people surveyed used herbal medicines for diabetes, hypertension and cardiac disease, and olive leaf was one of the most popular treatments (Eddouks et al 2002). Once again, hypoglycaemic activity reported in animal models provides a theoretical basis for its use; however, clinical testing is not yet available to determine whether effects are significant and efficacy remains speculative.

**LONGEVITY**

In 2002, Panagiotakos et al found that adherence to a Mediterranean diet and healthy lifestyle (non-smoking, physically active, moderate drinking) is associated with a greater than 50% lower rate of all-cause and cause-specific mortality, such as from coronary heart disease, cardiovascular diseases, and cancer (Knoop et al 2004). The cohort study involved 1507 apparently healthy men and 832 women, aged 70–90 years in 11 European countries and was conducted from 1988 until 2000.

A year later, Trichopoulou et al (2003) also reported a positive association between longevity and the Mediterranean diet, with their study showing that the benefits are significant in people aged 55 years and older.

More recently, a 2004 review of five cohort studies further confirmed these findings and concluded that there is now sufficient evidence to show that diet does indeed influence longevity and that the optimal diet for the prevention of both coronary heart disease and cancer is likely to extensively overlap with the traditional Mediterranean diet (Trichopoulou & Critselis 2004). Although it is uncertain which specific components in the Mediterranean diet are most important for its protective health benefits, olive oil, fish, plant foods and moderate wine consumption are likely candidates.

**ANTIBACTERIAL, ANTIFUNGAL AND ANTIVIRAL**

Based on evidence of its broad-spectrum antimicrobial activity, olive leaf extract is used for the treatment of common bacterial infections such as bronchitis and tonsillitis, common fungal infections such as vaginal candidiasis, *Tinea pedis* and
Tinea capitis, and viral infections such as herpes simplex. Currently, controlled studies are not available to determine whether treatment is effective.

OTHER USES
Olive oil is an emollient and used externally to relieve pruritis and inflamed surfaces and is used to soften and remove dry scales in eczema and psoriasis. Taken internally, it is used as a laxative to soften impacted faeces. As a folk remedy, the plant is used as a diuretic, hypotensive, emollient, febrifuge and tonic, for urinary and bladder infections and for headaches (Somova et al 2003). Olive leaf extract is also used as a general tonic to improve energy and provide a sense of wellbeing.

DOSAGE RANGE
GENERAL RECOMMENDATIONS
- Olive leaf extract (according to manufacturer’s recommendations): 5 mL three times daily diluted with water or juice if necessary (Olive Leaf Australia)
- Olive oil: should replace dietary intake of saturated fats and be consumed as part of a Mediterranean style diet

ACCORDING TO CLINICAL STUDIES
- Hypertension: 1600 mg/day of olive leaf extract or 50 mL/day of virgin olive oil.
- Rheumatoid arthritis: 6–10 g/day of olive oil long term

ADVERSE REACTIONS
Allergenic pollen is produced by the Oleaceae family, including the olive tree, which causes seasonal respiratory allergies in Mediterranean countries.

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
Controlled studies are not available, so interactions are theoretical and based on evidence of pharmacological activity with uncertain clinical significance.

HYPOGLYCAEMIC AGENTS
Theoretically, an additive hypoglycaemic effect is possible but is speculative — possible beneficial interaction under professional supervision.

HYPERTENSIVE AGENTS
Theoretically, an additive hypotensive effect is possible but is speculative — possible beneficial interaction under professional supervision.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
People with known allergies to the Oleaceae family of plants should avoid this herb.
PREGNANCY USE
Olive oil is likely to be safe when consumed in dietary amounts; however, the safety of olive leaf extract is not known.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Consumption of olive oil has beneficial effects on arterial blood pressure and reduces the risk of cardiovascular disease when ingested as part of the Mediterranean diet.
- Several studies have demonstrated that supplemental olive oil produces significant improvements in disease activity in rheumatoid arthritis.
- When used as part of the Mediterranean diet, olive oil may reduce the incidence of some cancers and increases longevity.
- Olive leaf extract contains a greater concentration of biologically active phenolic compounds than olive oil; however, it has not been significantly studied in clinical trials.
- Preliminary studies with olive leaf extract show it has significant anti-inflammatory and antioxidant activity and possibly hypoglycemic effects.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this herb do for me?
Long-term consumption of olive oil as part of a Mediterranean diet is likely to reduce the incidence of heart disease and promote longevity. It may also reduce the risk of cancer; however, this is less well established. Used as a stand-alone supplement, it may reduce blood pressure and improve symptoms in rheumatoid arthritis. Olive leaf extract may also be useful in hypertension and inflammatory conditions; however, little research has been conducted to confirm effectiveness.

When will it start to work?
In rheumatoid arthritis, benefits start to appear after 12 weeks, with further improvement noticed after 24 weeks. In regards to other health benefits, olive oil should be used long term.

Are there any safety issues?
Dietary amounts of olive oil are well tolerated and considered safe in healthy individuals; however, the safety of olive leaf extract has not been well studied and it should be avoided in pregnancy until safety is established.

REFERENCES


Olive Leaf Australia. Available at: www.envirolea.com (accessed 16-2-06).
Passionflower

Historical note  Legend has it that this herb received its name because the corona resembles the crown of thorns worn by Christ during the crucifixion. A popular sedative medicine in the early 20th century, it was listed in the United States National Formulary until 1936.

COMMON NAME
Passionflower

OTHER NAMES
Apricot vine, granadilla, Jamaican honeysuckle, Maypop passion flower, passion vine, water lemon

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
*Passiflora incarnata* (family *Passifloraceae*)

PLANT PARTS USED
Aerial parts, particularly leaves

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Flavonoids (including apigenin, quercetin and kaempferol), maltol, coumarin derivatives, indole alkaloids (mainly harman, harmaline, harmine), phytosterols (stigmasterol), sugars and small amounts of essential oil.

HARMAN
Numerous in vitro and in vivo trials have been conducted on the constituent known as harman. Some of these studies have suggested:
- mild monoamine oxidase A inhibition (Adell et al 1996)
- inhibition of HIV replication (Ishida et al 2001)
- vasorelaxant activity (Shi et al 2000)
- effects on GABA release (Dolzenko & Komissarov 1984).

Harman is not considered to be one of the main active constituents in the herb and is not present in biologically active concentrations in the dosage range used for passionflower. As such, results obtained using isolated harman in vitro and in vivo cannot necessarily be extrapolated to the use of passionflower in humans.
Harman has also been identified in beer, and to a lesser extent in wine, both of which contain levels far in excess of those found in passionflower at therapeutic doses.

**MAIN ACTIONS**

**ANXIOLYTIC AND SEDATIVE ACTIVITY**
Several in vivo studies have demonstrated the anxiolytic effects of *Passiflora* extract (Della et al 1981, Dhawan et al 2001, Soulimani et al 1997). Behavioural tests in mice have also demonstrated that high doses have a sedative effect (Soulimani et al 1997).

The mechanism of action is currently unclear, as some research suggests stimulation of GABA release or an interaction with GABA receptors, and other research observes no interaction with GABA-benzodiazepine receptors (Zanolil et al 2000). One in vitro study also showed inhibition of GABA-A binding with *Passiflora* extract (Simmen et al 1999).

**CLINICAL USE**

**ANXIETY AND NERVOUS RESTLESSNESS**
*Passiflora* extract is a popular herb for nervousness and is most often prescribed in combination with other herbs such as valerian. A 2001 double-blind, randomised controlled study involving 36 outpatients diagnosed with GAD found that *Passiflora* extract was as effective as oxazepam 30 mg/day over a 4-week period and better tolerated (Akhondzadeh et al 2001a).

Commission E approved for this indication (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**INSOMNIA**
Currently, in vivo evidence supports the sedative activity of *Passiflora* when used in high doses; however, controlled studies are not available to confirm the clinical efficacy (Soulimani et al 1997).

**OTHER USES**

**TRADITIONAL USES**
Traditionally, passionflower has been used to treat neuralgia, generalised seizures, hysteria and insomnia. It has also been used to treat diarrhoea, dysentery and dysmenorrhoea by acting on the nervous system.

**APHRODISIAC**
Recent tests in mice have identified significant aphrodisiac properties associated with high doses of *Passiflora* extract (Dhawan et al 2003a). A benzoflavone moiety may be
chiefly responsible, as tests with this isolated compound were found to increase libido and fertility of males rats after 30 days’ treatment (Dhawan et al 2002a).

**ANTITUSSIVE AND ANTIASTHMATIC ACTIVITY**

*Passiflora incarnata* was as effective as codeine phosphate in suppressing a sulfur-dioxide-induced cough in mice (Dhawan & Sharma 2002). Passionflower (100 mg/kg) was also able to prevent dyspnoea-related convulsions in guinea pigs with acetylcholine-induced bronchospasm (Dhawan et al 2003b).

**CANNABIS, ALCOHOL AND OPIATE WITHDRAWAL**

A randomised double-blind study involving 65 subjects with opiate addiction compared the effects of clonidine and placebo with clonidine and *Passiflora* extract over a 14-day period. The combination treatment of clonidine and *Passiflora* extract showed significant superiority for alleviating the psychological symptoms associated with withdrawal; however, no differences in physical symptoms were seen (Akhondzadeh et al 2001b).

Although no clinical studies are available for *Passiflora* extract, preliminary results from animal studies testing the benzoflavone moiety isolated from *Passiflora* has found it to be a useful adjunct during cannabis and alcohol withdrawal, reducing dependence and attenuating withdrawal symptoms (Dhawan et al 2002b, c).

**DOSAGE RANGE**

- Dried herb: 2 g three to four times daily.
- Infusion of dried herb: 0.25–2 g three to four times daily.
- Fluid extract (1:1) (g/mL): 2 mL three to four times daily in 150 mL of water.
- Tincture (1:5) (g/mL): 10 mL three to four times daily.

**TOXICITY**

Not known.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**

Drowsiness is theoretically possible with excessive doses.

One human study found that *Passiflora* extract has a significantly lower incidence of impairment of job performance compared with oxazepam (Akhondzadeh et al 2001b). One case reports a 34-year-old woman who developed severe nausea, vomiting, drowsiness and episodes of non-sustained ventricular tachycardia following administration of passionflower at therapeutic doses (Fisher et al 2000).

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**

Controlled studies are not available; therefore, interactions are based on evidence of pharmacological activity and are theoretical.
**BENZODIAZEPINES**
Additive effects are theoretically possible at high doses. Use with caution and monitor drug dosage — possible beneficial interaction under medical supervision.

**BARBITURATES**
Additive CNS sedation is theoretically possible. Use with caution and monitor drug dosage — possible beneficial interaction under medical supervision.

**ANTICOAGULANTS**
Increased risk of bleeding is theoretically possible owing to the coumarin content of the herb — observe patients taking this combination.

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**
None known

**PREGNANCY USE**
Passionflower has demonstrated the ability to increase uterine contractions in an isolated rat uterus model when compared to control tissue (Sadraei et al 2003). It is not advisable to use passionflower in pregnancy.

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**
- Both human and animal studies confirm passionflower has significant anxiolytic activity.
- One randomised study found that it has significantly less negative effects on performance than 30 mg oxazepam, yet is as effective for GAD.
- Maximal effects may require several days of regular intake.
- It is not known whether physical tolerance develops.
- One study has shown it improves psychological symptoms during opiate withdrawal when used together with clonidine.
- In practice, it is often prescribed with other herbs for stronger anxiolytic effect.

**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**
What will this herb do for me?
Passionflower has an anxiolytic effect that can relieve restlessness and nervous tension. In higher doses, it is used for insomnia.

When will it start to work?
When being used for anxiety, it may take 3–4 weeks before significant effects are seen.

Are there any safety issues?
Overall, passionflower does not appear to impair job performance. However, it may theoretically interact with other sedative medicines when used in high doses. Other
interactions are theoretically possible, so use should be monitored by a healthcare professional.

REFERENCES


Historical note  The written record of mint dates back to an ancient Greek myth in which the Greek god Pluto was said to have affections for a beautiful nymph named Minthe. His jealous wife Persephone cast a spell on the nymph, transforming her into a plant. When Pluto could not reverse the spell, he gave her a sweet scent that would emanate throughout the garden (Murray & Pizzorno 1999). Peppermint has been used medicinally for generations as a digestive aid and carminative. More recently, enteric-coated peppermint oil capsules have been widely prescribed for the relief of IBS.

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Mentha x piperita (family [Labiatae] Lamiaceae)

PLANT PARTS USED
Leaf or stem — essential oil is distilled from the aerial parts.

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Peppermint leaves contain about 2.5% essential oil, 19% total polyphenolic compounds, 12% total flavonoid compounds (erocitrin, luteolin-7-O-rutinoside, hesperidoside) and 7% total hydroxycinnamic compounds (including rosmarinic acid) (Duband et al 1992). The biochemistry, organisation, and regulation of essential oil metabolism in the epidermal oil glands of peppermint have been defined and research is underway to create ‘super’ transgenic peppermint plants with improved oil composition and yield (Wildung & Croteau 2005).

Essential oil  Over 100 constituents have been identified in peppermint oil. The principal constituents are menthol (35–55%), menthones (10–35%), isomenthone, menthyl acetate, menthofuran and cineole. To comply with the European Pharmacopoeia, the oil must not contain more than 4% pulegone and not more than 1% carvone.

MAIN ACTIONS
The actions of the leaf as an infusion or liquid extract are largely dependent on the essential oil content. Other compounds, such as the flavonoids, also contribute to the overall activity, especially the antioxidant and anti-allergic activities. Peppermint oil is relatively rapidly absorbed after oral administration and eliminated mainly via the bile (Grigoleit & Grigoleit 2005a).
**ANTISPASMODIC**

Peppermint oil, ethanol extracts and flavonoids isolated from the leaf have all been shown to have antispasmodic (spasmolytic) effects in vitro (ESCOP 1997) with the effect mediated via smooth muscle calcium channels (Hills & Aaronson 1991).

In healthy volunteers, intragastric administration of a dose equivalent to 180 mg peppermint oil reduced intraoesophageal pressure within 1–7 minutes of infusion (Kingham 1995), while in nine human studies involving 269 subjects peppermint oil produced substantial spasmylostatic effects on the smooth muscles of the gastrointestinal tract when used topically (intraluminal) or orally in doses of 0.1–0.24 mL (Grigoleit & Grigoleit 2005b). Enteroplant, an enteric-coated capsule containing 90 mg peppermint and 50 mg caraway oil, has also been shown to act locally in the stomach and duodenum to produce smooth muscle relaxation (Micklefield et al 2003). Peppermint oil has also been shown to have similar anti-spasmodic activity on the colon to the Chinese herbal medicine Shakuyaku-kanzo-to (TJ-68), as observed by direct observation during colonoscopy (Ai et al 2005).

**CARMINATIVE**

Peppermint has a carminative activity, which refers to its ability to relax the gastrointestinal sphincters. Carminatives are thought to alleviate symptoms of bloating and gas by facilitating eructation and passage of flatus. The classic carminatives are essential oils, such as spearmint and peppermint. Studies from the 1950s on the effect of carminatives on the gut suggest that they work by inducing relaxation of the lower oesophageal sphincter (Massey 2001). A later study has shown that peppermint oil canalised into the gall bladder and duodenal areas was able to counteract morphine hydrochloride-induced constriction of the sphincter of Oddi (Giachetti et al 1988).

**CHOLERETIC**

Choleretic activity has been demonstrated for peppermint tea, flavonoids and the essential oil in dogs and rats (ESCOP 1997). Hydrophilic compounds may contribute to the gastrointestinal effects, with aqueous extracts from peppermint leaves having anti-ulcerogenic and choleretic effects (Grigoleit & Grigoleit 2005c, Van Rensen 2004). Peppermint oil has been shown to have a relaxing effect on the gall bladder and small intestine, producing complete inhibition of gall-bladder emptying and prolonged orocaecal transit time comparable to that produced by n-butylscopolamine (Goerg & Spilker 2003).
**ANTIMICROBIAL**

**Antibacterial** Peppermint oil has been shown to have significant antibacterial activity (Mimica-Dukic et al 2003), as has the juice of peppermint leaves (Saeed & Tariq 2005). Peppermint oil has been shown to inhibit *Helicobacter pylori*, *Staphylococcus aureus* (Imai et al 2001), *Escherichia coli* (Pattnaik et al 1995), *Salmonella enteritidis*, *Listeria monocytogenes* and multiresistant strains of *Shigella sonnei* and *Micrococcus flavus* (Mimica-Dukic et al 2003).

**Fungistatic, fungicidal** Peppermint is also fungistatic and fungicidal (Anon 1998, Pattnaik et al 1996) with its activity against *Trichophyton tonsurans* and *Candida albicans* being considerably greater than the commercial fungicide bifonazole (Mimica-Dukic et al 2003). Peppermint oil and its main constituent menthol has also been shown to have significant antibacterial, antifungal and antiplasmid activity and to potentiate the antibiotic effect of oxytetracycline (Schelz et al 2006). Peppermint oil has further been shown to have significant antimycobacterial activity in vitro and inhalation of peppermint oil has been successfully used as a supplement to combined multidrug therapy for pulmonary tuberculosis (Shkurupi et al 2002).

**Antiviral** Peppermint oil also has virucidal activity against HSV -1 and -2, including activity against an acyclovir-resistant strain of HSV-1 with a 50% inhibitory concentration determined at 0.002% and 0.0008% for HSV-1 and HSV-2, respectively. The oil was also found to affect the virus before, but not after, penetration into the host cell (Schuhmacher et al 2003).

**ANTI-ALLERGIC**

A 50% hydro-ethanolic extract of peppermint leaves inhibited chemically induced histamine release from rat peritoneal mast cells in vitro. The peppermint extract was also shown to reduce nasal symptoms (sneezing and nasal rubbing) in rats with experimentally induced allergic rhinitis. Significant inhibition of sneezing and nasal rubbing was observed at oral doses of 300 and 1000 mg/kg, respectively (Inoue et al 2001).

The flavonoid luteolin-7-O-rutinoside isolated from the aerial parts of peppermint has been shown to inhibit histamine release from rat peritoneal mast cells in a dose-dependent manner (100–300 mg/kg) and to reduce antigen-induced allergic nasal symptoms (Inoue et al 2002), although it would be difficult to achieve such doses of luteolin with a commercially available peppermint extract or oil. An extract of the whole herb, however, may be beneficial in alleviating nasal symptoms associated with allergic rhinitis in association with other medicines.
**ANTIOXIDANT**
The polyphenolic compounds in peppermint, such as luteolin-7-O-rutinoside, eriocitrin and rosmarinic acid, have been shown to have antioxidant and free radical scavenging activity (Sroka et al 2005). Peppermint oil, and its constituents menthone and isomenthone, exert antioxidant activity (Mimica-Dukic et al 2003). It has been suggested that this antioxidant effect confers chemopreventive and antigenotoxic effects (Samarth et al 2006).

**STIMULANT**
Intraperitoneal and intravenous injections of peppermint oil and its constituents, 1,8-cineol, menthone, isomenthone, menthol, pulegone, menthyl acetate and caryophyllene, dramatically increased ambulatory activity in mice. It is thought that the effect is mediated via a dopaminergic effect of menthol. This may explain the traditional use of peppermint for mental fatigue (Umezu & Morita 2003, Umezu et al 2001). Inhalation of peppermint oil has also been shown to have a stimulant effect on mice in a forced swimming test, with the effect remaining when over-agitation was induced by intraperitoneal caffeine (Lim et al 2005).

**COOLANT**
Peppermint oil interacts with smooth muscle calcium channels (Hills & Aaronson 1991). In the peripheral nerves this effect may be responsible for the characteristic cooling sensation experienced on oral ingestion of mint.

**ANALGESIC**
Peppermint and caraway oil have been shown to synergistically modulate post-inflammatory visceral hyperalgesia in a rat model (Adam et al 2006). A significant analgesic effect, with a reduction in sensitivity to headache, was observed in a double-blind, placebo-controlled, randomised, 7-day cross-over study that used a combination of peppermint oil and ethanol applied externally in 32 healthy males undergoing artificial pain stimulation (Gobel et al 1994).

**OTHER ACTIONS**
A spray-dried peppermint infusion has been found to be mildly diuretic and produce weak sedative action in several tests when administered orally to mice (Della et al 1990). Peppermint tea has been found to significantly increase FSH and LH levels and reduce total testosterone levels in rats (Akdogan et al 2004).

**CLINICAL USE**
In practice, peppermint and its derivatives are used in many forms and administered by various routes. This review will focus only on those methods that are commonly
used by the public and preparations that are available OTC, such as oral dose forms, topical applications and inhalations.

IRRITABLE BOWEL SYNDROME
There have been several studies examining the effects of peppermint oil in the treatment of IBS (Dew et al 1984, Rees et al 1979). Newer studies have tended to use pH-triggered, enteric-coated peppermint oil capsules that prevent dissolution of the capsules until they have reached the small intestine, and release into the colon is extended over 10–12 hours (Grigoleit & Grigoleit 2005c). Enteric coating allows administration of a higher dose than would otherwise be possible to tolerate and, importantly, avoids the risk of excessively relaxing the lower oesophageal sphincter and causing reflux.

A recent review identified 15 clinical trials investigating peppermint oil in IBS. Of these, 8 of 12 placebo-controlled studies show statistically significant effects in favour of peppermint oil, with average response for ‘overall success’ being 58% for peppermint oil and 29% for placebo. Three studies that compared peppermint oil to smooth muscle relaxants showed no difference between these treatments (Grigoleit & Grigoleit 2005a). A critical review and meta-analysis of peppermint oil for IBS performed in 1998, which included five double-blind trials, concluded that peppermint oil is efficacious for symptom relief in IBS (Pittler & Ernst 1998).

Since then, one randomised, double-blind controlled trial of 42 children with IBS, treatment with enteric-coated peppermint oil capsules reduced the severity of the pain in 75% of the children (Kline et al 2001), and another recent randomised, double-blind study involving 48 patients with IBS without bacterial overgrowth found that treatment with two enteric-coated capsules of peppermint oil twice daily (Mintoil) for 4 weeks produced statistically significant improvement in diarrhoea, abdominal bloating, constipation, lower abdomen pain, pain on defecation, feeling of incomplete evacuation and difficulty on evacuation (Cappello et al 2006).

Another randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled clinical study of 110 outpatients with IBS found that one enteric-coated peppermint oil capsule (Colpermin) taken 3–4 times daily, 15–30 minutes before meals, significantly reduced symptoms compared to placebo. Of the 41 patients taking the capsule, 79% experienced alleviation of the severity of abdominal pain (29 were pain free), 83% had less abdominal distension, 83% had reduced stool frequency, 73% had less borborygmi, and 79% had less flatulence, with treatment producing minimal side-effects and no significant changes in liver function tests (Liu et al 1997).

Bacterial overgrowth of the small intestine is associated with a number of functional somatic disorders, including IBS, fibromyalgia and CFS. There have been
two reports of successful treatment of IBS due to intestinal overgrowth with enteric-coated peppermint oil capsules. This clinical effect may in part be associated with the antimicrobial activities of peppermint oil (Gaby 2003, Logan & Beaulne 2002).

Clinical note — Pathophysiology of IBS
The pathophysiology of IBS is poorly understood, but it is believed to occur when the intestinal muscles are contracting faster or more slowly than normal. Colonic contractions cause abdominal pain, cramping, wind and diarrhoea or constipation. It has been proposed that IBS may result from dysregulation of gastrointestinal motor and enhanced sensory functions, as modulated by the CNS. However, clinical and laboratory investigations have failed to uncover any histological, microbiological or biochemical abnormalities in IBS patients. Patients with IBS demonstrate increased motility and abnormal contractions of the intestinal muscles when faced with an emotionally or physically stressful situation (Greenberg et al 2002). It is likely that IBS is also associated with dietary habits, poor upper digestion and intestinal dysbiosis (bacterial overgrowth of the bowels).

Common symptoms of IBS are (Greenberg et al 2002):
• cramping pain in the lower abdomen
• bloating and excess gas (wind)
• changes in bowel habits
• diarrhoea or constipation, either one dominant or both alternating
• immediate need for a bowel movement on awakening or during or after meals
• relief of pain after bowel movements
• feeling of incomplete emptying after bowel movements
• mucus in the stool.

DYSPEPSIA
In a systematic review of herbal medicines for functional dyspepsia, Coon and Ernst (2002) found 17 randomised clinical trials, 9 of which involved peppermint and caraway combination preparations with 60–95% of patients reporting improvements in symptoms.
An enteric-coated capsule (Enteroplant) containing 90 mg peppermint oil (WS-1340) and 50 mg caraway oil (WS-1520) has been shown in a double-blind, placebo-controlled multicentre trial with 45 patients to significantly improve symptoms of non-ulcer dyspepsia. Nearly 90% of patients experienced a reduction in pain, and after 4 weeks nearly 95% had improved their Clinical Global Impression scores. Before the start of treatment all patients in the test preparation group reported moderate to
severe pain, while by the end of the study 63.2% of these patients were free of pain. The peppermint and caraway oil combination was well tolerated (May et al 1996).

Since then there have been three further randomised, placebo-controlled trials of this particular peppermint–caraway oil combination. In one trial with 223 patients with non-ulcer dyspepsia and IBS, the peppermint oil combination was found to significantly reduce pain compared to placebo ($P < 0.001$) (Freise & Kohler 1999). In a further study of 96 outpatients, the same peppermint formulation was found to significantly improve symptoms of functional dyspepsia. After 4 weeks, the average intensity of pain was reduced by 40% versus baseline in the active group and by 22% in the placebo group. The peppermint combination also reduced pressure, heaviness and fullness (May et al 2000). A subgroup analysis from this study revealed that *Helicobacter pylori*-positive patients had a substantially better treatment response, although those who were negative to *H. pylori* also showed significant improvements compared to those receiving placebo (May et al 2003). In a further double-blind, placebo-controlled trial the same oil combination was found to significantly improve disease-specific QOL, as measured by the validated Nepean Dyspepsia Index (NDI) compared to placebo (Holtmann et al 2003).

The same peppermint and caraway oil combination has been compared with cisapride (Prepulsid), which increases the lower oesophageal sphincter pressure, thereby reducing the risk of reflux. Cisapride is also used to treat IBS dominated by constipation, but has been linked to serious cardiac arrhythmias and should be used with caution. In the 4-week study, the peppermint and caraway oil combination (Enteroplant, 2 capsules daily) was shown to be as effective as cisapride in reducing both the magnitude and frequency of pain. Physicians rated the two treatments comparable in regard to other dyspeptic symptoms, in addition to intestinal and extra-intestinal autonomic symptoms. Corresponding results were also found in *H. pylori*-positive patients and patients who initially presented with intense epigastric pain in the two treatment groups. Both medications were well-tolerated (Madisch et al 1999).

A combination herbal preparation (Iberogast) that includes peppermint leaf extract and eight other plant extracts (*Iberis amara, Chelidонii herba, Cardui mariae fructus, Melissaе folium, Carvi fructus, Liquiritiae radix, Angelicae radix, Matricariae flos*) has been demonstrated to significantly relieve dyspepsia in a number of RCTs, including a meta-analysis of three trials (Melzer et al 2004), with a fourth RCT showing similar effects to cisapride (Rosch et al 2002).
**DIFFUSE OESOPHAGEAL SPASM**

Diffuse oesophageal spasm (DES) is a relatively rare motor disorder. Associated manometric abnormalities may include hypertensive and repetitive contractions. The lower oesophageal sphincter (LES) may also be hypertensive. Although LES relaxation with deglutition is generally normal, disturbances in LES function are often seen. These abnormalities are, however, not required for the diagnosis (Massey 2001). In a study of eight DES patients with chest pain or dysphagia, peppermint oil had no effect on LES pressures or contractile pressures and durations in the oesophagus, yet completely eliminated simultaneous oesophageal contractions in all patients \((P < 0.01)\). The number of multiphasic, spontaneous and missed contractions also improved. Two of the eight patients had their chest pain resolved after taking the peppermint oil (Pimentel et al 2001).

**ANTISPASMODIC**

The results from a randomised double-blind, double-dummy, controlled trial suggest that the antispasmodic properties of peppermint oil can be utilised intraluminally during upper endoscopy with superior efficacy and fewer side-effects than hyoscine-N-butylbromide (buscopan) administered by intramuscular injection (Hiki et al 2003a, b). The use of peppermint oil solution was subsequently used to successfully extend an endoscope past an area of severe antral stenosis in a case that was unresponsive to buscopan. In a further study of 383 patients receiving double-contrast barium enemas, which compared peppermint oil in the barium, peppermint in the enema tube, buscopan and no treatment, found that peppermint oil in the barium or the enema tube could be safely and effectively used instead of buscopan and that the oil had a stronger antispasmodic effect in the caecum and the ascending colon than a buscopan injection (Asao et al 2003).

**HEADACHE**

A solution of 10% peppermint oil in ethanol has been shown in a randomised, placebo-controlled, double-blind crossover study to efficiently alleviate tension-type headache. The study analysed 164 headache attacks in 41 patients of both sexes ranging between 18 and 65 years of age, suffering from tension-type headache. The peppermint oil was spread largely across forehead and temples and repeated after 15 and 30 minutes. Using a headache diary, the headache parameters were assessed after 15, 30, 45 and 60 minutes. Compared with the application of a placebo, the peppermint oil significantly reduced the intensity of the headache after 15 minutes \((P < 0.01)\). The analgesic effect of the peppermint oil was comparable to 1000 mg paracetamol (acetaminophen). Simultaneous ingestion of 1000 mg of paracetamol...
and application of 10% peppermint oil in ethanol solution led to a slight additive effect (Gobel et al 1996).

**Postoperative nausea**  Inhalation of peppermint oil vapours has been shown in a study to reduce postoperative nausea in gynaecological patients in a placebo-controlled trial in which patients were free to inhale peppermint oil as frequently as desired (Tate 1997). A hot peppermint oil compress is used in China to prevent abdominal distension in postoperative gynaecological patients (Feng 1997). In another placebo-controlled trial, a reduction in postoperative nausea was seen equally with inhalation of isopropyl alcohol, peppermint oil or saline, with the authors attributing the effect to the controlled breathing used during inhalation (Anderson & Gross 2004).

**RESPIRATORY TRACT INFECTIONS**
Peppermint and menthol have an established tradition in the treatment of respiratory infections. Chest rubs containing menthol are frequently used to treat coughs and bronchitis. Inhalation of various antiseptic and anti-inflammatory essential oils is often used in the treatment of respiratory infections, including bronchitis (Shubina et al 1990). Peppermint oil has been found to have a pronounced antimycobacterial effect in vitro, and long-term use of peppermint oil in a humidifier has been used in the Ukraine as an adjunctive treatment to multidrug therapy for pulmonary tuberculosis (Shkurupi et al 2002).

**ENHANCE COGNITIVE PERFORMANCE**
A combination of peppermint oil, eucalyptus oil and ethanol was shown in a crossover double-blind study to increase cognitive performance, and promote relaxation in 32 healthy subjects (Gobel et al 1994). Peppermint odour has also been shown to reduce daytime sleepiness (Norrish & Dwyer 2005) and fatigue, and to improve mood (Goel & Lao 2006), as well as significantly improve performance in difficult tactile tasks (Ho & Spence 2005) and promote a general arousal of attention with improved typing speed and accuracy (Barker et al 2003).

**OTHER USES**
Peppermint or pure menthol is commonly used in heat rub ointments for arthritis, fibromyositis, tendonitis and other musculoskeletal conditions. Commission E approved peppermint oil externally for neuralgia and myalgia (Blumenthal et al 2000). An oral spray or gargle containing a range of essential oils including peppermint oil is reported to reduce snoring in one double blind study (Prichard 2004). A case report describes the treatment of post-herpetic neuralgia with the direct application of undiluted peppermint oil containing 10% menthol to the affected area. The pain
relief persisted for 4–6 hours after application of the oil. At a 2-month follow-up the patient had only minor side-effects and continued to use the medication (Davies et al 2002).

**TRADITIONAL USES**
Traditionally, peppermint was believed to increase libido, and used to stop hiccups, relieve pain in childbirth, reduce bleeding and treat menorrhagia (Fisher & Painter 1996). It was also used externally to repress lactation, to treat dermatological conditions, as a mouthwash for painful gums and mouth and applied to the temples to relieve headaches.

**DOSAGE RANGE**

**LEAF**
- Infusion: 3–6 g three times daily (Blumenthal et al 2000).
- Liquid extract (1:2): 1.5–4.5 mL/day.
  These dosages are for adults; adjust according to size for children.

**ESSENTIAL OIL**
- Digestive disorders: 0.2–0.4 mL three times daily in dilute preparations or in suspension (ESCOP 1997).
- IBS: 0.2–0.4 mL three times daily in enteric-coated capsules or tablets (Dew et al 1984, Rees et al 1979).
- Inhalation: 3–4 drops added to hot water.
- Lozenge: 2–10 mg.
- External use (for analgesic, anaesthetic or antipruritic activity): 0.1–1.0% m/m (ESCOP 1997).
- External use (counterirritant): 1.25–16% m/m (ESCOP 1997).

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
A single dose of 4000 mg/kg of a spray-dried infusion did not produce any macroscopic signs of toxicity in mice (Della et al 1990). Peppermint oil has been shown to be minimally toxic in acute oral studies. Short-term and subchronic oral studies reported brain lesions in rats that were given very large doses of peppermint oil containing pulegone, pulegone alone or large amounts (> 200 mg/kg/day) of menthone. Pulegone is also a recognised hepatotoxin and large doses of peppermint oil have been shown to be hepatotoxic in cultured human hepatoma cells (Vo et al 2003). Peppermint oil was negative in an Ames test and a mouse lymphoma mutagenesis assay, but gave equivocal results in a Chinese hamster fibroblast cell
chromosome aberration assay. There is a case report of acute lung injury following IV injection of peppermint oil (Behrends et al 2005).

Although sensitisation to peppermint oil and/or its constituents has been reported, a solution containing 8% peppermint oil was shown not to be a sensitisier (Nair 2001). Contact dermatitis to peppermint and menthol has been reported (Morton et al 1995) and there is a case report of chemical burn after peppermint oil ingestion (Tamir et al 2005); however, as long as the pulegone content is kept to a minimum, peppermint oil and peppermint extract are considered to have a very good safety profile.

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**

Controlled studies are not available; therefore, interactions are based on evidence of activity and are largely theoretical and speculative.

**FELODIPINE**

Peppermint oil has been shown to increase the oral bioavailability of felodipine in animal studies (Anon 2002) — use this combination with caution.

**SIMVASTATIN**

Peppermint oil has been shown to increase the oral bioavailability of simvastatin in animal studies (Anon 2002). Observe the patient and monitor drug requirements — possible beneficial interaction.

**CYCLOSPORIN**

Peppermint oil has been shown to increase the oral bioavailability of cyclosporin in animal studies (Anon 2002) — avoid concurrent use, unless under medical supervision.

**DRUGS METABOLISED BY CYP3A4 LIVER ENZYME**

Peppermint may increase the oral bioavailability of certain drugs by inhibition of CYP3A4-mediated drug metabolism, which has been demonstrated in vitro but not in test animals (Dresser et al 2002, Maliakal & Wanwimolruk 2001). Although these studies seem to suggest that peppermint may modulate drug metabolising enzymes, the clinical significance of this is unknown and requires further investigation. Caution is advised.

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**

Hypersensitivity to peppermint oil (Morton et al 1995).

Non-enteric-coated peppermint may be best avoided in patients with reflux oesophageal symptoms. Avoid chewing enteric-coated capsules as it may cause heartburn (Liu et al 1997). Avoid the use of peppermint oil on the face of infants and
small children. Capsules containing peppermint oil are contraindicated in biliary duct occlusion, gall bladder inflammation and severe liver damage (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**PREGNANCY USE**
Safe dosages in pregnant women have not been determined; however, external use is likely to be safe.

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**
- Peppermint oil and/or peppermint leaf extracts can be used for IBS, dyspepsia, flatulence, intestinal colic and biliary disorders. Note, however, that peppermint oil is contraindicated in inflammation of the gall bladder and severe liver disease.
- Although enteric-coated peppermint oil capsules may prevent side-effects such as reflux and allow higher doses to be used, traditional extracts of peppermint, including hydro-ethanolic extracts and infusions, may also be effective.
- Peppermint leaf extract combines well with chamomile, caraway, licorice, lemon balm, angelica, St Mary's thistle and the bitter candytuft (*Iberis amara*) in the treatment of functional dyspepsia (Madisch et al 2001).
- Peppermint oil can be used as an inhalation or chest rub for coughs, sinusitis and bronchitis. Commission E approved peppermint oil for internal use in the treatment of respiratory tract inflammation (Blumenthal et al 2000) and hot peppermint leaf infusion is used as a diaphoretic tea in the treatment of colds and influenza.
- Peppermint oil can be inhaled to reduce nausea and may enhance cognitive performance and tactile tasks.
- 10% peppermint oil in ethanol solution can be applied externally for tension headaches and applied over affected areas for post-herpetic neuralgia.

**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

**What will this herb do for me?**
Peppermint is a safe herb for gastrointestinal disorders, including dyspepsia and IBS. It is also safe for children, particularly as a herbal tea.

**When will it start to work?**
Peppermint will generally have an immediate effect, with the condition continuing to improve with long-term use.

**Are there any safety issues?**
Concentrated peppermint oil preparations may theoretically interact with a number of different medications. It is unlikely any interaction will occur with peppermint tea or simple liquid extracts. Avoid the use of peppermint oil on the face of infants and small children.
REFERENCES


**Perilla**

**Historical note** Perilla is an annual plant native to Eastern Asia. It was introduced to Japan from China and is now cultivated extensively in Japan, India and Korea. The seed is mainly used for its high oil content, and the leaves of *Perilla frutescens* var. *crispa* are used as a vegetable and food colouring. The salty umeboshi plum is coloured by the addition of special red perilla leaves. In China perilla has been used to reduce the risk of food poisoning by cooking seafood with the leaf (Bensky & Gamble 1986). In recent times, certain compounds (monoterpines) isolated from the oil are being investigated as an anticancer treatment, and the defatted seed extract is used in the treatment of allergies.

**COMMON NAME**
Perilla

**OTHER NAMES**
Beefsteak plant, Chinese basil, Purple perilla, wild sesame (English common names), Ban Tulsi (Bengali), Su Zi (Mandarin), Shosi, Egoma (Japanese). Different names are used for the different parts of the perilla plant used as foods or medicines.

**BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY**
*Perilla frutescens* (L.) Britt.

There are several botanical variants that seem to be used interchangeably: *P. frutescens* var. *crispa*, *P. frutescens* var. *japonica* (family Lamiaceae or Labiatae [mint family]).

**PLANT PARTS USED**
Leaf, stem and the fruit (seed) are used.

**CHEMICAL COMPONENTS**
As different parts of the plant are used, this section will deal with each part individually.

**RAW OIL**
Perilla seed contains 25–51% lipids. The raw perilla oil has been used as a drying oil in paints, varnishes, linoleum, printing ink, lacquers and for protective waterproof coatings on cloth. It has also been used for cooking and as a fuel.
**REFINED OIL**
The purified oil is rich in fatty acids including palmitic acid, linoleic acid, alpha-linolenic acid, stearic acid, eicosenoic acid and arachidic acid. The n-3 essential fatty acid, alpha-linolenic acid, comprises over 60% of the oil (Tan et al 1998).

**DEFATTED PERILLA SEED EXTRACT**
Defatted perilla seed extract is a concentrated ethanolic extract rich in polyphenolic compounds including rosmarinic acid, rosmarinic acid methyl ester and the flavones apigenin, luteolin and chrysoeriol. Normally flavonoids exist as glycosides in plants; however, in perilla seed extract they occur as aglycones (free flavonoids), which have more potent activity. The defatted extract is free of perillyl ketone, perillyl aldehyde and perillyl alcohol (Oryza Co. 2003).

**LEAF**
The leaf contains flavones, including apigenin and luteolin, flavone glycosides, anthocyanins, phenolic compounds including rosmarinic acid, and aldehydes including perillyl aldehyde (Makino et al 2003a).

**ESSENTIAL OIL**
The volatile oil is distilled from the dried foliage of perilla. It contains perillyl aldehyde, elsholtziaketone, perillyl ketone, citral and perillene, in addition to more than 70 other compounds (Ito et al 1999). Perillyl aldehyde is used as a sweetener and flavouring agent. One of the aldehyde isomers is 2000-fold sweeter than sugar and 4–8-fold sweeter than saccharin. Perillyl alcohol, prepared from perillyl aldehyde, is used in fragrances (Misra & Husain 1987). There are different chemotypes of perilla; one genotype lacks perillyl aldehyde but has perillyl ketone (Brenner 1993).

**MAIN ACTIONS**
The herb has several different actions and the part of the plant used will determine which is exhibited. As such, this review includes information about which part of the herb is responsible for the activity listed. Additionally, much research has been conducted with the rosmarinic acid and luteolin components isolated from perilla.

**ANTI-INFLAMMATORY ACTION**
Both the refined oil and seed extract demonstrate anti-inflammatory activity in vitro.

**Refined oil**  The pharmacological effects of the refined oil are associated with its high level of alpha-linolenic acid, which is metabolised in the body to eicosapentaenoic acid (EPA) and docosahexaenoic acid (DHA). EPA is a precursor of the series-3 prostaglandins, the series-5 leukotrienes and the series-3 thromboxanes, which have anti-inflammatory and anti-atherogenic properties. The effects have been
shown clinically, as perilla seed oil significantly suppressed the generation of leukotrienes in asthma patients in an observational study comparing two groups of asthma patients, one of which received perilla oil for 4 weeks. Ventilatory parameters, such as PEF, FVC and FEV₁, increased significantly after 4 weeks’ dietary supplementation in the treated group (Okamoto et al 2000).

**Seed extract**  Perilla seed extract, as well as its constituents luteolin, rosmarinic acid and chrysoeriol, have been shown to inhibit 5-lipoxygenase in vitro, and therefore leukotriene synthesis. Leukotrienes are associated with both allergic and inflammatory disorders, including hay fever, asthma and inflammatory bowel disorders.

**ANTI-ALLERGIC ACTIVITY**

In both in vitro and animal models of allergy, perilla preparations have demonstrated anti-allergic effects. Luteolin and rosmarinic and caffeic acids are chiefly responsible for this activity.

**Seed extract**  The defatted seed extract has been shown to inhibit chemically induced type IV allergy and inflammation in vivo, with the luteolin constituent exhibiting the most potent activity.

Perilla seed extract has also been shown to inhibit histamine release from mast cells in a dose-dependent manner. The effect is more potent than for isolated flavonoids including catechin, quercetin and caffeic acid. Additionally, in a case report of perilla seed extract, 150 mg/day for 2 weeks selectively inhibited the production of serum IgE in two human subjects suffering allergic symptoms including sneezing, nasal obstruction and itchy eyes (Oryza Co. 2003).

**Leaf**  Perilla leaf extract is thought to downregulate Th2-type cytokine production and prevent the Th1/Th2 balance from shifting toward Th2-type immune responses. A study on the effects of perilla leaf extract on cytokine production in allergic reaction in mice found that it suppressed IgE and IgG antibodies as well as IL-4, IL-5 and IL-10 (Ishihara et al 1999).

An aqueous extract of perilla leaf was shown in vitro and in vivo to inhibit local and systemic reactions in a mast cell-mediated immediate-type allergic reaction. Plasma histamine levels and cyclic AMP were reduced in a dose-dependent manner. Perilla also inhibited IgE-induced TNF-alpha production (Shin et al 2000). Oral administration of a hot water extract of perilla leaf was also shown to inhibit histamine release from mast cells and reduce scratching in an animal model of dermatitis (Wakame et al 2000).

Oral administration of a perilla leaf extract inhibited the inflammatory response in an induced allergic reaction in animals. Luteolin, rosmarinic and caffeic acids were isolated and identified as active constituents. Luteolin has been shown in vivo to
inhibit TNF-alpha and arachidonic acid and reduce oedema (Ueda et al 2002). In another inflammatory model, perilla dose-dependently reduced the allergic response in mice by over 40%. Rosmarinic acid was identified as the main active constituent (Makino et al 2001) and has been shown to decrease the inflammatory response and increase superoxide radical scavenging in vivo (Osakabe et al 2004a). An extract of perilla leaf with high levels of rosmarinic acid decreased cytokine activity in asthma-induced rats (Sanbongi et al 2004). A perilla leaf decoction was found to suppress IgA nephropathy in genetically predisposed rats, possibly through modulation of the intestinal mucosal immune system. Perilla suppressed proteinuria, proliferation of glomerular cells, serum levels of IgA, glomerular IgA and IgG depositions in the mice. Rosmarinic acid seems to produce this effect synergistically with other constituents (Makino et al 2003b).

**ANTIOXIDANT ACTIVITY**
A methanolic extract of roasted defatted perilla seed has been shown to exert strong antioxidant activity and, upon fractionation, luteolin was identified as one of the active antioxidant constituents (Jung et al 2001). Rosmarinic acid inhibits NO and iNOS in vitro (Qiao et al 2005, Renzulli et al 2004).

** IMMUNOSTIMULANT**
Perilla leaf extract stimulates phagocytosis in vitro and in vivo (Simoniene et al 2005). An increase in neutrophil phagocytosis was noted after 7 days, but was strongest after 4 weeks of treatment. A polysaccharide extract from perilla leaf has also demonstrated phagocytic ability both in vitro and in vivo (Kwon et al 2002).

**ANTIMICROBIAL ACTIVITY**
Perilla may help prevent dental caries and periodontal disease. Perilla seed extract has been shown to have antimicrobial activity against oral cariogenic streptococci and periodontopathic Porphyromonas gingivalis. The luteolin constituent showed the strongest antimicrobial effect amongst the phenolic compounds tested (Yamamoto & Ogawa 2002).

**HEPATOPROTECTIVE EFFECTS**
Perilla extract and its constituent rosmarinic acid have both been shown to be hepatoprotective against lipopolysaccharide-induced liver damage in mice, possibly due to the antioxidant activity (Osakabe et al 2002).

**HYPOCHOLESTEROLAEMIC**
Hypcholesterolaemic effects of perilla have been demonstrated in vivo. Perilla oil lowers cholesterol by suppressing hepatic HMG-CoA reductase activity (Du et al...
Perilla oil also lowers plasma triacylglycerol by suppressing fatty acid synthase (Kim et al 2004) and stimulating acyl-CoA oxidase (Kim & Choi 2005) in the liver.

Perilla oil mixed with borage and evening primrose oil has been shown to reduce cholesterol in older rats (Fukushima et al 2001).

**ANTICANCER EFFECTS**

Several constituents found in perilla have demonstrated anticancer effects in vitro and in experimental cancer models. This has prompted phase I and phase II clinical testing with one key active constituent, perillyl alcohol.

Conjugated alpha-linolenic acid from perilla oil has been shown to reduce the rate of carcinogenesis in a chemically induced rat mammary cancer model (Futakuchi et al 2002). The fibrinolytic and antioxidative activities of rosmarinic acid suppress the proliferation of mesangial cells in vivo (Makino et al 2002, Osakabe et al 2004b). Animal studies have demonstrated the ability of perillyl alcohol to inhibit tumorigenesis in the mammary gland (Yuri et al 2004) and skin (Lluria-Prevatt et al 2002). The precise mechanism of action is unclear. Perillyl alcohol has been shown to inhibit part of the signal transduction cascade involved in uncontrolled cell proliferation, upregulate the mannose-6-phosphate receptor and induce apoptosis (Liston et al 2003, Xu et al 2004). Perillyl alcohol has also demonstrated an ability to decrease the release of vascular endothelial growth factor from cancer cells and encourage the expression of angiopoietin-2 by endothelial cells (Loutrari et al 2004). This indicates that perilla may play a role in decreasing the vascularisation of tumours and inducing regression.

Perillyl alcohol increases the sensitivity of cancer cells in vitro to radiation treatment of prostate cancer (Rajesh & Howard 2003), glioma (Rajesh et al 2003) and certain neck and head cancers (Samaila et al 2004).

**ANTIDEPRESSANT ACTIVITY**

Several different constituents within perilla leaf have demonstrated effects on behaviour in vivo, most notably antidepressant effects.

Rosmarinic acid and caffeic acid have demonstrated antidepressant activity in a forced swimming test in mice. The activity is thought to be via some mechanism other than the inhibition of monoamine transporters and monoamine oxidase (Takeda et al 2002a). Apigenin from perilla significantly reduced immobility in a forced swimming test in mice, an effect mediated by dopaminergic mechanisms (Nakazawa et al 2003). Rosmarinic acid and caffeic acid have been shown to decrease the duration of the defensive freezing behaviour caused by fear and stress in animals (Takeda et al 2002b).
OTHER ACTIONS
Perilla oil has been shown to reduce the excessive growth of visceral adipose tissue in rats by downregulating adipocyte differentiation in animals (Okuno et al 1997). This has direct relevance to obesity, as a high-fat diet not only accelerates the filling process of pre-existing pre-adipocytes but also stimulates the proliferation of adipose precursor cells. Adipocyte differentiation, from adipoblasts to adipocytes, is a key factor underlying obesity.

A glycoprotein isolated from perilla oil has been shown to inhibit an early stage of HIV-1 replication without blocking viral adsorption in vitro (Kawahata et al 2002, Yamasaki et al 1998).

Perilla-aldehyde has demonstrated vasodilatory activity in isolated rat aorta and appears to work by blocking Ca2+ channels (Takagi et al 2005). The clinical significance of this is currently unknown.

CLINICAL USE
The form most commonly used at the moment is the perilla seed defatted extract; however, this review will also include information regarding other forms.

CANCER
Phase I clinical trials have shown a favourable toxicity profile and preliminary data have indicated some chemotherapeutic efficacy in advanced cancers. However, perillyl alcohol (1200 mg/m2 four times daily) failed to extend the time-to-progression in three phase II studies in patients with advanced ovarian carcinoma (Bailey et al 2002), prostate cancer (Liu et al 2003) and colorectal cancer. All trials were very small and had to contend with high drop-out rates due to intolerability of the medicine. Despite encouraging preclinical results, perilla does not appear to be an effective treatment for advanced cancer.

ALLERGY
Based on traditional use, in vitro and in vivo studies, and human trials, perilla leaf and defatted seed extracts are used for allergic respiratory disorders including hay fever, asthma and sinusitis. The refined oil may also help allergic and inflammatory respiratory conditions by regulating the arachidonic acid metabolism pathways.

A double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled clinical trial showed a significant reduction in symptoms such as watery eyes, itchy eyes and itchy nose in 29 patients with seasonal allergic rhinoconjunctivitis, taking 50 or 200 mg of rosmarinic acid enriched perilla for 21 days (Takano et al 2004). Responder rates were 55.6% and 70%, respectively. A drastic reduction in the number of neutrophils and eosinophils in nasal fluid was also demonstrated.
An open clinical trial of 20 human subjects suffering allergic symptoms, including sneezing, nasal obstruction and itchy eyes and skin, were treated with 100–150 mg perilla seed extract daily (higher dose for persons over 60 kg) for 2 weeks. The subjects themselves evaluated changes in the severity of symptoms. Significant improvement was noted in 80% of the subjects for nasal obstructive symptoms, 40% reported a significant improvement in sneezing, and half reported a significant reduction of itchy eyes (Oryza Co. 2003).

**Perilla leaf extract cream**  Open studies of more than 100 children with atopic dermatitis found that perilla leaf extract cream improved symptoms in 80% of cases after 3 months’ treatment (Yu & Kosuna 1997). Another open study with 20 allergic patients, using perilla leaf cream topically and perilla leaf extract orally, showed a general improvement in 90% of the patients after 2 months, with 30% reporting significant improvements (Yu & Kosuna 1997).

**DENTAL CARIES AND PERIODONTAL DISEASE**
Perilla seed extract inhibits the growth of cariogenic and inflammatory microorganisms including oral streptococci and *Porphyromonas gingivalis* (Yamamoto & Ogawa 2002). Perilla seed extract also reduces inflammation through inhibition of leukocyte production and radical scavenging activity. As such, application of the extract in the oral cavity is used to reduce dental caries and pericoronitis.

**OTHER USES**
Perilla refined oil is a good source of n-3 series alpha-linolenic acid.

**Clinical note — Perilla and TCM**
Perilla is an important ingredient of several TCM formulas. Perilla leaf is a key ingredient in Saiboku-to, a traditional Chinese formulation used in the treatment of type 1 hypersensitivity disorders including asthma (Nishiyori et al 1985). Saiboku-to contains *Bupleurum falcatum*, *Pinellia ternata*, *Porzia cocos*, *Scutellaria baicalensis*, *Magnolia officinalis*, *Zizyphus spinosa*, *Panax ginseng*, *Glycyrrhiza uralensis*, *Zingiber officinale* and perilla.

Banxia Houpu Decoction used for depression. It contains *Pinellia ternata*, *Porzia cocos*, *Magnolia officinalis*, *Perilla frutescens* and *Zingiber officinale* (Luo et al 2000).

**DOSAGE RANGE**
- Perilla leaf: extract equivalent to 4–9 g/day (Bensky & Gamble 1986).
- Perilla refined oil: 1000 mg capsules taken 3–6 times daily.
- Perilla seed extract (containing min. 3.0% polyphenols): 100–150 mg/day (Oryza Co. 2003).
- External use (dental caries and periodontal disease): 80–160 mg defatted perilla seed daily delivered directly into the oral cavity in the form of toothpaste, chewing gum or mouth rinse.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**

Perilla defatted seed extract has very low toxicity. After administering 2000 mg/kg to mice for 2 weeks, no toxic effects were observed (LD$_{50}$ for mice is therefore more than 2000 mg/kg). Dosage of 7.0 g/kg for 2 weeks did not produce any toxic effects in humans.

In Japan, 20–50% of long-term workers in the perilla industry develop dermatitis on their hands due to contact with perillyl aldehyde (Brenner 1993).

A 13-week subchronic oral toxicity study of perilla leaf extracts in drinking water did not show any acute toxicity. There were no treatment-related changes in body weight gain or in haematological or blood biochemistry values. Nor were there any treatment-related histopathological changes observed in the highest dose group (Yun et al 1999).

There has been a report of lipoid pneumonia in a 57-year-old man who had a history of ingesting green perilla oil, and there was also residual neurologic deficit of cerebral infarction with right hemiparesis (Kwang et al 1999).

Phase I and II clinical trials of perillyl alcohol for certain cancers have shown that gastrointestinal side-effects and fatigue are the most common adverse reactions (Azzoli et al 2003, Bailey et al 2002, 2004, Liu et al 2003, Meadows et al 2002). Gastrointestinal effects are usually mild and include nausea, vomiting, bloating and belching. Doses were usually between 1200 and 1600 mg/m$^2$ four times daily.

The refined perilla oil is clear golden yellow. It is fully refined (neutralised, bleached and deodorised) and should be free of perillyl ketone, which is a potent lung toxin that causes increased microvascular permeability and pulmonary oedema in grazing animals (Waters et al 1993).

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**

Controlled studies are not available, so interactions are based on evidence of activity and are largely theoretical and speculative.

**ANTIHISTAMINE AGENTS**

Theoretical additive effect is possible. Patients taking perilla concurrently with antihistaminic should be observed and drug doses modified if required.
CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
None reported for perilla seed extract or refined oil; however, perilla leaf extract is contraindicated in diarrhoea (Bensky & Gamble 1986).

PREGNANCY USE
Insufficient information is available to determine the safety of perilla during pregnancy.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Perilla exhibits anti-inflammatory, anti-allergic, antioxidant and anticariogenic activity. Preliminary evidence also suggests hepatoprotective and behavioural effects.
- Perilla leaf and defatted seed extracts are specifically used for allergic respiratory disorders including hay fever, asthma and sinusitis.
- Perilla leaf and defatted seed extract may downregulate Th2-type cytokine production and prevent the Th1/Th2 balance from shifting toward Th2-type immune responses that may be associated with a range of allergic reactions and autoimmune disorders.
- Perilla refined oil is a good source of n-3 series alpha-linolenic acid and extracts should be free of perillyl ketones and aldehydes.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What can this herb do for me?
Perilla is used in the treatment of allergic respiratory conditions, such as hay fever, asthma and sinusitis. Preliminary evidence suggests that it may be beneficial; however, more rigorous studies are still required to confirm effectiveness.

When will it start to work?
Relief of symptoms should be noticed within the first week, although it may take a couple of weeks to show a significant effect. For hay fever, it would be beneficial to start taking perilla at least 1 month before the onset of the hay fever season.

Are there any safety issues?
Perilla is very well tolerated and non-toxic. It can be used long term if indicated.

REFERENCES

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
Du C et al. Cholesterol synthesis in mice is suppressed but lipofuscin formation is not affected by long-term feeding of n-3 fatty acid-enriched oils compared with lard and n-6 fatty acid-enriched oils. Biol Pharm Bull 26,6 (2003): 766-70.


Takeda H et al. Rosmarinic acid and caffeic acid reduce the defensive freezing behavior of mice exposed to conditioned fear stress. Psychopharmacology 164(2) (2002b): 233-5.
Policosanol

BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS
Policosanol is isolated from the waxes of plants such as sugar cane. The main component, octacosanol, has variable absorption from the small intestine and is chiefly metabolised by the liver and excreted in the faeces.

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Policosanol is a mixture of long-chain primary aliphatic alcohols (Arruzazabala et al 1993a).

MAIN ACTIONS
LOWERS TOTAL CHOLESTEROL LEVELS, INCREASES HDL-CHOLESTEROL AND REDUCES LDL-CHOLESTEROL LEVELS
The exact mechanism of action responsible for this activity has not been fully elucidated; however, several theories exist. One observation that appears to be agreed on by researchers is that policosanol does not inhibit the activity of HMG-CoA reductase, although it produces similar clinical results to HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors.

Some data indicate that policosanol inhibits cholesterol synthesis at an earlier point in the cholesterol biosynthetic pathway and increases LDL-cholesterol processing (Menendez et al 1994, 1996, 2000). Other evidence indicates that policosanol downregulates the cellular expression of HMG-CoA reductase by up to 50%, thereby suppressing biosynthesis of the enzyme (McCarty 2002). It has also been suggested that policosanol may stimulate the degradation of HMG-CoA reductase (Menendez et al 2001). Furthermore, animal studies suggest that LDL catabolism may be enhanced (Gouni-Berthold & Berthold 2002).

REDUCES OXIDATION OF LDL-CHOLESTEROL
This has been demonstrated in vitro at an equivalent dose of 5 and 10 mg/day (Menendez et al 2000).

REDUCES PLATELET AGGREGATION
This has been confirmed in animal models and randomised double-blind studies, with effects starting at 10 mg/day (Castano et al 1999a, Arruzazabala et al 1993b, 2002). One clinical study found that a dose of 20 mg/day policosanol produces the same inhibitory effects on platelet aggregation as 100 mg aspirin daily (Arruzazabala et al 1997). A higher dose of 40 mg policosanol does not appear to produce any further

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
antiplatelet effects according to another double-blind study (Arruzazabala et al 2002). Thromboxane, but not prostacyclin, generation induced by collagen is also inhibited by policosanol in clinical studies (Carbajal et al 1998a).

OTHER ACTIONS

**ENDOTHELIAL PROTECTION**
Oral administration of policosanol to spontaneously hypertensive rats resulted in a significant reduction in circulating endothelial cells compared with controls. Moreover, comparison between groups revealed a lower frequency of aortic lesions in policosanol-treated animals than in untreated animals (Noa et al 1997).

**ANTIHYPERTENSIVE EFFECTS AT VERY HIGH DOES**
Tests in animal models have identified enhancement of propranolol-induced hypotensive effects with pretreatment at 200 mg/kg policosanol (Molina et al 1999), which is an extremely high dose and clinically irrelevant in humans.

**REDUCES ATHEROSCLEROTIC LESION DEVELOPMENT**
According to one animal study, most policosanol-treated animals did not develop atherosclerotic lesions compared with an untreated group, and the thickness of fatty streaks that did develop with treatment had fewer foam cell layers than in controls (Arruzazabala et al 2000).

**CLINICAL USE**
Most clinical studies have been conducted in Cuba with policosanol derived from sugar cane.

**HYPERLIPIDAEMIA**
Numerous randomised, double-blind clinical trials conducted prior to 2006 demonstrated significant cholesterol-lowering effects of oral policosanol (Castano et al 2001b, Mas et al 1999, Menendez et al 2000, Pons et al 1944, Torres et al 1995); however, one recent study has produced negative results (Berthold et al 2006). Several previous studies conducted with postmenopausal women have confirmed efficacy in this population (Castano et al 2000, Mas et al 1999, Menendez et al 2000, Mirkin et al 2001, Pons et al 1994, Torres et al 1995). Overall, these results show that a daily dose of 5 mg policosanol may:
- reduce LDL-cholesterol by 11–18%
- reduce total cholesterol by 8–15%
- increase HDL by 8–15%

Whereas a higher dose of 20 mg policosanol daily can:
- reduce LDL-cholesterol by 31%
reduce total cholesterol by 23%

increase HDL by 27%.

**Recent controversy** It is important to note that previous research had been conducted almost entirely by the same research group in Cuba and involved Hispanic patients. In 2006, Berthold et al conducted a 12-week randomised study of 143 Caucasian subjects with hypercholesterolaemia or combined hyperlipidaemia. In contrast to previous studies, policosanol failed to significantly reduce LDL-cholesterol, total cholesterol, HDL-cholesterol, triglycerides and other lipid parameters at all test doses (10, 20, 40, 80 mg/day). It has been proposed that these results differed from previous studies because of possible differences between test subjects and/or bias, which could have influenced the conduct of previous studies, leading to erroneous positive findings.

**Studies of type 2 diabetes** Policosanol has proven effects in dyslipidaemia secondary to type 2 diabetes mellitus according to two studies (Crespo et al 1999, Torres et al 1995).

**Comparative trials with HMG-CoA reductase inhibitor** Several randomised, double-blind studies comparing the effects of policosanol with standard hyperlipidaemic treatment (with statin drugs such as simvastatin and pravastatin) have produced favourable results (Alcocer et al 1999, Castano et al 1999b, Crespo et al 1999, Prat et al 1999, Torres et al 1995). A dose of 10 mg policosanol daily reduced LDL-cholesterol by 24%, compared with 22% reduction with lovastatin and 15% reduction with simvastatin. Additionally, policosanol treatment reduced HDL significantly, whereas the other treatments had no effect (Prat et al 1999, Torres et al 1995). Another study demonstrated better cholesterol- and LDL-lowering effects for 10 mg policosanol compared with 20 mg lovastatin (Crespo et al 1999). Additionally, policosanol significantly raised HDL-cholesterol levels, was better tolerated and had a superior safety profile. A trial comparing pravastatin 10 mg/day with policosanol 10 mg/day found that the policosanol treatment produced greater reductions in total cholesterol and LDL levels and was the only treatment to increase HDL (Castano et al 1999a). Additionally, policosanol was more effective than pravastatin in inhibiting platelet aggregation.

More recently, policosanol (10 mg/day) taken for 8 weeks was found to be less effective than atorvastatin (10 g/day) in reducing serum LDL-cholesterol and total cholesterol levels in older patients with type II hypercholesterolaemia (Castano et al 2003b). Policosanol, but not atorvastatin, however, significantly increased serum HDL-cholesterol levels, whereas both drugs similarly reduced atherogenic ratios and serum triglycerides.
Concurrent use with omega-3 essential fatty acids Due to the favourable effects of omega-3 fatty acids (FAs) in cardiovascular disease, in practice clinicians have recommended policosanol together with fish-oil supplements. According to an 8-week, double-blind, randomised study, the combination effectively reduced total cholesterol, LDL-cholesterol and triglycerides and increased HDL-cholesterol (Castano et al 2005). The study of 90 patients with type II hypercholesterolaemia found that when omega-3 FAs (2 g/day) were combined with policosanol (10 mg/day), there was a significant decrease in total cholesterol (15.3%) and triglycerides (14.7%), and a significant increase in HDL-cholesterol (15.5%).

Concurrent use with beta-blockers A 3-year randomised study of 205 older hypercholesterolaemic patients taking beta-blockers to showed that after 1 year of therapy, policosanol significantly reduced LDL-cholesterol (20.9%), total cholesterol (19.3%) and triglycerides (25.7%) and increased HDL-cholesterol levels (4.1%), effects that lasted for the duration of the study (Castano et al 2004a). The frequency of mild, moderate or severe adverse events was lower in the policosanol group than in the placebo group; however, an additional reduction in SBP and DBP was observed in the policosanol patients compared with those in the placebo group.

Wheat-germ-derived policosanol No beneficial effects on blood lipid profiles were observed in a double-blind, randomised study of 58 subjects with normal to mildly elevated plasma cholesterol who were given 20 mg wheat-germ policosanol in the short 4-week study (Lin et al 2004).

INTERMITTENT CLAUDICATION
Policosanol treatment for intermittent claudication has produced encouraging results in several randomised studies (Castano et al 1999b, 2001b, 2003a). Policosanol 10 mg/day taken for 6 months significantly increased initial claudication distance by approximately 70 metres and absolute claudication by approximately 140 metres in one double-blind study, whereas placebo produced no changes (Castano et al 1999b). A single-blind study using 20 mg policosanol daily showed significant improvements after 6 months’ treatment, which further increased after 12 months (Castano et al 2001b). In both studies patients in the policosanol group reported improvements in lower limb symptoms that were greater than those in the placebo group.

More recently, policosanol (10 mg twice daily) was shown to be as effective as ticlopidine (250 mg twice daily) for improving walking distances of claudicant patients (Castano et al 2004a). In the 20-week double-blind, randomised study of 28 subjects, policosanol significantly increased mean values of initial and absolute claudication distances from 162.1 to 273.2 metres and from 255.8 to 401.0 metres,
respectively, which was not significantly different to ticlopidine. Both treatments were well tolerated.

OTHER USES

PRE-EXISTING CORONARY HEART DISEASE (CHD)
A randomised double-blind study of 45 subjects with documented CHD found that a dose of 10 mg policosanol daily increased maximum oxygen uptake and exercise ECG responses. The effects were further enhanced by co-administration of 125 mg aspirin (Stusser et al 1998).

CEREBROVASCULAR DISEASE
In two different experimental models policosanol had anti-ischaemic activity when administered after induction of cerebral ischaemia, suggesting a possible therapeutic effect in CVD (Molina et al 1999).

DOSAGE RANGE
- The doses tested in clinical trials range from 5–20 mg/day.
  More specific doses are:
- hypercholesterolaemia: 5–20 mg/day
- intermittent claudication: 10–20 mg/day; 3 months’ continual use may be required before effects are observed
- platelet inhibition: 10 mg/day
- policosanol is usually taken after the evening meal.

TOXICITY
Studies using several animal models have confirmed no carcinogenic effects and no signs of toxicity at doses as high as 500 mg/kg (Aleman et al 1994a, 1994b). This dose is hundreds of times greater than the maximal recommended therapeutic dose (20 mg/day), thereby indicating an excellent safety profile (Mesa et al 1994).

ADVERSE REACTIONS
A pharmacovigilance study of 2252 subjects aged 60 or more years with coronary, cerebrovascular, and peripheral artery disease and treated with policosanol (5, 10 or 20 mg/day) at seven major medical centres found that long-term tolerability of policosanol in elderly patients at high vascular risk was very good (Fernandez et al 2004).

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS

CHOLESTEROL-LOWERING MEDICATION
Additive effects are likely — caution is advised.
Considering the mode of action of policosanol, it is likely to increase the cholesterol-lowering effects of statin drugs. However, a theoretical concern exists as to whether concurrent use will also increase the likelihood of adverse effects.

**ASPIRIN**
Increased antiplatelet effects may develop — patients taking aspirin and policosanol concurrently should be observed for increased bleeding or bruising.

**WARFARIN**
Current evidence suggests that there is no interaction between policosanol and warfarin. One clinical study confirmed that the addition of policosanol to warfarin therapy does not enhance the prolongation of the bleeding time induced by warfarin alone (Carbajal et al 1998b). Caution with doses > 10 mg/day.

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**
Suspend use of high doses 1 week before major surgery.

**PREGNANCY USE**
Safety has been investigated in animal tests with no evidence of teratogenicity or any other embryonal toxicity (Rodriguez & Garcia 1994, 1998, Rodriguez et al 1997).

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**
- Policosanol can be considered an efficacious lipid-lowering treatment that may be used in cases where other treatment has been either ineffective or poorly tolerated. Numerous, randomised double-blind trials confirm activity.
- Comparative studies with statin drugs have generally produced positive results.
- It does not appear to significantly reduce triglyceride levels; however, it has been used successfully with omega-3 essential fatty acids to reduce total cholesterol levels and triglycerides.
- It is also a safe and potentially useful treatment in claudication.
- Policosanol has significant platelet aggregation inhibitor activity.
- Safety studies indicate that it is well tolerated and has a wide safety margin.

**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**
What can this supplement do for me?
Policosanol can significantly lower cholesterol levels. Studies suggest this effect is as strong as conventional cholesterol-lowering medications. It also has some blood-thinning activity, is effective in intermittent claudication and can increase total walking distance.

When will it start to work?
Generally, results are observed after approximately 8 weeks’ continuous use.
Are there any safety issues?
Policosanol has a wide safety margin and is well tolerated.

REFERENCES
Probiotics

Historical note  Eating foods containing microorganisms to improve health has a long tradition. As far back as 1908, Metchnikoff, the Nobel laureate, stated that ‘ingested lactobacilli can displace toxin-producing bacteria, promoting health and prolonging life’ (Elmer 2001). The term ‘probiotics’ was first coined in 1965 in reference to substances produced by protozoa that stimulated the growth of other organisms. It has since been applied to those microorganisms found naturally in foods that are able to improve health by stimulating the growth of beneficial organisms. Although it has taken the most part of a century for scientists to investigate their health benefits, there are now several thousand studies on probiotics available on Medline, the majority published since 2000.

BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS

The generally accepted definition of a probiotic is ‘a live microbial food supplement which beneficially affects the host animal by improving its intestinal microbial balance’. This definition is, however, rather limited as some probiotics are transient and do not take up residence in the intestinal tract. A better definition may be ‘[a] microbial dietary supplement that beneficially affect the host physiology by modulating mucosal and systemic immunity, as well as improving nutritional and microbial balance of the intestinal tract’ (Salminen et al 1998).

The gastrointestinal tract is sterile at birth. Normal gut flora develops gradually over time and is influenced by factors such as composition of the maternal gut microflora, diet, degree of hygiene, use of antibiotics or other medication, the environment and possibly genetic aspects. Once established, a person’s individual gut flora remains surprisingly constant throughout life. This is likely to be due to the fact that the gut immune system learns to recognise and tolerate those bacterial species acquired during early infancy. It is therefore very difficult to alter the composition of the gut flora after this time. Successful colonisation with probiotics is therefore most often transient, as the gastrointestinal tract has many defences that inhibit this process (Vanderhoof & Young 2002). The intestines are host to $10^{14}$ microbes representing 400–500 different species (Ouwehand et al 2002).

Clinical note — Prebiotics

There is another concept associated with the microflora and intestinal health: prebiotics, which are compounds that modify the environment of the gastrointestinal tract to promote the growth of beneficial bacteria. However, the term ‘prebiotics’ is now also being applied to a wider range of substrates that can be beneficial to the host even if they are not specifically for the benefit of the probiotics. The term ‘prebiotic’ is also applied to the beneficial effects of non-microbial substances on the host. The term ‘prebiotic’ is therefore becoming a misnomer, although it remains in widespread use. Prebiotics are defined as ‘a selectively fermentable dietary component that beneficially affects the host by selectively stimulating the growth and/or activity of one or a limited number of bacteria in the colon that confers a health benefit on the host’. Prebiotics can be dietary fibre, such as chicory inulin, or other oligosaccharides, such as galactooligosaccharides. They can also be disaccharides, such as lactulose, or polysaccharides, such as arabinoxylans. Prebiotics are used to promote the growth of beneficial bacteria, such as lactobacilli and bifidobacteria, in the colon and therefore improve gut health. Prebiotics are not absorbed by the host and are not digested by the host’s enzymes. They are not simply resistant starches, such as amylopectin, which are digested by host enzymes. Prebiotics are also not simply fibre, such as cellulose, which is not digested by the host.

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
nal tract to favour proliferation of the beneficial intestinal microflora (Gibson & Roberfroid 1995). Herbal and nutritional prebiotics include the fibre-supplement known as slippery elm (*Ulmus fulva*), oligofructose and inulin. The prebiotic approach, while promising, has not been thoroughly tested by controlled clinical trials.

**CHEMICAL COMPONENTS**
Probiotics include *Bifidobacteria* (e.g. *B. bifidum*), *Lactobacillus acidophilus*, *L. bulgaricus*, *L. casei*, *L. gasseri*, *L. plantarum*, *L. reuteri*, L. GG (variant of *L. casei* subsp. *rhamnosus*, named after Drs Gorbach and Goldin who first isolated the strain in 1980), *Lactobacillus* strain LB, *Saccharomyces boulardii* (a yeast), *Streptococcus thermophilus* and *Streptococcus salivarius*.

**FOOD SOURCES**
Fermented foods of dairy or vegetable origin, such as yoghurt and sauerkraut respectively, are a source of probiotics. Of these, dairy sources such as yoghurt are most popular and may contain probiotics, especially *Lactobacillus acidophilus* and bifidobacteria strains.

**DEFICIENCY SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS**
Clear deficiency signs are difficult to establish because the symptoms may vary enormously. Local signs and symptoms of an imbalance of the intestinal flora (intestinal dysbiosis) include bloating, flatulence, abdominal pain, diarrhoea and/or constipation and fungal overgrowth (such as *Candida*).

Imbalance of the intestinal flora may result from the use of antibiotics, chronic diarrhoea or constipation. Additionally, babies exclusively fed on infant formulas will have slower colonisation of the gut than those who are breastfed, as breast milk allows for the transfer of oligosaccharides to the baby. This appears to be of particular concern in premature babies requiring intensive care as they acquire intestinal organisms slowly, which allows for the colonisation of bacterial species that tend to be virulent. It has been suggested that the aberrant colonisation of the premature infant’s gut may contribute to the development of necrotising enterocolitis and, therefore, probiotics supplementation may be a useful approach for prevention (Dai & Walker 1999).

**MAIN ACTIONS**
The positive effects of probiotics are a result of several different mechanisms.
ENHANCED IMMUNE RESPONSE

Immune system modulation and the prevention of gastrointestinal tract colonisation by a variety of pathogens are perhaps the most important actions of probiotics.

Probiotics bind to intestinal epithelial cells and inhibit the binding of pathogenic bacteria to the gut wall by production of inhibitory substances such as bacteriocins, lactic acid and toxic oxygen metabolites. Of the toxic oxygen metabolites, hydrogen peroxide is of major importance as it exerts a bactericidal effect on many pathogens (Kaur et al 2002). The ability to produce bacteriocins, hydrogen peroxide and other antimicrobial compounds is strain-dependent and requires the presence of folic acid and riboflavin in the case of lactobacilli. Binding to the gut wall also initiates signalling events that result in the synthesis of cytokines (Vanderhoof & Young 2003). Studies in germ-free mice have proven that intestinal bacteria are essential for a healthy systemic immune system (Falk et al 1998).

Lactobacillus GG has been well studied in this regard and shown to modulate intestinal immunity by increasing the number of IgA and other immunoglobulin-secreting cells in the intestinal mucosal and stimulates the local release of IFNs.

Helicobacter pylori infection Several in vitro studies have shown that certain probiotics inhibit or kill H. pylori, prevent its adhesion to mammalian epithelial cells and prevent IL-8 release. In vivo models demonstrate that pretreatment with a probiotic can prevent H. pylori infections and/or that administration of probiotics markedly reduces an existing infection. Clinical efficacy has also been established for the use of probiotics as prevention or treatment, according to a review of six clinical studies (Hamilton-Miller 2003).

DIGESTIVE PROCESSES

The gut bacteria carry out a number of biochemical functions, including deconjugation and dehydroxylation of bile acids, the conversion of bilirubin to urobilinogen, the metabolism of cholesterol to coprostanol, production of vitamins K, B1, B2, B6, B12 and generation of short-chain fatty acids. Probiotics are involved in balancing colonic microbiota and aid in the treatment of diarrhoea associated with travel and antibiotic therapy, and control of rotavirus and Clostridium difficile-induced colitis.

CHEMOPREVENTATIVE EFFECTS

Antimutagenic activity against chemical mutagens and promutagens has been demonstrated for different strains of Lactobacillus acidophilus, Bifidobacteria and the organic acids usually produced by these probiotics, with live cells producing the most positive results (Lankaputhra & Shah 1998). Some probiotics also reduce faecal...
enzymes implicated in cancer initiation, by producing butyric acid, which affects the turnover of enterocytes and neutralises the activity of dietary carcinogens, such as nitrosamines. Additionally, enhancing host immunity and qualitative and quantitative changes to the intestinal microflora and physicochemical conditions are important contributing factors (Hirayama and Rafter 1999).

OTHER ACTIONS

**CHOLESTEROL-LOWERING ACTIVITY**
This has been established in several clinical trials (see ‘Clinical Use’ below)

**ALLERGY**
High-level antigen exposure during the first few months of life is suspected of predisposing individuals to allergic sensitisation and, therefore, various atopic conditions. The intestinal microflora plays a major protective role against the development of allergy because it reduces antigen transport through the intestinal mucosa.

**CLINICAL USE**
It is generally agreed that a probiotic must be capable of colonising the intestinal tract to influence human health. Currently, one of the most extensively studied probiotics is *Lactobacillus GG*. Probiotic supplements are usually standardised in terms of the amount of living organisms per unit of volume and dosages range from 1 billion colonies to as high as 450 billion daily.

**DIARRHOEA**

**Infectious diarrhoea** A Cochrane review analysed results from 23 RCTs that compared a specified probiotic agent with placebo or no probiotic in people with acute diarrhoea proven or presumed to be caused by an infectious agent (Allen et al 2004). Overall, 1917 volunteers were involved, of whom 1449 were infants or children (age <18 years). The review concluded that probiotics reduced the risk of diarrhoea at 3 days and the mean duration of diarrhoea by 30.5 hours and supplementation was a useful adjunct to rehydration therapy in treating acute, infectious diarrhoea in adults and children. Several different probiotics were tested: all were lactic acid bacilli, except in two studies that tested the yeast *Saccharomyces boulardii*. With the exception of a trial of live *Streptococcus thermophilus* and *Lactobacillus bulgaricus*, a beneficial effect in the probiotic group compared to controls was observed in all trials. Due to the variation in treatment regimens, further investigation is required to clarify which particular one is best in specific patient groups.
**Travellers’ diarrhoea**  
Travellers’ diarrhoea is the most common health problem in those visiting developing countries, affecting 20% to more than 50% of tourists. Although it is usually benign, travellers’ diarrhoea represents a considerable socioeconomic burden for both the traveller and the host country. The most common enteropathogen is *Escherichia coli*.

Some clinical studies have found various probiotics somewhat effective against travellers’ diarrhoea; however no probiotic has been able to demonstrate clinically relevant protection worldwide (Rendi-Wagner & Kollaritsch 2002).

A large, randomised, placebo-controlled double-blind study of the efficacy of *Lactobacillus GG* in preventing travellers’ diarrhoea involved 820 people on holiday to Turkey to two destinations. The group was randomly assigned either *L. GG* or placebo in identical sachets. On the return flight each participant completed a questionnaire indicating the incidence of diarrhoea and related symptoms during the trip. Of the original group, 756 (92%) subjects completed the study. The overall incidence of diarrhoea was 43.8% (331 cases) and the total incidence of diarrhoea in the *L. GG* group was 41.0% compared with 46.5% in the placebo group, indicating an overall protection of 11.8%. Protection rates varied between two different destinations, with the maximum protection rate reported as 39.5% and no side-effects reported (Oksanen et al 1990).

In another placebo-controlled double-blind study, two doses (250 mg and 1000 mg) of *Saccharomyces boulardii* were administered prophylactically to 3000 Austrian travellers. A significant reduction in the incidence of diarrhoea was observed, with success depending directly on the rigorous use of the preparation. A tendency was noted for *S. boulardii* to have a regional effect, which was particularly marked in North Africa and in Turkey. The effect was dose-dependent, with participants taking the higher dose of probiotics experiencing the lowest incidence of travellers’ diarrhoea (29%) and little difference observed between low-dose *S. boulardii* supplementation (34%) and placebo (39%). Treatment was considered very safe (Kollaritsch et al 1993).

**AIDS-related diarrhoea**  
Two studies have found probiotics beneficial in the treatment of AIDS-related diarrhoea. In patients given *S. boulardii* (3 g/day of the yeast) for 1 week, 10 of 18 improved compared with 1 of 11 patients given placebo. In another study, a similar protocol improved the condition of 7 of 11 patients (Elmer 2001).

**Antibiotic-induced diarrhoea**  
According to a 2002 meta-analysis, *Lactobacillus* spp. and *Saccharomyces boulardii* are superior to placebo in preventing antibiotic-associated diarrhoea. Of nine randomised, double-blind placebo-controlled trials of
Probiotics, two of which involved children, four used the yeast *S. boulardii*, four used lactobacilli, one used a strain of *Enterococcus*-producing lactic acid, and three used a combination of probiotics.

In all nine trials, probiotics were given in combination with antibiotics, whereas the control groups received placebo with the antibiotic treatment. The odds ratio in favour of active treatment over placebo in preventing diarrhoea associated with antibiotics was 0.39 for *S. boulardii* and 0.34 for lactobacilli (D’Souza et al 2002). **Clostridium difficile-associated diarrhoea (CDAD)** *Clostridium difficile* is a common cause of diarrhoea associated with treatment with antimicrobial and/or antibiotic medication and can potentially progress to colitis, pseudomembranous colitis, toxic megacolon and death. In spite of antimicrobial therapy, recurrence is common. The *S. boulardii* strain of bacteria is being used to restore microbial balance and inhibit *C. difficile* proliferation (Elmer 2001) and has been used as an adjunct to vancomycin treatment.

A 2005 systematic review of RCTs conducted to assess the effectiveness of probiotic therapy in the prevention or treatment of *C. difficile*-associated diarrhoea (CDAD) reported that the benefit of probiotic therapy was seen in two studies and restricted to subgroups characterised by severe CDAD and increased use of vancomycin (Dendukuri et al 2005). Due to the heterogeneity in choice and dose of probiotic and in the criteria for diagnosing CDAD, synthesising further information from the eight studies was difficult, leaving the authors to conclude that better designed and larger studies are required.

**UROGENITAL INFECTIONS**

Probiotics are widely used to decrease the frequency of recurrent bacterial vaginosis and candidal vulvovaginitis, and have undergone clinical testing that supports this use. They are administered both orally and intravaginally. Additionally, lactobacilli play a significant role in the prevention of UTIs. One study using intravaginal administration of probiotics such as *Lactobacillus* GR-1 and B-54 or RC-14 strains twice weekly for 2 weeks and then monthly for 2 months demonstrated that treatment resulted in 45% less UTIs than placebo and improved the maintenance of normal flora (Reid & Burton 2002). A significant reduction in UTI rate was also reported in a randomised double-blind study involving 55 premenopausal women (Reid 2001b). The study investigated the effectiveness of treatment for 1 year with a weekly suppository containing either 0.5 g *L. rhamnosus* GR-1 and *L. fermentum* B-54 or a *Lactobacillus* growth factor. Treatment resulted in the UTI rate decreasing by 73% and 79%, respectively, with no adverse effects reported.
The mechanisms by which *Lactobacillus* spp. reduce bacterial vaginosis and UTIs appear to involve anti-adhesion factors, byproducts such as hydrogen peroxide and bacteriocins lethal to pathogens, and perhaps immune modulation or signalling effects. Bifidobacteria in particular are considered well suited to this activity and have, therefore, been investigated for their effects in the treatment of female genitourinary infections (Korshunov et al 1999).

**Oral supplementation** Several studies have confirmed that lactobacilli administered orally can survive the gastrointestinal tract and colonise the genitourinary tract, thus enhancing the normal vaginal lactobacilli.

In a study of 10 women whose vaginal bacterial flora was abnormal and who had suffered repeated bacterial vaginosis, yeast infections and/or UTIs, a regimen was prescribed of ingesting $10^9$ viable *Lactobacillus* GR-1 and RC-14 bacteria each day. In a majority of patients with symptoms of suprapubic and micturition pain, frequency, dysuria and urgency, or vaginal irritation, the symptoms disappeared within 1–2 weeks and all the patients remained healthy for several months following treatment (Reid 2001a).

A randomised study of 42 healthy women compared treatment with either *L. rhamnosus* GR-1 plus *L. fermentum* RC-14 or *L. rhamnosus* GG alone. On assessment, the vaginal flora was normal in 40% of cases and 14 patients had asymptomatic bacterial vaginosis. Oral treatment with $10^8$ viable *L. rhamnosus* GR-1 and *L. fermentum* RC-14 once and twice daily re-established a healthy vaginal flora in up to 90% of patients, and 7 of 11 patients with bacterial vaginosis converted to normal or intermediate scores within 1 month. Treatment with *L. rhamnosus* GG failed to have an effect (Reid et al 2001). Another study by Reid and Bruce (2001) suggests that oral administration of *L. rhamnosus* GR-1 and *L. fermentum* RC-14 can result in vaginal colonisation even more quickly: within 7 days. Their study also found that colonisation can be maintained for up to 10 weeks after treatment cessation in some individuals.

Similar results were obtained in a randomised placebo-controlled study of 64 healthy women testing oral administration of *L. rhamnosus* GR-1 and *L. fermentum* RC-14, which found that the probiotics can restore asymptomatic bacterial vaginosis microflora to normal lactobacilli colonised microflora and reduce pathogenic bacteria. Significant results were obtained after 60 days’ treatment with no adverse effects reported (Reid et al 2003).

**Probiotic-enriched dairy products** A small randomised study of 46 participants showed that ingestion of 150 mL *L. acidophilus*-enriched yoghurt was associated with an increased prevalence of colonisation of the rectum and vagina by the bacteria
and may have contributed to reduced episodes of bacterial vaginosis (Dorren 2002). Another crossover study of 33 women with recurrent vaginitis found that daily ingestion of 240 mg yoghurt containing *L. acidophilus* for 1 year decreased both candidal colonisation and infection (Hilton et al 1992).

**IRRITABLE BOWEL SYNDROME**

People suffering from IBS sometimes experience symptoms of abdominal cramping and either diarrhoea or constipation or a combination of both. Although the aetiology of IBS is still unknown, there is growing suspicion that there is a persistent, mild inflammatory state with changes in mucosal function or structure and an associated imbalance of intestinal flora (Camilleri 2006). This imbalance can lead to inefficient metabolism of nutrients and the formation of gas and short-chain fatty acids, both of which induce propulsive contractions and accelerate colonic transit or enhance fluid and sodium absorption in the colon. As such, clinical trials have been conducted to clarify the role of probiotics in this condition, so far producing promising results.

In a 4-week, double-blind placebo-controlled trial, 60 people with IBS were treated with *L. plantarum* or placebo. The patients recorded their own gastrointestinal function, starting 2 weeks before the study and continuing throughout the study period. Twelve months after the end of the study, all patients were asked to complete a questionnaire. The study showed significant reductions in intestinal flatulence in the treatment group compared with placebo. At the 12-month follow-up, patients in the test group maintained a better overall gastrointestinal function than control patients (Nobaek et al 2000).

In another study, 40 patients were randomly assigned either *L. plantarum* 299V in liquid suspension or placebo over a period of 4 weeks. All patients treated with the probiotic reported resolution of their abdominal pain as compared with 11 patients from the placebo group. There was also a trend towards normalisation of stool frequency in constipation for 6 of 10 patients treated with the probiotic compared with 2 of 11 treated with placebo. With regard to all IBS symptoms, an improvement was noted in 95% of patients in the active group compared with 15% of patients in the placebo group (*P* < 0.0001) (Niedzielin et al 2001).

**INFLAMMATORY BOWEL DISEASES**

**Pouchitis**  Pouchitis is the most common long-term complication of ileal pouch–anal anastomosis in patients with underlying ulcerative colitis. Clinical symptoms of pouchitis are not specific, and they can be caused by other conditions such as rectal cuff inflammation and irritable pouch syndrome. Therefore, to make an accurate diagnosis, endoscopic evaluation, together with symptom assessment, is necessary. Although antibacterial therapy can induce and maintain remission, probiotics can also be used to maintain clinical remission and prevent relapse in patients with relapsing or chronic pouchitis (Kailasapathy & Chin 2000). According to one review, there is now strong evidence to support the therapeutic use of probiotics in postoperative pouchitis (Penner et al 2005).

**HELICOBACTER PYLORI INFECTION**
A review (Hamilton-Miller 1997) of 13 clinical trials of probiotics and *H. pylori* infection summarises the results as follows.
- In six trials involving a total of 180 patients, sole treatment with probiotics produced positive results in five studies. In three trials, there were significantly reduced breath-test readings and in two others some patients were cleared of infection.
- In seven further trials of 682 patients, probiotics were added to a therapeutic regimen of antibiotics, resulting in an increased cure rate in two studies, and reduced side-effects in four. Trials in which fermented milk products or whole cultures of lactobacilli were used tended to show better results than when the probiotic was taken in the form of bacteria alone.
  It must be noted that not all the studies were randomised, double-blind and placebo-controlled, and some involved only small numbers of patients. However, the positive results obtained suggest that probiotics may have a place as adjunctive treatment in *H. pylori* infections and possibly in prophylaxis.

**ATOPIC DERMATITIS AND ECZEMA**
Probiotics have the potential to moderate inflammatory and immune responses and strengthen the intestinal barrier function, three actions that are useful in addressing the underlying pathophysiological processes involved in atopic dermatitis (AD) and eczema (Rosenfeldt et al 2004). The use of probiotic therapy to prevent allergic disease has been demonstrated in studies using *L. rhamnosus* GG in neonates, whereas studies in infants and children with established AD have found that probiotics reduce the severity of the condition (Furrie 2005, Weston et al 2005).

**Prevention of allergy**  A randomised, double-blind placebo-controlled study showed that perinatal administration of probiotics (*L. rhamnosus* GG) reduced the
development of atopic eczema in children by 50% during the first 2 years of life. Some 159 mothers were randomly allocated to receive 2 capsules of placebo or \(10^{10}\) viable *L. rhamnosus* GG daily for 4 weeks before expected delivery. After delivery, capsules were taken for 6 months. During lactation either the mother or the infant consumed the preparations. In a 4-year follow-up study, it was revealed that the preventive effect of the probiotic on atopic eczema extended beyond infancy (Kalliomaki et al 2003).

**Treatment of established allergy** A randomised, double-blind study of 56 young children (aged 6–18 months) with moderate or severe atopic AD found that treatment with *L. fermentum* VRI-033 PCC (1 × \(10^9\); Probiomics) twice daily produced a significant reduction in the Severity Scoring of Atopic Dermatitis (SCORAD) index (Weston et al 2005). At week 16, 92% of children receiving probiotics had a SCORAD index that was significantly better than baseline compared with the placebo group (\(n = 17, 63\%\)) (\(P = 0.01\)). Another randomised double-blind study has found that supplementation of infant formulas with viable but not heat-inactivated *L. GG* may have benefits for the management of atopic eczema and cow’s milk allergy (Kirjavainen et al 2003).

According to two other placebo-controlled studies, it appears that people with greater allergic responses may be better suited to treatment and experience superior effects. Rosenfeldt et al found that treatment with two *Lactobacillus* strains (lyophilised *L. rhamnosus* 19070-2 and *L. reuteri* DSM 122460) given in combination for 6 weeks to children aged 1–13 years with AD resulted in 56% experiencing improvement (Rosenfeldt et al 2003). Interestingly, the total SCORAD score did not change significantly. Allergic patients with a positive skin prick test response and increased IgE levels experienced a more pronounced response to treatment. Similarly, a study by Sistek et al (2006) found that a combination of two probiotics (*Lactobacillus rhamnosus* and *Bifidobacteria lactis*) given to children with established AD effectively reduced the SCORAD index among the food-sensitised children, but not in other children (Sistek et al 2006). Children in this study received \(2 \times 10^{10}\) colony-forming units/g of probiotic or placebo daily as a powder mixed with food or water.

**HIGH CHOLESTEROL**

Probiotics modestly reduce cholesterol levels in healthy subjects and may have stronger effects in people with hyperlipidaemia.

A meta-analysis of six studies of a probiotic dairy product containing *Enterococcus faecium* found that the fermented yoghurt product produced a 4% decrease in total cholesterol and a 5% decrease in LDL-cholesterol (Agerholm-Larsen et al 2000).
In another study, 32 subjects with serum total cholesterol ranging from 5.7 to 7.25 mg/dL were randomly assigned to two treatments: (1) intake of a low-fat drinking yoghurt prepared with two ordinary yoghurt starters (Streptococcus thermophilus and Lactobacillus delbrueckii subsp. Bulgaricus: placebo group); and (2) intake of a low-fat drinking yoghurt prepared with the two yoghurt starters plus Bifidobacterium longum strain BL1 (probiotic group). After intake for 4 weeks at 3 × 100 mL/day, reduction of serum total cholesterol was observed in approximately half of the probiotic group subjects; a particularly significant decrease in serum total cholesterol was found among subjects with moderate hypercholesterolaemia (serum total cholesterol > 6.2 mg/dL). The serum lipid concentrations in the placebo group subjects were almost stable during the experimental periods (Xiao et al 2003).

A crossover study of 29 healthy women, aged 19–56 years, found that the long-term daily consumption of 300 g of two different types of yoghurt over a period of 21 weeks increased the serum concentration of HDL-cholesterol and led to the desired improvement of the LDL:HDL-cholesterol ratio. The normal yoghurt contained 3.5% fat and starter cultures of S. thermophilus and L. lactis, whereas the probiotic yoghurt was enriched with L. acidophilus 145, B. longum 913 and 1% oligofructose. The mean serum concentration of total cholesterol and the LDL-cholesterol was not influenced by the normal yoghurt (P > 0.05). However, both the normal and the probiotic yoghurt increased the HDL concentration significantly, by 0.3 mmol/L (P = 0.002) and decreased the LDL:HDL ratio from 3.24 to 2.48 (P = 0.001) (Kiessling et al 2002).

A recent controlled, randomised double-blind study of 36 heavy smokers found that 400 mL/day of a rose hip drink containing L. plantarum 299v (5 × 10⁷ colony-forming units/mL) led to a reduction in cardiovascular disease risk factors. Significant decreases in SBP, leptin, and fibrinogen (P < 0.001) were recorded in the experimental group. No such changes were observed in the control group. Decreases in F(2)-isoprostanes (markers of oxidative stress) (37%) and IL-6 (42%) were also noted in the experimental group in comparison with baseline. Monocytes isolated from subjects treated with L. plantarum showed significantly reduced adhesion (P < 0.001) to endothelial cells (Naruszewicz et al 2002).

**OTHER USES**

**FOOD ALLERGIES**

High-level antigen exposure during the first few months of life is suspected of predisposing individuals to allergic sensitisation and, therefore, various atopic conditions such as skin reactions and even systemic or respiratory manifestations.
Intestinal inflammation seems to be a predisposing factor in increased sensitisation of a subject (Holt 1994), which in turn promotes further inflammation when antigen exposure occurs.

Considering that the gut microflora is an important factor in regulating both the intestinal and systemic immune system, probiotics are used to promote endogenous barrier mechanisms, reduce gut permeability and alleviate intestinal inflammation in patients with atopic dermatitis and food allergy (Majamaa & Isolauri 1997). A 1-month study of 10 breastfed infants who had atopic eczema and cow’s milk allergy found that L. GG reduced certain faecal inflammatory markers.

**Clinical note — The hygiene hypothesis**

The intestinal tract is the largest immune organ of the body. It produces more antibodies than any other part of the body and contains 80% of all antibody-producing cells. The intestinal mucosa functions as a barrier against infections, but it also provides communication between the different mucosal surfaces of the body (Ouwehand et al 2002).

At birth, the gastrointestinal tract is sterile. Normal gut flora develops gradually over time and is influenced by factors such as composition of the maternal gut microflora, diet, degree of hygiene, use of antibiotics or other medication, the environment and possibly genetic aspects. Studies in germ-free mice have shown that without these bacteria, the systemic immune system will not function normally (Vanderhoof & Young 2002).

In the absence of microbes, a mammal develops fewer Peyer’s patches (part of the gut-associated lymphoid tissue) and less than 10% of the number of IgA-producing B cells compared with normal. However, on exposure to a normal microflora, previously germ-free animals develop their immune system very much like other animals. This indicates that the intestinal microflora is instrumental in the proper development of the immune system (Ouwehand et al 2002) and has led to the emergence of the ‘hygiene theory of immune disorders’.

More specifically, the hygiene hypothesis suggests that improved hygienic conditions and vaccinations, which reduce early-life exposure to microbes, are associated with a heightened risk of allergic disease and other immune disorders. This is because reduced exposure may result in reduced stimulation of the immune system. As a result, lymphocytes that would normally differentiate to become Th1 type, differentiate to Th2-type cells and produce inflammatory cytokines in the allergic response in much greater quantities. As such, very early stimulation of the immune system is important in dampening the Th2 dominance and reducing the development of IgE-mediated food reactions as well as other allergic reactions. In a
closely observed cohort of 329 Finnish children it was shown that the earlier an acute respiratory infection occurred, the greater the protective effect was against atopic eczema (Vanderhoof & Young 2003).

The obvious solution for increasing microbial exposure without increasing the health risk is the use of prebiotics and probiotics. Supplementation with probiotics has been shown to both reduce the risk and treat the symptoms of childhood eczema (see later).

Modulating the intestinal microflora with probiotics and prebiotics (fibre) may be an effective and safe therapy for the natural development of a balanced immune defence in infants and children. In adults and the elderly, prebiotics and probiotics may be used to improve the general functioning of the immune system.

**IMMUNE STIMULATION**

In a 12-week, double-blind, placebo-controlled, three-stage before-and-after intervention trial of 25 healthy elderly individuals, one-half were given milk containing a specific strain of *Bifidobacterium lactis* HN019, while the other half were given milk alone. Dietary consumption of the probiotic enhanced immune function of two different types of leucocytes; the degree of enhancement was increased by consuming *B. lactis* in an oligosaccharide-rich substrate (Chiang et al 2000).

In another 7-month, double-blind placebo-controlled study of 571 children in daycare centres in Finland, milk fortified with *L. GG* reduced the number and severity of respiratory infections. The effects of the probiotic were modest but consistent (Hatakka et al 2001).

A 9-week, three-stage, pre- and post-intervention trial with 52 healthy middle-aged and elderly volunteers found that dietary consumption of *L. rhamnosus* HN001, in a base of low-fat milk or lactose-hydrolysed low-fat milk, enhanced systemic cellular immune responses. The phagocytic activity of peripheral blood polymorphonuclear leucocytes and in vitro tumouricidal activity of NK leucocytes increased by 19% and 15%, respectively. The relative level of NK-cell tumour killing activity increased by 71% and 147% (Sheih et al 2001).

**DOSAGE RANGE**

- As more information is gathered from probiotic research, it is becoming evident that certain strains or combination of strains are suitable for different conditions. Different strains of probiotics are chosen and combined to produce specific products for diarrhoea in children, antibiotic-induced diarrhoea, travellers’ diarrhoea, inflammatory bowel diseases etc.
• Probiotic doses are usually standardised in terms of the amount of living bacteria per unit of volume. A quality product may contain between $1 \times 10^9$ and $1 \times 10^{11}$ colony-forming units/g; however, the dose required to achieve therapeutic effects varies between strains. If a product contains multiple strains then each strain should be present at levels of $10^9$ to be effective. The viable bacteria are mixed in a suitable matrix, which may contain maltodextrin, amylase and prebiotics such as fructo-oligosaccharides and inulin.

• Supplements are best taken with meals to enhance bacterial survival.
• Diarrhoea: generally *Saccharomyces boulardii* and sometimes lactobacilli.
• Atopic dermatitis: generally lactobacilli, sometimes together with bifidobacteria.
• Cholesterol-lowering: lactobacilli are used.
• Urinary tract infection: lactobacilli are used.
• Vaginal candidiasis: lactobacilli are used.
  * A serving of yoghurt containing less than $10^8$ viable bacteria is unlikely to have any therapeutic activity beyond acting as a nutritional source.

**Clinical note — Dosages tailored to increase probiotic survival**
Several attempts have been made to ensure the survival of the probiotics through the acid environment of the stomach and exposure to bile acid. Microencapsulating the probiotics is one method that has been used (Kailasapathy 2002). Enteric-coated tablets containing probiotics that are gastric-acid resistant have also been produced (Stadler & Viernstein 2003). More studies, however, are needed to examine the efficacy of these administration forms to deliver and release the probiotic at the appropriate target sites in the gastrointestinal tract. Studies are also needed to establish if such measures are actually necessary. With a suitable matrix, a probiotic powder may survive the passage through the digestive tract without either microencapsulation or enteric-coating of tablets.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
There have only been two documented adverse reactions. In a 74-year-old diabetic patient with hypertension, and in a 67-year-old patient with endocarditis undergoing tooth extraction, *L. rhamnosus* preparations caused adverse reaction. The causality was not established (Sanders 2003) and details are scant.

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**
No adverse drug interactions have been reported.
ANTIBIOTICS
Concomitant administration of probiotics (lactobacilli and *Saccharomyces boulardii*) reduces gastrointestinal and genitourinary side effects according to clinical studies — combination can be safely used together and a beneficial interaction is likely.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Specific strains of probiotics are appropriated for different disorders. Certain strains are suitable for children.

Probiotics are contraindicated in those people who are hypersensitive to any component of the probiotics-containing product.

PREGNANCY USE
Likely to be safe in pregnancy; however, use of concentrated forms should be supervised by a healthcare professional.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- There is good clinical evidence that probiotics may be beneficial in the treatment of infant diarrhoea, travellers’ diarrhoea, acute diarrhoea, antibiotic-induced diarrhoea, urogenital infections, irritable bowel syndrome, inflammatory bowel diseases, *H. pylori* infections, food intolerances and allergies, leaky gut and eczema.
- There is also some evidence that probiotics are essential for both the development and maintenance of a healthy immune system.
- There is some evidence that probiotics have a modest effect improving the LDL:HDL-cholesterol ratio.
- Probiotics can be administered orally or intravaginally. They can also be taken as yoghurt or other cultured dairy products. It should be noted that only products containing actual probiotic strains will be beneficial. The so-called starter cultures do not necessarily have the same beneficial effects.
- Although probiotics may improve the long-term bowel flora, probiotic supplementation has other benefits not associated with direct colonisation of the gastrointestinal tract.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What can probiotics do for me?
Probiotics are beneficial in the treatment of digestive disorders such as diarrhoea and inflammatory bowel diseases and other conditions not directly connected with the digestive tract. Clinical studies have found probiotics to be beneficial in the treatment of antibiotic-induced and travellers’ diarrhoea, for vaginal thrush and recurrent cystitis, irritable bowel syndrome, colitis, food allergies and eczema.
When will they start to work?
Probiotics can start to exert beneficial effects in digestive disorders within a few days. Long-term benefits are seen after weeks to months of continuous use. Greater results may be obtained if the so-called prebiotics are also added to the diet. Prebiotics refer to the use of compounds that modify the environment of the gastrointestinal tract to favour proliferation of the intestinal microflora. Herbal and nutritional prebiotics include the fibre known as slippery elm (Ulmus fulva), oligofructose and inulin.

Are there any safety issues?
Many species of probiotics are integral to the production of fermented foods and have been consumed safely as part of the daily diet for millennia. Other probiotics used as supplements are actually normal, non-pathogenic inhabitants of the human intestinal tract. There have been no reports of probiotics interacting with prescription medication.

REFERENCES


Reid G. Could probiotics be an option for treating and preventing urogenital infections? Medscape Gen Med 3:4, 2001a

Psyllium

Historical note  Psyllium has a long history of use in both conventional and traditional medical systems and has been listed in various pharmacopoeias around the world.

OTHER NAMES
Psyllium, plantain or isphaghula.

White or blond psyllium, also known as Indian plantago or isphaghula, is produced from the seeds of Plantago ovata.

Black, French or Spanish psyllium comes from P. psyllium (syn. P. afra) and P. arenaria (P. indica).

Plantago mucilage refers to psyllium husk (isphaghula, P. ovata).

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Plantago ovata, P. psyllium, P. arenaria (family Plantago)

PLANT PART USED
Seed coat

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Plantago ovata has the highest amount of seed coat.

 Constituents of the seed husk include 10–30% mucilage (arabinoxylans), iridoid glycosides (≈0.14% aucubin), trace monoterpenes alkaloids, sugars, protein, sterols, triterpenes, fatty acids and tannins.

MAIN ACTIONS

BULKING AGENT
The husk is a water-soluble fibre that forms a mucilaginous gel on contact with aqueous fluids and is degraded by human intestinal flora.

PROMOTES SATIETY
A placebo-controlled study of a P. ovata preparation administered in water found a significant difference in satiety 1 hour after consumption (Turnbull & Thomas 1995). Increased satiety was apparent up to 6 hours after consumption.

LIPID-LOWERING
Two main theories have been proposed to explain the lipid-lowering effect of psyllium. First, psyllium sequesters bile salts during passage through the intestinal
lumen and second, it physically disrupts the intraluminal formation of micelles, thereby reducing the absorption of cholesterol and re-absorption of bile salts. In both cases, bound bile acids are moved to the terminal ileum and colon, thereby interrupting the enterohepatic circulation so that more cholesterol is converted into newly produced bile acids. Reduced cholesterol biosynthesis results in upregulation of LDL receptors and enhanced uptake of LDL-cholesterol. Overall, the combined effects result in decreased serum LDL-cholesterol and total cholesterol (Rodriguez-Moran et al 1998).

**SLOWS GLUCOSE ABSORPTION**
Psyllium supplementation delays gastric emptying and small-bowel motility and reduces intestinal mixing, thereby slowing and reducing glucose absorption.

**CLINICAL USE**
Psyllium is used mainly for its mucilage content, which comes from the seed coat.

**BULKING AGENT**
Psyllium is commonly used as a bulking agent to treat constipation or diarrhoea and to regulate stool consistency in people with a colostomy or ileostomy. As a bowel regulator, psyllium husk absorbs water in the colon to increase faecal bulk, which stimulates peristaltic activity. Alternatively, the antidiarrhoeal effect is promoted when taken with minimal fluids but can give rise to abdominal discomfort.

Commission E approves the use of black psyllium seed and blond psyllium seed for chronic constipation and when a soft stool is desirable, such as in patients with haemorrhoids, anal fissures or post-rectal surgery (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**WEIGHT LOSS AID**
Psyllium is used to increase the subjective feeling of satiety before and between meals in an attempt to reduce total caloric intake. One study comparing *Plantago ovata* preparation (20 g granules with 200 mL water) to water or a placebo preparation found a significant difference in fullness 1 hour after consumption (Turnbull & Thomas 1995). Other studies have confirmed a suppressant effect on hunger and increased satiety that remains apparent up to 6 hours after consumption. Psyllium also significantly delays gastric emptying from the third hour after a meal (Bergmann et al 1992, Delargy et al 1997).

**HYPERLIPIDAEMIA**
Psyllium is also used as a cholesterol-lowering agent, usually as an adjunct to a low-fat diet (Reid et al 2002). Soluble fibres, such as psyllium husk, increase the cholesterol-lowering effect of a low-fat diet in people with elevated cholesterol.
(Anderson et al 2000). A meta-analysis of eight studies evaluating the cholesterol-lowering effects of psyllium (10.2 g/day) as an adjunct to a low-fat diet for at least 8 weeks found it lowered serum total cholesterol by 4%, LDL-cholesterol by 7% and the ratio of apolipoprotein (apo) B to apo A-I by 6% relative to placebo. It has also been used with some success in the paediatric population and is easy to incorporate into various foods (Davidson et al 1996).

**DIABETES**

Fibre products such as psyllium have been used as an aid to metabolic control in patients with diabetes (Pittler & Ernst 2004, Sierra et al 2002). Epidemiological and clinical data suggests a role for both soluble and insoluble fibre products in the management of hyperglycaemia. It appears that soluble fibre has a dose-dependent effect on serum glucose levels and the insulin response to a meal, improves glycaemic control in type 2 diabetes and can reduce the amount of medication required (Pastors et al 1991). One clinical study using 14 g/day of psyllium (Plantaben, ALTANA Pharma, Mexico) showed a significant 12.2% reduction in glucose absorption, as well as a significant reduction in total cholesterol and LDL-cholesterol and also uric acid (Sierra et al 2002). Another study identified that a higher dose (20 g/day in divided doses) may produce better results and significantly lowers both basal and postprandial hyperglycaemia (Frati-Munari et al 1989).

**IRRITABLE BOWEL SYNDROME**

In recent years, high-fibre diets and fibre supplements have been commonly recommended in primary- and secondary-care management of IBS. This has been particularly the case for people with IBS characterised by constipation. However, a systematic review of the role of different types of fibre in IBS concluded that insoluble fibre can exacerbate IBS symptoms and that although soluble fibre can benefit patients with constipation, it does not have a significant effect on abdominal pain (Bijkerk et al 2004).

Black and blond psyllium seed is approved for use by Commission E in IBS and recommended when a soft stool is desired (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**OTHER USES**

In the confectionery industry, it is used as a thickening agent in ice cream and frozen desserts.
**DOSAGE RANGE**

**GENERAL RECOMMENDATIONS**

- **Blond psyllium seed:** 12–40 g of whole seeds or equivalent taken in divided doses daily.
- **Black psyllium seed:** 10–30 g of whole or ground seeds or equivalent taken in divided doses daily.
  
  Seeds should be presoaked in 100–150 mL of warm water for several hours before ingestion. Each dose should be followed by another full glass of water.
- **Powdered blond psyllium seed husk:** 4–5 g taken up to four times daily. Stir desired dose into 150 mL of water and drink immediately. Follow each dose with ½–1 glass of water.

**ACCORDING TO CLINICAL STUDIES**

- **Weight loss:** *Plantago ovata* preparation (20 g granules with 200 mL water)
- **Hyperlipidaemia:** 10.2 g daily
- **Diabetes:** 14–20 g daily (in divided doses)

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**

**CALCIUM**

Animal studies suggest that soluble fibre from sources of purified psyllium negatively impact calcium balance by decreasing the bioavailability of calcium from the diet (Luccia & Kunkel 2002) — psyllium and other soluble fibre supplements should be taken at least 1 hour before or after calcium.

**IRON**

Soluble fibre may decrease the bioavailability of iron (EMEA 2003) — take psyllium at least 1 hour before or after iron.

**ZINC**

Soluble fibre may decrease the bioavailability of zinc (EMEA 2003) — take psyllium at least 1 hour before or after zinc.

**LITHIUM**

Soluble fibre may decrease the bioavailability of lithium (EMEA 2003) — take psyllium at least 1 hour before or after lithium.

**COUMARIN DERIVATIVES**

Soluble fibre may decrease the bioavailability of coumarin derivatives (EMEA 2003) — take psyllium at least 1 hour before or after coumarin derivatives.
**VITAMIN B12**
Soluble fibre may decrease the bioavailability of vitamin B12 (EMEA 2003) — take psyllium at least 1 hour before or after vitamin B12.

**CARDIAC GLYCOSIDES**
Soluble fibre may decrease the bioavailability of cardiac glycosides (EMEA 2003) — take psyllium at least 1 hour before or after cardiac glycosides.

**HYPOGLYCAEMIC AGENTS**
Additive hypoglycaemic effects are theoretically possible — drug dose may need modification and the outcome can be favourable under professional supervision.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
Allergy is possible, although rare and is characterised by tightness in the chest, wheezing and urticaria. Psyllium should not be consumed dry as it may cause oesophageal obstruction. In practice, it is not unusual for people to experience flatulence, bloating and mild abdominal discomfort when they start to use psyllium; however, these symptoms can reduce with long-term use.

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**
Although psyllium is considered a safe substance, it should not be used by people with partial or complete bowel obstruction, colonic impaction or stenosis of the gastrointestinal tract.

According to Commission E, blond psyllium seed is contraindicated if there is difficulty regulating diabetes mellitus.

**PREGNANCY USE**
May be used during pregnancy and lactation.

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**
- Psyllium seed husk is a water-soluble fibre that forms a mucilaginous gel on contact with aqueous fluids and is degraded by human intestinal flora.
- It is most commonly used to treat constipation or diarrhoea and to regulate stool consistency.
- It is also used to promote satiety and weight loss, and as an aid to metabolic control in diabetes and hyperlipidaemia when combined with a low-fat diet.
- The seeds should be presoaked in warm water for several hours before ingestion and each dose should be followed by a full glass of water. Ingesting it dry may cause oesophageal obstruction.
- Although generally safe, it should not be used by people with partial or complete bowel obstruction, colonic impaction or stenosis of the gastrointestinal tract.
ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What will this herb do for me?
Psyllium is a bulking agent that can regulate stool consistency, increase satiety, improve metabolic control in diabetes and reduce cholesterol when combined with a low-fat diet.

When will it start to work?
As a bulking agent, it will start to have an effect within several hours. It will improve satiety within 30–60 minutes and has a mild cholesterol lowering effect after 8 weeks of use.

Are there any safety issues?
Although generally safe, it should not be ingested dry or used by people with partial or complete bowel obstruction, colonic impaction or stenosis of the gastrointestinal tract.

REFERENCES
Pygeum

Historical note  *Pygeum africanum* is a large, evergreen tree native to Africa. Its bark has been used medicinally for thousands of years by traditional African healers to treat bladder disorders, kidney disease, prostate disorders, and malaria, as well as male baldness and to enhance sexual functioning. Since the late 1960s, the extract has been used in clinical practice in Europe; however, because of over-harvesting, the plant is now considered an endangered species and efforts are underway to protect it.

**COMMON NAME**
Pygeum

**OTHER NAMES**
African plum tree, African prune tree, alumty, iluo, kirah, natal tree, Pigenil, Pronitol, Provol, Tadenan

**BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY**
*Prunus africana* (Hook. f.) KalRm (family Rosaceae)

**PLANT PART USED**
Bark

**Clinical note — Popular to the point of extinction?**
For the past 35 years, pygeum has been used in Europe for the treatment of BPH and other disorders. The bark is entirely wild-collected, mainly from Cameroon, Madagascar, Equatorial Guinea and Kenya, and exported principally to Europe for production into commercial medicinal extracts (Stewart 2003). Since 1995, it has been considered an endangered species so attempts at cultivation are underway to protect the plant from extinction. Prior to 1966 when it was discovered to have significant medicinal effects, *Prunus africana* was a relatively common, but never abundant species. The reasons for its demise include economic, social, and ecological factors. Currently, wild-crafting is no longer commercially viable in Cameroon and harvest has ceased in both Uganda and Kenya.

**CHEMICAL COMPONENTS**
Phytosterols (beta-sitosterol, beta-sitostenone), pentacyclic triterpenes (oleanolic and ursolic acids), and ferulic esters (n-docosanol and n-tetracosanol) (Stewart 2003).
**MAIN ACTIONS**
Pygeum has demonstrated several different pharmacological effects according to in vitro and in vivo data; however, these are not well defined.

**HORMONAL EFFECTS**
In vivo studies have shown that orally administered pygeum extract has a significant effect on dihydrotestosterone (DHT)-induced prostatic enlargement (Choo et al. 2000, Yoshimura et al. 2003). Pretreatment with pygeum extract counteracted the effect of DHT-induced prostate enlargement (Choo et al. 2000), and the more recent study found that oral administration of pygeum extract suppressed the effects of DHT on micturition (Yoshimura et al. 2003) and effectively suppressed prostatic growth when co-administered with DHT; however, it did not reverse established prostatic growth when administered after DHT.

Phytoestrogens found in pygeum can exert either an oestrogenic or anti-oestrogenic effect depending on the dose, according to other in vivo tests (Mathe et al. 1995) and may also contribute to its effects in the prostate.

**ANTI-INFLAMMATORY**
Phytosterols (beta-sitosterol, beta-sitostenone) reportedly inhibit the production of prostaglandins in the prostate, which suppresses the inflammatory symptoms associated with BPH and chronic prostatitis. The pentacyclic triterpenes (oleanolic and ursolic acids) are believed to inhibit the activity of glucosyl-transferase, an enzyme involved in the inflammation process (Stewart 2003).

Studies with pygeum extract confirm that it decreases production of leukotrienes and other 5-lipoxygenase metabolites (Cristoni et al. 2000).

**BLADDER EFFECTS**
Pygeum protects the bladder from contractile dysfunction induced by ischaemia and reperfusion according to in vivo studies. Studies with rabbit models have shown that pretreatment can prevent the bladder from developing contractile and biochemical dysfunctions induced by partial outlet obstruction, possibly by protecting the bladder from ischaemic injury (Levin et al. 2005). It has also been shown that treatment can reverse these dysfunctions when started 2 weeks post obstruction. Past studies have used very high doses to achieve these results; however, the recent study using a clinically relevant dose found treatment was still effective (Levin et al. 2005).

**INHIBITION OF FIBROBLAST PROLIFERATION**
Pygeum is a potent inhibitor of prostatic fibroblast proliferation, as demonstrated in an animal model (Yablonsky et al. 1997). As a result, it has been suggested that part
of the herb’s therapeutic effect may be due to the inhibition of growth factors responsible for prostatic overgrowth.

**OTHER ACTIONS**
Ferulic esters (n-docosanol and n-tetracosanol) reportedly lower blood levels of cholesterol, from which testosterone is produced (Stewart 2003).

**CLINICAL USE**
The most commonly studied product is Tadenan (Laboratoires DEBAT, Garches, France), which is a lipophilic extract standardised to contain 12–13% total sterols.

**BENIGN PROSTATIC HYPERPROLIFERATION**
A Cochrane systematic review analysed the results of 18 clinical trials that involved a total of 1562 participants (Wilt et al 2002). Seventeen studies were double-blinded and the mean treatment duration was 61 ± 21 days (range 30–122 days). Most studies used a standardised extract of *P. africanum* in doses ranging from 75 to 200 mg/day.

Twelve of the 13 placebo-controlled studies reported a beneficial effect on at least one parameter (overall symptoms, nocturia, peak urine flow, or residual volume), whereas one study found no significant effects. The overall summary effect size indicated a large and statistically significant improvement with *P. africanum*. More specifically, active treatment increased peak urine flow by 23%, reduced residual urine volume by 24% and physicians were twice as likely to report their patients were experiencing an overall improvement in symptoms when pygeum was being used. The authors report that these findings are similar to other widely used treatment options and that treatment was well tolerated.

It is believed that the phytosterols, pentacyclic triterpenes and ferulic esters found within the extract work synergistically to counteract the structural and biochemical changes associated with BPH.

**OTHER USES**

**FERTILITY DISORDERS**
Pygeum extract was used experimentally in the treatment of 22 men with reduced fertility and diminished prostatic secretion and proved to have a beneficial effect (Lucchetta et al 1984). Treatment was administered daily over 2 months and was most effective in men who did not have prostatitis.

**DOSAGE RANGE**

**ACCORDING TO CLINICAL STUDIES**
- BPH: 50–100 mg twice daily of extract standardised to 12–13% total sterols
ADVERSE REACTIONS
Pygeum is well tolerated with side-effects similar to placebo (Wilt et al 2002). Mild gastrointestinal discomfort has been reported.

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
None known.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
People with known allergies should avoid use.

PREGNANCY USE
Safety not scientifically established; however, it is not used for any indication that would cause a pregnant woman to use it.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
• Pygeum is a popular treatment in Europe for benign prostatic hypertrophy.
• A systematic review of 18 clinical studies found it has significant effects in BPH such as increasing peak urine, reducing residual urine volume and producing an overall improvement in symptoms.
• Several different mechanisms of action have been identified using animal models which would explain its effectiveness in BPH.
• According to clinical studies the dose used is 50–100 mg twice daily of standardised extract for BPH and the treatment is well tolerated.
• Over-harvesting has meant the tree is now considered endangered and efforts are being made to protect it from extinction.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this herb do for me?
Standardised pygeum extract is an effective treatment in benign prostate enlargement or inflammation and improves several symptoms.

When will it start to work?
Some men will notice an improvement in symptoms after 4 weeks; however, others will require longer term treatment.

Are there any safety issues?
It is a well tolerated treatment but should not be used by people with a known allergy to the plant. If symptoms worsen, seek professional advice.

REFERENCES

Pygeum 973

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
Quercetin

BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS
Quercetin is a flavonol belonging to a group of polyphenolic substances known as flavonoids or bioflavonoids. The first flavonoids were identified in 1936 by Albert Szent-Györgyi, who was awarded the Nobel Prize for his discovery of vitamin C (Challem 1998).

Studies on the absorption, bioavailability, and metabolism of quercetin after oral intake in humans have produced contradictory results (Graefe et al 1999). The nature of quercetin metabolites in plasma is currently unclear and requires further elucidation (Day & Williamson 2001), which may in part explain these inconsistencies.

There appears to be marked individual variation in absorption rates ranging from 0% to over 50% (Erlund 2004, Graefe et al 1999). Factors that may improve bioavailability include: gender (especially females taking oral contraceptives), gastrointestinal flora (Erlund 2004), and concurrent intake of bromelain and papain (Shoskes et al 1999). Absorption from onions is three times that of apples (Hollman et al 1997) and twice that of black tea (deVries et al 1998).

The main determinant for the absorption of quercetin conjugates is the nature of the sugar moiety. Glucose-bound glycosides (quercetin glucosides) are effectively absorbed from the small intestine because the cells possess glucoside-hydrolysing activity and their glucose transport system is capable of participating in glucoside absorption, whereas quercetin glycosides are subject to deglycosidation by enterobacteria before absorption in the large intestine (Murota & Terao 2003).

After absorption, quercetin is transported to the liver via the portal circulation, where it undergoes significant first pass metabolism. Peak plasma levels of quercetin occur from 0.7 to 9 hours following ingestion, and the elimination half-life of quercetin is approximately 23–28 hours (Hollman et al 1997, PDRHealth 2005). Due to its long half-life, repeated consumption of quercetin-containing foods should cause accumulation of quercetin in the body. Excretion is likely to be via the biliary system (Erlund 2004).

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Quercetin, also known as meletin and sophretin, is known chemically as 2-(3,4-dihydroxyphenyl)-3,5,7-trihydroxy-4H-1-benzopyran-4-one and 3,3',4,4',5,7-pentahydroxyflavone. It is typically found in plants as a glycone or carbohydrate conjugate, but does not in itself possess a carbohydrate moiety in its structure.
Quercetin glycone conjugates include rutin (quercetin-3-rutinoside) and quercitrin (thujin, quercetin-3-L-rhamnoside, or 3-rhamnosylquercetin) (Erlund et al 2000, PDRHealth).

**FOOD SOURCES**
Apples, berries (blackcurrants, lingonberries and bilberries), beans, black tea, green tea, onions, red wine.

Herbal medicines such as St John’s wort, Ginkgo biloba, Vaccinium macrocarpon (cranberry) and Oenothera biennis (evening primrose) also contain quercetin and this may help to explain some of their therapeutic benefits.

**MAIN ACTIONS**

**ANTIOXIDANT**
Quercetin is a phenolic antioxidant and has been shown to inhibit lipid peroxidation, protecting the lens of the eye (Cornish et al 2002) and renal tubular epithelial cells from oxidant-induced injury (Pietruck et al 2003). The antioxidant activity may be the result of free radical scavenging, metal chelation, enzyme inhibition or the induction of protective enzymes (Erlund 2004).

Quercetin treatment for short periods exerts an antioxidant effect whereas long-term treatment may produce an increase in oxidant activity due to a reduction in glutathione (GSH) levels (Ferraresi et al 2005). In the absence of GSH, potentially harmful oxidation products such as orthoquinone may be produced when quercetin exerts its antioxidant activity. Therefore, adequate GSH levels should be maintained when quercetin is supplemented (Boots et al 2003).

**ANTI-INFLAMMATORY**
In animal and in vitro studies quercetin inhibits inflammation by modulating neutrophil function, prostanoid synthesis, cytokine production, and iNOS expression via the inhibition of the NF-kappa-B pathway (Busse et al 1984, Comalada et al 2005, Morikawa et al 2003).

**ANTIVIRAL**
Quercetin causes a dose-dependent reduction in the infectivity and intracellular replication of HSV-1, polio-virus type 1, parainfluenza virus type 3 and respiratory syncytial virus in vitro (Kaul et al 1985); however, pretreatment with quercetin does not appear to provide any additional benefit. Animal studies have also suggested that the antioxidant effects of quercetin may protect the lungs from the deleterious effects of oxygen-derived free radicals released during influenza infection (Kumar et al 2005).
IMMUNOMODULATION
Results from animal and in vitro studies have produced contradictory results suggesting both an induction and inhibition of Th1 cytokines (Muthian & Bright 2004, Nair et al 2002).

According to in vitro data quercetin induces Th1-derived cytokines (promoting cellular immunity) and inhibits Th2-derived cytokines, which exert negative effects on cellular immunity (Nair et al 2002). An excess of Th2 cytokines has also been implicated in allergic tendencies, which provides a theoretical basis for the use of quercetin as an anti-allergic substance. Conversely animal studies have demonstrated that quercetin is able to inhibit Th1 differentiation and signalling of IL-12 (Muthian & Bright 2004). As this occurred in the presence of a Th1 cell-mediated inflammatory demyelinating autoimmune disease model of multiple sclerosis suggestive of Th1 excess, a possibility exists that quercetin actually exerts an immunomodulatory effect on these cells. Further trials are required to elucidate the exact effects of quercetin under different conditions.

ANTI-ALLERGY
Quercetin is structurally similar to the anti-allergic drug disodium cromoglycate (cromolyn). In vitro and animal studies demonstrate that quercetin stabilises mast cells, neutrophils and basophils inhibiting antigen- as well as mitogen-induced histamine release (Blackburn et al 1987, Busse et al 1984, Middleton & Drzewiecki 1982, Middleton et al 1981, Ogasawara et al 1996, Pearce et al 1984). Inhibition of inflammatory enzymes, prostaglandins and leukotrienes, and modulation of Th2 excess may further contribute to the anti-allergic effects. Pretreatment with quercetin does not appear to produce any additional benefits.

ANTIHYPERTENSIVE
Chronic treatment with quercetin lowers blood pressure and restores endothelial dysfunction in animal models of hypertension (Garcia-Saura et al 2005, Sanchez et al 2006).

CARDIOPROTECTIVE
During inflammation, circulating conjugates of quercetin pass through the endothelium to reach vascular smooth muscle cells where they exert their biological effects and are then deconjugated (Mochizuki et al 2004).

Animal experiments indicate that doses of quercetin equivalent to 1–2 glasses of red wine exerts a cardioprotective effect following ischaemia–reperfusion by improving the function of mitochondria, which play a critical role in myocardial recovery (Brookes et al 2002) and may also prevent the development of atherosclerosis through several indirect mechanisms (Auger et al 2005). In humans quercetin inhibits platelet aggregation and signalling and thrombus formation at doses of 150 mg or 300 mg quercetin-4’-O-beta-D-glucoside (Hubbard et al 2004). This effect, however, may not occur with clinically relevant doses.

**NEUROPROTECTIVE**
Quercetin protects neuronal cells from oxidative stress-induced neurotoxicity (Heo & Lee 2004) and inflammatory-related neuronal injury (Chen et al 2005).

**GASTROPROTECTIVE**
It has been suggested that the gastroprotective effect of quercetin in animal models may be due to its antiperoxidative, antioxidant and antihistaminic effects, resulting in a significant reduction in the number of mast cells and size of gastric erosions (Kahraman et al 2003).

**HEPATOPROTECTIVE**
In vitro and animal studies have demonstrated the hepatoprotective effects of quercetin. It protects the liver from oxidative damage and may reduce biliary obstruction (Alia et al 2006, Peres et al 2000). Pretreatment of rats with quercetin (10 mg/kg) reduced the mortality rate from paracetamol (1 g/kg) from 100% to 30% and prevented liver damage at sublethal doses (640 mg/kg) (Janbaz et al 2004).

**CHEMOPROTECTIVE**
In the 1970s quercetin was considered to be carcinogenic after demonstrating mutagenicity in the Ames test; however subsequent long-term studies have refuted this and demonstrated an anticarcinogenic effect in laboratory animals (Erlund 2004).

**ALDOSE REDUCTASE INHIBITION**
Quercetin has been shown to inhibit human lens aldose reductase by 50% in vitro (Chaudhry et al 1983) and may be responsible for the reduction in cataract formation observed in diabetic rats receiving either dietary or topical quercetin (Beyer-Mears & Farnsworth 1979).

**PREVENTING BONE LOSS**
Quercetin is claimed to play an important role in preventing bone loss by affecting osteoclastogenesis and regulating many systemic and local factors, including hormones and cytokines (Son et al 2006), providing a theoretical basis for its use in the prevention of postmenopausal bone loss. In vitro studies demonstrate that bone resorption is mediated by oestrogen-receptor proteins through the inhibition of RANK protein or the activation of caspases (Rassi et al 2005, Wattel et al 2003). However, in vitro studies also suggest that quercetin inhibits the metabolism of not only osteoclasts (bone-resorption cells), but also osteoblasts (bone-forming cells) and therefore further research is required to elucidate whether quercetin increases or decreases bone mass in vivo (Notoya et al 2004).

**OTHER ACTIONS**
Possible modulation of P-glycoprotein (Choi & Li 2005, Hsiu et al 2002, Limtrakul et al 2005) and inhibition of CYP1A1 (Schwarz et al 2005), CYP1A2 (Chang et al 2005) and CYP 3A4 (Choi & Li 2005) activity have been reported.

**CLINICAL USE**

**ALLERGIES**
Quercetin is used in the treatment of acute and chronic allergic symptoms, such as hayfever and chronic rhinitis. The anti-inflammatory activity of quercetin and its ability to stabilise mast cells, neutrophils and basophils and inhibit histamine release (Blackburn et al 1987, Busse et al 1984, Middleton & Drzewiecki 1982, Middleton et al 1981, Ogasawara et al 1996, Pearce et al 1984) provides a rationale for its use in these indications.

In a study of 123 patients sensitised to house dust mite and displaying nasal symptoms of mild to severe perennial allergic rhinitis (Otsuka et al 1995), nasal scrapings were taken and histamine release measured as a percentage of the total content in the specimen. Antigen exposure resulted in an increase in mast cells of the epithelial layer of the nasal mucosa resulting in nasal hypersensitivity. Quercetin inhibited histamine release by 46–96% in a dose-dependent manner.

Large-scale human trials are required to fully elucidate the potential for quercetin to inhibit allergic symptoms caused by the release of histamine.

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
**ASTHMA**
Quercetin has also been used as an adjunct in the management of asthma, often in combination with vitamin C because of its anti-allergic activity and ability to inhibit leukotriene synthesis (Formica & Regelson 1995). Controlled studies are still required to determine its effectiveness.

**PREVENTING DIABETIC COMPLICATIONS**
As quercetin has been shown to inhibit aldose reductase, the first enzyme in the polyol pathway, a theoretical basis exists for its use in the prevention of long-term diabetic complications such as cataracts, nephropathy, retinopathy and neuropathy (Chaudhry et al 1983). Quercetin may also provide beneficial effects in people with diabetes by decreasing oxidative stress and preserving pancreatic beta-cell integrity (Coskun et al 2005).

Preliminary evidence suggests a possible antinociceptive activity of quercetin, probably through modulation of opioidergic mechanism, suggesting a potential for the treatment of diabetic neuropathic pain (Anjaneyulu & Chopra 2003). Topical application of quercetin in combination with ascorbyl palmitate and vitamin D3 has been tested in a randomised, placebo-controlled, double-blind trial of 34 men and women (age 21–71 years) with diabetic neuropathy. The QR-333 preparation or placebo was applied three times daily for 4 weeks to each foot experiencing symptoms. QR-333 was well tolerated and reduced the severity of numbness, jolting pain, and irritation from baseline values and improved QOL scores (Valensi et al 2005).

The diabetic status of rats fed high-dose quercetin (1 g/kg) was found to be ameliorated by approximately 25%; however, the amounts used were considerably higher than those commonly used in humans (Shetty et al 2004). Intraperitoneal injection of quercetin has also demonstrated an ability to improve glucose tolerance, and cholesterol and triglyceride levels in diabetic, but not normoglycaemic, rats and increase the number of pancreatic islets in both groups (Vessal et al 2003). However, these results cannot necessarily be applied to oral doses in humans and further research is required to confirm any potential benefits.

**CATARACTS**
In addition to the potential reduction in diabetic cataract formation afforded by the inhibition of aldose reductase (Chaudhry et al 1983), quercetin may also reduce oxidative stress associated with the initiation of maturity onset cataracts.

Cataracts may result from oxidative damage to the lens, which causes a disruption of the redox system, membrane damage, proteolysis, protein aggregation and a loss...
of lens transparency. Quercetin has been shown to inhibit oxidative damage to the lens and maintain lens transparency in vitro (Cornish et al 2002, Sanderson et al 1999). Further trials are warranted to confirm the effects of oral doses in humans.

**PREVENTING CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE**

The cardioprotective properties of quercetin, demonstrated in animal and in vitro studies, provide a theoretical basis for the use of quercetin in the prevention of cardiovascular disease; however, current human data is less encouraging.

A double-blind, placebo-controlled study investigating the effects of a quercetin-containing supplement on plasma quercetin status, risk factors for heart disease and serum/platelet fatty acid levels was conducted on 27 healthy men and women with cholesterol levels of 4.0–7.2 mmol/L (Conquer et al 1998). The subjects consumed a quercetin-containing supplement (1 g quercetin/day) or rice flour placebo for 28 days. Quercetin intakes were approximately 50-fold greater than dietary intakes previously associated with lower coronary heart disease mortality in epidemiologic studies. Plasma quercetin concentrations were approximately 23-fold greater in subjects consuming the quercetin capsules than in the placebo group. Quercetin supplementation did not alter serum total, LDL- or HDL-cholesterol or triglyceride levels, or other cardiovascular disease or thrombogenic risk factors such as platelet thromboxane B2 production, blood pressure or resting heart rate. This is in contrast to a previous trial (Hubbard et al 2004), which demonstrated inhibition of platelet aggregation and signalling and thrombus formation at doses of 150 mg or 300 mg quercetin-4’-O-beta-D-glucoside, were not reproduced using the dose and form in this study. There was also no effect on the levels of omega-3 or omega-6 polyunsaturated fatty acids in serum or platelet phospholipids (Conquer et al 1998). Further investigation with larger and longer term trials is required to determine the effects and safety of quercetin in the prevention of cardiovascular disease in humans.

**CHRONIC PROSTATITIS**

Thirty men with category IIIa or IIIb chronic pelvic pain syndrome received either placebo or quercetin 500 mg twice daily for 1 month. Sixty seven percent of the treated subjects had at least a 25% improvement in symptoms, compared to 20% of the placebo group. In a follow-up, unblinded, open-label study, 17 additional men received the same dose of quercetin (combined with bromelain and papain to enhance absorption) for 1 month. The combination increased the response rate from 67% to 82% (Shoskes et al 1999). The anti-inflammatory, antioxidant and immunomodulating activities of quercetin may help to explain these results.
CANCER
Early concerns that quercetin may be carcinogenic have not been supported by recent research. Quercetin is primarily found in fruit and vegetables, which have been shown to decrease the risk of certain human cancers when consumed regularly (Morrow et al 2001), thereby casting doubt on this proposition. In fact, the anticarcinogenic effects of quercetin seen in laboratory animals suggest a possible preventative role (Erlund 2004), and in vitro and epidemiological studies have suggested potential benefits in the prevention of colon (Kim et al 2005, Park et al 2005), lung (Schwarz et al 2005), prostate (Yuan et al 2004) and breast cancer (Otake et al 2000).

Human studies using extremely low dose supplementation of quercetin (30 mg/day) have so far provided more questions than answers about the exact mechanism/s by which quercetin may exert its effects but much remains unknown (Morrow et al 2001).

OTHER USES
Although the potential benefits of quercetin in allergic conditions have yet to be elucidated by human trials, quercetin is often used to treat conditions such as hayfever and other respiratory allergies and histamine-related conditions. In practice, quercetin is also commonly used to stabilise the integrity of blood vessel walls and address conditions resulting from capillary fragility and used in conjunction with vitamin C for the treatment of viral infections.

DOSAGE RANGE
GENERAL DOSE RANGE
• 200–1500 mg daily taken in divided doses (PDRHealth 2005, Spoerke & Rouse 2004)

SPECIFIC DOSES
• Chronic prostatitis: 500 mg (combined with bromelain and papain to enhance absorption) twice daily (Shoskes et al 1999)
• Acute allergies: 2 g every 2 hours for 2 days (often used with vitamin C)
• Chronic allergies: 2 g daily
• Asthma: as an adjunct to standard treatment 2 g daily

ADVERSE REACTIONS
Quercetin is generally well tolerated and appears to be associated with little toxicity when administered orally or intravenously (Lamson and Brignall 2000). Adverse effects may include nausea, dyspnoea, headache and mild tingling of the extremities (PDRHealth 2005, Spoerke & Rouse 2004).
SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS

CISPLATIN
Quercetin pretreatment may sensitisie human cervix carcinoma cells to cisplatin-induced apoptosis (Jakubowicz-Gil et al 2005) — beneficial interaction theoretically possible under professional supervision.

CYCLOSPORIN
Animal studies demonstrate that coadministration of quercetin significantly decreases the oral bioavailability of cyclosporin (Hsiu et al 2002) — avoid concurrent use.

DIGOXIN
An increase in drug bioavailability is theoretically possible and has been observed in an in vivo study. Although human studies at lower doses are not available, the narrow therapeutic range of digoxin and the serious nature of the interaction should not be underestimated. Avoid concurrent use.

DILTIAZEM
Pretreatment of rabbits with quercetin resulted in an increased bioavailability of the calcium channel blocker, diltiazem, which may be the result of inhibition of P-glycoprotein and CYP 3A4 (Choi & Li 2005). Caution — use under professional supervision; doses may need to be adjusted accordingly.

HALOPERIDOL
Tardive dyskinesia (rhythmlcal involuntary movements of the tongue, face, mouth or jaw e.g. protrusion of tongue, puffing of cheeks, puckering of mouth, chewing movements) may result from long-term therapy with the antipsychotic medication haloperidol and may be irreversible in some individuals with no known effective treatment. Oxidative stress and the products of lipid peroxidation have been implicated in the pathophysiology of tardive dyskinesia and co-administration of quercetin (25–100 mg/kg) has been shown to dose-dependently reduce haloperidol-induced vacuous chewing movements and tongue protrusions in animal models (Naidu et al 2003). Beneficial interaction theoretically possible under professional supervision.
PACLITAXEL
Pretreatment with quercetin may increase the bioavailability of paclitaxel according to animal studies (Choi et al 2004). Caution — use under professional supervision; doses may need to be adjusted accordingly.

PARACETAMOL
According to animal data, pretreatment with quercetin may reduce the risk of mortality from paracetamol overdose (Janbaz et al 2004). However, effects in humans have not been studied — beneficial interaction theoretically possible.

QUINOLONE ANTIBIOTICS
In vitro, quercetin binds to the DNA gyrase site in bacteria and therefore may theoretically compete with quinolone antibiotics that also bind to this site (PDRHealth 2005) — caution.

STIBANATE
Concurrent use of quercetin with the antileishmanial drug stibanate appears to improve the efficacy of the drug and reduce the anaemia and parasitaemia associated with the condition (Sen et al 2005) — beneficial interaction theoretically possible.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Hypersensitivity to quercetin.

PREGNANCY USE
Safety in pregnancy has not been established.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
• Quercetin is a flavonol belonging to a group of polyphenolic substances known as flavonoids or bioflavonoids and is found in many fruits, vegetables and some herbal medicines.
• According to experimental studies, it has antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, antiviral, mast cell stabilisation, neuroprotective, gastroprotective, hepatoprotective and possibly cardioprotective actions.
• In practice, it is used for respiratory allergies such as hayfever, as an adjunct in asthma management, preventing diabetic complications such as cataracts and symptom relief in prostatitis; however, large controlled studies are not available to determine its effectiveness.
• Numerous drug interactions are theoretically possible, mainly due to P-glycoprotein and CYP inhibition.
• Quercetin is generally well tolerated. Adverse effects may include nausea, dyspnoea, headache and mild tingling of the extremities.

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What will this supplement do for me?
Quercetin has several pharmacological effects and may provide some symptom relief in allergic conditions and prostatitis, and be beneficial in diabetes and cardiovascular disease; however, further research is required to clarify its effectiveness.

When will it start to work?
This will depend on the indication it is being used to treat.

Are there any safety issues?
Although it is generally well tolerated, numerous drug interactions are possible, so seek professional advice if taking other medication.

REFERENCES


Raspberry leaf

Historical note  Although the fruits of the raspberry are used as a luxury food source, midwives have used raspberry leaves since ancient times to prepare the uterus for childbirth. Raspberry has also been used as an antidiarrhoeal and an astringent to treat inflammations of the mucous membranes of the mouth and throat. It has also been used for disorders of the gastrointestinal and respiratory tracts and as an ingredient in dietary drinks.

COMMON NAME
Red raspberry

OTHER NAMES
Framboise, Rubi idaei folium, rubus

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Rubus idaeus (synonym: Rubus strigosus) (family Rosaceae [roses])

PLANT PART USED
Leaf

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Raspberry leaves have a tannin content of between 13% and 15%, as well as flavonoids such as rutin and quercetin, volatile oils, organic acids and vitamin C.

MAIN ACTIONS
Raspberry leaf contains a number of active constituents and their therapeutic actions have been reviewed (Patel et al 2004). Currently, evidence of activity comes from in vitro and in vivo studies.

UTERINE EFFECTS
Raspberry leaf has demonstrated a variable effect on uterine muscle tone. It contains a smooth muscle stimulant, an anticholinesterase and an antispasmodic. The results of animal studies indicate that raspberry can either reduce or initiate uterine contractions (Bamford et al 1970). It appears to inhibit uterine contractions in samples from pregnant test animals, but has no effect in non-pregnant ones. Samples from human pregnant uteri respond with contraction effects; however, no effect was seen on non-pregnant uteri samples. Overall, it appeared that raspberry leaf extract promoted more regular contractions that generally became less frequent (Newell et al
A more recent preliminary study produced similar results with fractions of raspberry leaf extract, both stimulating and relaxing uterine muscle in pregnant rats (Briggs & Briggs 1997). There is evidence of at least two components of raspberry leaf extract that exhibit relaxant activity in an in vitro guinea pig ileum preparation (Rojas-Vera et al 2002).

ANTIDIARRHOEAL
In addition to the high tannin content, which may exert an antidiarrhoeal action, raspberry cordial and juice were found to significantly reduce the growth of several species of bacteria, including Salmonella, Shigella and Escherichia coli, but no antimicrobial activity was detected in the leaf extract or tea (Ryan et al 2001).

ANTI-INFLAMMATORY
Raspberry leaf exhibits anti-inflammatory activity because of its high tannin content, which has been found to inhibit COX (Duke 2003). When applied topically to mucous membranes, tannins have a local anti-inflammatory effect, produce capillary vasoconstriction and decrease vascular permeability (Halvorsen et al 2001).

ASTRINGENT
The high tannin content of the leaf is responsible for the astringent activity.

OTHER ACTIONS
Raspberry ketone, which is an aromatic compound with similar structure to capsaicin and synephrine, has been shown in vivo to prevent and improve obesity and fatty liver though increasing norepinephrine-induced lipolysis in white adipocytes (Morimoto et al 2005).

CLINICAL USE
The therapeutic effects of raspberry have not been significantly investigated under clinical trial conditions, so most evidence is derived from traditional, in vitro and animal studies.

UTERINE TONIC
Raspberry leaf is commonly used as a ‘partus preparator’ to prepare the uterus for delivery and to facilitate labour, as well as for morning sickness, dysmenorrhoea, leukorrhoea and menorrhagia (McFarlin et al 1999).

In vitro studies using pregnant rat and human uteri preparations suggest that raspberry may increase the regularity and decrease the frequency of uterine contractions (Bamford et al 1970). In a double-blind trial of 192 low-risk nulliparous women, raspberry leaf (2 × 1.2 g/day), consumed from 32 weeks’ gestation until labour, was associated with a lower rate of interventions with no adverse effects for...
mother or baby (Simpson et al 2001). Raspberry leaf did not shorten the first stage of labour; however, it did significantly reduce the second stage. A retrospective, observational study of 108 mothers also found that treatment with raspberry leaf was associated with a lower rate of medical intervention (Parsons et al 1999). This study further suggested that treatment may shorten labour, and reduce the incidence of pre- and post-term labour. Some pregnant women commenced use of raspberry leaf from 8 weeks’ gestation; however, most chose to start it between 30 and 34 weeks’ gestation.

**TOPICAL INFLAMMATORY CONDITIONS**
The high tannin content of raspberry supports its traditional use as a topical treatment for inflammation of the mouth, throat, eye and skin, as well as to treat cuts and wounds.

**DIARRHOEA**
Once again, the high tannin content of raspberry supports its traditional use as an antidiarrhoeal agent.

**DYSPEPTIC COMPLAINTS**
Traditionally understood to act as a choleretic, raspberry is used to improve digestion and detoxifying processes, but controlled studies are not available to determine effectiveness.

**OTHER USES**
As well as a long tradition of use as a ‘women’s tonic’ to facilitate childbirth, cold infusions of raspberry leaf have been used to treat diarrhoea, loose bowels and stomach complaints in children. Raspberry leaf has traditionally been incorporated into mouthwashes to treat inflammation of the mouth and throat, used as a diaphoretic for fever, as a choleretic to improve digestion and detoxification, and as a food and flavouring agent. In a small, uncontrolled, prospective pilot study of eight women, raspberry leaf in combination with 11 other botanical extracts was found to relieve menopausal symptoms (Smolinski et al 2005).

**DOSAGE RANGE**

**INTERNAL USE**
- Infusion of dried leaf: 4–8 g taken up to three times daily.
- Liquid extract: (1:1): 4–8 mL three times daily.

**EXTERNAL USE**
- Topically, the tea can be used as a mouth or eye wash, or to clean wounds.
TOXICITY
There is no evidence that raspberry leaf tea is toxic.

ADVERSE REACTIONS
Owing to the tannin content of the herb, it may cause gastrointestinal discomfort.

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
IRON, CALCIUM, Magnesium
Due to its high tannin content, raspberry leaf may decrease absorption of iron, calcium and magnesium, as well as some drugs. As such, it is advised to separate the administration of these substances by at least 2 hours.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
The high tannin concentration within the herb means it should be avoided in constipation and used cautiously in active peptic ulcer and gastrointestinal conditions associated with inflammation.

PREGNANCY USE
Clinical studies suggest that it is safe to use after the first trimester, although it is prudent to ensure close professional supervision.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
• Raspberry leaves have been traditionally used to prepare the uterus for childbirth, with some modern research suggesting it may be useful.
• When used in this way, it is often combined with other herbs and used during the last 6–8 weeks of pregnancy while under close supervision.
• Raspberry leaves are high in tannins, which may make them useful as a mouthwash and to treat diarrhoea, although this has not been confirmed in clinical trials.
• As tannins may reduce the absorption of other substances, it is recommended to take raspberry leaf preparations separately from other medications. Raspberry leaf preparations can be considered safe and non-toxic.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this herb do for me?
Raspberry leaf preparations have been used since ancient times to prepare the uterus for birth in an attempt to facilitate a complication-free labour. It is also used to treat diarrhoea and dyspeptic complaints, and incorporated into a mouthwash to reduce inflammation of the mouth and throat.

When will it start to work?
Currently, there is insufficient research to answer this question. However, it is used in increasing doses during the last few weeks of pregnancy. Symptomatic relief of
diarrhoea and inflammation of the oral cavity is likely to occur within the first few doses.

**Are there any safety issues?**

Considering raspberry leaf has uterine activity, it is recommended that pregnant women wanting to use it do so under the careful supervision of an experienced healthcare professional.

**REFERENCES**


Red clover

Historical note Red clover has been used for a long time as an animal fodder as well as a human medicine. Traditionally, it is considered an alternative remedy with good cleansing properties useful in the treatment of skin diseases such as psoriasis, eczema and rashes. A strong infusion was used to ease whooping cough and other spasmodic coughs due to measles, bronchitis and laryngitis. It was recommended for ‘ulcers of every kind, and deep, ragged-edged, and otherwise badly-conditioned burns. It possesses a peculiar soothing property, proves an efficient detergent, and promotes a healthful granulation’. Combined with other herbs, red clover was recommended for syphilis, scrofula, chronic rheumatism, glandular and various skin affections (Felter & Lloyd 1983). Interestingly, red clover was not traditionally used for the treatment of menopausal symptoms.

OTHER NAMES  
Cow clover, meadow clover, purple clover, trifoil

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY  
Trifolium pratense L. (family Fabaceae)

PLANT PARTS USED  
Flower head or leaf

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS

FLOWER HEAD  
Flavonoids, including formononetin; flavonols, including isorhamnetin and quercetin glucosides; phenolic acids, including salicylic and p-coumaric acids; volatile oils and other constituents, including sitosterol, starch, fatty acids (BHMA 1983).

LEAF  
Isoflavones, including biochanin A, daidzein, formononetin and genistein; caffeic acid derivatives; and coumestrol (trace) (Clifton-Blish et al 2001, He et al 1996).

In the plant, the isoflavones are attached to a sugar molecule, usually glucose. The chemical term for any compound attached to a sugar is ‘glycoside’. The free isoflavone form is known as an ‘aglycone’. The active aglycone is liberated in the gut. Isoflavones are readily absorbed from the gut; they circulate freely in the blood and
are excreted in the urine; 50% of ingested isoflavones are eliminated within 12 hours (Joannou et al 1995).

The glycoside and aglycone forms of the four main oestrogenic isoflavones are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Glycoside</th>
<th>Aglycone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ononin</td>
<td>Formononetin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daidzin</td>
<td>Daidzein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sissotrin</td>
<td>Biochanin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genistin</td>
<td>Genistein</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Clinical note — Phyto-oestrogens and isoflavones**

Phyto-oestrogens are plant-based compounds that are structurally similar to oestradiol. The term phyto-oestrogen encompasses isoflavone compounds, such as genistein and daidzein, found predominantly in soya and red clover, and the lignans, such as matairesinol and secoisolariciresinol, found in many fruits, cereals and in linseed. Phyto-oestrogens have been investigated for their potential to reduce the risk of hormone-dependent diseases such as breast and prostate cancers and osteoporosis. The metabolism of isoflavones and lignans is complex and involves gut microbial processes. Isoflavones are present predominantly as glucosides; however, their bioavailability requires initial hydrolysis of the sugar moiety by intestinal [beta]-glucosidases. After absorption, phyto-oestrogens are reconjugated predominantly to glucuronic acid and to a lesser degree to sulfuric acid. There is further metabolism of isoflavones (to equol and O-desmethylangolensin) and lignans (to enterodiol and enterolactone) by gut bacteria. In humans, even those on controlled diets, there is large interindividual variation in the metabolism of isoflavones and lignans, particularly in the production of the gut bacterial metabolite equol (from daidzein). Dietary factors and gut microflora directly influence the absorption and metabolism of phyto-oestrogens and is likely to influence the clinical benefits of supplementation with phyto-oestrogens (Rowland et al 2003).
MAIN ACTIONS

OESTROGENIC ACTIVITY

The pharmacological investigation of red clover has mainly centred around the activity of the isoflavone constituents, especially their oestrogenic activity (Miksicek 1994). The isoflavones biochanin A, genistein and daidzein have varying levels of subtle oestrogenic activity, biochanin A having the strongest effect. Formononetin, however, has very little or no oestrogenic activity (Wong & Flux 1962). Red clover isoflavones have been shown to have an affinity for oestrogen alpha- and beta-receptors and may act as both agonists and antagonists, depending on the level of endogenous oestrogens (Nelson et al 2002, Zava et al 1998). Red clover extract, standardised to contain 15% isoflavones, produced a dose-dependent increase in uterine weight and differentiated vaginal cells, but did not stimulate cell proliferation in mammary glands in an ovariectomised rat model. The extract did not produce any anti-oestrogenic or additive oestrogenic effects when combined with 17-beta-oestradiol. These data suggest that red clover extract is weakly oestrogenic in the ovariectomised rat model (Burdette et al 2002).

REDUCING CANCER RISK

Phyto-oestrogens and isoflavones may reduce the risk of cancer, including breast cancer (Adlercreutz et al 1995, Clarke et al 1996, Ingram et al 1997, Pagliaaci et al 1994). Biochanin A isolated from red clover has been shown to be antimutagenic, as well as protective against chemically-induced DNA damage in vitro (Chan et al 2003). Genistein has been shown to inhibit cell proliferation and in vitro angiogenesis (Fotsis et al 1995).

An animal study has found that red clover isoflavones significantly increase oestrogen beta-receptor and E-cadherin expression, but decrease transforming growth factor beta-1. These proteins are markers of oestrogen-induced proliferation, preservation of cell phenotype and reduction of the potential for neoplastic and metastatic transformation. These results suggest that red clover isoflavones may be useful in the treatment of prostatic hyperplasia and reduce the risk of neoplastic transformation (Slater et al 2002). A recent study has reported that red clover-derived isoflavones significantly reduced non-malignant prostatic growth in mice by acting as anti-androgenic agents rather than weak oestrogenic substances (Jarred et al 2003).

CLINICAL USE

Considerable research has been carried out on the constituents of red clover. However, most of the investigations have been undertaken for agricultural rather
than medicinal purposes. Very few investigations have concentrated specifically on
the flower heads and the traditional uses.

**RELIEF OF MENOPAUSAL SYMPTOMS**

Although extracts standardised for soy isoflavone levels may help relieve symptoms,
such as hot flushes and other symptoms frequently associated with menopause
(Adlercreutz & Mazur 1997, Cassidy et al 1994), the evidence from red clover
isoflavones is less convincing.

A 2004 systematic review that included data from five trials published between
1966 until March 2004 concluded that phyto-oestrogens from red clover have not
been shown to reduce hot flushes (Krebs et al 2004). The trials were placebo-
controlled, involved a total of 400 women and tested a standardised red clover
isoflavone extract available commercially as Promensil (Novogen Ltd, Sydney, NSW,
Australia), which contains 40 mg isoflavones. Two of the smallest trials \(n = 30\) each
(Jerri & de Roma 2001, van de Weijer & Barentsen 2002) reported a significant
decrease in hot flush frequency; however, three, double-blind placebo-controlled
trials found little effect in reducing the incidence or severity of hot flushes (Baber et al
1999, Knight et al 1999, Tice et al 2003). The largest and highest quality study
involved 252 menopausal women, aged 45–60 years, who were experiencing at least
35 hot flushes per week (Tice et al 2003). After a 2-week placebo run-in, participants
were randomly assigned to Promensil (82 mg total isoflavones per day), Rimostil
(57 mg total isoflavones per day) or a placebo. The reductions in mean daily hot
flushes at 12 weeks were similar for all three groups. However, Promensil (but not
Rimostil) reduced hot flushes more rapidly than placebo. Although the study provides
some evidence for a biological effect of Promensil, neither supplement had a clinically
important effect on hot flushes or other symptoms of menopause.

One study not included in this review was an American open study of 23
postmenopausal women (aged 40–65 years) suffering vasomotor hot flushes, which
found that Promensil (standardised red clover isoflavone extract) containing 40 mg
isoflavones taken daily for 2–3 months significantly reduced the self-rated intensity of
hot flushes \(P < 0.001\). The mean endometrial thickness was unchanged and there
was no significant change in the mean fasting total cholesterol, LDL, HDL, glucose,
oestradiol, sex hormone binding globulin or FSH levels. There were no adverse effects
(Nachtigall et al 1999).

Two new randomised studies have been published since the 2004 review. One
was a double-blind placebo controlled trial of 60 menopausal women using
80 mg/day of red clover isoflavones for 90 days and they reported significant
reductions in menopausal symptoms as compared to placebo and a positive effect on
vaginal cytology (Hidalgo et al 2005). The other double-blind, placebo-controlled trial found no effects on breast density, oestadiol, FSH, LH or lymphocyte tyrosine kinase activity after 12 months of treatment with red clover isoflavones (43.5 mg/day) in 205 women aged between 49 and 65 years (Atkinson et al 2004a).

**CARDIOVASCULAR EFFECTS**

**Lipid levels**  Because oestrogens have been reported to favourably alter lipid levels, there has been some investigation into the effects of red clover isoflavones in this regard. Currently, the evidence remains inconclusive and most studies report no significant effect.

In a double blind, placebo-controlled, randomised trial of red clover-derived isoflavones (43.5 mg/day), with 205 women aged between 49 and 65 years, active treatment had no significant effect on total cholesterol or HDL- and LDL-cholesterol levels or triglycerides (Atkinson et al 2004b). A single-blind, randomised crossover study of 21 healthy premenopausal women (aged 18–45 years) found that tablets containing 86 mg/day isoflavones for two menstrual cycles did not significantly change total cholesterol, HDL- or LDL-cholesterol or triglyceride levels (Samman et al 1999). Another study of postmenopausal women with mild to moderate hypercholesterolaemia also found red clover did not significantly affect plasma lipids (Howes et al 2000). A recent double-blind, randomised parallel study found that 86 mg/day purified isoflavones derived from red clover also had no effect on cholesterol homeostasis or insulin resistance in 25 premenopausal women (Blakesmith et al 2003).

However, there have been some positive findings. A randomised, placebo-controlled, crossover pilot study in 23 healthy pre- and postmenopausal women taking 86 mg/day isoflavones derived from red clover demonstrated an increase in HDL-cholesterol as compared to placebo after 1 month (Campbell et al 2004). A 12-week randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial with 252 menopausal women investigated the possible benefits of isoflavones from red clover on cholesterol and triglyceride levels (Schult et al 2004). Two products were investigated, Rimostil (57.2 mg total isoflavones) and Promensil (82 mg total isoflavones) and both extracts induced a statistically significant decrease in triglyceride levels. Additionally, a small but statistically insignificant increase in HDL-cholesterol was noted.

**Blood pressure and endothelial function**  Red clover isoflavones (approximately 50 mg/day) have been shown to favourably influence blood pressure and endothelial function in postmenopausal type 2 diabetic women in a randomised, double-blind crossover trial of 16 women. Mean daytime SBP and DBP were significantly lower during isoflavone therapy compared with placebo (Howes et al 2003).
Alternatively, no effect on blood pressure was observed in a double-blind, placebo-controlled, randomised trial of red clover derived isoflavones (43.5 mg/day) in 205 women aged between 49 and 65 years (Atkinson et al 2004b).

Negative results were also seen in another study of healthy subjects (46 men, 34 women, age 45–75 years) who received isoflavones enriched in either biochanin or formononetin (precursors of genistein and daidzein; 80 mg/day) crossed over randomly with placebo in two 6-week periods. The red clover isoflavones reduced arterial stiffness and total vascular resistance, but had no effect on blood pressure (Teede et al 2003). Previously, a double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of Promensil (40 mg and 80 mg) found that the isoflavone extract significantly improved arterial compliance compared with placebo (Nestel et al 1999). However, the large drop-out rate and poor study design means that the results are not compelling (Fugh-Berman & Kronenberg 2001).

**REDUCING CANCER RISK**

Biochanin A, daidzein and genistein have demonstrated antiproliferative activity in vitro (Hempstock et al 1998). Red clover isoflavones (50 mg total isoflavones), however, were found not to be antiproliferative in a double-blind randomised study of 30 perimenopausal women (Hale et al 2001).

**Prostate cancer**  A non-randomised non-blinded trial of 38 men with clinically significant prostate cancer found that 160 mg/day red clover-derived dietary isoflavones, containing a mixture of genistein, daidzein, formononetin and biochanin A, significantly increased apoptosis compared with matched controls ($P = 0.0018$). There were no significant differences between pre- and post-treatment serum levels of prostate-specific antigen, testosterone or biochemical factors or Gleason score in the treated patients ($P > 0.05$). The study was performed in men undergoing radical prostatectomy; however, it indicates that the isoflavones may halt the progression of prostate cancer by inducing apoptosis in low to moderate-grade tumours (Gleason grade 1–3) (Jarred et al 2002).

**BENIGN PROSTATIC HYPERTROPHY**

Isoflavone-containing supplements are widely used in patients with BPH. Recently, an in vivo study using mice showed that red clover-derived isoflavones have a significant effect on prostatic growth, and are capable of reducing the tendency to enlarged non-malignant prostate, by acting as anti-androgenic agents rather than weak oestrogenic substances (Jarred et al 2003). A case series ($n = 29$) presented at the Endocrine Society’s 82nd Annual Meeting in 2000 suggested that 3 months of treatment with 1 or 2 tablets of Trinovin (standardised to 40 mg red clover
isoﬂavones per tablet) signiﬁcantly decreased nocturia frequency, the International Prostate Symptom Score, increased urinary ﬂow rates and QOL score. The PSA values and prostate size did not alter from baseline (Ulbricht & Basch 2005).

**OSTEOPOROSIS PREVENTION**

Pharmaceutical HRT is sometimes used for preventing loss of bone following menopause; however, a growing number of users are concerned about the increased risk of breast cancer associated with long-term HRT. As such, phyto-oestrogens have been used as an alternative to prevent osteoporosis. Most research has focused on soy isoﬂavones, although there is some evidence that red clover-derived isoﬂavones may also be of beneﬁt.

In a recent trial by Atkinson et al, loss of lumbar spine bone mineral content and bone mineral density was signiﬁcantly reduced in women taking red clover-derived isoﬂavones (43.5 mg/day) compared to placebo in a double-blind, placebo-controlled, randomised trial in 205 women over 12 months (Atkinson et al 2004c). Bone formation markers were also signiﬁcantly increased; however, no improvement in hip-bone mineral content or bone mineral density was noted. A double-blind study of 46 postmenopausal women investigated the effects of a red clover isoﬂavone preparation (Rimostil) containing genistein, daidzein, formononetin and biochanin A after a single-blind placebo phase and followed by a single-blind washout phase. Patients were randomly assigned to receive 28.5 mg, 57 mg or 85.5 mg phyto-oestrogens daily for a 6-month period. After the test period, the bone mineral density of the proximal radius and ulna rose signiﬁcantly, by 4.1% with a dose of 57 mg/day and by 3.0% with a dose of 85.5 mg/day isoﬂavones. The response with 28.5 mg/day isoﬂavones was not signiﬁcant (Clifton-Bligh et al 2001).

No signiﬁcant difference in bone turnover markers was apparent after 12 weeks of treatment with Promensil and Rimostil in a double-blind, placebo-controlled, randomised clinical trial in 252 menopausal women aged between 45 and 60 years (Schult et al 2004).

**OTHER USES**

Red clover ﬂower heads are still used in the traditional manner for indications not related to the potential hormonal activity of the herb.

The British Herbal Pharmacopoeia lists red clover as a dermatological agent, mild antispasmodic and expectorant (British Herbal Medicine Association 1983). The speciﬁc indications are for eczema and psoriasis. Red clover is said to combine well with yellow dock for treatment of chronic skin disease.
**DOSAGE RANGE**
- 4 g as infusion or extract.
- Liquid extract (1:1) in 25% alcohol: 1.5–3.0 mL/day.
- Concentrated isoflavone extract: extract containing 40–80 mg total isoflavones daily.

**ACCORDING TO CLINICAL REPORTS**
Menopausal symptoms: 40–82 mg daily of red clover-derived isoflavones.
- Lipid-lowering: 40–86 mg daily of red clover-derived isoflavones.
- Osteoporosis prevention: 44–86 mg daily of red clover-derived isoflavones.
- BPH symptom relief: 40–80 mg daily of red clover-derived isoflavones.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
The oestrogenic potency of the isoflavones has been well documented. Overgrazing cattle or sheep on red clover can be detrimental to their fertility. In ‘clover disease’, ewes are made permanently infertile by clover consumption. In animals with clover disease, the uterine response to oestrogen is reduced, as is the surge in LH. Clover disease has not been observed with normal therapeutic doses in humans. None of the trials has reported adverse effects. An isoflavone preparation from soya bean, and red clover extracts containing genistein, daidzein, biochanin A and formononetin, did not modify the endometrial architecture in 25 postmenopausal women taking the preparation for 1 year (Aguilar et al 2002).

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**
Controlled studies are not available; therefore, interactions are based on evidence of activity and are largely theoretical and speculative.

**ANTICOAGULANT AGENTS**
Red clover contains coumarin, which could theoretically exert anticoagulant activity and therefore increase the clinical effects of warfarin. However, it is only the byproduct, dicoumarol (produced by microorganism in poorly dried sweet clover) that has established anticoagulant effects. Interaction with anticoagulant medication is not likely for extracts from properly dried red clover. Observe patients taking red clover and anticoagulants concurrently.

**OESTROGENS**
Theoretically, if taken in large quantities, phyto-oestrogens may compete with synthetic oestrogens for receptor binding, but the clinical significance of this remains unknown. A recent review concluded that up to 2 mg of red clover-derived isoflavones per kg should be considered a safe dose for most patient groups (Barnes 2003).
CONTRAINdications and PREcautions
There are no known contraindications for the flower head extracts. Concentrated isoflavone extracts should only be used by people with oestrogen-sensitive cancers under professional supervision because of the possible proliferative effects. Additionally, people with conditions that may be aggravated by increased oestrogen levels, such as endometriosis or uterine fibroids, should use this herb under professional supervision only.

Pregnancy Use
Scientific evidence for the use of red clover during pregnancy has not been established. No teratogenicity data are available. Use is not recommended.

Practice Points/Patient Counselling
- Red clover flower heads are traditionally considered a dermatological agent, mild antispasmodic and expectorant and specifically used for eczema and psoriasis. In practice, it is often combined with yellow dock for treatment of chronic skin disease.
- In recent years, red clover isoflavones have been studied and shown to have an affinity for oestrogen alpha- and beta-receptors and may act as both agonists and antagonists, depending on the level of endogenous oestrogens.
- Evidence that red clover-derived isoflavones reduce hot flush frequency in menopause is unconvincing.
- Preliminary evidence suggests a possible preventative role in osteoporosis; however, further research is required.
- Concentrated isoflavone extracts from red clover are used in cardiovascular disease as there is weak evidence that it may reduce arterial stiffness.
- Evidence from animal studies and case series suggests a potential role in BPH.
- Cancer (there is weak evidence that red clover isoflavone extracts may reduce risk of hormone-sensitive cancers and that they may be beneficial in the treatment of prostate cancer).

Answers to Patients’ Frequently Asked Questions
What will this herb do for me?
Red clover is traditionally used for skin disorders. In recent years, concentrated red clover isoflavone extracts have been promoted for use in the treatment of menopausal symptoms, although clinical studies have produced inconsistent results.

When will it start to work?
Red clover tea or extract for skin diseases requires long-term use. Improvement may occur within several weeks with the condition continuing to improve with long-term
use. Improvement in menopausal symptoms from the use of concentrated isoflavone extracts may take 2–3 months, although results are inconsistent.

Are there any safety issues?

Short- or long-term use of red clover tea or flower head extract is not thought to be associated with any adverse reactions and its use is considered safe. Concentrated red clover isoflavone extracts may have subtle oestrogenic activity and little is known about drug interactions or long-term use. As a result, they should not be used by people with oestrogen-sensitive tumours or conditions that may be aggravated by increased oestrogen levels such as endometriosis, unless under professional supervision.

REFERENCES


van de Weijer PH, Barentsen R. Isoflavones from red clover (Promensil) significantly reduce menopausal hot flush symptoms compared with placebo. Maturitas 42.3 (2002): 187-93.
Historical note  Since ancient times rosemary has been used as a tonic and stimulant. The ancient Greeks used it to strengthen memory function and scholars wore garlands of rosemary during examinations in order to improve their memory and concentration (Blumenthal et al. 2000). It is widely used as a food spice and as an antioxidant to preserve foods.

**COMMON NAME**
Rosemary

**OTHER NAMES**
Compass plant, compass-weed, garden rosemary, old man, polar plant, *Rosmarini folium*

**BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY**
*Rosmarinus officinalis* (family Labiatae or Lamiaceae)

**PLANT PART USED**
Fresh or dried leaf

**CHEMICAL COMPONENTS**
Phenolic acids and diterpenoid bitter substances, including carnosic acid and carnosol (Aruoma et al. 1992, Bicchi et al. 2000, Wei & Ho 2006), triterpenoid acids, flavonoids, tannins and volatile oils (0.5–2.5%) that consist of cineole, pinene, terpineol, camphor, camphene, borneol and bornyl acetate (Blumenthal et al. 2000). Rosemary has also been found to contain high amounts of salicylates (Swain et al. 1985).

**MAIN ACTIONS**

**ANTIOXIDANT**
Rosemary has strong antioxidant activity and is widely used to preserve food and cosmetics (Etter 2004). Rosemary leaf extract has been shown to enhance superoxide dismutase activity (Kim et al. 1995) and to have an effect stronger than vitamin E in scavenging oxygen radicals (Zhao et al. 1989). It is suggested that carnosol and carnosic acid account for over 90% of its antioxidant properties (Aruoma et al. 1992, 1996). Carnosic acid has been shown to have a photoprotective action on human dermal fibroblasts exposed to UVA light in vitro (Offord et al. 2002) and rosemary extract inhibits oxidative alterations to skin surface lipids, both in vitro and in vivo.
(Calabrese et al 2000), as well as enhancing cell-mediated immunity in rats under oxidative stress (Babu et al 1999). In a study of 150 patients with bronchitis exposed to essential oils of rosemary, basil, fir and eucalyptus, an antioxidant effect was observed (Siurin 1997).

**ANTIBACTERIAL**
Rosemary extract demonstrates in vitro antibacterial activity against a variety of bacteria (Del Campo et al 2000, Erdogru 2002, Ouattara et al 1997) including *Helicobacter pylori* (Mahady et al 2005) and *Staphylococcus aureus* (Oluwatuyi et al 2004). Topical application of rosemary essential oil preparations has been found to have antifungal activity (Ouattara et al 1997) and to inhibit the growth and aflatoxin production of *Aspergillus* spp. at concentrations between 0.2% and 1% (Tantaoui-Elaraki & Beraoud 1994). Carnosol has been found to have anti-HIV activity (Aruoma et al 1996) and carnosic acid has also been shown to have an inhibitory effect on HIV-1 protease in cell-free assays (Paris et al 1993). Rosemary extract has some antiviral activity against HSV (Vijayan et al 2004). Powdered rosemary leaves are said to be effective as a natural flea and tick repellent and rosemary essential oil has been found to be ovicidal and repellent towards mosquito (Prajapati et al 2005).

**ANTI-INFLAMMATORY**
In vitro studies have found that rosemary extracts inhibited inflammatory-induced peroxynitrite radical and nitrite production (Chan et al 1995, Choi et al 2002) and that carnosol suppresses NO production (Lo et al 2002). Rosmarinic acid has been found to increase the production of PGE₂, reduce the production of leukotriene B₄ in human polymorphonuclear leucocytes, and inhibit the complement system (al-Sereiti et al 1999).

**HEPATOPROTECTIVE**
The hepatoprotective properties of rosemary extract are attributed to its antioxidant properties and improving detoxification systems dependent on glutathione S-transferase (Sotelo-Felix et al 2002). Rosemary extract has been shown to reduce thioacetamide-induced cirrhosis (Galisteo et al 2000) and azathioprine-induced toxicity in rats (Amin & Hamza 2005), as well as partially prevent carbon tetrachloride induced liver damage in both rats (Sotelo-Felix et al 2002) and mice (Fahim et al 1999, Sotelo-Felix et al 2002).
CHEMOPROTECTION AND ANTIMUTAGENIC EFFECTS
In vivo studies suggest that rosemary extract may reduce the effects of carcinogenic or toxic agents on many cell lines, including rat mammary gland (Amagase et al 1996, Singletary et al 1996), mouse liver and stomach (Singletary & Rokusek 1997), bone marrow (Fahim et al 1999) and skin (Huang et al 1994).

An in vitro study on human bronchial cells found that rosemary extract and its constituents, carnosol and carnosic acid, may have chemoprotective activity through decreasing carcinogen activation via inhibition of the enzyme cytochrome P450 (CYP1A1) and increasing carcinogen detoxification by induction of phase II enzymes (Offord et al 1995). Carnosol has been found to also restrict the invasive ability of mouse melanoma cells in vitro by reducing MMP-9 expression and activity (Huang et al 2005).

INCREASES OESTROGEN METABOLISM
Feeding female mice a 2% rosemary diet enhanced the liver microsomal metabolism of endogenous oestrogens (Zhu et al 1998), thereby reducing oestrogen levels.

OTHER ACTIONS
Carnosic acid and carnosol, which are major components of rosemary, have been found to markedly enhance synthesis of nerve growth factor in vitro (Kosaka & Yokoi 2003). Rosemary has been also demonstrated to have significant antithrombotic activity in vitro and in vivo, possibly through a direct inhibitory effect on platelets (Yamamoto et al 2005). Rosemary essential oil and its constituent monoterpenes, such as borneol, have been found to inhibit bone resorption in the rat (Muhlbauer et al 2003). Aqueous and ethanol extracts of rosemary have been found to produce significant antinociceptive activity and diminish morphine withdrawal syndrome in rats (Hosseinizadeh & Nourbakhsh 2003).

Rosemary extract may delay and inhibit tumour formation in women with breast cancer (Abascal & Yarnell 2001) and prevent mesangial cell proliferation in cultured murine mesangial cells (Makino et al 2000).

When used topically, rosemary essential oil is said to stimulate the skin and increase blood circulation (Blumenthal et al 2000).

CLINICAL USE
INCREASED MENTAL CONCENTRATION
One of the main traditional uses of rosemary oil is to increase mental concentration and memory. This is supported by a RCT of 140 subjects that found that rosemary produced a significant enhancement of performance for overall quality of memory and secondary memory factors, with an impairment of speed of memory compared

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
with controls (Moss et al 2003). Further support comes from an observational study in 40 adults where 3 minutes’ exposure to rosemary essential oil was seen to decrease frontal alpha and beta power, suggesting increased alertness. Subjects felt more relaxed and alert, had lower anxiety scores and were faster, but not more accurate, at completing maths computations (Diego et al 1998). A small, case series of 10 subjects also found that rosemary essential oil had positive effects on mood concentration and memory (Svoboda et al 2002).

**ALOPECIA**
The traditional use of rosemary to stimulate hair growth is supported by a 7-month, randomised double-blind study of 86 patients that found rubbing oils (thyme, rosemary, lavender and cedarwood) into the scalp helped with alopecia for 44% of patients versus 15% of controls (Hay et al 1998). Although promising, the role of rosemary as a stand-alone substance in achieving these results is unclear.

**ANTISPASMODIC**
Rosemary is widely acknowledged to be a carminative and is used internally as an antispasmodic for mild cramp-like gastrointestinal and biliary upsets, as well as for tension headache, renal colic and dysmenorrhoea (Blumenthal et al 2000). It is also used to relax bronchial smooth muscle in the treatment of asthma (al-Sereiti et al 1999), but controlled studies are unavailable to determine clinical efficacy.

**CHEMOPROTECTIVE AND ADJUNCT IN CANCER THERAPY**
Rosemary was used topically to treat cancer in ancient Greece and South America. Although controlled trials are yet to be conducted, it has been suggested that rosemary may delay and inhibit tumour formation in women with breast cancer (Abascal & Yarnell 2001) and that it has potential as a preventive agent or as an adjunct in cancer therapy. An in vitro study in human breast cancer cells found that rosemary extract increased the intracellular accumulation of commonly used chemotherapeutic agents, including doxorubicin and vinblastine via inhibition of P-glycoprotein, thereby overcoming multidrug resistance in tumour cells (Plouzek et al 1999). Clinical studies are required to determine whether the effect is significant.

**OTHER USES**
When applied topically, rosemary oil may stimulate the blood supply and act as supportive therapy for rheumatic conditions and circulatory problems (Blumenthal et al 2000). Topically, rosemary has also been used for wound healing, as an insect repellent, and to treat toothache and eczema. Rosemary extract cream preparations
have been shown to protect against sodium-lauryl-sulfate-induced irritant contact dermatitis (Fuchs et al 2005). In a small, uncontrolled, prospective pilot study of eight women, rosemary in combination with 11 other botanical extracts was found to relieve menopausal symptoms (Smolinski et al 2005).

**DOSAGE RANGE**
- Infusion of dried leaf: 2–4 g three times daily.
- Fluid extract (45%): 1–4 mL three times daily.
- Topical preparations containing 6–10% essential oil can be applied directly to skin. Often a carrier oil, such as almond oil, is used as a vehicle for the essential oil.
- Bath additive: 10 drops essential oil added to bath.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
Rosemary is generally recognised as safe for human consumption in quantities used as food. Consuming large amounts of rosemary may cause stomach and intestinal irritation, as well as seizures, owing to the high content of highly reactive monoterpenic ketones, such as camphor (Burkhard et al 1999). Topically, rosemary is not considered to be highly allergenic; however allergic contact dermatitis from rosemary has been reported (Fernandez et al 1997, Hjortner et al 1997, Inui & Katayama 2005), as has asthma from repeated occupational exposure (Lemiére et al 1996). Rosemary essential oil should be diluted before topical application to minimise irritation.

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**
Controlled studies are not available; therefore, interactions are based on evidence of activity and are largely theoretical and speculative.

**IRON**
Rosemary extracts are widely used as an antioxidant to preserve foods; however, the phenolic-rich extracts may reduce the uptake of dietary iron (Samman et al 2001). Separate doses by 2 hours.

**ANTICOAGULANTS**
Increased bruising and bleeding theoretically possible — use caution.

**DRUGS DEPENDENT ON P-GLYCOPEPTIDE TRANSPORT**
Theoretically, increased drug uptake can occur with those drugs dependent on P-glycoprotein transport. The clinical significance of this finding remains to be tested, although it has been suggested that this activity may be used to enhance the effects of chemotherapeutic agents (Plouzek et al 1999).
CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
None known

PREGNANCY USE
Rosemary has been shown to have an anti-implantation effect in rats, without interfering with normal fetal development post-implantation (Lemonica et al 1996). It has been used as an abortive in Brazilian folk medicine and is not recommended for use in pregnancy.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Rosemary is widely used as a food seasoning and preservative.
- Rosemary oil is widely used to assist in concentration and memory and to stimulate blood flow.
- Traditionally, it has been used to relieve stomach, gall bladder and menstrual cramps, but its internal use has not yet been significantly investigated in controlled studies.
- Rosemary is generally safe when the leaves are consumed in dietary amounts, although excessive intake may cause stomach irritation and seizures in susceptible people.

REFERENCES

© 2007 Elsevier Australia


Sage

Historical note Sage has been used since ancient times as an antiseptic, astringent and to reduce sweating. The name ‘Salvia’ derives from the Latin salvere (to be saved) (Blumenthal et al 2000). Sage oil is used as a culinary spice and as a fragrance in soaps and perfumes. The fragrance is said to suppress the odour of fish.

OTHER NAMES
Broad-leafed sage, common sage, dalmatian sage, garden sage, meadow sage, Spanish sage, true sage

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Salvia officinalis, Salvia lavandulaefolia (family Labiatae or Lamiaceae)

PLANT PART USED
Leaf

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
The leaves contain up to 2.5% essential oil, which contains thujone, cineol and camphor, as well as humulene, pinene, camphene, limonene, carnosol and rosmarinic acid. In addition, the leaves contain catechin-type tannins, diterpene bitter principles, triterpenes, steroids, flavones, and flavonoid glycosides, together with polysaccharides. Sage is a rich source of beta-carotene, vitamins C and B-complex (Fisher & Painter 1996). Pharmacopoeial grade sage leaf must contain not less than 1.5% thujone-rich volatile oil (Blumenthal et al 2000).

MAIN ACTIONS
ANTIMICROBIAL
Sage is reported to have antimicrobial activity attributed to the thujone, thymol and eugenol content of the volatile oil (Shapiro 1994), as well as its rosmarinic acid content (Petersen & Simmonds 2003). The phenolic acids, salvins and monomethyl ethers have also been attributed with antimicrobial activity. Overall, activity has been reported in vitro against Staphylococcus aureus, Escherichia coli, Salmonella spp., Shigella sonnei, Klebsiella ozonae, Bacillus subtilis and various fungi including Candida albicans (Newell et al 1996). Phenolic extracts have also shown antibacterial activity against Enterococcus (Feres et al 2005). Sage had some in vitro antimicrobial
effects on saliva samples from periodontally healthy and diseased subjects, although it had less activity than clove or propolis (Feres et al 2005). Sage essential oil has been shown to have effective inhibitory activity against microorganisms, such as Klebsiella spp., Enterobacter spp., E. coli, Proteus mirabilis and Morganella morganii, isolated from urinary tract infection (Santos Pereira et al 2004). There are also reports that sage may also be fungistatic and virustatic (Eidi et al 2005).

**ANTIOXIDANT**
Sage extracts have been shown to have strong anti-oxidant activity (Matsingou et al 2003, Pizzale et al 2002), with labiatic acid and carnosic acid reported to be the active compounds (Perry et al 2003). According to in vivo studies with animal models, ingestion of sage infusion improves the liver’s antioxidant status (Lima et al 2005) and protects against azathioprine-induced toxicity (Amin & Hamza 2005). However, sage essential oil did not show protective effects against toxicity from an oxidative compound in isolated rat hepatocytes (Lima et al 2004).

**ASTRINGENT**
The high tannin content of sage supports its reported astringent activity.

**ANTISPASMODIC**
Sage oil has antispasmodic effects in laboratory animals (Newell et al 1996) and this is likely due to the irritating effects of the volatile oil. There is some evidence that sage oil may also exert a centrally mediated antisecretory action.

**ANXIOLYTIC**
Rosmarinic acid, which is a component of sage essential oil, produces an anxiolytic-like effect without exerting locomotor alterations or DNA damage in the brain tissue of rats (Pereira et al 2005). According to in vitro tests, compounds in the methanolic extract have an affinity for human brain benzodiazepine receptors (Kavvadias et al 2003).

**OTHER ACTIONS**
In vitro and in vivo studies suggest that sage essential oil and some individual monoterpenoid constituents inhibit acetylcholinesterase activity, as well as exert anti-oxidant, anti-inflammatory and oestrogenic effects (Perry et al 2003). The water soluble polysaccharide complex from sage has demonstrated immunomodulatory activity (Capek & Hribalova 2004) and the terpenoid fractions have shown antimutagenic properties in vivo (Vujosevicacute et al 2004).

Sage extract has been found to also significantly decrease serum glucose in diabetic rats without affecting insulin release, suggesting a possible role in diabetes.
(Eidi et al 2005). It has been suggested that extracts of sage containing carnosic acid may act as a new class of lipid absorption inhibitor. A methanolic extract of sage has also shown significant inhibitory effect on serum triglyceride elevation in olive oil-loaded mice, and inhibitory activity against pancreatic lipase, mainly because of the carnosic acid content. Carnosic acid was also found to reduce the weight gain and accumulation of epididymal fat in high-fat-diet fed mice after 14 days (Ninomiya et al 2004).

**CLINICAL USE**

Although sage has not been the subject of many clinical studies, many of its constituents demonstrate significant pharmacological effects, providing a theoretical basis for some of its uses.

**REDUCES SECRETIONS**

Sage has been traditionally used to treat excessive perspiration and salivation, as well as dysmenorrhoea, diarrhoea, galactorrhoea, swears associated with menopause and to cease lactation (Fisher & Painter 1996). An open study of 80 patients confirmed that it can reduce perspiration (Blumenthal et al 2000). The high tannin content of the herb provides a theoretical basis for its use.

**DYSPEPSIA AND LACK OF APPETITE**

Sage’s reported antispasmodic action and bitter constituents support its use in treating loss of appetite, gastritis, flatulence, bloating and dyspepsia. These uses await support from clinical research.

**INFLAMMATION OF MUCOUS MEMBRANES**

Topically, sage is used as a gargle for laryngitis, pharyngitis, stomatitis, gingivitis, glossitis, minor oral injuries and inflammation of the nasal mucosa (Blumenthal et al 2000). These uses can be based on the pharmacological activity of its chemical components. In an open-label, single-blind, RCT of 420 patients, the non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug, benzydamine hydrochloride, was found to be more effective than sage in relieving postoperative pain when used as a mouthwash after tonsillectomy in children and adults (Lalicevic & Djordjevic 2004). Sage has been found to have less antitussive effects than codeine, but a significantly higher or similar effect to dropropizine (Nosalova et al 2005). A small, double-blind study has suggested that use of an essential oil spray or gargle formulation that includes sage may help relieve snoring (Prichard 2004).
MEMORY ENHANCEMENT
Since ancient times sage has been used to enhance memory and treat dementia. More recently, cholinergic activities have been demonstrated in vitro and in vivo, suggesting that it may be useful in treating Alzheimer’s disease (Perry et al 2001). A randomised placebo-controlled study undertaken at three centres assessed the effects of sage extract (60 drops/day) in 42 subjects with mild to moderate Alzheimer’s disease (Akhondzadeh et al 2003). Initially, subjects had a score of 12 or less on the cognitive subscale of Alzheimer’s Disease Assessment Scale (ADAS-cog) and two or less on the Clinical Dementia Rating (CDR). At 4 months, sage extract produced a significantly better outcome on cognitive functions than placebo in both test scales and was well tolerated.

In 2003, two placebo-controlled, double-blind crossover studies involving 44 healthy young adults investigated the effects of different strengths of standardised essential oil of S. lavandulaefolia on memory (Tildesley et al 2003). Both studies found that a 50-microlitre dose of Salvia essential oil significantly improved immediate word recall and was able to modulate cognition. In another placebo-controlled, double-blind, crossover study involving 24 subjects, Spanish sage (S. lavandulaefolia) essential oil was found to enhance cognitive performance and mood in healthy young adults (Tildesley et al 2005).

MENOPAUSAL SYMPTOMS
Sage is commonly used by modern herbalists in prescriptions for menopause in order to treat hot flushes, night sweats, and for its oestrogenic effect. As yet there is no clinical evidence available to confirm effectiveness for these indications (Blumenthal et al 2000).

OTHER USES
As an inhalant, sage is used for asthma. In foods, it is used as a culinary spice. In manufacturing, sage is used as a fragrance component in soaps and cosmetics.

DOSAGE RANGE
INTERNAL USE
- Infusion of dried herb: 1–4 g three times daily.
- Tincture (1:1): 1–4 mL three times daily.
- Essential oil: 2–3 drops in 100 mL water several times daily.
- Gargle or rinse (use warm infusion): 2.5 g cut leaf in 100 mL water; or 2–3 drops essential oil in 100 mL water; or use 5 mL fluid extract diluted in a glass of water, several times daily.
TOXICITY
Sage is likely to be safe when taken in amounts typically found in foods, although sage oil contains thujone, which may be toxic in large doses. In large amounts, the camphor and thujone content of sage oil have been shown to have convulsant properties in rats (Millet et al 1981) and when taken internally in large amounts, sage may cause restlessness and seizures in humans (Blumenthal et al 2000, Newell et al 1996). Sage tea has also been reported to cause cheilitis and stomatitis, dry mouth and local irritation.

ADVERSE REACTIONS
One, double-blind randomised trial found that it was well tolerated and produced fewer side-effects than placebo (Akhondzadeh et al 2003). Occasional allergic reactions with topical use have been reported.

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
IRON, CALCIUM, MAGNESIUM
Due to the tannin content, sage may reduce the absorption of these minerals — separate doses by 2–3 hours.

CONTRAINdications AND PRECAUTIONS
Sage oil can irritate the skin when used topically. Internal use of the essential oil should be closely monitored.

PREGNANCY USE
Traditionally, sage is reported to have abortifacient properties. Its use in pregnancy is therefore not recommended (Mills & Bone 2000, Newell et al 1996).

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
• Sage is a widely used, popular spice and sage oil is used in a variety of culinary applications.
• Sage has a long history of use in traditional medicine as an antispasmodic and carminative, to relieve excess sweating and as a gargle for inflammations of the mouth.
• It is also commonly prescribed in combination with other herbs to relieve menopausal symptoms such as night sweats.
• Sage contains volatile oils and tannins that are thought to be the key constituents responsible for most of its pharmacological actions.
• It also has antibacterial and some antifungal activity.
• A recent double-blind study suggests it may be useful in mild to moderate Alzheimer’s disease. Other studies report it improves memory in healthy subjects.

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
Sage is likely to be safe when taken in amounts typically found in foods.

**QUESTIONS**

What will this herb do for me?
Sage is used to reduce symptoms of menopause such as night sweats; however, scientific testing has not been conducted to confirm whether it is effective. Recent research suggests it may improve memory in Alzheimer’s disease and in healthy subjects.

When will it start to work?
The study in Alzheimer’s disease found effects established within 4 months’ use. In the case of menopause, a time frame is unknown.

Are there any safety issues?
When used in appropriate doses, it appears to be a safe herbal medicine; however, it should not be used in pregnancy.

**REFERENCES**

Historical note  St John’s wort (SJW) has been used medicinally since ancient Greek times when, it is believed, Dioscorides and Hippocrates used it to rid the body of evil spirits. Since the time of the Swiss physician Paracelsus (c. 1493–1541), it has been used to treat neuralgia, anxiety, neurosis and depression. Externally, it has also been used to treat wounds, bruises and shingles. The name ‘St John’s wort’ is related to its yellow flowers, traditionally gathered for the feast of St John the Baptist and the term ‘wort’ is the old English word for plant. St John’s wort has enjoyed its greatest popularity in Europe and comprises 25% of all antidepressant prescriptions in Germany (Schrader 2000). In the past few decades its popularity has also grown in countries such as Australia and the United States.

OTHER NAMES
Amber, balsana, devil’s scourge, goatweed, hardhay, hartheu, herb de millepertuis, hierba de San Juan, hypericum, iperico, johanniskraut, klamath weed, konradskraut, millepertuis, rosin rose, sonnenwendkraut, St Jan’s kraut, tipton weed, witch’s herb

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Hypericum perforatum (family Clusiaceae or Guttiferae)

PLANT PARTS USED
Aerial parts, flowering tops

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Naphthodianthrones (including hypericin and pseudohypericin). Flavonoids, mostly hyperoside, rutin, quercetin, isoquercitrin, quercetin and kaemferol, phenolics including hyperforin, procyanidins, essential oil, sterols (beta-sitosterol), vitamins C and A, xanthones and choline.

Manufactured products will vary in the concentrations and proportions of the different plant constituents present because these are influenced by the plant’s place of origin, its harvest time and drying, extraction processes and storage conditions. Hyperforin, in particular, can be present in variable concentrations because it is unstable in light, air and most organic solvents (Mennini & Gobbi 2004). This is extremely important to remember when comparing studies, as variations in chemical
composition could be responsible for differences in results. It also provides a rationale for lack of interchangeability between brands.

**Clinical note — Pharmacologically important constituents**

It has generally been considered that most of the pharmacological activities of SJW are attributable to hypericin and the flavonoid constituent, hyperforin. Besides contributing to the antidepressant activity, hypericin is the primary constituent responsible for the photosensitivity reactions reported with high intakes. Hyperforin is also a major contributor to the herb’s antidepressant activity (Butterweck et al 2003a, Mennini & Gobbi 2004) and considered the main constituent responsible for inducing the cytochrome P-glycoprotein and thereby producing drug interactions. Besides this, it demonstrates many other pharmacological effects such as antibacterial, anti-inflammatory and antineoplastic activities. Components previously considered void of activity have also been identified as important for pharmacological activity. For example, both procyanidin B2 and hyperoside increase the oral bioavailability of hypericin by 58% and 34%, respectively, and therefore, its clinical effects (Butterweck et al 2003b). A report published in June 2003 demonstrated that an extract devoid of both hyperforin and hypericin still exhibited antidepressant activity (Butterweck et al 2003a). Other constituents with antidepressant activity were identified and include hyperoside, isoquercitrin and miquelianin, and the 3-O-galactoside, 3-O-glucoside and 3-O-glucuronide of quercetin.

**MAIN ACTIONS**

Due to the combined effect of several active constituent groups, SJW has many pharmacological actions.

**ANTIDEPRESSANT**

Although SJW has been investigated extensively in scientific studies, there are still many questions about its pharmacology and mechanisms of action.

Collectively, the data show that SJW extract exerts significant pharmacological activity within several neurochemical systems believed to be implicated in the pathophysiology of depression.

**Inhibits synaptic reuptake of several neurotransmitters**

Preclinical animal studies have found that SJW inhibits the synaptic reuptake system for serotonin, noradrenaline and dopamine (Nathan 1999, Wonnemann et al 2001). Studies using specific isolated constituents have demonstrated potent uptake inhibition of GABA and L-glutamate in vivo (Bilia et al 2002, Chatterjee et al 1998). These effects appear to be non-competitive, dose-dependent and mediated via sodium channels (Roz &
Studies with hyperforin have shown it acts by reducing the pH gradient across the synaptic vesicle membrane, resulting in diffusion of uncharged monoamines out of the vesicular compartment into the cytoplasm. The increase in cytoplasmic concentration in turn decreases the transmembrane gradient of the neurotransmitters causing an ‘apparent’ inhibition of synaptosomal uptake by hyperforin. This is a novel mechanism of action, which differs from conventional antidepressant drugs.

Although hyperforin is the main constituent responsible for these effects, tests now show that a number of others are also involved (Gobbi et al 2001), such as adhyperforin, which has demonstrated a strong inhibitory effect on neurotransmitter uptake, and the oligomeric procyanidins fraction, which has demonstrated weak to moderate effects (Wonnemann et al 2001).

GABA receptor binding SJW extracts have been shown to bind at GABA-A and -B receptors, to inhibit GABA reuptake, to evoke GABA release from synaptosomes and to exert an anxiolytic effect that is blocked by the benzodiazepine antagonist flumazenil (Perfumi et al 2002).

Upregulation of serotonin receptors SJW significantly up-regulates both 5-HT$_1A$ and 5-HT$_2A$ receptors and has a significant affinity for opiate sigma-receptors, which may contribute to the antidepressant effect (Teufel-Mayer & Gleitz 1997).

Dopamine beta-hydroxylase inhibition Studies on isolated constituents showed that hypericin and pseudohypericin can inhibit the enzyme dopamine-beta-hydroxylase in vitro (Bilia et al 2002).

Inhibition of catechol-o-methyltransferase This has been demonstrated in test tube studies (Thiede & Walper 1994).

Suppresses IL-6 synthesis Various extracts from SJW produce a potent and dose-dependent inhibition of substance-P-induced IL-6 synthesis (Fiebich et al 2001), which may also contribute to the herb’s overall antidepressant effect.

Monoamine oxidase (MAO) inhibition Inhibition of MAO by hypericin demonstrated in vitro was believed to be the primary mode of action; however, this has not been confirmed in several subsequent studies that have shown only weak inhibitory activity at doses in excess of usual therapeutic levels (Di Carlo et al 2001).

**ANTIRETROVIRAL AND ANTIBACTERIAL**

Although in vitro and studies in animal models have identified antiretroviral activity for hypericin and pseudohypericin (Meruelo et al 1988), two clinical trials could not confirm these effects, even when larger doses of hypericin were administered (Gulick et al 1999, Jacobson et al 2001).
The mechanism involved is not known; however, it is suspected to involve direct inactivation of the virus or prevention of virus shedding, budding or assembly at the cell membrane (Meruelo et al 1988). The presence of light is an important requirement for antiretroviral activity to be demonstrated as the effect appears to be photoactivated (Hudson et al 1993, Miskovsky 2002).

Hyperforin has also demonstrated antiviral and antibacterial activity (Medina et al 2006). Hyperforin exhibits effective antibacterial activity against MRSA and other Gram-positive bacteria, but no growth-inhibitory effect on Gram-negative bacteria or Candida albicans (Schempp et al 1999).

**ANXIOLYTIC**

Several in vivo studies confirm the anxiolytic effects of SJW extract (Beijamini & Andreatini 2003, Jakovljevic et al 2000, Vandenbogaerde et al 2000). Activity at the GABA receptors and an increase in circulating GABA levels are likely to be involved.

**ANTINFLAMMATORY AND ANALGESIC**

Both in vitro and in vivo testing has identified anti-inflammatory and analgesic activities for SJW (Jakovljevic et al 2000, Raso et al 2002). It potently inhibits binding to mu-, delta- and kappa-opioid receptors (Simmen et al 1998). In vivo tests also identify modulation of COX-2 expression for hypericum extract (Raso et al 2002). Studies with the isolated constituent hyperforin have shown it potently inhibits COX-1 and 5-lipo-oxygenase in vitro (Albert et al 2002). Quercetin and other flavonoids contribute to the anti-inflammatory effect.

**ANTICANCER EFFECTS**

Emerging evidence clearly indicates that hypericin is a promising tool in the photodynamic treatment of cancers. St John’s wort appears to selectively photosensitise tumour cells. More recently, evidence suggests that when hyperthermia is combined with this approach, the antitumour effects of hypericin are strengthened (Chen et al 2002). Hyperforin also exhibits antineoplastic potential based on the sum of its anticarcinogenic, antiproliferant, pro-apoptotic, anti-invasive and antimetastatic effects (Medina et al 2006). Hyperforin has been shown to effectively decrease the proliferation rates of a number of mammalian cancer cell lines, induce apoptosis of tumour cells and inhibit angiogenesis both in vitro and in vivo. Besides hypericin and hyperforin, polyphenolic procyanidin B2 has also demonstrated an inhibitory effect on the growth of leukaemia cells, brain glioblastoma cells and normal human astrocytes in vitro (Hostanska et al 2003). Further, the inhibitory effects on leukaemic cell growth were synergistically strengthened when hypericin and hyperforin were tested together.
Clinical note — Photodynamic therapy for tumour cells

Photodynamic therapy is primarily an experimental treatment designed to destroy tumour cells without damaging surrounding normal tissues. This treatment involves the combination of a photosensitising substance, which is taken up and stored within tumour cells, and then the application of visible light at a wavelength matching the absorption spectrum of the photosensitising substance (Agostinis et al 2002). This combination approach results in the production of cytotoxic oxygen singlets within the tumour that cause irreversible cellular damage and tumour destruction.

REDUCES ALCOHOL INTAKE

Several reports indicate comorbidity between depression and ethanol abuse and that depressive disorders and ethanol abuse may be associated with similar changes in the activity of central neurotransmitters (Markou et al 1998). In vivo studies using SJW in animal models of alcoholism have found that it does not alter food and water intakes, or the pharmacokinetics of alcohol, but a reduction in ethanol intake occurs (Panocka et al 2000).

COGNITIVE EFFECTS

St John’s wort extracts and hyperforin improve cognitive function in experimental models (Kiewert et al 2004); however, clinical studies have been less convincing (Siepmann et al 2002, Timoshanko et al 2001). In vivo studies with hyperforin have found it induces release of acetylcholine from cholinergic terminals in the hippocampus and striatum, providing an explanation for the observed effects.

OTHER ACTIONS

INDUCTION OF CYP3A4 ACTIVITY IN THE INTESTINAL WALL

Human studies have identified CYP3A4 and 2C19 induction effects for standard SJW extracts (e.g. LI 160), but no effects on CYP1A2, CYP2C9 or CYP2D6 (Durr et al 2000, Jiang et al 2004, Wang et al 2001, 2004a). Human studies have failed to identify significant CYP3A4, 2D6, 2C9, 1A2 or 2C19 induction for low-hyperforin SJW extracts, such as ZE 117, using the appropriate probe drugs (Arolle et al 2005, Madabushi et al 2006, Mueller et al 2004).

Hyperforin is a potent ligand for the pregnane X receptor, an orphan nuclear receptor that regulates expression of the CYP3A4 mono-oxygenase (Moore et al 2000). Although it is considered the chief constituent responsible for the pharmacokinetic interactions reported, there are other, less potent constituents in SJW which also modulate cytochrome enzymes (Obach 2000).
Results from an open label clinical study suggest that the effects of standard SJW (LI 160) on CYP3A4 enzymes may be biphasic, where the initial dose leads to a minor inhibition, followed by significant induction during long-term use (Rengelshausen et al 2005).

**INCREASES LEVELS OF INTESTINAL P-GLYCOPROTEIN**

SJW extract produced a 3.8-fold increase of intestinal P-glycoprotein (P-gp) expression in vivo (Durr et al 2000). Hyperforin has been identified as the key constituent responsible for P-gp induction effects (Tian et al 2005), although in vitro tests suggest other less potent constituents also exist such as quercetin, hypercin, biapigenin and kaempferol (Patel et al 2004, Weber et al 2004).


In vitro and in vivo tests further indicate that P-gp effects caused by standard SJW (LI 160) are biphasic with an initial inhibitory effect followed by induction after longer exposure (Rengelshausen et al 2005, Wang et al 2004a).

**ANTISPASMODIC**

St John’s wort exhibits antispasmodic activity, according to research conducted with an experimental animal model (Jakovljevic et al 2000), most likely mediated via GABA activity.

**CLINICAL USE**

Up until recently, most trials conducted with SJW used a 0.3% hypericin water and alcohol extract known as LI 160. Subsequently, studies using different preparations, such as WS 5573 (standardised to hyperforin) or ZE 117 (a low concentration hyperforin preparation), have been tested.

**DEPRESSION AND ANXIETY**

**Clinical note — The Hamilton Depression Scale**

The HDS is an observer-rated scale that focuses mainly on somatic symptoms of depression. Although the original version included 21 items, a similar version using 17 items is more commonly used in clinical trials. Most studies using the HDS report the number of ‘treatment responders’ (patients achieving a score less than 10 and/or less than 50% of the baseline score) (Linde et al 2005).

**Mild to moderate depression** St John’s wort has shown efficacy as a successful treatment for mild to moderate depression in numerous double-blind placebo-controlled trials, confirmed by several meta-analyses.
The most recent Cochrane review released in 2005 analysed data from 37 double-blind, randomised studies \((n = 4925)\) that used monopreparations of SJW over a treatment period of at least 4 weeks (Linde et al 2005). It concluded that hypericum extracts improved symptoms more than placebo and produced effects similar to synthetic antidepressants (tricyclics and SSRIs) in adults with mild to moderate depression. This confirms the results obtained in two earlier meta-analyses (Linde & Mulrow 2000, Whiskey et al 2001).

Subsequently, a double-blind study of 388 patients with moderate depression has found SJW extract \((900 \text{ mg daily of extract STW}3\text{-VI})\) to be as effective as citalopram \((20 \text{ mg daily})\) \((P < 0.0001)\) (Gastpar et al 2006). The HDS scores were reduced to \(10.3 \pm 6.4\) for SJW extract, \(10.3 \pm 6.4\) for citalopram and \(13.0 \pm 6.9\) for placebo and both antidepressants were significantly more effective than placebo. At the end of treatment 54.2% of the SJW group and 55.9% of the citalopram group were assessed as responders compared with 39.2% for placebo. In regards to safety, significantly more adverse events were documented in the citalopram group \((53.2\%)\) than for SJW \((17.2\%)\) or placebo \((30\%)\).

**Low hyperforin extracts effective?** Considering that hyperforin demonstrates significant antidepressant activity, it is important to evaluate whether low-hyperforin containing SJW preparations remain effective. Three randomised, double-blind studies that have compared low hyperforin extracts \((\text{ZE 117})\) to fluoxetine or imipramine suggest the absence of hyperforin does not hinder the antidepressant effect (Friede et al 2001, Schrader 2000, Woelk 2000).

**Paediatric use** Results from a post-marketing surveillance study of 101 children under 12 years with mild to moderate depression has suggested that SJW may be an effective and well tolerated treatment in this population (Hubner & Kirste 2001). The number of physicians rating effectiveness of treatment with SJW as ‘good’ or ‘excellent’ was 72% after 2 weeks, 97% after 4 weeks and 100% after 6 weeks, and ratings by parents were similar. Although encouraging, it is difficult to interpret the clinical significance of the results, as there was no placebo group and the final evaluation included only 76% of the initial sample.

More recently, an 8-week open pilot study was conducted with SJW \((300 \text{ mg three times daily})\) in 26 adolescents with major depressive disorders (Simeon et al 2005). The subjects were aged 12–17 years \((\text{mean, 14.8 years})\). Only 11 patients completed the study of which 9 \((82\%)\) showed significant clinical improvement based on Clinical Global Improvement change scores. Once again, interpretation of these results is hampered by a large drop-out rate.
Major depression  Although a 2005 Cochrane review stated that SJW shows only minimal benefits over placebo in major depression (Linde et al 2005), two subsequent randomised, double-blind trials found SJW to be as effective as treatment doses of fluoxetine and paroxetine (Fava et al 2005, Szegedi et al 2005).

Fava et al compared SJW (LI 160 900 mg/day) to fluoxetine 20 mg/day or placebo in 135 patients with major depression in a 12-week study. Mean HDS scores reduced to 10.2 with SJW compared with 13.3 for fluoxetine and 12.6 for placebo. There was also a trend toward higher rates of remission (HDS <8) in the SJW group (38%) compared with fluoxetine (30%) or placebo (21%). According to another randomised, double-blind study, SJW (WS 5570 900 mg/day) was as effective as paroxetine 20 mg/day in 251 outpatients with acute moderate to severe depression (Szegedi et al 2005). The HDS scores decreased by a mean 14.4 (SD 8.8) with SJW compared with a decrease of 11.4 (SD 8.6) with paroxetine and herbal treatment was better tolerated. The study took place at 21 centres in Germany.

Commission E approves the use of SJW for psychvegetative disturbances, depressive moods, anxiety and nervous unrest (Blumenthal et al 2000).

Clinical note — Relative safety of St John’s wort compared with pharmaceutical antidepressants

Much has been made of the known or suspected risks associated with the use of SJW, with far too little discussion focusing on the decisive question of its relative safety compared with pharmaceutical antidepressants. It has been estimated that approximately 1 in 30,000 people using SJW will experience an adverse reaction, including those attributed to drug interactions (Schulz 2006). An overview of 16 post-marketing surveillance studies involving different SJW preparations and 34,804 patients found that side-effect incidence varied from 0 to 2.8% in short-term studies (4–6 weeks) and 3.4–5.7% in long-term studies (52 weeks) (Linde & Knappa 2005). Gastrointestinal symptoms, sensitivity to light and other skin conditions, and agitation were the most commonly reported side-effects and were generally described as mild. The review found that serious side-effects or interactions were not reported by any study. Taking this into account, the incidence of side-effects to SJW is approximately 10-fold lower than for conventional antidepressants (SSRIs) (Schulz 2006). The most common adverse event among spontaneous reports is photosensitivity, which is estimated to occur in 1 in 300,000 treated cases. This can occur with a dose of 5–10 mg/day hypericin, which is 2–4-fold higher than the recommended dose. St John’s wort has no significant effect on blood pressure or heart rate (Siepmann et al 2002), making it a safer choice than tricyclic antidepressants in patients with cardiovascular disease. It also lacks atropinic
activity, so side-effects such as dry mouth, urinary retention and blurred vision do not occur. In addition, the common side-effects reported for SSRIs, such as anorexia, insomnia, sexual dysfunction, excessive sweating and visual disturbance, have not been reported for SJW. Similar to all standard antidepressants, SJW can interact with other medicines and needs to be judiciously prescribed.

**OBSESSIVE COMPULSIVE DISORDER**
Treatment with a fixed dose of 450 mg of SJW containing 0.3% hypericin twice daily over 12 weeks improved the condition in 5 of 12 patients, according to an open study (Taylor & Kobak 2000).

**POLYNEUROPATHY**
Although SJW is sometimes used for nerve pain, a randomised, double-blind, crossover study of 54 patients identified a trend toward lower total pain score with SJW treatment, although none of the individual pain ratings were significantly changed (Sindrup et al 2000). The dose of SJW used provided 2.7 mg/day total hypericin and was taken over 5 weeks.

**MENOPAUSE: PSYCHOLOGICAL AND PSYCHOSOMATIC SYMPTOMS**
In at least one trial, SJW has been investigated as sole therapy in menopausal and premenopausal women with psychological and psychosomatic symptoms. After 12 weeks’ treatment with 900 mg hypericum (Kira 300 mg three times daily) symptoms diminished or disappeared completely in the majority of women (76.4% by patient evaluation and 79.2% by physician evaluation). Interestingly, sexual wellbeing also improved in 80% of cases (Grube et al 1999).

Another study investigated a fixed combination of isopropanolic black cohosh (Remifemin; standardised to 1 mg triterpene glycosides) and ethanolic SJW (standardised to 0.25 mg total hypericin) in 301 women with menopausal symptoms with pronounced psychological symptoms (Uebelhack et al 2006). The double-blind, randomised study found that 16 weeks of herbal treatment produced a significant 50% reduction in the Menopause Rating Scale score compared to 20% with placebo and a significant 42% reduction in the HDS score compared to only 13% in the placebo group.

**SEASONAL AFFECTIVE DISORDER**
Wheatley found that people with mild to moderate SAD experienced significant improvements with anxiety, loss of libido and insomnia after 8 weeks’ treatment with SJW (Wheatley 1999). The test group receiving SJW extract (Kira 300 mg) three times...
daily plus light therapy experienced superior sleep compared with the group receiving SJW as stand-alone treatment.

**PREMENSTRUAL SYNDROME**
An open study in patients with PMS found that a low dose of 300 mg SJW daily produced significant reductions in all outcome measures. The degree of improvement in overall PMS scores between baseline and the end of the trial was 51%, with over two-thirds experiencing at least a 50% decrease in symptom severity (Stevinson & Ernst 2000).

**HERPES INFECTION**
Based on its antiviral activity, SJW is also used clinically in the treatment of herpes virus infections. One study of unknown design found that oral extract LI 160 (over a period of 3 months) reduced the frequency and severity of episodes of recurrent herpes labialis and herpes genitalis (Mannel et al 2000).

**SMOKING CESSATION**
Preliminary evidence from experimental models suggests that SJW may be of use in reducing nicotine withdrawal signs. In the study, SJW significantly and dose-dependently reduced the total nicotine abstinence score (Catania et al 2003). Further studies are required to determine its usefulness for smoking cessation treatment in humans.

**TOPICAL USE**

**Atopic dermatitis**  A cream containing SJW extract (standardised to 1.5% hyperforin) was shown to reduce the intensity of eczematous lesions when used twice daily in a prospective double-blind study (Schempp et al 2003a). Beneficial effects were already observed at the first review, which was on day 7.

**Treatment of acute and contused injuries**  No controlled studies are available, but anti-inflammatory, analgesic and bactericidal activities provide a theoretical basis for its use.

  Commission E approves the topical use of oily SJW preparations for this indication (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**Myalgia**  Although no controlled studies are available, anti-inflammatory and analgesic activity provide a theoretical basis for its use in this condition.

  Commission E approved the topical use of oily SJW preparations for this indication (Blumenthal et al 2000).
**First-degree burns** Although no controlled studies are available, anti-inflammatory, analgesic and bactericidal activity provide a theoretical basis for its use in this condition.

Commission E approves the topical use of oily SJW preparations for this indication (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**OTHER USES**
In practice, SJW is also used to treat fibrositis, nervous exhaustion, sciatica and gastrointestinal conditions, such as oesophagitis and peptic ulcers. Traditionally, SJW has been used for wound healing, diuretic, melancholy, pain relief, treatment for snake bites, bedwetting in children, malaria and psychosis.

**DOSAGE RANGE**
- Dried herb: 2–5 g/day.
- Liquid extract (1:2): 3–6 mL/day.
- Tincture (1:5): 7.5–15 mL/day.
- Standardised extract containing 1.0–2.7 mg total hypericin daily.
- It is advised that patients using SJW long term should have their doses reduced slowly when discontinuing use.

**EXTERNAL USE**
- Oily macerate: macerate flowering tops in olive oil for several weeks and stir often, then drain through a gauze. Store in a dark bottle out of direct light. Apply oil directly to the affected area. To promote extraction of flavonoids, store in a sunny area for 6 weeks (oil will turn red).

**ACCORDING TO CLINICAL STUDIES**
(Doses are for dried herb or equivalent).
- Mild to moderate depression: adult — doses ranging from 350–1800 mg/day have been used; children (aged 6–12 years) — 200–400 mg/day in divided doses.
  The extract most often studied is LI 160, although others have also been tested, such as WS 5573 (standardised to hyperforin), ZE 117 (a low concentration hyperforin preparation), WS 550 and STW3-V1.
- Major depression: 1800 mg/day in divided doses.
- OCD: 450 mg twice daily of an extract containing 0.3% hypericin.
- Menopausal symptoms: 900 mg/day in divided doses.
- PMS: 300 mg/day (standardised to 900 µg hypericin).
- SAD: 900 mg/day in divided doses.

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
ADVERSE REACTIONS
It has been estimated that approximately 1 in 30,000 people using SJW will experience an adverse reaction, including those attributed to drug interactions (Schulz 2006). The incidence of side-effects to SJW is approximately 10-fold lower than for conventional antidepressants (SSRIs). According to an overview of 16 post-marketing surveillance studies, gastrointestinal symptoms, sensitivity to light and other skin conditions and agitation were the most commonly reported side-effects and were generally described as mild (Linde & Knuppel 2005).

PHOTOSENSITIVITY (UNLIKELY AT THERAPEUTIC DOSES)
The most common adverse event among spontaneous reports is photosensitivity, which is estimated to occur in 1 in 300,000 treated cases. This can occur with a dose of 5–10 mg/day hypericin, which is 2–4-fold higher than the recommended dose. Commission E has noted the possibility of photosensitivity reactions, particularly in fair-skinned people.

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
St John’s wort is one of the few herbal medicines that has been subjected to controlled studies in order to determine the significance of its interaction with numerous drugs. Although this can be reassuring, the clinical significance of many interactions is still unpredictable because of the variable chemical composition of products.

It is important to note that interactions due to CYP and P-gp induction do not appear significant with low hyperforin extracts (ZE 117).

Clinical note — Mechanisms responsible for reported interactions
Based on the herb’s pharmacology, there are several mechanisms by which it may interact with drugs. Considering SJW has significant serotonin reuptake inhibitor activity and significantly upregulates both 5-HT1A and 5-HT2A receptors, concomitant use of drugs that elevate serotonin levels, such as tricyclic antidepressants or SSRIs, may result in additive or synergistic effects and increase the risk of serotonergic syndrome. As the constituent hyperforin has a significant and selective induction effect on CYP3A4 and 2C19 activity (Durr et al 2000; Wang et al 2001) and induces the drug transporter P-glycoprotein, a number of pharmacokinetic interactions are possible with those drugs that are substrates for CYP3A4 or 2C19 and/or rely on P-gp transport. Refer to Chapter 8 for further information on interactions with herbs and natural supplements.
**ALPRAZOLAM**
Decreases serum levels of alprazolam via CYP induction — monitor for signs of reduced drug effectiveness and adjust the dose if necessary.

**AMITRIPTYLINE**
Although SJW decreases serum levels of amitriptyline via CYP induction in vivo (Johne et al 2002), theoretically it could also induce increases in serotonin availability, which has an opposite effect; the clinical outcome of these two interacting mechanisms is unknown — monitor for signs of changed drug effectiveness and adjust the dose if necessary or avoid concurrent use.

**ANTIDEPRESSANTS**
Increased risk of serotonin syndrome possible; however, increased antidepressant activity also possible with appropriate doses — avoid concurrent use unless under medical supervision, so that doses may be altered appropriately.

**ANTICONVULSANTS**
Phenobarbitone, phenytoin: SJW may increase drug metabolism resulting in reduced drug efficacy — avoid concurrent use unless under medical supervision, so that doses may be altered appropriately.

**ANTINEOPLASTIC DRUGS**
Irinocteanc (Mathijssen et al 2002), imatinib mesylate etc. which are P-gp and/or CYP3A4 substrates — avoid (see Chapter 10 for more information on safety of complementary medicines and cancer).

**CYCLOSPORIN**
Decreases plasma levels of cyclosporin significantly within 3 days of concomitant use via CYP induction (Bauer et al 2003) — avoid concurrent use.

A pharmacokinetic study with kidney graft recipients suggests the effect is not significant when low hyperforin products are used (Madabushi et al 2006).

**DIGOXIN**
Decreases serum digoxin levels significantly within 10 days of concomitant use (Johne et al 1999), chiefly due to induction of the P-glycoprotein — monitor patient for signs of reduced drug effectiveness and adjust the dose if necessary or avoid concurrent use.

**HIV NON-NUCLEOSIDE TRANSCRIPTASE INHIBITORS**
Decreases serum levels — avoid concurrent use.
HIV PROTEASE INHIBITORS
Decreases serum levels — avoid concurrent use.

METHADONE

MIDAZOLAM
Decreases serum levels of midazolam via CYP induction — monitor for signs of reduced drug effectiveness and adjust the dose if necessary.

OMEPRAZOLE
Decreases serum levels via CYP induction (Wang et al 2004b) — monitor for signs of reduced drug effectiveness and adjust the dose if necessary.

ORAL CONTRACEPTIVES
Breakthrough bleeding has been reported, which can indicate decreased effectiveness of oral contraceptives. In 2003, a controlled study confirmed that standard doses of SJW cause an induction of ethinyl oestradiol-norethindrone metabolism consistent with increased CYP3A activity (Hall et al 2003) — use this combination with caution.

In 2002, a pharmacokinetic study found no significant interaction between low hyperforin SJW and low-dose oral contraceptives (Madabushi et al 2006) — appears to be safe.

PUVA THERAPY
High-dose hypericin may increase sensitivity to UV radiation — caution is advised.

SIMVASTATIN
Decreases serum levels of simvastatin via CYP induction (Sugimoto et al 2001) — monitor for signs of reduced drug effectiveness and adjust the dose if necessary (no interaction is expected with pravastatin).

TACROLIMUS
Decreases serum levels of tacrolimus via CYP induction (Mai et al 2003) — avoid this combination.

VERAPAMIL
Decreases serum levels of verapamil via CYP induction — monitor for signs of reduced drug effectiveness and adjust the dose if necessary.
WARFARIN
Metabolism of warfarin is chiefly by CYP2C9, and a minor metabolic pathway is CYP3A4, so theoretically it may interact with SJW. A clinical study found no change to INR or platelet aggregation (Jiang et al 2004), but there are case reports suggesting SJW may lower the INR — caution is advised.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
People with fair skin undergoing UV treatment should use high doses of SJW with caution. Suspend use of SJW 2 weeks prior to major surgery.

PREGNANCY USE
A study conducted in an experimental animal model found no adverse effects on offspring with maternal use; however, safe doses in pregnant women have not been determined. In practice, it is not used in pregnancy.

St John’s appears to be relatively safe in lactation. A study of breast feeding mothers indicated that low levels of hyperforin are excreted into breast milk; however, infant exposure is comparable to levels reported in most studies assessing antidepressants or neuroleptics and no side-effects were seen in the mothers or infants (Klier et al 2006). The doses used were 300 mg of SJW (LI 160, three times daily).

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- St John’s wort contains numerous constituents with pharmacological activity, including antidepressant, analgesic, anti-inflammatory, antispasmodic, anxiolytic, antineoplastic, antiviral and bactericidal activities.
- Numerous clinical studies support the use of SJW as an effective treatment for mild to moderate depression. The most commonly studied extract is LI 160 although others have also been tested (e.g. WS 5573 (standardised to hyperforin), ZE 117 (a low concentration hyperforin preparation), WS 550 and STW3-V1). Clinical effects are comparable to tricyclic antidepressants and SSRIs.
- In regards to safety, SJW is better tolerated than standard antidepressants; however, it still needs to be prescribed judiciously to avoid interactions.
- Low-hyperforin-containing SJW extracts do not have the same interaction potential as standard SJW extracts and may present a safer option for some individuals.
- Efficacy in severe depression has not been established, with mixed results reported so far.
- Preliminary human studies have suggested a possible role in PMS, SAD, OCD and in menopausal and premenopausal women with psychological and psychosomatic symptoms.
• Oily preparations have been used to treat burns, acute and contused injuries, atopic dermatitis and myalgia.

**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

**What will this herb do for me?**
St John’s wort is an effective treatment for mild to moderate depression. It may also be useful for PMS symptoms, SAD, OCD and for menopausal and premenopausal women with psychological and psychosomatic symptoms. The oily preparations are also used to treat burns, injuries, allergic dermatitis and muscle pain.

**When will it start to work?**
It often starts to exert beneficial effects in depression within 2–4 weeks of continuous use.

**Are there any safety issues?**
St John’s wort is well tolerated and has far less side-effects than pharmaceutical antidepressant drugs, but it can interact with a number of different medications.

**REFERENCES**


Perfumi M et al. Blockade of gamma-aminobutyric acid receptors does not modify the inhibition of ethanol intake induced by Hypericum perforatum in rats. Alcohol Alcohol 37.6 (2002): 540-6.
Schulz V. Safety of St. John’s Wort extract compared to synthetic antidepressants. Phytomedicine 13.3 (2006): 190-204.
St Mary’s thistle

Historical note  St Mary’s thistle has a long history of traditional use since ancient times. Over the centuries, it has been touted as a remedy for snake bite, melancholy, liver conditions and promoting lactation. The name ‘milk thistle’ derives from its characteristic spiked leaves with white veins, which according to legend, were believed to carry the milk of the Virgin Mary.

OTHER NAMES
Carduus marianus, cardo blanco, cardo de burro, chandon marie, holy thistle, lady’s milk, lady’s thistle, Mariendistel, Marian thistle, Mary thistle, milk thistle, silybum, true thistle

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Silybum marianum (family [Compositae] Asteraceae)

PLANT PART USED
Ripe seed

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
The major active constituents are the flavolignans, collectively named ‘silymarin’. The principal components of silymarin are silybin, isosilybin, silychristin and silydianin. Silybin makes up approximately 50% of silymarin and is regarded as one of the most biologically active constituents (Jacobs et al 2002). There is also a fixed oil comprising linoleic, oleic and palmitic acids, tocopherol and sterols, including cholesterol, campesterol, stigmasterol and sitosterol.

MAIN ACTIONS
Most investigation has used standardised preparations of St Mary’s thistle, the silymarin constituent group or silybin.

HEPATOPROTECTIVE EFFECT
Protection of liver cells has been demonstrated against the following substances in vitro or in vivo:
- paracetamol-induced liver peroxidation (Chrngoo et al 1997, Muriel et al 1992)
- cyclosporin (von Schonfeld et al 1997)
• phenothiazine (Palasciano et al 1994)
• butyrophenone (Palasciano et al 1994)
• erythromycin (Davila et al 1989)
• amitriptyline and nortriptyline (Davila et al 1989)
• oestradiol (Morazzoni & Bombardelli 1995)
• amanita phalloides (Floersheim 1976, Vogel et al 1984)
• tacrine (Galisteo et al 2000)
• iron overload (Masini et al 2000, Pietrangelo et al 1995).

The exact mechanism of action has not been fully elucidated; however, several observations have been made.

**Toxin blockade** Silymarin and silybin alter the structure of hepatocyte cell membranes by being incorporated into the hydrophobic-hydrophilic interface of the microsomal bilayer (Parasassi et al 1984). Additionally, inhibition of cyclic AMP-dependent phosphodiesterase by silybin has been shown in vitro, which results in increased cAMP and stabilisation of lysosomal membranes (Koch et al 1985). Both actions alter cell membrane function and may be important for protecting the cell from toxin-induced damage. Alternatively, components in St Mary’s thistle may bind to the hepatocyte cell membrane receptor site and inhibit binding of toxins to these sites (Jacobs et al 2002).

**Antioxidant activity** Both a direct and an indirect free radical scavenging activity has been observed, with silymarin shown to increase the redox state and total glutathione content of the liver, intestine and stomach in vivo (Liu et al 2001, Gonzalez-Correa et al 2002, Hagymasi et al 2002, Valenzuela et al 1989). As such, enhanced antioxidant activity further adds to the herb’s hepatoprotective effects, particularly when hepatic injury involves free radical molecules.

**Chelates iron** Hepatic iron toxicity and fibrosis due to iron overload is mediated by lipid peroxidation of biological membranes and the associated organelles (Masini et al 2000). Both silymarin and silybin demonstrate protective effects against hepatic iron toxicity in vivo, primarily owing to antioxidant mechanisms. However, there is some evidence that iron chelation may also be involved (Borsari et al 2001, Masini et al 2000, Pietrangelo et al 1995, Psotova et al 2002).

**LIVER REGENERATION**
Silymarin accelerates the regeneration of hepatocytes after liver damage, according to an in vivo study. Silymarin was shown to increase hepatocyte protein synthesis by stimulating the activity of ribosomal RNA polymerase (Kropacova et al 1998).
GASTROPROTECTIVE EFFECT
St Mary's thistle extract produces a dose-dependent anti-ulcerogenic activity against indomethacin-induced ulcers, which can be histologically confirmed, according to research with test animals (Khayyal et al 2001). This is associated with reduced acid output, increased mucin secretion, increased PGE$_2$ release and decreased leukotriene release.

Experiments with the silymarin constituent group have found it to be effective in the prevention of gastric ulceration induced by cold-restraint stress in rats (Alarcon et al 1992) and post-ischaemic gastric mucosal injury (Alarcon et al 1995).

ANTI-INFLAMMATORY
The anti-inflammatory activity of silymarin is due to several different mechanisms, such as antioxidant and membrane-stabilising effects, and inhibition of the production or release of inflammatory mediators, such as arachidonic acid metabolites. Inhibitory activity on lipo-oxygenase, COX and PG synthetase has been demonstrated in several in vitro assays and animal studies (Alarcon et al 1992, Dehmlow et al 1996, Fiebrich & Koch 1979, Rui et al 1990, Zhao et al 1999).

NEPHROPROTECTIVE EFFECT
In vitro experiments with kidney cells damaged by paracetamol, cisplatin or vincristin demonstrate that administration of silybin before or after the chemical-induced injury can lessen or avoid the nephrotoxic effects (Sonenbichler et al 1999). Animal studies have confirmed the nephroprotective effect for cisplatin-induced injury (Karimi et al 2005). In one study, the effects of cisplatin on glomerular and proximal tubular function as well as proximal tubular morphology were totally or partly ameliorated by silybin (Gaedeke et al 1996).

MAST-CELL STABILISATION
Silybin has shown mast-cell-stabilisation activity in vivo (Lecomte 1975), which was confirmed some years later and found to be dose-dependent (Fantozzi et al 1986). More recently, silymarin has been shown to exert protective effects in the early phase of asthma, most likely due to its influence on histamine release (Breschi et al 2002).

ANTIFIBROTIC
Silymarin reduces markers for collagen accumulation in the liver and exerts antifibrotic activity, according to an animal model of liver fibrosis (Boigk et al 1997).

ANTITUMOUR EFFECTS
In a variety of experimental tumour models and cell systems, silymarin and silybin have been found to have both cancer preventive and anticancer activity.
In vitro studies have shown that silymarin possesses exceptionally high cancer-preventive effects in different mouse skin carcinogenesis models and affords strong anticancer effects in human skin, cervical, prostate, bladder and breast carcinoma cells (Vinh et al 2002, Zi & Agarwal 1999, Zi et al 1998a,b, Zhao et al 1999, Zhu et al 2001). Recent investigation has also identified that silibinin is biologically active against hepatocellular carcinoma cells (Varghese et al 2005).

Two studies involving the use of topical silymarin in hairless mice before chemical carcinogenesis and photocarcinogenesis have shown a protective effect that resulted in a statistically significant decrease in tumour incidence, tumour multiplicity, and tumour volume per mouse in the treated groups (Wright et al 2006). Furthermore, this chemopreventive effect was found to be dose-dependent in one of the studies, in which the topical application ranged from 3 to 12 mg per mouse, with the 12-mg application conferring the most protection.

It appears that several mechanisms are responsible, besides an antioxidant effect. Anti-angiogenic activity has been observed in vitro, and is likely to be involved (Jiang et al 2000). Additionally, in vivo research has demonstrated chemopreventive effects for silymarin, by inhibiting endogenous tumour promoter TNF-alpha (Zi et al 1997). In regard to skin cancer, silymarin provides substantial protection against different stages of UVB-induced carcinogenesis, possibly via its strong antioxidant properties (Katiyar et al 1997) and a selective action on NF-kappa-B activation (Saliou et al 1999).

**OTHER ACTIONS**

**CHOLESTEROL-LOWERING**

Cholesterol reduction has been demonstrated for silymarin in two studies of rats fed a high cholesterol diet (Krecman et al 1998, Sobolova et al 2006). Although the mechanism of action is unknown, it has been suggested that inhibition of HMG-CoA reductase is involved (Skottova & Krecman 1998a) and inhibition of cholesterol absorption from dietary sources (Sobolova et al 2006).

Considering that the herb also contains phytosterols, these too may play a role in cholesterol reduction.

**NEUROPROTECTIVE**

Silymarin demonstrated neuroprotective activity according to preliminary research. A study by Wang et al (2002) demonstrated that silymarin could effectively protect dopaminergic neurons against lipopolysaccharide-induced neurotoxicity by inhibiting activation of the microglia that represent resident macrophage-like population of brain cells acting in host defence and tissue repair in the CNS. Silymarin induced an
increase of reduced glutathione and ascorbic acid levels and superoxide dismutase activity in the brain of treated rats (200 mg/kg/day PO) for 3 days, showing a protective effect on antioxidant defence systems.

**LIVER CYP ENZYMES**

Conflicting results from different studies make it difficult to determine what effect silymarin has on liver enzymes. However, there is some in vitro evidence of CYP3A4 inhibition and, possibly, inhibition of other CYP enzymes (Venkataramanan et al 2000, Zuber et al 2002). At the time of writing, no clinical studies were available to determine the significance of this.

Results published in 2002 suggest that the flavolignans silybin, silydianin and silychristin display a dose-dependent inhibition of CYP3A4, CYP2E1 and CYP2D6 (Zuber et al 2002). Two other in vitro studies could not confirm inhibitory effects for silymarin on CYP2E1, with one study actually reporting induction activity (Kim et al 1997, Miguez et al 1994). In regard to CYP2C9, one early clinical study showed that a daily dose of 210 mg silymarin over 28 days had no influence on the metabolism of phenylbutazone (Leber & Knauff 1976).

In 2003, a crossover study of healthy volunteers found that silymarin (160 mg three times daily) had no apparent effect on indinavir plasma concentrations, suggesting no significant effect on CYP3A4 in humans (DiCenzo et al 2003). More recently, a clinical study found no evidence of an interaction between St Mary’s thistle and indinavir when administered in commonly used therapeutic doses (DiCenzo et al 2003).

**P-GLYCOPROTEIN**

An in vitro study identified that silymarin inhibited P-glycoprotein (P-gp) ATPase activity in such a way as to suggest direct interaction with P-gp substrate binding (Zhang & Morris 2003).

**CLINICAL USE**

**DYSPEPSIA**

Although St Mary’s thistle has been most commonly investigated for its effects as a hepatoprotective agent, it is commonly used to treat dyspeptic complaints, such as loss of appetite, poor digestion and upper gastrointestinal discomfort. Animal studies have identified a dose-dependent increase in bile flow and bile salt secretion for silymarin, achieved by stimulating the synthesis of bile salts (Crocenzi et al 2000).

Commission E approves the use of crude milk thistle preparations for dyspeptic complaints (Blumenthal et al 2000).
**TOXIC LIVER DAMAGE**

**Mushroom poisoning (Amanita phalloides)**  One of the best documented uses of milk thistle is in the treatment of poisoning by the mushroom *Amanita phalloides* (death cap). Nausea, vomiting, abdominal cramps and severe diarrhoea usually occur 8–12 hours after ingestion with extensive hepatic necrosis occurring 1–2 days later. A mortality rate of 20–30% has been observed but can be as high as 50% in children under 10 years of age (Floersheim et al 1982). Several clinical studies have shown silybin (20–50 mg/kg/day IV) to protect against hepatotoxicity when administered within 48 hours. One report of pooled data from 452 case reports of *A. phalloides* poisoning showed a highly significant difference in mortality in favour of silybin (Saller et al 2001).


One, randomised double-blind study involving 222 patients showed that silymarin improves the tolerability of tacrine without altering the drug’s cognitive effects (Allain et al 1999). Two other clinical trials have documented the effectiveness of silymarin in improving or preventing hepatotoxicity from chronic administration of phenothiazines or butyrophenone (Anon 1989).

**Hepatocyte repair**  The effects of a commercial silymarin product (Legalon 120 mg three times daily) on liver function tests and liver histology were studied in 36 patients with chronic alcoholic liver disease in a 6-month, double-blind clinical trial (Feher et al 1989). Treatment not only produced significant improvements in liver function test results, but also positive effects on histology, while these parameters remained unchanged in the placebo group. Salmi and Sarna (1982) found similar results in a RCT of 106 patients with liver disease. After just 4 weeks’ treatment, histological changes began to normalise significantly more often in the treated group than in controls.

Commission E approves the use of standardised St Mary’s thistle extracts (70–80% silymarin content) for toxic liver damage (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**SUPPORTIVE TREATMENT IN CHRONIC LIVER DISEASES**

Numerous clinical trials have been conducted with St Mary’s thistle preparations in various chronic liver diseases. The most studied treatments are Legalon (Madaus Corporation, Cologne, Germany) and Silipide (Inverni Della Beffa Research and
Clinical note — Hepatic fibrosis

Hepatic fibrosis is a pathological wound-healing process that occurs when the liver is injured chronically, such as in chronic alcohol abuse. The oxidative metabolite of ethanol, acetaldehyde, often in conjunction with viral or metabolic liver disease, is implicated as the major cause for liver fibrogenesis, which ultimately leads to cirrhosis (Schuppan et al 1995). Antifibrotic agents, which interrupt the continuous process of wound healing in the liver, are being investigated as strategies to prevent or reverse liver cirrhosis.

A 1998 clinical review of St Mary’s thistle concluded that it may be effective in improving the clinical courses of both acute and chronic viral, drug-induced, toxin-induced and alcoholic hepatitis (Flora et al 1998). A more recent systematic review of efficacy for St Mary’s thistle in chronic liver diseases stated that data are still too limited to detect a substantial benefit on mortality or recommend the herb in liver disease (Jacobs et al 2002).

Eleven clinical studies were located in which researchers have attempted to clarify the role of St Mary’s thistle in the treatment of various liver diseases (Angulo et al 2000, Benda et al 1980, Buzzelli et al 1993, Ferenci et al 1989, Lucena et al 2002, Magliulo et al 1978, Par et al 2000, Pares et al 1998, Salmi and Sarna 1982, Trinchet et al 1989, Velussi et al 1997). Much of the research focuses on the different forms of hepatitis and alcoholic liver cirrhosis with doses ranging from 100–300 mg three times daily, usually given in a standardised extract of 70–80% silymarin. Overall, results have been mixed, with eight trials showing generally positive results and three negative, suggesting more research is still required.

A 2005 Cochrane review of 13 randomised clinical trials assessed milk thistle in 915 patients with alcoholic and/or hepatitis B or C virus liver diseases (Rambaldi et al 2005). The authors stated that the methodological quality of the trials was low and although liver-related mortality was significantly reduced by milk thistle in patients with alcoholic liver disease, milk thistle versus placebo or no intervention had no significant effect on complications of liver disease, or liver histology. Milk thistle was not associated with a significantly increased risk of adverse events.

Acute viral hepatitis Several studies have investigated the use of milk thistle in this disease, reporting beneficial effects on serological outcomes (Bode et al 1977, Magliulo et al 1978, Tkacz & Dworniak 1983). However, several studies were not
clearly blinded and further research is required to determine whether St Mary’s thistle can provide significant benefits in this population.

**Hepatitis C infection** A 2003 systematic review of medicinal herbs for hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection concluded that compared with placebo, none of the herbs showed effects on HCV RNA or liver enzyme, except for silybin, which showed a significant reduction of serum AST and gamma-glutamyltranspeptidase levels in one trial (Liu et al 2003). Overall, the review concluded that further randomised trials are justified.

Commission E approves the use of standardised St Mary’s thistle extracts (70–80% silymarin content) as supportive treatment in chronic inflammatory liver disease and hepatic cirrhosis (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**Diabetes** Silymarin has also been investigated in diabetic patients with cirrhosis. Velussi et al (1997) investigated whether long-term treatment with silymarin is effective in reducing lipoperoxidation and insulin resistance in diabetic patients with cirrhosis. The 6-month open trial found that silymarin treatment had several benefits. After the first month’s treatment, fasting glucose levels showed a progressive and significant decline that, interestingly, did not lead to an increase in the frequency of hypoglycaemic episodes. Other observations revealed decreased glucosuria and levels of glycosylated haemoglobin also decreased significantly, indicating an overall improvement in glucose control. The dose used was 600 mg/day silymarin.

**Other uses** Traditionally, the seeds have been used to treat jaundice, hepatitis, haemorrhoids and psoriasis, as a tonic for nursing mothers, and as a general ‘liver cleansing’ agent.

**Hypercholesterolaemia**

In clinical practice, it is not unusual to find treatment with St Mary’s thistle at the higher end of the dose range results in cholesterol lowering effects. Several in vivo studies confirm that St Mary’s thistle increases LDL-cholesterol clearance and raises HDL-cholesterol levels; however, only one clinical trial is available to determine whether the effect is clinically significant (Krecman et al 1998, Skottova & Krecman 1998b, Somogyi et al 1989). An open trial involving 14 subjects with type 2 hyperlipidaemia found that treatment with silymarin (420 mg/day) slightly reduced total cholesterol and HDL-cholesterol levels (Somogyi et al 1989).

**Skin cancer prevention**

In vivo research suggests that silymarin and/or its major active constituent silibinin could be an effective agent for prevention and/or supportive treatment of human skin cancer (Singh et al 2002, Zhao et al 2000). Topical application of silymarin provided
significant protection against different stages of UV-B induced skin carcinogenesis in mouse skin tumorigenesis models (Ahmad et al 1998, Lahiri-Chatterjee et al 1999).

**CHEMOTHERAPY SUPPORT**

The role of St Mary’s thistle as adjunctive therapy in a range of cancer treatments has received much interest in the past few years. Silybin appears to have nephroprotective activity effective against cisplatin and vincreistine toxicity in vitro (Sonnenbichler et al 1999). Protection against cisplatin nephrotoxicity has been confirmed in vivo by Gaedeke et al (1996), who showed the adverse effects of cisplatin on creatinine clearance and proteinuria were totally prevented by silybin pretreatment. Bokemeyer et al (1996) confirmed the nephroprotection afforded by silybin in a rat animal model and observed that it did not alter the clinical efficacy of cisplatin. According to an in vivo study by Karimi et al (2005), both silymarin and St Mary’s thistle extract are also effective when given as pretreatment before cisplatin.

In vitro and in vivo research has further shown that a combination of silybin with cisplatin produces a dose-dependent and statistically significant increase of drug activity, resulting in a potentiation of antitumour activity (Giacomelli et al 2002, Scambia et al 1996).

**Clinical note — Cisplatin**

Cisplatin is one of the most active cytotoxic agents in the treatment of testicular cancer, but its clinical use is associated with side-effects, such as severe nausea, ototoxicity, neurotoxicity and nephrotoxicity (Giacomelli et al 2002). It is also used in the treatment of head and neck, gastrointestinal, cervical, lung and bladder cancer.

**DOSAGE RANGE**

- The average daily recommended dose is 12–15 g (practitioners have used doses as high as 18 g/day) of milk thistle seed, usually in divided doses (equivalent to 200–400 mg silymarin) (Anon 2003).
- Liquid extract (1:1): 4–9 mL/day (Mills & Bone 2000).
- Liquid extract (1:2): 30–60 mL/week.

**TOXICITY**

Extremely low. Toxicity studies in rats and mice have shown that silymarin, even at daily doses as high as 2500–5000 mg/kg, produced no adverse toxic effects (Anon 1998). In a 12-month study in rats and dogs given up to 2500 mg/day, no signs of toxicity were seen.
ADVERSE REACTIONS
A review of studies involving more than 7000 participants identified three cases of serious adverse reactions (two anaphylaxis and one gastroenteritis symptoms) (Jacobs et al. 2002).

Overall, adverse effect frequency was the same as for placebo and had a low frequency, ranging from 2% to 10% in controlled trials. In practice, loose bowels have been reported, although the reaction is considered rare.

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
Controlled studies are not available; therefore, interactions are based on evidence of activity and are largely theoretical and speculative. Preliminary evidence of CYP3A4 inhibition suggests it could theoretically increase levels of drugs metabolised, although a 2003 crossover study found no evidence of significant effect (DiCenzo et al. 2003).

WARFARIN
Elevation of serum warfarin levels is theoretically possible owing to CYP inhibition seen in vitro — use this combination with caution.

CISPLATIN
Preliminary research has shown this combination may reduce toxic effects, yet enhance antitumour activity — beneficial interaction.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Contraindicated in people with known allergy to the Asteraceae (Compositae) family of plants.

PREGNANCY USE
Insufficient reliable information is available to determine safety in pregnancy.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- St Mary's thistle has hepatoprotective activity and has been shown to reduce the hepatotoxic effects of a variety of environmental toxins and medicines, such as paracetamol, erythromycin, carbon tetrachloride and death cap mushrooms.
- It has direct and indirect antioxidant activity, accelerates the regeneration of hepatocytes after liver damage, has significant gastroprotective and nephroprotective activity, anti-inflammatory and antihistamine activity according to in vitro and animal studies.
- Numerous clinical studies have investigated its effects in a variety of liver diseases. However, a recent review concluded that current data are still insufficient to recommend the herb in chronic liver diseases.
• In clinical practice, it is used to treat dyspepsia, toxic liver damage, as supportive therapy in chronic liver diseases and hypercholesterolaemia.
• Preliminary evidence suggests a possible role as adjunctive therapy with cisplatin and as a skin cancer preventative agent when applied topically.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What will this herb do for me?
St Mary’s thistle may improve digestion, particularly of fatty foods, and afford protection against the toxic effects of a number of drugs and environmental poisons. It is also used as supportive treatment in chronic liver diseases and high cholesterol states.

When will it start to work?
This varies, depending on the indication.

Are there any safety issues?
St Mary’s thistle is considered a very safe and well tolerated herb.

REFERENCES


St Mary’s thistle 1050


Historical note  SAMe was first discovered in Italy in 1952. About 20 years later, a stable salt was commercially manufactured and produced for injectable use. At first, it was investigated as a treatment for schizophrenia, for which it proved inappropriate; however, successful trials in depressed patients began in the 1970s and it was inadvertently found to improve symptoms of arthritis. Since then, numerous studies have been undertaken to examine the role of SAMe in both depression and osteoarthritis. To date, more than 75 clinical trials have been conducted using SAMe as a therapeutic agent, involving over 23,000 people.

BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS
SAMe is synthesised in the cytosol of every cell, but the liver plays a central role in its homeostasis and is the major site of biosynthesis and degradation. Up to half the daily intake of methionine is converted to SAMe in the liver, where it is metabolised to S-adenosylhomocysteine and then homocysteine. Being a central part of the one carbon metabolism cycle, SAMe is intrinsically linked with the other methyl donors such as folate and B12.

SAMe naturally exists as diastereoisomers and it is presently unclear whether both the R and S forms are biologically active in humans. Evidence from a rat model suggests they are equi-potent (Dunne et al 1998). Oral doses achieve peak plasma concentrations within 3–5 hours after ingestion of an enteric-coated tablet (400–1000 mg). Enteric coating of SAMe supplements is essential to ensure product stability and potency. The half-life is reported to be 100 minutes, and excretion occurs via both urine and faeces (Najim et al 2004).

MAIN ACTIONS
SAMe is involved in myriad biochemical processes and metabolic pathways, chiefly as a methyl donor. It is a methyl donor involved in the synthesis of many important biochemicals, such as creatine, melatonin, glutathione, RNA and DNA, phospholipids, proteins, adrenaline and amino acids L-cysteine and taurine. SAMe is closely linked with the metabolism of folate and vitamin B12, which accounts for its ability to lower excessive homocysteine serum concentrations resulting from a deficiency of one or both of these nutrients.

This review will only discuss those actions that have been confirmed clinically.
ANTIDEPRESSANT ACTIVITY
SAMe supplementation produces a clinically significant antidepressant activity that has been demonstrated in numerous trials.

The mode of antidepressant action is unknown, but is likely to involve several mechanisms. As a methyl donor, SAMe plays a role in the metabolism of various CNS neurotransmitters that play an integral part in synaptic transmission and behaviour, such as noradrenaline, dopamine and serotonin (Bottiglieri 1996). Supplementation with SAMe in depressed patients raises serotonin, dopamine and phosphatidylserine and improves neurotransmitter binding to receptor sites, resulting in increased activity (Pizzorno & Murray 2006). More recent evidence suggests that the dopaminergic activity is most prominent. One human study confirmed that 7 days of supplemental SAMe (400 mg/day) decreased the exaggerated plasma noradrenaline levels found in depressed patients (Sherer et al 1986). It is also involved in the formation of phosphatidylcholine, a major component of cell membranes and neurotransmission (Carney et al 1987).

Interestingly, significantly low levels of SAMe in cerebrospinal fluid have been observed in severely depressed patients compared with controls (Bottiglieri et al 1990); however, the significance of this finding is unknown.

ANTI-INFLAMMATORY
A substantial body of evidence has identified clinically significant anti-inflammatory activity for SAMe with comparative trials showing it to be as effective as standard NSAIDs.

Although the mechanism of action remains unclear, it does not appear to be mediated by PG. SAMe stimulates the synthesis of proteoglycans by articular chondrocytes and exerts a chondroprotective effect according to in vitro research and tests with experimental animals (Barcelo et al 1987, 1990, Harmand et al 1987). In vitro studies using cultured rabbit synovial cells has found that SAMe reduces TNF-alpha and fibronectin RNA expression (Gutierrez et al 1997).

HEPATOPROTECTIVE EFFECTS
SAMe indirectly reduces oxidative stress in the liver by serving as a precursor for glutathione. Glutathione is particularly important for reducing the toxic effects of free radical molecules generated by various substances, including alcohol. SAMe also acts as the main methylating agent in the liver. Research with people with alcoholic and non-alcoholic liver diseases confirms that SAMe supplementation significantly increases hepatic glutathione levels (Vendemiale et al 1989). Additionally, in vitro research has identified antifibrotic activity and recently, enhanced production of IL-6,
a key anti-inflammatory cytokine in the liver that assists regeneration and downregulation of TNF (Arteel et al 2003, Casini et al 1989, Song et al 2004). Research using animal models demonstrate that SAMe is a natural growth regulator in hepatocytes and is anti-apoptotic in healthy liver cells, but pro-apoptotic in hepatic carcinoma cells (Lu & Mato 2005).

OTHER ACTIONS

PROLACTIN AND TSH EFFECTS
A double-blind, placebo-controlled study involving 20 subjects with depression identified a significant reduction in prolactin concentrations after 14 days' treatment with SAMe (Thomas et al 1987). The results of a study conducted in 1990, however, suggest that the effects on these hormones may be gender specific, with women demonstrating an augmented response of thyroid stimulating hormone (TSH) and no effect on prolactin levels, whereas release of both TSH and prolactin was inhibited in male subjects (Fava et al 1990). If SAMe does exert dopaminergic effects, as presently suspected, then it should also be taken into consideration that dopamine naturally inhibits both TSH and prolactin secretion in humans.

ANTIOXIDANT
SAMe exhibited direct antioxidant activity in vitro (Caro & Cederbaum 2004).

CLINICAL USE
Although SAMe is administered as an oral supplement in Australia, it is also used in injectable dose forms in Europe. This discussion will mainly focus on oral use.

OSTEOARTHRITIS
A 2004 meta-analysis of 11 RCTs involving almost 1500 patients, comparing SAMe with either placebo or NSAIDs, concluded that SAMe is as effective as NSAIDs in reducing pain and improving functional limitation in patients with OA of the knee. In addition, SAMe-treated patients were 58% less likely to experience adverse effects than those treated with NSAIDs (Soeken 2004).

The longest clinical trial to date was conducted over 2 years and found that a loading dose of oral SAMe 600 mg/day taken over the first 2 weeks, followed by a maintenance dose of 400 mg, produced an improvement in symptoms within the first month and no serious adverse effects (Konig 1987).

Comparative studies Comparative studies in humans have found that oral SAMe (1200 mg) produces similar symptom-relieving effects as piroxicam (20 mg), ibuprofen (1200 mg), indomethacin (150 mg) or naproxen (750 mg) (Caruso &

More recently, a 16-week randomised, double-blind crossover study of 61 individuals with OA of the knee compared the efficacy of SAMe (1200 mg/day) with celecoxib (200 mg/day). At this dose SAMe was as effective as celecoxib in providing significant symptom relief; however, it had a slower onset of action, requiring 1 month of continuous use before benefits were felt (Najm et al 2004). The same study was unable to detect an antidepressant effect for SAMe.

**DEPRESSION**

Several reviews and at least two meta-analyses have examined the available evidence for SAMe in the treatment of depression for trials completed prior to 1994 and concluded that SAMe is superior to placebo, as effective as standard tricyclic antidepressants, and it is better tolerated in the treatment of depressive disorders (Bressa 1994, Fetrow & Avila 2001).

The most recent review conducted in 2005 assessed results from 11 studies and concluded that the evidence for SAMe was positive in depression, but currently hampered by the short duration of trials and questions over the oral bioavailability of the products used (Williams et al 2005). Advantages consistently noted by reviewers include the faster onset of action observed with SAMe treated patients (10 days) compared to treatment with SSRIs (21 days) and the lack of many side-effects that plague the pharmaceutical antidepressants (Mischoulon & Fava 2002).

A trial implementing 800–1600 mg/day SAMe as an adjunctive agent in 30 treatment-resistant patients over a 6-week trial revealed a staggering 50% response rate, with 43% of the sample experiencing remission of symptoms (Alpert et al 2004). Positive results such as these warrant further investigation of SAMe in this adjunctive role with more stringent trial designs.

**Parkinson’s disease and depression** High-dose SAMe (800–3600 mg/day) treatment was investigated in a pilot study involving 11 depressed patients with Parkinson’s disease, all of whom had been previously treated with other antidepressant agents and had no significant benefit or intolerable side-effects. After 10 weeks, 10 patients had at least a 50% improvement on the Hamilton Depression Scale, with only one patient showing no improvement. The mean score before treatment was 27.09 and was 9.55 after SAMe treatment (Di Rocco et al 2000).
**FIBROMYALGIA**

Four double-blind trials have investigated the effects of SAMe in fibromyalgia, with all reporting positive findings (Jacobsen et al 1991, Tavoni et al 1987, 1998, Volkmann et al 1997). Two studies used injectable SAMe (200 mg daily).

The largest study involved 44 patients with primary fibromyalgia and found that during week 5, the group receiving SAMe (800 mg/day) experienced improvements in clinical disease activity, pain, fatigue, morning stiffness and one measurement of mood. Although encouraging, not all parameters were improved beyond placebo, such as tender point score and isokinetic muscle strength (Jacobsen et al 1991).

These results should not be surprising, given that one-third of all fibromyalgia patients are reported to suffer from depression and a meta-analysis of the effectiveness of antidepressants (including SAMe) in fibromyalgia deemed them a successful treatment strategy (O’Malley et al 2000). It concluded that tricyclic antidepressants, SSRIs and SAMe all improved sleep, fatigue, pain and wellbeing, but not trigger points.

**LIVER CIRRHOSIS**

It is now generally accepted that in alcoholic patients with advanced liver cirrhosis, hepatic SAMe concentration is greatly decreased (Lieber 2002). While transient SAMe depletion is necessary for the liver to regenerate, chronic hepatic SAMe depletion may lead to malignant transformation (Lu & Mato 2005). Studies with primates have found that the decreased hepatic SAMe concentrations and the associated liver lesions, including mitochondrial injury, can be corrected with SAMe supplementation (Lieber et al 1990).

A 2006 Cochrane review of SAMe in alcoholic liver disease analysed results from nine randomised clinical trials that included a heterogeneous sample of 434 patients (Rambaldi & Gluud 2006). The methodological quality was considered low; however, eight of the trials were placebo controlled. As a result, the analysis was based mainly on one trial that found no significant effects of SAMe on all-cause mortality, liver-related mortality, liver transplantation or complications. The authors concluded that based on such limited evidence, more long-term, high-quality randomised trials of SAMe for these patients are required before SAMe may be recommended for clinical practice.

**HEPATIC CANCER**

Due to its role in the regulation of growth and apoptosis of hepatocytes, SAMe is being investigated as a possible preventative or treatment agent in hepatocellular carcinoma (Lu & Mato 2005).
OTHER USES
SAMe is used to reduce pain in migraine headache because analgesic activity was reported at a dose of 400–800 mg/day in a group of migraine sufferers (Gatto et al 1986). It is also used in AIDS-related myelopathy and coronary artery disease, as these conditions have been associated with depleted SAMe levels. Supplementation has also been prescribed in cases of general fatigue, poor digestion, allergies and elevated homocysteine levels.

DOSAGE RANGE
BASED ON CLINICAL STUDIES
- Depression: 400–1600 mg/day in divided doses. Sometimes it is started as 200 mg twice daily, increased on day 2 to 400 mg twice daily and then increased again to 400 mg three times daily on day 10 until reaching the full therapeutic dose of 400 mg four times daily by day 20, if necessary (Pizzorno & Murray 2006).
- Osteoarthritis: 1200 mg/day in divided doses, taken as above, with a reduced dose of 400 mg/day used as a maintenance dose once a response occurs.
- Fibromyalgia: 600–800 mg/day in divided doses.
- Liver diseases: 400–1200 mg/day in divided doses, although larger doses have been used.
- Parkinson’s disease: 800–3600 mg/day in divided doses.
- Migraine: 400–800 mg/day in divided doses.

ADVERSE REACTIONS
Mild gastrointestinal discomfort is the most common side-effect reported in clinical studies, although anxiety, headache, urinary frequency and pruritis have also been reported. It has been reported that side effects may be minimised by consuming SAMe before food.

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
Controlled studies are not available; therefore, interactions are based on evidence of activity and are largely theoretical and speculative.

TRICYCLIC ANTIDEPRESSANTS AND OTHER SEROTONERGIC AGENTS
Theoretically, co-administration may result in an increased risk of serotonin syndrome. However, one experimental study found that brain SAMe levels were significantly reduced after chronic treatment with imipramine (Taylor & Randall 1975) — use this combination with caution.
HEPATOTOXIC DRUGS
SAMe may reduce hepatic injury caused by such agents as paracetamol, alcohol and oestrogens — potentially beneficial interaction.

THYROXINE
Caution and monitoring may be warranted.

BETAINE
In studies supplementing mice with betaine, significant increases in SAMe were observed with a three-fold elevation of the activity of methionine adenosyltransferase — observe.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
SAMe should be used with caution in people with bipolar disorder, schizophrenia or schizoaffective disorder, or Parkinson’s disease (Pizzorno & Murray 2006).

PREGNANCY USE
SAMe has been used intravenously in the last trimester of pregnancy with no adverse effects to mother or fetus. However, safety has not yet been conclusively established for either injectable or oral dose forms and possible effects on prolactin levels need to be considered.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
• SAMe is involved in myriad biochemical reactions within the body and found within every cell.
• Clinically, it has anti-inflammatory, analgesic, antidepressant and hepatoprotective activity.
• A 2002 meta-analysis concluded that SAMe is as effective as NSAIDs in reducing pain and improving functional limitation in patients with OA without the adverse effects associated with NSAIDs. A recent study has found it is as effective as celecoxib for providing symptom relief; however, SAMe has a slower onset of action.
• Clinical trials have also shown it to be a safe and effective treatment for depression, comparable to tricyclic antidepressant drugs, yet with a faster onset of action.
• SAMe also appears to be useful in fibromyalgia, and possibly migraine headache. Its usefulness in alcoholic liver disease is unclear. Other uses include general fatigue, elevated homocysteine levels, allergies and poor digestion.
**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

**What will this supplement do for me?**
SAMe has anti-inflammatory, analgesic, antidepressant and protective effects on the liver. It effectively reduces pain and inflammation in OA and elevates mood in depression. In fibromyalgia, SAMe reduces pain, fatigue and morning stiffness and may also reduce pain in migraine headache.

**When will it start to work?**
Beneficial effects are usually seen within 4–5 weeks for OA, whereas antidepressant effects are experienced within 1 week. Benefits in fibromyalgia can take up to 6 weeks to establish.

**Are there any safety issues?**
SAMe should be used with caution by people with bipolar disorder, schizophrenia or schizoaffective disorder, Parkinson’s disease or taking antidepressant medicines. Monitoring of homocysteine levels may be required with long term supplementation.

**REFERENCES**


S-Adenosyl-L-Methionine (SAMe) 1062
**Saw palmetto**

**Historical note**  Saw palmetto was used traditionally as a treatment for urogenital irritations, impotence and male infertility, among other conditions, and was described by the American Eclectic physicians as the ‘old man’s friend’. Between 1906 and 1917 saw palmetto was listed in the US Pharmacopoeia and between 1926 and 1950 it was in the National Formulary as a treatment for urogenital ailments; however, it fell out of favour for several decades as pharmaceutical medicines came to the forefront of mainstream medicine. Not so in Europe where, in the 1960s, French researchers began to chemically analyse the saw palmetto berry, and a breakthrough lipophilic preparation was eventually developed and subjected to countless clinical trials.

**COMMON NAME**  Serenoa or saw palmetto

**OTHER NAMES**  American dwarf palm tree, cabbage palm, dwarf palmetto, fan palm, sabal fructus, sabal, serenoa

**BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY**  *Sabal serrulata, Serenoa repens* (family Arecaceae or Palmaceae)

**PLANT PART USED**  Dried ripe fruit

**CHEMICAL COMPONENTS**  An ethanol extract of the berry contains free fatty acids rich in shorter chain-length fatty acids, such as capric, caprylic, lauric and myristic acid (Nemecz 2003). Palmitic, stearic, oleic, linoleic and linolenic acid are also present in the extract. There are also lesser amounts of phytosterols (such as beta-sitosterol, stigmasterol, ampesterol, and cycloartenol), aliphatic alcohols and polyprenic compounds. The lipophilic extract is used medicinally.

**MAIN ACTIONS**  The mechanism of action is not fully elucidated; however, it appears that several mechanisms are at work.
INHIBITION OF 5-ALPHA REDUCTASE

In different cell systems, the lipid-sterolic extract acts as a non-competitive inhibitor of both type 1 and type 2 5-alpha reductase activity, thereby preventing the conversion of testosterone to dihydrotestosterone (Bayne et al 2000, Raynaud et al 2002, Sultan et al 1984). However, it is currently unclear whether the effect is apparent in humans, as contradictory evidence exists. Raynaud et al (2002) explained that the discrepancies found by different authors were due to different experimental conditions and selectivity for fatty acids, as only specific aliphatic unsaturated fatty acids have been shown to inhibit 5-alpha reductase activity.

One study that analysed and compared BPH samples taken from both untreated and treated subjects (320 mg saw palmetto extract taken for 3 months) found that local levels of testosterone were raised, whereas dihydrotestosterone levels were reduced, suggestive of local 5-alpha reductase inhibition (Di Silverio et al 1998). An earlier, short-term study found that a dose of 160 mg of a liposterolic extract (Permixon) produced no changes to serum dihydrotestosterone levels, whereas finasteride 5 mg induced a significant reduction (Strauch et al 1994). Since prostate levels were untested in this study, it is not known whether a local effect occurred, even though serum levels remained unchanged.

Unlike other 5-alpha reductase inhibitors, there is no interference with the cell’s capacity to secrete prostate-specific antigens because it does not affect the transcription of the gene for prostate-specific antigen (PSA), as demonstrated both in vitro and in vivo (Maccagnano et al 2006). Although having an obvious clinical advantage in regard to PSA screening for prostate cancer, this also suggests that 5-alpha reductase inhibition is not a major activity.

INHIBITS BINDING OF DIHYDROTESTOSTERONE AND TESTOSTERONE TO ANDROGEN RECEPTORS

Saw palmetto reduces receptor binding of dihydrotestosterone and testosterone by an average of 41%, as tested in 11 different tissue specimens from BPH patients (el Sheikh et al 1988). In 2003, results from two animal studies showed that saw palmetto (whole berry and extract) influenced prostatic hyperplasia via effects on androgen metabolism (Talpur et al 2003).

INHIBITS PROLACTIN

In vivo research has identified not only an inhibitory effect on androgens, but also on the trophic effect of prolactin in the rat prostate (Van Coppenolle et al 2000). The inhibitory effect on prolactin activity appears to be due to inhibition of several steps in

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
prolactin receptor signal transduction, according to one animal model (Vacher et al 1995).

**ANTI-INFLAMMATORY**
Saw palmetto is a dual inhibitor of the COX and 5-lipoxygenase pathways, according to in vitro research (Breu et al 1992, Paubert-Braquet et al 1997). More recently, decreased expression of COX-2 has been identified, providing a further explanation for the observed anti-inflammatory activity (Goldmann et al 2001).

**ANTISPASMODIC**
Both the lipid and saponifiable fractions have demonstrated antispasmodic activity in several in vitro studies (WHO 2003).

**CYTOCHROMES**
Saw palmetto failed to have a significant effect on CYP3A4 or CYP2D6 when tested in healthy individuals (Markowitz et al 2003).

**ANTIPROLIFERATIVE EFFECTS**
In recent years, there has been interest in determining whether saw palmetto may have a role in prostate cancer, as an inhibitory activity has been observed in several test tube studies for prostatic cancer cell lines (Goldmann et al 2001, Ishii et al 2001).

**OTHER ACTIONS**
Although alpha-1 adrenoreceptor activity has been reported in vitro, a clinical study found no evidence of this activity (Goepel et al 1999, 2001).

Traditionally, saw palmetto is believed to act as a mild diuretic, urinary antiseptic and expectorant.

**CLINICAL USE**
The most studied saw palmetto preparation is a commercial product known as Permixon (Pierre Fabre Médicament, Castres, France), which is a liposterolic extract consisting of 80% free (e.g. 94 g/100 g extract) and 7% esterified fatty acids, as well as small amounts of sterols (beta-sitosterol, campesterol, stigmasterol, cycloartenol), and a minimum percentage of polyenric compounds, arabinose, glucose, galactose, uronic acid, and flavonoids.

**BENIGN PROSTATIC HYPERPLASIA**
Saw palmetto extracts are extremely popular in Europe where herbal preparations represent approximately one-third of total sales of all therapeutic agents sold for the treatment of BPH (Levin & Das 2000).
Substantial evidence suggests that saw palmetto is an effective treatment for stages 1 and 2 of BPH. A 2002 Cochrane review assessing the results from 21 randomised trials involving 3139 men concluded that saw palmetto improves urinary scores, symptoms and urinary flow measures compared with placebo, with effects on symptoms scores and peak urine flow similar to the pharmaceutical drug finasteride (Wilt et al 2002). Additionally, its use is associated with fewer adverse effects compared with finasteride and typically, symptomatic relief is reported more quickly.

In 2004, an updated meta-analysis of 14 randomised studies and three open-label studies was published (Boyle et al 2004). The analysis used data from 4280 patients derived from clinical studies that had used Permixon. Peak urinary flow rate and nocturia were the two common end-points. Active treatment was associated with a mean reduction in the International Prostate Symptom Score (IPSS) of 4.78 (0.41). A significant improvement in peak flow rate and reduction in nocturia was also reported.

Since then, a double-blind study of 1 year of continuous treatment with saw palmetto extract (160 mg twice daily) failed to produce significant differences compared with placebo for the American Urological Association Symptom Index, maximal urinary flow rate, prostate size, residual volume after voiding, quality of life, or serum PSA levels (Bent et al 2006). A closer look at the study reveals that some subjects with moderate to severe BPH were also included in the sample, which may have contributed to the results observed; however, this is speculative.

Comparisons with alpha-adrenoreceptor antagonists  Although several comparative trials have been undertaken with finasteride, only a few have compared it with alpha-adrenoreceptor antagonist drugs, which are also commonly used in BPH (Adriazola et al 1992, Debruyne et al 2002). The most recent was a large, randomised, double-blind study involving 811 men with symptomatic BPH, who were recruited from 11 European countries, which showed that Permixon 320 mg/day produced similar results to tamsulosin 0.4 mg/day (Omnic) (Debruyne et al 2002). More specifically, both treatments reduced the IPSS by an average of 4.4 in 80% of subjects. Those patients with the most severe disease experienced the greatest improvement in IPSS total score, with mean changes greater in the Permixon group than in the tamsulosin group (−8.0 and −6.8, respectively). In regard to safety, both treatments were considered well tolerated; however, ejaculation disorders were significantly more frequent with tamsulosin (4.2%) than with Permixon (0.6%). Although these results are promising, this study has been criticised for not including a placebo group as a comparator.

Saw palmetto 1067
In a short 3-week study, Grasso et al (1995) compared the effects of alfuzosin (7.5 mg/day) with saw palmetto (320 mg/day) in 63 BPH subjects under double-blind test conditions. Both treatments were found to be as effective in regard to improving irritative score; with maximum and mean urine flow, however, alfuzosin was shown to more rapidly reduce symptoms of obstruction. Considering most studies have shown that 4–8 weeks’ treatment with the herb is required to produce maximal effects, the effect seen at 3 weeks is encouraging.

An earlier study compared the effects of prazosin with saw palmetto in 45 patients with BPH over a 12-week period (Adriazola et al 1992). This study found that although both treatments reduced symptoms, prazosin was slightly more effective.

**Changes to prostate size**  It is still open to speculation as to whether saw palmetto affects prostate size, because studies have produced contradictory results (Aliaev et al 2002, Bent et al 2006, Pytel et al 2002). One open study of 155 men tested the effectiveness and tolerability of Permixon (160 mg twice daily) over 2 years (Pytel et al 2002), and not only detected a significant improvement in the IPSS and QOL marker, but also a decrease in prostate size and significant improvement in sexual function after the first year of treatment.

A longer 5-year study using Permixon in 26 subjects with BPH showed that a total daily dose of 320 mg twice daily also significantly reduced disease symptoms and improved QOL, while reducing prostate size by an average of 30% (Aliaev et al 2002). In 2003, results from two animal studies showed that saw palmetto (whole berry and extract) significantly diminished prostatic hyperplasia (Talpur et al 2003). In contrast, the 2006 study discussed earlier failed to find a significant effect on prostate size (Bent et al 2006).

Commission E approves the use of saw palmetto for stages 1 and 2 of BPH (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**Clinical note — Benign prostatic hypertrophy**

BPH occurs in more than 50% of men over the age of 50 years. It is a slow, progressive enlargement of the fibromuscular and epithelial structures of the prostate gland, which can lead to obstruction of the ureter and urine retention. Symptoms such as frequent and/or painful urination, painful perineal stress, and a decrease in urine volume and flow can develop. The condition has four stages, with stage 1 considered mild, stages 2 and 3 considered more severe and often requiring pharmacological treatment, and stage 4 as severe and necessitating surgery.
ANDROGENETIC ALOPECIA
The idea of using saw palmetto for androgenetic alopecia (AGA) arose from the observation that finasteride appears to have some effect on this condition. One double-blind study has investigated the effects of saw palmetto as a potential therapeutic option, finding a highly positive response in 60% of subjects (Prager et al 2002). A second double-blind study of 48 men and women with AGA noted that mean hair density increased by 17% after 10 weeks of treatment with a topical lotion containing saw palmetto and by 27% after 50 weeks of treatment compared to baseline (Morganti et al as reported in Linde et al 2006, Ulbricht & Basch 2006).

CHRONIC PROSTATITIS AND PELVIC PAIN
Evidence to support the herb’s use in prostatitis is scarce. However, in April 2003 positive findings from a preliminary study using Permixon to treat symptoms of chronic prostatitis and chronic pelvic pain syndrome (CP/CPPS) were presented at the annual meeting of the American Urological Association (Anon 2003). The RCT involving 61 patients with category IIIB CP/CPPS found that 75% receiving active treatment experienced at least mild improvement in symptoms, compared with 20% of the control group. Furthermore, 55% of patients receiving Permixon reported moderate or marked improvement, compared with 16% of the control group. In contrast, results from a 2004 prospective, randomised, open-label study failed to find benefits for saw palmetto (325 mg daily) in men diagnosed with category III CP/CPPS (Kaplan et al 2004). After 1 year, the mean total National Institutes of Health Chronic Prostatitis Symptom Index score decreased from 24.7 to 24.6 ($P = 0.41$) and no benefits were seen for QOL or pain with saw palmetto treatment.

OTHER USES
Traditionally, saw palmetto has been used to treat a variety of urogenital conditions, such as impotence, male infertility and also as an aphrodisiac. It has also been used in female hirsutism, although its effectiveness in this condition is unknown.

DOSAGE RANGE
- Liposterolic extract: 320 mg/day in divided doses.
- Dried berry: 2–4 g.
- Liquid extract (1:2): 2–4.5 mL/day.

ACCORDING TO CLINICAL STUDIES
- 160 mg twice daily of liposterolic extract taken long term.
ADVERSE REACTIONS
The herb is generally well tolerated, with only non-specific symptoms reported, such as gastrointestinal upset, constipation, nausea, abdominal pain and diarrhoea. These minor complaints are generally resolved by taking the herb in association with meals (Maccagnano et al 2006).

One large clinical study identified headache and rhinitis as the most common side-effects associated with use (Adriazola et al 1992).

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
No controlled studies are available and theoretical interactions are difficult to predict, due to the poorly understood nature of the herb’s mechanism of action.

FINASTERIDE (AND OTHER 5-ALPHA REDUCTASE INHIBITOR AGENTS)
Additive effect theoretically possible — potential beneficial effect, although the clinical significance is unknown.

ANDROGENIC DRUGS
Theoretically, saw palmetto may reduce effectiveness of therapeutic androgens such as testosterone — observe patient for lack of drug effect.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
If symptoms of BPH worsen, blood is detected in the urine, or acute urinary retention occurs, professional reassessment is required.

PREGNANCY USE
Use of saw palmetto during pregnancy is contraindicated due to the herb’s hormonal effects. In clinical practice, it is not used in pregnancy.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Substantial scientific evidence has shown that saw palmetto is an effective treatment for stages 1 and 2 of BPH in cases where the diagnosis of cancer is negative. It is as effective as finasteride and alpha-adrenoceptor antagonist drugs such as tamsulosin and alfuzosin, although prazosin may be slightly more effective.
- Typically, symptom reduction is experienced within 1–2 months’ treatment, which is well tolerated, and associated with fewer side effects than finasteride and tamsulosin.
- The herb does not affect PSA levels therefore PSA test results will be unaffected.
- If symptoms worsen, blood is detected in the urine or acute urinary retention occurs, seek professional advice.
ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What will this herb do for me?
Saw palmetto has been investigated in numerous scientific studies and shown to reduce symptoms of enlarged prostate with few side-effects. There is also some early research suggesting it may be useful in some forms of hair loss and prostatitis.

When will it start to work?
Symptom relief for enlarged prostate is generally experienced within 4–8 weeks.

Are there any safety issues?
Saw palmetto is well tolerated; however, occasionally mild gastrointestinal disturbances, headaches and rhinitis have been reported.

REFERENCES
Markowitz JS et al. Multiple doses of saw palmetto (Serenoa repens) did not alter cytochrome P450 2D6 and 3A4 activity in normal volunteers 74.6 (2003): 536-42.
Schisandra

Historical note  Schisandra has an extensive history of use in TCM. It has sour and warm qualities and is used to treat spleen and kidney ‘deficiency’, restore Qi and also as a treatment for chronic cough, wheezing, diabetes, insomnia and palpitations.

OTHER NAMES
Chinese magnolia vine, gomishi, sheng-mai-san, wuweizi

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Schisandra chinensis (family Schisandraceae)

PLANT PART USED
Fruit

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Dibenzocyclooctene lignans (schisandrin, schisandrins A-C, schizabdrols, schisantherins and gomisin A), essential oil, malic, tartaric, nigranoic and citric acids, resins, pectin, vitamins A, C and E, niacin, beta-carotene, sterols, tannins and several minerals.

MAIN ACTIONS
Studies have been conducted with schisandra and a number of its constituents in isolation, such as schisandrin B and gomisin A. Currently, most evidence is derived from in vitro and animal studies, as it has not been significantly investigated in clinical studies.

ANTIOXIDANT
In vitro tests have identified antioxidant activity (Ohsugi et al 1999). More specifically, seven lignans isolated from schisandra have demonstrated stronger antioxidant activity than vitamin E at the same concentrations, with schisanhenol exhibiting the strongest effects (Lu & Liu 1992). An extract of schisandra and the isolated constituent schisandrin B have both demonstrated the ability to significantly decrease ALT and increase glutathione levels in CCL4 damaged liver in vivo (Chiu et al 2002). It appears that several constituents also have indirect antioxidant activity and can increase hepatic and myocardial glutathione levels (Yim & Ko 1999).
HEPATOPROTECTIVE ACTIVITY

Decreases hepatotoxic damage Several in vitro and in vivo studies have identified hepatoprotective effects with schisandra against carbon tetrachloride toxicity (Ip et al 1995, Mak & Ko 1997, Zhu et al 1999, 2000). Research with schisandrin B suggests it is the main constituent responsible for these beneficial effects (Ip et al 1995, Mak et al 1996, Pan et al 2002). Further investigation reveals that schisandrin B increases the efficiency of the hepatic glutathione antioxidant system, thereby inhibiting carbon tetrachloride induced lipid peroxidation; however, additional mechanisms appear likely (Ip et al 1995).

Protection against paracetamol-induced liver damage has been demonstrated in animal models using gomisin A (Yamada et al 1993). Gomisin A inhibited not only the elevation of serum aminotransferase activity and hepatic lipoperoxide content, but also the appearance of histological changes such as degeneration and necrosis of hepatocytes.

In 2003, protection against paracetamol-induced liver damage and D-galactosamine-induced liver damage was confirmed for a fractionated extract of _S. chinensis_ in an experimental model (Nakagiri et al 2003).

Liver regeneration Two animal studies have demonstrated that oral administration of gomisin A, a lignan isolated from _S. chinensis_, accelerates liver regeneration after partial hepatectomy and hastens recovery of liver function (Kubo et al 1992, Takeda et al 1987). The mechanism for these effects is not fully elucidated; however, gomisin A increases ornithine decarboxylase activity, which is important during the early stages of regeneration and suppresses fibrosis proliferation.

OTHER ACTIONS

INHIBITS LEUKOTRIENE FORMATION

Gomisin A has been found to inhibit the biosynthesis of leukotrienes by preventing the release of arachidonic acid in vitro (Ohkura et al 1990).

PLATELET-ACTIVATING-FACTOR ANTAGONIST

Several lignans inhibit platelet-activating-factor in vitro (Lee et al 1999).

ANTI-INFLAMMATORY

Animal studies have identified anti-inflammatory activity for gomisin A, gomisin J, and wuweizi C isolated from _S. chinensis_ (Yasukawa et al 1992). Several lignans from schisandra, including gomisin N and schisandrol A, have shown potent inhibition of nuclear factor of activated T cells (NFAT) in vitro (Lee et al 2003). Excessive activation of NFAT has a significant role to play in autoimmune disease, but further study is needed to assess schisandra’s usefulness in immunopathological disease states.
**CARDIOPROTECTIVE EFFECTS**
Schisandrin B demonstrated protective effects against ischaemia–reperfusion-induced myocardial damage in a dose-dependent manner in an animal model (Yim & Ko 1999). The myocardial protection was associated with an enhancement in myocardial glutathione antioxidant status.

**NEUROPROTECTIVE**
Preliminary in vitro data suggests that certain lignans from schisandra are protective against L-glutamate induced neurotoxicity in rat cortical cells (Kim et al 2004). Schisandrin B appears to also improve cognition and hepatic function in mice treated with tacrine, the common Alzheimer’s dementia medication (Pan et al 2002).

**CYTOCHROMES AND P-GLYCOPROTEIN**
Conflicting in vivo data suggests that certain constituents from schisandra, in particular gomisin C, may inhibit CYP450 3A4 activity (Iwata et al 2004). Schisandrin B has demonstrated an inhibitory effect on P-glycoprotein in vitro (Qiangrong et al 2005). The clinical importance of this is as yet unknown.

**CLINICAL USE**
The therapeutic activity of schisandra has not been significantly investigated under clinical trial conditions, so evidence is derived from traditional, in vitro and animal studies.

**LIVER DAMAGE, HEPATOPROTECTION**
Traditionally, schisandra has been used to treat a variety of liver disorders. Hepatoprotective effects have been observed in test tube and animal studies; however, the clinical significance of these findings in humans remains unknown. Several encouraging clinical reports using an analogue of schisandrin C are available; however, it is not known whether these effects will be seen with S. chinensis (Akbar et al 1998).

**ADAPTOGEN**
In TCM, schisandra is viewed as an adaptogen and prescribed with other herbs to increase resistance to physical and emotional stressors and improve allostasis (see monographs on Korean ginseng and Siberian ginseng for further information about adaptogenic activity and allostasis).

**OTHER USES**
Traditionally, schisandra has been used to treat chronic cough and dyspnoea, diarrhoea, night sweats, irritability, palpitations and insomnia. Based on the herb’s
inhibitory effects on leukotriene biosynthesis and platelet-activating-factor activity and anti-inflammatory effects, it is also used for asthmatic symptoms.

**INFECTION**
Schisandra is also used in combination with other herbal medicines to treat infection. One double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled pilot study found that a commercial product known as ImmunoGuard significantly reduced the duration, frequency and severity of attacks in patients with familial Mediterranean fever (Amaryan et al 2003). The dose regimen used was four tablets taken three times daily for 1 month. The ImmunoGuard product contains a fixed combination of *Andrographis paniculata* Nees., *Eleutherococcus senticosus* Maxim., *Schisandra chinensis* Bail., and *Glycyrrhiza glabra* L. special extracts, which are standardised for the content of andrographolide (4 mg/tablet), eleuteroside E, schisandrins and glycyrrhizin, respectively. Although these results are encouraging, it is not known to what extent schisandra contributed to the outcome.

**DOSAGE RANGE**
As clinical research is lacking, the following dosages come from Australian manufacturers’ recommendations.
- Dried fruit: 1.5–6 g/day.
- Liquid extract (1:2): 3.5–8.5 mL/day or 25–60 mL/week.

**TOXICITY**
Insufficient reliable information is available.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
Mild gastrointestinal discomfort.

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**
Controlled studies are not available, so interactions are speculative.

**DRUGS METABOLISED BY CYP 3A4**
In vivo evidence suggests an inhibitory effect on CYP 3A4 activity, particularly for the gomisin C constituent; however, clinical studies have not yet confirmed the effect (Iwata et al 2004). Based on this observation, serum levels of drugs chiefly metabolised by CYP 3A4 may increase — observe patient.

**P-GLYCOPROTEIN SUBSTRATES**
Schisandrin B has demonstrated an inhibitory effect on P-glycoprotein in vitro (Qiangrong et al 2005); however, the effect has not been confirmed clinically. Theoretically, the bioavailability of P-gp substrates could be increased — observe patient.
CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Insufficient reliable information is available.

PREGNANCY USE
Not recommended.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- *Schisandra chinensis* is popular in TCM and is used to increase resistance to physical and emotional stressors and regarded as an adaptogen.
- Traditionally, schisandra has been used to treat chronic cough and dyspnoea, diarrhoea, night sweats, irritability, palpitations and insomnia.
- It is commonly used as a liver tonic, and preliminary evidence has identified significant hepatoprotective effects.
- Schisandra exerts direct antioxidant activity and increases hepatic and myocardial glutathione levels, thereby increasing antioxidant systems within the heart and liver.
- Overall, little clinical evidence is available; therefore, much information is still speculative and based on in vitro and animal research and traditional use.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this herb do for me?
Schisandra is often prescribed to increase physical and emotional resilience and as a liver tonic. It has antioxidant activity, and early research suggests it may have significant protective benefits for the liver.

When will it start to work?
This is uncertain due to insufficient research being available.

Are there any safety issues?
This is uncertain due to insufficient research being available.

REFERENCES
Selenium

Historical note  During his travels in the 13th century, Marco Polo first reported what is thought to be selenium toxicity in grazing animals. He observed that certain grazing areas in China were associated with horses developing diseased hooves (Hendler et al 2001). It is now known that parts of China have the highest selenium soil concentrations in the world and diseased hooves were likely to be due to selenium toxicity. It was not until nearly 500 years later, in 1817, that selenium was actually discovered (Tinggi 2003) and the fact that it is essential in mammals was not discovered until 1957 (Navarro-Alarcon & Lopez-Martinez 2000). In 1979, the importance of selenium in human nutrition was further reinforced when Chinese researchers reported that selenium supplementation prevented the development of Keshan disease, a cardiomyopathy seen in children living in selenium replete areas, and New Zealand workers reported a clinical response to selenium supplementation in a selenium-depleted patient (Shils et al 2006).

BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS
Selenium is an essential trace element that enters the food chain through incorporation into plants from the soil. Selenium is mainly present in the form of selenite in acid soils, which is poorly assimilated by crops, whereas for alkaline soils, it is in the form of selenate, which is more soluble and assimilated by crops. When taken in supplement form, animal and human trials demonstrate that bioavailability of organic forms of selenium (Se-methionine and Se-cysteine) is higher than that obtained for inorganic forms (selenite and selenate) (Navarro-Alarcon & Lopez-Martinez 2000).

The variation in selenium content of adult humans living in different parts of the world is testimony to the influence of the natural environment on the selenium content of soils, crops and human tissues. According to a WHO report, adults in New Zealand have approximately 3 mg selenium in their bodies compared with 14 mg in some Americans (WHO 2002).

Selenium is readily absorbed, especially in the duodenum but also in the caecum and colon. Vitamins A, E, and C can modulate selenium absorption, and there is a complex relationship between selenium and vitamin E that has not been entirely elucidated for humans (Bates 2005). Selenium enters the body in two major forms:
Se-methionine, which is derived from plants, and Se-cysteine, which is mainly derived from animal selenoproteins (Shils et al 2006). Metabolism is complex and occurs via several routes for the different selenoproteins. Se-methionine enters the methionine pool where it undergoes the same fate as methionine until catabolised. Once the selenium from Se-methionine is liberated by the trans-sulfuration pathway in the liver or kidney, it is able to be used by peripheral cells. Ingested selenite, selenate and selenocysteine are metabolised to selenide. Urinary excretion accounts for 50–60% of total excretion of selenium and homeostasis is achieved through regulation in the kidney. Volatile forms of selenium are exhaled when intake is very high and presents a significant route of excretion at this level.

**CHEMICAL COMPONENTS**

In human tissues, it is found as either L-selenomethionine or L-selenocysteine.

**FOOD SOURCES**

The most concentrated food sources are brewer’s yeast, wheatgerm, meats, fish and seafood, brazil nuts, garlic and organ meats.

**DEFICIENCY SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS**

Selenium deprivation reduces the activity of selenium-dependent enzymes and has widespread effects. Characteristic signs of selenium deficiency have not been described in humans, but very low selenium status is a factor in the aetiologies of a juvenile cardiomyopathy (Keshan disease) and a chondrodystrophy (Kashin-Beck disease) that occur in selenium-deficient regions of China.

Low selenium status has been associated with:

- loss of immunocompetence (Ongelle et al 2002)
- increased risk of developing certain cancers (Clark et al 1998)
- reduced male fertility (Scott et al 1998, Xu et al 2003)
- poorer prognosis in HIV infection and AIDS (Baum et al 1997, Campa et al 1999)
- greater incidence of depression, anxiety, confusion and hostility (Rayman 2000)
- compromised thyroid hormone metabolism (particularly when iodine deficiency is also present) (Gartner et al 2002)
- rheumatoid arthritis (Zamamiri-Davis et al 2002)
- possibly, increased inflammatory processes (Zamamiri-Davis et al 2002)
- changes to drug metabolising enzymes including the cytochrome P450 system, with some activities increasing and others decreasing (Shils et al 2006).

Low selenium status may contribute to the aetiology of several diseases, while in others this state exacerbates disease progression, such as in HIV infection.
People at risk of marginal selenium deficiency include those living in areas of low environmental selenium, such as some regions of New Zealand, people receiving long-term TPN, alcoholics, and those with liver cirrhosis, malabsorption syndromes, cystic fibrosis, coeliac disease and AIDS.

**MAIN ACTIONS**

**ANTIOXIDANT**

Selenium is an integral part of thioredoxin reductase and the glutathione peroxidases and therefore is intimately involved in the body’s antioxidant systems. These enzymes are involved in controlling tissue levels of free radical molecules and maintain cell-mediated immunity.

**CHEMOPREVENTATIVE**

Chemoprotective effects of selenium have been indicated by an epidemiological relationship, RCTs and by experimental studies of selenium and known carcinogens in the development of specific cell lines. Overall, it appears that selenium works by inhibiting important early steps in carcinogenesis.

Several mechanisms have been postulated to explain the chemopreventative effect of selenium, including protection against oxidative damage, alterations to immune and metabolic systems, alterations to carcinogen metabolism, production of cytotoxic selenium metabolites, inhibition of protein synthesis, stabilisation of genetic material and stimulation of apoptosis (Clark et al 1996, El Bayoumy 2001, Schrauzer 2000). One study demonstrated that combining vitamin E succinate and methylselenic acid produces a synergistic effect on cell growth suppression, primarily mediated by augmenting apoptosis (Zu & Ip 2003).

In humans, the chemopreventative effect is strongest for individuals with the lowest selenium status; however, it is still unclear whether low selenium status is implicated in the aetiology of cancer or whether it produces a state of increased susceptibility to the effects of carcinogens.

**IMMUNOMODULATION**

Confirmed in both animal studies and human trials, immunomodulation is in part due to improved activation and proliferation of B-lymphocytes and enhanced T-cell function (Hawkes et al 2001, Gazdik et al 2002a, b, Kiremidjian-Schumacher & Roy 1998, Ongele et al 2002). Interestingly, selenium concentrations significantly decrease during stages of acute infection, suggesting increased use and/or excretion or decreased absorption during this period (Sammalkorpi et al 1988).
**THYROID HORMONE MODULATION**
Selenium is required for normal thyroid hormone synthesis, activation and metabolism (Sher 2001). Three different selenium-dependent iodothyronine deiodinases (types I, II, and III) can both activate and inactivate thyroid hormone, making selenium an essential element for normal development, growth and metabolism through the regulation of thyroid hormones.

**OTHER ACTIONS**

**MALE FERTILITY**
Selenium is required for testosterone synthesis, normal sperm maturation and sperm motility (Rayman & Rayman 2002). Two clinical studies have confirmed this association (Scott et al 1998, Vezina et al 1996) and identified selenium supplements as able to increase sperm motility.

**ANTI-INFLAMMATORY**
Selenium deficiency produces a significantly increased COX-2 protein expression, as well as higher PGE₂ levels, according to one in vitro study (Zamamiri-Davis et al 2002). It has also been theorised that selenium may decrease leukotriene production (McCarty 1984). In vivo tests have identified anti-inflammatory activity in the lung with selenium, which is thought to relate to an increase in glutathione levels and immune parameters (Jeong et al 2002).

**REDUCES HEAVY METAL TOXICITY**
Selenium protects against toxicity of some heavy metals such as cadmium, arsenic, lead, silver and mercury (Berry & Galle 1994, Lindh et al 1996, Navarro-Alarcon & Lopez-Martinez 2000, Yiin et al 1999a, b, 2000, 2001). A physiological role for selenium in counteracting heavy metal poisoning has been proposed (Shils et al 2006). It appears that the form of selenium is important, as inorganic selenium has been shown to enhance the toxic effects of inorganic arsenic by increasing its retention in tissues and suppressing its metabolism in vitro (Styblo & Thomas 2001).

**ANTIIATHEROGENIC ACTIVITY**
Selenium supplementation reduces high-fat diet induced atherosclerosis, according to an in vivo study (Kang et al 2001).

**CLINICAL USE**

**DEFICIENCY STATES: PREVENTION AND TREATMENT**
Traditionally, selenium supplementation has been used to treat deficiency or prevent deficiency in conditions such as malabsorption syndromes.
Selenium supplementation is used to reduce total cancer incidence and mortality.

**Chemoprevention** Collectively, geographical studies, epidemiological data, laboratory bioassays, studies in over 12 different animal models and human intervention trials generally support a protective role for selenium against the development of cancer. Populations who live in low selenium environments and have low selenium intakes tend to have higher cancer mortality rates. However, the results from epidemiological studies have been less consistent and show the effect is strongest in males.

**Total cancer incidence and mortality** The Nutritional Prevention of Cancer Trial was a large multicentre, double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled trial conducted with 1312 patients with a history of basal cell or squamous cell carcinomas of the skin, which investigated the effects of 200 µg selenium daily (as 500 mg brewer’s yeast) as a cancer protective agent (Clark et al 1998). Selenium supplementation in this population did not alter future incidence of skin cancer; however, it significantly reduced total cancer mortality, total cancer incidence by 37% and the incidences of lung, colorectal and prostate cancers by 46%, 58% and 63%, respectively. Results from further continuation of the trial has continued to find a protective effect for selenium in total cancer incidence and the individual cancers; however, this now appears to be restricted to people with low baseline plasma levels and most pronounced for colorectal cancer and current smokers, whereas protective effects in prostate cancer was further restricted to lower baseline levels of prostate-specific antigen (PSA: \( \leq 4 \) ng/mL) (Duffield-Lillico et al 2002, 2003, Reid et al 2002, 2006).

**Liver cancer** A trial involving 130,471 individuals living in a high-risk area for viral hepatitis and liver cancer (Quidong, China) found that table salt enriched with sodium selenite reduced the incidence of liver cancer by 35% during the 8-year follow-up period, whereas no changes were observed for the control groups (Yu et al 1997). Additionally, incidences of liver cancer began to rise after withdrawal of selenium supplementation.

**Prostate cancer** Epidemiological and clinical data suggest that selenium may prevent prostate cancer. To date, the largest case control study involved 33,737 males and identified an association between higher selenium status and a reduced risk of prostate cancer (Yoshizawa et al 1998). The study showed that men consuming the most dietary selenium (assessed indirectly by measuring toenail selenium levels) developed 65% fewer cases of advanced prostate cancer than those with the lowest intake.
Strong evidence for a protective effect of selenium against prostate cancer comes from the Nutritional Prevention of Cancer Trial, as described above, in which the incidence of prostate cancer was reduced in the selenium group by two-thirds as compared to placebo. Further follow-up has revealed that selenium supplementation continues to show a marked reduction on the incidence of prostate cancer with strongest effects seen in men with a PSA <4 ng/ml and those with the lowest serum selenium levels at study entry (Duffield-Lillico et al 2003).

Currently under way is the Selenium and Vitamin E Cancer Prevention Trial (SELECT), which is a randomised, prospective, double-blind study designed to determine whether 200 µg l-selenomethionine, 400 mg of racemic alpha-tocopheryl and an optional multivitamin containing no selenium or vitamin E can reduce the risk of prostate cancer among healthy men. It is anticipated that over 32,000 men will be involved in the study and final results will be available in 2013 (Klein et al 2001).

**Stomach and oesophageal cancer** A large study of nearly 30,000 people demonstrated a protective effect for a combination of selenium, beta-carotene and vitamin E against the development of cancer of the gastric cardia and oesophagus (Mark et al 2000). Supplementation also reduced the cancer mortality rate compared with those not receiving supplementation. Protective effects on total cancer deaths developed slowly, appearing after 1 year of treatment and the effect on stomach cancer appeared after 2 years.

**REDUcing MORTality FROM HIV INFECTION**
Selenium appears to be important in HIV infection, with plasma selenium a strong predictor of disease outcome in both adults and children (Baum & Shor-Posner 1998, Baum et al 1997, Campa et al 1999).

Low selenium status is common in HIV-positive patients and is associated with a decline in Th (CD4) cell counts (Bates 2005). It is also associated with an increased incidence of mycobacterial diseases in HIV-1-seropositive drug users (Shor-Posner et al 2002, Dworkin 1994, Dworkin et al 1986, 1989). One small intervention trial using low-dose selenium supplements (80 µg/day with 25 mg vitamin E) over 2 months has shown an improvement in general symptoms but no alterations to immunological or haematological parameters (Cirelli et al 1991).

**CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE PREVENTION**
Selenium may decrease cardiovascular disease mortality; however, epidemiological studies have produced mixed results.

A case-control study from a population of 11,000 people found that individuals with low serum selenium levels had a two- to three-fold increase in cardiovascular
morbidity and mortality (Salonen et al 1982). A more recent study of just over 3000 middle-aged and elderly men also established an association between low serum selenium levels and a significantly increased risk of ischaemic heart disease (Suadicani et al 1992). Alternatively, no association was identified between serum selenium levels and coronary deaths or myocardial infarctions in a study of 1110 men; however, a significant association with stroke mortality was detected (Virtamo et al 1985). No significant primary preventative effect was seen for selenium supplementation (200 µg/day) and incidence of cardiovascular disease, myocardial infarction, stroke or all cardiovascular disease mortality in the Nutritional Prevention of Cancer study (Stranges et al 2006). Lack of association was confirmed when analyses were further stratified by tertiles of baseline plasma selenium concentrations.

With regard to secondary prevention, an intervention study conducted by Korpela et al (1989) in subjects having suffered acute myocardial infarction has produced encouraging results. The randomised, double-blind trial compared the effects of selenium-rich yeast (100 µg/day) with placebo, concurrently with standard treatment in 81 patients with acute myocardial infarction. During the 6-month follow-up period, there were no cardiac deaths in the selenium-treated group compared with four receiving placebo, and two non-fatal re-infarctions in the placebo group compared with only one receiving selenium supplementation.

**ASTHMA**

Asthma, respiratory symptoms and ventilatory function have been associated with lowered circulatory selenium status and glutathione peroxidase activity (Devereux & Seaton 2005, Hasselmark et al 1990, Kadrabova et al 1996, Misso et al 1996, Omland et al 2002). When these observations are coupled with in vivo evidence of anti-inflammatory activity in the lung for selenium, it is not surprising that there is growing interest in using selenium supplementation to improve asthmatic symptoms and disease management. A small number of intervention studies have been conducted, producing mixed results (Gazdik et al 2002a, b, Hasselmark et al 1993).

Hasselmark et al conducted a randomised double-blind study involving 24 patients with intrinsic asthma. A dose of 100 µg sodium selenite was administered for 14 weeks, resulting in significant increases in serum selenium and platelet glutathione peroxidase activity, while no changes were observed with placebo. Clinical results varied, with significantly more treated patients improving on several parameters of lung function such as airway responsiveness, clinical examination, medication use, and subjective patient impressions. However, there were no significant improvements over baseline in any individual clinical parameter. A small pilot study of 17 asthmatics dependent on corticosteroid medication found that a dose of 200 µg selenium daily
taken over a 96-week period reduced both inhaled and systemic corticosteroid requirements. The same study observed selenium supplementation enhancing immunity (Gazdik et al 2002a, b).

**AUTOIMMUNE THYROIDITIS**
Selenium supplementation may improve inflammatory activity in chronic autoimmune thyroiditis patients, as evidenced by a significant reduction in the concentration of thyroid peroxidase antibodies (TPO-Ab) to 63.8% in selenium-supplemented subjects versus 88% (P = 0.95) in placebo subjects (Gartner et al 2002). The randomised study of 70 females (mean age 47.5 years) compared 200 µg sodium selenium daily orally for 90 days to placebo. A follow-up crossover study of 47 patients from the initial 70 was conducted for a further 6 months (Gartner & Gasnier 2003). The group that continued to take sodium selenite (200 µg/day) experienced further significant decreases whereas the group that ceased selenium use experienced a significant increase. The patients who received 200 µg sodium selenite after placebo also experienced a significant decrease in levels of TPO-Ab.

**RHEUMATOID ARTHRITIS**
Selenium supplements have been used in RA because of its antioxidant activity and the observation that some patients with RA have been reported with low selenium status (O’Dell et al 1991, Rosenstein & Caldwell 1999). One double-blind, placebo-controlled intervention study of 55 patients with moderate RA found that both placebo and selenium appeared to have significant effects on a number of symptoms; however, only selenium significantly improved arm movements and sense of wellbeing (Peretz et al 2001).

**LOWERED MALE FERTILITY**
Xu et al (2003) identified a significantly positive correlation between selenium levels and sperm density, sperm number, sperm motility and sperm viability in human volunteers. Supplementation with selenium in selenium-replete subfertile men has been shown to improve sperm motility and the chance of successful conception in over half of treated patients (Scott et al 1998). When taken with vitamin E over 6 months, selenium produces a statistically significant increase in sperm motility, per cent live and per cent normal spermatozoa, with effects reversing after supplement cessation (Vezina et al 1996). Although results are encouraging, particularly for subfertile men with low selenium status, one negative intervention trial was located that found that supplementation had no effect (Iwanier & Zachara 1995).
GENERAL IMMUNE ENHANCEMENT
Several intervention trials of either double-blind or open design have shown selenium supplementation can enhance immune function and decrease the risk of developing certain infections in selenium-replete subjects, healthy adults and the elderly (Girodon et al 1999, Kiremidjian-Schumacher et al 1994, Roy et al 1994, Yu et al 1989).

The largest was a 3-year study of 20,847 people that showed that substituting conventional table salt with table salt fortified with sodium selenite significantly reduced the incidence of viral hepatitis compared with controls provided with normal table salt (Yu et al 1989).

MOOD ELEVATION AND REDUCED ANXIETY
Considering that low dietary intakes of selenium have been linked with greater incidence of anxiety, depression and tiredness, several research groups have investigated whether higher dietary intakes or selenium supplementation will elevate mood and/or reduce anxiety. Currently, results are equivocal; however, it appears that selenium-replete individuals are most likely to respond to supplementation, if a response is observed.

An early double-blind, crossover, study showed that short-term selenium supplementation (100 µg/day for 5 weeks) significantly elevated mood and decreased anxiety, depression and tiredness, with effects most marked in people with low dietary intake (Benton & Cook 1991). A study of 30 selenium replete men who were fed either a low (32.6 µg/day) or a high (226.5 µg/day) selenium diet for 15 weeks found that the mood of those with the higher selenium intake increased whereas mood worsened with low intake (Finley & Penland 1998 as reported in Rayman 2005). Alternatively, another study involving 11 men of adequate selenium intake failed to show effects on mood when high (356 µg/day) and low (13 µg/day) selenium diets were followed for 99 days (Hawkes & Hornbostel 1996). Most recently, a large (n = 448), 2-year, randomised study also failed to find evidence that additional selenium enhanced mood or any of its subscales, despite significant increases in plasma selenium levels (Rayman et al 2006). This study compared the effects of 100, 200 or 300 µg/day of selenium to placebo for effects on mood and QOL. Selenium supplementation was given as high-selenium yeast, SelenoPrecise™ (Pharma Nord, Vejle, Denmark).

REDUCING MORBIDITY IN PRE-TERM BABIES
Preterm infants are born with slightly lower selenium and glutathione peroxidase concentrations than term infants and have low hepatic stores of selenium. In very preterm infants low selenium concentrations have been associated with an increased...
risk of chronic neonatal lung disease and retinopathy of prematurity (Darlow & Austin 2003). Although the full consequences of low selenium concentrations in this population are not fully known, observation from animal studies has found an association between selenium deficiency and increased susceptibility to oxidative lung injury. This has special significance for sick, very preterm infants as they are exposed to many possible sources of oxygen radical products, including high concentrations of inspired oxygen. A Cochrane review of three randomised studies that reported outcomes on 297 infants receiving selenium supplements and 290 control infants concluded that selenium supplementation in very preterm infants is associated with benefit in terms of a reduction in one or more episodes of late-onset sepsis, but is not associated with improved survival, a reduction in neonatal chronic lung disease or retinopathy of prematurity (Darlow & Austin 2003). It should be noted that most of the evidence derives from research conducted in New Zealand, a country with low soil and population selenium concentrations, and may not be readily translated to other populations.

OTHER USES
Used in combination with other antioxidants or administered intravenously, selenium has been used in pancreatitis and as adjunctive therapy in cancer patients.

RADIATION-ASSOCIATION LYMPHOEDEMA
Oral sodium selenite (350 µg/m² body surface area) was given daily for 4–6 weeks to 52 patients with extensive, persistent or progressive lymphoedema from radiation and resulted in the majority experiencing some reduction in oedema (Micke et al 2002). A further study (Micke et al 2003) of 48 patients found that sodium selenite supplementation had a positive effect on secondary lymphoedema caused by radiation therapy alone or by irradiation after surgery. The group consisted of 12 patients with oedema of the arm and 36 with oedema of the head-and-neck region.

DOSAGE RANGE
AUSTRALIAN RDI
Children
- 1–3 years: 25 µg
- 4–8 years: 30 µg
- 9–13 years: 50 µg
- 14–18 years:
  - Boys: 70 µg
  - Girls: 60 µg

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
Adults
- Males >18 years: 70 µg
- Females >18 years: 60 µg
- Pregnancy: 65 µg
- Lactation: 75 µg

**ACCORDING TO CLINICAL STUDIES**
- Asthma: 100–200 µg/day of sodium selenite.
- Cancer prophylaxis: 200 µg/day selenium (supplied as 500 mg brewer’s yeast).
- Infertility: 100 µg/day.
- Mood disturbances: 100 µg/day.
- Post myocardial infarction: selenium-rich yeast 100 µg/day.
- Rheumatoid arthritis: 200 µg/day.
- Autoimmune thyroiditis: 200 µg/day sodium selenite.
- HIV positive status: 80 µg/day has been used but it is most likely that higher doses are required.

**TOXICITY**
Long-term ingestion of excessive levels of selenium (> 1000 µg/day) may produce fatigue, depression, arthritis, hair or fingernail loss, garlicky breath or body odour and gastrointestinal disorders or irritability (Fan & Kizer 1990).

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
Nausea, vomiting, nail changes, irritability and fatigue have been reported.
- The organic form of selenium found in high-selenium yeast is often preferred because it is less toxic.
- The National Health and Medical Research Council of Australia states that selenium intake should not exceed 600 µg/day.

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**

**CISPLATIN**
Selenium may reduce associated nephrotoxicity, myeloid suppression and weight loss, according to in vitro and in vivo tests (Camargo et al 2001, Ohkawa et al 1988) — beneficial interaction.

**HEAVY METALS (E.G. MERCURY, LEAD, ARSENIC, SILVER AND CADMIUM)**
Selenium reduces toxicity of heavy metals such as mercury, lead, arsenic, silver and cadmium by forming inert complexes — beneficial interaction.
CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Sensitivity to selenium.

PREGNANCY USE
Considered safe in usual dietary doses; safety at higher levels is unknown.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Selenium is a trace element that is essential for health.
- Low selenium states have been associated with a variety of conditions, such as cardiovascular disease, cancer, asthma, atopy, male subfertility, rheumatoid arthritis, depression and anxiety and compromised immune function.
- Studies have identified selenium deficiency in a significant number of people with the HIV infection and suggested a link between selenium levels and mortality rate.
- It is also involved in the detoxification of some heavy metals and xenobiotics.
- Selenium-enriched yeast is the safest way to supplement the diet, but other forms are also used.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this supplement do for me?
Selenium supplementation may reduce the risk of developing certain cancers and heart disease and help to improve a range of conditions such as rheumatoid arthritis, asthma, autoimmune thyroiditis, male subfertility, depression and anxiety.

When will it start to work?
If a protective effect is to occur with selenium against cancer or cardiovascular disease, the effect appears to develop slowly over several years’ consistent intake.

Are there any safety issues?
High intakes of selenium above 1000 µg/day have been associated with a number of adverse effects and should be avoided.

REFERENCES

Selenium 1091


Selenium

1093

Shark cartilage

Historical note Shark cartilage became a popular supplement in the 1980s, largely based around the claim that sharks rarely get cancer and therefore must have some protection against the disease. By 1995, the annual world market for shark-cartilage products exceeded US$30 million and dozens of shark cartilage products were available in retail stores and usually sold as food supplements (Ernst 1998). Over the past few decades, some progress has been made in identifying the various unusual compounds present in shark cartilage and it is clearly known that it contains some anti-angiogenic compounds, which increase resistance to tumours. Previously, much work had been conducted with bovine cartilage, which also exhibits anti-angiogenic properties, although to a lesser extent.

BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS
Although there has been some investigation into its actions and potential role as a therapeutic agent, little information is available about its pharmacokinetics.

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Shark cartilage is mainly composed of proteins, calcium, phosphorus, water, collagen and proteoglycans, chiefly chondroitin sulfates. Collagen imparts tensile strength and proteoglycans impart resilience to cartilage.

MAIN ACTIONS

ANALGESIC AND ANTI-INFLAMMATORY
Both analgesic and anti-inflammatory activities have been reported for shark cartilage preparations in animal studies (Fontenele et al 1996, 1997). The mechanism of action is unknown; however, tests with the opioid antagonist naloxone have found it does not involve the opioid system (Fontenele et al 1997).

ANTI-ANGIOGENIC
Shark cartilage extract appears to block the two main pathways that contribute to the process of angiogenesis, matrix metalloproteases and the vascular endothelial growth factor signalling pathway (Anon 2004). The effect is due to several different constituents that have been isolated from shark cartilage and identified as exerting anti-angiogenic activity (Dupont et al 1998, Gonzalez et al 2001, Shen et al 2001, Sheu et al 1998) in various experimental models.
**ANTINEOPLASTIC EFFECTS**  
Due to its anti-angiogenic activity, shark cartilage has been investigated for antineoplastic effects. In one study, oral administration of powdered shark cartilage significantly delayed the development of papillary and solid tumours in a murine renal tumour model in experimental animals (Barber et al 2001).

**IMMUNOSTIMULANT**  
A complex mixture of constituents is responsible for the immunostimulating properties of shark cartilage, according to in vitro research (Kralovec et al 2003). Of these, a protein fraction composed of two proteins with molecular weights of approximately 14 and 15 kDa has exhibited the most immunostimulatory effects (Hassan et al 2005).

**OTHER ACTIONS**

**ANTIBIOTIC**  
Squalamine, isolated from dogfish shark cartilage, is a broad-spectrum antibiotic with activity against protozoa, fungi and both Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria (Moore 1993).

**ANTIOXIDANT**  
Antioxidant activity has been demonstrated in vitro (Gomes et al 1996).

**CLINICAL USE**

**OSTEOARTHRITIS**  
Based on its analgesic and anti-inflammatory activities, shark cartilage has been used to relieve symptoms in OA. To date, no clinical studies are available to determine its effectiveness; however, positive results have been obtained in several clinical studies for one of its constituents, chondroitin sulfate (see Chondroitin monograph for details).

**CANCER**  
Shark cartilage is a popular supplement with cancer patients (Bernstein & Grasso 2001), although results from the few clinical trials conducted using shark cartilage in people with advanced cancers have generally produced negative findings. One study of 60 people with advanced, previously treated cancer (breast, colorectal, lung, prostate, non-Hodgkin’s lymphoma, brain) failed to demonstrate an effect for orally administered shark cartilage (1 g/kg) on tumour growth or QOL (Miller et al 1998). A larger study of 83 patients with advanced breast and colorectal cancers, which was published in 2005, also found that shark cartilage failed to improve survival or QOL (Loprinzi et al 2005). This study was a two-arm, randomised,
placebo-controlled, double-blind, clinical trial. Of note, there was a high drop-out rate as only half the patients receiving shark cartilage powder continued with treatment beyond 1 month and only 10% were still using the treatment by 6 months. It was thought that gastrointestinal symptoms may have contributed to the poor patient compliance.

Several smaller preliminary studies have produced positive results, with some patients experiencing less tumour progression and weight loss, improved appetite or decreased pain (Couzin et al 2003). Unfortunately, details of these studies are difficult to locate and much remains unanswered, such as doses used, time frames for use and criteria for improvement.

Investigation with Neovastat (AE-941), a standardised shark cartilage extract, has produced more promising results and demonstrated inhibitory effects on the growth and metastasis of tumors; however, research has mainly been conducted in animal models (Hassan et al 2005). One clinical study conducted with Neovastat did report a significant survival advantage for the patients with unresectable stage IIIA, IIIB, or IV non-small-cell lung cancers receiving treatment (Hassan et al 2005).

Clinical note — Angiogenesis and tumour growth
Angiogenesis is defined as the formation of new capillary blood vessels from existing microvessels and is a process regulated by inducers and inhibitors. It is critical for development, reproduction and repair and dominates many pathological conditions (Folkman 2003). In 1971, the hypothesis that tumour growth is angiogenesis-dependent was first proposed and since then, the study of angiogenesis inhibitors in cancer research has developed. It has now been demonstrated that solid tumours secrete angiogenic substances to set up an internal network of blood vessels to support further growth and there is a correlation between tumour microvessel density and the risk of metastases. In the absence of angiogenesis, tumour growth is restricted to a microscopic size and tumour cells do not shed into the circulation. Several clinical studies have been conducted with various anti-angiogenic therapies, generally indicating that despite an initial increase in tumour blood flow, long-term treatment causes total tumour blood flow to reach a steady state or to gradually decrease.

OTHER USES
There is one case report of a man with Kaposi’s sarcoma, whose lesion disappeared after taking shark cartilage (3.75–4.5 g/day for 9 months) (Hillman et al 2001).
DOSAGE RANGE
- Depending on the purity of the supplement, 500–4500 mg/day in divided doses.
- Various doses of cartilage have been used in different studies, ranging from 2.5 mg to 100 g/day (Simone et al 1998).

ADVERSE REACTIONS
A clinical study of 60 patients with advanced cancer reported the most common adverse reactions as gastrointestinal related, such as nausea, vomiting and constipation (Miller et al 1998).

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
Controlled studies and sufficient reliable information is not available to predict or determine interactions.

CONTRAINICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Contraindicated in people with seafood allergy.

HYPERCALCAEMIA
Due to the high calcium content of this supplement, it should be used with caution in people with hypercalcaemia.

THEORETICAL CAUTIONS BASED ON THE SUPPLEMENT’S ANTI-ANGIOGENIC ACTIVITY
- Suspend use 3 weeks before surgery and for 6 weeks after surgery.
- Not recommended for children or teenagers still experiencing growth.

PREGNANCY USE
Although not scientifically investigated in this population, it is not recommended in pregnancy based on theoretical considerations.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Shark cartilage is mainly composed of calcium, phosphorus, water, collagen and proteoglycans, chiefly chondroitin sulfates.
- Anti-angiogenic, antineoplastic, immunostimulant and broad-spectrum antibiotic activities have been reported in preliminary studies.
- Both analgesic and anti-inflammatory activities have been reported for shark cartilage preparations in animal studies, most likely due to its chondroitin content. As a result, it is used to relieve symptoms in arthritic conditions.
- It is a popular supplement among cancer patients; however, the few clinical trials conducted so far with people with advanced cancers have generally produced negative results, suggesting no benefit.
• Its use is contraindicated in people with seafood allergy, and in pregnancy. Do not use 3 weeks before and 6 weeks after surgery, or in children or teenagers still experiencing growth.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this supplement do for me?
Shark cartilage has a number of different actions, such as anti-inflammatory, antibiotic, anti-tumour and pain-relieving effects. However, these have not been confirmed in controlled human studies. As a result, it is difficult to determine what effects will be experienced.

When will it start to work?
Due to the lack of human research, this is unknown.

Are there any safety issues?
Shark cartilage products are not to be used in people with seafood allergy or in pregnancy. They should not be used by children or teenagers still experiencing growth or 3 weeks before and for 6 weeks after surgery.

REFERENCES
Hassan ZM et al. Low molecular weight fraction of shark cartilage can modulate immune responses and abolish angiogenesis. Int Immunopharmacol 5.6 (2005): 961-70.
Shen XR et al. SCAIF80, a novel inhibitor of angiogenesis, and its effect on tumor growth. Sheng Wu Hua Xue Yu Sheng Wu Wu Li Xue Bao (Shanghai) 33.1 (2001): 99-104.
Slippery elm

Historical note  The dried inner bark of the slippery elm tree was a popular remedy used by many Native American tribes, and subsequently taken up by European settlers. It was mixed with water and applied topically to treat wounds, bruises and skin irritations, and used internally for sore throat, coughs and gastrointestinal conditions. When mixed with milk, it was used as a nutritious gruel for children and convalescents. It also gained a reputation as an effective wound healer among soldiers during the American Civil War. From 1820 until 1960 it was listed in the US Pharmacopeia as a demulcent, emollient and antitussive (Ulbricht & Basch 2005). The name ‘slippery elm’ refers to the slippery consistency of the inner bark when it comes into contact with water.

COMMON NAME
Slippery elm

OTHER NAMES
American elm, Indian elm, moose elm, red elm, sweet elm, winged elm

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Ulmus fulvus or Ulmus rubra (family Ulmaceae)

  According to current botanical nomenclature, it should now be referred to as Ulmus rubra.

PLANT PART USED
Dried inner bark

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
The inner bark chiefly contains mucilage (various hexoses, pentoses, methylpentoses), glucose, polyuronides, tannins, galacturonic acid, L-rhamnose, D-galactose, starches, fat, phytosterols, sesquiterpenes, and cholesterol (Beveridge et al 1969; IM Gateway Database 2003; Newall et al 1996; US Department of Agriculture Phytochemical Database 2003). The bark provides 2740 kilocalories per kilogram. It contains a variety of nutritional factors such as glucose, calcium, iron, vitamin C, thiamin, zinc, magnesium and potassium, providing support for its traditional use as a nutritious gruel.
Clinical note — Mucilages
Mucilages are hydrophilic structures, capable of trapping water, which causes them to swell in size and develop a gel-like consistency. The gels tend to have soothing properties and can be broken down by bowel flora when taken internally (Mills & Bone 2000). Mucilages are known to have beneficial effects on burns, wounds and ulcers when applied externally and on gastric inflammation, irritations and diarrhoea when taken internally.

MAIN ACTIONS
The pharmacological actions of slippery elm have not been significantly investigated in clinical studies. Therefore, information is generally based on what is known about key constituents found within the herb.

SOOTHES IRRITATED AND INFLAMED TISSUE
The large amount of mucilage found in slippery elm bark will coat the surface of mucous membranes or wounds and sores when it comes in contact with water, and form a gel-like layer. Laboratory research has shown that mucilaginous medicinal plants, such as slippery elm, can decrease local irritation in acute gastritis.

NUTRITIVE DEMULCENT
A number of constituents, such as starch, glucose, calcium, iron, vitamin C, thiamine, zinc, magnesium and potassium are present in slippery elm, making it a source of many nutritional factors (Duke 2003).

ANTIOXIDANT
In vitro studies show a free radical scavenging activity that may relate to its anti-inflammatory action (Langmead et al 2002).

CLINICAL USE
The therapeutic effectiveness of slippery elm has not been significantly investigated under clinical trial conditions, so evidence is derived from traditional, in vitro and animal studies.

GASTROINTESTINAL CONDITIONS
Based on traditional evidence, slippery elm is taken internally to relieve the symptoms of gastritis, acid dyspepsia, gastric reflux, peptic ulcers, irritable bowel syndrome and Crohn’s disease.

It is widely accepted that the mucilage acts as a barrier against the damaging effects of stomach acid on the oesophagus and may also exert mild anti-inflammatory activity locally. Currently, clinical research is not available to determine the effectiveness of slippery elm in these conditions; however, anecdotally the treatment appears...
to be very successful and patients report rapid improvement in upper gastrointestinal symptoms.

Solid dose tablets and capsules are used in the treatment of diarrhoea when it is believed the fibre will slow down gastric transit time and act as a bulking agent. Although clinical studies are not available to determine its effectiveness, the high mucilaginous content and presence of tannins in the herb provide a theoretical basis for its use.

DERMATITIS AND WOUNDS
Slippery elm has also been used as a topical agent to soothe irritated and/or inflamed skin conditions, wounds and burns and draw out boils and abscesses (Fisher & Painter 1996). When applied, it forms a protective gel-like layer, which is considered to have soothing properties.

OTHER USES
Traditionally, slippery elm is used to treat bronchitis, cystitis and intestinal parasites. Externally, it has been used to treat gout, inflamed joints and toothache (Fisher & Painter 1996).

Clinical note – Essiac tea
Slippery elm is one of the key ingredients in Essiac tea, which was reportedly developed by the Ojibwa tribe of Canada and named after an Ontario nurse (Rene Caisse) to whom the formula for the herbal tea was given by an Ojibwa healer in 1922 (Smith & Boon 1999). It is used to treat a variety of diverse conditions such as allergies, hypertension, and osteoporosis. The tea is made up of a mixture of four herbs, *Arctium lappa* (burdock root), *Rumex acetosella* (sheep sorrel), *Ulmus rubra* (slippery elm) and *Rheum officinale* (rhubarb) and is considered to possess antioxidant and possibly anticancer activity (Leonard et al 2006). As a result, it is used widely by North American cancer patients during chemo- and radiotherapy (Cheung et al 2005) for reduction in symptoms associated with cancer treatment and as a possible adjunctive treatment. In vitro tests with Essiac have identified anticancer activity, although its effects in vivo are controversial and evidence of efficacy is anecdotal (Leonard et al 2006). A recent study demonstrated that Essiac tea effectively scavenges several types of radicals and possesses DNA-protective effects (Leonard et al 2006).

DOSAGE RANGE
Owing to insufficient data available from clinical studies, doses have been derived from Australian manufacturers’ recommendations.
GASTROINTESTINAL SYMPTOMS
- One to two capsules containing 150 mg of slippery elm before meals.
- Fluid extract (60%): 5 mL three times daily.
- Half a teaspoon of slippery elm bark powder is mixed with one cup of hot water and taken up to three times daily. For added flavouring, cinnamon or nutmeg can be added.

EXTERNAL USE
- Mix the coarse powdered bark with enough boiling water to make a paste and use as a poultice (Hoffman 1983).

TOXICITY
Insufficient reliable information is available.

ADVERSE REACTIONS
Insufficient reliable information is available.

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
Controlled studies are unavailable, but interactions are theoretically possible with some medicines.

Since slippery elm forms an inert barrier over the gastrointestinal lining, it may theoretically alter the rate and/or extent of absorption of medicines with a narrow therapeutic range (e.g. barbiturates, digoxin, lithium, phenytoin, warfarin). The clinical significance of this is unclear. Separate doses by 2 hours.

CONTRAINICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Insufficient reliable information is available.

PREGNANCY USE
Insufficient reliable information is available.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Slippery elm inner bark is a highly mucilaginous substance, which has been traditionally used as a topical application to soothe irritated and inflamed skin conditions and promote wound healing.
- It is used internally to soothe an irritated throat and is often combined with antiseptic herbs.
- Slippery elm is used to provide symptomatic relief in acid dyspepsia, gastrointestinal reflux and inflammatory bowel diseases, but has not been scientifically studied to any significant extent.
• Overall, slippery elm has not been significantly investigated in clinical studies, so most information is derived from traditional sources.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What will this herb do for me?
The inner bark of slippery elm is highly mucilaginous, meaning that it forms a thick gel-like substance when combined with water. Traditionally, it has been used internally to relieve symptoms of dyspepsia and inflamed bowel conditions and topically to soothe irritated skin and promote wound healing.

When will it start to work?
Whether used internally for upper gastrointestinal symptoms (such as reflux and dyspepsia) or applied topically to irritated skin, it should theoretically provide quick symptomatic relief; however, research to confirm this is not available.

Are there any safety issues?
Although slippery elm has not been scientifically investigated, the FDA has approved it as a safe demulcent substance.

REFERENCES
Soy

Historical note  Soybeans were one of the first crops grown by humans and have been consumed for approximately 5000 years in China where they are regarded as both a food and a medicine. During the Chou dynasty 1134–246 BC fermentation techniques were developed to produce tempeh, miso and tamari soya sauce, with tofu being invented around the second century BC. Soy first reached the West as imported soy sauce, and soy bean cultivation began in the 1770s, primarily for animal feed. It was not until World War I that soy became a significant crop for human consumption (Natural Standard Patient Monograph 2005). Soy protein was first produced in the 1930s for its functional properties and used as a pigment binder for paper, a foam for fire extinguishers and a fibre for making artificial silk before being used as a food supplement in the 1960s (Wikipedia 2006).

COMMON NAME
Glycine max

OTHER NAMES
Glycine soja, dolichos soja, glycine gracilis, glycine hispida, phaseolus max, soja hispida, soja max

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Glycine max (family Fabaceae [Leguminosae])

PLANT PART USED
Bean

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Soybeans are a high nutrient food containing up to 50% protein. Soy protein contains all of the essential amino acids in sufficient quantities to act as a sole protein source with methionine (a precursor of homocysteine) being the limiting amino acid (Young 1991).

Soy is a major food source of phytoestrogens (isoflavones and lignans), with each gram of soy protein containing approximately 1–3 mg of isoflavones, including glycosides of genistein, daidzein and glycitein (Erdman 2000). Soy also contains the lignans secoisolariciresinol, matairesinol, syringaresinol, lariciresinol, isolariciresinol, and pinoresinol (Penalvo et al 2004), as well as soy lecithin (a phospholipid containing

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
linoleic and linolenic acid), vitamin E (in its four isomeric forms as alpha, beta, gamma, and delta-tocopherol), oligosaccharides, the phytosterols beta-sitosterol, campesterol and stigmasterol, phytates and protease inhibitors, inositol hexaphosphate, saponins and oligosaccharides (Mazur et al 1998, Tripathi & Misra 2005).

**MAIN ACTIONS**

Daidzein, an isoflavone found in soy, is metabolised to the more metabolically active equol and O-desmethylangolensin (O-DMA) by as yet unspecified intestinal bacteria. Following soy or daidzein consumption, approximately 30–50% of the human population produce equol, and approximately 80–90% produce O-DMA; however, the significance of this is uncertain, despite some studies suggesting that the ability to produce equol and O-DMA may be associated with reduced risk of certain diseases including breast and prostate cancers (Atkinson et al 2005).

Predicting the effects of isoflavones in vivo is difficult because the route of administration, chemical form of the phyto-oestrogen, its metabolism, bioavailability, half-life, timing and level of exposure, intrinsic oestrogenic state and non-hormonal secondary mediated actions of isoflavones may all influence their biological and clinical effects (Setchell & Cassidy 1999) and the mechanisms for the clinical effects of soy are yet to be fully evaluated (Balk et al 2005, Setchell & Cassidy 1999).

**OESTROGEN RECEPTOR/HORMONAL MODULATION**

Soy isoflavones and lignans share structural similarities with oestrogen and are referred to as phyto-oestrogens and/or selective oestrogen receptor modulators (Silva 2005). Soy isoflavones have weak oestrogenic activity. The order of activity in in-vivo assays is glycitein > genistein > daidzein (PDRHealth 2004). Soy isoflavone glycosides bind weakly to both oestrogen receptors, with the binding affinity of genistein, dihydrogenistein and equol being comparable to the binding affinity of 17-beta-estradiol (Morito et al 2001).

Isoflavones have complex actions that may be tissue specific and may act as partial oestrogen agonists and antagonists, as well as having non-classical affects on plasma membranes and cell signalling pathways (Setchell & Cassidy 1999).

The oestrogenic effects of soy are postulated to contribute to protective effects against cardiovascular disease, cancer and menopausal symptoms. Although a review of 861 studies on the effects of phyto-oestrogens suggests they are indeed biologically active in humans (Knight & Eden 1996), major gaps in knowledge still exist regarding the effects of phyto-oestrogen supplements on bone diseases, various cancers, menopausal symptoms, and cognitive function (Lu et al 2001, Stark & Madar
2002). Interestingly, soy has a greater affinity for the oestrogen beta-receptor than the alpha-receptor. The beta-receptor is found in brain, bone, bladder and vascular epithelia, tissues in which isoflavones purportedly have activity (Setchell & Cassidy 1999).

Genistein has been found to have an oestrogen-like effect on the serum lipid profile (Yildiz et al 2005); however, in a double-blind, placebo-controlled trial in 40 healthy postmenopausal women aged 50–75 years, 40 g of soy protein containing 118 mg isoflavones did not produce biologically significant oestrogenic effects on coagulation, fibrinolysis, or endothelial function (Teede et al 2005). In another 12-month double-blind randomised trial of soy protein containing 99 mg isoflavones/day in 202 postmenopausal women, SBP and DBP decreased and endothelial function improved in the equol producers, with increased blood pressure and deterioration in endothelial function seen in the equol non-producers (Kreijkamp-Kaspers et al 2005).

A review of 50 RCTs of soy and endocrine function suggest that there are no consistent statistically significant effects of soy on FSH or TSH levels or on oestradiol levels at the follicular phase, or on menstrual cycle length. Similarly, there was not a consistent significant effect on testosterone levels in healthy males (Balk et al 2005).

**MENOPAUSAL SYMPTOMS**
The natural oestrogen-receptor activity of soy is popularly considered an alternative to controversial HRT for postmenopausal women (Sliva 2005). A recent analysis of 17 trials, however, found mixed results for the effects of soy isoflavone extracts on menopausal symptoms (Nelson et al 2006). Although some data seem to support the efficacy of isoflavones in reducing the incidence and severity of hot flushes, many studies have not found any difference between the isoflavone recipients and the controls. Inadequate data exist to evaluate the effect of isoflavones on bone mass and vaginal dryness (Greenwood et al 2000).

**CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE**
There are many potential mechanisms by which soy may improve cardiovascular outcomes, including reduction in total cholesterol, LDL, HDL, triglycerides, lipoprotein a, blood pressure, C-reactive protein, homocysteine, endothelial function, systemic artery compliance, and oxidised LDL (Balk et al 2005). A review by the North American Menopause Society suggests that the most convincing health effects of soy can be attributed to the actions of isoflavones on lipids, with studies finding statistically significant reductions in LDL and triglycerides, as well as increases in HDL (Greenwood et al 2000). It is unclear how soy exerts its beneficial effects on lipid metabolism or which are the active components of soy, which may include soy protein, bioactive

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
peptides, interaction of isoflavones within the intact soy matrix, or other compounds (Cassidy & Hooper 2006, Torres et al 2006).

Consumption of soy protein may produce cardiovascular benefits through multiple mechanisms, including the low methionine content reducing serum homocysteine concentration (Nagata et al 2003), reduction of the insulin/glucagon ratio (Sanchez & Hubbard 1991), downregulation of the hepatic transcription factor sterol regulatory element binding protein-1, which in turn reduces lipotoxicity in the liver (Torres et al 2006), regulation of hepatic lipid metabolism through upregulation of LDL receptors and increase in bile acid secretion (Potter 1995), reducing hepatic fatty acid and triglyceride biosynthesis and increasing fatty acid oxidation (Tovar et al 2005), preventing the transfer of fatty acids to extra adipose tissues by increasing the adipocyte hormone adiponectin (Nagasawa et al 2003), and increasing bile acid secretion and bacterial conversion of cholesterol to the non-absorbable coprostanol (Huff & Carroll 1980). Soy protein peptides may also act to decrease intestinal cholesterol absorption and bile acid uptake, reduce aortic accumulation of cholesterol esters and suppress food intake and gastric emptying by increasing cholecystokinin, and inhibiting angiotensin-converting enzyme (Torres et al 2006).

Soy protein is also reported to have beneficial effects on renal function, with suggestions that the isoflavones genistein and daidzein reduce glomerular damage by protecting LDL from oxidation and the high arginine content acts as a precursor for NO thus improving renal flow (Torres et al 2006).

Although it has been suggested that there is no evidence of beneficial effects of phyto-oestrogens on blood pressure, arterial compliance or oxidation of LDL-cholesterol, there may be beneficial effects on endothelial function and homocysteine concentrations in postmenopausal women (Cassidy & Hooper 2006). Soy isoflavones have, however, been found to improve systemic arterial compliance in perimenopausal and menopausal women (Nestel 1997). Soy protein, regardless of isoflavone content, modulates serum lipid ratios in a direction beneficial for cardiovascular disease risk in healthy young men (McVeigh et al 2006).

**ANTI-OSTEOPOROTIC**

It has been suggested that the oestrogenic effects of soy isoflavone may help prevent osteoporosis (Setchell & Cassidy 1999). A recent review of in vitro and in vivo studies suggests that soy protein prevents bone loss and that soy isoflavones stimulate the synthesis and the expression of alkaline phosphatases in osteoblasts, and food enriched with isoflavones prevented the reduction of bone mineral density (BMD) in ovariectomised rats or mice and inhibited excretion of urinary deoxypyridinoline (Horiuchi 2005). Animal studies have also found a synergy between soy isoflavones
and supplemental calcium in improving BMD, particularly in the lumbar spine (Ward 2005).

In human trials, 35 g/day soy protein for 12 weeks was found to significantly reduce urinary deoxypyridinoline and increase total alkaline phosphatase in a small study of 15 women aged 45–64 years (Roudsari et al 2005); however, randomised trials in humans suggest that soy protein and soy isoflavones do not significantly affect calcium metabolism in postmenopausal women (Spence et al 2005) or improve BMD (Horiuchi 2005), despite having an effect on markers of bone formation (Arjmandi et al 2005).

It has been suggested that the beneficial effects of soy isoflavones on bone may be life-stage specific and dependent on the number of oestrogen receptors and the endogenous hormone milieu. Perimenopausal and early menopausal women may therefore be more receptive to the therapeutic effects of isoflavones on bone loss prior to the diminution of oestrogen receptors that occurs in the postmenopausal years (Reinwald & Weaver 2006).

**ANTICANCER**

To date there have been no positive human intervention studies and the evidence of soy’s anticancer effects is based on epidemiological data, as well as in vitro and animal studies.

Soy phyto-oestrogens are converted by gut bacteria to derivatives with weak oestrogenic and antioxidative activity, and epidemiological studies suggest that the highest plasma levels of their metabolites are found in individuals living in countries or regions with low incidence of both cancer and cardiovascular disease (Mazur et al 1998). Although soy phyto-oestrogens have been implicated in soy’s anticarcinogenic activity, a causal relation to disease prevention is hypothetical, as the exact mechanisms have not been elucidated (Adlercreutz 2002a, b).

There are multiple mechanisms by which soy protein may protect against cancer, as there is evidence for soy isoflavones having oestrogenic, anti-oestrogenic, antioxidant, antiproliferative, and anti-angiogenic activities (Barnes et al 2000). Soy also contains other putative anticarcinogenic compounds such as lignans, saponins, phytates, protease inhibitors, and phytosterols (Greenwood et al 2000) and it is possible that soy consumption may be a marker for other dietary factors.

It has been suggested that soy isoflavones may reduce breast-cancer risk by affecting endogenous sex-hormone concentrations and the menstrual cycle (Adlercreutz 2002a, b, Setchell & Cassidy 1999) and that soy phyto-oestrogens may influence cancer growth through effects on oestrogen receptors, as well as through inhibition of tyrosine and other protein kinases, and other enzymes such as...
aromatase, alteration of growth-factor activity and inhibition of angiogenesis (Adlercreutz 2002a, b).

Genistein is the most studied of the phyto-oestrogens and has weak oestrogenic activity. It has also been found to cause apoptosis in cancer cells both in vitro and in vivo (Bylund et al 2000), stimulate several antioxidative enzymes, such as catalase, superoxide dismutase, glutathione peroxidase and reductase, induce tumour cell differentiation, downregulate the epidermal-growth-factor receptor and erbB2/Neu receptors in cancer cells, and also possibly inhibit tumour cell invasion by inhibiting MMP9 (92 kDa type IV collagenase) (Adlercreutz 2002a, b). Genistein is also reported to inhibit angiogenesis, DNA topoisomerase II, protein tyrosine kinases, aromatase, NF-kappa-B, and to downregulate TGF-beta and stimulate the sex-hormone-binding globulin (PDRHealth 2004). Isoflavones have also been shown to inhibit the activity of aromatase (CYP19), thus decreasing oestrogen biosynthesis and producing anti-oestrogenic effects, which may be important in breast and prostate cancers (Moon et al 2006).

Soy isoflavones also demonstrate a variety of oestrogen-independent activities, and some of them are directly associated with the suppression of the invasive behaviour of breast cancer cells (Sliva 2005). Furthermore, it is suggested that variability in xenobiotic metabolising enzymes and the effect of flavonoid ingestion on enzyme activity may contribute to individual variations in susceptibility to diseases such as cancer (Moon et al 2006).

Although in vitro and animal models point to several pathways by which isoflavones may reduce incidence of cancer (Rosenberg Zand et al 2002), and experimental evidence also exists for an inhibitory effect of soy bran on prostate cancer growth and of isolated lignans on colon cancer (Adlercreutz 2002a, b), clinical trial data supporting this are still lacking.

OTHER ACTIONS

ANTIOXIDANT

Oxygen stress is believed to contribute to menopause and degenerative changes associated with ageing and it is suggested that antioxidants such as soy isoflavones may help to protect mitochondria against premature oxidative damage (Miquel et al 2006). Although several clinical trials have suggested that soy intake decreases oxidative stress and that soy isoflavones, such as genistein, have antioxidant properties in vitro, results of supplementation in clinical trials are inconclusive. Furthermore, diets relatively high in soy protein or soy-derived isoflavones are
reported to have little effect on plasma antioxidant capacity or biomarkers of oxidative stress (Vega-Lopez et al 2005).

**COGNITIVE FUNCTION**
Soy isoflavones may mimic the actions and functions of oestrogen on the brain, and they have been shown to have positive effects on the cognitive function in females, whereas results in males are inconsistent. Soy isoflavones, and particularly genistein, have been suggested to influence cognitive function via an oestrogen-receptor-mediated pathway and via the inhibition of tyrosine kinase; however, definitive data are still lacking (Lee et al 2005).

**CLINICAL USE**
Soybeans are usually consumed as fermented and non-fermented soy foods such as tofu, miso and tempeh, as well as whole soybeans, soynuts, soymilk or soy cheese, and soy flour is a common ingredient in foods, beverages and condiments (Sliva 2005). Wide variability has been reported in the total amount of isoflavones in commercial soy products with levels being generally lower than the values on the product labels (Nurmi et al 2002).

**CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE**
Substantial data from epidemiological surveys and nutritional interventions in humans and animals indicate that soy protein reduces serum total and LDL-cholesterol and triglycerides, as well as hepatic cholesterol and triglycerides (Torres et al 2006). Based on this data the US FDA has approved a food label health claim stating that a diet with a daily intake of 25 g of soy protein, and low in saturated fat and cholesterol may reduce the risk of heart disease (Balk et al 2005). This claim, however, is only based on studies demonstrating beneficial effects on lipids and other biomarkers of risk, as there have been no published trials on the effects of soy on mortality or cardiovascular events (Cassidy & Hooper 2006).

Although it has been suggested that soy improves lipoprotein levels, a critical analysis of investigations to date suggest that the effects are not impressive and questions the clinical importance of the observed hypocholesterolaemic effects (Dewell et al 2006).

At least six systematic reviews have assessed the effects of soy isoflavones on lipid levels, and suggest that a diet supplemented with soy protein isolate containing isoflavones reduces LDL-cholesterol by approximately 0.15 mmol/L, but without clear effects on triglycerides or HDL-cholesterol (Cassidy & Hooper 2006). In one of the most recent systematic reviews that included a total of 68 RCTs, it is suggested that soy has small to moderate effects on lipids with significant reductions in total
cholesterol (by 2.5%), LDL (3%), triglycerides (6%) and no significant change on HDL, and that the effect is independent of isoflavone content. This review further suggests that higher doses of soy protein are associated with greater LDL reduction in those with elevated baseline LDL levels (Balk et al. 2005).

In a meta-analysis of 23 RCTs published from 1995 to 2002, soy protein with isoflavones was associated with significant decreases in total cholesterol (by 3.8%), LDL (by 5.25%), and triacylglycerols (by 7.27%) and significant increases in serum HDL-cholesterol (by 3.03%), with the observed changes being greater for those having higher baseline cholesterol levels or taking more than >80 mg/day isoflavone and the greatest lowering effects on total cholesterol and LDL-cholesterol occurred within short time frames, whereas improvements in HDL-cholesterol were only observed in studies of longer than 12 weeks duration (Zhan & Ho 2005).

Since these reviews a number of studies have confirmed the effects of soy on blood lipids, yet results continue to be mixed. In a double-blind RCT of 117 patients with hypercholesterolaemia 15 or 25 g/day soy protein was found to significantly reduce LDL, total serum cholesterol and apolipoprotein B levels without affecting HDL, triglycerides, homocysteine, folic acid, or vitamin B12, with 25 g/day of soy protein being twice as effective as 15 g/day (Hoie et al. 2005a). Similar results were obtained in a similar study, with a preparation combining isolated soy protein with soy fibres and phospholipids showing twice the lipid-lowering effect of a preparation containing isolated soy protein alone (Hoie et al. 2005b). A soy protein substitution was also reported to have lipid-lowering effects in hyperlipidaemic but not normolipidaemic haemodialysis patients (Chen et al. 2005).

These results contrast with those from studies that have not found lipid-lowering effects with soy supplementation. In a RCT of 55 postmenopausal women, 6 weeks of supplementation with either phytate or isoflavones in soy protein isolate was not found to have a significant effect of reducing oxidative damage or favourably altering blood lipids (Engelman et al. 2005). Similarly, in two other RCTs no difference in plasma lipids were found with soy-based supplements (Hermansen et al. 2005, Ma et al. 2005).

**BLOOD PRESSURE**

In addition to beneficial effects on lipids, epidemiological data suggest that soy may affect blood pressure. In an observational study of 45,694 participants of the Shanghai Women’s Health Study, aged 40–70 years with no history of hypertension, diabetes or cardiovascular disease, the intake of soy foods over 2–3 years was inversely associated with both SBP and DBP, particularly among elderly women. Results of this study found that compared to women consuming less than 2.5 g/day
of soy, consumption of more than 25 g/day was associated with a significant reduction in SBP of 1.9 mmHg and a significant reduction in DBP of 0.9 mmHg and that the inverse association between soy consumption and blood pressure became stronger with increasing age, with significant reductions of –4.9 mmHg for SBP and –2.2 mmHg for DBP in women aged over 60 years (Yang et al 2005). A recent review of 22 RCTs on the effect of soy consumption on blood pressure, however, suggests that there is no discernible effect on either SBP or DBP (Balk et al 2005).

**CANCER PREVENTION**

High levels of phyto-oestrogens (lignans and isoflavonoids) are frequently associated with low risk of breast, prostate and colon cancer, and breast cancer has been found to be associated with low lignan levels in the USA, Finland, Sweden and Australia. It is not clear, however, if these compounds are cancer protective or are simply biomarkers of a ‘healthy’ diet (Adlercreutz 1998).

A review of the role of phyto-oestrogens, such as soy containing isoflavones, for the prevention of breast cancer concluded that a soy-containing diet in adult women is not or only slightly protective with regard to breast cancer, but may be beneficial if consumed in early life before puberty or during adolescence and that negative effects on the breast cannot be excluded (Adlercreutz 2002a, b).

A more recent meta-analysis of published epidemiologic studies associating cancer risk with soy intake suggests statistically significant reductions in the mean overall risk estimate for breast (0.78), colon (0.70) and prostate (0.66) cancer for soy consumers (Badger et al 2005).

Soy proteins, common in the Asian diet, have been shown to inhibit prostate cancer cell growth (Sonn et al 2005). In RCTs in men aged 50–80 years, 12 months’ supplementation with 83 mg/day isoflavones did not alter serum levels of prostate-specific antigen (PSA) in healthy men (Adams 2004), and 60 mg/day of soy isoflavone did alter serum PSA and free testosterone in some men with early stage prostate cancer (Kumar 2004).

In another RCT involving 29 men with prostate cancer and scheduled to undergo a radical prostatectomy, supplementation with bread containing 50 g of soy grits was found to significantly reduce PSA levels (Dalais 2004).

**MENOPAUSAL SYMPTOMS**

A systematic review of 21 trials of soy and/or isoflavones on hot flushes and night sweats suggest that, although results were inconsistent, most RCTs of isoflavone supplements found reductions in weekly hot flushes of between 7% and 40%; however, the quality of studies was generally low (Balk et al 2005). Another
systematic review and meta-analysis that included 17 trials found that isoflavone supplementation significantly reduced flushes, with the percentage reduction being related to the number of baseline flushes per day and the dose of isoflavone studied (Howes et al 2006). The fact that the composition and dose of soy supplements varies widely across studies, however, means that making comparisons and definitive conclusions is difficult (Low Dog 2005). In two separate RCTs, soy consumption did not significantly alleviate hot flushes in women with breast cancer (MacGregor et al 2005, Van Patten et al 2002).

**OSTEOPOROSIS PREVENTION**

The clinical data suggest that approximately 80 mg/day isoflavones are needed to derive skeletal benefits, whereas limited epidemiologic data among Asian populations generally suggests that lower amounts are efficacious (Messina et al 2004). The relationship between usual soy food consumption and fracture incidence was studied in 24,403 postmenopausal women aged 40–70 years who had no history of fracture or cancer in the Shanghai Women's Health Study. During a mean follow-up of 4.5 years a statistically significant association was found between soy or isoflavone consumption and fracture risk, with the association being more pronounced among women in early menopause (Zhang et al 2005).

A recent systematic review found 31 studies that evaluated the effect of soy on markers of bone health; however, few of these were long term studies and they involved a wide variety of interventions making overall conclusions difficult. Of the 5 studies longer than 1 year, no consistent effect was seen on BMD or makers of bone formation (Balk et al 2005). Another systematic review that evaluated 15 clinical trials looking at the effects of isoflavones or isoflavone-rich soy protein on BMD suggests that isoflavones reduce bone loss in younger postmenopausal women (Messina et al 2004).

**COGNITIVE FUNCTION**

Although not all studies have consistently shown benefits of soy on cognitive function, there have been a number of double-blind RCTs showing that soy improves memory and frontal lobe function in young volunteers (File et al 2001) and postmenopausal women (Duffy et al 2003, File et al 2005).

In one 6-week double-blind trial in 50 postmenopausal women, 60 mg/day total isoflavone equivalents significantly improved non-verbal short-term memory and performance on tests of frontal lobe function with no effects on long-term memory, category generation, or sustained attention (File et al 2005). Similarly, another double-blind controlled trial of 33 postmenopausal women found that 12 weeks’
supplementation with the same supplement significantly improved recall of pictures, sustained attention, learning rule reversals and planning at 12 weeks without affecting menopausal symptoms, self-rating of mood, bodily symptoms or sleepiness (Duffy et al 2003). A further double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled trial in healthy postmenopausal women aged 55–74 years found that 6 months’ supplementation with 110 mg/day total isoflavones significantly improved category fluency compared with baseline scores and the placebo group responses at 6 months (Kritz-Silverstein et al 2003). In contrast to these studies a double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled trial of 202 healthy postmenopausal women aged 60–75 years found that 25 g/day of soy protein containing 99 mg of isoflavones for 12 months did not affect cognitive function, BMD or plasma lipids (Kreijkamp-Kaspers et al 2004).

OTHER USES

SOY INFANT FORMULA
Soy has been used as an alternative for cow’s milk in infant feeding for more than 30 years and may account for as much as 25% of infant formula (Mendez et al 2002). Soy formula is commonly used for infants with cow’s milk allergy and there is evidence to suggest that soy milk may be effective in reducing infant colic (Garrison & Christakis 2000). There are few studies, however, examining the effects of phyto-oestrogens in infants. Although infants consuming soy formula may be exposed to 6–11 mg/kg/day of phyto-oestrogens and have plasma levels of isoflavones an order of magnitude higher than adults consuming soy foods (Setchell & Cassidy 1999), there is no obvious evidence to suggest any negative effects (Mendez et al 2002, Setchell & Cassidy 1999).

DIABETES AND DIABETIC NEPHROPATHY
Replacing animal protein with soy protein has been found to improve various disease markers in patients with type 1 or type 2 diabetes and people with obesity. In a RCT of 104 patients with type 2 diabetes, 12 months of a soy-based meal replacement was found to significantly improve weight loss, HbAlc and high-sensitivity C-reactive protein levels and significantly reduce the use of sulfonylureas and metformin compared to the use of individual diet plans (Li et al 2005). Another randomised trial involving 90 obese (non-diabetic) subjects suggests that 6 months on a low-fat, high-soy-protein diet can help to reduce fat while preserving muscle mass and improving glycaemic control and the lipid profile (Deibert et al 2004).

Soy protein supplementation is also reported to be of benefit in a number of pilot studies of diabetic nephropathy. In a controlled crossover trial, 8 weeks of
substituting soy protein for animal protein significantly reduced glomerular filtration rates in 12 young adults with type 1 diabetes mellitus (Stephenson et al 2005). In another crossover trial, isolated soy protein significantly reduced urinary albumin and improved lipid profiles in 14 men with type 2 diabetes and nephropathy (Teixeira et al 2004). Similarly, improvement in lipid profile and renal function was observed in another randomised crossover clinical trial of 14 patients with type 2 diabetes and nephropathy consuming a 35% soy protein and 30% vegetable protein diet for 7 weeks (Azadbakht et al 2003).

SEASONAL ALLERGIC RHINITIS
Polysaccharides from soy sauce have been shown to have anti-allergic activities in vitro and in vivo and an 8-week double blind study involving 51 subjects with seasonal allergic rhinitis found that oral supplementation with 600 mg of soy polysaccharides was effective in significantly improving symptom scores such as sneezing, nasal stuffiness, and hindrance of daily life, as well as significantly improving the appearance and state of the nasal mucosa (Kobayashi 2005, Kobayashi et al 2005).

PREMENSTRUAL SYNDROME
Isolated soy protein containing 68 mg/day (aglycone equivalents) soy isoflavones was found to significantly improve specific PMS symptoms, including headache, breast tenderness, cramps and swelling in a seven-menstrual cycle, double-blind, placebo-controlled, crossover intervention study in 23 women (Bryant et al 2005).

DOSAGE RANGE
Soy foods contain variable amounts of isoflavones. Soy flour contains 1.3 mg/g of isoflavones, with tofu containing 0.4 mg/g, soy milk 0.25 mg/g, tempeh 0.4 mg/g, miso 0.92 mg/g, soy sauce 0.023 mg/g, soybean paste 0.57 mg/g and soy cheese 0.05 mg/g (Coward et al 1993). Soy isoflavones are also available in some functional food products. Although soy oils and lecithin are used in many food ingredients, the typical Western diet provides negligible isoflavones, whereas the typical Asian diet has 20–50 mg (Nagata et al 1998). The optimal dose required to have clinical effects is yet to be established; however, the benefits seen in epidemiological studies are achieved with approximately 50 mg/day of isoflavones (Setchell & Cassidy 1999).

TOXICITY
Soy and soy isoflavones are considered non-toxic in the doses that are generally consumed as foods. Soy may interfere with the absorption of synthetic thyroid hormone, and there is a theoretical concern based on in vitro and animal data that in
individuals with compromised thyroid function and/or whose iodine intake is marginal, soy foods may increase risk of developing clinical hypothyroidism. Thus soy food consumers should ensure their intake of iodine is adequate (Messina & Redmond 2006).

Although the phyto-oestrogens may have hormonal activity, they have relatively short half-lives of approximately 6–8 hours, which is contrasted with the environmental xeno-oestrogens that may persist for years in fat tissue and hence bio-accumulate (Setchell & Cassidy 1999).

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
There is little suggestion of adverse effects of soy or isoflavones at physiological doses, although those taking soy isoflavone supplements do appear to have higher levels of gastrointestinal and menstrual complaints (Cassidy & Hooper 2006).

Women with breast cancer (especially oestrogen-positive tumours) and men with prostate cancer should avoid the use of soy isoflavone supplements pending long-term safety studies.

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**
Antibiotic administration blocks metabolism of isoflavones to equol through inhibition of the intestinal microflora, whereas a high carbohydrate milieu increases intestinal fermentation and results in more extensive bio-transformation of phyto-oestrogens (Setchell & Cassidy 1999).

It has been suggested that isoflavones can inhibit the oxidative and conjugative metabolism of drugs in vitro and interact with transporters such as P-glycoprotein; however, their ability to interact with drugs remains uncertain (Evans 2000).

**CALCIUM, MAGNESIUM, ZINC, COPPER AND IRON**
Soy contains phytic acid, which may bind with certain minerals, such as calcium, magnesium, manganese, zinc, copper and iron, reducing their availability (PDRHealth 2004).

**TAMOXIFEN**
The soy isoflavone genistein may theoretically compete with tamoxifen for oestrogen receptors, thereby reducing drug efficacy — use caution.

In vivo studies suggest the isoflavone daidzein may enhance the effect of tamoxifen against breast cancer burden and incidence — possible beneficial effect under professional supervision.
PREGNANCY USE
Soy is likely to be safe when used as a food; however, pregnant women and nursing mothers should avoid the use of soy isoflavone supplements pending long-term safety studies.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Soy is a component of many foods and a nutritious source of protein.
- There are many different types and formulations of soy and people may react differently to soy products depending on their diet and the activity of their gut bacteria.
- In countries where people regularly consume soy products there appears to be lower incidence of cardiovascular disease, menopausal symptoms and some cancers; however, these effects have not yet been definitely attributed to soy consumption.
- The most active agents in soy are the isoflavones, which are used to treat menopausal symptoms, and prevent osteoporosis, cancer and heart disease; however, their use is not yet based on large-scale clinical trials.
- The ability of soy to reduce menopausal symptoms is uncertain at present.
- Although there has not been much research on the use of soy in infants, there does not appear to be any adverse effects of feeding infants with soy formula.
- The long-term benefits of soy may relate to the lifetime exposure to the use of soy products.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this supplement do for me?
Soy is a nutritious food and a good source of protein that appears to have beneficial effects on cholesterol, and possible activity against cancer, heart disease osteoporosis and may positively affect cognitive function.

When will it start to work?
Clinical studies suggest the effects of soy take between 6 and 12 weeks to appear.

Are there any safety issues?
Soy is generally considered safe when taken as a food source or protein substitute; however, soy isoflavone supplements should be taken with caution in pregnancy, and in those with breast cancer or prostate cancer.

REFERENCES
Arjmandi BH et al. One year soy protein supplementation has positive effects on bone formation markers but not bone density in postmenopausal women. Nutr J 4, 2005 [Epub ahead of print].
Barnes S et al. Beyond ER[alpha] and ER[beta]: Estrogen receptor binding is only part of the isoflavone story. J Nutr 130(3) (2000): 656-75.


Stinging nettle

Historical note  Stinging nettle has been used since ancient times, with Dioscorides and Galen in ancient Greece reporting diuretic and laxative effects for nettle leaf. It is also widely used for gynaecological complaints by North American Indians and in Ayurvedic medicine in India (Blumenthal et al 2000). The Latin root of *urtica* is *uro*, meaning ‘I burn’, indicative of the small stings caused by the hairs on the leaves of nettle when contact is made with the skin.

OTHER NAMES
Common nettle, brenessel, brennesselkraut, brennesselwurzel, urtica ortie, great stinging nettle, haarnesselkraut, haarnesselwurzel

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
*Urtica dioica* and *Urtica urens* (family Urticaceae)

PLANT PARTS USED
Leaf and root

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Constituents found within the leaf include vitamins A and C, beta-carotene, calcium and potassium, phosphorus, chlorophyll, magnesium and tannins, flavonoids, sterols and amines (US Department of Agriculture 2003).

Constituents found chiefly in the root include polysaccharides, lectins, lignans, fatty acids, terpenes and coumarin (Ernst 2001).

MAIN ACTIONS
ANTI-INFLAMMATORY AND ANALGESIC
In vitro studies have identified anti-inflammatory activity for *Urtica* extract (Obertreis et al 1996a, b, Riehemann et al 1999). The mechanism of action has not been fully elucidated, but test tube studies have demonstrated inhibitory effects on NF-kappa B activation and partial inhibitory effects on cyclo-oxygenase and 5-lipoxygenase derived reactions. Additionally, isolated phenolic acid from nettle has been shown to inhibit leukotriene B4 synthesis in a concentration-dependent manner in vitro.

Although extensive investigation has not been conducted in humans to confirm anti-inflammatory mechanisms, one study of 20 volunteers showed that oral ingestion of 1.34 g nettle extract for 3 weeks significantly decreased...
lipopolysaccharide stimulated TNF-alpha and IL-1-beta when tested ex vivo but had no effects on cytokine levels (Teucher et al 1996).

In vitro data has shown that nettle leaf extract (IDS 30) reduces the induction of primary T-cell responses and TNF-alpha in T-cell mediated diseases such as RA (Broer & Behnke 2002). Faecal IL-1-beta and TNF-alpha concentrations were significantly reduced in mice with induced Crohn’s disease treated with IDS 30 (Konrad et al 2005). Mice treated with nettle extract displayed fewer histological changes and general disease symptoms. The authors conclude that the effect may be due to a decrease in Th1 response and may constitute a new treatment option for prolonging remission in inflammatory bowel disease.

**HYPOTENSIVE AND DIURETIC**

When administered intravenously to test animals, *Urtica* extract exerts an acute hypotensive action accompanied by diuretic and natriuretic effects (Tahri et al 2000). It is uncertain whether the same effects are seen with oral administration.

A review of in vitro and in vivo studies concluded that the hypotensive action of *U. dioica* is due in part to negative inotropic activity and a vasodilatory effect (Testai et al 2002).

**HYPOGLYCAEMIC**

A 33% reduction in blood glucose was noted in rats administered 250 mg/kg of nettle leaf extract orally, 30 minutes before glucose loading (Bnouham et al 2003). Nettle was shown to decrease glucose absorption in the small intestine of rats under anaesthesia; however, 500 mg/kg failed to modify blood glucose levels in alloxan-induced diabetic rats.

A six-fold increase in blood insulin levels occurred after intravenous administration of a nettle leaf fraction in streptozotocin diabetic rats, with a corresponding drop in blood sugar levels as compared to control (Farzami et al 2003). Details of the isolated fraction were not given.

**ANTIPROLIFERATIVE EFFECTS ON PROSTATE CELLS**

The exact mechanism of action of the antiproliferative effects of nettle extract on prostate cells has not been fully elucidated (Hirano et al 1994, Hryb et al 1995, Lichius & Muth 1997, Lichius et al 1999). Results from several in vitro studies suggest that several mechanisms are responsible.

Reduced prostate cell metabolism and growth may result from inhibition of membrane ATPase activity and decreased binding capacity of sex hormone binding globulin to its receptor on human prostatic membranes (Hirano et al 1994, Hryb et al...
Additionally, reduced 5-alpha dihydrotestosterone binding to proteins in humans has been demonstrated (Schmidt 1983).

**Prostate cancer**  One study found that a methanolic extract of stinging nettle roots slows the progression of prostate cancer in both an in vivo model and an in vitro system (Konrad et al 2000). One study involving 20 males with prostatic adenoma found that treatment for 7 days with nettle produced a significant drop in zinc level, thought to be a result of altering zinc-testosterone metabolism and diminishing zinc secretion in adenomatous tissue (Romics & Bach 1991).

**ANTIVIRAL**
A lectin extracted from nettle had inhibitory effects against HIV-1, HIV-2, human cytomegalovirus, respiratory syncytial virus and influenza A virus in vitro (Balzarini et al 1992).

**ANTIOXIDANT**
Nettle has shown potent antioxidant activity in a range of in-vitro tests (Gulcin et al 2004): 50, 100 and 250 µg inhibited peroxidation of linoleic acid by 39%, 66% and 98%, respectively, as compared to 30% inhibition demonstrated by 60 µg/mL of alpha-tocopherol.

In the same study, nettle was shown to scavenge free radicals, hydrogen peroxide and superoxide anion radicals and to chelate heavy metals. Ozen and Korkmaz (2003) reported that constituents from nettle can regulate glutathione reductase, glutathione peroxidase, superoxide dismutase and catalase in vivo.

The fixed oil of nettle has demonstrated strong antioxidant activity in mice treated with carbon tetrachloride, by decreasing lipid peroxidation and increasing antioxidant status (Kanter et al 2003). Nettle extract is significantly effective in preventing fibrosis in liver tissue from carbon tetrachloride damage in vivo (Turkdogan et al 2003). Dried nettle added to the diet of rats decreased cerebral free radicals after forced-swim tests (Toldy et al 2005).

**OTHER ACTIONS**
Nettle has a mild diuretic action (ESCOP 2003).

**CLINICAL USE**
Different parts of the nettle herb have been used for different indications. Most evidence comes from traditional usage as nettle has not been significantly investigated under controlled conditions as a stand-alone treatment.
**ARTHritic CONDITIONS**

Traditionally, nettle herb and leaf have been used to treat painful joint diseases, and scientific investigation now shows there is a demonstrable benefit with its use.

One randomised, double-blind crossover study involving 27 patients with OA pain at the base of the thumb or index finger compared topical applications of stinging nettle leaf with placebo, used daily for 1 week. After a 5-week washout period, treatments were then reversed. Nettle application used for 1 week showed reduction in pain and disability and produced significantly superior results to placebo (Randall et al 2000). An open study of 17 patients reporting beneficial effects with the nettle sting of *U. dioica* showed that a transient urticarial rash can be associated with topical use (Randall et al 1999). It is suspected that a counterirritant effect is chiefly responsible.

In a multicentre study of 152 subjects with degenerative rheumatic conditions, 1.54 g dried nettle herb extract produced a subjective improvement in 70% of cases after 3 weeks (Ramm & Hansen 1995).

Four other studies using a nettle-leaf extract reported that most subjects rated the treatment as good or very good (ESCOP 2003).

Commission E approved as supportive therapy for rheumatic ailments when used internally or applied externally (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**BENIGN PROSTATIC HYPERPLASIA**

In practice, nettle root preparations are often prescribed in combination with other herbal medicines, such as saw palmetto or pygeum. Representative of clinical practice, most studies have investigated the effects of nettle in combination with other herbs and have generally yielded positive results.

Open studies involving a total of over 15 000 men with BPH have found significant improvements in prostate size, night-time urination, frequency of urination, urine flow and residual urine (ESCOP 1996–97). One double-blind study over 9 weeks of nettle extract in 50 men with BPH showed a significant decrease in sex hormone binding globulin and non-significant improvements in micturition volume and maximum urinary flow (Vontobel et al 1985); however, the authors explain that the results were due to inappropriate length and dosage of therapy. In another double-blind, placebo-controlled study, treatment of 67 men with nettle produced a 14% improvement in urine flow and a 53% decrease in residual urine (Dathe & Schmid 1987). An open study of 30 patients with BPH showed that nettle root extract over an average of 3.5 months significantly decreased residual urine volume and increased maximal urinary flow in 50% of cases (Romics 1987). Marked subjective relief was also reported.
**Urtica and Pygeum**  In one study, 134 patients with BPH were randomly assigned an *Urtica* and *Pygeum* preparation (300 mg *U. dioica* root extract combined with 25 mg *P. africanum* bark extract) or a preparation containing half that dose under double-blind test conditions for 8 weeks. Both treatments significantly increased urine flow, and reduced residual urine and nocturia after 28 days, whereas after 56 days, further significant decreases were found in residual urine (half-dose group) and in nocturia (both groups) (Krzeski et al 1993).

**Nettle and saw palmetto extract**  In 1995, an open, prospective, multicentre observational study involving 419 specialist urological practices investigated the efficacy and tolerability of a saw palmetto and nettle combination in 2080 patients with BPH (Schneider et al 1995). Herbal treatment was seen to improve pathological findings and obstructive and irritative symptoms. Both efficacy and tolerability were assessed by physicians as very good or good and most patients reported an improvement in general QOL and reduction in symptoms of BPH.

A randomised, multicenter, double-blind study involving 543 patients with early stage BPH found that a combination of nettle and saw palmetto extract was as effective as finasteride at increasing maximum urinary flow and improving International Prostate Symptom Scores (IPSS) after 24 weeks’ treatment, which continued to improve by week 48 (Sokeland 2000). Improvement in QOL scores were similarly observed with both treatments, regardless of prostate size. Overall, the two treatments only differed in regard to adverse reaction incidence, with the herbal combination much better tolerated (Sokeland & Albrecht 1997). A 2003 review concluded that a combination of nettle and saw palmetto is safe and effective for the treatment of lower urinary tract symptoms associated with benign prostatic hyperplasia, comparable to the alpha-blocker tamsulosin (Bondarenko et al 2003).

A randomised, placebo controlled, double-blind, multicentre trial in 2005 further demonstrated the effectiveness of saw palmetto fruit (160 mg) and nettle root (120 mg) for lower urinary tract symptoms due to prostate enlargement (Lopatkin et al 2005): 257 men aged 50 years or more were randomised to take either two capsules of the study medication (320 mg saw palmetto and 240 mg nettle root) daily or placebo for 24 weeks. Men on the treatment experienced a 35% reduction in symptoms, most notably intermittency, hesitancy, urgency and nocturia, compared to 24% for placebo. At the end of the 24-week period an open trial was conducted for an additional 24 weeks and all men were given the herbal medicine. Those previously taking placebo reported significant improvements when switched to the study medication.
Commission E approved the use of *Urtica* root for difficulty in urination in BPH stages 1 and 2 (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**ALLERGIC RHINITIS**
A double-blind randomised study showed that a freeze-dried preparation of nettles improved global assessments of allergic rhinitis after 1 week’s therapy (Mittman 1990).

**OTHER USES**
Diarrhoea, dysentery and diseases of the colon, internal bleeding, chronic skin eruptions such as eczema, discharges and arthritic conditions.

**DOSAGE RANGE**

**LEAF**
- Dry extract: 0.6–2.1 g/day in divided doses; or
- Liquid extract (1:2): 2–6 mL/day.

**ROOT**
- Although Commission E recommend 4–6 g/day cut root for symptoms of BPH, doses up to 18 g/day have been used (www.phytotherapies.org June 2003).

**TOXICITY**
Insufficient reliable evidence is available.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
One report states that gastrointestinal discomfort, allergic reactions, urticaria, pruritus, oedema and decreased urine volume are possible (Ernst 2001).

Clinical studies in BPH with herbal combinations containing nettle have found only 0.72% to 3.7% experience mild adverse effects.

**URTICARIA DUE TO STINGING NETTLE**
A frequent cause of contact urticaria is skin exposure to the stinging nettle. The urticaria is accompanied by a stinging sensation lasting longer than 12 hours. Part of the immediate reaction to nettle stings is due to histamine introduced by the nettle (Oliver et al 1991). It has also been found that both hair and plant extracts of nettle contain high levels of leukotrienes B4 and C4, besides histamine, which add to the irritant effects (Czarnetzki et al 1990).

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**
Controlled studies are not available; therefore, interactions are based on evidence of activity and are largely theoretical and speculative.
**DIURETIC MEDICINES**
Potentiated effects are theoretically possible observe — patients taking this combination.

**ANTIHYPERTENSIVE MEDICINES**
Additive effects are theoretically possible observe — patients taking this combination.

**FINASTERIDE**
Additive effects are theoretically possible, although the interaction may be beneficial.

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**
People with known sensitivities or allergies to stinging nettle should use this herb cautiously. If symptoms of BPH worsen, seek professional advice.

**PREGNANCY USE**
Use of nettle during pregnancy is contraindicated because of its effects on hormones (WHO 2003).

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**
- Preliminary research has demonstrated anti-inflammatory, analgesic and antiviral activity for nettle.
- Several test tube studies have shown that it reduces prostate cell proliferation and slows the progression of prostate cancer in both an in vivo model and in vitro system.
- The aerial parts are most commonly used to relieve symptoms of arthritis, whereas the root is used for BPH symptom relief, and both uses are supported by clinical evidence.
- Application of nettle leaf for 1 week reduced pain and disability in arthritis under double-blind test conditions.
- One double-blind study found that nettle reduced symptoms of allergic rhinitis.
- Studies using nettle root in combination with saw palmetto or pygeum have shown positive results in BPH.

**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**
What will this herb do for me?
Nettle leaf appears to reduce pain in OA when applied topically for 1 week, whereas oral preparations of nettle root alone or in combination with saw palmetto or pygeum reduces symptoms of BPH. Internal preparations of the leaf reduce symptoms in arthritis and may also reduce symptoms of allergic rhinitis.
When will it start to work?
Topical applications of the leaf in OA have been shown to work after 1 week, whereas benefits in BPH require at least 28 days’ treatment.

Are there any safety issues?
Local application of nettle can be irritating and cause contact urticaria, but preparations taken internally seem generally well tolerated.

REFERENCES


Stinging nettle 1131


© 2007 Elsevier Australia
Tea tree oil

Historical note  The Bundjalong Australian Aboriginal people of northern New South Wales knew of the medicinal qualities of the leaves of this plant for many centuries and used it to treat burns, cuts and insect bites. It was not until the 1700s that it became known in the Western world as ‘tea tree’ because Captain Cook found its aromatic leaves an enjoyable substitute for real tea. The first official report of its medicinal use appeared in the Medical Journal of Australia in 1930 when a Sydney surgeon wrote of its impressive wound healing and antiseptic qualities (Murray 1995). In modern times, tea tree oil has become widely accepted as a standard treatment for wounds and minor skin infections.

COMMON NAME
Tea tree

OTHER NAMES
Australian tea tree oil, melaleuca, melasol, narrow-leaved paperbark, paperbark tree oil, punk tree, ti tree oil

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Melaleuca alternifolia (family Myrtaceae)

PLANT PARTS USED
Essential oil from leaves and branches

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Tea tree oil contains many active constituents, including cineole, alpha cadinene, terpinenes, pinenes, alpha terpineol, aromadendrene, terpinenols and terpinolene (Duke 2003).

MAIN ACTIONS
ANTIFUNGAL AND ANTIBACTERIAL
The in vitro evidence of antifungal and antibacterial activity is overwhelming. In vitro results find that tea tree oil has activity against a range of yeasts and fungi found in common mucosal and skin infections such as Corynebacterium spp., Klebsiella pneumoniae, Micrococcus spp. (M. luteus, M. varians), Propionibacterium acnes, Streptococcus pyogenes, Trichomonas vaginalis, Pseudomonas aeruginosa, A. baumannii, Staphylococcus spp. (S. aureus, S. capitis, S. epidermidis, S. haemolyticus, S. saprophyticus, S. woundii, S. lugdunensis, S. sciuri, S. hominis, S. intermedius, S. schleiferi, S. caprae), and fungi such as Candida albicans, C. tropicalis, C. parapsilosis, C. glabrata, C. dubliniensis, C. krusei, C. lusitaniae, C. krusei, C. glabrata. It is effective against antibiotic-resistant strains, including methicillin-resistant S. aureus (MRSA) and vancomycin-resistant enterococci (VRE).

Tea tree oil disrupts the permeability barrier of cell membrane structures of microorganisms and denatures proteins (Carson et al 2002, Cox et al 2000, Gustafson et al 1998). This activity is similar to disinfectants such as chlorhexidine and quaternary ammonium compounds.

**ANTIVIRAL**
An in vitro study has identified activity against HSV types 1 and 2 (Schnitzler et al 2001).

**HEAD LICE ERADICATION**
Topical application of tea tree oil was extremely effective against head lice, with 93% of lice and 83% of eggs destroyed, in test tube studies (Veal 1996). Phenols, phenolic ethers, ketones and oxides appear to be the major toxic components responsible for this activity.

**DERMATITIS**
Tea tree oil may be an effective treatment for dermatitis in dogs. Tea tree oil cream (10%) was applied twice daily for 4 weeks to 53 dogs suffering from chronic dermatitis, allergic dermatitis, interdigital pyoderma, acral lick dermatitis and skinfold pyoderma (Fitzi et al 2002). At the end of the trial 82% of the animals had a good or very good response to treatment with most symptoms disappearing, although two dogs experienced local irritation. Another trial by the same research team again evaluated the tea tree cream and blinded the study with a commercial skin care cream (Reichling et al 2004). Fifty-seven dogs were involved in this study and again the results were similar, with drastically reduced dermatitis in 71% of animals as compared to 41% using the control cream. A local reaction was reported in one dog.

**CLINICAL USE**
Tea tree oil preparations have been investigated in a number of clinical studies, either as the oil itself or as an ingredient of gels, creams or ointments.

**ACNE VULGARIS**
A single-blind, randomised clinical trial involving 124 patients with mild to moderate acne showed that a 5% tea tree oil gel significantly improved the condition and reduced the number of acne lesions. These effects were similar to 5% benzoyl
peroxide lotion, but tea tree oil gel was better tolerated and produced fewer side-effects (Bassett et al 1990).

**TINEA PEDIS**
Under double-blind, randomised test conditions 104 subjects with tinea pedis (athlete’s foot) used 10% w/w tea tree oil cream or 1% tolnaftate or placebo creams as treatment (Tong et al 1992). In this study, significantly more tolnaftate-treated patients (85%) than tea tree oil (30%) and placebo-treated (21%) patients showed conversion to negative culture at the end of therapy. However, tea tree oil cream reduced symptoms as effectively as tolnaftate 1%. A more recent randomised, double-blinded, controlled study by the same group used a higher concentration of tea tree oil (25% and 50%) for the treatment of interdigital tinea pedis in 158 patients over 4 weeks (Satchell et al 2002a). In the 50% tea tree oil group 68% of patients had a significant response and 64% achieved negative mycology. In the 25% tea tree group, 72% of patients responded and 50% were cured. The placebo responder rates were 39% and 31% respectively, with 3% of patients using tea tree developing dermatitis.

**TOENAIL INFECTION (ONYCHOMYCOsis)**
A randomised, double-blind multicentre study involving 177 volunteers found that 6 months’ treatment with 1% clotrimazole solution (applied twice daily) or 100% tea tree oil (applied twice daily) produced similar results, improving nail appearance and associated symptoms (Buck et al 1994). Additionally, 3 months after either treatment ceased, continued improvement or complete resolution was observed in approximately half of participants.

One randomised, double-blind placebo-controlled study investigated the effects of a combined tea tree oil (5%) and butenafine hydrochloride (2%) cream in chronic toenail onychomycosis and found that after 6 weeks, 80% of patients achieved a cure compared with none using placebo cream (Syed et al 1999).

**MRSA INFECTION**
A combination of 4% tea tree oil nasal ointment and 5% tea tree oil body wash was found to be superior to the standard 2% mupirocin nasal ointment and triclosan body wash used for the eradication of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (Caelli et al 2000). A recent review concluded that tea tree oil was not statistically superior to the standard treatment mupirocin for MSRA (Flaxman & Griffiths 2005). The paper reported on two RCTs (*n* = 30, *n* = 224), both of which demonstrated that tea tree oil was as effective as mupirocin. In the larger trial 224 patients were given either mupirocin 2% nasal ointment, chlorhexidine gluconate 4% soap and silver
sulfadiazine 1% cream or tea tree 10% cream and tea tree 5% body wash for five days (Dryden et al 2004). Rates of MRSA clearance were similar: 41% in the tea tree group and 49% using standard treatment. Mupirocin was significantly more effective at clearing nasal carriage (78%) than tea tree cream (47%); however, tea tree treatment was more effective than both chlorhexidine and silver sulfadiazine at clearing superficial skin sites and skin lesions. Although encouraging, more large clinical trials are needed to examine the efficacy of tea tree against MRSA.

**VAGINITIS AND CERVICITIS**

Clinical data support the use of tea tree oil for vaginitis and cervicitis caused by *Trichomonas vaginalis* or *Candida albicans* (WHO 2003). An open study found that intravaginal application of tampons saturated in a diluted emulsified solution successfully healed vaginitis and cervicitis (*n* = 130) caused by *T. vaginalis*. Vaginal pessaries containing 0.2 g essential oil inserted nightly eradicated symptoms of leucorrhoea and burning in 86% of women with *C. albicans* vaginitis after 30 days in with 75% becoming free of infection.

A case report shows that a 5-day course of 200 mg tea tree oil in a vegetable oil base inserted into the vagina may also be successful at treating vaginal candidiasis (Blackwell 1991). As used here, tea tree oil treatment eradicated anaerobic bacterial vaginosis, confirmed upon examination 1 month later.

**CYSTITIS**

A randomised, double-blind study investigated the effects of tea tree oil, administered as 8 mg essential oil (taken three times daily) in an enteric-coated capsule, in 26 women with chronic idiopathic colibacillary cystitis (Belaiche 1988). After the 6-month test period, 54% of women receiving active treatment were symptom free compared with only 15% receiving placebo. Although symptom free, 50% of women in the tea tree group still showed evidence of infection.

**GINGIVITIS**

Tea tree oil was as effective as chlorhexidine against *Streptococcus mutans*, the bacteria that causes gingivitis, in a controlled study of 30 individuals (Groppo et al 2002). A more recent double-blind, randomised, longitudinal, study evaluated and compared the effects of tea tree oil gel (2.5%) and chlorhexidine gel (0.2%) in 49 patients with severe chronic gingivitis (Soukoulis & Hirsch 2004). Subjects brushed with the tea tree, chlorhexidine or placebo gel twice daily for a period of 8 weeks. Tea tree oil significantly reduced the papillary bleeding index and gingival index, but did not reduce plaque.
**DANDRUFF**
Tea tree oil is effective for the treatment of dandruff. A randomised, single-blind, parallel-group study investigated the efficacy of tea tree oil shampoo (5%) and placebo in 126 patients with mild to moderate dandruff over 4 weeks (Satchell et al 2002b). The tea tree oil group achieved a 41% improvement as compared to 11% in the placebo group with no adverse effects.

**OTHER USES**

**COLD SORES**
Since tea tree oil exhibits antiviral activity in vitro, tea tree oil preparations have been used in the treatment of herpes simplex. Clinical trials investigating tea tree oil for this indication are not available, so it is unknown whether effects are clinically significant.

**HEAD LICE**
Based on successful test tube results, preparations containing tea tree oil are used to eradicate head lice (Veal 1996).

**DOSAGE RANGE**
Tea tree oil is used in a variety of forms, such as gels, creams, ointments, oral rinses, soaps, shampoos and paints. Minimum bactericidal concentrations are generally 0.25%.
- Onychomycosis: 100% essential oil applied twice daily.
- Tinea pedis: 10% essential oil in cream base applied twice daily.
- Acne: 5% essential oil in cream or gel base applied daily.
- Vaginitis *(Candida albicans or Trichomonas vaginalis)*: intravaginally applied tampons saturated in a 1% emulsified solution, vaginal pessaries containing 0.2 g essential oil.
- Cervicitis *(Candida albicans or Trichomonas vaginalis)*: intravaginally applied tampons saturated in a 20% emulsified solution.

**TOXICITY**
Tea tree oil should not be ingested. Accidental ingestion has resulted in confusion, disorientation, general malaise and coma, according to case reports (WHO 2003).

One case has been reported of an infant ingesting less than 10 mL of 100% oil, which resulted in confusion and an inability to walk within 30 minutes, followed by a full recovery within 5 hours (Jacobs & Hornfeldt 1994).

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
Contact dermatitis is possible in sensitive individuals (Hammer et al 2006).
SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
None known.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Caution should be exercised if applying the oil to eczematous or inflamed skin as it may cause irritation. It is suggested that a small amount be first applied to a test patch, to determine whether irritation will occur, as contact dermatitis has been reported.

PREGNANCY USE
Insufficient reliable information is available to determine safety.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- 100% tea tree oil is a safe and effective alternative to clotrimazole for the treatment of toenail onychomycosis.
- Extensive in vitro testing has found significant activity against a wide range of bacterial and fungal microorganisms, such as common skin pathogens.
- 5% tea tree oil gel has been shown to significantly improve acne vulgaris, with effects similar to 5% benzoyl peroxide lotion.
- Clinical evidence supports the use of tea tree oil preparations in Candida albicans or Trichomonas vaginalis vaginitis and cervicitis, cystitis and MRSA infection. It may also be useful in herpes simplex and head lice, but clinical data are unavailable.
- Tea tree oil should not be ingested other than in capsule form under professional supervision and a test patch is advised before widespread topical application.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will tea tree oil do for me?
Tea tree oil is an antiseptic substance that is effective against a wide range of common bacterial and fungal organisms. Scientific evidence shows that it is an effective treatment for acne, fungal infections of the toenails, Candida albicans or Trichomonas vaginalis vaginitis and cervicitis, cystitis and MRSA infection. It is also used to treat cold sores and head lice.

When will it start to work?
This will depend on the indication it is being used to treat. In some cases, clinical tests are not available, so it is uncertain when, if any, effects are seen.

Are there any safety issues?
Tea tree oil should not be ingested orally and used with caution on inflamed and sensitive skin.
REFERENCES
**Thyme**

**Historical note** Although thyme has been used as a cooking spice for centuries in Europe, it is also used medicinally to treat common infections, coughs, bronchitis and asthma. The 17th century herbalist Nicholas Culpeper recommended thyme for whooping cough, gout, stomach pains and shortness of breath. It was also used in perfumes and embalming oils. In medieval times the plant was seen as imparting courage and vigour (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**COMMON NAME**
Thyme

**OTHER NAMES**
Common thyme, garden thyme, farigola, folia thymi, gartenthymian, herba thymi, almindelig timian, thym, thymian, thymianblätter, timo

**BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY**
*Thymus vulgaris* (family Lamiaceae or Labiatae)

**PLANT PARTS USED**
Leaves and flowering tops

**CHEMICAL COMPONENTS**
The primary constituents are the volatile oils (1–2.5%), which include phenols (0.5%), namely thymol (30–70%), eugenol, and carvacrol (3–15%), also flavonoids, apigenin, luteolin and saponins and tannins. Rosmarinic acid, caffeic acid and calcium are also found in significant quantities (Duke 2003). The herb also contains bitter principles and salicylates.

**MAIN ACTIONS**
Although thyme has not been significantly investigated in human studies, there has been some investigation into the activity of thymol and the volatile oil component of the herb. It is not known whether results obtained for these constituents are representative for the crude herb, but they provide some further understanding. Both the essential oil and thymol are ingredients in many proprietary products.

**ANTITUSSIVE AND ANTI SPASMOTIC EFFECTS**
These actions have been attributed to the phenolic compounds in thyme (WHO 2003). Antispasmodic effects on trachea and guinea pig ileum have been demon-
strated for these constituents. The saponin content is believed to have expectorant activity, as demonstrated in animal studies.

**ANTIMICROBIAL**

In vitro tests have demonstrated activity against *Escherichia coli, Listeria monocytogenes* and *Salmonella enterica* for thyme extract (Friedman et al 2002). A review of the antibacterial and antifungal properties of the essential oil of thyme in vitro has demonstrated effectiveness against a wide range of pathogens including *Clostridium botulinum, E. coli, Haemophilus influenzae, Klebsiella pneumoniae, Salmonella typhi, Staphylococcus aureus* and *Candida albicans* (Kalemba & Kunicka 2003). Effects are most likely due to the eugenol, thymol and carvacrol constituents. Aqueous thyme extract also exhibited a significant inhibitory effect on *Helicobacter pylori*, reducing both its growth and its potent urease activity in vitro (Tabak et al 1996).

Thymol and eugenol have demonstrated antifungal activity by establishing the ability to alter the cell wall and membrane of the yeast *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* (Bennis et al 2004).

**ANTIOXIDANT**

Eugenol, carvacrol, thymol and 4-allylphenol (5 µg/mL) all inhibited the oxidation of hexanal for a period of 30 days, demonstrating potent antioxidant activity comparable to alpha-tocopherol (Lee et al 2005).

**ASTRINGENT**

The tannin content of the herb is chiefly responsible for its astringent activity.

**ANTHELMINTIC**


**OTHER ACTIONS**

Anti-inflammatory due to thymol and carvacrol.

**CLINICAL USE**

Thyme has not been significantly investigated in controlled studies, therefore information is generally derived from evidence of activity and traditional use and the clinical significance is unknown.

**RESPIRATORY TRACT INFECTIONS**

Thyme extract has been used to treat the common cold, bronchitis, laryngitis and tonsillitis. It is orally ingested or used in a gargle for local activity, based on the herb’s suspected antimicrobial and antitussive activities.
**Bronchitis** Encouraging data have been reported for chronic bronchitis treated by thyme in combination with other herbs in large ($n > 3000$) comparative clinical trials, although no data are available for thyme as a stand-alone treatment (Ernst et al 1997).

Thyme is approved by Commission E in the treatment of bronchitis, whooping cough and upper respiratory tract catarrh (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**DIARRHOEA**
The astringent activity of thyme provides a theoretical basis for its application in this condition.

**GASTRITIS AND DYSPEPSIA**
The bitter principles present in the herb and its antispasmodic activity provide a theoretical basis for its use in these conditions.

**SKIN DISINFECTION (TOPICAL USE)**
Thyme extract has been used topically for infection control in minor wounds. The herb’s antimicrobial and astringent activity provides a theoretical basis for this use.

**OTHER USES**
Traditionally, it has been used to aid in labour and delivery, promote menstruation and topically for warts and inflamed swellings (Fisher & Painter 1996). It has also been used to treat enuresis in children.

**DOSAGE RANGE**

**INTERNAL USE**
- Fluid extract (1:1): 1–2 mL up to three times daily.
- Fluid extract (1:2): 15–40 mL/week.
- Tincture (1:5): 2–6 mL three times daily.
- Infusion of dried herb: 1–4 g three times daily.

**EXTERNAL USE**
- 5% infusion used as a compress.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
The volatile oil is considered an irritant topically and can cause nausea and vomiting, headache, dizziness, convulsions, cardiac or respiratory arrest if taken internally (Newell et al 1996). As such, the crude herb is considered far safer.

Contact dermatitis reactions have been reported with topical use (Lorenzi et al 1995).
ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What will this herb do for me?
When taken internally, thyme is used to treat bronchitis, symptoms of the common cold, diarrhoea and dyspepsia. It is also used as an antiseptic gargle for sore throats and can be diluted and applied externally to minor wounds.

When will it start to work?
The lack of human studies for this herb make it difficult to determine when effects will start to occur.

Are there any safety issues?
Thyme should not be used by people allergic to the Labiatae family of plants or in pregnancy, and used cautiously in gastritis, enterocolitis and congestive heart failure.

REFERENCES

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
Historical note  Widely distributed in the Mediterranean region, Middle East and southern Africa, tribulus is an important plant used in traditional Ayurvedic, Arabic and Chinese medicine. Different parts of the tribulus plant are used to treat a variety of conditions, such as cough, colicky spasms, diarrhoea, cardiovascular disease, various kidney disorders, including kidney stones, and as an insect repellent.

COMMON NAME
Tribulus

OTHER NAMES
Al-gutub, cats-head, devil's-thorn, devil's-weed, goathead, puncture vine, qutiba

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
*Tribulus terrestris* (family Zygophyllaceae)

PLANT PARTS USED
Leaf

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Different parts of the plant contain different constituents in varying ratios. Overall, the steroidal saponin content is considered the most important and includes constituents such as protodioscin, diosgenin, yamogenin, epismilagenin, tigogenin, neotigogenin, gitogenin and neogitogenin (Miles et al 1994). Two additional steroidal saponins, terrestrins A (1) and B (2), have recently been isolated in 80% ethanol from the fruit (Huang et al 2003). The significance of this has not yet been determined. Beta-sitosterol, vitamin C, potassium and calcium are also found in the herb (Li et al 1998). Two major alkaloids have been identified: harmane and norharmane (Bourke et al 1992).

Of the steroidal saponins, protodioscin is considered the chief constituent responsible for the plant's effects on libido and sexual functioning. Preliminary observations suggest that *Tribulus terrestris* grown in different soils does not consistently produce this constituent and considerable variations have been identified in commercial products (Ganzera et al 2001).

Steroidal saponins consist of a furostanol- or spirostanol-based aglycone and an oligosaccharide attached to a steroid nucleus. Steroidal saponins are very common in
the plant kingdom and are natural components in many foods, such as asparagus, garlic and oats.

**MAIN ACTIONS**
Tribulus has not undergone significant clinical investigation; therefore, evidence of activity primarily derives from animal and in vitro studies. Additionally, some studies have investigated the pharmacological effects of the isolated saponin content.

**INCREASES LIBIDO AND ENHANCES SEXUAL FUNCTION**
The exact mechanism by which tribulus influences sexual behaviour is not known, but increasing androgenic status and NO release appear to be chiefly responsible (Gauthaman et al 2002). More specifically, some reports have suggested increases in dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA) and testosterone are possible (Adimoelja 2000, Gauthaman et al 2002).

The constituent protodioscin is considered the most important in this regard and is converted to DHEA. Additionally, ex vivo tests have observed pro-erectile effects with protodioscin due to increased release of NO from the endothelium and nitronergetic nerve endings (Adaikan et al 2000).

**DIURETIC**
A large oral dose of 5 g/kg tribulus was shown to have greater diuretic activity than frusemide 120 mg/kg in a recent animal study (Al Ali et al 2003).

**KIDNEY STONE PREVENTION**
With regard to kidney stones, tribulus has been found to decrease the amount of urinary oxalate in rats (Sangeeta et al 1994) and produce significant dose-dependent protection against experimentally induced uroliths in animal studies (Anand et al 1994, Sangeeta et al 1994). A recent in vitro study using human urine suggests that the diuretic properties of tribulus may be the most crucial mechanism for preventing urinary stone formation (Joshi et al 2005).

**OTHER ACTIONS**
A Chinese report of successful treatment of angina pectoris with the saponin content of tribulus suggests that the preparation dilates coronary arteries and improves coronary circulation (Wang et al 1990).

In another study 10 mg/kg/day of the aqueous extract of the fruit has shown antihypertensive effects in an animal trial when compared to control. The authors concluded that effects are possibly due to inhibition of ACE activity (Sharifi et al 2003).
Experiments with healthy mice have found *Tribulus terrestris* significantly inhibits gluconeogenesis and influences glycometabolism and reduces triglyceride and total cholesterol levels (Li et al 2001).

A dose-dependent antispasmodic activity causing a significant decrease in peristaltic movements has been demonstrated with the isolated saponin content of tribulus (Arcasoy et al 1998).

More recently, an in vitro test has also identified COX-2 inhibition activity (Hong et al 2002), suggesting possible anti-inflammatory actions.

Two isolated constituents tribulosin and beta-sitosterol-d-glucoside have shown anthelmintic activity in vitro against *Caenorhabditis elegans* (Deepak et al 2002).

Of eight steroid saponins tested, two showed potent antifungal activity against *Candida albicans*, with one, TTS-12, demonstrating its ability to decrease virulence and destroy the cell membrane (Zhang et al 2005).

**CLINICAL USE**

**APHRODISIAC**

The observed pharmacological effects on androgen status provide a theoretical basis for this activity, but little clinical testing has been conducted.

Results from a 2002 animal study have produced positive results suggestive of aphrodisiac activity (Gauthaman et al 2002). The study compared the effects of subcutaneous testosterone, an orally administered tribulus extract containing protodioscin (45% dry weight) or placebo over 8 weeks in castrated rodents. Both testosterone and tribulus treatment significantly improved sexual behaviour compared with controls, although testosterone was the more effective treatment.

A follow-up study by the same research team added further data (Gauthaman et al 2003). In this study rats were treated with 2.5, 5 and 10 mg/kg once daily for 8 weeks. The results showed a considerable increase in sexual behaviour and slight weight gain compared to controls. Interestingly, the results were more pronounced at the lower dose range.

Despite positive data from animal studies, a recent small controlled clinical trial of tribulus in young men aged between 20 and 36 years showed no statistical increase in testosterone levels in the treated group (Neychev & Mitev 2005). Men were divided into two treatment groups (each *n* = 7) and one control group (*n* = 7). One group was given 10 mg/kg and the other 20 mg/kg per day divided into three even doses for 4 weeks. There was no significant change in testosterone, androstenedione or luteinising hormone.
**ERGOGENIC AID**

Tribulus has been used as an ergogenic aid to improve physical performance in athletes. Once again, the observed pharmacological effects on androgen status provide a theoretical basis for this activity. A small, randomised, placebo-controlled study found that treatment with tribulus (3.21 mg/kg body weight daily) had no effects on body composition and exercise performance in resistance-trained men after 8 weeks (Antonio et al 2000). The study has been criticised by some athletes, as the dose of tribulus tested was very low and not indicative of the doses used in real life.

**OTHER USES**

Traditionally, the acidic fruits are thought to be cooling and are used for painful micturition, urinary disorders, kidney stone prevention and impotence, whereas the leaves are thought to possess tonic, diuretic and anti-inflammatory properties and are used to increase menstrual flow. Interestingly, preliminary research into the pharmacological actions of tribulus or its constituents provides some support for several of these uses.

**DOSAGE RANGE**

In Australia, preparations containing both the fruit and the root are available that are standardised to saponin content. As no clinical studies are available, the manufacturers’ recommended dose is included here, which is 2–30 g/day.

- Leaf: 750–1500 mg/day of extract standardised to contain 45% protodioscin.

**TOXICITY**

Although toxicity levels in humans are not known, extensive grazing on tribulus by sheep produces a syndrome known as ‘staggers’, which is characterised by nervous and muscular locomotor disturbances (Bourke 1984). Outbreaks are repeatedly associated with drought periods during which sheep graze on large areas of *Tribulus terrestris* for many months at a time (Bourke 1995, Glastonbury et al 1984). Investigation with isolated harmane and norharmane found naturally in tribulus have found these constituents to be responsible for the ‘staggers’ syndrome (Bourke et al 1992).

Hepatogenous photosensitivity has also been reported among sheep grazing on *Tribulus terrestris* for long periods (Bourke 1984, Glastonbury et al 1984, McDonough et al 1994, Miles et al 1994, Tapia et al 1994, Wilkins et al 1996). A small animal study examined the clinical, laboratory and pathological findings of this disease in sheep and concluded that tribulus was responsible for hepatogenous photosensitivity (Aslani et al 2003). Laboratory and pathology tests found significantly increased white blood cells, bilirubin, total serum protein and plasma fibrinogen, and histological
findings showed crystalloid materials in the bile ducts with hepatocyte degeneration. A year later the same research team found very similar results in goats (Aslani et al. 2004).

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
Gastrointestinal disturbance may occur in sensitive individuals due to the herb’s saponin content.

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**
Controlled studies are not available and currently no interactions are known.

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**
People with androgen-sensitive tumours should avoid use.

**PREGNANCY USE**
Not to be used in pregnancy.

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**
- Tribulus has been used traditionally in various parts of the world to treat colicky spasms, diarrhoea, cardiovascular disease, various kidney disorders, including kidney stones, and as an insect repellent.
- Tribulus has not undergone significant clinical testing, so much information is speculative and based on animal and test tube studies.
- Popular as an aphrodisiac, some research suggests that it increases levels of DHEA, testosterone and NO release, providing a theoretical basis for this activity. Until controlled studies are available, it is uncertain whether these effects are clinically significant.
- Tribulus is also popular amongst athletes as an ergogenic aid, although large controlled studies of efficacy are lacking.

**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

What will this herb do for me?
Preliminary research suggests that this herb increases androgen levels and improves sexual function, but human studies are not available to confirm these effects.

When will it start to work?
This is unknown.

Are there any safety issues?
Pregnant and lactating women and people with androgen-sensitive tumours should avoid use.
REFERENCES


© 2007 Elsevier Australia
Zhang JD et al. Antifungal activities and action mechanisms of compounds from Tribulus terrestris L. J Ethnopharmacol 103.1 (2005): 76-84.
Turmeric

Historical note  Turmeric is a perennial herb, yielding a rhizome that produces a yellow powder that gives curry its characteristic yellow colour and is used to colour French mustard and the robes of Hindu priests. Turmeric was probably first cultivated as a dye, and then as a condiment and cosmetic. It is often used as an inexpensive substitute for saffron in cooking and in the 13th century Marco Polo marvelled at its similarities to saffron. Both Indian Ayurvedic and Chinese medicines use turmeric for the treatment of inflammatory and digestive disorders and turmeric has also been used in tooth powder or paste. Research has focused on turmeric’s antioxidant, hepatoprotective, anti-inflammatory, anticarcinogenic and antimicrobial properties, in addition to its use in cardiovascular disease and gastrointestinal disorders (Anon 2001).

COMMON NAME
Turmeric

OTHER NAMES
Chiang huang, curcuma, curcuma longae rhizoma, curcuma rhizome, e zhu, haridra, Indian saffron, jiang huang, jiang huang curcumae rhizoma, turmeric rhizome, turmeric root, yellow root, yu jin, zedoary

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Curcuma longa (family Zingiberaceae [ginger])

PLANT PART USED
Dried secondary rhizome (containing not less than 3% curcuminoids calculated as curcumin and not less than 3% volatile oil, calculated on dry-weight basis).

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Turmeric rhizome contains 5% phenolic curcuminoids (diarylheptanoids), which give turmeric the yellow colour. The most significant curcuminoid is curcumin (diferuloylmethane).

It also contains up to 5% essential oil including sesquiterpene (e.g. Zingerberene), sesquiterpene alcohols and ketones, and monoterpenes.

Turmeric also contains immune stimulating polysaccharides, including acid glucans known as ukonan A, B and C (Evans 2002).
MAIN ACTIONS
Most research has focused on a series of curcumin constituents found in the herb. Many of the animal studies; however, involve parenteral administration and oral curcumin or turmeric is likely to be far less active because curcumin is poorly absorbed by the gastrointestinal tract and only trace amounts appear in the blood after oral intake (Ammon & Wahl 1991). Curcumin may, however, have significant activity in the gastrointestinal tract, and systemic effects may take place as a consequence of local gastrointestinal effects or be associated with metabolites of the curcuminoids.

ANTIOXIDANT
Studies have shown that turmeric, as well as curcumin, has significant antioxidant activity (Shalini & Srinivas 1987, Soudamini et al 1992). Turmeric not only exerts direct free radical scavenging activity, it also appears to enhance the antioxidant activity of endogenous antioxidants, such as glutathione peroxidase, catalase and quinine reductase. Curcumin has been shown to induce phase II detoxifying enzymes (glutathione peroxidase, glutathione reductase, glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase and catalase) (Iqbal et al 2003). Additionally, its antioxidant effects are 10-fold more potent than ascorbic acid or resveratrol (Song et al 2001). In addition to curcumin, turmeric contains the antioxidants protocatechuic acid and ferulic acid and exhibits significant protection to DNA against oxidative damage in vitro (Kumar et al 2006).

Turmeric’s antioxidant activity may mediate damage produced by myocardial ischaemia and diabetes. Turmeric has been shown to restore myocardial antioxidant status, inhibit lipid peroxidation and protect against ischaemia–reperfusion induced myocardial injuries in an animal model with enhancement of functional recovery (Mohanty et al 2004). Curcumin has also been found to prevent protein glycosylation and lipid peroxidation caused by high glucose levels in vitro (Jain et al 2006) and to improve diabetic nephropathy (Srinivasan 2005). Turmeric has also been shown to suppress cataract development and collagen cross-linking, promote wound healing, and lower blood lipids and glucose levels (Jain et al 2006).

NF-KAPPA-B INHIBITION
The many and varied effects of curcumin may be partly associated with the inhibition of transcription factor nuclear factor-kappa beta (NF-kappa-B) and induction of heat shock proteins. NF-kappa-B is a transcription factor pivotal in the regulation of inflammatory genes and is also closely associated with the heat shock response, which is a cellular defence mechanism that confers broad protection against various cytotoxic stimuli. Inhibition of NF-kappa-B may reduce inflammation and protect cells against damage (Chang 2001) and curcumin has been found to attenuate experimen-
tal colitis in animal models through a mechanism correlated with the inhibition of NF-kappa-B (Salh et al 2003). The clinical significance of this is unclear.

ANTI-INFLAMMATORY
There have been a large number of studies examining the anti-inflammatory effects of curcumin. Turmeric is a dual inhibitor of the arachidonic acid cascade. Curcumin has been shown to exert anti-inflammatory effects via phospholipase, lipo-oxygenase, COX-2, leukotrienes, thromboxane, PGs, NO, collagenase, elastase, hyaluronidase, monocyte chemoattractant protein-1, IFN-inducible protein, TNF and IL-12 (Chainani-Wu 2003, Lantz et al 2005).

The anti-inflammatory effect of curcumin was tested in adjuvant-induced chronic inflammation rats which found that curcumin significantly reduced C-reactive protein, TNF-alpha, IL-1 and NO, with no significant changes observed in PGE_2 and leukotriene B4 levels or lymphocyte proliferation (Banerjee et al 2003). Curcumin has also been shown to inhibit inflammation in experimental pancreatitis via inhibition of NF-kappa-B and activator protein-1 in two rat models (Gukovsky et al 2003).

GASTROINTESTINAL EFFECTS
Hepatoprotective Curcumin prevents carbon tetrachloride-induced liver injury both in vivo and in vitro (Deshpande et al 1998, Kang et al 2002), reverses aflatoxin-induced liver damage in experimental animals (Soni et al 1992) and effectively suppresses the hepatic microvascular inflammatory response to lipopolysaccharides in vivo (Lukita-Atmadja et al 2002). An ethanol soluble fraction of turmeric was shown to contain three antioxidant compounds, curcumin, demethoxycurcumin and bisdemethoxycurcumin, which exert similar hepatoprotective activity to silybin and silychristin in vitro (Song et al 2001).

Several different mechanisms may contribute to turmeric’s hepatoprotective activity. Curcumin has been shown to prevent lipoperoxidation of subcellular membranes in a dosage-dependent manner, due to an antioxidant mechanism (Quiles et al 1998) and turmeric may also protect the liver via inhibition of NF-kappa-B (see above), which has been implicated in the pathogenesis of alcoholic liver disease. Curcumin also blocked endotoxin-mediated activation of NF-kappa-B and suppressed the expression of cytokines, chemokines, COX-2, and iNOS in Kupffer cells (Nanji et al 2003).

Cholagogue and hypolipidaemic Turmeric extract or curcumin extract has shown dose-dependent hypolipidaemic activity in vivo (Asai & Miyazawa 2001, Babu & Srinivasan 1997, Keshavarz 1976, Ramirez-Tortosa et al 1999, Soudamini et al 1992). One in vivo study suggests that curcumin may stimulate the conversion of
cholesterol into bile acids, and therefore, increase the excretion of cholesterol (Srinivasan & Sambaiah 1991). A further study demonstrated that supplementation with turmeric reduces fatty streak development and oxidative stress (Quiles et al 2002). Oral curcumin has also been shown to stimulate contraction of the gall bladder and promote the flow of bile in healthy subjects (Rasyid & Lelo 1999).

**Antispasmodic** Curcuminoids exhibit smooth muscle relaxant activity possibly mediated through calcium-channel blockade, although additional mechanisms cannot be ruled out (Gilani et al 2005). Curcuminoids produced antispasmodic effects on isolated guinea pig ileum and rat uterus by receptor-dependent and independent mechanisms (Itthipanichpong et al 2003).

**CANCER**
Curcumin has been studied for its wide-ranging effects on tumorigenesis, angiogenesis, apoptosis and signal transduction pathways (Gururaj et al 2002, Mohan et al 2000, Thaloor et al 1998). It is known to inhibit oncogenesis during both the promotion and progression periods in a variety of cancers (Anto et al 1996, Kuttan et al 1985, Menon et al 1999, Ruby et al 1995). Recently, curcumin was found to possess chemopreventive effects against skin cancer, stomach cancer, colon cancer and oral cancer in mice.

**Chemoprevention** Chemoprevention refers to reversing, suppressing or preventing the process of carcinogenesis. Carcinogenesis results from the accumulation of multiple sequential mutations and alterations in nuclear and cytoplasmic molecules, culminating in invasive neoplasms. These events have traditionally been separated into three phases: initiation, promotion and progression. Typically, initiation is rapid, whereas promotion and progression can take many years. Ultimately, chemoprevention aims at preventing the growth and survival of cells already committed to becoming malignant (Gescher et al 1998, 2001).

Curcumin has been found to effectively block carcinogen-induced skin (Azuine & Bhide 1992), colon (Rao et al 1995, 1999) and liver (Chuang et al 2000) carcinogenesis in animals. It has been suggested that the chemoprotective activity of curcumin occurs via changes in enzymes involved in both carcinogen bioactivation and oestrogen metabolism. This is supported by the findings that curcumin treatment produced changes in CYP1A, CYP3A and GST in mice (Valentine et al 2006) and alleviated the CCl4-induced inactivation of CYPs 1A, 2B, 2C and 3A isozymes in rats, possibly through its antioxidant properties, without inducing hepatic CYPs (Sugiyama et al 2006).

Oral curcumin inhibited chemically induced skin carcinogenesis in mice (Huang et al 1992) and curcumin prevented radiation-induced mammary and pituitary tumors
in rats (Inano & Onoda 2002). Curcumin and genistein (from soybeans) inhibited the growth of oestrogen-positive human breast MCF-7 cells induced individually or by a mixture of the pesticides endosulfane, DDT and chlordane, or 17-beta oestradiol (Verma et al 1997).

**Apoptosis** Apoptosis (programmed cell death) plays a crucial role in regulating cell numbers by eliminating damaged or cancerous cells. Curcumin induced apoptosis in vitro (Kim et al 2001, Kuo et al 1996) and may act via reactive oxygen species and other mechanisms. Curcumin has been demonstrated to induce apoptosis in human basal cell carcinoma cells associated with the p53 signalling pathway, which controls intracellular redox status, levels of oxidation-damaged DNA and oxidative stress-induced apoptosis (Jee et al 1998). Curcumin has also been found to induce apoptosis in human mutant p53 melanoma cell lines and block the NF-kappa-B cell survival pathway and suppress the apoptotic inhibitor known as XIAP. Because melanoma cells with mutant p53 are strongly resistant to conventional chemotherapy, curcumin may overcome the chemoresistance of these cells and provide potential new avenues for treatment (Bush et al 2001).

Curcumin has also been found to inhibit prostate cancer cell growth in mice (Dorai et al 2001) and decrease proliferation and induce apoptosis in androgen-dependent and androgen-independent prostate cancer cells in vitro. This was found to be mediated through modulation of apoptosis suppressor proteins and interference with growth factor receptor signalling pathways (Dorai et al 2000). In a further study with rats, however, curcumin did not prevent prostate carcinogenesis (Imaida et al 2001).

**Antiproliferative** Reduction in proliferation and/or increased apoptosis will lead to tumour regression; however, a more potent effect will be achieved if the two mechanisms occur simultaneously. Curcumin has been shown to do this. The inhibition of cell proliferation is partly related to inhibition of various kinases, such as protein kinase and phosphorylase kinase (Reddy and Aggarwal 1994), and inhibition of several oncogenes and transcription factors. For example, turmeric inhibited epidermal growth factor receptor (EGF-R) signalling via multiple mechanisms including downregulation of the EGF-R protein, inhibition of intrinsic EGF-R tyrosine kinase activity and inhibition of ligand-induced activation of the EGF-R (Dorai et al 2000). These mechanisms may be particularly important in preventing prostate cancer cells from progressing to a hormone refractory state (Dorai et al 2000). Curcumin has also been found to suppress the growth of multiple breast cancer cell lines and deplete p185neu, the protein product of the HER2/neu proto-oncogene that is thought to be important in human carcinogenesis (Hong et al 1999).
**Antimetastatic**  Curcumin demonstrated the ability to reduce lung metastases from melanoma cells in mice. The activity of curcumin is varied.
- In cell adhesion assays, curcumin-treated cells showed a dose-dependent reduction in their binding to four extracellular matrix proteins (binding to proteins is associated with the spreading of the cancer).
- Curcumin-treated cells showed a marked reduction in the expression of integrin receptors (integrins functionally connect the cell interior with the extracellular matrix, another process necessary for metastases).
- Curcumin also enhanced the expression of antimetastatic proteins, tissue inhibitor metalloproteinase, non-metastatic gene 23 and E-cadherin (a cell adhesion factor) (Ray et al 2003).

**Chemotherapy**  Curcumin enhanced the cytotoxicity of chemotherapeutic agents in prostate cancer cells in vitro by inducing the expression of certain androgen receptor and transcription factors and suppressing NF-kappa-B activation (Hour et al 2002). Curcumin also enhanced the antitumour effect of cisplatin against fibrosarcoma (Navis et al 1999).

Curcumin, however, was found to significantly inhibit cyclophosphamide-induced tumour regression in an in vivo model of human breast cancer. It is suspected that this occurred as a result of inhibition of free radical generation and blockade of JNK function. As such, curcumin intake should be limited in people undergoing treatment for breast cancer with cyclophosphamide until further investigation can clarify the significance of these findings (Somasundaram et al 2002).

**Immunomodulation**  Curcumin administration was found to significantly increase the total white blood cell count and circulating antibodies in mice. A significant increase in macrophage phagocytic activity was also observed in curcumin-treated animals (Antony et al 1999). However, curcumin has also been demonstrated to have some immunosuppressive activity. Curcumin inhibits PAR2- and PAR4-mediated human mast cell activation by block of ERK pathway (Baek et al 2003).

An in vivo study using a cardiac transplant model found that curcumin also significantly reduced expression of IL-2, IFN-gamma and granzyme B (a serine protease associated with the activity of killer T-lymphocytes and NK cells) and increased mean survival time. Curcumin was further shown to work synergistically with the anti-rejection drug cyclosporine (Chueh et al 2003).

Curcumin also modulates other interleukins and has been shown in vitro to be a potent inhibitor of the production of the pro-inflammatory cytokine IL-8, thereby reducing tumour growth and carcinoma cell viability. Curcumin not only inhibited IL-8 production but also inhibited signal transduction through IL-8 receptors (Hidaka et al 2002).
2002) and to inhibit cell proliferation, cell-mediated cytotoxicity and cytokine production most likely by inhibiting NF-kappa-B target genes (Gao et al 2004).

**CARDIOVASCULAR EFFECTS**

**Antiplatelet** Curcumin has been shown to inhibit platelet aggregation in vivo (Srivastava et al 1985, 1986) and in vitro (Srivastava 1989, 1995). The anticoagulant effect of curcumin is weaker than that of aspirin, which is four-fold more potent than curcumin in treatment of collagen- and noradrenalin-induced thrombosis. Curcumin 100 mg/kg and aspirin 25 mg/kg resulted in 60% protection from thrombosis (Srivastava et al 1985).

**Anti-atherogenic** A hydro-ethanolic extract of turmeric was found to decrease LDL oxidation, have a vitamin E-sparing effect and lower the oxidation of erythrocyte and liver membranes in rabbits fed a diet high in saturated fat and cholesterol (Mesa et al 2003, Ramirez-Tortosa et al 1999). The atheroscleroprotective potential of turmeric was further demonstrated by an animal study that found turmeric lowered blood pressure and reduced the atherogenic properties of cholesterol (Zahid Ashraf et al 2005).

Dietary curcumin has also been shown to significantly lower blood cholesterol in diabetic animals. Cholesterol decrease was exclusively from the LDL-VLDL fraction. Significant decrease in blood triglyceride and phospholipids was also brought about by dietary curcumin in diabetic rats (Babu & Srinivasan 1997). In a parallel study in which diabetic animals were maintained on a high cholesterol diet, curcumin lowered cholesterol and phospholipid and countered the elevated liver and renal cholesterol and triglyceride levels seen in the diabetic animals (Babu & Srinivasan 1997).

**WOUND HEALING**

Wound healing is a highly ordered process, requiring complex and coordinated interactions involving peptide growth factors, of which transforming growth factor-beta (TGF-beta) is one of the most important. Nitric oxide is also an important factor in healing, and its production is regulated by iNOS. Topical application of curcumin accelerated wound healing in normal and diabetic rats. The wound healing is partly associated with the regulation of the growth factor TGF-beta-1 and iNOS (Mani et al 2002). Curcumin’s wound healing ability has been confirmed in several other animal studies (Sidhu et al 1998, 1999). Wounds of animals treated with curcumin showed earlier re-epithelialisation, improved neovascularisation, increased migration of various cells including dermal myofibroblasts, fibroblasts, and macrophages into the wound bed, and a higher collagen content (Sidhu et al 1999). It appears to be effective when used orally or as a local application.
Curcumin has also demonstrated powerful inhibition against hydrogen peroxide damage in human keratinocytes and fibroblasts (Phan et al. 2001) and pretreatment with curcumin significantly enhanced the rate of wound contraction, decreased mean wound healing time, increased synthesis of collagen, hexosamine, DNA and NO, and improved fibroblast and vascular densities in full thickness wounds in mice exposed to whole-body [gamma]-radiation (Jagetia & Rajanikant 2004).

**ANTIMICROBIAL**
Turmeric is used as an antimicrobial for preserving food (Jayaprakasha et al. 2005) and has been found to have antifungal activity, as well as inhibiting aspergillus growth and aflatoxin production in feeds (Gowda et al. 2004).

Curcumin has also been found to have dose-dependent, antiprotozoan activity against *Giardia lamblia* with inhibition of parasite growth and adherent capacity, induction of morphological alterations and apoptosis-like changes in vitro (Perez-Arriaga et al. 2006). Curcumin has also shown in vitro and in vivo activity against malaria, with inhibition of growth of chloroquine-resistant *Plasmodium falciparum* in vitro and enhancement of survival in mice infected with *P. berghei* (Reddy et al. 2005).

**PSORIASIS**
Topical curcumin reduced the severity of active, untreated psoriasis as assessed by clinical, histological and immunohistochemical criteria in an observational study of 10 patients. Curcumin was also found to decrease phosphorylase kinase, which is involved in signalling pathways, including those involved with cell migration and proliferation (Heng et al. 2000). Topical administration of curcumin also induced normal skin formation in the modified mouse tail test (Bosman 1994). The effects are thought to be due to immune-modulating, anti-inflammatory and cyclo-oxygenase inhibitory actions. The downregulation of pro-inflammatory cytokines supports the view that turmeric antioxidants may exert a favourable effect on psoriasis-linked inflammation. Moreover, because IL-6 and IL-8 are growth factors for keratinocytes, their inhibition by those antioxidants may reduce psoriasis-related keratinocyte hyperproliferation (Miquel et al. 2002).

**OTHER ACTIONS**
Curcumin’s anti-inflammatory and antioxidant actions may be useful in preventing neurodegenerative diseases, such as Alzheimer’s dementia and Parkinson’s disease, and curcumin has been found to target multiple pathogenic cascades in preclinical models (transgenic and amyloid infusion models) of AD (Cole et al. 2005). Curcumin has also been found to dose-dependently inhibit neuroglial proliferation, with low
doses being as effective as higher doses given a longer period of treatment (Ambegaokar et al 2003).

Curcumin had anti-asthmatic activity in animal models of induced asthma. Curcumin (20 mg/kg body weight) treatment significantly inhibited chemical (ovalbumin)-induced airway constriction and airway hyperreactivity. The results demonstrate that curcumin is effective in improving the impaired airways features in ovalbumin-sensitised guinea pigs (Ram et al 2003).

Curcumin has been found to have inhibitory effects on P-glycoprotein in numerous test tube studies (Anuchapreeda et al 2002, Limtrakul et al 2004, Nabekura et al 2005). The clinical significance of this observation has yet to be determined.

CLINICAL USE
In practice turmeric and the various curcuminoids are used in many forms and administered via various routes. This review will focus mostly on those methods of use that are commonly used and preparations that are available OTC, such as oral dose forms and topical applications.

CANCER
Epidemiological data suggest that curcumin reduces the rate of colorectal cancer (Hergenhahn et al 2002) and curcumin has wide-ranging chemopreventive activity in preclinical carcinogenic models (Plummer et al 2001), most notably for gastrointestinal cancers (Ireson et al 2001). To date, however, there are no controlled trials to attest to turmeric’s efficacy in cancer treatment or prevention.

In a phase 1 study, curcumin taken orally for 3 months at a starting dose of 500 mg/day was found to produce histologic improvement in cases of bladder cancer, oral leukoplasia, intestinal metaplasia of the stomach, cervical intraepithelial neoplasm and Bowen’s disease (Cheng et al 2001).

An ethanol extract of turmeric, as well as an ointment of curcumin, were found to produce remarkable symptomatic relief in patients with external cancerous lesions (Kuttan et al 1987) and there are clinical reports to suggest that curcumin could be safe and effective in the treatment of idiopathic inflammatory orbital pseudotumours (Lal et al 2000).

DYSPEPSIA/PEPTIC ULCERS
A randomised, controlled, double-blind prospective multicentre pilot study compared the effects of dried extracts of greater celandine and turmeric with placebo in 76 patients with colicky abdominal pain in the right upper quadrant due to biliary dyskinesia. Abdominal pain was reduced more quickly with active treatment;
however, other symptoms such as fullness, nausea and vomiting did not respond (Niederau & Gopfert 1999). Another randomised, placebo-controlled, double-blind study that investigated the efficacy of turmeric for treatment of dyspepsia and flatulence in 116 adult patients with acidic dyspepsia, flatulent dyspepsia or atonic dyspepsia found that 87% of patients receiving turmeric responded compared to 53% receiving placebo (Thamlikitkul et al 1989).

In a study of 24 patients with duodenal or gastric ulcers varying between 0.5 and 1.5 cm in diameter, 300 mg of turmeric given five times daily, 30–60 minutes before meals, at 1600 hours and at bedtime successfully healed 48% of ulcers after 4 weeks and 76% after 12 weeks. Of 20 patients who had erosion gastritis and dyspepsia, the same treatment produced a satisfactory reduction in abdominal pain and discomfort after the first and second week (Prucksunand et al 2001). Turmeric has also been positively compared to a liquid antacid for the treatment of gastric ulcer in a controlled clinical trial (Kositchaiwat et al 1993).

**HYPERLIPIDAEMIA**
Turmeric may be associated with a decrease in the risk of cardiovascular disease and an intake of 200 mg of a hydro-ethanolic extract of turmeric may decrease total blood lipid peroxides and HDL- and LDL-lipid peroxidation, as well as normalise plasma fibrinogen levels and apolipoprotein B/apolipoprotein A ratio (Miquel et al 2002).

In an open trial, 10 healthy volunteers received 500 mg/day of curcumin for 7 days. A significant decrease in the level of serum lipid peroxides (33%), increase in HDL-cholesterol (29%), and a decrease in total serum cholesterol (11.63%) were noted. It also reduced serum lipid peroxides (Soni & Kuttan 1992). In a subsequent study, a 45-day intake (by healthy individuals 27–67 years of age) of a turmeric hydro-alcoholic extract at a daily dose equivalent to 20 mg of curcumin resulted in a significant decrease in serum lipid peroxides (Ramirez-Bosca et al 1995). A daily intake of turmeric equivalent to 20 mg of the phenolic antioxidant curcumin for 60 days also decreased peroxidation of both HDL and LDL in 30 healthy volunteers ranging in age from 40 to 90 years. The effect was quite striking in the persons with high baseline values of peroxidised compounds in these lipoproteins, although no apparent change took place in the persons having low baseline values (Ramirez et al 1997).

**ARTHRITIS**
In a randomised, controlled double-blind study, curcumin 1200 mg/day was compared with phenylbutazone in subjects with RA. Curcumin was found to be effective
in improving morning stiffness, walking time and joint swelling; however, the effects of phenylbutazone were stronger (Deodhar et al 1980).

Curcumin combined with boswellia, withania and zinc produced a significant drop in pain and disability in OA of the knee in a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled crossover study of 42 patients (Kulkarni et al 1991); however, the contribution of cucurmin to these results is unknown.

OTHER USES

CHRONIC ANTERIOR UVEITIS
An open study of 32 patients found that orally administered curcumin improved symptoms and reduced recurrences of chronic anterior uveitis (a condition often associated with other autoimmune disorders) with an efficacy comparable to corticosteroid therapy, yet without significant side-effects (Lal et al 1999).

ORAL SUBMUCOUS FIBROSIS
Turmeric extract 3 g, oil 600 mg and oleoresin 600 mg effectively relieved symptoms and reduced the number of micronuclei (a sign of damage to the DNA and chromosomal integrity) in circulating lymphocytes and oral mucosal cells in patients with oral submucous fibrosis, a debilitating disease of the oral cavity mainly caused by chewing betel nut or tobacco (Hastak et al 1997).

DOSAGE RANGE

INTERNAL USE
• Powdered turmeric: 1.5–3 g/day in water or cooking.
• Liquid extract (1:1) in 45% ethanol: 5–15 mL/day.
• Powdered extract standardised to 95% curcumin: 100–300 mg/day. Higher doses used for arthritis and cancer.

EXTERNAL USE
• Turmeric powder of standardised powdered extract applied as a paste or poultice — half cup of turmeric combined with 1 teaspoon of carbonate of soda and then mixed with hot water to make a paste; spread on gauze and apply to affected area.

ADVERSE REACTIONS
The safety of curcumin is demonstrated by the fact that it has been consumed for centuries at levels of up to 10 mg/day by people in certain countries (Ammon & Wahl 1991). Curcumin was not toxic to humans in doses up to 8000 mg/day when taken by mouth for 3 months (Cheng et al 2001). Multiple other human trials have also found it to be safe with no alteration of liver or renal function tests (Chainani-Wu
Large doses of turmeric powder may cause gastrointestinal irritation in some persons (Bhavani et al 1980) and very high dosages have been shown to reduce fertility in male rats (human equivalent doses would be 35 g turmeric/70 kg adult) (Meenakshi & Ashok 2001). Normal therapeutic dosages of turmeric are not expected to affect fertility. Contact dermatitis has been reported (Hata et al 1997), as has a single case of anaphylaxis (Robinson 2003).

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
Controlled studies are not available so interactions are based on evidence of activity and are largely theoretical and speculative.

ANTIPLATELET DRUGS
Turmeric has a theoretical interaction with antiplatelet drugs; antiplatelet properties have been demonstrated for curcumin, therefore it may produce an additive effect. The clinical significance of this interaction is unclear and likely to be dose-dependent.

ANTICOAGULANTS
Theoretically, high-dose turmeric preparations may increase the risk of bleeding when used together with anticoagulant drugs — caution is advised.

CYCLOPHOSPHAMIDE
Animal studies suggest curcumin may reduce drug efficacy — avoid.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Turmeric is contraindicated in bile duct obstruction (Blumenthal et al 2000) and high doses are probably best avoided in males and females wanting to conceive.

Curcumin is also contraindicated in breast cancer patients treated with cyclophosphamide until the significance of an in vivo model of breast cancer, which found that curcumin reduced the tumour regression effects of chemotherapy, is clarified (Somassundaram et al 2002).

Due to antiplatelet activity and possible increased risk of bleeding, use of concentrated extracts should be suspended 1 week prior to major surgery; however, usual dietary intakes are likely to be safe.

PREGNANCY AND LACTATION USE
When used as a spice this herb is most likely to be safe; however, the safety of therapeutic doses has not been established. Turmeric has been demonstrated not to be mutagenic in vitro (Nagabhushan 1986) or to be teratogenic in mice (Garg 1974,
Vijayalaxmi 1980). Constituents and/or metabolites of turmeric and curcumin were transferred to suckling pups, but no ill effect on the offspring was reported.

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**
- In Ayurvedic medicine, turmeric is used to strengthen the overall energy of the body, relieve gas, dispel worms, improve digestion, regulate menstruation, dissolve gallstones, relieve arthritis and purify the blood (Blumenthal et al 2000).
- In TCM, turmeric is used for bruises, sores, ringworm, chest pain, toothache and jaundice. Turmeric was also recommended for abdominal pain, mass formation in the abdomen and amenorrhoea (Blumenthal et al 2000).
- Turmeric is commonly used in foods and is likely to be a safe and healthy addition to the diet.
- Turmeric has been shown to have antioxidant, anti-inflammatory and anti-atherosclerotic activity; however, further clinical evidence is needed before it can be recommended to treat specific conditions.
- Clinical evidence suggests that turmeric may provide benefit for people with dyspepsia, peptic ulcer, hyperlipidaemia, and arthritis and there is emerging evidence to suggest that turmeric may help prevent a number of cancers as well as being useful as an adjuvant in cancer treatment.

**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

**What will this herb do for me?**
In countries where people use turmeric extensively in cooking (generally in curries), the intake seems to be associated with a lower level of certain chronic conditions, possibly including cancer, gastrointestinal diseases and arthritis. There have been some encouraging studies supporting this.

**When will it start to work?**
In some studies the effect began to be noticed after 2 weeks. However, as most of the conditions where turmeric may be beneficial are chronic in nature, treatment with turmeric should be considered long term.

**Are there any safety issues?**
Turmeric is considered very safe at normal dietary or therapeutic dosages with turmeric extracts. High doses are generally not recommended during pregnancy or for those wanting to conceive.

**REFERENCES**


Hergenhahn M et al. The chemopreventive compound curcumin is an efficient inhibitor of Epstein-Barr virus BZLF1 transcription in Raji DR-LUC cells. Mol Carcinogen 33.3 (2002): 137-45.


Turmeric 1168


Tyrosine

Historical note  Tyrosine has been used by the military in the USA and the Netherlands to counter the stressful effects of cold, prolonged and excessive physical activity. It also appears to improve cognition and performance in soldiers under psychologically stressful conditions and has been scientifically shown to improve physical and mental endurance (Deijen et al 1999).

BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS
Tyrosine is a conditionally essential amino acid. It can be taken in through the diet or synthesised in the body from phenylalanine, except in phenyketonurics. L-Tyrosine is absorbed in the small intestine by active transport and transported to the liver where it is involved in a number of biochemical reactions, such as protein synthesis and oxidative catabolic reactions. L-Tyrosine that is not metabolised in the liver is distributed via systemic circulation to various tissues in the body where it is involved in the synthesis of a number of catecholamines and hormones (Hendler & Rorvick 2001).

There is some question as to tyrosine's ability to cross the blood–brain barrier and this may explain some of the negative results demonstrated in clinical trials. A rat study has demonstrated that combining the essential fatty acid, alpha-linolenic acid, with L-tyrosine, via a special bond, produces an active biological molecule with potent dopaminergic activity, suggesting that the alpha-linolenic acid may play a dual role as a carrier for tyrosine and a membrane- and receptor-improving agent (Yehuda 2002).

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
L-Tyrosine is the form generally used. Tyrosine is also known as beta-(para-hydroxyphenyl) alanine, alpha-amino-para-hydroxyhydrocinnamic acid and (S)-alpha-amino-4-hydroxybenzenepropanoic acid.

FOOD SOURCES
Good dietary sources include soy products, chicken, fish, almonds, avocados, bananas, dairy products, meat, eggs, nuts, beans, oats, wheat, lima beans, pumpkin seeds, sesame seeds and fermented foods such as yoghurt and miso.

DEFICIENCY SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS
The following have been associated with low levels of tyrosine:

- depression
• low blood pressure
• low body temperature
• restless legs syndrome
• hypothyroidism.

MAIN ACTIONS
NEUROTRANSMITTER AND HORMONE PRODUCTION
Many of the pharmacological actions of tyrosine relate to its role as a precursor for a number of neurotransmitters and hormones.

Elevating tyrosine concentrations in brain catecholamine neurons (particularly dopamine and noradrenaline neurons) can stimulate neurotransmitter production in actively firing neurones but not in those that are quiescent or firing slowly (Fernstrom 2000).

It plays an essential role in the body as a precursor to the catecholamine neurotransmitters as illustrated below.

Phenylalanine → Tyrosine → L-Dopa → Dopamine → Noradrenaline → Adrenaline

Folate, vitamins B3, B6, B12 and C, iron, copper and other nutrients are required for the metabolism of tyrosine to catecholamines.

Thyroid hormones   As tyrosine is a precursor for the synthesis of thyroid hormones it is involved in the regulation of basal metabolic rate, oxygen use, cellular metabolism, growth and development (Tortora & Grabowski 1996).

Tyrosine undergoes iodination to form T₁ (mono-iodotyrosine), a second iodination produces T₂ (di-iodotyrosine) and these combine to produce the active thyroid hormones known as T₃ (tri-iodothyronine) and T₄ (tetra-iodothyronine or thyroxine) (Tortora & Grabowski 1996).

Tyrosine is also involved in the production of other compounds such as melanin, and some types of oestrogen (Hass 1992, Tortora & Grabowski 1996).

ANTIOXIDANT
Because tyrosine binds unstable molecules that can potentially cause damage to the cells and tissues, it is considered an antioxidant (Haas 1992).

CLINICAL USE
PHENYLKETONURIA
Phenylketonuria (PKU) is treated by restricting dietary intake of natural protein and substituting a protein source that lacks phenylalanine but is fortified with tyrosine. This recommendation is because people with PKU are unable to metabolise
phenylalanine, the precursor to tyrosine. Unfortunately, tyrosine supplementation has not been shown to consistently improve neuropsychologic function in PKU, which is possibly because increases in plasma tyrosine levels are not sustained and brain influx often remains suboptimal despite tyrosine supplementation (Kalsner et al 2001). In practice, plasma tyrosine levels are monitored and controlled (normal: 45 micromol/L) before tyrosine supplementation is considered (Poustie & Rutherford 2000, van Spronsen et al 2001).

**ENHANCED COGNITION**

Therapeutically, tyrosine supplements are used to enhance levels of its derivatives and, therefore, improve cognitive function.

One randomised, placebo-controlled study investigated the effects of L-tyrosine (150 mg/kg) on cognitive performance following one night’s sleep loss. Supplementation was found to significantly reduce performance decline, with cognitive improvements lasting approximately 3 hours (Neri et al 1995).

RCTs comparing the effects of a balanced amino acid drink with one lacking in tyrosine and phenylalanine demonstrated that tyrosine-depleted individuals experienced impaired spatial recognition memory and spatial working memory and an increase in plasma prolactin levels (Harmer et al 2001, McTavish et al 2005), indicating a decrease in dopamine neurotransmission within the hypothalamus. Although ratings of depression and other aspects of cognitive function were unaffected, subjective feedback indicated that the participants felt better on the balanced drink (Harmer et al 2001).

Changes in tyrosine transport may also influence cognitive functioning in schizophrenia via the dopamine system (Wiesel et al 2005).

**DEPRESSION**

As tyrosine is a precursor to both dopamine and noradrenalin, researchers have suggested that tyrosine depletion may play a role in the pathogenesis of depression. To date studies testing this hypothesis have produced mixed results. One study found that tyrosine- and phenylalanine-depleted individuals became less content and more apathetic than those given a balanced amino acid mixture (McLean et al 2004).

However, a separate study in individuals with a past history of recurrent depression found that tyrosine depletion did not alter objective or subjective measures of mood (McTavish et al 2005), although plasma prolactin levels did increase and performance on a spatial recognition memory task was impaired (McTavish et al 2005).

Tyrosine appears to be most effective in treating depression associated with a lack of dopamine. One study involving patients with signs of dopamine-dependent...
depression (DDD) found that treatment with oral tyrosine (3200 mg/day) caused an immediate improvement in mood, as judged by clinical impression and objective test scores (Montgomery–Asperg Depression Rating Scale) and sleep parameters from day 1 of treatment. Considered ineffective in other types of depression, supplementation with tyrosine should be limited to DDD (Mouret et al 1988a).

**REWARD DEFICIENCY SYNDROME**

Tyrosine depletion appears to affect reward-based processing (McLean et al 2004) and tests involving reward/punishment processing are affected by dopamine depletion (Roiser et al 2005). A lack of D₂ receptors and/or dopamine depletion states have been implicated in a number of conditions or destructive behaviours thought to be caused by poorly functioning biochemical reward systems.

Individuals tend to be at risk of multiple addictive, impulsive and compulsive behavioural problems, such as severe alcoholism, cocaine, heroin, marijuana and nicotine addiction, pathological gambling, sex addiction, chronic violence, post-traumatic stress disorder, risk taking behaviours and antisocial behaviour. As such, the use of tyrosine as a precursor to dopamine has a theoretical basis for use in this condition (Blum et al 2000).

Reward deficiency syndrome has also been proposed as a possible mechanism explaining the tendency to drug and alcohol addiction in schizophrenics (Green et al 1999).

To date, no large controlled studies are available to determine the clinical effects of tyrosine supplementation in this condition.

**Drug withdrawal** Tyrosine has been used to aid in the withdrawal of cocaine, caffeine and nicotine. Anecdotal reports suggest it is successful; however, large controlled studies are not available to determine clinical significance.

L-tyrosine supplementation has been considered because chronic cocaine use is believed to cause catecholamine depletion and cocaine withdrawal has been associated with major depression. To date, results from trials using tyrosine as a stand-alone treatment during cocaine withdrawal have produced disappointing results (Chadwick et al 1990, Galloway et al 1996). Although untested as yet, the effects of tyrosine may be of most assistance where a deficiency of dopamine D₂ receptors is suspected, such as in reward deficiency syndrome.

**STRESS ADAPTATION**

Physical and emotional stress can impair performance and memory. In order to reduce the adverse effects of stress on these functions, improvements in stress adaptation are sought, such as with the use of supplements such as tyrosine. Several
clinical studies have explored the effects of tyrosine in volunteers exposed to stressful situations, generally producing positive results on some parameters. (See ‘Clinical note: allostatic responses to stress’ in the Siberian ginseng monograph for more information about stress adaptation.)

Tyrosine supplementation was found to reduce the effects of stress and fatigue on cognitive task performance in a study conducted with a group of 21 cadets during a demanding military combat training course. Subjects received a protein-rich drink containing (2 g) tyrosine five times daily or a carbohydrate-rich drink with the same amount of calories (255 kcal). Assessments on day 6 of the course showed that the tyrosine group performed better on a memory and a tracking task than the control group and further experienced a decrease in systolic blood pressure; however, no effects on mood were observed (Deijen et al 1999).

Other studies indicate that high-dose tyrosine (150 mg/kg) may also improve some aspects of performance and help sustain working memory when multi-tasking in stressful situations. One placebo-controlled trial involving 20 people found that administration of tyrosine significantly enhanced accuracy and working memory during the multiple task battery 1 hour after ingestion. However, tyrosine did not significantly alter performance on the arithmetic, visual, or auditory tasks during the multiple task, or modify any performance measures during the simple task battery (Thomas et al 1999).

Cold stress Similar results were obtained in another controlled trial that investigated the effects of tyrosine (150 mg/kg) on memory tasks in cold (4°C) conditions. Two hours after ingesting L-tyrosine, matching accuracy significantly improved in the cold and was at the same level as administration of either tyrosine or placebo at a comfortable 22°C (Shurtleff et al 1994).

Other beneficial effects have been obtained with tyrosine supplementation in volunteers exposed to cold stress. A double-blind, placebo-controlled, crossover study found that tyrosine (100 mg/kg) could protect humans from some of the adverse consequences of a 4.5 hour exposure to cold and hypoxia. Tyrosine significantly decreased symptoms, adverse moods and performance impairment in subjects who exhibited average or greater responses to these environmental conditions (Banderet & Lieberman 1989).

OTHER USES
PREMENSTRUAL SYNDROME
Although tyrosine is used to reduce symptoms of irritability, depression, and fatigue associated with PMS, this is largely based on theoretical considerations and the
observation that a significant reduction in tyrosine levels occurs during the premenstrual period according to one study (Menkes et al 1994).

This study further found that tryptophan depletion caused a significant aggra-
vation of premenstrual symptoms, particularly irritability, and symptom magnitude was correlated with reduction in tryptophan relative to other amino acids.

**LOW LIBIDO**
Although no controlled studies are available, tyrosine is sometimes used for this indication as it indirectly increases testosterone and dopamine levels, both factors important in libido.

**PARKINSON’S DISEASE**
Administration of tyrosine has been shown to increase dopamine production in the CNS of patients with Parkinson’s disease (Growdon et al 1982).

**WEIGHT LOSS**
Tyrosine is thought to potentially suppress appetite and stimulate brown adipose tissue due to its enhancement of noradrenaline synthesis. Additionally, as a precursor for thyroid hormones it may also increase the basal metabolic rate.

**CHRONIC FATIGUE SYNDROME**
Low tyrosine levels have been identified in subjects with chronic fatigue syndrome, suggesting a possible role for supplementation in this condition (Georgiades et al 2003).

**NARCOLEPSY**
Abnormalities of the dopaminergic system are thought to be part of the underlying aetiology of this disorder, therefore tyrosine is used on the theoretical basis that an increase in dopamine levels will produce an improvement (Roufs 1990).

A randomised, double-blind placebo-controlled study of L-tyrosine (9 g/day for 4 weeks) has been conducted in 10 subjects with narcolepsy and cataplexy that tests this theory. While receiving tyrosine, subjects reported feeling less tired, less drowsy and more alert; however, ratings of daytime drowsiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, night-time sleep, overall clinical response, and measurements of multiple sleep latency and tests of speed and attention did not detect a significant difference with placebo (Elwes et al 1989). An earlier trial of longer duration, however, reported that within 6 months all eight participants were free from daytime sleep attacks and cataplexy (Mouret et al 1988b).
DOSAGE RANGE

- As tyrosine is considered to be a non-essential amino acid there is no specific recommended daily intake. The typical dose in clinical trials appears to be 100–150 mg/kg.
- Depression, PMS and chronic fatigue: 500–1000 mg before meals three times daily.
- Stress: 1500 mg/day in divided doses.
- Decreased libido, Parkinson’s disease, drug detoxification, and weight loss: 1–2 g/day in divided doses.
- Natural stimulant: 500–1000 mg on an empty stomach first thing in the morning.
- Alertness following sleep deprivation: 150 mg/kg/day.
- As individual sensitivity to tyrosine can vary, it is recommended to start at 100 mg/day and gradually increase dose (Cass & Holford 2001).

ADVERSE REACTIONS

Migraine headache, mild gastric upset, nausea, headache, fatigue, heartburn, arthralgia, insomnia and nervousness (Hendler & Rorvik 2001).

High blood pressure may occur in susceptible individuals — hypertensive patients taking tyrosine should be monitored closely.

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS

AMPHEMATE, EPHEDRINE, PHENYLPROPANOLAMINE

L-tyrosine (200 and 400 mg/kg) has been shown to increase the side-effect of anorexia caused by phenylpropanolamine, ephedrine and amphetamine in a dose-dependent manner in rats (Hull & Maher 1990) — observe patients using this combination.

ANTIDEPRESSANT DRUGS

Monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs), tricyclic antidepressants or selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor drugs (SSRIs) Theoretically, concurrent use may result in elevated blood pressure and/or enhanced antidepressant effects. In the case of MAOIs some tyrosine may be metabolised to tyramine and concurrent use with MAOIs may lead to hypertensive crisis.

Tyrosine should be avoided unless under medical supervision.

CNS STIMULANTS

Tyrosine is a precursor to a number of neurotransmitters so additive effects may occur — caution.
LEVODOPA
l-dopa competes with tyrosine for uptake, therefore concurrent use may decrease uptake of both substances, thereby reducing efficacy (Riederer 1980, DiPirro et al 1999, Awad 1984) — avoid unless under medical supervision.

MORPHINE SULFATE
l-tyrosine potentiates morphine-induced analgesia 154% in mice (Hull et al 1994). Observe patients taking tyrosine and morphine sulfate concurrently — potential beneficial interaction.

THYROID HORMONE MEDICATION
Additive effects possible because tyrosine is a precursor to thyroid hormones — observe patients taking tyrosine concurrently with thyroid hormone medication.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
• Malignant melanoma: a theoretical concern exists that tyrosine supplementation may promote the division of cancer cells (McArdle et al 2001). Tyrosine is contraindicated until safety is established.
• Manic conditions: due to the theoretical possibility that tyrosine may significantly increase neurotransmitter synthesis, close medical supervision is required (Cass & Holford 2001).
• Hyperthyroidism and Graves’ disease: theoretically tyrosine may aggravate these conditions as it is a precursor to thyroxine (van Spronsen et al 2001).
• Alkaptonuria and tyrosinaemia (inborn errors of tyrosine metabolism).
• Hypertension: use tyrosine with caution at high dose.

PREGNANCY USE
Not recommended during pregnancy (Cass & Holford 2001).

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
• Tyrosine is a conditionally essential amino acid that is ingested from the diet or produced from phenylalanine in the body.
• Many of the pharmacological actions of tyrosine relate to its role as a precursor to a number of neurotransmitters and thyroid hormones.
• Protein sources enriched with tyrosine but lacking in phenylalanine are used in PKU.
• Tyrosine supplements are used to improve cognitive function, in the management of depression or reward deficiency syndrome associated with noradrenaline or dopamine depletion, and to enhance stress adaptation systems.
• Due to its effects on neurotransmitters, it may elevate blood pressure in susceptible people when taken in high doses, and increase the effects of amphetamines, ephedrine, phenylpropanolamine, thyroxine and pharmaceutical antidepressants.

**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

**What will this supplement do for me?**

Tyrosine supplementation appears to increase the levels of important brain chemicals and thyroid hormones. As such, it may elevate mood and alertness, and enhance the body’s ability to deal with stress.

**When will it start to work?**

Although some research suggests that effects begin within 1–2 hours, it may take up to 1 week for maximal effects to be seen.

**Are there any safety issues?**

Theoretically, tyrosine may increase blood pressure in susceptible individuals and also interact with a number of medicines such as pharmaceutical antidepressants and thyroid treatment. It is also not recommended in pregnancy.

**REFERENCES**


Tyrosine 1180

Green AI et al. Clozapine for comorbid substance use disorder and schizophrenia: do patients with schizophrenia have a reward-deficiency syndrome that can be ameliorated by clozapine? Harv Rev Psychiatry 6(6) (1999): 287-96.

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
Valerian

Historical note  The sedative effects of valerian have been recognised for over 2000 years, having been used by Hippocrates and Dioscorides in ancient Greece. Over the past 500 years, it was widely used in Europe as a calmative for nervousness or hysteria and also to treat dyspepsia and flatulence. Legend has it that the Pied Piper put valerian in his pockets to attract the rats out of Hannover. Valerian was widely used by the Eclectic physicians and listed in the United States Formulary until 1946.

**COMMON NAME**
Valerian

**OTHER NAMES**
All-heal, amantilla, balderbrackenwurzel, baldrian, baldrianwurzel, fragrant valerian, heliotrope, herbe aux chats, katzenwurzel, phu germanicum, phu parvum, valeriana, wild valerian

**BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY**
Valeriana officinalis (family Valerianaceae)

**PLANT PART USED**
Rhizome

**CHEMICAL COMPONENTS**
Valtrates, didrovaltrates, isovaltrates, monoterpens, sesquiterpenes, caffeic, gamma-amino butyric and chlorogenic acids, beta-sitosterol, methyl 2-pyrrolketone, choline, tannins, gum, alkaloids, a resin. Essential oils (0.5–2%) in the plant contain the compounds bornyl acetate and the sesquiterpene derivatives valerenic acid, valeranone and valerenal.

The chemical composition of valerian varies greatly depending on such factors as age of plant and growing conditions. Processing and storage of the herb also affects its constituents, such as the iridoid esters, which are chemically unstable.

**MAIN ACTIONS**
**ANXIOLYTIC AND HYPNOTIC**
Extensive pharmacological research has been conducted; however, identifying the main active constituents in valerian and their mode of action remains unclear and

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
several neurobiological mechanisms are believed to be at work. In vitro tests so far have demonstrated that valerian stimulates the release of GABA, inhibits GABA reuptake and may have an effect at GABA receptors (Ortiz et al 1999, Santos et al 1994). There is also evidence of agonist effects at the human A1 adenosine receptor (Schumacher et al 2002).

One clinical study using both kava kava and valerian treatment has observed anxiolytic effects; however, it is uncertain what role valerian played in producing the effect (Wheatley 2001).


**ANTISPASMODIC**

Both in vitro and in vivo studies provide evidence of antispasmodic activity on smooth muscle (Hazelhoff et al 1982).

**OTHER ACTIONS**

A pharmacokinetic study with healthy adults found that typical doses of valerian are unlikely to produce clinically significant effects on the CYP2D6 or CYP3A4 pathways of metabolism (Donovan et al 2004). These results were confirmed in another human pharmacokinetic study that found no evidence that valerian affects CYP3A4/5, CYP1A2, CYP2E1, and CYP2D6 activity (Gurley et al 2005).

**CLINICAL USE**

In practice, valerian is rarely used as a stand-alone treatment and is often combined with other sedative or relaxant herbs, such as chamomile, passionflower, skullcap, lemon balm and hops.

**INSOMNIA**

Numerous RCTs have investigated the effects of valerian as a treatment for insomnia. Although not all results are positive, results from several well conducted placebo-controlled studies suggest that valerian decreases sleep latency and increases sleep quality in poor sleepers. Preliminary evidence suggests that ongoing use may be more effective than single dose use and effects on sleep progress over several weeks.

A number of different valerian products have been studied (e.g. Baldosedron, Baldrien-Dispert, Euvegal, Harmonicum Much, Seda-Kneipp, Sedonium, Valdispert, Valverde and Valerina Nutt). The LI 156 valerian extract is one of the most studied.

A systematic review by Stevinson and Ernst (2000) identified 19 studies involving valerian treatment that were published prior to May 1999. Of these, nine were...
chosen for inclusion because they were randomised, measured sleep parameters and tested single ingredient valerian products. Three studies considered the cumulative effects of long-term use of valerian whereas six investigated the effects of single-dose treatment. Two of the three studies investigating repeated administration of valerian found that effects were established by 2 weeks. The most rigorous placebo-controlled study showed that valerian LI 156 (600 mg) produced improvement on nearly all measures between weeks 2 and 4 (Vorabch et al 1996 as reported by Stevinson & Ernst 2000). The 4-week study involved 121 volunteers and assessed clinical effectiveness using four validated rating scales. At the end of the study, valerian was rated better than placebo on the Clinical Global Impression Scale, and at conclusion of the study (day 28) 66% of patients rated valerian effective, compared to 26% with placebo. Of the six studies investigating acute effects, valerian produced positive results in three whereas in the other three it was no better than placebo.

Interpretation of study results is difficult because of varying research methodologies. For example, some studies used surveys whereas others used EEG readings, some were conducted at home and others off site in hospitals or sleep laboratories, and pre-bedtime variables (e.g. caffeine consumption) were not fully controlled. Additionally, some studies used healthy volunteers with no sleep disturbances with little scope to observe further improvements. Since then, several other studies have been published.

Donath et al reported positive effects on sleep structure and sleep perception in subjects with insomnia after taking valerian for 14 days under double-blind crossover conditions, whereas single doses of valerian had no effect on sleep structure or subjective sleep assessment (Donath et al 2000).

More recently, a placebo-controlled, three-way crossover study using standardised sleep EEG and psychometric tests evaluated the clinical efficacy of a valerian preparation (LI 156) (Diaper & Hindmarch 2004). The 16 adults with sleep disturbances had a mean age of 56 years. Participants slept overnight in a sleep laboratory, following a dose of valerian 300 or 600 mg, or placebo at 9 pm and test periods were separated by 6 days of washout. Results showed no significant effect between valerian 300 and 600 mg or placebo on any EEG parameter or psychometric measure.

In Queensland, a series of n = 1 tests were carried out to investigate the effectiveness of valerian versus placebo for the management of chronic insomnia in general practice (Coxeter et al 2003). Of the 24 volunteers who had sufficient data for inclusion in the n-of-1 analysis, the response to valerian was poor or modest for all 24 (100%) for ‘total sleep time’ and for 23 (96%) for ‘number of night awakenings’ and
‘morning refreshment’. Valerian was not shown to be appreciably better than placebo in promoting sleep or sleep-related factors for any individual patient or for all patients as a group. Each valerian tablet contained 225 mg V. officinalis root and rhizome extract equivalent to 1000 mg dry root and rhizome (Mediherb, Warwick, Australia; contents standardised to 2.94 mg total valerenic acids, 0.46 mg Valerenal and 1.23 mg Valtrates). Tablets were dispensed as per approved dosage recommendations: two tablets at night taken 30 minutes before bed.

**Comparisons with benzodiazepines** Two randomised studies have compared valerian with benzodiazepine drugs. One double-blind trial found that subjects treated with either 600 mg valerian or 10 mg oxazepam experienced significantly improved sleep, with no statistically significant differences detected between the treatments (Dorn 2000). Another study comparing the immediate sedative effects and residual effects of a valerian and hops preparation, a sole valerian preparation, flunitrazepam and placebo found that subjective perceptions of sleep quality were improved in all treatment groups; however, only flunitrazepam treatment impaired performance the morning after as assessed both objectively and subjectively (Gerhard et al 1996). Furthermore, 50% of subjects receiving flunitrazepam reported mild side-effects compared with only 10% from the other groups.

A 2002 double-blind randomised trial compared the effects of valerian extract LI 156 (Sedonium) 600 mg/day to 10 mg oxazepam over 6 weeks in 202 patients with non-organic insomnia (Ziegler et al 2002). The multicentre trial took place at 24 study centres in Germany and found that valerian treatment was at least as efficacious as oxazepam, with both treatments improving sleep quality. Subjectively, 83% of patients receiving valerian rated it as ‘very good’ compared with 73% receiving oxazepam.

**Children** The efficacy and tolerability of a valerian and lemon balm combination (Euvegal® forte) was tested in a large, open, multicentre study of 918 children (aged under 12 years) with restlessness and nervous sleep disturbance (dyssomnia) (Muller & Klement 2006). Both investigators and parent’s ratings revealed a reduction in the severity of symptoms for most patients. The study reported that 81% of children with dyssomnia experienced an improvement and 70% of children with restlessness improved. Treatment was generally rated as good or very good and considered well tolerated. Each Euvegal® forte tablet consisted of 160 mg valerian root dry extract (Valeriana officinalis L.) with a drug-extract ratio of 4–5:1 (extraction solvent ethanol 62% v/v) and 80 mg lemon balm leaf dry extract (Melissa officinalis) with a drug-extract ratio of 4–6:1 (extraction solvent ethanol 30% v/v). The standard dosage of
Euvegal® forte (4 tablets daily) was used by 75% of patients and chosen by the investigator.

**ANXIETY AND PSYCHOLOGICAL STRESS STATES**

Less investigation has taken place to determine the role of valerian as a treatment for anxiety states. The few studies published thus far have produced encouraging results, but are hampered by methodological problems and well conducted trials are still required.

A randomised study found that low-dose valerian (100 mg) reduced situational anxiety without causing sedation (Kohnen & Oswald 1988). Positive results were also obtained in a smaller open study of 24 patients suffering from stress-induced insomnia who found treatment (valerian 600 mg/day for 6 weeks) significantly reduced symptoms of stress and insomnia (Wheatley 2001). Another randomised trial compared the effects of a preparation of valepotriates (mean daily dose 81.3 mg) with diazepam (mean daily dose 6.5 mg) and placebo in 36 outpatients with GAD under double-blind conditions (Andreatini et al 2002). After 4 weeks’ treatment, all groups had significant reductions in Hamilton anxiety (HAM-A) scale scores; however, only those receiving valepotriates or diazepam showed a significant reduction in the psychic factor of HAM-A.

Kava kava is a herbal medicine also used in the treatment of anxiety and found to be effective in clinical studies (Pittler & Ernst 2002). A study that compared the effects of kava kava to valerian and placebo in a standardised mental stress test found that both herbal treatments reduced systolic blood pressure, prevented a stress-induced rise in heart rate and decreased self-reported feelings of stress (Cropley et al 2002).

**MUSCLE SPASM AND CRAMPING**

Valerian preparations have long been used to treat a wide variety of gastrointestinal disorders associated with spasms such as diarrhoea, colic and irritable bowel. It has also been used to relieve cramping in dysmenorrhoea. Although no controlled studies are available to confirm clinical effectiveness in these conditions, valerian is likely to exert some degree of antispasmodic activity based on its pharmacological actions.

**OTHER USES**

**FIBROMYALGIA**

One randomised study, which was investigator blinded, tested the effects of whirl baths with plain water or with water containing pine oil or valerian on pain, disturbed sleep and tender point count in 30 outpatients with generalised fibromyalgia. Valerian significantly improved wellbeing and sleep together with decreasing tender point count, whereas baths with pine oil worsened pain and plain water baths.
reduced pain but had no effect on wellbeing and sleeplessness (Ammer & Melnizky 1999).

**BENZODIAZEPINE WITHDRAWAL**
Although no clinical studies are available, the herb is also used in practice to reduce dependency on benzodiazepine drugs. Valerian is prescribed together with other herbal medicines and psychological counselling while the benzodiazepine dose is slowly reduced.

**DOSAGE RANGE**
- Infusion of dried root: 3–9 g/day.
- Liquid extract (1:2): 2–6 mL/day.
- Tincture (1:5): 5–15 mL/day.
- When used for insomnia, valerian should be taken approximately 1 hour prior to bedtime.

**ACCORDING TO CLINICAL STUDIES**
- Anxiety: 100 mg–600 mg/day of the dried root or valepotriates (mean daily dose 81.3 mg).
- Insomnia: doses above 600 mg/day taken 1 hour before bedtime.

**TOXICITY**
According to one case report, a dose of valerian taken at approximately 20-fold the recommended therapeutic dose appears to be benign (Willey et al 1995).

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
As with numerous pharmaceutical sedatives, next morning somnolence is a possible side-effect of therapy; however, evidence from two human studies suggests this is not associated with valerian use (Gerhard et al 1996, Kuhlmann et al 1999).

- Vivid dreams were reported in one study; however, this is considered rare by clinicians (Wheatley 2001).
- Paradoxical effects have been observed in clinical practice; however, this also appears to be rare (Mills & Bone 2000).
- Occasionally, headache and gastrointestinal symptoms have been reported (Ernst 2001).

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**

**PHARMACEUTICAL SEDATIVES**
Theoretically, potentiation effects may occur at high doses; however, this has not been tested under clinical conditions — observe patients taking valerian concurrently with pharmaceutical sedatives.
**ALCOHOL**
RCTs have shown no potentiation effects with alcohol use (Ernst 2001).

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**
No known contraindications. Care should be taken when driving a car or operating heavy machinery when high doses are used.

**PREGNANCY USE**
No restrictions are known; however, safety has not been well established in pregnancy. No significant negative effects have been reported in toxicological tests with animals and none reported in clinical studies (Upton 1999).

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**
- There is good scientific evidence to support the use of valerian as a treatment for insomnia; however, it appears that ongoing use may be more effective than single-dose use and effects on sleep progress over several weeks.
- It appears to be best suited to reducing sleep latency (i.e. time taken until falling asleep) and improves subjective assessments of sleep.
- There is no evidence of next-day somnolence or significant adverse effects.
- Valerian also relieves symptoms of stress and anxiety, with several studies observing effects similar to benzodiazepines; however, further research is required.
- Due to its pungent odour, solid-dose forms may be preferable.

**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

**What will this herb do for me?**
Valerian is classified as a mild, sedative herbal medicine. It can reduce the time it takes to fall asleep at night and may also relieve stress and anxiety during the day. When added to a bath, it may increase relaxation, wellbeing and reduce some forms of pain.

**When will it start to work?**
For some, it works within an hour of the first dose; however, research suggests it works best after several weeks of regular use.

**Are there any safety issues?**
From the available evidence, next-day drowsiness is uncommon and physical addiction highly unlikely. Taking high doses during the day may increase drowsiness, so care is needed when driving a car or operating heavy machinery.

**REFERENCES**


Donovan JL et al. Multiple night-time doses of valerian (Valeriana officinalis) had minimal effects on CYP3A4 activity and no effect on CYP2D6 activity in healthy volunteers. Drug Metab Dispos 32.12 (2004): 1333-6.


**Vitamin A**

**Historical note** In ancient Egypt and Greece, physicians recommended the liver of an ox to cure night blindness. Although this could be interpreted as applying the liver locally, it could also refer to ingesting some, which would have provided a good source of vitamin A and proven to be a cure for night-blindness caused by deficiency (Shils 2006). Modern day scientific research into vitamin A began in 1913 with its discovery at both Yale and Wisconsin Universities. Researchers at both sites independently noticed that the substance could promote survival and growth of young animals. Since then, each decade has brought important new discoveries about vitamin A. The period from the 1960s to 1980s was particularly fruitful, as several proteins essential for transport and metabolism of vitamin A were isolated and purified. During the 1980s another major discovery was made when a link between childhood mortality and subclinical deficiency was identified. Vitamin A research continues to interest a wide spectrum of researchers and influence public health initiatives.

**BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS**

The term ‘vitamin A’ refers to a family of fat-soluble dietary compounds that are structurally related to retinol, and share its biological function. Vitamin A is found in foods as itself or as a precursor, which is converted into vitamin A in the body. The precursors, known as carotenes, are found in deep yellow, green and red coloured plants.

Retinyl esters, retinol or carotenoids from the diet or supplements are hydrolysed in the small intestine where they are absorbed as retinol into the mucosal cells (Miller et al 1998). Entering the body within the lipid core of chylomicrons, they are transported through lymph to blood, where it then recycles between plasma and tissues numerous times, before arriving at the liver. The liver performs three key tasks in relation to vitamin A. It is responsible for regulating the secretion of retinol to specific transport proteins known as ‘retinol binding proteins’, it serves as a major storage organ, and is the major site of vitamin A catabolism. Vitamin A metabolites are excreted mainly through the faeces and urine.

The body has a good capacity for vitamin A storage; however, its ability to rapidly dispose of excess vitamin A is quite limited (Shils 2006). This may explain why vitamin A can accumulate to toxic levels when intake greatly exceeds requirements.
This monograph will focus on preformed vitamin A and retinoic acid only. Further information about the carotenoids can be found in other monographs.

**FOOD SOURCES**
Preformed vitamin A (retinyl esters) is chiefly found in foods of animal origin, such as liver, red meat and eggs, as well as in fish, milk, butter and cream.

Cooking can destroy up to 40% of the vitamin A content of food (Wahlqvist et al 1997).

**DEFICIENCY SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS**
- Night blindness, which can progress to complete blindness if left untreated.
- Keratinisation of epithelial surfaces, causing them to dry and harden.
- Poor dental health.
- Compromised immune function.
- Reduced reproductive capabilities.

**PRIMARY DEFICIENCY**
Primary deficiency is caused by prolonged dietary deprivation. In large areas of the world, vitamin A deficiency is endemic, causing widespread blindness and mortality (Sklan 1987).

**SECONDARY DEFICIENCY**
Secondary deficiency can develop when absorption, storage or transport is reduced or carotene is not adequately converted to vitamin A. Conditions associated with risk of secondary deficiency include malabsorption syndromes, such as coeliac disease and cystic fibrosis, pancreatic disease, duodenal bypass, congenital partial obstruction of the jejunum, obstruction of the bile ducts, giardiasis, diabetes and kwashiorkor.

**MAIN ACTIONS**
Vitamin A is an essential nutrient required for life and serves two very different biological functions. First, in the form of retinaldehyde, it constitutes the light-sensitive component of the retina, rhodopsin, and second, in the form of retinoic acid, it activates a large number of transcription factors (McCaffery & Drager 1993).

**ANTIOXIDANT**
Vitamin A exhibits free radical scavenging properties.

**GROWTH AND DEVELOPMENT**
Vitamin A is essential for embryonic growth. Deficiency, as well as excess, has been shown to be teratogenic in animal studies, suggesting the same may be true in humans. It is currently unclear whether vitamin A itself or one of its metabolites or
both are responsible for the teratogenic effects seen with high exposure (Miller et al 1998).

Vitamin A is also necessary for healthy bone formation in children.

**IMMUNE FUNCTION AND MAINTENANCE OF EPITHELIAL SURFACES**

Vitamin A maintains the health of epithelial cells in the body, which form an important barrier to infection, and immune system function. More specifically, studies in animal models and cell lines show that vitamin A and related retinoids play a major role in immunity, including expression of mucins and keratins, lymphopoiesis, production of antibodies, and the function of neutrophils, NK cells, macrophages, T-lymphocytes and B-lymphocytes (Semba 1999). It has also been shown to potentiate antibody responses and lymphocyte proliferation in response to antigens and restore the integrity and function of mucosal surfaces (Semba 1994).

**VISION**

Vitamin A is involved in ocular health and function in two distinct ways. First, in the form retinaldehyde, it is an essential component of rhodopsin and is necessary for maintaining vision (Wahlqvist et al 1997). Deficiency states initially cause a reversible night-blindness that can progress to complete blindness due to photoreceptor degeneration (McCaffery & Drager 1993). Second, as retinoic acid it maintains normal differentiation of cells in the conjunctiva, cornea and other ocular structures, with deficiency resulting in xerophthalmia (dry eye) and corneal ulceration. In xerophthalmia, the cells lining the cornea lose their ability to produce mucus, and therefore lubrication of the eye becomes compromised. Dirt particles that eventually enter the eye are more easily able to scratch the surface, increasing the risk of infection and, ultimately, blindness.

**CHEMOPREVENTION**

Studies in cell culture and animal models have documented the capacity for natural and synthetic retinoids to reduce carcinogenesis significantly in skin, breast, liver, colon, cervical, prostate and other sites (Ross 1999). The mechanism of action responsible has not been fully elucidated, but several theories exist. It has been known since early in the 20th century that vitamin A deficiency can induce metaplastic changes to epithelial cells (De Luca et al 1997). Retinoic acid is thought to act as an inhibitor of carcinogenesis by interfering with promotion rather than with initiation, which may be blocked by inhibition of proliferation, stimulation of differentiation or induction of apoptosis (Niles 2000). Other research suggests it may also inhibit the final stage when malignant conversion of a benign tumour to a carcinoma occurs (De Luca et al 1997).
CLINICAL USE

DEFICIENCY: PREVENTION AND TREATMENT
Traditionally, vitamin A supplementation has been used to treat deficiency or prevent deficiency in conditions associated with risk of vitamin A deficiency, such as diabetes, hyperthyroidism, protein deficiency, intestinal infections and infestations and cystic fibrosis.

PAEDIATRICS
Reducing infection severity  Vitamin A deficiency impairs systemic immunity and increases the incidence and severity of infections during childhood, particularly measles and infectious diarrhoea. There is also evidence that infectious diseases, such as measles, will in turn depress serum retinol concentrations, by > 30% according to one study (Enwonwu & Phillips 2004). This phenomenon does not just occur in undernourished populations. A study of well-nourished children in the USA with measles identified that 50% had concurrent vitamin A deficiency (Arrieta et al 1992).

It is suspected that infectious diseases influence retinol metabolism through mechanisms that are more complex than simple loss of retinol stores (Enwonwu & Phillips 2004). Impaired synthesis of retinol-binding protein and transthyretin and decreased expression of the receptors for retinoic acid could also be responsible. As such, the use of vitamin A in the treatment of infectious disease is not limited to developing countries, but may also have application in well-nourished populations.

In areas where vitamin A deficiency may be present, the World Health Organization recommends administration of an oral dose of 200 000 IU (or 100 000 IU in infants) of vitamin A per day for 2 days to children with measles (D’Souza & D’Souza 2002a,b). It has also been recommended that prophylactic vitamin A supplements be given to all infants and young children (0–59 months), pregnant women and postpartum women 6 weeks after delivery, in these same areas (Ross 2002).

According to a 2005 Cochrane review, the WHO recommendation of two large doses of vitamin A does successfully lower the risk of death from measles in hospitalised children under the age of 2 years, but not in all children with measles (Huiming et al 2005).

Reducing secondary infections associated with measles  A meta-analysis of six clinical trials found a 47% reduction in the incidence of croup in children with measles who were treated with 200 000 IU of vitamin A on 2 consecutive days. One study in the analysis reported a 74% reduction in the incidence of otitis media, but this was not confirmed in others. A statistically significant decrease in the duration of

Vitamin A 1194
diarrhoea, pneumonia, hospital stay and fever was also observed (D'Souza & D'Souza 2002a).

Reducing childhood mortality  It has been estimated that a 23% reduction in young child mortality is possible with improvements in vitamin A status. This is most marked for deaths due to acute gastroenteritis and measles, but not acute respiratory infections or malaria (Ramakrishnan & Martorell 1998) and is particularly the case for older preschool children, whereas the effect on infants is less clear.

Very low birth weight infants  Supplementing VLBW infants with intramuscularly administered vitamin A is associated with a reduction in death or oxygen requirement at 1 month of age (Darlow & Graham 2002).

Reducing the risk of HIV transmission from mother to infant  The dominant mode of acquisition of HIV infection for children is mother-to-child transmission. Currently this results in more than 2000 new paediatric HIV infections each day worldwide. A 2005 Cochrane review analysed results from four trials, which enrolled 3,033 HIV-infected pregnant women, and found no evidence to support the use of vitamin A supplementation for this indication (Wiysonge et al 2005). One benefit that was identified for vitamin A supplementation was an improvement in infant birth weight.

CANCER PREVENTION
Most forms of cancer arise from cells that are influenced by vitamin A (Wardlaw et al 1997). Combined with its antioxidant and immunomodulatory activities, vitamin A has been considered as a potential chemopreventive agent. Research thus far using cell cultures and animal models has identified the ability for natural and synthetic retinoids to reduce carcinogenesis significantly in skin, breast, liver, colon, prostate, and other sites (Krinsky 2002). A look at the literature shows that impressive treatment results have mainly been obtained for synthetic retinoids and the relationship between natural vitamin A ingestion and cancer is less clear in humans.

Lung cancer  A number of epidemiological studies have identified an inverse association between risk of lung cancer and serum carotenoid levels, but intervention studies have produced conflicting results. In general, vitamin A is supplied together with carotenoids making it difficult to determine the role of vitamin A as a stand alone agent. (See Beta-carotene monograph for further discussion.)

DERMATOLOGY
Numerous clinical studies have shown beneficial effects of vitamin A or its derivatives on skin diseases such as acne, psoriasis, ichthyoses, keratodermas, skin cancers, lichen planus and UV-induced skin damage and photo-ageing (Futoryan & Gilchrest 1994).
Currently, most research has been conducted with synthetic retinoid derivatives and is not representative of the effects of natural vitamin A.

**OPHTHALMOLOGICAL DISEASES**

**Retinitis pigmentosa** One randomised, double-blind trial found that people receiving 15 000 IU/day of vitamin A experienced a slowed rate of retinal function decline (Berson et al 1993). The mechanism responsible is poorly understood, but it is possible that vitamin A transport or the retention capacity of the retina is abnormal in retinitis pigmentosa or defects in the pigment epithelium involving vitamin-associated proteins occurs (Sharma & Ehinger 1999).

**Clinical note — Retinitis pigmentosa**

Retinitis pigmentosa describes a group of hereditary retinal dystrophies, characterised by the early onset of night-blindness followed by a progressive loss of the visual field. The underlying pathology is a defect that alters the function of the rod photoreceptor cell and subsequent degeneration of these cells (van Soest et al 1999).

**Xerophthalmia** Xerophthalmia is responsible for at least half of all cases of measles-associated blindness and is the cause of at least half a million cases of paediatric blindness worldwide (Sommer 1998). This condition is associated with vitamin A deficiency and protein malnutrition.

**REDUCING MORBIDITY AND MORTALITY OF PREGNANT WOMEN**

Vitamin A supplements have been recommended in pregnancy to improve outcomes, including maternal mortality and morbidity. There is a Cochrane review of five trials involving 23,426 women that investigated the effects of vitamin A supplementation during pregnancy, alone or in combination with other supplements (Van et al 2002). Trials were heterogeneous and difficult to pool; however, two trials from Nepal and Indonesia suggested beneficial effects of vitamin A supplementation. In addition, daily or weekly vitamin A supplementation reduced night-blindness in pregnant women living in high-risk areas.

**OTHER USES**

Vitamin A has also been used in the treatment of menorrhagia and PMS, to prevent glaucoma and cataract, Crohn’s disease, asthma, sinusitis and rhinitis.

**DOSAGE RANGE**

- Vitamin A activity is expressed as a unit called microgram retinol equivalents (RE) (Miller et al 1998): $1 \mu g \text{RE} = 1 \mu g \text{all-trans retinol or } 6 \mu g \text{all-trans betacarotene or}$
3.33 international units (IU) of vitamin A or 1 µg RE is equivalent in activity to 1.78 µg of retinyl palmitate and 10 IU activity from beta-carotene.

**AUSTRALIAN RDI (IN MICROGRAMS RE)**

**Children**
- 1–3 years: 300 µg/day.
- 4–8 years: 400 µg/day.
- 9–13 years: 600 µg/day.
- Girls 14–18 years: 700 µg/day.
- Boys 14–18 years: 900 µg/day.

**Adults**
- Females: 700 µg/day.
- Males: 900 µg/day.
- Upper level of intake: 3000 µg/day.

**Pregnancy**
- <18 years: 700 µg/day.
- >18 years: 800 µg/day.

**Lactation**: 1100 µg/day.
- Deficiency without corneal changes: 10 000–15 000 IU/day for 1–2 weeks, until clinical improvement is apparent.
- General treatment doses: 10 000–50 000 IU/day have been used short term.

**ACCORDING TO CLINICAL STUDIES**
- Reducing secondary infection in children with measles: 200 000 IU of vitamin A on two consecutive days when vitamin A deficiency may be present.
- Retinitis pigmentosa: 15 000 IU/day.

**TOXICITY**
Cumulative toxicity is possible when doses greater than 100 000 IU are ingested long term. Acute toxicity is very difficult to induce in adults, as doses above 2 000 000 IU are required (Hendler et al 2001).

Early signs of toxicity include dry rough skin, cracked lips, coarse hair, sparse hair, alopecia of eyebrows, diplopia, dryness of the mucous membranes, desquamation, bone and joint pain, fatigue and malaise, nausea and vomiting, and psychological changes mimicking depression and schizophrenia.

Later signs include irritability, increased intracranial pressure and headache, dizziness, liver cirrhosis, fibrosis and cirrhosis, vomiting, haemorrhage and coma (Miller et al 1998).
People with chronic renal disease typically have elevated plasma retinol levels and therefore may be at greater risk of toxicity if supplementation is used. It is important to note that beta-carotene is not associated with teratogenic effects or vitamin A toxicity and is considered a far safer nutrient.

**Clinical note — Vitamin A toxicity in two young children**

In 2001, a report of two children admitted to hospital with symptoms of vitamin A toxicity was published in the *Medical Journal of Australia*. One case involved a 2-year-old girl with anorexia, lethargy and leg pain, an erythematous rash over her back and elbows and irritability. All symptoms resolved over 2 weeks following withdrawal of the supplement. The second case involved a child who had previously been prescribed oral etretinate by a dermatologist (for an unspecified period of time), which was ceased 3 months prior to vitamin A supplementation. In both cases, the dose of vitamin A taken was in excess of that provided by standard OTC products (Coghlan & Cranswick 2001).

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**

In general, doses of vitamin A that do not exceed physiological requirements have no adverse effects.

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**

**CHOLESTYRAMINE**

Reduces vitamin A absorption — increase dietary intake of vitamin A rich foods or consider supplementation with long-term use.

**HMG-COA REDUCTASE INHIBITOR DRUGS (STATINS)**

These drugs increase the serum levels of vitamin A, the clinical significance of which is unclear — observe patients taking this combination (Muggeo et al 1995).

**ISOTRETINOIN**

Toxicity may be increased — avoid this combination.

**MINOCYCLINE**

Long-term vitamin A use with this drug increases the risk of pseudotumour cerebri — use with caution.

**ORAL CONTRACEPTIVES**

Increased vitamin A levels occur in OCP users due to longer storage in the liver (Tyrer 1984) — use caution with large doses of retinol.
ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this vitamin do for me?
Vitamin A is essential for health and is involved in many different biochemical processes in the body. Some research has suggested that it reduces the incidence and severity of some infectious diseases in children. Vitamin A or its synthetic derivatives have also been used in many skin conditions such as acne, psoriasis, UV-induced skin damage and photo-ageing and the treatment of some cancers.
When will it start to work?
This will depend on the form of vitamin A being used and the indication it is being used to treat.

Are there any safety issues?
Taking high doses of vitamin A long term can cause side-effects and is contraindicated in pregnancy.

REFERENCES
Muggeo M et al. Serum retinol levels throughout 2 years of cholesterol-lowering therapy. Metabolism 44.3 (1995): 398-403.
Vitamin B1

Historical note The Chinese medical book ‘Neiching’ describes beriberi in 2697 BC, but it was not known for a long time that vitamin B1 deficiency was responsible. In 1926, two Dutch chemists isolated anti-beriberi factor from rice bran extracts and in the 1930s its structure was determined.

BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS
Vitamin B1 is a water-soluble compound required by all tissues. It is also known as thiamine, anti-beriberi factor, antineuritic factor and its active coenzyme form: thiamine diphosphate. Thiamine’s phosphate ester functions as a coenzyme in carbohydrate metabolism and nerve conduction. The free form is found in plasma, but intracellularly it is phosphorylated to one of three forms: thiamine-monophosphate (TMP), thiamine diphosphate (TDP) or thiamine triphosphate (TTP), with the majority as TDP, which is the most active form. The ability of thiamine to shift between these different levels of phosphorylation makes it a key nutrient in energy pathways.

There are two sources of thiamine: dietary and a bacterial source whereby it is synthesised by the normal intestinal microflora. Thiamine is absorbed from the small intestine by a saturable rate-limiting transport mechanism. The absorption of thiamine in the gastrointestinal tract can be impaired by the presence of naturally occurring thiaminases that are found in raw fish or polyhydroxyphenols found in certain food and beverages; for example, coffee, tea, blueberries, red cabbage and brussel sprouts (Groff & Gropper 2000).

It is transported by the portal circulation to the liver where it is metabolised, then excreted mainly through the kidneys. Thiamine is found in high concentrations in skeletal muscle, heart, liver, kidneys and brain and its half-life is approximately 15 days (Singleton & Martin 2001).

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Thiamine (vitamin B1) is a water-soluble substance, consisting of thiazole and pyrimidine rings joined by a methylene bridge.

FOOD SOURCES
Brewer’s yeast, lean meat and legumes are considered the richest sources of thiamine. Other sources include cereals, grains, pasta, wheatgerm, soy milk, seeds and peanuts.

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
It is possible to lose up to 85% of the thiamine content in meat through cooking and canning, and up to 60% from cooking vegetables (Tanphaichitr 1999). There is also loss through refining of grains and in some countries the fortification of wheat flour with B vitamins is mandatory to compensate for this loss.

**DEFICIENCY SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS**
The body only stores a small amount of thiamine and signs of deficiency tend to develop within 15–18 days of restricted intake.

Beriberi is the classic thiamine deficiency state. General early deficiency signs and symptoms include fatigue, irritability, poor memory, sleep disturbances, chest wall pain, anorexia, abdominal discomfort and constipation.

There are three forms of beriberi: dry, wet and cerebral, also known as Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome. Dry beriberi is associated with peripheral neurological changes whereas cerebral beriberi involves alterations to ocular function, cognitive function and produces ataxia, which can also be fatal. In addition to neurological changes, wet beriberi is associated with cardiovascular changes characterised by peripheral vasodilation, sodium and water retention, increased cardiac output and myocardial failure, which can advance to become fatal in severe cases. Although alcoholism is the major cause of Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome, it has also been reported in several other conditions such as hyperemesis gravidarum and hyperemesis due to gastroplasty (Gardian et al 1999, Ogershok et al 2002, Seehra et al 1996, Spruill & Kuller 2002, Tan & Ho 2001, Togay-Isikay et al 2001, Toth & Voll 2001).

**PRIMARY DEFICIENCY**
Primary deficiency is caused by inadequate dietary intake of thiamine, particularly in people subsisting mainly on highly polished rice (de Montmollin et al 2002) or unfortified grain products. Insufficient intake may also occur in anorexia and in people receiving TPN without supplemental thiamine.

**SECONDARY DEFICIENCY**
Secondary deficiency is caused by an increased requirement, as in hyperthyroidism, pregnancy, lactation, fever, acute infection, increased carbohydrate intake, folate deficiency, malabsorption states, hyperemesis, prolonged diarrhoea, strenuous physical exertion, breast feeding, adolescent growth, and states of impaired utilisation such as severe liver disease, alcoholism and people taking loop diuretics long term. Additionally, pyruvate dehydrogenase deficiency can result in deficiency (Beers & Berkow 2003, Wahlqvist et al 1997, Wardlaw et al 1997).
Clinical note — Thiamine deficiency is not uncommon
Several observational studies have reported that thiamine deficiency is not uncommon in the elderly. A study of 118 aged hospital patients identified a moderate deficiency incidence of 40% (Peppersack et al 1999). Similar results were obtained in another survey where marginal thiamine deficiency had an incidence of 31% and frank deficiency of 17% (O’Keefe et al 1994). Besides inducing deficiency signs and symptoms, preliminary research suggests that inadequate intake could increase susceptibility to neurodegeneration, particularly in aged organisms (Pitkin & Savage 2004).

MAIN ACTIONS
COENZYME
Carbohydrate and branched chain amino acid metabolism  Thiamine serves as a cofactor for several enzymes involved in carbohydrate catabolism, including pyruvate dehydrogenase, transketolase, and alpha-ketoglutarate, and for the branched-chain alpha-keto acid dehydrogenase complex that is involved in amino acid catabolism (Singleton & Martin 2001). Some of these enzymes are also important in brain oxidative metabolism (Molina et al 2002).

Neurotransmitter biosynthesis  Thiamine is involved in the biosynthesis of a number of cell constituents, including the neurotransmitters acetylcholine and GABA.

DNA  Thiamine is involved in the synthesis of precursors of DNA, therefore thiamine use is increased in tumours.

NEUROPSYCHOLOGICAL ACTIONS
Besides its involvement in neurotransmitter biosynthesis, thiamine is required for neurotransmission, nerve conduction and muscle action. In the form of TTP, it concentrates in nerve and muscle cells and activates membrane ion channels. As such, thiamine deficiency is associated with neurological changes and suspected of contributing to the development of alcoholic peripheral neuropathy (D’Amour et al 1991).

CLINICAL USE
Many of the clinical uses of thiamine supplements are conditions thought to arise from a marginal deficiency, but some indications are based on the concept of high-dose supplements acting as therapeutic agents. In practice, vitamin B1 is usually recommended in combination with other B group vitamins.
DEFICIENCY: TREATMENT AND PREVENTION

Thiamine supplements are traditionally used to treat or prevent thiamine deficiency states in people at risk (see Secondary Deficiency).

Hyperemesis  Although thiamine supplementation will not reduce the symptoms of hyperemesis, it may be necessary in cases of hyperemesis gravidarum and hyperemesis due to gastroplasty in order to avoid deficiency states and the development of Wernicke’s encephalopathy, which has been reported in these situations, although noted to be a rare consequence. It may be precipitated in part by intravenous fluids containing dextrose, and is more commonly seen when the patient’s liver transaminases are elevated, which may contribute to the encephalopathy (Gardian et al 1999, Seehra et al 1996, Spruill & Kuller 2002, Tan & Ho 2001, Togay-Isikay et al 2001, Toth & Voll 2001, Welsh 2005).

Alcoholism  In alcoholism, a state of decreased intake, absorption, utilisation and increased requirement for thiamine occurs, suggesting a need to increase intakes to avoid deficiency states (D’Amour et al 1991). In cases of Wernicke’s encephalopathy, monitoring of thiamine status and prophylactic intravenous treatment will inhibit the progression to Korsakoff’s psychosis (Thomson & Marshall 2005). Ongoing research has revealed that the cerebellar neurotoxicity associated with excess alcohol is more likely to be predominantly mediated by thiamine deficiency rather than direct ethanol cytotoxicity as previously believed (Mulholland et al 2005).

Total parenteral nutrition  Several case reports show patients who have received TPN without proper replacement of thiamine are at risk of developing deficiency signs and Wernicke’s encephalopathy (Hahn et al 1998, van Noort et al 1987, Vortmeyer et al 1992, Zak et al 1991).

ACUTE ALCOHOL WITHDRAWAL

Several guidelines for the support of alcohol withdrawal recommend a dose of 100 mg thiamine administered intravenously or intramuscularly before routine administration of dextrose-containing solutions (Adinoff et al 1988, Erstad & Cotugno 1995).

ALZHEIMER’S DEMENTIA

Thiamine status has been investigated and found, amongst other nutrients, to have an inverse relationship with cognitive function in the elderly (Nourhashemi et al 2000). More specifically, AD has been associated with reduced plasma levels of thiamine, according to several clinical studies (Gold et al 1995, 1998, Molina et al 2002). One study analysed cerebral cortex samples from autopsied patients with AD
and found slight reductions in thiamine diphosphate levels compared with matched controls (Mastrogiacoma et al 1996). Proposed mechanisms for the relationship between thiamine and AD are varied, ranging from its role as an antioxidant and its critical contribution to the Krebs cycle to its involvement in the production of acetylcholine, disturbances of which have all been implicated in the pathology of AD (Bubber et al 2004, Butterfield et al 2002, Kruse et al 2004).

Investigation with high-dose thiamine supplementation in this population has produced mixed results (Blass et al 1988, Meador et al 1993, Mimori et al 1996). One double-blind, placebo-controlled crossover study showed that a dose of 3000 mg thiamine/day produced higher global cognitive ratings as assessed by the Mini-Mental State Examination compared with a niacinamide placebo. However, there were no changes to clinical state and behavioural ratings (Blass et al 1988). Another clinical study of unknown design found positive results with a dose ranging between 3 and 8 g/day of thiamine (Meador et al 1993) whereas a long-term study using high-dose supplementation produced negative results (Mimori et al 1996).

Although promising overall, a 2001 Cochrane review stated that it is still not possible to draw any conclusions about the effectiveness of thiamine supplementation in AD (Rodriguez-Martin et al 2001). In practice, it is often used as part of a broad-spectrum approach with other B-group vitamins in age-related cognitive decline; however, further research is required to determine whether this method produces more consistent results.

**CONGESTIVE HEART FAILURE**

A 2001 review concluded that there was insufficient evidence from large trials to confirm thiamine as a corrective treatment in congestive heart failure (CHF); however, prophylactic supplementation was worthwhile considering the high prevalence of deficiency in this population (Blanc & Boussuges 2001). The largest and most recent trial since then was published in 2006 and confirmed that the incidence of deficiency is notable in this population (Hanninen et al 2006). It is suspected that patients with existing heart failure are at increased risk of thiamine deficiency because of diuretic-induced depletion, advanced age, malnutrition or periods of hospitalisation.

A number of small interventional studies have assessed the effect of thiamine supplementation in patients with CHF with promising results. In one pilot study six patients treated with IV thiamine, such that their thiamine status returned to normal, resulted in increased left ventricular ejection fraction (LVEF) in four of five of patients studied by ECG (Seligman et al 1991). A randomised, placebo-controlled, double-blind study of 30 patients compared the effects of IV thiamine (200 mg/day) to
placebo over 1 week followed by oral thiamine (200 mg/day) taken for 6 weeks. In the 27 patients completing the full 7-week intervention, LVEF rose by 22%. Other positive results have been reported from similar studies (Hanninen et al 2006).

**DYSMENORRHOEA**
A Cochrane review of herbal and dietary therapies for primary and secondary dysmenorrhoea concluded that thiamine is an effective treatment when taken at 100 mg/day, although this conclusion is tempered slightly by its basis on only one large RCT (Wilson & Murphy 2001). That trial was a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled crossover design conducted over 5 months in 556 women and procured a positive improvement in >90% of the treatment cycle versus <1% in the placebo phase. The improvements observed during treatment appeared to have lasting effects, even after cessation of supplementation, for up to 3 months (Gokhale 1996). Due to the dramatic ‘success’ of this study, it has attracted skepticism regarding its methodology; certainly a question is why, with such positive results, an attempt to replicate the findings has not been undertaken in over 9 years (Fugh-Berman & Kronenberg 2003).

**Clinical note — No protection against insect bites**
One claim that has been around for many years is that high oral doses of certain B vitamins could act as a deterrent to insects such as mosquitoes. Principally the myth has centred around thiamine. A recent review of prophylaxis against insect bites found that neither topical application nor oral dosing of thiamine is an effective preventative strategy (Rudin 2005).

**OTHER USES**

**CATARACTS**
A case-controlled study of 72 patients found that thiamine supplementation reduced the incidence of cortical, nuclear and mixed cataract (Leske et al 1991).

**COMA**
A general approach to patients presenting to hospital with coma is to ensure adequate oxygenation, blood flow and treatment with hypertonic glucose and thiamine (Alguire 1990, Buylaert 2000).

**EPILEPSY**
A randomised, placebo-controlled study involving 72 patients with epilepsy who had received long-term phenytoin treatment alone or in combination with phenobarbital found that administration of thiamine (50 mg/day) over 6 months improved
neuropsychological functions in both verbal and non-verbal IQ testing (Botez et al 1993). This study also found both folate supplementation and placebo ineffective.

**FATIGUE**

B group vitamins are often taken by the public to lessen the impact of ‘stress’ and provide an energy boost. In one study, thiamine 10 mg/day significantly increased appetite, energy intake, body weight, general wellbeing and decreased fatigue, compared with placebo in a group of 80 randomly chosen women from a population with known marginal deficiency (Smidt et al 1991). Thiamine supplementation also tended to reduce daytime sleep time, improve sleep patterns, and increase activity.

**HIV**

Several neuropathological reports have described brain lesions characteristic of Wernicke’s encephalopathy in patients with AIDS. One study found a 23% prevalence of thiamine deficiency in AIDS patients with no history of alcohol abuse (Butterworth et al 1991).

**NEUROGENIC IMPOTENCE**

A dose of 25 mg thiamine taken orally resulted in normalisation of erection in a man with a history of chronic alcoholism and erectile dysfunction of 1 year’s duration (Tjandra & Janknegt 1997). However, more recent evidence discussing the causes of neurogenic impotence suggests that thiamine deficiency is relatively rare (Finsterer 2005).

**MAPLE SYRUP URINE DISEASE**

Of four pediatric patients with maple syrup urine disease, three responded to thiamine therapy with a reduction in concentration of plasma and urinary branched-chain amino and ketoacids (Fernhoff et al 1985).

**OPTIC NEUROPATHY**

Several case reports suggest this condition can be caused by thiamine deficiency and successfully treated with supplementation. One case report of a man developing optic neuropathy as a result of receiving TPN without thiamine for 4 weeks found that supplementation with thiamine reversed the condition (Suzuki et al 1997). Two cases of symmetrical, bilateral optic neuropathy associated with thiamine deficiency were successfully treated with thiamine supplementation (Hoyt & Billson 1979).

**DOSAGE RANGE**

- Prevention of deficiency (adult Australian RDI): 1.1–1.2 mg/day.
- Treatment of marginal deficiency states: 5–30 mg/day.
• Critical deficiency: 50–100 mg IV or IM for 7–14 days after which oral doses are used (Tanphaichitr 1999).
• Congestive heart failure: 100 mg twice daily IV for 1–2 weeks then 200 mg/day orally.
• Dysmenorrhoea: 100 mg/day orally.
• Support of alcohol withdrawal: 100 mg given IV or IM.
• Fatigue (when marginal deficiency likely): 10 mg/day.

**AUSTRALIAN RDI**
Females > 13 years: 1.1 mg/day.
Males > 13 years: 1.2 mg/day.

**TOXICITY**
Toxicity does not occur with oral thiamine as it is rapidly excreted by the kidneys (Tanphaichitr 1999), although there is some evidence that toxicity can occur with very large doses given parenterally (Jacobs & Wood 2003).

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
Thiamine is well tolerated.

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**

**ANTIBIOTICS**
Antibiotics can reduce the endogenous production of B-group vitamins by gastrointestinal flora, theoretically resulting in lowered B vitamin levels. The clinical significance of this is unclear — increase intake of vitamin B1 rich foods or consider supplementation.

**IRON**
Iron precipitates thiamine, thereby reducing its absorption — separate doses by 2 hours.

**LOOP DIURETICS**
Chronic use may result in lowered levels of vitamin B1 — increase intake of vitamin B1-rich foods or consider long-term supplementation.

**OTHER B VITAMINS**
Thiamine deficiency commonly occurs in conjunction with poor B2 and B6 status (Jacobs & Wood 2003).

**SULFITES**
Concomitant intake may inactivate thiamine, which has been reported in TPN solutions (Bowman & Nguyen 1983).
TANNINS
Tannins precipitate thiamine, thereby reducing its absorption — separate doses by 2 hours.

CONTRAINdications AND PRECautionS
CANCER
There is some evidence of thiamine being associated with nucleic acid ribose synthesis of tumour cells in its biologically activated form (Boros 2000). As such, thiamine may theoretically increase tumour formation. To date, the clinical relevance of this finding has not been explored.

PREGNANCY USE
Safe during pregnancy and lactation.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELING
• Thiamine is necessary for healthy functioning and is involved in carbohydrate and protein metabolism, the production of DNA, several neurotransmitters and nerve and muscle function.
• Supplements are used to treat deficiency or prevent secondary deficiency in people at risk (e.g. alcoholism, malabsorption syndromes, hyperemesis, chronic diarrhoea, hyperthyroidism, pregnancy, lactation, fever, acute infection, folate deficiency, strenuous physical exertion, breast feeding, adolescent growth, severe liver disease and chronic use of loop diuretics).

There is a higher incidence of deficiency in people with CHF; however, it is not known whether correction of the deficiency will improve disease symptoms.
• High-dose thiamine supplements relieve symptoms of dysmenorrhoea according to one large RCT.
• Additionally, some early research has found an association between Alzheimer’s dementia and low plasma thiamine levels with supplementation producing some benefits; however, further investigation is still required.
• Oral supplements are non-toxic, but should be used with caution in patients with cancer.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this vitamin do for me?
Thiamine is necessary for healthy functioning and is involved in carbohydrate and protein metabolism, the production of DNA, several brain chemicals and nerve and muscle function. Supplements are taken to avoid deficiency states that can occur, for instance, in alcoholism, extreme vomiting, chronic diarrhoea or malabsorption.
syndromes. In high doses, it may relieve symptoms of painful menstruation and may be a useful adjunct in CHF.

**When will it start to work?**

Thiamine supplements can have dramatic effects on deficiency states within 24 hours. The response time for other conditions, such as dysmenorrhea and CHF, also appear to be reasonably fast. Within two menstrual cycles, supplementation produced marked reductions in dysmenorrhea, and CHF patients treated for only 7 weeks showed positive responses.

**Are there any safety issues?**

Taken orally, thiamine is considered non-toxic. People with cancer should consult with their physician before taking high-dose thiamine supplements.

**REFERENCES**


BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS
Riboflavin is a water-soluble B group vitamin that is sensitive to light and alkali conditions. Once absorbed, it is converted into its active form. Riboflavin works as a component of two primary coenzymes, flavin adenine dinucleotide (PAD) and flavin mononucleotide (FMN), belonging to the class known as the flavin coenzymes, all active in redox reactions involving hydrogen transfer and consequently important for the body’s production of ATP. Although some organs (such as the liver) have relatively high concentrations of flavin coenzymes, the flavin seems to be present as coenzyme moieties of flavin holoenzymes, which are fully functional.

There are two sources of riboflavin: dietary and bacterial whereby the vitamin is produced by the normal gastrointestinal microflora. The amount of bacterially synthesised riboflavin depends on the type of diet consumed, with higher synthesis resulting from intake of vegetable-based diets compared with meat-based diets (Said 2004). Direct dietary sources are discussed later.

Riboflavin uptake occurs mainly in the proximal part of the small intestine and involves a specialised, Na⁺-independent carrier-mediated system. Adaptive changes alter the number and/or activity of carriers and uptake is saturable when large pharmacological doses of riboflavin are ingested. There is evidence that bioavailability is optimal once 25 mg has been reached and doses in excess of this show reduced or unaltered absorption efficacy (Groff & Gropper 2004). The absorption of B2 is enhanced when it is consumed in flesh foods and impeded by the presence of divalent metals (e.g. zinc, iron, copper and manganese).

FOOD SOURCES
The main food sources are organ meats, yeast products (including Vegemite), almonds, wheatgerm, wild rice and mushrooms. It is also found to a lesser extent in dairy products and vegetables. Maximum loss during cooking is 75% (Wahlqvist 1997).

DEFICIENCY SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS
PRIMARY DEFICIENCY
Primary deficiency is associated with inadequate dietary intake such as poor consumption of milk and other animal products. Primary deficiency is reported to be more common in the elderly and adolescent girls.
SECONDARY DEFICIENCY
Secondary deficiencies can develop in chronic diarrhoea, liver disease, chronic alcoholism, adrenal or thyroid hormone insufficiency and postoperative situations in which TPN solutions lack riboflavin. In most cases, riboflavin deficiency is accompanied by other vitamin deficiencies such as vitamin B6, niacin and folic acid. Drugs that impair riboflavin absorption or utilisation by inhibiting the conversion of the vitamin to the active coenzymes include tricyclic, antidepressants, chemotherapy drugs and psychotropic agents. There is also evidence suggesting an apparent increase in riboflavin requirements with increased physical exercise.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS OF DEFICIENCY
The body’s ‘storage capacity’ is sufficient to provide riboflavin for 2–6 weeks when nutritional status is normal, but during protein deficiency the stores are significantly reduced.

Initial symptoms of riboflavin deficiency are often non-specific and include: weakness, fatigue, mouth pain and personality changes. Isolated riboflavin deficiency seldom occurs and is usually associated with a deficiency of other B group vitamins.

Other signs and symptoms are:
- angular stomatitis, cracked lips, cold sores and cheilosis
- glossitis, magenta tongue (Lo 1984)
- failure to grow in children
- ocular and visual disturbances with symptoms such as burning, itching and sensitivity to light and conjunctivitis
- scaly and greasy dermatitis affecting the nasolabial folds, ears, eye lids, scrotum and labia majora (Lo 1984)
- desquamative dermatitis
- hair loss
- poor wound healing.

Of interest, a study of 154 pregnant women at increased risk of pre-eclampsia found that those who were riboflavin deficient were 4.7-fold more likely to develop the condition than those with adequate levels (Wacker et al 2000).

MAIN ACTIONS
Riboflavin is involved in many different biological processes and is essential for maintaining good health. It is involved in ATP production, is essential for immune function, tissue repair processes and general growth (it is required for the healthy growth of skin, nails and hair) and plays a key role in fatty acid oxidation and the metabolism of several other B vitamins.
Riboflavin has important antioxidant activity in itself but also as part of the FAD-dependent enzyme glutathione reductase. It also activates vitamin B6 and folate.

**CLINICAL USE**
A number of clinical trials have been conducted whereby patients presenting with one condition have subsequently been found to have riboflavin deficiency. Treating the deficiency in these cases has, in some situations, been shown to improve the initial presenting condition.

**WOUND HEALING**
Riboflavin deficiency lengthens the time to epithelialisation of wounds, slows the rate of wound contraction and reduces the tensile strength of incision wounds in vivo. Total collagen content is also significantly decreased, suggesting riboflavin deficiency will slow down wound healing rate (Lakshmi et al 1989).

**MIGRAINE HEADACHES: PROPHYLAXIS**

**Clinical note**
Numerous theories exist to explain the underlying pathology of migraine headache. One theory proposes a deficit of mitochondrial energy metabolism, as patients with migraine show decreased brain mitochondrial energy reserve between attacks. Considering nutrients such as riboflavin and coenzyme Q10 can enhance mitochondrial energy efficiency, they have been tested for prophylactic activity in migraine (Schoenen et al 1994). Recent studies in experimental models add to our knowledge of the actions of riboflavin in migraine, with confirmation that it produces antinociception and anti-inflammatory effects. The analgesic activity observed is independent of opioid mechanisms (Granados-Soto et al 2004).

Three clinical studies of varying design have found that treatment with high-dose riboflavin (400 mg) can reduce the frequency of migraine headache; however, one double-blind study that used it in combination with magnesium and feverfew failed to show beneficial effects over low-dose riboflavin (25 mg).

The first was an open pilot study testing the effects of 400 mg riboflavin over 3 months in 49 patients. Active treatment produced positive results, with 59% of the treatment group experiencing a reduction in migraine frequency by at least 50% (Schoenen et al 1994). Based on these results, a second study with 55 subjects was conducted using a randomised, placebo-controlled design, with similar positive findings (Schoenen et al 1998). In 2004 an open-label study retested the same high dose of B2 over 6 months and once again showed a significant reduction in headache frequency from 4 days/month at baseline to 2 days/month after 3 and 6 months of
treatment ($P < 0.05$). Use of abortive drugs reduced from 7 units/month to 4.5 units/month; however, the duration and intensity of each episode did not change significantly (Boenke et al 2004).

Alternatively, a randomised, double-blind, controlled study using a combination of vitamin B2 (400 mg), magnesium (300 mg) and feverfew (100 mg) failed to show benefits over riboflavin 25 mg. Both groups showed a comparable significant reduction in number of migraines, migraine days, and migraine index; however, neither successfully reduced frequency by greater than 50%, which was the primary outcome (Maizels et al 2004). Interestingly, the response obtained was greater than the placebo response reported in other migraine prophylaxis trials.

Comparative trial A clinical trial comparing riboflavin supplementation with standard beta-adrenergic antagonists found that both treatments significantly improved the clinical symptoms of migraine headache (Sandor et al 2000). Analysis of their effects on cortical potentials showed that the two treatments achieve these results by working through different mechanisms.

AGE-RELATED CATARACT PREVENTION

Clinical note Age-related cataract is an important public health problem because approximately 50% of the 30–50 million cases of blindness worldwide result from leaving the condition untreated (Jacques 1999). The mechanisms that bring about a loss in transparency include oxidation, osmotic stress, and chemical adduct formation (Bunce et al 1990). Besides traditional risk factors such as diabetes, nutrient deficiency is also being considered, particularly those with antioxidant properties.

Cataract was shown to be associated with riboflavin deficiency in animals in the 1930s and subsequently with deficiencies of amino acids, vitamins and some minerals (Wynn & Wynn 1996). This has been confirmed in human studies whereby lens opacities have been associated with lower levels of riboflavin, vitamins A, C and E, iron, and protein status (Leske et al 1995, Mares-Perlman et al 1995).

Glutathione reductase is a key enzyme involved in lens protection. Riboflavin levels indirectly influence glutathione reductase activity, increasing the lens’s ability to deal with free radical formation (Head 2001). One study documented severe glutathione reductase deficiency in 23% of human lens-epithelium specimens, possibly reflecting a dietary deficiency of riboflavin (Straatsma et al 1991). Another study identified that a significant number of people with cataracts have inactive epithelial glutathione reductase (Horwitz et al 1987).
A large cross-sectional survey of 2873 volunteers aged 49–97 years detected a link between dietary vitamin supplement and a lower incidence of both nuclear and cortical cataract. Vitamin A, niacin, riboflavin, thiamine, folate and vitamin B12 all appeared to be protective, either in isolation or as constituents of multivitamin preparations (Kuzniarz et al 2001).

A recent sample of 408 women from the Nurses’ Health Study aged 52–74 years at baseline participated in a 5-year study that assessed nutrient intake and the degree of nuclear density (opacification). Findings revealed that the geometric mean 5-year change in nuclear density was inversely associated with the intake of riboflavin ($P = 0.03$) and thiamin ($P = 0.04$), and most significantly with the duration of vitamin E supplement use ($P = 0.006$) (Jacques et al 2005).

The evidence currently suggests that higher intakes of riboflavin are protective against the progression of age-related lens opacification.

**SICKLE CELL ANAEMIA**
Riboflavin supplementation (5 mg twice daily for 8 weeks) in patients with sickle cell anaemia resulted in improved haematological measurements compared with controls, suggesting that riboflavin enhances erythropoiesis (Ajayi et al 1993).

**RHEUMATOID ARTHRITIS**
One study has suggested that patients with higher pain scores and active disease are at significantly greater risk of riboflavin deficiency than those with inactive disease (Mulherin et al 1996). In this study of 91 patients, pain score, articular index, C-reactive protein, and erythrocyte sedimentation rate were all increased in those patients exhibiting riboflavin deficiency (all $P < 0.02$). It is unclear whether riboflavin deficiency influences pain threshold or is a result of the disease.

**OTHER USES**
Riboflavin is also used to treat carpal tunnel syndrome and acne, although only case reports are available (Folkers et al 1984).

**DOSAGE RANGE**
- Migraine prevention: 400 mg/day taken for at least 3 months.
- Treating deficiency states: 10 mg/day.
- Intake of vitamin B2 causes a characteristic bright yellow-orange discolouration to urine.

**AUSTRALIAN RDI**
- $< 70$ years
  - Women: 1.1 mg/day

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
• Men: 1.3 mg/day
  >70 years
• Women: 1.3 mg/day
• Men: 1.6 mg/day

TOXICITY
Riboflavin is considered an extremely safe supplement. Even at the high doses (400 mg) used in some of the trials, riboflavin remains non-toxic.

ADVERSE REACTIONS
General side-effects noted in trials using high doses were reasonably uncommon, but included diarrhoea and polyuria (Bianchi et al 2004). One case of anaphylaxis has been reported (Ou et al 2001).

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
Certain medicines can increase the body’s requirements of riboflavin.

ANTIBIOTICS
Antibiotic drugs can reduce endogenous production of B group vitamins — increase intake of vitamin B2.

ORAL CONTRACEPTIVE PILL
The OCP may increase demand for vitamin B2 (Pelton et al 2000) — consider increasing intake with long-term use.

TRICYCLIC ANTIDEPRESSANTS
Reduces the absorption of riboflavin — may increase riboflavin requirements (Pelton et al 2000).

AMITRYPTYLINE
Increases the renal excretion of riboflavin (Bianchi et al 2004) — consider increased dietary intake with long-term use.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
None known.

PREGNANCY USE
Considered safe.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
• Vitamin B2 deficiency signs include poor wound healing, hair loss, greasy dermatitis, ocular disturbances, failure to grow in children, angular stomatitis, cold sores, cracked lips and magenta tongue.

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
• Besides inadequate intake, deficiency can also result from chronic diarrhoea, liver disease and chronic alcoholism.
• There is some evidence suggesting high-dose supplements (400 mg daily) significantly reduce the frequency of migraine headache.
• Preliminary evidence suggests that regular supplementation with a multivitamin may also reduce the risk of developing cataracts.
• Supplementation results in a characteristic yellow-orange discolouration to urine.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What will this vitamin do for me?
Vitamin B2 is essential for health and is involved in many different biochemical processes in the body. Research has suggested that when taken in high doses, it can significantly reduce the incidence of migraine headaches.

When will it start to work?
Deficiency is reversed rapidly with supplementation. If using riboflavin to prevent migraine headaches, 3–4 months’ treatment is required to see significant effects.

Are there any safety issues?
The vitamin is considered a safe nutrient.

REFERENCES
**Vitamin B3 — Niacin**

**Historical note** The term ‘niacin’ is used interchangeably with nicotinic acid, and is also used collectively to include nicotinamide or niacinamide (the amide form of nicotinic acid). Niacin originally derived its name from its discovery as an oxidation by-product of nicotine and has been used generically since the 1940s to label foods and avoid association with nicotine, the alkaloid from tobacco. Nicotinic acid was the first hypolipidaemic agent shown to decrease the incidence of secondary myocardial infarction and reduce total mortality in these patients (Wilson et al 1991).

**BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS**

Vitamin B3 (niacin) is a water-soluble vitamin of the B complex family. Both nicotinic acid and nicotinamide are absorbed in the stomach and small intestine by passive diffusion at high doses, or sodium-dependent facilitated diffusion at low doses, and excreted in the urine. Recent studies suggest that regulation of niacin uptake may be regulated by an acidic pH-dependent carrier-mediated system and PTK-mediated pathway (Nabokina et al 2005). The immediate-release form of nicotinic acid reaches peak concentration at 45 minutes and the extended release form in 4–5 hours. While nicotinamide can be directly converted to nicotinic acid, nicotinic acid must undergo a number of metabolic steps to produce NAD(+) before being converted to nicotinamide (Hendler & Rorvik 2001, Wilson et al 1991). The body's niacin requirement is also met by the biosynthesis of niacin from tryptophan, an amino acid. It has been estimated that each 60 mg excess of tryptophan (after protein synthesis) is converted to approximately 1 mg of niacin. In the absence of sufficient levels of B3 the body will preferentially convert tryptophan to B3. Niacin is widely distributed throughout the body and concentrates in the liver, spleen and adipose tissue. It is finally excreted by the kidneys.

**COMMON FORMS AVAILABLE**

The term niacin is used to refer to both nicotinic acid (niacin) and nicotinamide (niacinamide). Niacin is also referred to as vitamin B3.

The immediate-release form, which requires more regular dosing, is associated with significant vasodilation (‘flushing’), whereas the sustained-release form is associated with an increased risk of adverse events. Extended-release forms of niacin...
allow once-daily dosing and avoid much of the flushing and hepatotoxicity of the immediate- and sustained-release preparations (Sadovsky 2002).

**FOOD SOURCES**
Organ and muscle meats, lamb's liver, beef, poultry, fish, yeast, legumes, peanuts, Vegemite, yeast, wheat bran and fruit all contain vitamin B3. Trace amounts are found in vegetables and eggs and although milk contains only small amounts of B3, it is a good source of tryptophan, which can be converted to B3 in the body. In cereals such as corn and wheat it is present in a bound form, such as glycoside niacytin, which is unavailable to the body and has negligible nutritional value. Soaking corn in an alkaline solution such as lime helps to increase B3 bioavailability.

Maximum loss in cooking is 75% (Wahlqvist 2002).

**DEFICIENCY SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS**
Pellagra is a deficiency syndrome of vitamin B3, due to inadequate conversion of tryptophan to niacin or a lack of dietary niacin or tryptophan. The main symptoms are often referred to as ‘the four Ds’ (Jacobs & Wood 2003).

- Diarrhoea.
- Dermatitis — primarily on sun-exposed areas such as the face, hands, feet and arms. The rash starts as red, itchy areas that develop vesicles, blisters, scales and fissures. At the final stage, the skin becomes thickened, lichenified and hyperpigmented (Hendler & Rorvik 2001).
- Dementia — may include aggressiveness and cloudy thinking (Llancapi et al 1998).
- Death — if left untreated, vitamin B3 deficiency can be fatal.

Vitamin B3 deficiency may be found in conjunction with other deficiencies and may be associated with peripheral neuropathy. Early signs include anorexia, weakness, anaemia, glossitis, redness on sun-exposed areas and photosensitivity.

**PRIMARY DEFICIENCY**
This usually occurs in areas where maize (Indian corn) forms a major part of the diet. Bound niacin, found in maize, is not assimilated in the intestinal tract unless it has been previously treated with alkali, as in the preparation of tortillas. Corn protein is also deficient in tryptophan. Amino acid imbalance may also contribute to deficiency, since pellagra is common in India among people who eat millet with a high leucine content.

In the West, vitamin B3 deficiency is mostly associated with conditions that affect the person’s nutritional intake such as alcoholism, mental illness or homelessness. It may also occur in anorexia nervosa, where dietary niacin and tryptophan are deficient (Prousky 2003).
SECONDARY DEFICIENCY
This may develop in conditions associated with diarrhoea, cirrhosis or malabsorption, as well as after extensive postoperative use of parenteral nutrition lacking adequate niacin. Pellagra may occur during prolonged isoniazid therapy (the drug replaces niacinamide in NAD), in malignant carcinoid tumour (tryptophan is diverted to form 5-hydroxytryptamine), and in Hartnup disease, an autosomal recessive disorder in which there is defective conversion of tryptophan to niacin (Beers & Berkow 2003). It has also been observed in Crohn’s disease, most likely due to malnutrition and intestinal malabsorption (Abu-Qurshin et al 1997).

MAIN ACTIONS
Vitamin B3 is involved in a wide range of biological functions, such as energy production, fatty acid synthesis, cholesterol and steroid synthesis, signal transduction, regulation of gene expression and maintenance of genome integrity. Other functions of vitamin B3 include the regulation of blood sugar, antioxidant mechanisms, and detoxification reactions (IMG 2006).

Niacin is a dietary precursor for the coenzymes NAD(+) (nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide) and NADP, which are involved in a number of metabolic functions such as DNA synthesis (Hageman & Stierum 2001), glycolysis, fatty acid synthesis and cellular respiration (Kobayashi & Shimizu 1999). Like chromium, B3 is an important component of glucose tolerance factor.

LIPID-LOWERING
Large doses of niacin (nicotinic acid) reduce total cholesterol, LDL-cholesterol, triglycerides and lipoprotein (a) levels and also markedly raise HDL-cholesterol levels (Illingworth et al 1994). The beneficial effects of niacin in reducing triglycerides and lipoproteins that contain apolipoprotein-B (such as VLDL and LDL) are thought to be mediated by inhibiting fatty acid mobilisation from adipose tissue triglyceride stores and increasing intracellular apolipoprotein-B degradation resulting in decreased secretion of VLDL and LDL particles (Ganji et al 2003). The cardioprotective properties of HDL-cholesterol appear to be due to its involvement in processes such as reverse cholesterol transport and inhibition of LDL-cholesterol oxidation (Ganji et al 2003, Kwiterovich 2000).

IMPAIRS GLUCOSE REGULATION
Although niacin is an important part of glucose tolerance factor, in high doses it may impair glucose regulation, resulting in insulin resistance, increased insulin secretion and increased fasting blood glucose in patients with type 2 diabetes, although some authors suggest that niacin is both safe and effective in diabetes (Meyers et al 2004).
Interestingly, nicotinamide has also been shown to cause insulin resistance, resulting in increased insulin secretion in healthy subjects with a family history of type 1 diabetes (Greenbaum et al 1996).

Modest increases in fasting blood glucose levels have been noted in a number of clinical trials (Elam et al 2000, Goldberg 1998, Rindone & Achacoso 1996), although other trials have found that changes in fasting blood glucose reverted to normal at 4 months (Grundy et al 2002) and 8 months (Zhao et al 2004).

In practice, this effect on glucose regulation may not be clinically significant (Gardner et al 1997, Guyton 2004, Meyers et al 2004, Zhao et al 2004) and the potential benefits of improved lipid control in diabetic patients for whom other lipid-lowering medications provide inadequate control may outweigh any concerns. Nevertheless hypoglycaemic medications may need to be monitored and adjusted if necessary (Fonseca 2003).

ANTIOXIDANT
Niacinamide has been shown in vitro to have an antioxidant activity comparable to that of ascorbic acid (Hageman & Stierum 2001).

PROTECTS BETA-CELLS IN THE PANCREAS
Nicotinamide has been shown to protect beta-cells from inflammatory insults and to improve residual beta-cell function in patients after onset of type 1 diabetes (Lampeter et al 1998). It may also prevent damage to beta-cells by the immune system due to its antioxidant effects (Anderson 1994).

CHONDROPROTECTION
The generation of IL-1 in the synovium and subsequent induction of NO synthase is crucial to the pathogenesis of OA. The ability of niacinamide to suppress cytokine-mediated induction of NO synthase in a number of types of cells (McCarty & Russell 1999) provides a theoretical basis for its use as a chondroprotective agent.

CHEMOPROTECTION
The dietary status of niacin has the potential to affect DNA repair, genomic stability, and the immune system thus influencing cancer risk (Kirkland 2003), and increased demand may occur in many malignancies, including primary hepatoma (Jacobs & Wood 2003).

In vitro studies have shown that NAD(+) is important for PARP-1 activity, an enzyme that is thought to be important for genomic stability. In vitro and animal studies have indicated that niacin deficiency increases genomic instability and may increase the risk for certain tumours. While NAD(+) is niacin dependent, high doses...
of nicotinamide inhibit PARP-1 in vitro, hence the effects may be dose dependent (Hageman & Stierum 2001). Niacin as a precursor for NAD(+) also inhibits DNA strand breakage in vitro and stimulates repair (Weitberg & Corvese 1990).

**CLINICAL USE**

**DEFICIENCY**
Severe deficiencies of niacin and tryptophan, a precursor from which the body can synthesise niacin, are the principal causes of pellagra.

**ANOREXIA NERVOSA**
The most common features of pellagra in patients with anorexia nervosa include erythema on sun-exposed areas, glossitis and stomatitis. A trial of supplementation with 150–500 mg for 24–48 hours will quickly determine if symptoms are due to pellagra (Prousky 2003).

**HIV AND TRYPTOPHAN DEPLETION**
A pellagra-like state can develop in malnourished patients with HIV and this may be due to impaired niacin status (Monteiro et al 2004) and result in tryptophan depletion. As tryptophan is preferentially converted to vitamin B3 (if B3 is depleted), a trial was conducted using high-dose niacin for 2 months in HIV patients and it was found that the high-dose niacin increased plasma tryptophan levels by 40% (Murray et al 2001).

An open, prospective trial has also concluded that extended-release niacin therapy is safe and effective for the treatment of dyslipidaemia associated with antiretroviral therapy; 2000 mg/day was given to 14 subjects for 14 weeks and resulted in significant reductions in serum levels of triglycerides, total cholesterol, and non-HDL-cholesterol (Gerber et al 2004).

**DEPRESSION**
As tryptophan is a precursor to serotonin, the preferential conversion of tryptophan to B3 in deficiency states may theoretically result in serotonin depletion. If sufficiently severe, this could produce symptoms of depression.

**HYPERCHOLESTEROLAEMIA AND HYPERTRIGLYCERIDAEMIA**
Niacin has been used for the treatment of hypercholesterolaemia and hypertriglyceridaemia since the 1950s. Large doses of niacin reduce total cholesterol, LDL-cholesterol, triglycerides and lipoprotein (a) levels and also markedly raise HDL-cholesterol C levels (Illingworth et al 1994). Considering these factors are also predictive of cardiovascular events, niacin is used to reduce overall risk of cardiovascular disease (Canner et al 1986). According to a recent meta-analysis effects on LDL-
cholesterol and triglycerides appear to be more significant in females especially at
doses > 1500 mg/day (Goldberg 2004).

Extended-release niacin (nicotinic acid) has been evaluated in at least four
randomised, placebo-controlled trials, with the most efficacious results occurring at
doses of 1500–2000 mg/day (Goldberg 1998, Grundy 2002, Guyton et al 2000,
Morgan et al 2003). Results were dose- and time-dependent, with trials ranging in
length from 4 to 16 weeks. At the 1500 and 2000 mg doses, reductions were noted
in total cholesterol (−7 to −12.1%); total cholesterol to HDL-C ratio (−17 to −22%);
LDL-cholesterol (0 to −7%); triglycerides (−16 to −36%); and lipoprotein (a) (−7 to
−23.6%). One trial noted a particular decrease in the smaller, more atherogenic,
dense LDL particles and an increase in the larger cardioprotective HDL particles
(Morgan et al 2003). HDL-cholesterol increased by 21–25.8% and apolipoprotein A-I
levels were reported in one study to be increased 9–11% (Guyton et al 2000). The
main side-effects reported included flushing, a 5% increase in fasting blood glucose,
pruritis and rash (Goldberg 1998).

A 2002 review suggests that niacin is the ‘only agent currently available that
favourably affects all components of the lipid profile to a significant degree’ and has
the greatest effect on HDL levels (Pieper 2002).

Niacin may also be combined with chromium (Bolkent et al 2004, Shara et al
2005, Yanardag et al 2005) or phytosterols (Yeganeh et al 2005) for synergistic
effects.

Clinical note — Major lipids affecting cardiovascular disease risk
Cardiovascular risk is predicted by a number of factors; however, the major lipids
involved are LDL-cholesterol lipoprotein (a), triglycerides and HDL-cholesterol.
Furthermore, LDL particle size and number are associated with different levels of
atherogenicity.

A reduction in HDL-cholesterol and an increase in triglycerides and LDL-
cholesterol has been associated with an increased risk of cardiovascular disease,
whereas high HDL-cholesterol is protective against atherosclerosis and is inversely
related to risk of early coronary heart disease (Packard et al 2002). Its
cardioprotective properties appear to be due to its involvement in processes such as
reverse cholesterol transport and inhibition of LDL-cholesterol oxidation
(Kwiterovich 2000). The potential for regression of atherosclerosis has been
suggested due to the ability of niacin to affect reverse cholesterol transport out of
vessel walls (Rubic et al 2004).

Furthermore, the LDL phenotype B, characterised by small, dense LDL particles, is
associated with increased atherogenicity than phenotype A and niacin increases LDL
particle size from small LDL to the less atherogenic, large LDL subclasses (Morgan et al 2004). The frequency of the LDL phenotype B increases as HDL’s decrease and triglycerides increase.

Lipoprotein (a) has been identified as an independent risk factor for premature coronary artery disease and aggravates the atherogenic effect of diabetes mellitus (Wassef 1999).

A 2002 review highlights the ability of niacin to effectively lower triglycerides, raise HDL-cholesterol, and shift LDL particles to the less atherogenic phenotype A, all important factors that reduce the risk of cardiovascular disease (Ito 2002).

**Combined therapy: statins and niacin** Although monotherapy with statin drugs (HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors) cause significant reductions in LDL-cholesterol, they provide only modest improvements in triglycerides and HDL-cholesterol. Niacin, on the other hand, provides significant reduction of triglycerides and enhancement of HDL-cholesterol levels, although reductions in LDL-cholesterol are less significant. As a result, combinations of these lipid-modifying agents will better address lipid abnormalities and improve clinical outcomes (Ito 2002, Levy & Pearson 2005).

In practice, the concurrent use of niacin with a statin has demonstrated improved outcomes in patients for whom monotherapy was unable to achieve adequate lipid control (Gardner et al 1997, Guyton & Capuzzi 1998). The combination may also slow the progression of atherosclerosis in individuals with known coronary heart disease and moderately low HDL-cholesterol (Taylor et al 2004).


Lovastatin plus extended-release niacin is comparable to atorvastatin and more effective than simvastatin in reducing LDL-cholesterol, more effective in increasing HDL-cholesterol and provides greater global improvements in non-HDL-cholesterol, triglycerides, and lipoprotein-a (Bays et al 2003). The combination is associated with good compliance and safety (Rubenfire 2004) and may also be less costly than simvastatin (Armstrong et al 2004).

In a clinical trial of diabetic patients, the addition of niacin 500 mg three times daily to pravastatin 20 mg resulted in a significant lowering of LDL-cholesterol compared with pravastatin monotherapy. Furthermore, improvements in lipid profile were gained without compromising glycaemic control (Gardner et al 1997). In a separate trial of simvastatin plus niacin among people with diabetes, glycaemic
control initially declined mildly but returned to pretreatment levels at 8 months and remained stable for the remainder of the study (Zhao et al 2004).

As early studies indicated a potential for myopathy, rhabdomyolysis and hepatotoxicity, use of the sustained-release form of niacin in combination with statins is controversial. Although current trials tend to focus on the safer extended-release form, liver function should be monitored and patients observed for symptoms of myopathy (Guyton & Capuzzi 1998).

Low-dose niacin therapy (50 mg twice daily) in combination with statins for 3 months may also significantly increase HDL-cholesterol, while avoiding the side-effects commonly associated with higher doses (Wink et al 2002).

**DIABETES**

In people with diabetes the extended-release niacin may be useful in treating diabetic dyslipidaemia (Pan et al 2002); however, research has indicated the possibility of impaired glucose regulation in patients with type 2 diabetes. In practice this may not be clinically significant (Gardner et al 1997, Guyton 2004, Meyers et al 2004, Zhao et al 2004) and the potential benefits of improved lipid control in diabetic patients for whom other lipid-lowering medications provide inadequate control may outweigh any concerns. Nevertheless, hypoglycaemic medications may need to be monitored and adjusted if necessary (Fonseca 2003).

**OTHER USES**

**SYNDROME X**

Syndrome X, also known as metabolic syndrome or insulin resistance syndrome, is a highly prevalent condition that significantly increases the risk of coronary heart disease and is associated with elevated triglycerides, low HDL-cholesterol, and LDL-cholesterol. As niacin raises HDL-cholesterol, lowers triglycerides and increases LDL-cholesterol particle size, it may be considered a useful therapeutic option for the treatment of dyslipidaemia in such cases (Ito 2004). The potential for niacin to induce insulin resistance, however, may affect its use in practice.

**PREVENTING DIABETES**

Nicotinamide has been proposed as a useful therapeutic agent for the prevention of type 1 diabetes and also as an adjunct to intensive insulin therapy (Pocoit et al 1996). Interestingly, nicotinamide has also been shown to cause insulin resistance resulting in increased insulin secretion in healthy subjects with a family history of type 1 diabetes (Greenbaum et al 1996). A concern therefore exists that monitoring such people for signs of development of the disease may be complicated by the use of nicotinamide.
Protects beta-cells Type 1 diabetes is characterised by progressive beta-cell destruction, which leads to complete insulin deficiency; at the time of diagnosis 80–90% of beta cells have been destroyed (Virtanen & Aro 1994). Nicotinamide has been shown to protect beta-cells from inflammatory insults and to improve residual beta-cell function in patients after onset of type 1 diabetes (Gale 1996, Lampeter et al 1998).

One RCT using 25 mg/kg versus 50 mg/kg nicotinamide in early onset type 1 diabetes (<4 weeks) found that both doses were likely to be effective in reducing beta-cell dysfunction. As a higher dose may cause insulin resistance, the lower dose is probably preferable (Visalli et al 1999).

Alternatively, another RCT that used slow-release nicotinamide failed to detect a reduction in diabetes incidence after 3 years (Lampeter et al 1998).

OSTEOARTHRITIS
As the generation of IL-1 in the synovium and subsequent induction of NO synthase is crucial to the pathogenesis of OA, the ability of niacinamide to suppress cytokine-mediated induction of NO synthase in a number of types of cells (McCarty & Russell 1999) provides a theoretical basis for its use in the prevention of this condition.

Positive results obtained by a randomised, double-blind placebo-controlled trial support this theory. In the study, 72 patients with OA were treated over 12 weeks with niacinamide or placebo, with active treatment improving the global impact of OA, improving joint flexibility, reducing inflammation and allowing for reduction in standard anti-inflammatory medications (Jonas et al 1996).

CANCER PREVENTION
Because niacin is required for genomic stability and a deficiency is associated with an increased risk of certain tumours, it has been suggested that niacin may reduce the risk of various cancers (Hageman & Stierum 2001).

MIGRAINE
A systematic review concluded that niacin may have beneficial effects on migraine and tension-type headaches (Prousky & Seely 2005). The effects may be mediated by vasodilation, improved mitochondrial energy metabolism, or the correction of low plasma levels of serotonin, which have been implicated in migraine pathogenesis. Niacin may act as a negative feedback regulator to shunt tryptophan into the serotonin pathway, thus increasing plasma serotonin levels (Velling et al 2003).
**ALZHEIMER’S DEMENTIA**
Dementia can be caused by severe niacin deficiency and a prospective study of 6158 people aged >65 years found that dietary niacin intake (as determined by a food frequency questionnaire) had a protective effect on the development of AD and cognitive decline (Morris et al 2004).

**OTHER CONDITIONS**
Although substantial evidence is so far lacking, niacin is also being investigated for the treatment of intermittent claudication, Raynaud’s syndrome and hypothyroidism.

**Clinical note — Patients with schizophrenia rarely experience skin-flushing side-effect**
The relative absence of skin flushing in response to niacin supplementation by patients with schizophrenia (80% vs 20%) has been attributed to a reduced pharmacological sensitivity rather than an inadequate cutaneous vasodilatory response. As the skin flush response is PG-mediated, schizophrenia may be associated with essential fatty acid deficiency or abnormalities in enzymes, receptors or signal transduction mechanisms that affect the synthesis, release or response to vasodilatory PG (Messamore 2003, Messamore et al 2003, Tavares et al 2003). Diminished sensitivity to niacin skin tests in early psychosis may predict the severity of symptoms (Smesny et al 2003, 2005).

**DOSAGE RANGE**

**AUSTRALIAN ADI**
- Women: 11 mg/day
- Men: 12 mg/day
Administration with food maximises bioavailability and minimises GI intolerance.

**HIGH BLOOD CHOLESTEROL AND TRIGLYCERIDE LEVELS**
- 1500–2000 mg pure crystalline niacin (nicotinic acid) daily — this level should be reached gradually over a period of 4–6 weeks.
- 1500–2000 mg taken once daily for extended-release preparations (best taken at night).
- Inositol hexaniacinate is often associated with less flushing (Rakel 2003).

**Clinical note — Differences between major forms of niacin supplements**
Three main forms of niacin supplements are produced, each with their own set of safety issues. Immediate-release niacin is associated with increased incidence of flushing and other adverse reactions, whereas sustained-release forms have been
associated with potential liver damage (Henkin et al 1990, McKenney 2004). In comparison, extended-release niacin has been found to have similar efficacy to immediate-release forms but results in minimal flushing, myopathy or hepatotoxicity (Guyton 2004, McKenney 2004, Pieper 2002, Yim & Chong 2003).

No-flush preparations of OTC niacin contain no free nicotinic acid and are unlikely to be effective in treating dyslipidaemia (Meyers et al 2003).

ADVERSE REACTIONS
Flush is a common side-effect of niacin therapy and may lead to discontinuation of therapy in some individuals (Rubenfire 2004). Night-time administration of extended-release niacin appears to reduce this effect, as does concurrent administration of aspirin (Mills et al 2003, White Robinson et al 2000).

Niacin has been associated with palpitations, worsening of diabetes control, exacerbation of peptic ulcer disease, gout, hepatitis (Crouse 1996), chills, generalised pruritus, gastrointestinal upset, and cutaneous tingling (Mills et al 2003).

However, reports of hepatotoxicity resulting from sustained-release niacin supplementation appear to be idiosyncratic, as there is no evidence to suggest intrinsic hepatotoxic activity; this also appears to be the case for statins (Parra & Reddy 2003).

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
STATIN DRUGS (HMG-CoA REDUCTASE INHIBITORS)
The combined use of niacin and statins, including atorvastatin (lipitor), fluvastatin (lescol), lovastatin (mevacor), pravastatin (pravachol), simvastatin (zocor), has been found to provide added therapeutic effects and reduce requirements for statin medications (Gardner et al 1996, 1997, Jacobson et al 1994, Yim & Chong 2003). A review of the combination of once daily, extended-release niacin and lovastatin therapy found that the addition of niacin may enhance or improve the lipid profile of those who require a further decrease of triglycerides, LDL-cholesterol and/or increase of HDL-cholesterol, even after stable statin therapy. The combination has been found to be safe with no increase in adverse reactions (Yim & Chong 2003) — beneficial interaction possible.

As early studies using the sustained-release form of niacin in combination with lovastatin indicated a potential for myopathy, rhabdomyolysis and hepatotoxicity, use of this form is controversial. Liver function should be monitored and patients observed for symptoms of myopathy (Guyton & Capuzzi 1998) — use sustained-release niacin with caution.
**HYPOLIPIDAEMIC AGENTS**

Several clinical studies confirm the lipid-lowering effects of vitamin B3. Although a beneficial interaction has been shown in clinical trials with statin drugs, similar additive effects are theoretically possible with other hypolipidaemic drugs — beneficial interaction possible.

**DIABETES MEDICATIONS**

Niacin may affect glycaemic control and increase fasting blood glucose levels, therefore medication doses may need to be reviewed — exercise caution and monitor drug requirements when prescribing diabetes medications concurrently with niacin.

**ANTIRETROVIRAL THERAPY**

Extended-release niacin may improve the dyslipidaemia associated with antiretroviral therapy and is considered a safe and effective therapeutic option (Gerber et al 2004) — beneficial interaction possible.

**ISONIAZID**

Prolonged isoniazid therapy (the drug replaces niacinamide in NAD) may induce pellagra (Beers and Berkow 2003). Increased vitamin B3 intake may be required with long-term therapy — beneficial interaction possible.

**ORAL CONTRACEPTIVE PILL**

Use of the OCP may reduce vitamin B3 levels (Lininger 1999). Increased vitamin B3 intake may be required with long-term therapy — beneficial interaction possible.

**TAMOXIFEN**

The addition of niacin, riboflavin, and CoQ10 to tamoxifen therapy may improve mitochondrial antioxidant status and antitumour activity (Perumal et al 2005). The exact role of niacin is unclear; however, the addition of antioxidants to tamoxifen therapy may prove advantageous — beneficial interaction possible.

**IMIPRAMINE**

A combination of imipramine with L-tryptophan 6 g/day and niacinamide 1500 mg/day has been shown to be more effective for people with bipolar disorder than imipramine alone (Chouinard et al 1979) — beneficial interaction possible.

**CONTRAINdications AND PRECAUTIONS**

Gout — excess supplementation can lead to increased production or crystallisation of uric acid (Rakel 2003).
Supplemental vitamin B3 should be used with caution in conditions involving insulin resistance, although the potential benefits may outweigh the slight increase in blood glucose. In such cases, medication requirements may need to be revised.

As early studies indicated a potential for myopathy, rhabdomyolysis and hepatotoxicity, use of the sustained-release form of niacin in combination with statins is controversial. Liver function should be monitored and patients observed for symptoms of myopathy (Guyton & Capuzzi 1998).

PREGNANCY USE
Nicotinic acid is classified as a category B2 medicine in pregnancy by the Australian Drug Evaluation Committee. (This means that it has been taken by a limited number of pregnant women and women of childbearing age without an increase in malformations or other direct or indirect harmful effects on the human fetus having been observed.)

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
• The term niacin is used interchangeably with nicotinic acid, and is also used collectively to include nicotinamide or niacinamide (the amide form of nicotinic acid).
• In practice, nicotinic acid decreases the incidence of secondary myocardial infarction and reduces total mortality incidence in these patients.
• Large doses of niacin reduce total cholesterol, LDL-cholesterol, triglycerides and lipoprotein-a levels and also markedly raise HDL-cholesterol levels.
• The extended-release form appears to have a better safety profile with reduced incidence of flushing.
• In high doses it can impair glucose regulation, resulting in insulin resistance, increased insulin secretion and increased fasting blood glucose in patients with type 2 diabetes, so care is advised when using the supplement in this group of patients. Alternatively, nicotinamide protects beta-cells from inflator damage and may improve residual beta-cell function in patients after onset of type 1 diabetes.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this vitamin do for me?
Niacin in high doses will favourably alter lipid levels and reduce the risk of cardiovascular disease, risk of heart attack and risk of death post-heart attack. It may also be useful in diabetes when used under professional supervision.

When will it start to work?
Beneficial effects on lipid levels have been seen within 4 weeks; however, several months of use may be required for optimal effects.
Are there any safety issues?
There are several different forms of niacin supplements produced; however, the extended-release form appears to have a better safety profile than the others and a reduced risk of flushing.

REFERENCES
Gardner SF et al. Combination therapy with low-dose lovastatin and niacin is as effective as higher-dose lovastatin. Pharmacotherapy 16 (1996): 419-23.
Integrative Medicine Gateway (IMG). Unity Health 2001-06. Available at: www.imggateway.net (accessed 03-06).
Kwiterovich PO Jr. The metabolic pathways of high-density lipoprotein, low-density lipoprotein, and triglycerides: a current review. Am J Cardiol 86 (12A) (2000): 5-10L.


BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS
The Greek word pantos means ‘everywhere’. As the name pantothenic acid implies, it is widely distributed and present in nearly all plant and animal foods. It is sensitive to heat and both acid and alkali and considerable amounts are lost through the milling of cereal grains. The intestine is exposed to two sources of pantothenic acid: dietary and bacterial. Current research suggests that bacterial synthesis may be more dominant and important in ruminant species (Bates 1998). Approximately 50% of pantothenic acid is absorbed in the jejunum, an amount that decreases when doses 10-fold greater than the RDI are taken (Groff & Gropper 2000).

The organ with the highest concentration of pantothenate is the liver, followed by the adrenal cortex, which reflects the large requirements of these tissues and is indicative of the biochemical role of its coenzyme derivatives. There are contrasting opinions about whether a genuine storage capacity exists for this vitamin; however, if there is any at all, the consensus is that pantothenic acid is ‘stored’ in very limited amounts and in those tissues with the greatest requirements (Groff & Gropper 2000).

Study of placental tissue demonstrates that biotin uses the same transport mechanisms as pantothenic acid, which may indicate competition between these two nutrients in other tissues (Bates 1998).

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Pantothenic acid is an amide and consists of B-alanine and pantoic acid joined by a peptide bond. In supplements, it is often found as calcium pantothenate.

FOOD SOURCES
The most concentrated sources are meats (especially liver), egg yolk, broad beans and legumes, but it is also found in many other foods such as whole grains, milk, peanuts, broccoli, avocado, mushroom and apricots. Up to 50% can be lost through cooking (Wahlqvist et al 1997).

Approximately 85% occurs in food as a component of coenzyme A (CoA), which is hydrolysed to pantothenic acid or pantethine during digestion.

DEFICIENCY SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS
Because it is so rare, most information regarding the signs and symptoms of pantothenic acid deficiency comes from experimental research in animals or cases of severe malnutrition. The deficiency picture appears to be generalised and species
Preliminary studies in humans using competitive analogues of pantothenic acid have produced the following symptoms:

- ‘burning feet syndrome’: this affects the lower legs and is characterised by sensation of heat
- cardiac instability
- gastrointestinal disturbance
- dizziness, paraesthesia and depression
- loss of immune (antibody) function
- insensitivity to adrenocorticotrophic hormone
- increased sensitivity to insulin
- vomiting
- fatigue
- weakness.

Some conditions that have been associated with increased requirements are:

- alcoholism (due to typically low intakes of vitamin B complex)
- diabetes mellitus (as a result of increased excretion)
- inflammatory bowel diseases (due to decreased vitamin absorption).

**MAIN ACTIONS**

Pantothenic acid is involved in myriad important chemical reactions in the body as a result of its involvement in CoA synthesis.

**COENZYME FUNCTION**

CoA and the Krebs cycle

Pantothenic acid is required for CoA synthesis and cellular respiration. It also plays a pivotal role in the oxidation of fatty acids and acetylation of other molecules, so as to enable transportation. Together with thiamine, riboflavin and niacin, it is involved in the oxidative decarboxylation of pyruvate and alpha-ketoglutarate in the Krebs cycle and, ultimately, is important for energy storage as well as release.

**Acyl carrier protein**

Pantothenic acid is the prosthetic group for acyl carrier protein and, therefore, is involved in the synthesis of fatty acids.

**Indirect antioxidant effects**

New in vitro research supports an indirect antioxidant role for pantothenic acid through its ability to increase cellular ATP, which in turn creates increased levels of free glutathione and enhanced protection of cells against peroxidative damage (Slyshenkov et al 2004).

**Other functions**

It is involved in the synthesis of amino acids, sterols (e.g. cholesterol) and vitamin D. It is necessary for production of the neurotransmitter acetylcholine and the formation of red cells. Vitamin B5 plays an important role in
adrenal function and, as CoA, is needed for proper adrenal cortex function and the synthesis of steroid hormones.

**Clinical Note — Could pantothenic acid be an anti-ageing nutrient?**
A contemporary theory of ageing implicates mitochondrial functional decline or ‘oxidative decay’ of the mitochondria as a major contributor. In light of this hypothesis, nutrients that possess a critical role in the mitochondria are being re-examined to determine their ability to prevent ageing in humans. The focus has been on pantothenic acid, biotin, lipoic acid, iron and zinc because deficiencies of these micronutrients have been implicated in increased mitochondrial oxidation (Ames et al 2005, Atamna 2004). In addition, those with antioxidant capabilities are of particular interest, such as pantothenic acid, lipoic acid and zinc.

Due to the numerous nutrients implicated in mitochondrial health and disease, a broad-based multivitamin should be considered instead of a single nutrient supplement for those populations at increased risk of poor nutrition such as the elderly, young, poor and obese (Ames et al 2005).

**LIPID-LOWERING**
Pantethine, a metabolite of pantothenic acid, has been investigated in several clinical studies and found to exert significant lipid-lowering activity (Coronel et al 1991, Donati et al 1986, Gaddi et al 1984).

The mechanism of action relates to reduced insulin resistance and activation of lipolysis in serum and adipose tissue, according to in vivo research (Naruta & Buko 2001). Additionally, inhibition of HMG-CoA reductase, as well as more distal enzymes in the cholesterol synthetic pathway, are likely to be responsible (McCarty 2001). More recently, an in vitro study demonstrated that pantethine produced a 50% inhibition of fatty acid synthesis and an 80% inhibition of cholesterol synthesis (McRae 2005).

**ENHANCES WOUND HEALING**
Both oral supplements and topical applications have been shown to accelerate closure of wounds and increase strength of scar tissue in vivo (Plesofsky 2002, Vaxman et al 1990). Both in vitro and in vivo studies reveal that topical dexamethasone induces activation of fibroblast proliferation, which contributes to accelerated re-epithelisation in wound healing (Ebner et al 2002).

**CLINICAL USE**
Although pantothenic acid has been investigated in some studies, most investigation has occurred with several of its derivatives, chiefly an alcoholic analogue of

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
pantothenic acid called dexpanthenol (available commercially as Bepanthen) and pantethine.

**DEFICIENCY STATES: PREVENTION AND TREATMENT**

Traditionally, pantothenic acid is recommended together with other vitamin B complex nutrients to treat general deficiency or prevent deficiency in conditions associated with deficiency such as alcoholism, diabetes mellitus and malabsorption syndromes.

**ENHANCE WOUND HEALING**

Pantothenic acid has been both used as an oral supplement and applied topically in a cream base to enhance wound healing and it has been shown to accelerate closure of wounds and increase strength of scar tissue in experimental animals (Plesofsky 2002, Vaxman et al 1990). Although these results are encouraging, there has been little investigation in humans. One double-blind study testing the effects of vitamin C (1000 mg) and pantothenic acid (200 mg) supplements over a 21-day period showed no significant alteration to wound healing with this treatment regimen (Vaxman et al 1995).

**Topical use**  
Bepanthen is a well-known dermatological preparation containing dexpanthenol, an alcoholic analogue of pantothenic acid. It has been investigated in numerous studies and found to act like a moisturiser, activate fibroblast proliferation, accelerate re-epithelialisation in wound healing, have anti-inflammatory activity against UV-induced erythema and reduce itch (Ebner et al 2002). Under double-blind study conditions, epidermal wounds treated with dexpanthenol emulsion showed a reduction in erythema, and more elastic and solid tissue regeneration. Another randomised, prospective, double-blind, placebo-controlled study published in 2003 investigated the efficacy of topical dexpanthenol as a skin protectant against irritation. The study involved 25 healthy volunteers who were treated with a topical preparation containing 5% dexpanthenol or placebo and then exposed to sodium lauryl sulphate 2% twice daily over 26 days. Treatment with topical dexpanthenol provided protection against skin irritation whereas a statistically significant deterioration was observed in the placebo group (Biro et al 2003).

Although commonly used in radiotherapy departments to ameliorate acute radiotherapy skin reactions, a prospective study of 86 patients undergoing radiotherapy showed that topical use of Bepanthen did not improve skin reactions under these conditions (Lokkevik et al 1996). Similarly, negative results were also obtained in an animal study by Dorr et al (2005).
**Nasal spray**  A RCT of 48 outpatients diagnosed with rhinitis sicca anterior found that dexpanthenol nasal spray is an effective symptomatic treatment for this condition (Kehrl & Sonnemann 1998). Two years later, another RCT compared the effects of xylometazoline-dexpanthenol nasal spray versus xylometazoline nasal spray over a 2-week period in 61 patients with rhinitis after nasal surgery (Kehrl & Sonnemann 2000) and showed that the combination of xylometazoline-dexpanthenol nasal spray was significantly superior to the other treatment and well tolerated.

More recent studies support this emerging trend and point towards a reduction in ciliary and cytotoxic effects from the nasal decongestants when 5% dexpanthenol is concurrently administered (Klocker et al 2003).

**ELEVATED CHOLESTEROL AND TRIGLYCERIDE LEVELS**

Pantethine, a metabolite of pantothenic acid, has been investigated in several clinical studies and found to exert significant lipid-lowering activity (Coronel et al 1991, Donati et al 1986, Gaddi et al 1984).

One double-blind study of 29 patients found that 300 mg of pantethine taken three times daily resulted in significant reductions to plasma total cholesterol, LDL-cholesterol, triglycerides and an increase in HDL-C levels (Gaddi et al 1984).

A 2005 review analysed results from 28 clinical trials encompassing a pooled population of 646 hyperlipidaemic patients supplemented with a mean dose of 900 mg pantethine over an average trial length of 12.7 weeks. The results of these studies suggest a response to pantethine that is time dependent, with reductions in LDL-cholesterol and triacylglycerols progressively increasing between month 1 and 9. The most impressive results were observed at 9 months, with a reduction of total cholesterol by 20.5%, LDL-cholesterol by 27.6% and triacylglycerols by 36.5% from baseline. Although minor increases were observed in HDL levels in the early stages of most trials, longer term studies suggested this is not sustained.

Of the trials studied, 22 were conducted in Italy and all were conducted between 1981 and 1991. The authors point out that no further clinical trials were published and concluded that evidence to date has yielded positive and promising results and further research is warranted.

**OTHER USES**

Pantothenic acid has been used for many other indications, but controlled studies to determine whether treatment is effective are lacking.
STRESS
As vitamin B5 is essential for adrenal cortex function and the synthesis of steroid hormones, it is often used together with other B vitamins during times of ‘stress’ in order to improve the body’s response and restore nutrient levels. Interestingly there were a large number of experiments conducted in the 1950s, attempting to elicit the impact of pantothenic acid deficiency on adrenal function and stress response in animals; however, little research has been done since. A small study demonstrated that injections of pantothenic acid in B5-deficient rats were corrective of the deficiency picture and had a steroidogenous effect.

INFLAMMATORY CONDITIONS
Pantothenic acid has been used as adjunctive treatment in inflammatory conditions, such as asthma and dermatitis, under the basis of improving adrenal cortex output of hormones with anti-inflammatory activity.

ERGOCENIC AID
Based on this vitamin’s role in carbohydrate metabolism, it has been used to increase stamina and athletic performance.

REDUCING DRUG TOXICITY
Preliminary research in animal models shows that pantothenic acid reduces the toxicity effects of kanamycin and carbon tetrachloride, and when combined with carnitine, protects against valproate toxicity (Moiseenok et al 1984, Nagiel-Ostaszewski & Lau-Cam 1990, Thurston & Hauhart 1992).

FEMALE ALOPECIA
According to a study of 46 women with symptoms of diffuse alopecia, calcium pantothenate (200 mg/day) over 4–5 months does not cause a significant improvement in this condition (Brzezinska-Wcislo 2001).

DOSAGE RANGE
AUSTRALIAN ADI
- Women: 4 mg/day
- Men: 6 mg/day

ACCORDING TO CLINICAL STUDIES
- Wound healing: dexpanthenol cream 5% applied to affected areas up to two times daily.
- Lipid-lowering: pantethine 300 mg three times daily.
TOXICITY
No toxicity level known.

ADVERSE REACTIONS
Pantothenic acid is well tolerated, but contact dermatitis has been reported for topical dexpanthenol.

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS

ANTIBIOTICS
Antibiotics will reduce endogenous production of vitamin B5 by gastrointestinal flora — increase vitamin B5 rich foods or consider supplementation.

ORAL CONTRACEPTIVES
Taking the OCP may increase the requirement for pantothenic acid — increase vitamin B5 rich foods or consider supplementation (Plesofsky 2002).

CONTRAINdications AND PRECAUTIONS
None known

PREGNANCY USE
Considered safe when ingested at usual dietary doses.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
• Deficiency is extremely rare as pantothenic acid is widely distributed and present in nearly all plant and animal foods. Those at risk of reduced vitamin status are alcoholics, diabetics and people with malabsorption syndromes.
• Pantethine reduces total cholesterol levels significantly, according to controlled studies in both healthy and diabetic people.
• Dexpanthenol cream acts like a moisturiser, activates fibroblast proliferation, accelerates re-epithelialisation in wound healing, has anti-inflammatory activity against UV-induced erythema and reduces itch. When used in a nasal spray, it reduces symptoms of rhinitis.
• Vitamin B5 supplements are commonly used together with other B vitamins during times of ‘stress’ in order to improve the body’s response and restore nutrient levels.
• It has also been used as adjunctive treatment for inflammatory conditions such as dermatitis and asthma, as an ergogenic aid, to treat alopecia and restore colour to greying hair, although no controlled studies are available to determine effectiveness in these conditions.
**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

**What will this vitamin do for me?**
Vitamin B5 is essential for health and is used for many different conditions, for example, it is often used as part of a vitamin B complex supplement to aid the body during times of ‘stress’. For many uses, research is not available to determine whether it is effective. Research generally supports its use in wound healing and in the form of pantethine, to reduce cholesterol levels.

**When will it start to work?**
Pantethine reduces cholesterol levels within 2 months; however, optimal results are achieved with 9 months of supplementation. Xylometazoline-dexpanthenol nasal spray reduces symptoms of rhinitis within 2 weeks. It is not known how quickly the vitamin starts to work in most other conditions.

**Are there any safety issues?**
Pantothenic acid and pantethine are considered safe substances and generally well tolerated.

**REFERENCES**
**Vitamin B6**

**BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS**
Absorption of vitamin B6, also known as pyridoxine, takes place in the jejunum by a passive, non-saturable process. It is transported in the plasma and red blood cells to the liver, where it is converted to pyridoxal 5’-phosphate, and is then available to other tissues. It is mainly stored in muscle tissue, and ultimately metabolised and excreted via the kidneys.

**CHEMICAL COMPONENTS**
Vitamin B6 is a water-soluble vitamin and has six forms, of which pyridoxine hydrochloride is the main form found in supplements and used to fortify foods.

**FOOD SOURCES**
Vitamin B6 is widely distributed in animal and plant foods. The best food sources are fish, organ meats, legumes, wheatgerm, eggs, nuts, potatoes and bananas. Per milligram, Vegemite is one of the richest sources.

Up to 40% can be lost through cooking (Wahlqvist et al 1997).

**DEFICIENCY SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS**
Clinical signs and symptoms are non-specific because this vitamin is necessary for the proper functioning of over 60 enzymes (Pelton et al 1999, Wahlqvist et al 1997). Chiefly, dermatological, circulatory and neurological changes develop with vitamin B6 deficiency.

- Dermatitis (similar to that seen in pellagra).
- Angular stomatitis and glossitis and cheilosis.
- Sideroblastic anaemia.
- Impaired antibody production.
- Renal calculi.
- Elevated homocysteine levels (Lakshmi & Ramalakshmi 1998).
- CNS effects such as irritability, confusion, lethargy, clinical depression, elevated seizure activity (particularly in children), abnormal brain wave patterns and nerve conduction.
- Birth defects such as cleft palate (associated with elevated homocysteine) (Weingaertner et al 2005)

Pyridoxine deficiency has also been associated with premature coronary artery disease and with impaired oxidative defence mechanisms (Miner et al 2001).
**PRIMARY DEFICIENCY**
Primary deficiency is rare because this vitamin is widely available in many foods.

**SECONDARY DEFICIENCY**
This may result from malabsorption syndromes, cancer, liver cirrhosis and alcoholism, hyperthyroidism, congestive heart failure or medicine use, such as OCP, isoniazid, hydralazine, penicillamine, theophylline or MAO inhibitors (Beers & Berkow 2003, Bratman & Kroll 2000, Wardlaw et al 1997).

**Clinical note — Marginal B6 deficiency**
Although frank deficiency is rare, marginal deficiency appears to be common. One study found that 100% of 174 university students tested had some degree of vitamin B6 deficiency (Shizukuishi et al 1981). A larger survey of 11,658 adults found that 71% of males and 90% of females did not meet the RDI requirements for B6 (Kant & Block 1990).

**MAIN ACTIONS**

**COENZYME**
Vitamin B6 is an important coenzyme in the biosynthesis of the neurotransmitters GABA, dopamine and serotonin (Gerster 1996). It is also involved in protein metabolism, haemoglobin synthesis, gluconeogenesis, lipid metabolism, niacin formation, immune system processes, nucleic acid synthesis and hormone modulation (Bratman & Kroll 2000, Wardlaw et al 1997).

**Homocysteine**  Homocysteine is formed from the essential amino acid methionine and about 50% is then remethylated to methionine via steps that require folic acid and vitamin B12. Vitamin B6 is required for another metabolic pathway and is a cofactor for cystathionine beta-synthase, which mediates the transformation of homocysteine to cystathionine (Wilcken & Wilcken 1998).

**Serotonin**  Pyridoxine is required for the synthesis of many neurotransmitters, including serotonin. It is a cofactor for the enzyme 5-hydroxytryptophan decarboxylase, which is involved in one of the steps that converts tryptophan to serotonin (Pelton et al 1999). As such, deficiency states are associated with alterations to mood and other psychological disturbances.

**CLINICAL USE**
Vitamin B6 supplementation is used to treat a large variety of conditions and is mostly prescribed in combination with other B group vitamins.

**DEFICIENCY**
Vitamin B6 is traditionally used to treat vitamin B6 deficiency states.
**PREMENSTRUAL SYNDROME**
Vitamin B6 supplementation is used in doses beyond RDI levels for the treatment of PMS. A 1999 systematic review of nine clinical trials involving 940 patients with PMS support this use, finding that doses up to 100 mg/day are likely to be of benefit in treating symptoms and PMS-related depression (Wyatt et al 1999).

**Comparative study**  One randomised double-blind study compared the effects of pyridoxine (300 mg/day), alprazolam (0.75 mg/day), fluoxetine (10 mg/day) or propranolol (20 mg/day) in four groups of 30 women with severe PMS (Diegoli et al 1998). In this study, fluoxetine produced the best results (a mean reduction of 65.4% in symptoms) followed by propranolol (58.7%), alprazolam (55.6%), pyridoxine (45.3%) and placebo (39.4–46.1%). Symptoms responding well to pyridoxine were tachycardia, insomnia, acne and nausea (Diegoli et al 1998).

**MORNING SICKNESS**
A 2000 Cochrane review of 23 randomised trials investigating all treatments for morning sickness concluded that pyridoxine significantly reduces the severity of morning sickness (Jewell & Young 2002).

**HEART DISEASE**
**Elevated homocysteine levels**  Elevated fasting plasma concentrations of homocysteine have a high prevalence in subjects with cardiovascular disease and have also been associated with an increased risk of atherothrombosis in most, but not all, prospective studies (van Guldener & Stehouwer 2001). Clinical studies have found that supplementation with vitamin B6 significantly reduces plasma homocysteine concentrations (Lakshmi & Ramalakshmi 1998). In practice, pyridoxine is typically recommended together with folic acid and vitamin B12.

**Improving outcomes after heart transplantation**  Cardiac transplantation represents a potentially life-saving procedure for patients with end-stage cardiac disease. Short-term survival is improving because of improved immunosuppression, but long-term survival remains limited by an aggressive form of atherosclerosis known as transplant coronary artery disease (Miner et al 2001).

Hyperhomocysteinaemia is one of several factors implicated in the development of this state as it is common in cardiac transplant recipients. As such, tests with B group vitamins have started. A randomised, double-blind placebo-controlled study showed that pyridoxine supplementation (100 mg/day) taken for 10 weeks improved endothelial function as assessed by flow-mediated dilatation in cardiac transplant recipients (Miner et al 2001). Interestingly, homocysteine levels remained unchanged with treatment, suggesting other mechanisms are responsible.
CARPAL TUNNEL SYNDROME
It has been suspected that vitamin B6 deficiency may play a role in the development of carpal tunnel syndrome (CTS) as several studies have found that patients with CTS and pyridoxine deficiency respond to supplementation (Ellis et al 1991). Although these observations are encouraging, a 2002 review found no benefit with pyridoxine treatment in CTS (Gerritsen et al 2002).

AUTISM
High-dose pyridoxine and magnesium supplementation is a popular nutritional treatment in autism, although current evidence is contradictory. A critical analysis of 12 published studies concluded that evidence generally supports the efficacy of vitamin treatment; however, there were methodological shortcomings inherent in many of the studies (Pfeiffer et al 1995). In contrast, a small, 10-week, double-blind placebo-controlled trial found that an average dose of 638.9 mg pyridoxine and 216.3 mg magnesium oxide was ineffective in ameliorating autistic behaviours (Findling et al 1997).

REDUCING THE INCIDENCE OF REPEATED CONVULSIONS DURING A FEBRILE EPISODE
Two randomised trials have been conducted in children, producing conflicting results. One study of 65 children who had been admitted to hospital with febrile convulsions showed that a dose of 2–10 mg/kg pyridoxal phosphate daily (PO or IV) produced a 100% success rate, whereas 43% in the control group experienced repeated convulsions (Kamiishi et al 1996). A second randomised trial found that a lower dose of 20 mg twice daily did not alter the incidence of febrile convulsions compared with placebo (McKiernan et al 1981).

SYMPTOMATIC TREATMENT FOR ‘STRESS’
The term ‘stress’, as used by the public, is a subjective one and often described in different ways. One theoretical model that has been developed to predict psychological ‘stress’ includes measures of life stressors, social support and coping style. Using this model, pyridoxine deficiency has been identified as a significant predictor of increased overall psychological stress during bereavement. More specifically, pyridoxine deficiency is significantly associated with increases in depression, fatigue and confused mood levels, but not with those of anxiety, anger or vigour (Baldewicz et al 1998).

One explanation is that pyridoxine is involved in neurotransmitter biosynthesis, such as GABA and serotonin, and therefore deficiency states are associated with
mood disturbances that are improved with consequent supplementation (McCarty 2000).

**RHEUMATOID ARTHRITIS**
As inflammation reduces vitamin B6 levels (Chiang et al 2005a), a placebo-controlled clinical trial of 36 adults with RA were given 50 mg of pyridoxine hydrochloride for 30 days. Inflammation did not reduce, but the plasma levels of vitamin B6 did increase (Chiang et al 2005a), suggesting that inflammation may reduce levels of vitamin B6 but low levels may not cause inflammation.

**OTHER USES**
Vitamin B6 supplements have also been used to prevent diabetic retinopathy, kidney stones and to treat symptoms of tardive dyskinesia, vertigo, allergy to monosodium glutamate, asthma, schizophrenia and photosensitivity. Supplements have also been used as an adjunct to the OCP, to relieve mood disturbances and restore vitamin status.

**DREAM STATES**
Many have suspected that pyridoxine supplements taken at night are able to influence dream states and sleep, causing disruption in some people. The results of a 2002 double-blind, placebo-controlled crossover study support this observation (Ebben et al 2002). Pyridoxine supplementation (250 mg) taken before bedtime was shown to significantly influence dream-salience scores (a composite score containing measures on vividness, bizarreness, emotionality and colour) starting on the first night of treatment.

**DOSAGE RANGE**
- Prevention of deficiency: Australian RDI for adults and children >8 years: 1–1.7 mg/day.
- Treatment of deficiency: 5–25 mg/day.
- Morning sickness: 30–75 mg/day, sometimes taken as 25 mg three times daily.
- Symptoms of PMS: 100–500 mg/day.
- Elevated homocysteine levels: 100 mg/day.
- Carpal tunnel syndrome: 100–200 mg/day.

**TOXICITY**
Symptoms of toxicity include paraesthesia, hyperaesthesia, bone pain, muscle weakness, numbness and fasciculation, most marked at the extremities (Dalton & Dalton 1987, Diegoli et al 1998).
The dose and time frame at which toxicity occurs varies significantly between individuals. Studies involving large population groups using 100–150 mg/day have shown minimal or no toxicity in 5- to 10-year studies, whereas women self-medicating for PMS taking 117 ± 92 mg for 2.9 ± 1.9 years have reported increased incidence in peripheral neuropathy in others (Bernstein 1990, Dalton & Dalton 1987).

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**
Pyridoxine is considered non-toxic, although nausea and vomiting, headache, paraesthesia, sleepiness and low serum folic acid levels have been reported.

Supplements taken at night-time may result in more vivid dreams and, for some individuals, disrupted sleep (Ebben et al 2002).

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**

**AMIODARONE**
Pyridoxine may increase the risk of drug-induced photosensitivity — caution with patients taking pyridoxine and amiodarone concurrently.

**ANTIBIOTICS**

Destruction of gastrointestinal flora can decrease endogenous production of vitamin B6 — increase intake of vitamin B6 rich foods or consider supplementation with long-term drug treatment.

**HYDRALAZINE**

Hydralazine may induce B6 deficiency according to a clinical study — increased intake may be required with long-term drug therapy.

**ISONIAZID**
Isoniazid increases vitamin B6 requirements — increase intake of vitamin B6 rich foods or consider supplementation with long-term drug treatment.

**L-DOPA (WITHOUT CARBIDOPA)**
Pyridoxine may reduce drug efficacy — monitor for drug effectiveness and observe.

**ORAL CONTRACEPTIVES**

Oral contraceptives increase vitamin B6 requirements — increase intake of vitamin B6 rich foods or consider supplementation with long-term drug treatment.

**PENICILLAMINE**
This drug increases vitamin B6 requirements — increase intake of vitamin B6 rich foods or consider supplementation.
**PHENOBARBITAL, PHENYTOIN**
Vitamin B6 supplements may lower plasma levels and efficacy of these drugs — monitor for drug effectiveness, and exercise caution when these drugs are being taken concurrently.

**THEOPHYLLINE**
May induce pyridoxine deficiency — increased intake may be required with long term drug therapy.

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**
Monitor long-term use of high-dose pyridoxine supplements (>100 mg although this level varies between individuals).

**PREGNANCY USE**
Pyridoxine supplements are commonly used during pregnancy to reduce symptoms of morning sickness, suggesting safety when used in appropriate doses.

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**
- Vitamin B6 is available in many foods, however suboptimal, but several surveys suggest that inadequate intakes are common.
- Deficiency can manifest with psychological symptoms of depression, irritability and confusion and physical symptoms of lethargy, dermatitis, angular stomatitis, glossitis and impaired immunity.
- Overall, clinical research supports the use of vitamin B6 supplements in relieving mild to moderate symptoms of PMS (particularly breast tenderness and mood disturbance), nausea in pregnancy and as a treatment for hyperhomocysteinaemia.
- There is conflicting evidence as to whether vitamin B6 supplements improve symptoms of carpal tunnel syndrome, autism (together with magnesium) and prevent febrile convulsions in children.
- Pyridoxine should not be used in high doses long term, as this can induce toxicity.

**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**
What will this vitamin do for me?
Vitamin B6 is essential for the body’s normal functioning. It has been used to treat many different conditions; however, scientific evidence generally supports its use in only a few conditions (e.g. morning sickness, mild to moderate PMS and elevated homocysteine levels).
When will it start to work?
This will depend on the indication being treated. In regard to PMS symptoms, 2–3 cycles may be required, whereas effects can be seen within 2–3 days for morning sickness.

Are there any safety issues?
High doses should not be taken long term, as this can cause toxicity.

REFERENCES

© 2007 Elsevier Australia


Vitamin B12

BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS
Vitamin B12 (cobalamin) is a water-soluble vitamin obtained mostly from animal protein products in the diet. In the stomach gastric acid is required to liberate protein-bound cobalamin, which is then immediately bound to R-binders (glycoproteins) that protect it from being denatured. When the contents of the stomach reach the duodenum the R-binders are partially digested by pancreatic proteases, releasing them to bind to intrinsic factor (a glycoprotein), which is secreted by the parietal cells of the gastric mucosa. This complex is then absorbed in the terminal ileum and transported to cells, where it carries out its metabolic function, or to the liver, where it is stored until required (FAO/WHO 2002, Oh & Brown 2003). An alternative method of absorption, which is independent of intrinsic factor, also appears to exist and accounts for the absorption of approximately 1% of large oral doses (> 300 µg) of B12 (Elia 1998). Absorption via intrinsic factor is limited to about 1.5–2.0 µg/meal owing to limited receptor capacity (FAO/WHO 2002).

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Vitamin B12 is the largest of the B vitamins and is a complex structure containing a central cobalt atom. There are five forms of B12: cyanocobalamin (a synthetic form that has a cyanide attached to the cobalt), hydroxycobalamin (hydroxyl group attached to the cobalt; it is produced for parenteral administration), aquacobalamin (water group bound to the cobalt) and the coenzymatically active forms (methylcobalamin and 5-deoxyadenosylcobalamin), in which a methyl group or a 5-deoxyadenosyl group is bound to the cobalt atom (FAO/WHO 2002, Freeman et al 1999).

FOOD SOURCES
Lambs liver, sardines, oysters, egg yolk, fish, beef, kidney, cheese and milk. Up to 10% is lost in cooking (Wahlqvist 2002).

Plants do not contain B12 because they have no cobalamin-dependent enzymes (Croft et al 2005). Most microorganisms, including bacteria and algae, synthesise B12, which then makes its way into the food chain (FAO/WHO 2002). Human intestinal bacteria also synthesise B12, but this is not absorbed to any considerable extent (Wahlqvist 2002). Vegans living in situations with more stringent hygiene are therefore more likely to develop deficiencies.
Clinical note — Nori: a source for vegetarians
Rat studies have demonstrated improvements in B12 status following the ingestion of nori (seaweed). Nori is said to contain as much B12 as liver (Croft et al 2005) approximately 55–59 µg/100 g dry weight. Five different biologically active vitamin B12 compounds have been identified in nori: cyanocobalamin, hydroxycobalamin, sulfitecobalamin, adenosylcobalamin and methylcobalamin (Takenaka et al 2001); the source of B12 appears to be bacteria (Croft et al 2005).

DEFICIENCY SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS
Vitamin B12 deficiencies manifest primarily as haematological and neurological disturbances, and are estimated to affect 10–15% of individuals over the age of 60 years (Baik & Russell 1999):

- Haemotological: macrocytic (megaloblastic) anaemia, pancytopenia (leukopenia, thrombocytopenia); symptoms may include lethargy, dyspnoea, anorexia, weight loss and pallor (Wahlqvist 2002).
- Neurological disturbances: paraesthesias, optic neuropathy (reversible), peripheral neuropathy and demyelination of the corticospinal tract and dorsal columns (subacute combined systems disease).
- Psychological disturbances: impaired memory, irritability, depression, personality change, dementia and psychosis (Lee 1999, Lindenbaum et al 1988).
- Various gastrointestinal symptoms can also develop, such as loss of appetite, intermittent constipation and diarrhoea, glossitis and abdominal pain.
- Folic acid supplementation may mask an underlying B12 deficiency, leading to the progression of neurological symptoms.

PRIMARY DEFICIENCY
People at risk are those living in India, Central and South America, and selected areas in Africa (Stabler & Allen 2004), strict vegetarians and vegans, breastfed infants of vegetarian mothers with low B12 stores, elderly patients with ‘tea and toast diets’ and chronic alcoholics. As vitamin B12 is stored to a considerable extent, even after complete depletion of food-ingested cobalamin, clinically relevant deficiencies will usually only develop after 5–10 years (Schenk et al 1999). This time frame increases to an average of approximately 18 years in strict vegetarians when intrinsic factor secretion is intact (Babior 1996). In this case, some enterohepatic recycling of cobalamin should occur in the distal ileum (Howden 2000).
**SECONDARY DEFICIENCY**

Vitamin B12 deficiency is more likely to result from inadequate absorption, defects in vitamin B12 metabolism or gastrointestinal disorders than a lack of dietary intake.

- Pernicious anaemia: an autoimmune condition affecting gastric parietal cells that produce intrinsic factor; common cause of megaloblastic anaemia, especially in persons of European or African descent (Stabler & Allen 2004).
- Methylmalonic acidemia: inherited defect in B12 metabolism.
- Congenital absence of transcobalamin II.
- Medications that reduce gastric acidity (e.g. H₂ blockers and PPI).
- Atrophic gastritis/gastric atrophy: probably due to a decrease in acid output and intrinsic factor production (Schenk et al 1999). Gastric atrophy is more common in the elderly.
- Intestinal resection of the part of the ileum where absorption takes place or gastric resection, which affects the parietal cells and in turn production of intrinsic factor.
- Achlorhydria (Teranini et al 1998).
- Pancreatic insufficiency: the cobalamin-R-protein complex is split by pancreatic enzymes in the duodenum (Festen et al 1991).
- Ileal dysfunction (Howden 2000): may affect absorption at this site.
- Crohn’s disease, irritable bowel disease, coeliac disease: reduced absorption.
- Bacteria and parasites in the intestine may also compete for B12.
- Radiotherapy for rectal cancer: causes a rapid and persistent decrease in B12 status as reflected by reduced serum B12 combined with increased serum methylmalonic acid (MMA) (Gronlie Guren et al 2004).

The elderly deserve a separate mention as a population at risk of deficiency because of both primary and secondary causes, such as poor dietary intakes, failure to separate vitamin B12 from food protein, inadequate absorption, utilisation and storage, as well as drug–food interactions leading to malabsorption and metabolic inactivation (Bradford & Taylor 1999, Dharmarajan et al 2003). Subtle signs of deficiency may include lethargy, weight loss and dementia (Dharmarajan et al 2003).

**Clinical note — Testing for vitamin B12 deficiency**

Numerous studies have indicated that serum B12 levels are an inadequate guide to B12 status (Briddon 2003, Carmel 1988, Kapadia 2000, Karnaze & Carmel 1990, Teranini et al 1998). The use of this test has led to poorly defined reference intervals for serum B12 (Briddon 2003), potentially delaying the diagnosis and allowing the progression of B12 deficiency. Approximately 50% of patients with subclinical disease have normal serum B12 levels and older patients present with neurological and psychiatric symptoms without haematological findings. In ad-
dation, use of the OCP may also affect test results (Bor 2004). As a result, this method of testing has lost favour as an adequate measure of B12 status. A combination of two tests appears to be more conclusive. Elevated levels of total homocysteine in serum and plasma reflects deficiencies of either folate or B12. MMA is a more specific marker of cobalamin function, but renal insufficiency may affect the results of this test. Therefore, a combination of the two is probably the clearest indicator (Bjorke Monsen & Ueland 2003, FAQ/WHO 2002, Kapadia 2000). Preliminary evidence also suggests that overnight fasting urinary MMA concentrations correlate strongly with serum MMA; however, further investigations are required to confirm the application of this test in various populations (Kwok et al 2004). While the use of such markers may improve the assessment of B12 deficiency, establishing the cause of deficiency should also be part of the diagnostic approach (Schneede & Ueland 2005).

Elevated levels of serum cobalamin may be a sign of a serious, even life-threatening, disease such as chronic myelogeneous leukaemia, promyelocytic leukaemia, polycythaemia vera, hypereosinophilic syndrome, acute hepatitis, cirrhosis, hepatocellular carcinoma and metastatic liver disease. Elevated B12 levels, therefore, warrant a full diagnostic work up to assess the presence of disease (Ermens et al 2003).

**MAIN ACTIONS**

**IMPORTANT COFACTOR**

Vitamin B12 is essential for the normal function of all cells. It affects cell growth and replication, the metabolism of carbohydrates, lipids and protein and is involved in fatty acid and nucleic acid synthesis. It is also involved in the production of red blood cells in bone marrow, and activates folacin coenzymes for red blood cell production.

**Homocysteine reduction** Methylcobalamin aids in the conversion of homocysteine to methionine by the action of methionine synthase, transferring a methyl group from methylfolate (folic acid).

After conversion from homocysteine, methionine is then converted to S-adenosyl-L-methionine (SAMe), important for methylation reactions and protein synthesis. An increase in homocysteine levels and decrease in SAMe levels has been implicated in depression and may also contribute to the neurological symptoms seen in pernicious anaemia (IMG 2003).

**Nervous system** Vitamin B12 is involved in the synthesis of protein structures in the myelin sheath and nerve cells. As methylation is required for the production of myelin basic protein, a reduction in B12 and SAMe will result in demyelination of
peripheral nerves and the spinal column (subacute combined degeneration) (FAO/WHO 2002).

**Immune system** Vitamin B12 acts as an immunomodulator for cellular immunity (Tamura et al 1999).

**CLINICAL USE**

Vitamin B12 supplementation is administered using various routes such as intravenous and oral doses. This review will focus on oral supplementation as this is the form generally used by the public and available OTC.

**DEFICIENCY: TREATMENT AND PREVENTION**

Traditionally, vitamin B12 supplementation has been used to treat deficiency or prevent deficiency in conditions such as pernicious anaemia and atrophic gastritis, but special consideration should be given to the elderly who are at high risk.

**Pernicious anaemia** Pernicious anaemia is caused by a deficiency of intrinsic factor leading to malabsorption of vitamin B12. Signs and symptoms include pallor, glossitis, weakness and neurological symptoms including paraesthesias of the hands and feet, decreased deep-tendon reflexes and loss of sensory perception and motor controls (neurological symptoms may be irreversible). In more progressed conditions confusion, memory loss, moodiness, psychosis and delusional behaviour may be present. Achlorhydria and gastric mucosal atrophy may also occur, further complicating the condition.

Uncomplicated pernicious anaemia is characterised by mild or moderate megaloblastic anaemia without leukopenia, thrombocytopenia or neurologic symptoms. In more advanced cases urgent parenteral administration of vitamin B12 and folic acid (typically 100 µg of cyanocobalamin and 1–5 mg of folic acid) is given intramuscularly, as well as blood transfusions.

**Elderly** Vitamin B12 deficiency is common in the elderly, with estimates as high as 43% (Wolters et al 2004). Poor vitamin B12 status has been associated with vascular disease, depression, impaired cognitive performance and dementia. Elderly patients (>60 years) should be monitored for evidence of B12 deficiency (a minimum threshold of 220–258 pmol/L [300–350 pg/mL] is desirable in the elderly) and general supplementation with vitamin B12 (>50 µg/day) should be considered (Wolters et al 2004). Significantly higher doses may be required to correct deficiency. A randomised, parallel-group, double-blind, dose-finding trial found that the lowest dose of oral cyanocobalamin required to normalise mild vitamin B12 deficiency in the elderly is 647–1032 µg/day, more than 200-fold the recommended dietary allowance (Eussen et al 2005).
Clinical note — Oral forms are effective
Vitamin B12 is often given parenterally as an intramuscular injection, based on the understanding that oral doses will not be efficacious in cases of malabsorption. There is now considerable evidence that oral vitamin B12 therapy is comparable in efficacy to parenteral therapy, even when intrinsic factor is not present or in other diseases affecting absorption (Andres et al 2005a, b, Bolaman et al 2003, Delpre et al 1999, Kuzminska et al 1998, Lederle 1991, Nyholm 2003, Oh & Brown 2003, Roth & Orija 2004; Vidal-Alaball et al 2005). A recent Cochrane review suggests 2000 µg/day of oral vitamin B12 or 1000 µg initially daily then weekly and monthly may be as effective as intramuscular injections in obtaining short term haematological and neurological responses in vitamin B12-deficient patients (Vidal-Alaball et al 2005). As rare cases of anaphylaxis may occur with parenteral administration, oral therapy is also considered a safer option with improved cost and compliance (Bilwani et al 2005, Bolaman et al 2003). At doses of 500 µg/day correction of serum B12 levels is likely to occur within 1 week to 1 month, with correction of haematological abnormalities after at least 3 months (Andres et al 2005b).

HYPERHOMOCYSTEINAEMIA
Together with folic acid and vitamin B6, vitamin B12 has been shown to reduce high plasma levels of homocysteine, which has been proposed as an independent risk factor for cardiovascular disease (including atherosclerosis and coronary artery disease), cerebrovascular disease, peripheral vascular disease and venous thromboembolism (Clarke et al 1991, den Heijer et al 1996, Hung et al 2003, Lobo et al 1999, Malinow et al 1989, Selhub et al 1995), exudative ARMD, noise-induced hearing loss, cognitive dysfunction, and adverse pregnancy outcomes (Bjorke Monsen & Ueland 2003, Gok et al 2004, Nowak et al 2005).

As a result, vitamin B12 is often recommended in combination with folic acid and vitamin B6 in conditions for which homocysteine is implicated as a possible causative factor.

Cardiovascular protection In practice, the relative safety and affordability of combined vitamin B supplementation (B12, folic acid and B6) make it an attractive recommendation in people with familial hyperhomocysteinaemia or cardiovascular disease. Whether lowering total homocysteine improves cardiovascular mortality and morbidity, however, is questionable (Toole et al 2004). Current evidence suggests that lowering total homocysteine by 3.7 micromol/L (using folic acid 2 mg, vitamin B12 0.5 mg, and vitamin B6 25 mg) does not significantly reduce blood concen-
trations of the biomarkers of inflammation, endothelial dysfunction, or hypercoagulability in patients with recent transient ischaemic attack or stroke (Dusitanond et al 2005). This may reflect an inability of these markers to truly reflect morbidity and mortality rates or a lack of effect for homocysteine-lowering therapy.

The consistent findings of an association between elevated plasma total homocysteine levels and vascular risk suggests that longer trials in different populations with elevated total homocysteine may be necessary to understand whether the association is a cause or consequence of disease (Toole et al 2004).

**Renal transplant recipients** Although studies investigating the effects of vitamin B12 as a stand-alone treatment in this condition are not available, several clinical studies have produced supporting evidence for the use of combination vitamin B treatment (vitamin B12, folic acid and B6).

A RCT involving 56 renal transplant patients found that vitamin supplementation with folic acid (5 mg/day), vitamin B6 (50 mg/day) and vitamin B12 (400 µg/day) for 6 months reduced the progression of atherosclerosis. Patients taking the vitamin combination experienced a significant decrease in homocysteine levels and carotid intima-media thickness, which is reflective of early atherosclerosis (Marcucci et al 2003).

Parenteral B12 therapy has also been trialled in patients with end-stage renal disease in whom hyperhomocysteinaemia is common (Hoffer et al 2005a, b, Hyndman et al 2003).

**Restenosis after percutaneous coronary intervention** A RCT found that vitamin B12 (cyanocobalamin, 400 µg/day), folic acid (1 mg/day) and vitamin B6 (pyridoxine hydrochloride, 10 mg/day) taken for 6 months significantly decreased the incidence of major adverse events including restenosis after percutaneous coronary intervention (Schnyder et al 2002).

**Neural tube defects** Postpartum analysis of serum B12 levels has shown an increased risk of NTD in women with low B12 status (Groenen et al 2004, Ray & Blom 2003, Suarez et al 2003). As a result some authors have called for combined fortification of food with folic acid and vitamin B12 because there are concerns about masking B12 deficiency (Czernichow et al 2005).

**Noise-induced hearing loss** Homocysteine levels are significantly higher in subjects with noise-induced hearing loss as compared to healthy controls (Gok et al 2004) and elevated plasma B12 levels appear to play a protective role (Quaranta et al 2004).

**Recurrent abortion** There appears to be a correlation between low serum B12 levels, increased homocysteine levels and early or very early recurrent abortion in
some women (Reznikoff-Etievant et al 2002, Zetterberg et al 2002). One small study of five women with a history of very early recurrent abortion found that vitamin B12 supplementation resulted in four normal pregnancies (Reznikoff-Etievant et al 2002).

**DEPRESSION**
Elevation of homocysteine and low levels of vitamin B12 and folate are commonly seen in depression (Coppen & Bolander-Gouaille 2005). Observational studies have found as many as 30% of patients hospitalised for depression to be deficient in vitamin B12 (Hutto 1997). A recent cross-sectional study of 700 community-living, physically disabled women over the age of 65 years found that vitamin B12 deficient women were twice as likely to be severely depressed as non-deficient women (Penninx et al 2000). Considering symptoms of vitamin B12 deficiency can manifest as psychological disturbances such as depression, deficiency should be investigated in this population.

**AIDS AND HIV**
Low vitamin B12 levels are often observed in patients infected with HIV type 1 (HIV-1) (Remacha & Cadafalch 1999, Remacha et al 1993). One study identified deficiency in 10–35% of all patients seropositive for HIV, presumably as a result of decreased intake, intestinal malabsorption and/or abnormalities in plasma binding proteins or antagonism by the drug azidothymidine. Importantly, as serum cobalamin levels declined, progression to AIDS increased and neurological symptoms worsened.

**COGNITIVE IMPAIRMENT**
Women in the highest quartile of plasma vitamin B12 levels during mid-life score significantly higher on cognitive function tests in later years and are cognitively equivalent to those 4 years younger (Kang & Grodstein 2005). Supplementation with vitamin B12 significantly reverses impaired mental function in individuals with pre-existing low levels (Healton et al 1991, Miller 2003, Refsum & Smith 2003, Tripathi et al 2001, Weir & Scott 1999). A complete recovery was observed in 61% of people with mental impairment due to low levels of vitamin B12, according to one study (Healton et al 1991). It is unclear whether vitamin B12 (and folate) deficiency exacerbates a pre-existing but undiagnosed pathological condition or whether it may cause cognitive decline even in normal subjects (Moretti et al 2004).

**Prevention of cognitive impairment when associated with elevated homocysteine** Hyperhomocysteinaemia has been shown to be an independent risk factor for cognitive dysfunction, as both indirect and direct vascular damage can be caused by homocysteine. It has also been implicated in vascular dementia, with an increased risk of multiple brain infarcts and dementia as homocysteine levels rise. As a
result, the homocysteine-lowering action of vitamin B12 provides a theoretical basis for its use in these cases.

One study of 370 non-demented 75-year-olds found a twofold increased risk of developing Alzheimer’s dementia in subjects with low serum levels of vitamin B12 and folate over a 3-year period (Wang et al 2001).

**DIABETIC NEUROPATHY**

According to a recent review of seven RCTs, vitamin B12 supplementation may improve pain and paraesthesia in patients with diabetic neuropathy (Sun et al 2005). The studies cited, however, are generally of low quality and more research is required to confirm these results and determine whether positive effects are due to the correction of deficiency or alteration of abnormal metabolism.

**SLEEP DISORDERS**

A preliminary study investigated the effects of randomly assigned methyl- and cyanocobalamin on circadian rhythms, wellbeing, alertness and concentration after 14 days in 20 healthy subjects (Mayer et al 1996).

Methylcobalamin supplementation led to a significant decrease in daytime melatonin levels, improved sleep quality, shorter sleep cycles, increased feelings of alertness, better concentration, and a feeling of waking up refreshed in the morning. It appeared that methylcobalamin was significantly more effective than cobalamin.

**TINNITUS**

A group of 113 army personnel (mean age 39 years) exposed to military noise was studied, of which 57 had chronic tinnitus and noise-induced hearing loss (Shemesh et al 1993). Of this subset, 47% also had vitamin B12 deficiency. Treatment with vitamin B12 supplementation produced some improvement in tinnitus and associated symptoms.

**OTHER USES**

Human trials have shown vitamin B12 levels to be low in people with recurrent aphthous stomatitis, suggesting a possible aetiological factor (Piskin et al 2002).

**MYOCARDIAL INFARCTION**

Rat studies have suggested that hyperhomocysteinaemia aggravates myocardial infarction via oxidative stress mechanisms and that lowering homocysteine levels with folic acid and vitamin B12 may therefore reduce the risk of myocardial infarction (Hagar 2002). Studies in humans are less clear.
ERYTHEMA NODOSUM
A case report exists of a 38-year-old female diagnosed with erythema nodosum and B12 deficiency whose symptoms resolved completely without re-occurrence following vitamin B12 therapy (Volkov et al 2005). Testing for deficiency may be advised in such cases.

ATOPIC DERMATITIS
A novel use for B12 in a topical cream for atopic dermatitis has recently been tested. A prospective, randomised, placebo-controlled phase III multicentre trial involving 49 patients was conducted. Subjects applied the B12 cream twice daily to one side of the body and a placebo cream to the contralateral side, according to the randomisation scheme, for 8 weeks. The B12 cream was reported to significantly improve the extent and severity of atopic dermatitis and was considered safe and very well tolerated (Stucker et al 2004).

MULTIPLE SCLEROSIS
Multiple sclerosis (MS) and vitamin B12 deficiency share common inflammatory and neurodegenerative characteristics and low or decreased levels of vitamin B12 have been demonstrated in MS patients and may correlate with early onset (<18 years) (Miller et al 2005). Considering vitamin B12 is a cofactor, and myelin formation has important immunomodulatory and neurotrophic effects (Loder et al 2002, Miller et al 2005, Sandyk & Awerbuch 1993), a theoretical basis exists for its use in MS.

DOSAGE RANGE
AUSTRALIAN RDI
- Adult >13 years: 2.4 µg/day.
- Pregnancy: 2.6 µg/day.
- Lactation: 2.8 µg/day.
Requirements may be higher for elderly people with impaired digestion or absorption.
- Sublingual cyanocobalamin: 1000–2000 µg/day taken 30 minutes before breakfast.
- Pernicious anaemia: generally, vitamin B12 1000 µg IM 2–4 times weekly is given until haematological abnormalities are corrected, and then it is given once monthly. Alternatively, oral B12 can be given in very large doses (0.5–2 mg/day). Correction of haematological abnormalities usually occurs within 6 weeks of treatment, but neural improvement may take up to 18 months.
- Homocysteine lowering: vitamin B12 6–400 µg/day (typical dose 250 µg/day) in conjunction with folic acid 20 µg–2.5 mg/day and vitamin B6 200 µg–25 mg/day (Anon 2003).
ADVERSE REACTIONS
Although adverse effects have been reported to parenteral cobalamin, oral supplements appear to be well tolerated (Hillman 1996, Branco-Ferreira et al 1997).

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS

**METFORMIN**
Long-term use can cause B12 deficiency — increased B12 intake may be required.

**PHENOBARBITAL AND PHENYTOIN**
One clinical study reports that combined long-term use of phenobarbital and phenytoin resulted in significantly increased serum levels of vitamin B12 (Dastur & Dave 1987) — observe patients taking this combination.

**CARBAMAZEPINE**
In studies with children, long-term carbamazepine use led to a decrease in vitamin B12 levels (Karabiber et al 2003) — observe for signs and symptoms of B12 deficiency. Increased intake may be required with long-term therapy.

**TETRACYCLINE ANTIBIOTICS**
B complexes containing B12 may significantly reduce the bioavailability of tetracycline hydrochloride (Omray 1981) — separate doses by at least 2 hours.

**ORAL CONTRACEPTIVE PILL**
Users of the OCP showed significantly lower concentrations of cobalamin than controls in a 2003 clinical study (Sutterlin et al 2003). However, it would appear that this may be due to an effect on B12 binding proteins in serum affecting test results, because total homocysteine and methylmalonic acid markers were unchanged and no symptoms of deficiency were present (Bor 2004) — observe for signs and symptoms of B12 deficiency and conduct testing if deficiency is suspected.

**GASTRIC ACID INHIBITORS: PPI AND H₂ RECEPTOR ANTAGONISTS**
Gastric acid is required to liberate protein-bound cobalamin. Therefore, vitamin B12 concentration may be decreased when gastric acid is markedly suppressed for prolonged periods (Laine et al 2000, Schenk et al 1999, Termanini et al 1998). Studies have shown that omeprazole therapy acutely decreases cyanocobalamin absorption in a dose-dependent manner (Marcuard et al 1994, Saltzman et al 1994) and deficiency may occur with long-term use (Valuck and Ruscin 2004). It should be noted that vitamin B12 supplements do not suffer the same fate, as they are not bound to protein — observe for signs and symptoms of B12 deficiency; vitamin B12 supplements may be required with long-term therapy.
HYDROCHLOROTHIAZIDE

There are a number of medications that have the ability to increase homocysteine levels, such as hydrochlorothiazide (Westphal et al 2003), therefore concurrent use of vitamin B12 (with folic acid) may be a useful adjunct — potential beneficial interaction.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS

- Parenteral cyanocobalamin given for vitamin B12 deficiency caused by malabsorption should be given intramuscularly or by the deep subcutaneous route but never intravenously.
- Folic acid supplementation may mask a B12 deficiency.
- Treatment with cyanocobalamin should be avoided in cases of altered cobalamin metabolism or deficiency associated with chronic cyanide intoxication (Freeman et al 1999).

PREGNANCY USE

Vitamin B12 is considered safe in pregnancy.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING

- Vitamin B12 (cobalamin) is a water-soluble vitamin obtained mostly from animal protein products in the diet.
- There is considerable evidence that oral vitamin B12 therapy is comparable in efficacy to parenteral therapy even when intrinsic factor is not present or in other diseases affecting absorption.
- As numerous studies have indicated that serum B12 levels are an inadequate guide to B12 status, a combination of total homocysteine and methylmalonic acid is probably the clearest indicator.
- Vitamin B12 deficiencies manifest primarily as haematological and neurological disturbances and is estimated to affect 10–15% of individuals over the age of 60 years.
- Traditionally, supplementation is recommended to treat deficiency states or prevent them in people at risk such as in pernicious anaemia or atrophic gastritis.
- When administered together with folic acid and vitamin B6 (pyridoxine), it is used to reduce homocysteine levels. In this way, vitamin B12 is sometimes recommended in conditions where homocysteine is implicated as a possible causative factor.
- Some evidence has shown supplementation can be useful in HIV and AIDS, depression, tinnitus and cognitive impairment when low vitamin B12 levels are also
present. Preliminary evidence also suggests a possible role for supplementation in diabetic retinopathy and sleep disturbances.

- There are several commonly prescribed pharmaceutical medicines that can reduce vitamin B12 absorption when used long term.

**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

**What will this vitamin do for me?**

Vitamin B12 is essential for healthy growth, development and health maintenance. It will reverse signs and symptoms of deficiency and can alleviate symptoms of tinnitus, poor memory, depression and HIV and AIDS when low vitamin B12 levels are also present. There is also some research suggesting some positive effects in diabetic retinopathy and sleep disturbances.

**When will it start to work?**

In cases of pernicious anaemia, the classical deficiency state, correction of blood abnormalities occurs within 6 weeks; however, correction of nervous system changes is slower and may take up to 18 months.

**Are there any safety issues?**

Vitamin B12 is considered a very safe nutrient.

**REFERENCES**


Anon. Three B’s, or not three B’s? [vitamin B6, B12, and folic acid evaluated as a protection against heart disease]. Harvard Heart Lett 13.10.


Bor MV. Do we have any good reason to suggest restricting the use of oral contraceptives in women with pre-existing vitamin B12 deficiency? Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 115(2) (2004): 240-1.


Hyndman ME et al. Vitamin B12 decreases, but does not normalize, homocysteine and methylmalonic acid in end-stage renal disease: a link with glycin metabolism and possible explanation of hyperhomocysteinaemia in end-stage renal disease. Metabolism 52(2) (2003): 168-72.


© 2007 Elsevier Australia


Vitamin C

Historical note  Vitamin C deficiency has been known for many centuries as scurvy, a potentially fatal condition, dreaded by seamen and explorers from the 15th century, who were often forced to subsist for months on diets of dried beef and biscuits. It was also described by the European crusaders during their numerous sieges. In the mid 1700s Lind was the first doctor to conduct systematic clinical trials of potential cures for scurvy, identifying oranges and lemons as successful treatments (Bartholomew 1753). However, it was not until 1928 that vitamin C (then known as antiscorbutic factor) was isolated and the mid 1930s that it was able to be mass produced.

BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS
Vitamin C is an essential nutrient for humans and required from the diet on a regular basis, as we are one of few species of animals that cannot synthesise it. This is because humans lack the enzyme L-glucuronolactone oxidase, which is required for the conversion of glucose into vitamin C (Braunwald et al 2003). It is easily absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract through an active transport process, as well as through passive diffusion. The degree of absorption depends on the dose ingested, and decreases as the dose increases. In other words, transport systems for vitamin C are dose-dependent and saturable. Because of this, vitamin C is best absorbed when it is ingested in small doses at regular intervals. Pectin and zinc are also able to impair oral absorption. These limitations are bypassed with the use of intravenously administered vitamin C, which can achieve much higher plasma levels than the oral route. Vitamin C concentrates in many tissues, with the highest concentrations in the adrenal and pituitary glands. It is metabolised in the liver and kidneys, and excreted in the urine. The biological half-life of vitamin C is 8–40 days (NHMRC 2006).

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Vitamin C exists as both its reduced form (L-ascorbic acid) and oxidised form (L-dehydroascorbic acid). The two forms interchange in the body in a reversible equilibrium.

Clinical note — Differences between major forms of vitamin C supplement
Here is a brief summary of the most common forms found in OTC supplements.

Ascorbic acid: The major dietary form of vitamin C.
**Mineral ascorbates** (also known as non-acid vitamin C): These are buffered forms of vitamin C and believed to be less irritating to the stomach than ascorbic acid. Sodium ascorbate and calcium ascorbate are the most common forms. When mineral salts are taken, both the ascorbic acid and the mineral are absorbed. For example, sodium ascorbate generally provides 131 mg of sodium per 1000 mg of ascorbic acid, and calcium ascorbate provides 114 mg of calcium per 1000 mg of ascorbic acid.

**Vitamin C with bioflavonoids:** Many bioflavonoids are antioxidant substances, and added to some vitamin C preparations in the belief that this increases the bioavailability or efficacy of vitamin C. Typically, the bioflavonoids are sourced from citrus fruits.

**Ascorbyl palmitate:** A fat-soluble form of vitamin C formed by esterification with palmitic acid and most often used in topical creams.

**FOOD SOURCES**
Vitamin C is found in many different fruits and vegetables. The most concentrated food sources are blackcurrants, sweet green and red peppers, hot red peppers, green chilli peppers, oranges and its fresh juice, and strawberries. Other good sources are watermelon, papaya, citrus fruits, cantaloupe, mango, cabbage, cauliflower, broccoli and tomato juice. In practice, vegetables may be a more important source of vitamin C than fruits because the vegetable supply often extends for longer periods during the year.

The vitamin C content of food is strongly influenced by many factors, such as season, transportation, shelf life, storage conditions and storage time, cooking techniques and chlorination of water (FAO/WHO 2002). Cutting or bruising food sources will reduce its vitamin C content; however, blanching or storing at low pH will preserve it.

Up to 100% of the vitamin C content of food can be destroyed during cooking and storing because the vitamin is sensitive to light, heat, oxygen and alkali (Wahlqvist et al 2002). Additionally, using too much water during cooking can leach it from the food and further reduce the vitamin C content.

**DEFICIENCY SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS**
In adults, scurvy remains latent for 3–6 months after reducing dietary intake to less than 10 mg/day (Beers & Berkow 2003). It manifests when the body pools fall below 300–400 mg (NHMRC 2006). Many of the features of frank vitamin C deficiency (scurvy) result from a defect in collagen synthesis.
Early symptoms:
- weakness
- fatigue and listlessness
- muscular weakness
- petechial haemorrhages and ecchymoses (bruising)
- swollen gums
- poor wound healing and the breakdown of recently healed wounds
- poor appetite and weight loss
- emotional changes such as irritability and depression
- vague myalgias and arthralgias
- congested hair follicles.

Symptoms of more severe deficiency:
- fever
- drying of the skin and mucous membranes
- susceptibility to infection
- bleeding gums and loosening of teeth
- oedema of the lower extremities
- anaemia
- joint swelling and tenderness, due to bleeding around or into the joint
- oliguria
- pain in the extremities
- haemorrhage
- convulsions
- shock
- eventually death if left untreated.

Although frank deficiency is uncommon in Westernised countries, marginal deficiency states are not uncommon.

**PRIMARY DEFICIENCY**
This occurs if there is an inadequate dietary intake, which is often caused by a combination of poor cooking and eating habits. It occurs in areas of urban poverty, famine and war, in young children fed exclusively on cow’s milk for a prolonged period, the institutionalised or isolated elderly, and chronic alcoholics (Pimentel 2003, Richardson et al 2002). One Australian hospital identified 73% of all new admissions with hypovitaminosis C and 30% as having levels suggestive of scurvy (Richardson et al 2002).
SECONDARY DEFICIENCY

Factors that increase nutritional requirements include cigarette smoking, pregnancy, lactation, thyrotoxicosis, acute and chronic inflammatory diseases, major surgery and burns, infection and diabetes (Beers & Berkow 2003, FAO/WHO 2002, Hendler et al 2001, Wahlqvist et al 2002). Decreased vitamin C absorption in achlorhydria and increased excretion in chronic diarrhoea also increase the risk of deficiency, particularly when combined with poor dietary intake.

MAIN ACTIONS

Vitamin C is an electron donor (reducing agent or antioxidant), and most of its biochemical and molecular functions can be accounted for by this function. It is involved in many biochemical processes in the body such as:

- energy release from fatty acids
- metabolism of cholesterol
- reduction of nitrosamine formation in the stomach
- formation of thyroid hormone
- carnitine biosynthesis
- modulation of iron and copper absorption
- corticosteroid biosynthesis
- protection of folic acid reductase, which converts folic acid to folinic acid
- collagen biosynthesis
- tyrosine biosynthesis and catabolism
- neurotransmitter biosynthesis.

The main actions of vitamin C are summarised below.

ANTIOXIDANT

Vitamin C is one of the most important water-soluble antioxidant substances in the body. It scavenges free radical oxygen and nitrogen species such as superoxide, hydroxyl, peroxyl and nitroxide radicals and non-radical reactive species such as singlet oxygen, peroxynitrite and hypochlorite (FAO/WHO 2002, Hendler et al 2001). Besides having a direct antioxidant function, it also indirectly increases free radical scavenging by regenerating vitamin E (Vatassery 1987) and maintaining glutathione in reduced form.

MAINTENANCE OF CONNECTIVE TISSUE

Vitamin C maintains the body’s connective tissue and is essential for the formation of collagen, the major fibrous element of blood vessels, skin, tendon, cartilage and teeth (Morton et al 2001). If collagen is produced in the absence of vitamin C, it is unstable and cannot form the triple helix required for normal tissue structure. Vitamin C is
involved in the biosynthesis of other substances important for connective tissue such as elastin, proteoglycans, bone matrix, fibronectin and elastin-associated fibrillin (Hall & Greendale 1998).

These effects have been harnessed by the dermatological and cosmetic industries and are the rationale for producing topically applied products containing vitamin C.

**BRAIN AND NERVE FUNCTION**
Ascorbate is involved in neurotransmitter synthesis. It is a cofactor required for the biosynthesis of noradrenaline from dopamine and hydroxylation of tryptophan to produce serotonin (Bornstein et al 2003, FAO/WHO 2002).

**IMMUNOSTIMULANT**
Both in vivo and in vitro studies provide evidence of immunostimulant effects, generally at doses beyond RDI levels. Vitamin C favourably modulates lymphocytes and phagocytes, regulates NK cells and can influence antibody and cytokine synthesis under certain situations (Hendler et al 2001). In high doses, it is a potent immunomodulator and is preferentially cytotoxic to neoplastic cells. Vitamin C enhances the activity of NK cells in vivo and also both B- and T-cell activity (Drisko et al 2003).

**ANTIHISTAMINE**
An inverse association has been identified between blood histamine levels and vitamin C status in humans (Johnston et al 1996). In that study, increasing vitamin C status with supplements (up to 250 mg/day) over 3 weeks was shown to decrease histamine levels. It is unclear whether single high-dose supplementation also affects histamine levels, as two studies using 2 g doses have produced conflicting results (Bucca et al 1990, Johnston et al 1992).

**ANTICANCER**
A growing body of cell culture and in vivo research has suggested that vitamin C may be preferentially toxic to tumour cells (Tamayo & Richardson 2003). The effect is thought to be dose-dependent and mediated via several mechanisms, such as immunomodulation, inhibition of cell division and growth (mainly through antioxidant activity) and induction of apoptosis. In vitro studies have identified that concentrations above 1000 micromol/L are required for these effects to occur, a level that may be achieved clinically with intravenous administration but not through oral administration (Padayatty et al 2006). Much investigation has been undertaken to understand how the preferential activity occurs; however, the mechanisms are still largely unknown. For example, studies with radioactive-labelled vitamin C have found...
that tumour cells accumulate more vitamin C than healthy cells, whereas other studies have reported no differences in intracellular concentrations (Prasad et al 2002). There is also some preliminary evidence of synergistic cytotoxic effects with some pharmaceutical anticancer agents and decreased drug toxicity (Giri et al 1998).

Ascorbyl stearate is a lipophilic, vitamin C derivative that has also demonstrated antitumorigenic properties in vitro (Fang et al 2006).

OTHER ACTIONS
High oral doses (4–12 g/day in divided doses) can acidify urine.

CLINICAL USE
Vitamin C is an important biological antioxidant and has been a popular nutritional supplement for decades. It is administered as intramuscular or intravenous injections and used topically and orally. This review will chiefly focus on oral and topical use, as these are the forms of vitamin C most commonly used by the public.

As with many nutrients, studies associating dietary vitamin intake and disease risk are difficult to interpret, as separating the effects of the individual vitamin from the effects of other components in the diet is problematic. Where possible, an effort has been made to include information that will help in the interpretation of this type of data.

DEFICIENCY: PREVENTION AND TREATMENT
Traditionally, vitamin C supplements are used to both treat and prevent deficiency. Treatment may include 250 mg vitamin C daily and encouragement to eat fresh fruits and vegetables on a regular basis (Kumar et al 2002), or 100 mg taken 3–5 times daily until 4000 mg has been reached (Braunwald et al 2003). Some deficiency symptoms start to respond within 24 hours, although most take several weeks to months for complete resolution.

IRON DEFICIENCY ANAEMIA
Vitamin C facilitates iron absorption by forming soluble complexes and may be used with an iron supplement and nutritious diet in the treatment of iron deficiency anaemia. It is also recommended for women with menorrhagia in order to reduce the risk of iron deficiency.

UPPER RESPIRATORY TRACT INFECTIONS
Vitamin C is widely used to both prevent and treat common URTI, such as the common cold and influenza, largely based on its immune system effects, ability to reduce histamine levels and the observations that the gastrointestinal absorption of vitamin C increases in the common cold, suggesting an increased demand for this
nutrient, and that vitamin C concentrations in the plasma and leukocytes rapidly decline during infection (Wilson et al 1976, Wintergerst et al 2006). Although extremely popular, its usefulness in these conditions is widely debated.

A 2004 Cochrane review of 29 placebo-controlled studies involving 11,077 participants found that regular ingestion of vitamin C in doses of 200 mg did not reduce the incidence of the common cold in the normal population; however, a subgroup of six trials that involved a total of 642 marathon runners, skiers, and soldiers on subarctic exercises did find significant protective effects (Douglas et al 2004). Data from 9676 respiratory episodes suggested that regular vitamin C supplementation was consistently associated with a small reduction in the duration and severity of common cold symptoms; however, the magnitude of the effect was described as small. When high doses of vitamin C have been started after the onset of cold symptoms, there has been no consistent effect on either the duration or the severity of symptoms. Equivocal results were obtained in one large trial that used a dose of 8 g at the onset of symptoms whereas two trials using supplementation for 5 days did report a benefit.

Since then, a long-term study reported that use of 500 mg/day vitamin C significantly reduced the risk of the common cold (relative risk 0.34), although no reduction in severity or duration was seen (Sasazuki et al 2006). The double-blind RCT was conducted over 5 years and due to protocol amendment, these results should be viewed conservatively.

There are a number of factors that may be contributing to the inconsistent results obtained to date, such as the variable characteristics of the subjects studied, type of infecting virus, lack of control for dietary vitamin C intake and differences in outcomes’ measures.

Clearly, further investigation is required to clarify many issues surrounding the use of vitamin C supplements for URTI. In practice, naturopaths often recommend mega doses of vitamin C (taken in small frequent amounts), which are well beyond the doses investigated so far, and often report good results. Although anecdotal, it is interesting to note that little research has investigated this method of use.

**DERMATOLOGICAL USES**

Vitamin C is used as an oral supplement or topical application in a number of dermatological conditions.

**Wound healing**  Vitamin C is important for effective wound healing, as deficiency contributes to fragile granulation tissue and therefore impairs the wound-healing process (Russell 2001).
In vitro studies with skin graft samples have demonstrated that vitamin C extends cellular viability, promotes formation of epidermal barrier and promotes engraftment (Boyce et al 2002). In this way, vitamin C is used to enhance wound healing before surgery has commenced.

Numerous case reports of surgical and dental patients generally suggest a use for vitamin C supplementation in doses beyond RDI as a means of enhancing the rate of wound healing (Ringsdorf & Cheraskin 1982). One early double-blind study found that vitamin C (500 mg twice daily) resulted in a significant mean reduction in pressure sore area of 84% after 1 month compared with 43% in the placebo group (Taylor et al 1974). The mean rates of healing were 2.47 cm² for vitamin C and 1.45 cm² for placebo.

**Photo-aged skin** Two double-blind studies investigating the effects of topical preparations of vitamin C on photo-damaged skin have demonstrated good results after 3 months’ use (Fitzpatrick & Rostan 2002, Humbert et al 2003). One study tested a topical application of 5% vitamin C in a cream base, whereas the other used a newly formulated vitamin C complex having 10% ascorbic acid (water soluble) and 7% tetrahexyldecyl ascorbate (lipid soluble) in an anhydrous polysilicone gel base.

**Prevention of sunburn** One controlled study found oral vitamin C (2000 mg/day) in combination with vitamin E (1000 IU/day) had a protective effect against sunburn after 8 days’ treatment in human subjects (Eberlein-König et al 1998).

Similar results have been obtained for topical vitamin C preparations in several animal models (Darr et al 1992, 1996, Lin et al 2003) and a small human study (Keller & Fenske 1998). The latter study found that application of an aqueous 10% L-ascorbic acid solution produced a significant reduction in the minimal erythema dose and a less intense erythematous response than controls after UVB radiation.

**REDUCTION IN ALL-CAUSE MORTALITY**

Several studies have identified an inverse association between plasma ascorbate levels, vitamin C intake and all-cause mortality.

In the Western Electric Company Study, data on diet and other factors were obtained in 1958 and 1959 for a cohort of 1556 employed, middle-aged men and an inverse association between vitamin C and mortality was identified (Pandey et al 1995). The next year, a prospective cohort study conducted with 725 older adults also identified an inverse relationship between vitamin C blood concentrations and total mortality during a 12-year follow-up (Sahyoun et al 1996). Similar results were obtained in the large EPIC-Norfolk study of 19,496 men and women aged 45–79 years (Khaw et al 2001). Plasma ascorbate concentration was inversely related to mortality from all-causes, and from cardiovascular disease and ischaemic heart...
disease in both men and women. Risk of mortality in the group with the highest intake was about half that of the low intake group and was independent of age, SBP, serum cholesterol, cigarette smoking, diabetes, or supplement use.

The NHANES II Mortality Study further confirmed the inverse association between plasma ascorbate and risk of dying for all-causes; however, this study identified a gender difference (Loria et al 2000). After adjustments for race, educational level, number of cigarettes smoked at baseline, serum total cholesterol, SBP, BMI, diabetes status, and alcohol consumption, men in the lowest serum ascorbate quartile (serum ascorbate concentrations < 28.4 micromol/L) had a 57% higher risk of dying from any cause than did men in the highest quartile (> 73.8 micromol/L). Additionally, men in the lowest serum ascorbate quartile had double the risk of dying from cancer than those in the highest quartile after adjustment for age. The dose corresponds to approximately 60 mg/day vitamin C. In contrast, no association was observed between quartiles of serum ascorbate concentration and total mortality or mortality from cardiovascular or cancer among women.

A gender difference was also reported in the NHANES I Epidemiologic Follow-up Study (NHEFS) (Enstrom et al 1992). Vitamin C intakes > 50 mg/day plus regular supplement use were associated with reduced mortality compared with intakes < 50 mg/day in men, but apparently not in women.

**PREVENTION OF CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE**

The association between vitamin C and cardiovascular disease prevention is still unclear, although several themes are emerging as evidence accumulates. In general, laboratory, epidemiological and observational follow-up studies suggest that vitamin C is associated with reduced incidence of cardiovascular disease although not all studies are positive (Houston 2005). Studies have looked at blood levels, dietary intake and supplemental vitamin C and in some studies, vitamin C is co-administered with other nutrients (often vitamin E) making it difficult to assess the contribution of vitamin C alone (Carr & Frei 1999, Khaw et al 2001, Knekt et al 2004, Kushi et al 1996, Lopes et al 1998, MRC/BHF 2002, Ness et al 1996, Nysssonen et al 1997, Osganian et al 2003). It appears that if a protective effect is observed with supplementation, it is most likely with doses above RDI, long-term use and in populations with a substantial proportion of persons who have low or deficient intakes of vitamin C. Ideally, future human clinical trials will focus on subjects with increased oxidative stress rather than the general population to see whether this variable also influences study outcomes.

**Possible mechanisms**  According to a 2001 review, ascorbic acid is inversely related to several risk factors and indicators of atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease,
including hypertension and elevated concentrations of LDL, acute phase proteins, and haemostatic factors (Price et al 2001). More specifically, vitamin C inhibits oxidative modification of LDL-cholesterol directly through free radical scavenging activity, according to in vitro data, and indirectly by increasing glutathione and vitamin E concentrations within cell membranes. This has been demonstrated against the pro-oxidant combination of homocysteine and iron (Alul et al 2003) and may have implications for other diseases such as Alzheimer’s dementia.

More recently, evidence suggests that other mechanisms are also likely to be involved. Vitamin C is linked to endothelial function and glucose metabolism. It improves endothelial dysfunction in smokers, renal transplant recipients, in patients with cardiovascular disease after a fatty meal, or intermittent claudication diabetes and those with hypertension (Kaufmann et al 2000, Ling et al 2002, Silvestro et al 2002, Solzbach et al 1997, Williams et al 2001), but not in healthy elderly people (Singh et al 2002). It is also required for collagen synthesis and metabolism, and has been shown to reduce arterial stiffness and platelet aggregation in healthy male volunteers, smokers and non-smokers, and diabetics (Schindler et al 2002, Wilkinson et al 1999). These effects are often observed in doses several times higher than current RDI levels. In vivo studies further indicate that vitamin C decreases carotid wall thickness, downregulates iNOS expression, normalises gene expression of antioxidant enzymes and inhibits plaque maturation (Kaliora et al 2006).

Clinical studies involving vitamin C supplementation  In the recent pooled analysis from the Pooling Project of Cohort Studies on Diet and Coronary Disease, those subjects with higher supplemental vitamin C intake (median intake of 756 mg/day) had a 24% reduced risk of coronary heart disease than those in the lowest quintile, whereas dietary vitamin C had no significant protective effect (Knekt et al 2004). The lower risk was independent of non-dietary risk factors and related to dose.

The researchers also adjusted for many relevant constituents of foods (e.g. dietary fibre and saturated fat) and found this adjustment had no effect on the association.

Effects on blood pressure  Although epidemiological evidence and prospective clinical trials point strongly to a role of vitamin C in reducing blood pressure in hypertensive and normotensive subjects, controlled studies have been inconsistent (Houston 2005). Interpretation of these results is difficult as some studies lack a control group, have no baseline readings, use variable vitamin C doses and population characteristics and do not report serum vitamin C or oxidative stress status. Overall, it appears that doses between 100 and 1000 mg of vitamin C daily are
required for a reduction in blood pressure, with greater reduction in SBP than DBP and greater response in people with higher initial value.

A 1997 review of epidemiological studies showed some inverse associations between SBP, DBP or both, and vitamin C plasma concentration or intake (Ness et al 1997). Three more recent studies have supported this finding (Bates et al 1998, Block 2002, Block et al 2001). Over the past 10 years, four intervention studies investigated the effects of vitamin C supplementation, with three producing positive results (Duffy et al 1999, Fotherby et al 2000, Galley et al 1997, Ghosh et al 1994). The doses used were typically 250 mg twice daily for a period of 6–8 weeks, although effects have been reported after 4 weeks’ treatment.

The negative study by Ghosh et al showed a significant reduction in both SBP and DBP with ascorbic acid. This became non-significant when compared with the placebo responses, although the placebo and ascorbic acid groups were not evenly matched for baseline plasma ascorbate concentration.

Additionally, plasma ascorbate concentrations have been shown to be inversely correlated to pulse rate in one cross-sectional study involving 500 subjects (Bates et al 1998).

**Nitrate tolerance**  Preliminary studies seem to support the role of vitamin C in attenuating the development of nitrate tolerance. Three human studies have found that vitamin C administration prevents the development of nitrate tolerance (Bassenge et al 1998, Watanabe et al 1998a,b). Although the mechanism responsible is not yet known, results from a double-blind study using an acute dose of 2 g have suggested that vitamin C is likely to protect NO from inactivation by oxygen free radicals (Wilkinson et al 1999), which could in part explain its observed effects.

**Myocardial infarction (MI)**  Two prospective studies in men have suggested that ascorbic acid deficiency (Nyyssonen et al 1997) and marginal deficiency (Gey et al 1993) predict subsequent MI independent of classical risk factors.

The first, a 5-year prospective population study of 1605 middle-aged Finnish men, free of coronary disease at baseline, found that a significantly higher percentage (13.2%) of the 91 men with baseline plasma vitamin C concentrations less than 11.4 micromol/L (2.0 mg/L) experienced MI compared with men with higher plasma vitamin C levels (Nyyssonen et al 1997). These results are particularly impressive because low plasma ascorbate was the strongest risk factor of all the measured factors. The second, a 12-year follow-up study, revealed a significantly increased relative risk of ischaemic heart disease and stroke at initially low plasma levels of vitamin C (<22.7 micromol/L), independently of vitamin E and of the classical cardiovascular risk factors (Gey et al 1993).
In contrast, one smaller study involving 180 male patients with a first acute MI, but no recent angina, failed to detect an association between low plasma concentration of vitamin C and the risk of acute myocardial infarction (Riemersma et al 2000).

There is a large body of evidence that reactive oxygen species produced during myocardial ischaemia and reperfusion play a crucial role in myocardial damage and endothelial dysfunction. As a result, there has been some investigation to determine whether antioxidant supplementation (chiefly vitamins C and E) may improve the clinical outcome of patients with acute AMI and limit the size of the infarct.

According to a large randomised, double-blind, multicentre trial of 800 patients (mean age 62 years) with acute AMI and receiving standard care, co-treatment with vitamin C (1000 mg/12 h infusion) followed by 1200 mg/day orally and vitamin E (600 mg/day) for 30 days resulted in significantly less frequent incidence of re-infarction and other post-MI complications compared to placebo (14% vs 19% respectively) (Jaxa-Chamiec et al 2005). Another randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled study of 37 patients with acute MI investigated the effects of starting supplementation with vitamins C and E (600 mg/day each) on the first day of symptoms and for a further 14 days (Bednarz et al 2003). Active treatment resulted in significantly lower exercise-induced QT interval dispersion compared to placebo, although baseline QTd was similar in both groups. A prospective, randomised study of 61 patients further suggests that oral vitamin C administration (1 g/day) could be beneficial for patients at higher thrombotic risk post-MI, such as those with diabetes (Morel et al 2003).

**CANCER: PREVENTION AND TREATMENT**
Several consensus conferences have evaluated the biological effect of vitamin C, and more than 500 published articles have examined the association of vitamin C and cancer.

**Prevention** Epidemiological evidence of a protective effect of dietary vitamin C for non-hormone-dependent cancers is strong (Block 1991a,b). The majority of studies in which a dietary vitamin C intake was calculated have identified a statistically significant protective effect, with high intake conferring approximately a twofold protective effect compared with low intake. In general, most have shown that higher intakes of vitamin C are associated with decreased incidence of cancers of the mouth, throat and vocal chords, oesophagus and stomach, pancreas, colon, rectum, renal cell and lung (Cohen & Bhagavan 1995, FAO/WHO 2002, Jenab et al 2006, Negri et al 2000, You et al 2000). More recently, a case control study of men in New York found
that a higher intake of vitamin C was associated with reduced risk of prostate cancer (McCann et al. 2005).

Two other large studies have identified inverse associations between dietary vitamin C and breast cancer risk (Michels et al. 2001, Zhang et al. 1999). More specifically, the Nurses’ Health Study, which involved 83,234 women, detected a strong inverse association between total vitamin C from foods and breast cancer risk among pre-menopausal women with a positive family history of breast cancer (Zhang et al. 1999). Those who consumed an average of 205 mg/day of vitamin C from foods had a 63% lower risk of breast cancer than those who consumed an average of 70 mg/day. A large, Swedish population-based prospective study that comprised 59,036 women identified high dietary intakes of ascorbic acid (mean intake 110 mg/day) as reducing the risk of breast cancer among women who are overweight and/or have a high intake of linoleic acid (Michels et al. 2001).

More recently, a case–control study nested within the European Prospective Investigation into Cancer and Nutrition (EPIC) identified an inverse risk of gastric cancer in the highest versus lowest quartile of plasma vitamin C (Jenab et al. 2006). The inverse association was more pronounced in subjects consuming higher levels of red and processed meats, a factor that may increase endogenous N-nitroso compound production. It has been proposed that vitamin C protects against gastric cancer because it inhibits carcinogenic N-nitroso compound production in the stomach and acts as a free radical scavenger.

Overall, it appears that the effect is dose-dependent, with studies finding significant cancer risk reductions in people consuming at least 80–110 mg of vitamin C daily long term (Carr & Frei 1999).

**Clinical studies**

**Clinical note — Vitamin C for cancer: a historical perspective**

The well-known team of Ewan Cameron and Linus Pauling started investigating the effects of high doses of continuous intravenous vitamin C and oral supplements to treat advanced, incurable cancer over three decades ago. The idea of using vitamin C was born out of the recognition that the outcome of every cancer is determined to a significant extent by the individual’s inherent resistance, which in turn is influenced by the availability of certain nutritional factors such as ascorbic acid (Cameron 1982). They have published the results of several trials that have shown enhanced QOL for some terminal patients and also improvements in objective markers. As a result, a protocol for the use of vitamin C in the treatment of cancer has been developed at the Vale of Leven Hospital, the chief site of their investigations (Cameron 1991). The protocol emphasises the importance of using...
an initial course of intravenous ascorbate followed by a maintenance oral dose. Although their results are encouraging, they have been criticised because randomised double-blind principles were not adopted.

One of the first published studies by Cameron and Pauling (1974) was a Phase I–II study in 50 patients with advanced, untreatable malignancies in which both subjective and objective markers were evaluated. They observed that 27 patients failed to respond to treatment; however, 3 patients experienced stabilisation of disease, tumour regression occurred in 5 patients and tumour haemorrhage and necrosis occurred in 4 patients. Two years later, the same research team published a report that compared the survival rates of 100 terminal cancer patients given supplemental ascorbate as part of their routine management with 1000 patients who were not, and observed the mean survival time to be more than 4.2-fold as great for the ascorbate subjects (>210 days) as for the controls (50 days) (Cameron & Pauling 1976).

In subsequent years, two randomised, placebo-controlled studies investigating the effects of oral vitamin C supplementation (10 g/day) in terminal cancer patients failed to detect a significant difference in outcome (Creagan et al 1979, Moertel et al 1985). These two studies are often cited as evidence disproving the benefits of vitamin C in cancer treatment; however, the different routes of administration investigated in these studies is an important factor central to the discrepant results (Padayatty & Levine 2000), as only intravenous ascorbate can produce millimolar plasma concentrations, which are toxic to many cancer cell lines.

**Intravenous vitamin C** Intravenous administration of vitamin C achieves much higher plasma and urine concentrations than oral dosing and has been proposed as the only viable means of achieving the high concentrations required to induce the antitumour effects exhibited by the vitamin (Padayatty et al 2004). Currently, there are case studies that suggest this approach can improve patient wellbeing and, in some cases, reduce tumour size and improve survival (Padayatty et al 2006, Riordan et al 2005).

A recent safety study involved 24 late-stage terminal cancer patients who were administered continuous vitamin C infusions of 150–710 mg/kg/day for up to 8 weeks (Riordan et al 2005). This treatment regimen increased plasma ascorbate concentrations to a mean of 1.1 mmol/L and was considered relatively safe. The most common side-effects reported were nausea, oedema and dry mouth or skin, and two ‘possible’ adverse events occurred. One was a patient with a history of renal calculi who developed a kidney stone after 13 days of treatment and another was a patient
who experienced hypokalaemia after 6 weeks. Interestingly, the majority of patients were vitamin C deficient prior to treatment.

Based on the available evidence of antitumour mechanisms and these case reports, further research into this approach is clearly warranted.

**Adjunct to oncology treatments** Whether vitamin C improves or hinders responses to standard oncology treatment has been the focus of intense debate for many decades. There are in vitro studies showing that vitamin C can enhance the antitumour activity of cisplatin and doxorubicin (Abdel-Latif et al 2005, Kurbacher et al 1996, Reddy et al 2001, Sarna & Bhola 1993). In vivo evidence shows vitamin C enhances the effectiveness of 5-fluorouracil, doxorubicin, cyclophosphamide and vincristine (Lamson & Brignall 2000, Nagy et al 2003), whereas other studies find no change in drug effect. Although these results are promising, no large randomised studies are available to confirm their significance in humans.

Most recently, vitamin C inactivated the effects of bortezomib, a new proteasome inhibitor approved by the US FDA for the treatment of patients with relapsed multiple myeloma (Zou et al 2006). Interestingly, drug inactivation was not achieved through antioxidative mechanisms.

Evidence from experimental models suggests that vitamin C may also reduce drug toxicity in a dose-dependent manner (Giri et al 1998, Greggi Antunes et al 2000).

---

**Clinical note — The debate continues … to Vitamin C or not?**

One research group based at the University of Colorado has produced evidence that suggests that vitamin C and other antioxidant nutrients may not only protect healthy cells from damage but also improve the antitumour effects of standard treatment (Gottlieb 1999). They are currently conducting further research to identify how cell selectivity occurs but propose that cancer cells may have lost the normal homeostatic regulatory mechanism that stops excessive concentrations of antioxidants from entering the cell. As intracellular levels rise, a series of reactions occurs resulting in growth inhibition and cell death. Another group at Memorial Sloan Kettering Cancer Centre (Gottlieb 1999) argues that tumours already contain higher levels of ascorbic acid than normal cells and have identified a mechanism to explain this observation. As such, they advocate against the use of vitamin C when cytotoxic agents that rely on free radical production are being used (see Chapter 10 for further discussion).

---

**DIABETES**

Vitamin C has several actions that provide a basis for its use in diabetes. It has been reported to lower erythrocyte sorbitol concentrations (important for preventing
complications in type 1 diabetes), improve endothelial function (important for slowing atherosclerosis) and reduce blood pressure (Beckman et al 2001, Cunningham 1998). Plasma vitamin C levels seem to play a role in the modulation of insulin activity in aged healthy or diabetic subjects (Paolisso et al 1994) and are inversely related to those of glycosylated haemoglobin. Additionally, free radical production has been reported to be increased in patients with diabetes mellitus as a result of hyperglycaemia, which directly induces oxidative stress (Ceriello et al 1998).

**Blood glucose**  Studies testing the effects of supplemental vitamin C on plasma glucose levels directly are few at this stage. Although one early study demonstrated that an oral dose of 1500 mg vitamin C reduces plasma glucose levels in patients with type 2 diabetes (Sandhya & Das 1981), there are no further published studies that confirm this result.

**Endothelial function**  The results of studies investigating the role of vitamin C on endothelial function in diabetes have attracted recent interest.

A double-blind, placebo-controlled study demonstrated that chronic oral vitamin C supplementation (500 mg/day) in type 2 diabetes significantly lowered arterial blood pressure and improved arterial stiffness compared with placebo (Mullan et al 2002). After 1 month’s treatment, SBP fell from 142.1 to 132.3 mmHg, mean pressure from 104.7 to 97.8 mmHg, DBP from 83.9 to 79.5 mmHg and peripheral pulse pressure from 58.2 to 52.7 mmHg, whereas placebo had no effect.

A randomised study of women with a history of gestational diabetes showed that ascorbic acid supplementation resulted in a significant improvement of endothelium-dependent flow-mediated dilatation, with no effect seen for placebo (Lekakis et al 2000).

The mechanism of action appears to involve several steps, such as reduction in LDL oxidation, enhanced endothelial NO synthase activity and NO bioavailability, and reduced insulin resistance, which can cause endothelium-dependent, NO-mediated vasodilation.

**Eye health**  Diabetes mellitus is associated with a number of ocular complications that can eventually lead to blindness. Vitamin C is found in high concentration in the eye and is thought to be important for protection against free radicals. This may have special significance for people with diabetes mellitus, as most studies have found circulating vitamin C levels at least 30% lower than people without the disease (Peponis et al 2002). One study demonstrated that a combination of oral vitamins C (1000 mg/day) and E (400 IU/day) improved tear film stability, tear secretion, and health of the ocular surface in diabetic patients.
Due to the safety, cost effectiveness and generally encouraging results, a strategy of adding 200–600 mg of vitamin C to a healthy diet is worth considering for individuals with type 1 or 2 diabetes.

**PREVENTION OF CATARACTS**

Numerous observational and prospective clinical studies have been performed to examine the effect of vitamin C alone or in combination with other antioxidants on cataract.


Results from the Harvard Nurses’ Health Study, Physician’s Health Study, the Beaver Dam Eye Study and the Australian Blue Mountains study suggests that if protective effects are to be seen, it is most likely if vitamin C is taken long-term (5–10 years or more) and/or used as part of a multivitamin combination (Kuzniarz et al 2001, Mares-Perlman et al 2000, Seddon et al 1994, Taylor et al 2002).

It is suspected that vitamin C protects the lens of the eye from oxygen-related damage over time by both direct free radical scavenging activity and indirect activity. This is achieved primarily by protecting endogenous alpha-tocopherol (the major lipid-soluble antioxidant of retinal membranes) against oxidation induced by UV radiation and by regenerating it (Stoyanovsky et al 1995).

**ATOPY AND ASTHMA**

Vitamin C is the major antioxidant present in the extracellular fluid lining of the lung, where it protects against both endogenous free radicals (produced as a by-product of inflammation) and environmental free radicals (such as ozone in air pollution). According to many epidemiological studies, dietary intake of vitamin C-rich foods or serum ascorbate is associated with improved lung function in both asthmatic and normal subjects (Devereux & Seaton 2005).

Despite a theoretical basis for its use in lung diseases such as asthma, its value in this disease is controversial. A 2001 Cochrane review of three studies concluded that current evidence is insufficient to recommend a specific role for vitamin C in the treatment of asthma and that a large-scale RCT is required to clarify its role (Kaur et al 2001). An updated Cochrane review published in 2004 included new data from a
study of 201 adults taking inhaled corticosteroids and came to a similar conclusion, stating that evidence is currently conflicting (Ram et al 2004).

Alternatively, the evidence for its use in exercise-induced asthma appears stronger, as three human studies have produced positive results when vitamin C was used as pretreatment (Cohen et al 1997, Miric & Haxhiu 1991, Schachter & Schlesinger 1982) in doses ranging from 500 mg to 2000 mg.

Clinical note — Do asthmatic lungs need more antioxidant protection?
In 1999, Kelly et al found that people with mild asthma have low levels of antioxidant nutrient vitamins E and C within their lung lining fluid, even though their blood levels may be normal or increased. This observation, together with other factors, indicated that the asthmatic lung is exposed to greater oxidative stress than in non-asthmatics. The researchers suggested that the inflammatory cells in the lungs of asthmatic patients generate more free-radical species than healthy people, adding to the bronchoconstriction, increased mucus secretion and increased Airways responsiveness. Considering that oral supplementation in asthma has produced inconsistent results, chief researcher Frank Kelly has discussed whether future studies should focus on other administration forms such as vitamin C inhalers (personal communication, Melbourne, 1998).

BONE MINERAL DENSITY
Although the relationship between calcium, vitamin D and bone mineral density (BMD) is well known, other nutrients such as vitamin C are also critical for bone development, repair and maintenance (Ilich et al 2003).

Data collected from 13,080 adults enrolled in the Third National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES III) during 1988–94 have identified an association between dietary and serum ascorbic acid, BMD and bone fracture (Simon & Hudes 2001). Dietary ascorbic acid intake was independently associated with BMD among premenopausal women and postmenopausal women without a history of smoking or oestrogen use. Additionally, fracture risk fell by 49% in postmenopausal women (with a history of smoking and oestrogen use) who had high serum vitamin C levels.

Vitamin C supplementation Two controlled studies have investigated the effects of long-term vitamin C supplementation in postmenopausal women and found that it increases BMD (Hall & Greendale 1998, Morton et al 2001). Both studies identified a positive association with BMD in postmenopausal women with dietary calcium intakes of at least 500 mg or those taking calcium supplements. The effect was especially marked in those women taking calcium supplements and concurrent HRT.
The daily dose taken was generally in excess of the RDI and ranged from 100–5000 mg. More specifically, one study identified that for each 100 mg increment in dietary vitamin C intake there was an associated increase of 0.017 g/cm² in BMD (femoral neck and total hip) or for those women with calcium intakes above 500 mg/day, the increment increased to 0.019 g/cm² in BMD per 100 mg vitamin C.

A recent Australian study of 533 randomly selected women identified that vitamin C supplements may suppress bone resorption in non-smoking postmenopausal women (Pasco et al 2006).

In contrast to these results, no effect on BMD was observed for dietary or supplemental vitamin C in the Women’s Health Initiative Observational Study and Clinical Trial, which involved 11,068 women aged 50–79 years (Wolf et al 2005). However, a significant beneficial interaction was observed between total vitamin C and HRT on total-body, femoral neck, spine and total-hip BMD.

Animal studies have detected an improved healing response in bone fractures with supplemental vitamin C, suggesting a further role in fracture healing (Yilmaz et al 2001).

**SPORTS**
Vitamin C supplementation is often used by athletes in order to improve recovery, restore immune responses, enhance wound healing, counteract oxidative stress and changes to adrenal hormones and inflammatory responses. It is often taken together with other antioxidant vitamins and minerals, such as vitamin E and zinc. One placebo-controlled study has shown that 20 mg of ascorbic acid twice daily over 14 days has some modest beneficial effects on recovery from unaccustomed exercise (Thompson et al 2001); however, no studies have reported improved performance for vitamin C supplementation.

**Prevention of post-endurance exercise infections** Athletes often use vitamin C supplements to prevent infections, as strenuous training and physiological stress appears to increase the body’s need for vitamin C to a level above the usual RDI (Schwenk & Costley 2002). Additionally, the risk of infection after an intense aerobic training session or competition (such as a marathon) is increased (Jeurissen et al 2003).

A 2004 Cochrane review that analysed results from six trials involving a total of 642 marathon runners, skiers, and soldiers on subarctic exercises found regular vitamin C supplementation significantly reduced the incidence of the common cold, supporting its use in this population (Douglas et al 2004).

**Alterations to neurotransmitters and adrenal hormones** Several studies have been conducted with ultra-marathon runners to investigate whether vitamin C
supplementation, usually in doses of 1500 mg/day, is able to restore exercise-induced changes to neurotransmitters, adrenal hormones or inflammatory responses (Nieman et al 2000, Peters et al 2001a,b). Overall, it appears that high-dose vitamin C supplements taken at least 7 days prior to racing does have some effect.

One study involving 45 ultra-marathon runners found that doses of 1500 mg vitamin C taken for 7 days before the race, on the day of the race, and for 2 days following completion significantly attenuated exercise-induced elevations in cortisol, adrenaline, IL-10 and IL-1 receptor antagonist levels compared with placebo (Peters et al 2001a); however, the effect was transient.

OTHER USES
Vitamin C is used for numerous indications, although many have not been significantly studied, such as IBS, OA, menopausal hot flushes, cervical dysplasia, prevention of Alzheimer’s dementia, allergies, male infertility, treatment of lead toxicity and reducing delayed-onset muscle soreness.

Vitamin C supplements have also been used as part of antioxidant combination therapy in HIV and heroin withdrawal. Preliminary research has shown that some antioxidant combinations reduce oxidative stress (Jaruga et al 2002), induce immunological and virological effects that might be of therapeutic value (Muller et al 2000) and produce a trend towards a reduction in viral load in HIV (Allard et al 1998).

High doses of oral ascorbic acid and vitamin E may ameliorate the withdrawal syndrome of heroin addicts after 4 weeks’ treatment, according to one study (Evangelou et al 2000).

DOSAGE RANGE
AUSTRALIAN AND NEW ZEALAND RDI

- Children
  - <8 years: 35 mg
  - 9–19 years: 40 mg
- Adults
  - >19 years: 45 mg
- Pregnancy
  - <19 years: 55 mg
  - >19 years: 60 mg
- Lactation
  - <19 years: 80 mg
  - >19 years: 85 mg
DEFICIENCY

- 100 mg taken 3–5 times daily until 4000 mg has been administered, followed by a maintenance dose of 100 mg/day and encouragement to eat a diet with fresh fruit and vegetables.
- In cases of acute infection, CAM practitioners frequently recommend vitamin C in doses of 1000 g (or more) to be taken in divided doses every few hours until loose bowels are experienced, otherwise known as ‘bowel tolerance’. The rationale behind this dosage regimen is that body requirements during infection are dramatically increased and high dose vitamin C not only meets these needs but also maximum vitamin C absorption is attained when it is taken in divided doses rather than one large amount.

ACCORDING TO CLINICAL STUDIES

- Asthma: 500–2000 mg prior to exercise.
- Cancer: 10–100 g/day IV.
- Cardiovascular disease prevention: up to 1000 mg/day long term.
- Bone mineral density: 750 mg/day long term.
- Cataract protection: 500 mg/day long term.
- Diabetes: 0.5–3 g/day long term.
- Histamine-lowering effects: 250 mg to 2 g/day for several weeks.
- Respiratory infection: 1–2 g/day.
- Sunburn protection: oral vitamin C (2000 mg/day) in combination with vitamin E (1000 IU/day).
- Urinary acidification: 4–12 g taken in divided doses every 4 hours.

ADVERSE REACTIONS
Adverse effects of oral vitamin C include loose bowels and diarrhoea with high-dose supplements; however, the dose at which this occurs varies between individuals and also varies for each individual at different times.

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS

ALUMINIUM-BASED ANTACIDS
Vitamin C increases the amount of aluminium absorbed — separate doses by at least 2 hours.

ASPIRIN
Aspirin may interfere with both absorption and cellular uptake mechanisms for vitamin C, thereby increasing vitamin C requirements (observed in animal and human experimentation).
studies) — increased vitamin C intake may be required with long-term therapy (Basu 1982).

**CHITOSAN**
According to a preliminary study in rats, taking vitamin C along with chitosan might provide additional benefit in lowering cholesterol — potentially beneficial interaction.

**CISPLATIN**

**CORTICOSTEROIDS**
Corticosteroids may increase the requirement for vitamin C based on in vitro and in vivo data (Chowdhury & Kapil 1984, Levine & Pollard 1983) — increased intake may be required with long-term drug therapy.

**CYANOCOBALAMIN**
Vitamin C can reduce absorption of cyanocobalamin — separate doses by at least 2 hours.

**CYCLOPHOSPHAMIDE**
Vitamin C enhanced the therapeutic drug effect in vivo (Lamson & Brignall 2000) — potentially beneficial but difficult to assess.

**DOXORUBICIN**
Vitamin C enhanced the therapeutic drug effect and reduced drug toxicity in vivo (Lamson & Brignall 2000) — potentially beneficial but difficult to assess.

**ETOPOSIDE**
Vitamin C enhanced the antitumor activity of etoposide in vitro (Reddy et al 2001) — potentially beneficial but difficult to assess.

**FLUOROURACIL**

**IRON**
Vitamin C increases the absorption of iron — potentially beneficial interaction.
L-DOPA
A case report of co-administration with vitamin C suggests this may reduce drug side effects (Sacks and Simpson 1975) — beneficial interaction.

TAMOXIFEN
Vitamin C enhanced the antitumour activity in vitro (Lamson & Brignall 2000) — potentially beneficial but difficult to assess.

VINCRISTINE
Vitamin C enhanced the drug’s effect in vivo (Lamson & Brignall 2000) — potentially beneficial but difficult to assess.

PS-341 (BORTEZOMIB, VELCADE)
This is a proteasome inhibitor approved by the US FDA for the treatment of patients with relapsed multiple myeloma. Vitamin C inactivated drug activity in vitro (Zou et al 2006) — avoid.

Clinical note — Does vitamin C interact with the OCP?
In 1981 a case was reported of a woman who had experienced heavy breakthrough bleeding as a result of stopping vitamin C supplementation while taking the OCP (Morris et al 1981). At the time, it was suspected that vitamin C in high doses increases the bioavailability of oestrogen and raises blood concentrations due to competition for sulfation (resulting in reduced drug metabolism) (Back & Orme 1990). Therefore, ceasing supplement use would have the opposite effect and potentially cause breakthrough bleeding, as reported in this case. Since then, further investigation has been conducted to investigate whether this interaction is clinically significant. In 1993 a placebo-controlled study was conducted with 37 women and found that 1000 mg of vitamin C does not lead to an increased systemic bioavailability of ethinyl oestradiol, and therefore the purported interaction is unlikely to be of any clinical importance (Zamah et al 1993).

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
In patients who are sensitive to iron overload, vitamin C supplementation may exacerbate iron toxicity by mobilising iron reserves. As such, vitamin C supplementation should be used with caution by people with erythrocyte glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency, haemochromatosis, thalassaemia major or sideroblastic anaemia.

Supplemental vitamin C can affect the results of numerous laboratory tests and should be stopped prior to:
• carbamazepine

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
• lactate dehydrogenase
• serum AST
• serum bicarbonate
• serum cholesterol
• serum creatinine
• serum creatine kinase
• serum HbA1c
• serum phosphate
• serum triglycerides
• serum urea nitrogen
• stool guiac
• theophylline
• urine 17-hydroxy corticosteroids
• urine 17-ketosteroids
• urine amphetamine
• urine and serum bilirubin
• urine and serum glucose
• urine and serum uric acid.
• urine barbiturate
• urine beta-hydroxybutyrate
• urine iodide
• urine oxalate
• urine paracetamol
• urine protein

Clinical note — Is the kidney stone risk overstated?
Although widely assumed to increase the risk of kidney stones, recent studies suggest high-dose vitamin C supplementation does not significantly increase this risk. In 1994, researchers discovered that vitamin C (in doses as high as 10 g/day) does not increase the amount of oxalate produced in the body (Wandzilak et al 1994). Instead, urine testing used to detect oxalate levels were found to actually be detecting oxalate formed by the conversion of ascorbate during the test procedure. As such, increased urine oxalate as tested by this method does not genuinely represent in vivo oxalate levels when ascorbate is involved. Two prospective studies of over 85,000 women and 45,000 men found that doses ranging from less than 250 mg/day to more than 1500 mg/day taken over 6–14 years did not correlate with occurrence of kidney stones (Curhan et al 1996, 1999). These two large studies
further support the lack of association between vitamin C supplements and kidney stones.

**PREGNANCY USE**

Vitamin C is safe in pregnancy.

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**

- Vitamin C is an essential nutrient for humans, as we are one of the few animal species that cannot synthesise it endogenously.
- Although vitamin C is found widely in fruit and vegetables, up to 100% can be destroyed during cooking and storing as it is sensitive to light, heat, oxygen and alkali.
- Although frank deficiency is uncommon in Westernised countries, marginal deficiency states are not uncommon, particularly in young children fed exclusively on cow's milk for a prolonged period, the institutionalised or isolated elderly, chronic alcoholics, the urban poor or cigarette smokers.
- Vitamin C is an antioxidant and is involved in a myriad of biochemical processes in the body, such as neurotransmitter and hormone synthesis, maintenance of connective tissue, immune function and adrenal function.
- Many studies have found a protective effect for dietary vitamin C intake on cardiovascular disease and cancer incidence, emphasising the importance of adequate dietary intake of fresh fruit and vegetables. Positive effects have also been detected for bone density and cataract incidence.
- Oral vitamin C supplements have been investigated in many different conditions. Positive results have been obtained in some of these studies, such as for reducing duration of the common cold, coronary heart disease prevention, prevention of several cardiovascular diseases and bone mineral density. Results in cancer treatment remain controversial for oral supplements.
- New research shows that long-term supplements do not increase the risk of kidney stones and do not interact with oral contraceptives.

**ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

**What will this vitamin do for me?**

Vitamin C is necessary for health and wellbeing. Supplements have also been used for a variety of uses and in some cases shown to have benefits.

**When will it start to work?**

Studies have found that dietary or supplemental vitamin C may be required for at least 10 years before protection against heart disease or cancer incidence is detected.
However, other benefits may be experienced more quickly, depending on the dose used and indication.

Are there any safety issues?
Vitamin C is considered very safe, although high doses may induce reversible loose bowels or diarrhoea. Supplements should be taken only under medical supervision by people with erythrocyte glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency, haemochromatosis, thalassaemia or sideroblastic anaemia.

REFERENCES


Vitamin D

Historical note  Vitamin D was identified as a nutrient in the early 1900s when it was first realised that cod liver oil had an antirachitic effect in infants.

BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS

The name ‘vitamin D’ actually refers to several related fat-soluble vitamin variants, all of which are sterol (cholesterol-like) substances. Cholecalciferol (D3) is the form found in animal products and fish oils, whereas ergocalciferol (D2) is the major synthetic form of provitamin D and usually found in supplements; however, other forms also exist. These ingested forms of vitamin D have 50–80% bioavailability and are emulsified by the bile salts, then enter through the small intestine into the lymphatic circulation. In the liver and kidneys, these forms are converted to 25-hydroxycholecalciferol and 1,25-dihydroxycholecalciferol, the major circulating active form of vitamin D.

Vitamin D (as D3) is also produced in the body as a result of the conversion of a cholesterol-based precursor, 7-dehydrocholesterol, which is produced in the sebaceous glands of the skin. Exposure to sunlight (UVB) converts this precursor into cholecalciferol over a 2–3 day period. Prolonged exposure to UVB can inactivate some of the newly-formed vitamin D and its precursors so that eventually a state of equilibrium is reached between vitamin D synthesis and catabolism. Therefore, short periods of sun exposure are considered more efficacious than long periods (Working Group of the Australian and New Zealand Bone and Mineral Society, Endocrine Society of Australia and Osteoporosis Australia 2005). Some vitamin D is stored in adipose tissue and can be mobilised during periods when exposure to sunlight is reduced or shortages develop (Nowson & Margerison 2002). Vitamin D and its metabolites are primarily excreted through bile and the degraded active form is removed via the kidney. Losses are believed to be minor, due to both reabsorption of vitamin D derivatives via the enterohepatic recirculation and limited filtration at the kidneys (Kohlmeier 2003). Parathyroid hormone (PTH), calcium and phosphorus are involved in the regulation of vitamin D metabolism.

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS

Cholecalciferol, or vitamin D3, is considered the most important dietary form and is identical to the form produced in the body. Ergocalciferol, or vitamin D2, is produced by fungi and yeasts and is rare in the diet, but a common supplemental form.
(Nowson & Margerison 2002). Ergocalciferol has minor structural differences to D3 but is metabolised similarly and the two are considered to be equipotent (FAO/WHO 2002, Nowson & Margerison 2002, Wahlgqvist 2002).

D2 also comes under the names 1-alpha-OHD2, calcifediol, calciferol, dihydrotachysterol (DHT), ergocalciferolum, ergosterol, whereas D3 may be referred to as 1-alpha-OHD3, alfacalcidol, calcitriol or rocaltrol (Micromedex 2003).

Quantification of any of the vitamin D forms is expressed as either International Units (IU) or micrograms. The conversion is: 1 µg = 40 IU.

**FOOD SOURCES**
Small amounts are found in fatty fish, such as herring, salmon, tuna and sardines, beef and liver, butter, eggs and fortified foods such as margarine and milk (Groff & Gropper 2005). Cod liver oil is also a good source. Some foods are fortified with additional vitamin D, such as milk. Naturally occurring D2 is found only in mushrooms.

**DEFICIENCY SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS**
Although the traditional understanding of hypovitaminosis D revolves around its critical role in calcium metabolism, the extensive presence of 1,25-(OH)2D receptors throughout the body is providing the impetus for further research into actions, deficiency states and therapeutic applications (Groff & Gropper 2005).

**PRIMARY DEFICIENCY**
Unlike many other vitamins, vitamin D is not only ingested through the diet but is also produced and stored in the body. As such, endogenous production, which is reliant on adequate exposure to sunlight, will greatly influence whether deficiency states develop. It has been estimated that exposing the skin to UVB radiation produces approximately 90% of the vitamin D3 (cholecalciferol) that is bioavailable in the body. Currently, the NHMRC reports that it is almost impossible to get sufficient vitamin D from dietary sources alone, stressing the importance of UVB exposure.

**Deficiency more prevalent than once thought**
Inadequate vitamin D is becoming recognised as a real concern, according to the 2005 position statement released by the Working Group of the Australian and New Zealand Bone and Mineral Society, Endocrine Society of Australia and Osteoporosis Australia. It states that there are a significant number of Australians who demonstrate a combination of poor dietary intake and inadequate sun exposure and who require supplementation.

Ongoing research in Australia investigating the prevalence of vitamin D deficiency supports this view and has identified that the wider community is at risk of mild deficiency. The results of a Tasmanian study revealed that although only 8% of 8-
year-olds were considered vitamin D deficient, the prevalence escalated with increasing age to peak at 85% for people aged 60 years (Proceedings from the RACGP Conference, Hobart, October 2003). Other studies have identified deficiencies in 80% of ‘dark-skinned, veiled pregnant women’, 76% of elderly residents in nursing homes and 53% of hostel residents (Grover & Morley 2001, Nowson & Margerison 2002, Sambrook et al 2002). The institutionalised elderly are of particular concern as they often have restricted exposure to sunlight, an estimated twofold reduction in capacity of the skin to produce D3 (Wilson et al 1991), compromised final conversion in the kidneys, reduced tissue response, and further reductions to calcium absorption independent of these pathways (Bouillon et al 1997, FAO/WHO 2002). At the other end of the age spectrum, a 2-year surveillance of infants presenting with vitamin D deficiency-related problems at the Monash Medical Centre in Clayton, Victoria found that of the 13 admitted to hospital, all were from migrant parents and predominantly or exclusively breastfed (Pillow et al 1995). Vitamin D deficiency is not restricted to Australia, as numerous international authors have concluded that it has become an epidemic in all age groups across America and Europe (Holick 2004).

Other populations at risk include hospitalised patients, people with a lifestyle or condition that precludes much sun exposure, such as those at risk of skin cancer, and adolescents and young children who are rapidly growing and are on marginal calcium intakes (FAO/WHO 2002, Wilson et al 1991, Working Group 2005).

**Clinical note — The vitamin D dilemma**

Determining an adequate dietary intake of vitamin D is complex, as multiple variables influence endogenous production and dietary requirements. Factors such as age, season, geographic latitude, time of day, part of body exposed to sunlight and use of sunscreen affect production of endogenous vitamin D. Researchers estimate that full body sun exposure in Australia, sufficient to induce mild erythema, is equivalent to consuming 15,000 IU orally (Working Group 2005). Hence, we have the dilemma.

Public health messages advocate exposure to UVB in order to prevent vitamin D deficiency, but this also exposes individuals to a wavelength that promotes skin cancer. The successful ‘slip slop slap’ campaign in Australia, which encourages covering up and reduced sun exposure, appears at odds with the vitamin D message and may have put many Australians at risk of poor vitamin D status.

Clearly, revision of the current public health messages regarding both vitamin D and safe sunlight exposure has been required for some time. In response, work has been undertaken to develop a message of compromise (Nowson & Margerison 2002, Working Group 2005). Recent evidence from a study by Samanek et al (2006)
supports the concept that safe sun exposure can yield vitamin D repletion. Their research concluded that from October to March only 10–15 minutes of unprotected exposure to 15% of the body outside of the hours 10 am to 3 pm was sufficient; however, during other seasons, up to 1 hour of exposure was required. In addition to this the authors themselves acknowledge that calculations were based on existing serum values, which have been widely contested by other researchers (Gomez et al 2003). In view of some of these concerns, the new NHMRC vitamin guidelines released in 2006 are now recommending an increased Adequate Intake of vitamin D, particularly for adults aged over 50 years. It also suggests varying lengths of time for sun exposure for different skin types in order to achieve adequate levels. Whether these initiatives are sufficient to prevent deficiency in the community remains to be seen.

SECONDARY DEFICIENCY
Malabsorption states such as coeliac disease, Crohn’s disease, gastrectomy, intestinal resection, chronic cholestasis, cystic fibrosis and pancreatic disorders increase the risk of deficiency (Hendler et al 2001, Kumar & Clark 2002).

The use of certain anticonvulsants and chronic administration of glucocorticoids increase the risk of vitamin D deficiency. Several rare hereditary forms of rickets develop because the body cannot process (metabolise) vitamin D normally (Beers & Berkow 2003). Chronic liver disease will obstruct the first hydroxylation reaction, and end-stage kidney disease results in negligible conversion of 25-OHD into 1,25-OHD (Kumar & Clark 2002, Micromedex 2003). One large study also demonstrated that levels of serum 25-OHD are inversely correlated with percentage of body fat and as such morbidly obese individuals have increased requirements (Arunabh et al 2003).

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS OF DEFICIENCY
The previously determined serum concentrations of 25-OHD believed to be indicative of deficiency (<20–25 nmol/L) are considered outdated (Gomez et al 2003). It is now apparent that much higher concentrations, deemed ‘suboptimal’ status, have deleterious effects (Nowson & Margerison 2002).

- Rickets and osteomalacia.
- Osteopenia and osteoporosis.
- Excess PTH secretion and parathyroid hyperplasia.
- Increased risk of fracture in the elderly (this is not just based on the influence of vitamin D on bone mass).
- Generalised muscle weakness.
- Stunted growth.
• Generalised muscle and bone pain.
• Chronic lower back pain (Al Faraj & Al Mutairi 2003).
• Cardiomegaly.
• Increased susceptibility to infections.
• Anaemia, decreased bone cellularity and extramedullary erythropoiesis.
• Impaired glucose-mediated insulin secretion (Brown et al 1999).

An association has been suggested between fibromyalgia presenting with generalised muscle weakness and pain and hypovitaminosis (Holick 2004).

**MAIN ACTIONS**
Whereas vitamin D is considered a fat-soluble vitamin, its active metabolite 1,25-(OH)2D3 is considered more like a steroid hormone because it can be produced by the body and moves through the systemic circulation to reach target tissues via receptors both at the cell membrane and at the nuclear receptor proteins.

**REGULATION OF CALCIUM AND PHOSPHORUS LEVELS**
In conjunction with PTH, which is released under conditions of low calcium levels, vitamin D can stimulate calcium and phosphorus absorption in the intestines, reabsorption in the kidneys and release of calcium from the bones back into the blood. 1,25-(OH)2D3 in turn is regulated by PTH, calcium, phosphorus and 1,25-(OH)2D3 itself (Wahlqvist 2002). To achieve the maximal efficiency of vitamin D-induced intestinal calcium transport, the serum 25(OH) D concentrations must be at least 78 nmol/L (30 ng/mL). In deficiency, intestinal absorption of calcium can be halved in adults (Holick 2004).

**Modelling and remodelling of bone** Besides influencing bone by maintaining calcium and phosphorus homeostasis, vitamin D may also contribute to bone health in other ways.

One pathway involves binding of 1,25 (OH)2D3 to DNA to promote transcription of specific mRNA, which codes for osteocalcin. Osteocalcin is then secreted by the osteoblasts, which bind calcium in new bone (Groff & Gropper 2005). Vitamin D also appears to play a role in oestrogen biosynthesis by increasing expression of the aromatase enzyme gene. It has demonstrated a synergistic effect in select tissues with the phyto-oestrogen genistein, with co-administration leading to a prolonged half-life of active vitamin D (Harkness & Bonny 2005, Swami et al 2005).

**Cell differentiation, proliferation and growth** Some of the actions already described are the result of the vitamin’s capacity to affect cell differentiation, proliferation and growth in many tissues (e.g. differentiation of stem cells into osteoclasts to facilitate bone resorption). Alternatively, 1,25-(OH)2D3 can inhibit
proliferation in many cells, including lymphocytes, keratinocytes, mammary, cardiac and both skeletal and smooth muscle cells. This ability has led to its investigation as a treatment for proliferative disorders such as cancer (Brown et al 1999, Groff & Gropper 2005, Kohlmeier 2003).

**Reduction of PTH and regulation of growth of the parathyroid gland** Although PTH regulates the levels of 1,25-(OH)2D, its secretion is regulated by vitamin D, calcium and phosphorus. In deficiency, hypersecretion of this hormone can cause excessive growth of the parathyroid gland and secondary hyperparathyroidism (Brown et al 1999).

**Immunomodulation** Vitamin D enhances the immune system’s response to both bacterial and viral agents, primarily through promoting differentiation and activity of the macrophages, which means that immune responses can be tailored through the appropriate cell response (Brown et al 1999). Vitamin D primarily influences the cytokine production of immune cells, suppressing the release of IL-2, IFN-gamma and TNF-alpha, products of the Th-1 line of cells, thereby reducing the propensity for a range of autoimmune conditions (Thien et al 2005). There is also some speculation that through this mechanism, vitamin D will promote a Th-2 dominance and may predispose to the atopic diathesis. Evidence in support of this hypothesis comes from two studies that reveal supplementation with vitamin D in early life to be a potential precipitator of allergic disease (Hypponen et al 2001).

**OTHER ACTIONS**
Our current understanding of the role of vitamin D appears to be only part of the picture. Ongoing discovery of previously unidentified receptors on tissues continues to broaden our understanding of its diverse effects.

**HAEMATOPOIETIC TISSUES**
Vitamin D appears to exert an effect on erythropoiesis and bone cellularity through unknown mechanisms. It has also been shown to inhibit clonal cell proliferation in some leukaemia lines and to promote differentiation (Brown et al 1999).

**MUSCLE**
Vitamin D maintains muscle strength and has an effect in skeletal muscle and myocardial function. Although it has been established that skeletal muscles have receptors for vitamin D, the specific actions of this steroid on muscle are largely unknown. Recently a link between fibromyalgia and vitamin D deficiency has been suggested, with an estimation of 40–60% of cases presenting with generalised muscle weakness and pain being undiagnosed hypovitaminosis (Holick 2004). Through unidentified mechanisms vitamin D exerts a direct effect on the myocardium:
1,25-(OH)2D3 controls hypertrophy in cardiac monocytes and, together with 25-OHD, improves the left ventricular function in patients with cardiomyopathies (Brown et al 1999).

**PANCREAS**
Vitamin D is essential for normal insulin secretion, as demonstrated in both animals and humans, and vitamin D receptors have been found in pancreatic beta-cells (Mathieu & Badenhoop 2005). Enhanced insulin synthesis may be due to vitamin D’s role in controlling intracellular calcium flux in islet cells (Brown et al 1999).

**BRAIN**
Evidence is emerging about the specific role of vitamin D in the brain. Information to date implicates 1,25(OH)2D in the biosynthesis of neurotrophic factors, contribution to brain detoxification pathways with increased glutathione and reduced NO, neuroprotective effects, induction of glioma cell death and involvement in neurotransmitter synthesis including acetylcholine and the catecholamines (Garcion et al 2002). Preliminary studies in rats have demonstrated an anti-epileptic action (Kaluff & Tuohimaa 2005). There are tentative links being made between the aetiology/pathophysiology of Parkinson’s disease and poor vitamin D status (Johnson 2001, Kim et al 2005).

**CLINICAL USE**
Vitamin D is administered using various routes and can be prescribed as either supplement or drug. This review will focus only on oral supplementation of D2 or D3 and not the variety of analogues that continue to be extensively studied. For many conditions that appear to require high doses, the race is on to develop and trial pharmaceutical analogues that retain in particular the antiproliferative nature of the vitamin, but are low-calcaemic in order to minimise the associated toxicity seen at such doses.

**DEFICIENCY STATES**
Frank vitamin D deficiency in infancy or childhood produces rickets, which results from reduced sun exposure, deficient diet, or metabolic or malabsorptive diseases. Vitamin D deficiency results in inadequate calcium and phosphorus levels for bone mineralisation (Beers & Berkow 2003). Diagnosis is confirmed with X-ray and serum assay of 25-OHD. When this condition occurs in adults it is called osteomalacia, and its first presentation is often chronic lower back pain (Al Faraj & Al Mutairi 2003). Defective vitamin D metabolism may be another cause, and consequently will not respond to standard oral treatment. In this situation, extremely high doses may be required, which require careful monitoring for toxicity (Beers & Berkow 2003).
Pregnancy and lactation supplementation  Vitamin D appears critical to both musculoskeletal and neurological growth and development of the infant. A recent Australian study investigated the well-documented seasonal variation in birth weight to determine the parameters of anthropometric changes associated with this seasonal variation (McGrath et al 2005). Comparison of over 350,000 mean monthly birth weights of neonates greater than 37 weeks’ gestation revealed overall size, length, head size and skinfold thickness all display seasonal variation, but in particular greater limb length occurred with winter/spring births. Earlier animal studies imply that this may be a consequence of hypertrophy of the cartilage growth plates due to prenatal hypovitaminosis D (McGrath et al 2005).

Whether pregnant women require additional supplementation has been investigated in some studies. The Cochrane Controlled Trials Register has assessed only two trials, producing inconsistent results (Mahomed & Gulmezoglu 2000). However, trials involving over 500 women conducted by Marya et al (1981, 1987), not included in this review, have demonstrated statistically significant increased fetal birth weight, reduced prevalence of hypocalcaemia and hypophosphataemia detected in both maternal and cord blood and reduced blood pressure in non-toxaemic women. Additional evidence suggests a preventative role for a range of autoimmune conditions in the offspring when prenatal vitamin D levels are adequate (Holick 2004).

There is greater consensus regarding the need for vitamin D supplementation during lactation, with breastmilk being recognised as a poor source of this vitamin and that infants are largely dependent on stored vitamin D acquired in utero (Andiran et al 2002).

Treatment of deficiencies secondary to malabsorptive syndromes  Numerous studies have confirmed a high prevalence (25–75%) of hypovitaminosis D in patients with coeliac disease, Crohn’s disease, small bowel resection or cystic fibrosis. A positive correlation was detected in a majority of trials between low vitamin D status and clinical consequences, such as reduced bone mineral density (BMD) and osteopenia. Interestingly, trials investigating the benefits of oral vitamin D supplements (400–800 IU/day) found limited success in patients. Due to the theoretical advantage of supplementation in conditions associated with poor nutrient absorption, larger trials involving higher doses or different forms are expected to determine the most effective treatment (Buchman 1999, Congden et al 1981, Hanly et al 1985, Hoffmann & Zeitz 2000, Jahnsen et al 2002).
CANCER
Given the ability of vitamin D to inhibit abnormal proliferation, its chemoprotective potential has been investigated. Adding to this is the strong epidemiological evidence that suggests some forms of cancer show geographical distribution patterns similar to those reflecting poor UV radiation (Garland et al 1999). Advancing age, as well as ethnicity, have also been positively correlated with these cancers and have been explained again as related to reduced sun exposure.

Colorectal There is now strong evidence from several different lines of investigation supporting the hypothesis that vitamin D may reduce the risk of colorectal cancer (Garland et al 1991, Grant & Garland 2004, Holt et al 2002). A 2004 review of over 20 epidemiological studies into vitamin D and colorectal cancer concluded that the overwhelming majority of both serum and dietary intake assessment designs have demonstrated an inverse relationship. An estimate of daily requirements needed for prevention have been formulated using the data provided by these studies and it is suggested that an oral intake of > 1000 IU/day of vitamin D or serum 25-hydroxyvitamin D levels > 33 ng/mL (82 nmol/L) could reduce the risk of this cancer by as much as 50% (Garland et al 2004).

Prostate Epidemiological evidence from a number of substantial studies, including the Helsinki Heart Study involving 19,000 men, have illustrated that increased levels of circulating 1,25(OH)2D3 and low levels of 25-OHD are inversely associated with prostate cancer, in both incidence and aggressiveness, and are associated with an earlier age of onset (Chen & Holick 2003).

Experimental research with vitamin D has produced interesting results. Prostate cancer cells in vitro respond to vitamin D3 with reduced proliferation, increased differentiation and apoptosis. More recently, reduced activity of the 1-alpha(OH)ase enzyme in cancerous prostate cells was discovered, when compared to healthy prostate tissue, resulting in a reduced ability to convert vitamin D to its active form. Therefore, prostates with cancer display partial resistance to the tumour-suppressing activity of 1,25-(OH)2D3 (Ma et al 2004). Clinical trials using supplemental vitamin D at various stages of prostate cancer have yielded inconsistent results (Miller 1999).

Breast There is some epidemiological evidence to suggest an inverse association between vitamin D and breast cancer (Grant 2006). One study involving 179 breast cancer patients and 179 controls that assessed vitamin D status of patients and polymorphisms of vitamin D identified an inverse relationship, possibly as high as 7-fold, between 25 OHD levels and breast cancer risk (Lowe et al 2005). The vitamin D receptors in mammary tissue have been shown to oppose oestrogen-driven proliferation of cells (Welsh et al 2003).
**DIABETES**
Vitamin D deficiency has been linked to both type 1 and type 2 diabetes. To date the largest volume of evidence relates to prenatal and infant vitamin D levels and an inverse association with a child’s overall risk of developing type 1. One birth cohort study published in the *Lancet* in 2001 involved the offspring of 12,055 pregnant Finnish women who gave birth in 1966. The families were assessed for vitamin D supplementation in the infant’s first year of life and then the child was followed until 31 years of age to account for subsequent diagnoses of type 1 diabetes. It was shown that treatment of children with 2000 IU/day vitamin D from 1 year of age decreased the risk of developing type 1 diabetes mellitus by 80% throughout the next 20 years; furthermore, children from the same cohort who were vitamin D-deficient at 1 year of age had a 4-fold increased risk of developing type 1 diabetes (Hypponen et al 2001). Similar findings have been demonstrated in animal models, with pretreatment with 1,25(OH)2D being effective in mitigating or preventing the onset of type 1.

A case control study conducted in Norway involving 545 Norwegian children up to 15 years old with type 1 diabetes retrospectively assessed their cod liver oil and vitamin D use from birth to 12 months old. Children who had been given cod liver oil five times a week had a 26% lower incidence of the disease, whereas other forms of vitamin D appeared to bear no relationship (Stene & Joner 2003). Although this does not adequately assess vitamin D as a sole treatment agent and is not conclusive, it adds to the growing body of evidence implicating vitamin D in a preventive role.

Small interventionalal studies have also been conducted in populations with type 2 diabetes using vitamin D to enhance insulin secretion and activity. In one clinical trial, 10 adult women with type 2 diabetes were administered 1332 IU/day oral vitamin D for 1 month. Corresponding changes were observed in first-phase insulin secretion (34.3% increase) and serum 25-OHD levels. Improvements observed in second-phase insulin secretion and insulin resistance were deemed non-significant (Borrisova et al 2003).

**HYPOPARATHYROIDISM**
Vitamin D in combination with calcium has established benefits in the treatment of hypoparathyroidism, by promoting homeostasis of calcium, phosphorus 25-OHD and PTH levels (Mimouni et al 1986).

**Secondary hyperparathyroidism** In a controlled study involving 100 postmenopausal women with confirmed vitamin D deficiency (<18 nmol), supplementation with combination calcium and low-dose vitamin D showed the more significant reductions in PTH levels over the 90-day trial than calcium alone (Deroisy et al 2002).
HYPOPHOSPHATAEMIA
A combination of high-dose vitamin D and phosphorus results in improved phosphorus and calcium balance in these patients (Lyles et al 1982).

OSTEOPOROSIS
Although serum 1,25-(OH)2D levels are low in osteoporotic patients, vitamin D alone has not been shown to increase BMD (Hunter et al 2000, Wilson et al 1991). Alternatively, studies investigating vitamin D’s role in the prevention of fractures associated with osteoporosis have produced some positive results. In a 2001 review on the use of minerals in the prevention of fractures associated with osteoporosis, combination treatment of calcium and vitamin D was considered to produce the greatest reductions.

REDUCING FALLS IN THE ELDERLY
Poor vitamin D status is independently associated with an increased risk of falling in the elderly, particularly in those aged 65–75 years (Snijder et al 2006). A 2004 review of double-blind RCTs of vitamin D in elderly populations conducted between 1960 and 2004 found that supplementation with vitamin D reduced the risk of a fall by more than 20% and that approximately 15 people needed to take vitamin D for up to 3 years to protect one person from a fall. The results were significant in women only and appeared to be independent of calcium administration, type of vitamin D and duration of therapy (Bischoff-Ferrari et al 2006). More recent research has suggested an even greater reduction in the incidence of falls. According to a double-blind randomised study involving 64 institutionalised elderly women (age range: 65–97 years; mean 25-hydroxyvitamin D levels: 16.4 ng/ml), treatment with 1200 mg/day calcium plus 800 IU/day cholecalciferol over a 3-month treatment period reduced the rate of falls by 60% compared with calcium supplementation alone (Bischoff-Ferrari et al 2006). After conducting a balance assessment, it was estimated that of the observed 60% reduction in the rate of falls, up to 22% of the treatment effect was explained by a change in postural balance and up to 14% by dynamic balance. A 60% reduction in the incidence of peripheral fractures was also identified by Cosman in 2005 for vitamin D supplementation (700–800 IU/day) with adequate or supplemented calcium. With regard to hip fracture specifically, a 40% reduction in incidence was observed. As a result of these impressive results, routine administration is recommended for those institutionalised or housebound elderly who are already at risk of deficiency (Sambrook & Eisman 2002).
ANTICONVULSANT-INDUCED OSTEOIMALACIA
Preliminary evidence has shown vitamin D to be an effective treatment for this condition; however, much emphasis has been placed on establishing the most superior form of D, D2 or D3, as they exhibit important metabolic differences in these patients (Hartwell et al 1989, Tjellesen et al 1985, 1986). Results of the RCTs to date suggest that D2 may be the most effective form in the restoration of bone mineral content in patients on anticonvulsant treatment (Tjellesen et al 1985).

HEPATIC AND RENAL OSTEOODYSTROPHY
Both chronic liver disease and those conditions exhibiting end-stage renal disease result in compromised hydroxylation of vitamin D to produce its active metabolite. It has been reported that 50% of patients with chronic liver disease, especially those with primary or secondary biliary cirrhosis, present with associated osteodystrophy. This frequently leads to a vitamin D deficiency and manifests most commonly as metabolic bone disorders, hypocalcaemia and secondary hyperparathyroidism (Wills & Savory 1984). The resultant hypovitaminosis D can result in bone loss, cardiovascular disease, immune suppression and increased mortality in patients with end-stage kidney failure (Andress 2006). Consequently, correction of this deficiency has been one of many first line treatments in these situations.

Although vitamin D2 supplementation in combination with calcium, phosphorus and magnesium (where indicated) has shown some success in those patients with hepatic osteodystrophy (Compston et al 1979, Long & Wills 1978), recent trials and emerging research implicate other factors in the aetiology of these sequelae (Klein et al 2002, Suzuki et al 1998). As such, therapy with D2 may need to be reviewed.

The treatment of renal osteodystrophy is reliant upon only the active forms or analogues of vitamin D and natural supplementation is ineffective due to the inability to convert these precursors into 1,25-alpha(OH)2D (Kim & Sprague 2002).

LOCALISED AND SYSTEMIC SCLERODERMA
Although patients suffering scleroderma do not show compromised D synthesis (Matsuoka et al 1991), vitamin D3 has been investigated as a therapeutic agent to moderate the excessive proliferation and collagen production typically seen in this condition. An in vitro study assessing the action of vitamin D3 on the behaviour of affected fibroblasts has confirmed a non-selective antiproliferative action (Boelsma et al 1995).

To date, clinical studies have produced mixed results. Clinical trials focusing on generalised scleroderma have involved small numbers and produced promising results, such as increased joint mobility, reduced induration and increased extensibility
of the skin, with benefits lasting at least 1 year after discontinuation of treatment (Caca-Biljanovska et al 1999, Hulshof et al 1994). However, the largest RCT involving 27 patients (the majority of whom suffered a localised condition) found that treatment over 9 months with a similar dose of D3 failed to produce any significant changes in any of the assessment criteria (Hulshof et al 2000). These results suggest that different therapies may be required for the two conditions; however, larger controlled studies are required to confirm those positive results from the preliminary open trials.

**OTHER USES**

**MULTIPLE SCLEROSIS**
There is reasonably strong ecologic and case–control evidence that vitamin D reduces the risk of multiple sclerosis (Grant 2006).

**PSORIASIS**
As a regulator of cellular growth and differentiation in various tissues, vitamin D has been investigated in psoriasis. The active form of vitamin D and its analogues have been found to suppress growth and stimulate the terminal differentiation of keratinocytes.

**VAGINAL ATROPHY**
Animal studies have revealed the presence of vitamin D receptors in the cells lining the vagina (Yildirim et al 2004a). Given the established role of vitamin D in regulating growth and differentiation of tissues, especially those lining stratified squamous epithelium, a possible role for vitamin D in the prevention and treatment of vaginal atrophy associated with menopause is being considered (Yildirim et al 2004b). A number of studies involving co-administration with calcium have produced generally positive results.

---

**Clinical note — A link between vitamin D and schizophrenia?**
The epidemiological correlation between babies born in winter and spring and an increased prevalence of schizophrenia has been a long established phenomenon and presented many riddles for researchers (Kendell & Adams 2002). The association has also been observed in cities where air pollution reduces UV irradiation, and, more recently, a 7–10-fold increased risk in second-generation dark-skinned migrants. These observations have led to the emergence of a neurodevelopmental theory of schizophrenia, which suggests that low prenatal
vitamin D interferes with brain development by interacting with D responsive/susceptible genes to create the currently recognised polygenic effects of schizophrenia (Mackay-Sim et al. 2004).

A significant contribution to the investigation of this theory has been made by the Queensland Centre for Schizophrenic Research led by Professor John McGrath. The Centre’s work has taken the level of evidence beyond the early epidemiological findings, with research being conducted to assess the impact of vitamin D deficiency on animal brains and in vitro cultures. Research has also been conducted to measure third trimester serum 25(OH)D levels in schizophrenic and schizoaffective mothers, while investigating the impact of vitamin D supplementation prior to 1 year of age in the infants and the subsequent risk reduction for the disease in later life (McGrath et al. 2003, 2004a, b). The preliminary evidence to date shows some support for this hypothesis, with a consistent positive relationship appearing for males and some evidence pointing towards a stronger relationship in dark-skinned populations compared to fairer skinned populations.

**DOSAGE RANGE**
The NHMRC vitamin guidelines released in 2006 make the following recommendations for ADI:
- Children and adults <50 years: 5 µg/day.
- Adults 51–70 years: 10 µg/day.
- Adults over 70 years: 15 µg/day.

The AI is based on the amount of vitamin D required to maintain serum 25(OH)D at a level of at least 27.5 nmol/L with minimal sun exposure. The level has been raised in the 51–70 year age group to account for the reduced capacity of the skin to produce vitamin D with ageing. The higher level recommended in the over 70 years group was made because this group tends to have less exposure to sunlight.

**ACCORDING TO CLINICAL STUDIES**
(D2 supplemental form unless otherwise indicated.)
- Uncomplicated rickets: 1600 IU/day for the first month, gradually reducing the dose to 400 IU.
- Osteomalacia: 36 000 IU/day with calcium supplementation.
- Rickets and osteomalacia due to defective metabolism: 50 000–300 000 IU/day.
- Pregnancy supplementation: two large doses of 600 000 IU in the 7th and 8th months (Marya et al. 1981).
• Reduction in fractures associated with osteoporosis: prevention of fractures has resulted from as little as 200 IU/day in combination with calcium (Hunter et al 2000).
• Reduction in falls: 1200 mg/day calcium plus 800 IU/day cholecalciferol.
• Hyperparathyroidism: 2.5–6.25 mg/day.
• Hepatic osteodystrophy: 4000 IU/day.
• Anticonvulsant osteomalacia: 4000 IU D2/day for 105 days, followed by 1000 IU/day.
• Systemic scleroderma: 0.75–1.25 µg D3 for 6 months.

TOXICITY
Toxic ingestion of prescribed forms of vitamin D or excessive dietary consumption of either D2 or D3 has been reported in the vicinity of 50 000–100 000 IU/day or 10 000 IU taken routinely for several months. Obtaining such enormous amounts from unfortified foods is improbable. The resultant hypercalcaemia manifests as anorexia, nausea, vomiting, polyuria, muscle pain, unusual tiredness, dry mouth, persistent headache and secondary polydipsia. Over extended periods of time this state of hypervitaminosis can result in metastatic calcification of soft tissues including kidney, blood vessels, heart and lungs. Symptoms and signs at this later stage include cloudy urine, pruritis, drowsiness, weight loss, sensitivity to light, hypertension, arrhythmia, fever and abdominal pain. Toxic levels cannot be obtained from excessive sun exposure (FAO/WHO 2002, Groff & Gropper 2005).

ADVERSE REACTIONS
High doses of supplements may induce the following:
• arterial calcification
• arrhythmia
• gastrointestinal distress including nausea, vomiting and constipation
• hypercalcaemia
• nephrotoxicity, manifesting as polyuria, polydipsia and nocturia.

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
Only those interactions relevant to the oral supplemental forms of vitamin D will be reviewed.
A number of pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic interactions are possible with vitamin D and a range of medicines and minerals.
**LIPID-LOWERING DRUGS**

Drugs such as cholestyramine and colestipol may compromise the absorption of all fat-soluble vitamins. To avoid the interaction, administer the supplement at least 1 hour prior to or 4–6 hours after ingestion of the drug (Harkness & Bratman 2003).

**MINERAL OIL**

Mineral oil impairs absorption of all fat-soluble nutrients and may therefore deplete oral intake of vitamin D sources — separate doses by at least 2 hours.

**ORLISTAT**

Although orlistat has been shown to reduce the absorption of some fat-soluble nutrients, its effect on vitamin D specifically remains unclear. Concurrent supplementation of a multivitamin with D is advised — separate doses by a minimum of 4 hours either side of ingestion of orlistat (Harkness & Bratman 2003).

**GLUCOCORTICOIDS**

In high doses these drugs directly inhibit vitamin D-mediated calcium uptake in the gastrointestinal tract and through unknown mechanisms may deplete levels of active vitamin D (Wilson et al 1991). During long-term therapy with either oral or inhaled corticosteroids, calcium and vitamin D supplementation should be considered.

**CALCIUM-CHANNEL BLOCKERS**

Vitamin D supplementation may reduce effectiveness of these drugs — use with caution unless under medical supervision (Harkness & Bratman 2003).

**OESTROGENS**

Vitamin D works synergistically with oestrogens to prevent bone loss — beneficial interaction.

**MAGNESIUM**

Either an excess or inadequate level of magnesium can impact on vitamin D status. The final hydroxylation step to 1,25(OH)2D3 is dependent upon magnesium and a deficiency would compromise this. However, high levels of magnesium, mimicking calcium, can suppress PTH secretion, also suppressing the activation phase (Groff & Gropper 2005). Therefore magnesium levels within the normal range will enhance activation of vitamin D to its active form.

**KETOCONAZOLE**

This drug reduces the conversion of vitamin D to its active forms — increased vitamin D intake may be required with long-term drug use.
PHENYTOIN AND VALPROATE
The anticonvulsants, through liver induction, induce catabolism of vitamin D and prolonged use is associated with increased risk of developing rickets and osteomalacia.

ANTITUBERCULOSIS DRUGS
Drugs such as rifampicin and isoniazid have been reported to induce catabolism of vitamin D and in some cases manifest as reduced levels of metabolites. This may represent a concern in those patients already at risk of poor vitamin D status (Harkness & Bratman 2003).

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
- Hypersensitivity to vitamin D.
- Systemic lupus erythematosus.
- Hypercalcaemia.
- Not to be taken in sarcoidosis or hyperparathyroidism without medical supervision.
- Possible interference with the action of calcium-channel blockers.
- High doses require medical supervision in patients with arteriosclerosis and heart disease.
- High doses capable of inducing hypercalcaemia may precipitate arrhythmias in patients taking digitalis.

PREGNANCY USE
Vitamin D supplements as either D2 or D3 are exempt from pregnancy classification by the TGA, which reflects their safety in pregnancy and lactation (Australian Drug Evaluation Committee 1999).

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Vitamin D has a critical role in bone growth and development but has also diverse roles throughout the body, including inhibiting abnormal proliferation of cells.
- Most vitamin D is endogenously produced through sun exposure and an activation process that involves both the liver and the kidneys; food sources represent a secondary and often unreliable source. Those groups in the community who have restricted sun exposure are at the greatest risk of a deficiency, including the elderly, newborns, institutionalised, adolescents and young children with marginal calcium intake during rapid growth periods, and those with dark skins.
- Vitamin D supplements are most commonly given in combination with other nutrients, such as calcium, in the prevention of falls and prevention or treatment of osteoporosis.
• Other uses for vitamin D include supplementation during pregnancy to increase fetal levels, correction of deficiencies that may result from medications or malabsorptive diseases such as coeliac disease, Crohn’s disease and cystic fibrosis, as a protective agent against breast, prostate and colorectal cancer, and for a variety of metabolic bone disorders.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this vitamin do for me?
Vitamin D is essential for health and wellbeing. It plays a critical role in regulating calcium and phosphorus levels in the body, and is important for healthy bones and preventing abnormal cell changes, which may increase the risk of some cancers.

When will it start to work?
This will depend on the condition being treated. In uncomplicated rickets, serum levels should begin to rise in 1–2 days and after 3 weeks signs of calcium and phosphorus mineralisation appear on X-ray.

Are there any safety issues?
Vitamin D is considered a safe supplement when used in recommended doses; however, it may interact with some other medicines.

REFERENCES


© 2007 Elsevier Australia


Vitamin E

Historical note  Vitamin E was first discovered in 1922 at the University of California in Berkeley when it was observed that rats required the nutrient in order to maintain their fertility. In this way, vitamin E became known as the antisterility vitamin, which is reflected in its name, as tokos and pheren are the Greek words for ‘offspring’ and ‘to bear’. Although considered an essential nutrient, it was not until the mid-1960s that deficiency states in humans were first identified. More specifically, deficiency was detected in children with fat malabsorption syndromes.

BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS
Alpha-tocopherol is absorbed from the intestinal lumen and is dependent upon adequate fat digestion. After micellisation, it enters the lymphatic circulation and then the systemic circulation where it is transported in chylomicrons. Breakdown of chylomicrons in the blood releases some vitamin E, which is then taken up by circulating lipoproteins such as LDL and HDL. The remaining vitamin E is transported via chylomicron remnants to the liver. Here, the RRR alpha-tocopherol form is preferentially secreted back into the circulation in VLDL. It is suspected that hepatic alpha-tocopherol transfer protein is responsible for discriminating between the different types of tocopherols at this point (with the natural form preferentially taken up). Vitamin E is ultimately delivered to tissues when chylomicrons and VLDL are broken down by lipoprotein lipase. Vitamin E transported by LDL is also taken up by tissues via the LDL receptor. The bulk of vitamin E is stored in adipose tissue, although some storage also occurs in the heart, muscles, testes, uterus, adrenal and pituitary glands, and blood. Vitamin E metabolites are mainly excreted in the faeces, although some is also excreted by the kidneys and the skin (Shils et al 1999).

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
To date, eight different naturally occurring compounds have been identified and named as alpha-, beta-, gamma- and delta-tocopherol and alpha-, beta-, gamma- and delta-tocotrienol. Acetate and succinate derivatives of natural and synthetic forms of vitamin E also have vitamin E-like activity, although the strength of activity varies between the different compounds and is less than the naturally occurring RRR stereoisomer α-alpha-tocopherol. The human diet generally provides a mixture of compounds with vitamin E activity.
RELATIVE STRENGTHS OF THE VARIOUS FORMS OF VITAMIN E

The relative strength of the different forms of vitamin E can be expressed as either alpha-tocopherol equivalents (alpha-TE) or international units (IU). One alpha-TE represents the activity of 1 mg RRR-alpha-tocopherol (α-alpha-tocopherol), and the alpha-TE of natural forms of vitamin E can be calculated using simple mathematics. The number of milligrams of beta-tocopherol should be multiplied by 0.5, gamma-tocopherol by 0.1, and alpha-tocotrienol by 0.3, whereas any of the synthetic all-rac-alpha-tocopherols (dl-alpha-tocopherol) should be multiplied by 0.74 (FAO/WHO 2002).

More commonly, activity is described in terms of International Units (IU) where 1 mg of synthetic all-rac-alpha-tocopherol (dl-alpha-tocopherol) acetate is equivalent to 1 IU of vitamin E. Relative to this, 1 mg of dl-alpha-tocopherol is equal to 1.1 IU, 1 mg of d-alpha-tocopheryl acid succinate is equal to 1.21 IU and 1 mg of d-alpha-tocopheryl acetate is equal to 1.36 IU. The natural form of d-alpha-tocopherol has the highest biopotency, which is equal to at least 1.49 IU (Meydani & Hayes 2003).

FOOD SOURCES

Vitamin E is found in various forms in both animal and plant foods. The richest food sources of vitamin E are cold pressed vegetable oils, particularly wheatgerm oil, nuts and seeds. Other sources include spinach, kale, sweet potatoes, yams, egg yolk, liver, soya beans, asparagus and dairy products such as butter and milk. Frying, processing, bleaching, milling and freezing foods will remove some of the vitamin E content. Overall, up to 55% can be lost through cooking (Wahlqvist et al 2002).

DEFICIENCY SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Due to the widespread availability of vitamin E in the food chain, it is generally accepted that primary vitamin E deficiency does not occur. However, deficiency has been reported in low birth weight infants given infant formula or cows’ milk with low vitamin E levels, and in some intestinal malabsorption syndromes such as cystic fibrosis. Genetic abnormalities in alpha-tocopherol transport protein also result in vitamin E deficiency (Shils et al 1999).

Ultimately, it is tissue uptake, local oxidative stress levels and polyunsaturated fat content that influence whether symptoms of deficiency develop.

Symptoms of deficiency tend to be vague and difficult to diagnose due to the nutrient’s widespread actions, but the following signs and symptoms have been reported in humans (FAO/WHO 2002, Meydani & Hayes 2003).

- Haemolytic anaemia.
- Immunological abnormalities.
• Neurological disturbances (e.g. peripheral neuropathies).
• Platelet dysfunction.
• Leakage of muscle enzymes such as creatine kinase and pyruvate kinase into plasma.
• Increased levels of lipid peroxidation products in plasma.

MAIN ACTIONS
Vitamin E is an electron donor (reducing agent or antioxidant), and many of its biochemical and molecular functions can be accounted for by this function. It is involved in many biochemical processes in the body, but its most important biological function is that of an antioxidant and working within the antioxidant network.

ANTIOXIDANT
Vitamin E is considered to be the most important and potent lipid-soluble antioxidant. It prevents free radical damage to the PUFAs within the phospholipid layer of each cell membrane and oxidation of LDL. It has been estimated that for every 1000–2000 molecules of phospholipid, one molecule of vitamin E is present for antioxidant defence (Sen & Packer 2000).

This is achieved by reacting with free radical molecules and forming a tocopheroxyl radical, which then leaves the cell membrane. Upon entering the aqueous environment outside the membrane, it reacts with vitamin C (or other hydrogen donors such as glutathione) to become reduced and, therefore, regenerated (Vatassery 1987). In this way, vitamin E activity is influenced by what has been called the ‘antioxidant network’, which restores vitamin E to its unoxidised state, ready to act as an antioxidant many times over (see Clinical note below for more information).

Taking a larger perspective, the collective antioxidant action at each cell membrane protects the body’s tissues and organs from undue oxidative stress. Prolonged and/or excessive exposure to free radicals has been implicated in many conditions, such as cardiovascular disease, cancer initiation and promotion, degenerative diseases, and ageing in general (FAO/WHO 2002).

Clinical note — Free radicals, antioxidant recycling and the antioxidant network
Oxygen-containing free radicals (such as the hydroxyl radical, superoxide anion radical, hydrogen peroxide, oxygen singlet and nitric oxide radical) are highly reactive species, capable of damaging biologically important molecules such as...
DNA, proteins, carbohydrates and lipids. Antioxidants can break the destructive cascade of reactions initiated by free radicals by converting them into harmless derivatives.

The term ‘oxidative stress’ refers to an imbalance of free radicals over antioxidants. Both endogenous and exogenous antioxidants work in a synergistic way to avoid this situation, but antioxidants such as vitamin E become oxidised themselves during this process. Other antioxidants, such as ubiquinone, ascorbate and glutathione, are then involved in recycling vitamin E back to its unoxidised state, allowing it to continue neutralising free radical molecules (Sen & Packer 2000). When these other antioxidants become oxidised in turn, they are also regenerated to their antioxidant forms by yet others such as alpha-lipoic acid and cysteine. In this way, the recycling of various antioxidants occurs in an orchestrated manner.

In the body, the antioxidant network comprises four parts that work together to provide a continuous defence against free radical damage (De Vita et al 2006).

- Enzymes that destroy or detoxify common oxidants (e.g. catalase, glutathione peroxidase, which needs selenium).
- Antioxidant vitamins, notably vitamins E and C, and coenzyme Q10, which are continuously recycled, as discussed earlier.
- Dietary antioxidants or phytochemicals (e.g. carotenoids, polyphenols and allyl sulfides).
- Proteins that sequester iron and copper so that free forms do not exist in the body.

The antioxidant network provides a basis for recommending combinations of foods and antioxidant nutrients to provide maximal benefits rather than single entities in high doses.

**REGULATES IMMUNOCOMPETENCE**

Vitamin E increases humoral antibody production, resistance to bacterial infections, cell-mediated immunity, the T-lymphocyte response, TNF production, and NK cell activity, thereby playing a role in immunocompetence. It also decreases PGE$_2$ production and therefore reduces its immunosuppressive effects and decreases levels of lipid peroxides that can also adversely affect immune function (Meydani 1995).

**OTHER ACTIONS**

- Regulates vascular smooth muscle cell proliferation.
- Inhibits smooth muscle cell proliferation by inhibiting protein kinase C activity.
- Inhibits phospholipase A2 activity, suppressing arachidonic acid metabolism.
Antiplatelet activity: demonstrated in vitro, but in vivo tests have been inconsistent for α-tocopherol.

Modulates vascular function by regulating the enzymatic activities of endothelial nitric oxide synthase (eNOS) and NAD(P)H oxidase (Ulker et al 2003).

Analgesic activity: most likely mediated via effects on COX-2 and 5-lipoxygenase.

Promotes wound healing.

Influences signal transduction pathways and participates in the synthesis pathways of neurotransmitters.

Exerts neuroprotective effects.

Modulates the expression of genes that are involved in atherosclerosis (e.g. scavenger receptors, integrins, selectins, cytokines, cyclins) (Munteanu et al 2004).

CLINICAL USE

Although vitamin E supplementation is used to correct or prevent deficiency states, most uses are based on the concept of high-dose supplements acting as therapeutic agents to either prevent or treat various health conditions.

DEFICIENCY: PREVENTION AND TREATMENT

Traditionally, vitamin E supplementation has been used to treat deficiency or prevent deficiency in conditions such as genetic abnormalities with alpha-tocopherol transfer protein, apolipoprotein B, or microsomal triglyceride transfer protein (Shils et al 1999); and fat malabsorption syndromes (e.g. chronic cholestasis, cystic fibrosis, short bowel syndromes such as Crohn’s disease, chronic steatorrhea, coeliac disease, chronic pancreatitis and TPN).

CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE

Vitamin E is most well known for its effects on the cardiovascular system, as it inhibits platelet aggregation and adhesion, smooth muscle cell proliferation, has an anti-inflammatory effect on monocytes, improves endothelial function and decreases lipid peroxidation (Kaul et al 2001). It also modulates the expression of genes that are involved in atherosclerosis (e.g. scavenger receptors, integrins, selectins, cytokines, cyclins) (Munteanu et al 2004). Its ability to reduce oxidative stress both directly and indirectly as part of the antioxidant network is of particular importance because oxidation of LDL is a key process in atherogenesis, enhancing foam cell and early lesion formation (Terentis et al 2002).

As such, much investigation is being undertaken to determine whether it has a role in the primary and/or secondary prevention of cardiovascular disease.

Epidemiological and clinical studies In 1946 Canadian physicians first reported that vitamin E could protect against coronary heart disease; however, it was not until...
the results of two very large human studies were published nearly 50 years later that the greater scientific community and the public started to take note of vitamin E. In 1993, the prospective Nurses’ Health Study and the Health Professionals Follow-up study both reported that vitamin E supplementation at a dose of at least 100 IU for at least 2 years significantly reduced the risk of coronary disease compared with non-users by an estimated 40% (Rimm et al 1993, Stampfer et al 1993).

The prospective Nurses Health Study followed 87,245 women aged 34–59 years without known coronary disease over 8 years and identified that those women with the highest intake of vitamin E had the lowest relative risk of non-fatal myocardial infarction (MI) or death from coronary disease compared with those with the lowest intake (Stampfer et al 1993). Interestingly, short-term use or dietary intake alone did not produce the same significant reduction. The Health Professionals Follow-up study observed 39,910 men aged between 40 and 75 years over 4 years and produced similar results, finding that long-term vitamin E (at least 100 IU/day) significantly reduced the relative risk of coronary disease compared with non-users (Rimm et al 1993).

Subsequently, a double-blind study conducted at Cambridge University and published in 1996 supported these results, but further suggested that higher doses could produce benefits more quickly and more dramatically (Stephens et al 1996). The placebo-controlled randomised study involved 2002 patients with angiographically proven coronary atherosclerosis and compared the effects of two different strengths of alpha-tocopherol supplementation (400 IU and 800 IU) and placebo over a median of 510 days. Treatment with either dose of vitamin E was seen to reduce the risk of cardiovascular death and non-fatal MI by over 75% with effects established after 12 months.

Since these early studies were published, newer intervention studies using vitamin E as a sole agent or in combination with other antioxidants have generally produced negative results; however, a number of important factors could account for some of the inconsistent results (see Clinical note below).

In 1999, results from the large GISSI trial were published, which produced conflicting results. The trial, involving 11,324 patients who had recently survived a MI (<3 months) investigated the effects of three different treatment protocols with placebo: 1 g omega-3 fatty acid/day, 300 IU synthetic vitamin E/day, fish oils plus vitamin E/day, or placebo. The four groups were observed for nearly 4 years for cardiovascular disease morbidity and mortality. Results showed that the fish oil treatment groups had significantly decreased combined end-points of death, non-fatal MI and stroke over this time, whereas the vitamin E treatment produced little
effect. The trial has since been criticised because the form of vitamin E used was synthetic, the dose used was relatively low compared with other studies involving patients with pre-existing disease. Subgroup analysis of cardiovascular deaths ultimately did detect a protective effect for vitamin E that was similar to the fish oil treatment.

The Heart Outcomes Prevention Evaluation (HOPE) study observed the effects of natural vitamin E 400 IU/day, the drug ramipril or placebo over 4.5 years in 9541 subjects (>55 years old) who were considered a high-risk group for cardiovascular events (Yusuf et al 2000). This study failed to detect a protective effect for vitamin E supplementation on the primary outcome, which was a composite end-point of MI, stroke, and death from cardiovascular disease. The study was extended for a mean of 7 additional years and renamed the HOPE-TOO study, which involved 3994 of the original subjects (Lonn et al 2005). Natural vitamin E (400 IU/day) failed to reduce the incidence of major cardiovascular events and there was suggestion it may increase the rate of heart failure.

The MRC/BHF study of 20,536 UK adults (aged 40–80 years) with coronary disease, other occlusive arterial disease, or diabetes found that a daily antioxidant supplement containing 600 mg vitamin E, 250 mg vitamin C, and 20 mg beta-carotene produced no significant differences in all-cause mortality, or in deaths due to vascular or non-vascular causes (Parkinson Study Group 2002). Additionally, no significant differences in the numbers of participants having non-fatal MI or coronary death, non-fatal or fatal stroke or coronary or non-coronary revascularisation were observed.

A low-dose study investigating the effects of synthetic alpha-tocopherol at a dose of 50 mg/day failed to detect a significant protective effect against coronary disease (Virtamo et al 1998). The Alpha-Tocopherol Beta-carotene Cancer (ATBC) Prevention Study found that treatment with low-dose vitamin E produced a non-significant reduction of 8% on the incidence of fatal coronary disease in smokers (n = 27,271) but had no influence over non-fatal MI (Virtamo et al 1998). The population studied were Finnish male smokers aged 50–69 years with no history of MI.

In the Primary Prevention Project (PPP), 100 mg/day of aspirin or 300 mg/day of all-rac-alpha-tocopherol was investigated in 4495 people with hypertension, hypercholesterolaemia, diabetes, obesity, family history of premature MI, or the elderly (de Gaetano 2001). The study had a mean follow-up period of 3.6 years. Vitamin E had no significant effect on cardiovascular death, non-fatal MI, or non-fatal stroke; however, a significant 46% reduction in the incidence of peripheral artery disease was reported. The authors pointed out that the findings for vitamin E could
be regarded as a false-negative result because of the inadequate power of the prematurely interrupted trial.

Most recently, data from a major randomised study involving 39,876 healthy women of at least 45 years of age from the Women’s Health Study found that long-term use of natural vitamin E (600 IU) taken on alternate days provided no overall benefit for major cardiovascular events (Lee et al 2005).

Alternatively, the Secondary Prevention with Antioxidants of Cardiovascular Disease in Endstage Renal Disease (SPACE) trial demonstrated a striking 50% reduction in cardiac events in renal failure patients with established disease receiving 800 IU/day vitamin E (Boaz et al 2000). It is thought that the SPACE trial produced positive results because the dose was comparable to that used in the CHAOS study and it involved a population known to be under increased oxidative stress.

**Clinical note — Confusing results for vitamin E**

To date, many in vitro, animal and epidemiological studies support the use of vitamin E in the prevention of cardiovascular disease (Clarke & Armitage 2002). However, intervention studies are equivocal. Many factors could account for the lack of benefit on the primary end-point in the majority of trials.

1. **Dose selection**
   
   A closer look at the evidence shows that dose selection varies enormously from levels just above the RDI (50 mg/day) to large doses of 800 IU/day. Clinical research shows that a daily dose of at least 400 IU is required for LDL to become less susceptible to oxidation (Brookes et al 2003) and an effective threshold dose may be as high as 800 IU/day (Jialal & Devaraj 2005a).

2. **Measurement of biomarkers of oxidative stress**
   
   Just as the statin trials investigate subjects with high cholesterol levels rather than the general population, it can be reasonably assumed that antioxidant treatment is best suited to those people with increased oxidative stress rather than the general population, yet researchers consistently fail to consider this as a biochemical basis for patient inclusion (Meagher 2003). The levels of oxidised amino acids in urine and plasma can reflect those in tissues and identify people with high levels of oxidative stress and may be one method of subject selection (Heinecke 2002).

3. **Type of vitamin E supplement**
   
   In the specific case of vitamin E, the form of tocopherol used is crucial, as synthetic forms have less biological activity than RRR-d-alpha-tocopherol. According to a 2002 FAO/WHO report, cross-country correlations between coronary heart disease mortality in men and the supply of vitamin E homologues across 24
European countries shows a highly significant ($P < 0.001$) correlation for d-alpha-tocopherol, whereas all other forms of vitamin E do not achieve statistical significance.

In the past few years, it has further been proposed that the lack of efficacy of commercial tocopherol preparations in some clinical trials may be due to the absence of other natural tocopherols, primarily gamma- and delta-tocopherol. Preliminary studies provide some support for this view (Jialal & Devaraj 2005a, Saldeen & Saldeen 2005). Studies using different mixtures of alpha-, beta-, gamma- and delta-tocopherol have found that a mixture of gamma-, delta- and alpha-tocopherol with the ratio of 5:2:1 had a much better antioxidant effect than alpha-tocopherol alone. This mixture is similar to that found in nature. In human and animal studies, the mixed tocopherol preparation also had much more favourable effects on constitutive NO synthase (ecNOS) and superoxide dismutase activity than alpha-tocopherol and in a rat model was more effective in decreasing platelet aggregation and inhibiting thrombus formation. Mixed tocopherol preparation is also superior to alpha-tocopherol in terms of myocyte protection (Chen et al 2002).

4. Plasma vitamin E levels

The measurement of plasma vitamin E levels in the supplemented groups has been inconsistent in the studies, so it is uncertain whether levels significantly rose in response to treatment and subjects were compliant. For example, in the CHAOS, ASAP, ASAP follow-up and SPACE studies a significant increase in the plasma antioxidant levels was reported and all studies found a benefit on the primary endpoint whereas measurement of plasma levels has been inconsistent in the negative studies (Jialal & Devaraj 2005a).

Clearly, the optimal form/s, dosage regimen, duration of use and subpopulation best suited to preventive treatment still needs to be clarified with future trials.

**Slowing carotid atherosclerosis** The ASAP study was a placebo-controlled, randomised study comparing the effects of vitamin E (136 IU twice daily) and/or slow release vitamin C (250 mg twice daily) on the 3-year progression of carotid artery disease in hypercholesterolaemic subjects ($n = 502$) (Salonen et al 2000). Combination treatment had the strongest effects and resulted in an average increase in common carotid artery intima–media thickness (IMT) of only 0.011 mm/year in men compared to 0.018 mm/year for vitamin E only, 0.017 mm/year for vitamin C only and 0.02 mm/year for placebo. The covariate-adjusted IMT increase in men was 45% less with both vitamins compared with placebo ($P = 0.049$), with the treatment effect being largest in smoking men (64% less) than in non-smoking men (30% less). This
suggests a synergistic effect when vitamins C and E are combined. Interestingly, no significant differences were observed in women.

A follow-up to the ASAP study was reported (Salonen et al 2003). It involved 440 of the original subjects and this time only used the combination of vitamin E (272 IU/day) and ascorbic acid (500 mg/day). Once again, a significant decrease in the rate of progression of carotid IMT was seen, with combination treatment compared with placebo. Those subjects with low baseline plasma vitamin C or common carotid artery plaque experienced the greatest effects. Just as reported in the original study, the effect was restricted to males only. It is worthwhile noting that both ASAP studies were of populations at high risk for oxidative stress, biomarkers of oxidative stress were measured and plasma levels of vitamins E and C were significantly increased with their respective treatments.

Restenosis  Restenosis is a major limitation to the long-term success of angioplasty. Therefore, measures that prevent or delay this occurrence are being investigated to extend the beneficial effects of the procedure.

Studies in experimental models have identified vitamin E as helping to stabilise atherosclerotic plaque after angioplasty and favouring vascular remodelling, thereby suggesting it may be of benefit in preventing or slowing restenosis (Orbe et al 2003). An early double-blind study using oral synthetic vitamin E (1200 IU) for 4 months found that treatment did not significantly reduce the rate of restenosis after percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty; however, a minor reduction was detected (DeMaio et al 1992).

Angina pectoris  Low-dose vitamin E supplements (50 mg/day) produce a minor decrease in the incidence of angina pectoris in smokers without previous coronary heart disease according to a RCT (Rapola et al 1996). A smaller study of 29 subjects with variant angina identified six patients who did not respond to calcium-channel blockers and had lower plasma levels than normal, who responded positively to supplementation with 300 mg/day. Treatment resulted in significantly reduced incidence of angina episodes (Miwa et al 1996). Several years later, the same research group identified a transcardiac reduction in plasma vitamin E concentrations concomitant with lipid peroxide formation, suggesting that oxidative stress and vitamin E depletion may be involved in the pathogenesis of coronary artery spasm (Miwa et al 1999).

Nitrate tolerance  Vitamin E supplements (200 mg three times daily) prevented nitrate tolerance when given concurrently with transdermal nitroglycerin (NTG 10 mg/24 hours) according to one randomised, placebo-controlled study in which 24 patients with ischaemic heart disease were compared with 24 healthy volunteers over
a 6-day period (Watanabe et al 1997). New research indicates that continuous NTG infusion causes vitamin E depletion, as well as nitrate tolerance, and as the vitamin E levels continue to fall, NTG tolerance becomes greater (Minamiyama et al 2006).

**Hypertension** Vitamin E supplementation may reduce blood pressure, LDL oxidation and improve endothelial dysfunction in hypertension, according to current research.

An early double-blind, placebo-controlled study found that α-α-tocopherol nicotinate (3000 mg) significantly reduced SBP pressure from 151.0 to 139.2 mmHg within 4–6 weeks in hypertensive subjects; however, DBP remain unchanged (lino et al 1977). More recently, long-term vitamin E (200 IU/day) was shown to decrease SBP by 24% compared with a 1.6% reduction with placebo in mildly hypertensive patients, according to a triple-blind placebo-controlled study conducted over 27 weeks (Boshtam et al 2002). The study involved 70 hypertensive patients (SBP 140–160 mmHg; DBP 90–100 mmHg) aged 20–60 years without other cardiovascular risk factors. Besides reducing SBP, DBP was reduced by 12.5% compared with 6.2% with placebo.

Some studies have revealed that hypertensive patients have a higher susceptibility to LDL oxidation than normotensive subjects and, therefore, increased atherogenic potential. One study measured the effect of vitamin E (400 IU/day) on the resistance of LDL to oxidation in 47 volunteers (Brockes et al 2003). Comparisons made before and after 2 months’ supplementation showed that vitamin E caused a significant increase in the lag time in normotensive and hypertensive patients, ultimately bringing hypertensive patients up to the same point as the healthy controls.

Research with experimental models shows that vitamin E modulates vascular function by regulating enzymatic activities of eNOS and NAD(P)H oxidase and, therefore, may also have a role in normalising genetic endothelial dysfunction in genetic hypertension (Ilker et al 2003).

---

**Clinical note — LDL oxidation and vitamin E**

Oxidative stress affects lipid metabolism by producing an oxidised LDL that has greater atherogenic potential than its original form. In the past attention focussed was on investigating various antioxidants, such as vitamin E, for their ability to prevent LDL oxidation. In recent years, researchers have started to focus on identifying the biological oxidants responsible for initiating oxidation of LDL within the human arterial wall and better understand what makes oxidised LDL proatherogenic. In 2003, in vitro testing with LDL discovered that myeloperoxidase is a pathway that promotes LDL oxidation in the human artery wall, although others are also likely to exist. It is noteworthy that vitamin E failed to inhibit LDL oxidation by...
myeloperoxidase in vitro (Heinecke 2003), although it does reduce LDL oxidation within animals and humans when given in doses well above RDI (Brockes et al 2003). If further testing confirms these results, it may mean that vitamin E reduces LDL oxidation in vivo, mainly through its role in the antioxidant network. In other words, its ability to regenerate antioxidants such as vitamin C, coenzyme Q10 and selenium may be more important than its direct antioxidant action.

**ALL-CAUSE MORTALITY**

In 2005, a meta-analysis of the dose–response relationship between vitamin E supplementation and total mortality was undertaken using data from 19 RCTs consisting of a large study population (n = 135,967) (Miller III et al 2005). A dose–response analysis showed a statistically significant relationship between vitamin E dosage and all-cause mortality. The authors suggested caution with doses of 400 IU/day or higher while acknowledging that the high-dose studies (≥400 IU/day) analysed in the report were often small and performed in patients with chronic diseases.

This meta-analysis has several serious flaws and has been criticised on a number of accounts, inspiring over 40 letters to the journal’s Editor and hundreds of emails and phone calls to the authors (Jialal & Devaraj 2005b). In summary, these responses centre on six major flaws. First, results from 12 clinical studies that reported fewer than 10 deaths each were excluded from the meta-analysis, which created the appearance of bias and would have given an artificial weight to studies in which more people died. Second, the meta-analysis included trials of different designs, treatment times, doses, combinations and end-points. Pooling information together from such heterogeneous studies was considered inappropriate. Third, subjects in many studies had significant chronic diseases, such as Parkinson’s disease, end-stage renal disease, coronary artery disease, diabetes mellitus and Alzheimer’s dementia, which would have influenced their mortality risk. It also means the results do not necessarily apply to healthy adults taking these supplements. Next, studies used different forms of vitamin E (natural and synthetic) and sometimes used it in combination with other nutrients; however, results of all these studies were pooled and not separated. Furthermore, subject adherence to the treatment protocol was only considered in one study (the CHAOS study). Lastly, the use of some statistical models has been questioned.

**ALZHEIMER’S DEMENTIA AND COGNITIVE DECLINE**

The current standard of care for pharmacological management of the cognitive and functional disabilities of Alzheimer’s dementia (AD) consists of the combination of a
cholinesterase inhibitor and high-dose vitamin E (Bonner & Peskind 2002). The inclusion of vitamin E is largely based on a 1997 double-blind study that compared a large dose of synthetic vitamin E (1000 IU twice daily) with selegiline (5 mg twice daily) and placebo in a group of patients with moderately severe AD. The 2-year study found that vitamin E significantly slowed down the progression of the disease, delayed institutionalisation and increased survival rate (Sano et al 1997).

Since the 1997 study, numerous dietary and intervention studies have sought to clarify whether vitamin E is protective against the development of various forms of dementia or can slow its progression.

**Prevention**  Higher plasma vitamin E levels are associated with a significantly reduced risk of cognitive impairment and dementia in older adults. Protection is most consistently seen with vitamin E from food sources, but not always from vitamin E supplements (Cherubini et al 2005, Engelhart et al 2002, Morris et al 2005). According to one study, for every 5 mg/day increase in vitamin E intake, a significant 26% reduction in risk is possible (Morris et al 2005). It now appears that alpha-tocopherol is not the only form of vitamin E exhibiting protective effects. A comparison between the four different tocopherols found naturally in food identified that gamma-tocopherol was also beneficial.

Interventions studies using supplements have produced mixed results and only focus on alpha-tocopherol. The Cache County Study was a large study of 4740 people aged 65 years or older that found a combination of vitamins E (400 IU/day) and C (500 mg/day) taken for at least 3 years was associated with a reduced incidence of AD (Zandi et al 2004). No protective effects were seen when vitamin E or C was taken alone. In the Honolulu-Asia Aging Study, long-term use of vitamin E and C supplements was associated with an 88% reduction in the frequency of subsequent vascular dementia and appeared to improve cognitive function in later life; however, a protective effect against AD was not observed (Masaki et al 2000). A lack of association between dietary or supplemental vitamin E and risk of AD in elderly subjects was also found in the Washington Heights-Inwood Columbia Aging Project (WHICAP), which involved 980 older subjects (Luchsinger et al 2003). It must be noted that dietary intakes were assessed in this study with a limited food frequency questionnaire, which is likely to be less accurate than the more detailed surveys used in some other studies.

**Slowing progression**  In contrast to the positive 1997 study, a more recent study involving 769 subjects with possible or probable AD using the same dose, found no significant effects in patients with mild cognitive impairment and no change to the rate of progression to AD over a 3-year period (Petersen et al 2005).
**ENHANCES IMMUNITY IN THE ELDERLY**

Immune cell function is influenced by the oxidant and antioxidant balance, so antioxidant supplements have been investigated clinically for their ability to enhance immune responses (Meydani et al 1998). Increased markers of T-cell-mediated immunity were enhanced with all doses of synthetic vitamin E tested, according to a randomised, double-blind study of 78 healthy elderly subjects. Doses used were 60, 200 and 800 mg/day for 4 months, with best overall responses obtained with the 200 mg dosage (Meydani et al 1997). Another double-blind study found no significant changes to either cellular or humoral immune responses with a low dose of 100 mg/day of synthetic vitamin E taken over 3 months (de Waart et al 1997).

**HAEMODIALYSIS**

Vitamin E supplementation may offer several benefits to patients on haemodialysis (HD), who typically experience high levels of oxidative stress, as there is some evidence that supplementation reduces oxidative stress and LDL oxidability in this population (Badiou et al 2003, Diepeveen et al 2005, Giray et al 2003, Galli et al 2001).

Haemodialysis patients also experience cramps, which appeared to respond to vitamin E supplementation according to a placebo-controlled, double-blind study of 60 subjects (Khajehdehi et al 2001). Treatment with vitamin E 400 mg/day for 8 weeks resulted in a 54% reduction in cramps, which increased to a 97% reduction when combined with vitamin C (250 mg/day). The benefits were not significantly associated with age, sex, aetiology of end-stage renal disease, serum electrolytes or HD duration, but showed a positive correlation ($P = 0.01$) with the type of therapy used.

According to one small study, vitamin E supplementation (500 mg/day) allowed for a reduction in erythropoietin dose (from 93 to 74 U/kg/week) while maintaining stable haemoglobin concentrations (Cristol et al 1997).

**PREMENSTRUAL SYNDROME**

Treatment with δ-alpha-tocopherol (400 IU/day) over three menstrual cycles significantly alleviated some affective and physical symptoms of PMS according to one randomised double-blind study (London et al 1987). Symptoms of anxiety, food craving and depression responded to active treatment, whereas effects on other measured parameters such as weight gain were not significant.

A further study of 75 women with benign breast disease found that δ-alpha-tocopherol (150–600 IU/day) significantly decreased some symptoms of PMS compared with placebo; however, the study involved subjective patient evaluation, which may have influenced the findings (London et al 1983).
INTERMITTENT CLAUDICATION
A Cochrane review of five placebo-controlled studies including a total of 265 volunteers (average age 57 years) concluded that although further research is required to determine its effectiveness, vitamin E may have beneficial effects in intermittent claudication with no serious side-effects (Kleijnen & Mackerras 2000). Treatment duration varied from 12 weeks to 18 months and dosage regimens varied between the studies, which were considered generally small and of poor quality. A closer look at the evidence suggests that doses of at least 600 IU/day for a minimum of 12 weeks are required.

More recently, a randomised, double-blind study found no benefits with vitamin E (400 IU/day) on perceived pain or treadmill walking duration in people with claudication (Collins et al 2003).

A small study of 16 patients with stable claudication revealed that administration of vitamin E (200 mg/day) and vitamin C (500 mg/day) for 4 weeks reduces oxidative stress in this population and therefore may also have an effect on the remote ischaemia–reperfusion damage (Wijnen et al 2001).

CANCER
Most of the epidemiological evidence suggests that vitamin E and other antioxidants decrease the incidence of certain cancers. Based on these observations, numerous prospective and intervention studies have been conducted in various populations. Very often, vitamin E is used in combination with other antioxidant nutrients and sometimes the form of tocopherol administered is not stated, thereby making it difficult to interpret study findings.

A review that systematically evaluated the scientific literature using guidelines developed by the US Preventative Services Task Force concluded that there is evidence to suggest that those individuals with higher serum vitamin E levels or receiving vitamin E supplementation have a decreased risk of some cancers, including lung, prostate, stomach and gastrointestinal carcinoma (Sung et al 2003). As can be expected, study design, differing treatment dose (nutritional levels or higher), form of vitamin used and population studied (general or high risk) had an influence on outcomes.

Mixed results have been obtained for vitamin E and primary prevention of breast cancer, although a recent study has detected a modest protective effect against recurrence of breast cancer and disease-related mortality in postmenopausal women previously diagnosed with the disease (Fleischauer et al 2001). Protective effects were established after 3 years’ use, according to the study.
Vitamin E supplements were protective against the incidence of ovarian cancer whereas consumption of antioxidants from diet was unrelated to risk according to another study (Fleischauer et al. 2001). In analyses combining antioxidant intake from diet and supplements, vitamins C (≥363 mg/day) and E (≥75 mg/day) were associated with significant protective effects.

Studies investigating the association between vitamin E and incidence of colorectal cancer have produced inconsistent results. Prospective studies have shown that high serum levels of vitamin E are protective; however, only one of three intervention studies has produced positive results (Stone & Papas 1997). These results are difficult to interpret, as the studies have been criticised for not adequately distinguishing between cancer incidence and adenoma recurrence.

**ATBC study** One of the largest intervention studies to be published in recent years was the Alpha-Tocopherol Beta-Carotene Cancer Prevention (ATBC) Study. It was a double-blind placebo-controlled trial of 29,133 male cigarette smokers aged 50–69 years. Participants were randomly assigned to four groups and received synthetic alpha-tocopherol (50 mg), beta-carotene (20 mg), both agents, or a placebo daily for 5–8 years (Albanes et al. 2000).

One of the most striking outcomes was a 34% decrease in the incidence of prostate cancer for volunteers receiving vitamin E (n = 14,564) compared with those not receiving it (n = 14,569) and a 41% reduction in mortality. Neither agent had any effect on the time interval between diagnosis and death (Heinonen et al. 1998). A later study identified a decrease in serum androgen concentrations associated with long-term alpha-tocopherol supplementation, suggesting this may be one of the factors contributing to the observed reduction in incidence and mortality of prostate cancer (Hartman et al. 2001).

The ATBC study also detected a somewhat lower incidence of colorectal cancer in the alpha-tocopherol arm compared with the no alpha-tocopherol arm, but this was not statistically significant. Neither treatment had a statistically significant effect on the rate of incidence of pancreatic carcinoma or the rate of mortality caused by this disease (Rautalahti et al. 1999), the occurrence of neoplastic changes in cases of atrophic gastritis (Varis et al. 1998), incidence of urinary tract cancers (Virtamo et al. 2000) in this population.

**All cancers** A large study of nearly 30,000 subjects was carried out in Linxian, China. It tested four combinations of vitamins and minerals (retinol and zinc, riboflavin and niacin, vitamin C and molybdenum and beta-carotene, vitamin E and selenium) over a 5-year period in a population with a persistently low intake of several micronutrients (Blot et al. 1995). Although no statistically significant effect on cancer
incidence was achieved by any intervention, secondary analysis showed that the combination of selenium, beta-carotene and alpha-tocopherol was associated with a statistically significant lower total mortality rate, a 13% reduction (borderline significant) in total cancer mortality rate and a statistically significant lower mortality rate from stomach cancer (a major cancer in Linxian).

More recently three large studies have found no protective effect against cancer incidence for vitamin E supplementation. The MRC/BHF study of 20,536 UK adults (aged 40–80 years) with coronary disease, other occlusive arterial disease, or diabetes found that a daily antioxidant supplement containing 600 mg vitamin E, 250 mg vitamin C and 20 mg beta-carotene produced no significant reduction in the incidence of cancer or in all-cause mortality (Parkinson Study Group 2002). The HOPE-TOO study, which used long-term natural vitamin E (400 IU/day) as a stand-alone supplement, failed to find a protective effect against cancer incidence or cancer deaths in people with pre-existing vascular disease or diabetes mellitus (Lonn et al 2005). Long-term use of natural vitamin E (600 IU) taken on alternate days provided no overall benefit for cancer incidence or total mortality in a large randomised study involving 39,876 healthy women of at least 45 years of age (Lee et al 2005).

Currently, the National Cancer Institute is conducting phase I, II and III chemoprevention trials for prostate, breast and colon cancers with vitamin E and the following micronutrients: isoflavones, lycopene, selenised yeast, selenomethionine, selenium, perillyl alcohol, folic acid, vitamin D, calcium, and curcumin. It is suspected that the response to micronutrients may vary not only in magnitude but also in direction (Greenwald et al 2002).

**ARTHRITE**
High-dose vitamin E supplements may be effective in relieving pain in OA and RA, according to several double-blind studies, with some studies finding the effects are as strong as with diclofenac.

**Osteoarthritis** According to an early crossover study (Machtay & Ouaknine 1978), 52% of OA patients experienced less pain when treated with vitamin E (600 mg/day) compared with placebo. Several years later, a double-blind randomised study of 50 volunteers with OA confirmed these findings and showed that vitamin E (400 IU/day) was significantly superior to placebo in relieving pain, increasing mobility and reducing analgesic requirements (Blankenhorn 1986). Symptoms of pain at rest, during movement or with applied pressure all responded to treatment with vitamin E.

Vitamin E supplementation (500 IU/day) did not alter the loss of cartilage volume in knee OA according to a 2-year, double-blind, randomised placebo-controlled study of 138 patients (American College of Rheumatology clinical and radiographic criteria).
(Wluka et al 2002). Additionally, symptoms did not improve. Vitamin E also failed to alleviate symptoms in a shorter, 6-month double-blind study using the same dose (Brand et al 2001) and symptoms of pain, stiffness and function did not change at the 1, 3 or 6 month assessments.

**Comparisons with diclofenac** Scherak et al (1990) found that high-dose vitamin E (1200 mg/day) was as effective as diclofenac (150 mg/day) in improving swelling, walking ability and range of motion in patients with knee or hip OA under double-blind test conditions. Some 77% of patients experienced reduced or abolished pain with vitamin E, 67% had reduced pain on pressure and 62% had reduced pain on movement, which was considered as effective as diclofenac. Vitamin E was much better tolerated, with only 7.7% of patients reporting side-effects compared with 25.9% with diclofenac.

**Rheumatoid arthritis** According to several double-blind studies, a dose of 1200 mg/day vitamin E significantly reduces pain symptoms in people with RA but not always morning stiffness.

A double-blind study of 42 RA patients who received vitamin E (600 mg twice/day) over 12 weeks showed that pain parameters were significantly decreased with active treatment compared with placebo (Edmonds et al 1997). The same study also found no change in the Ritchie Articular Index, duration of morning stiffness, swollen joint count, or laboratory parameters with vitamin E supplementation compared with placebo. A further study using the same dose detected a significant inverse correlation between vitamin E levels and pain score whereas morning stiffness and sedimentation rate were not affected (Scherak & Kolarz 1991).

More recently, a combination of standard treatment (intramuscular methotrexate, oral sulfasalazine and indomethacin suppository at night) and vitamin E (400 mg three times daily) was compared with standard treatment and a combination of antioxidants or standard treatment alone (Helmy et al 2001). Standard treatment started to produce tangible improvements after 2 months, whereas additional treatment with either vitamin E or antioxidants improved symptoms more quickly, after 1 month.

**Comparisons with pharmaceutical medication** After 3 weeks' treatment with either high-dose vitamin E (400 mg RRR-alpha-tocopherol acetate three times daily) or diclofenac sodium, a significant improvement in all assessed clinical parameters was observed in hospitalised patients with established chronic RA (n = 85) according to a randomised, double-blind parallel group trial (Wittenborg et al 1998). Duration of morning stiffness, grip strength and the degree of pain, assessed by a 10 cm VAS,
reduced significantly with vitamin E as well as with diclofenac. Both treatments were considered equally effective by patients and physicians.

MENOPAUSAL SYMPTOMS
According to a review published by the Mayo clinic in the USA, behavioural changes in conjunction with vitamin E (800 IU/day) is a reasonable initial approach for menopausal women with mild symptoms that do not interfere with sleep or daily function (Shanafelt et al 2002). The recommendation is based on a double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled, crossover clinical trial that found that vitamin E (800 IU/day) was more effective than placebo in controlling hot flushes in breast cancer survivors.

MALE INFERTILITY
Lipid-soluble antioxidants such as vitamin E have been studied for their effects in male reproductive physiology because the membranes of germ cells and spermatozoa are very sensitive to oxidation (Bhardwaj et al 2000, Bolle et al 2002).

According to three of four studies, oral vitamin E supplementation can effectively treat some forms of male infertility (Geva et al 1996, Kessopoulou et al 1995, Rolf et al 1999, Suleiman et al 1996). Doses used varied from 200 mg/day to 800 mg/day. As with many other conditions, treatment may be best suited to those individuals with elevated oxidative stress levels, although this requires further investigation.

DERMATOLOGICAL CONDITIONS
Vitamin E is used both as an oral supplement and as a topical preparation in a variety of dermatological conditions. It is a popular ingredient in many moisturising preparations used to alleviate dry and cracked skin, assist in the repair of abrasions, burns, grazes and skin lesions, prevent stretch marks and diminish scar tissue. Vitamin E oil is used as a stand-alone preparation or incorporated into a cream or ointment base for these purposes.

Sunburn protection  Topical application of 1% alpha-tocopherol provided significant protection against erythema and sunburn in an experimental model. When combined with 15% ascorbic acid, the protective effect was enhanced (Lin et al 2003). Further improvements were seen when ferulic acid was added to the alpha-tocopherol (1%) and ascorbic acid (15%) solution, as this substance improves chemical stability of the antioxidants and doubles the photoprotective effect (Lin et al 2005).

Once again, it appears that not all forms of vitamin E exert a significant protective effect (McVean & Liebler 1999). According to an in vivo study, a 5% dispersion of alpha-tocopherol, gamma-tocopherol or delta-tocopherol in a neutral cream vehicle
produced a statistically significant inhibition of thymine dimer formation, whereas alpha-tocopherol acetate and alpha-tocopherol methyl ether had no effect. Further research revealed that gamma-tocopherol and delta-tocopherol were 5- to 10-fold less potent than alpha-tocopherol (McVean & Liebler 1997).

A comparison between topical vitamin E and C has demonstrated that vitamin E affords better protection against UVB radiation, whereas vitamin C is superior against UVA radiation (Baumann & Spencer 1999).

Although most research has focused on topical use, oral administration of a combination of high-dose vitamin E and C increases the threshold to erythema. The first study to show that the systemic administration of vitamins C and E reduces the sunburn reaction in humans was a small double-blind placebo-controlled trial that used ascorbic acid (2 g/day) combined with d-alpha-tocopherol (1000 IU/day) (Eberlein-Konig et al 1998). The effect was seen after 8 days. The next was a 50-day study of 40 volunteers (20–47 years old) that showed that supplemental vitamin E (2 g/day) and C (3 g/day) protected against sunburn and resulted in increased vitamin E levels in keratinocytes (Fuchs & Kern 1998). This was once again confirmed in a controlled study of 45 healthy volunteers (Mireles-Rocha et al 2002). The doses used were lower in this study, 1200 IU/day of d-alpha-tocopherol in combination with vitamin C (2 g/day).

**Scar tissue** Although vitamin E is widely used to diminish the appearance of scars, a small double-blind study of 15 patients who had undergone skin cancer removal found that applying an emollient preparation known as Aquaphor with added vitamin E after surgery either had no effect or worsened the appearance of scars compared with Aquaphor alone (Baumann & Spencer 1999). A larger study of 80 people with hypertrophic scars and keloids found that treatment with vitamin E and silicone gel sheets was successful in scar treatment (Palmieri et al 1995). After 2 months, 95% of patients receiving vitamin E and gel sheet treatment had improved by 50%, whereas 75% had improved by 50% without vitamin E.

**PARKINSON’S DISEASE**

Based on experimental and clinical data, it is well established that oxidative stress and lipid peroxidation is increased in the substantia nigra of people with Parkinson’s disease (PD) and this may play an important role in the disease’s aetiology. As such, vitamin E has been the focus of research as a potential treatment. Using both in vitro and in vivo experimental model systems for PD, studies have demonstrated both vitamin E-mediated protection and lack of protection (Fariss & Zhang 2003). Similarly, conflicting results have been obtained for vitamin E supplementation in the prevention and treatment of clinical PD. An open study using high doses of both
tocopherol (3200 UI/day) and ascorbic acid (3000 mg/day) delayed the use of levodopa or dopamine agonists for 2 years in subjects with early PD (Fahn 1992). In contrast, the Deprenyl and Tocopherol Antioxidative Therapy of Parkinsonism (DATATOP) study found no effect on the progression of disability with alphatocopherol 2000 IU/day (Parkinson Study Group 1996). The same study found vitamin E had no effect on mortality (Parkinson Study Group 1998).

**TYPE 1 DIABETES**
Although the Heart Outcomes Prevention Evaluation (HOPE) study involving 3654 people with diabetes failed to detect a preventative effect for long-term vitamin E (400 IU/day) on cardiovascular disease outcomes or nephropathy, other studies have identified that long-term treatment improves metabolic control in type 1 diabetes and may be useful to reduce oxidative stress (Jain et al 1996, Lonn et al 2002).

**CHRONIC HEPATITIS C**
According to a 2004 systematic review, significant improvements in biochemical responses were seen for vitamin E compared with placebo (Coon & Ernst 2004). They report on one placebo controlled trial in which a statistically significant reduction in ALT was observed during vitamin E treatment but reductions were not consistent for all patients and complete normalisation of ALT levels did not occur.

**ASTHMA AND ATOPY**
Studies have consistently demonstrated beneficial associations between dietary vitamin E and ventilatory function, and a few have demonstrated beneficial associations with asthma and atopy (Devereux & Seaton 2005). However, benefits do not extend to vitamin E supplements, as a recent randomised study (n = 72) using natural vitamin E (500 mg/day) over 6 weeks found no clinical benefit in subjects with mild to moderate asthma (Pearson et al 2004).

**OTHER USES**
Oral supplements have been used to prevent or treat many other conditions such as exercise-induced tissue damage, some types of senile cataracts, epilepsy and fibromyalgia.

Vitamin E prophylaxis in premature babies significantly reduces the risk of stage 3+ retinopathy by 52% according to a 1997 meta-analysis of six randomised studies (Raju et al 1997).

Infusions of vitamin E are being investigated as a means of preventing ischaemic reperfusion injury in liver and heart surgery (Bartels et al 2004, Jaxa-Chamiec et al 2005).
DOSAGE RANGE
The body’s requirement for vitamin E changes according to the amount and type of fat eaten in the diet. For example, vitamin E requirements increase when there is a high intake of PUFAs (Wahlqvist et al 2002).

Many scientists believe it is difficult for an individual to consume more than 15 mg/day of alpha-tocopherol from food alone, without also increasing fat intake above recommended levels.

RECOMMENDATIONS FOR ADULTS (AUSTRALIAN ADEQUATE INTAKE)
- Men >18 years: 10 mg/day alpha-tocopherol.
- Women >18 years: 7 mg/day alpha-tocopherol.
- Upper Level of intake: 300 mg/day alpha-tocopherol.
- Deficiency treatment: 800–1200 mg/day.

Based on clinical trials, the optimal dose for disease prevention that is considered safe for long-term use is 400 IU/day of RRR-alpha-tocopherol. However, there is considerable variation in short-term dosage used in the prevention or treatment of individual conditions.

ACCORDING TO CLINICAL STUDIES
Unless stated, dosages are for natural vitamin E (alpha-tocopherol).
- Anaemia in haemodialysis: 500 mg/day.
- Angina pectoris: 50–300 mg/day.
- Antioxidant effects: 400 IU/day.
- Cerebral infarction prevention: 50 mg/day synthetic vitamin E.
- Colorectal cancer prevention: 50 mg/day long term.
- Cardiovascular disease prevention: 100–800 IU/day long term.
- Carotid atherosclerosis, slowing progression: 136 IU twice daily and vitamin C 250 mg (slow release) twice daily.
- Dementia prevention: 400 IU/day alpha-tocopherol + vitamin C 500 mg/day.
- Haemodialysis, associated cramps: 400 mg/day alpha-tocopherol + vitamin C 250 mg/day.
- Hypertension: 200 IU/day long term.
- Immune system support in the elderly: 200 mg/day.
- Intermittent claudication: 600–1600 IU/day.
- Ischaemic stroke prevention in high-risk hypertension: 50 mg/day.
- Male infertility: 200–800 mg/day.
- Menopausal symptoms: 800 IU/day.
- Nitrate tolerance prevention: 200 mg three times daily.
- Osteoarthritis: 1200 IU/day.
- Ovarian cancer: >75 mg/day.
- Premenstrual symptoms: 400–600 IU/day.
- Prostate cancer prevention: 50 mg/day.
- Retinopathy of prematurity: 100 mg/kg/day.
- Rheumatoid arthritis: 1200 IU/day.
- Sunburn protection: 1000 IU/day up to 2000 mg/day + vitamin C 2000–3000 mg/day.

TOXICITY
Vitamin E is relatively non-toxic. It is not stored as readily in the body as other fat-soluble vitamins and up to 60–70% of a daily dose is excreted in the faeces. Doses as high as 3200 mg/day have been used for 12 years with few adverse effects (Fariss & Zhang 2003).

In April 2000, the Food and Nutrition Board of the Institute of Medicine in the United States set an upper tolerable limit of 1500 IU of RRR-alpha-tocopherol as the highest dose unlikely to result in haemorrhage in most adults.

ADVERSE REACTIONS
Adverse effects are dose related and tend to occur only at very high supplemental doses (>1200 IU/day); they include diarrhoea, flatulence, nausea and heart palpitations. Doses above this level should only be used under professional supervision.

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
Considering vitamin E is a fat-soluble vitamin, any medication that reduces the absorption of fats in the diet will also reduce the absorption of vitamin E. These include cholestyramine, colestipol, isoniazid, mineral oil, orlistat and sucralfate.

CHLOROQUINE
According to in vitro research, vitamin E inhibits drug uptake in human cultured fibroblasts. The clinical significance of this observation is unknown — observe patients taking this combination (Scuntaro et al 1996).

CHLORPROMAZINE
According to in vitro research, vitamin E inhibits drug uptake in human cultured fibroblasts. The clinical significance of this observation is unknown — observe patients taking this combination (Scuntaro et al 1996).

CISPLATIN
Oral vitamin E (300 mg/day) taken before cisplatin treatment and continued for 3 months after significantly reduced the incidence and severity of neurotoxicity.
according to a randomised study — beneficial interaction but should be used under professional supervision (Pace et al 2003).

**WARFARIN**  
Contradictory results have been obtained in clinical studies that have investigated whether vitamin E affects platelet aggregation or coagulation. A dose of 1200 IU/day (800 mg of d-alpha-tocopherol) taken for 28 days had no effects on platelet aggregation or coagulation according to one clinical study (Morinobu et al 2002). Similarly, a second clinical study found that a lower dose of 600 mg (900 IU) of RRR-alpha-tocopherol daily taken for 12 weeks did not alter coagulation activity (Kitagawa et al 1989). Alternatively, increased risk of gingival bleeding at doses of 50 mg/day was found by another study (Liede et al 1998). Overall, it appears that people with reduced levels of vitamin K may be more susceptible to the effects of vitamin E potentiating warfarin activity. Until further research can clarify whether the interaction is clinically significant for most people, it is recommended that prothrombin time ratio or INR should be closely monitored with the addition and withdrawal of treatment with high-dose vitamin E supplements.

**DOXORUBICIN**  
One study found that oral dl-alpha-tocopheryl acetate (1600 IU/day) prevented doxorubicin-induced alopecia (Wood 1985). The same dose of oral dl-alpha-tocopheryl acetate failed to prevent alopecia after doxorubicin treatment after mastectomy for breast cancer (Martin-Jimenez et al 1986). It also failed to prevent alopecia in a second study of 20 patients with different types of solid tumours (Perez et al 1986) — possible beneficial interaction but difficult to assess.

**NITRATES**  
Oral vitamin E prevented nitrate tolerance when given concurrently with transdermal nitroglycerin (10 mg/24 hours) according to one randomised placebo-controlled study (Watanabe et al 1997) — beneficial interaction possible.

**NSAIDS AND SIMPLE ANALGESICS**  
Vitamin E may enhance pain modifying activity of drugs. Beneficial interaction possible — drug dosage may require modification.

**PROPRANOLOL**  
According to in vitro research, vitamin E inhibits drug uptake in human cultured fibroblasts. The clinical significance of this observation is unknown — observe patients taking this combination (Scuntaro et al 1996).
CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS

Vitamin E is considered an extremely safe substance.

People with impaired coagulation, inherited bleeding disorders, history of haemorrhagic stroke, vitamin K deficiency or at risk of pulmonary embolism or thrombophlebitis should use high-dose supplements under medical supervision.

Although it was thought that people with hypertension wanting to take supplements should start with low doses, evidence does not support the concern that high-dose supplements will significantly elevate blood pressure. Suspend use of high doses (>1000 IU/day) 1 week before major surgery.

PREGNANCY USE

Vitamin E is considered safe in pregnancy.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING

- Vitamin E is actually a generic term used to describe any chemical entity that displays the biological activity of RRR-alpha-tocopherol, the most abundant form found in nature. The ‘natural’ form is the most potent of all the eight forms of vitamin E, although there is evidence that other tocopherols also exhibit significant beneficial effects.
- It is involved in myriad biochemical processes such as immunocompetence and neurological function, but its most important biological function is that of an antioxidant.
- Vitamin E is used for many different indications. There is evidence to suggest that supplementation may be useful when meant for:
  - cardiovascular disease prevention, although effects are inconsistent
  - slowing down progression of Alzheimer’s dementia, although effects are inconsistent
  - enhancing immune function in the elderly
  - preventing anaemia and treating cramps in patients on haemodialysis
  - reduce PMS and menopause symptoms
  - reducing pain in OA and RA
  - improving some forms of male infertility
  - reducing risk of stage 3+ retinopathy in premature babies
  - preventing ischaemic stroke in high-risk hypertensive patients
  - reducing incidence of some cancers, although effects are inconsistent
  - preventing sunburn (when used with vitamin C)
  - slowing down carotid atherosclerosis (when used with vitamin C)
  - reducing blood pressure

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
• reducing nitrate tolerance.
• Oral supplements have been used to prevent or treat many other conditions such as exerciser-induced tissue damage, some types of senile cataracts, epilepsy and fibromyalgia.
• It is a popular ingredient in many moisturising preparations used to alleviate dry and cracked skin, assist in the repair of abrasions, burns, grazes and skin lesions, prevent stretch marks and diminish scar tissue. Vitamin E oil is used as a stand-alone preparation or incorporated into a cream or ointment base for these purposes.
• People with impaired coagulation, inherited bleeding disorders, history of haemorrhagic stroke, vitamin K deficiency or at risk of pulmonary embolism or thrombophlebitis should use high-dose supplements under medical supervision.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this vitamin do for me?
Vitamin E is essential for health and wellbeing. It is involved in many important biological processes in the body and may prevent serious diseases such as heart disease and some cancers. It is also used to reduce symptoms in common conditions such as arthritis, PMS and menopause. Vitamin E supplements enhance immune function in the elderly and may slow the progression of Alzheimer’s dementia. Oral supplements have been used to prevent or treat many other conditions such as exercise-induced tissue damage, some types of senile cataracts, epilepsy and fibromyalgia.

When will it start to work?
This depends largely on the reason for taking the supplement. In the case of disease prevention, studies suggest that long-term use is necessary (i.e. 2–3 years or longer). When using vitamin E to reduce symptoms, effects have generally been seen within 3 months.

Are there any safety issues?
People with impaired coagulation, inherited bleeding disorders, history of haemorrhagic stroke, vitamin K deficiency or at risk of pulmonary embolism or thrombophlebitis should use high-dose supplements under medical supervision. Additionally, vitamin E can interact with some medicines, so professional advice is recommended when using high-dose supplements.

REFERENCES

© 2007 Elsevier Australia


© 2007 Elsevier Australia


Meydani M, Hayes KC. Vitamin E. Available at: http://jn.nutrition.org (accessed 02-06-03).


Wild yam

Historical note  Wild yams have made a significant contribution as a root crop to tribal people in some parts of the world such as Nepal. Medicinally, wild yam has inaccurately been labelled ‘natural progesterone’. Although wild yam does not contain progesterone or other hormones, it is the source of diosgenin, the raw material originally used to produce progesterone in the laboratory. Its traditional use is primarily as an antispasmodic.

**COMMON NAME**
Wild yam

**OTHER NAMES**
Atlantic yam, barbasco, China root, colic root, devil’s bones, Mexican yam, natural DHEA, rheumatism root, wild Mexican yam, yuma

**BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY**
*Discorea composita, D. floribunda, D. mexicana, D. macrostachya, D. villosa* (family Dioscoreaceae [yams])

**PLANT PART USED**
Root and rhizome

**CHEMICAL COMPONENTS**
The root of the wild yam contains diosgenin, dioscin, dioscorin and a range of vitamins and minerals such as vitamin C, beta carotene, vitamins B1, B2 and B3, iron, magnesium, potassium, selenium and zinc (US DA Phytochemical Database 2003) along with polyphenols (Bhandari & Kawabata 2004). Although diosgenin can be converted to dihydroepiandrosterone (DHEA) and other steroid compounds in the laboratory, and has been used for commercial production of these compounds, this conversion does not occur in the human body. Additionally, wild yam does not contain progesterone or any other active steroid hormones.

**MAIN ACTIONS**

**HORMONAL ACTIONS**
The evidence for a hormonal action of wild yam varies. Wild yam extract may enhance oestradiol binding to oestrogen receptors and induce transcription activity in oestrogen-responsive cells (NMCD 2003) and diosgenin has been observed to have an
oestrogenic action on mouse mammary epithelium (Aradhana & Kale 1992). Alternatively, in an oestrogen competition assay using human breast cancer cell, diosgenin was found to cause an acute, endothelium-independent coronary artery relaxation, but did not interact with oestrogen or progesterone receptors (Au et al 2004) and extracts with an upper limit of 3.5% diosgenin have been found to have no oestrogenic activity (Hooker 2004).

One study looking at steroid hormone-regulated gene expression using an in vitro tissue culture indicator system suggests that wild yam extract does not have significant oestrogenic or progesteronal activity, but rather weak anti-oestrogenic and/or anti-androgenic activities (Rosenberg Zand et al 2001). A further study suggests that wild yam extract suppresses progesterone synthesis without direct effects on oestrogen or progesterone receptors (Zava 1998). In an in vivo study, supplementation with diosgenin protected the kidney from morphological changes associated with ovariecotmy (Tucci & Benghuzzi 2003) and produced a significant decrease in the cortical and medullary adrenal areas of the ovariecotomised rats (Benghuzzi et al 2003).

There is in vitro evidence that diosgenin up-regulates vascular endothelial growth factor-A and promotes angiogenesis in preosteoblast-like cells via pathways involving oestrogen receptors (Men et al 2005).

**CHOLAGOGUE**

There appears to be more consistent evidence for wild yam’s effect on bile flow. Diosgenin has been shown to increase biliary secretion of cholesterol (Accatino et al 1998; Yamada et al 1997) and prevent oestrogen-induced bile flow suppression in rats (Accatino et al 1998), as well as increase elimination of indomethacin and reduce indomethacin-induced intestinal inflammation (Yamada et al 1997).

**OTHER ACTIONS**

Traditionally, wild yam is also believed to exert antispasmodic, anti-inflammatory and autonomic nervous system relaxant effects (Fisher & Painter 1996). Wild yam exhibits significant antioxidant activity (Bhandari & Kawabata 2004).

**CLINICAL USE**

The therapeutic effectiveness of wild yam has not been significantly investigated under clinical trial conditions, so evidence is derived from traditional, in vitro and animal studies.

**MENOPAUSAL SYMPTOMS AND OTHER FEMALE REPRODUCTIVE CONDITIONS**

Although wild yam is a popular treatment for menopausal symptoms, there is currently no clinical research supporting its use for these indications.
Wild yam has been used as a 'natural alternative' to oestrogen replacement therapy, to treat postmenopausal vaginal dryness, PMS, osteoporosis, and to increase energy and libido in men and women, as well as for breast enlargement. The use of wild yam as a natural progesterone appears misguided because diosgenin is not converted to progesterone, DHEA or other steroid hormones in vivo. One small, double-blind, placebo-controlled crossover trial of topical wild yam extract showed no effect on menopausal symptoms (Komesaroff et al 2001). The study involved 23 healthy women suffering from troublesome symptoms of the menopause. After a 4-week baseline period, each woman was randomly assigned the active cream and matching placebo for 3 months. No changes in body weight, SBP or DBP, levels of total serum cholesterol, triglyceride, HDL-cholesterol, FSH, glucose, oestradiol, or serum or salivary progesterone were detected after 3 months' treatment.

OTHER USES
Wild yam has been used traditionally as an antispasmodic for treating diverticulosis, gall bladder colic, painful menstruation, cramp, nausea in pregnancy, rheumatoid arthritis, and for increasing energy (Fisher & Painter 1996), and may be useful when combined with other herbs for irritable bowel syndrome (Abascal & Yarnell 2005).

DOSAGE RANGE
- Decoction of dried root: 2–4 g three times daily.
- Tincture (1:5): 2–10 mL three times daily.
- Liquid extract (1:2): 3–6 mL/day.

TOXICITY
Considering that wild yams are widely consumed as food by several tribal groups, it appears that dietary ingestion is non-toxic. After assessment with short-term toxicity tests, dermal irritation tests, a sensitisation test, an ocular irritation test, a rat uterotrophic assay, and genotoxicity tests wild yam was deemed safe for use in cosmetic products (Hooker 2004).

ADVERSE REACTIONS
In large doses, wild yam may cause nausea, vomiting and diarrhoea.

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
Insufficient reliable data are available to determine whether interactions may occur.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
None known.
PREGNANCY USE
Likely to be safe when consumed in dietary amounts; however, safety is not known when used in larger quantities.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Wild yam is a popular root vegetable in some parts of the world.
- It is also a popular ingredient in commercial herbal formulas developed for menopausal women.
- Wild yam has been touted as having progesteronal and/or oestrogenic activity, but current evidence suggests this is unlikely.
- There is no clinical or scientific evidence to support the use of wild yam in treatment of conditions of the female reproductive system.
- Wild yam root may be useful as an antispasmodic. Its use as a natural hormone appears misguided.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this herb do for me?
Although the herb is used medicinally to treat menopausal symptoms, there is no scientific evidence to support this.

When will it start to work?
This cannot be answered based on scientific evidence.

Are there any safety issues?
Considering it is consumed as food, usual dietary intakes may be considered safe.

REFERENCES


Willowbark

Historical note  This herb has been used as a therapeutic agent since ancient times, with some reports stating that it was used in ancient China around 500 BC as a treatment for pain and fever and around 400 BC by Hippocrates, who recommended the bark be chewed for relief of fever and pain. As centuries passed, herbalists continued to prescribe the bark for many conditions and by the 18th century, it was widely used as an antipyretic and analgesic. Sometime during the late 1820s, French and German scientists extracted the glycosidic constituents, including salicin (Hedner & Everts 1998). The oxidation of salicin yields salicylic acid, which was produced in the mid 1800s but had limited clinical use due to the gastric irritation it caused. In 1853 a French chemist neutralised salicylic acid to create acetylsalicylic acid, but had no interest in marketing it and abandoned his discovery. A Bayer chemist called Hoffmann rediscovered acetylsalicylic acid in 1897 as a better tolerated treatment for his father’s RA and within 2 years it was marketed by Bayer under the tradename of Aspirin (Setty & Sigal 2005). Since then it has become one of the most successful medicines in history. Although many believe aspirin was synthesised from the salicin found in willowbark, it was actually the salicin found in another herb, meadowsweet, from which aspirin was developed.

OTHER NAMES
White willowbark, brittle willow, bay willow, crack willow, purple willow, silberweide, violet willow

While white willow (Salix alba) is the willow species most commonly used for medicinal purposes, crack willow (S. fragilis), purple willow (S. purpurea), and violet willow (S. daphnoides) are all salicin-rich and are sometimes sold under the label of willow bark (Setty & Sigal 2005).

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Salix alba (family Salicaceae)

PLANT PART USED
Bark
CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Phenolic glycosides, mainly salicylates including salicin and its derivatives, tannins, mainly catechin tannins, some gallontannins and condensed tannins (procyanidins), and flavonoids.

MAIN ACTIONS
ANTI-INFLAMMATORY AND ANALGESIC
Clinical studies using willow bark preparations standardised to salicin content have shown anti-inflammatory and analgesic activity (Chrubasik et al 2000, 2001a, b, Mills et al 1996, Schmid et al 2000). In vitro studies have demonstrated that Salix extract inhibits COX-2-mediated PGE₂ release and that it is a weak inhibitor of proinflammatory cytokines (Fiebich & Chrubasik 2004). While salicin is considered the main analgesic constituent, it is now thought that other constituents such as tannins, flavonoids, and salicin esters may contribute to its overall effect (Schmid et al 2001).

Clinical note — Lack of significant haemotological effects
It has largely been assumed that willow bark alters platelet aggregation and increases bleeding time, in much the same way as aspirin. Whether this is in fact correct and clinically significant has been investigated by Krivoy et al (2001). The clinical study found that consumption of Salicis cortex extract (containing 240 mg salicin per daily dose) only minimally affected platelet aggregation compared with a cardioprotective dose of acetylsalicylate (up to 100 mg/day). The particular preparation studied produced a total serum salicylate concentration bioequivalent to only 50 mg acetylsalicylate.

CLINICAL USE
In clinical practice, willow bark is generally used as a symptomatic treatment in osteoarthritic conditions and lower back pain. Of the five RCTs conducted to investigate its effects in these conditions, all but one have produced positive results (Biegert et al 2004, Chrubasik et al 2000, 2001a, Mills et al 1996, Schmid et al 2000).

JOINT PAIN AND INFLAMMATION
Osteoarthritis Three randomised double-blind trials have investigated the efficacy of willow bark in people with osteoarthritis, with the two earlier studies finding herbal treatment produced symptom relieving effects superior to placebo (Biegert et al 2004, Mills et al 1996, Schmid et al 2000). Seventy-eight subjects were randomly assigned willow bark extract (240 mg salicin/day) or placebo over a 2-week period, after which active treatment was found to produce a statistically significant improvement (Schmid et al 2000). Mills et al (1996), testing willow bark in 82 patients
with chronic arthritic pain, also found active treatment produced a statistically significant alleviation of pain symptoms.

However, willowbark failed to reduce WOMAC pain scores better than placebo in the largest and most recent study, which involved 127 outpatients with painful hip or knee osteoarthritis (Chrubasik et al 2004). Patients were randomised to receive willow bark extract, corresponding to 240 mg of salicin/day, diclofenac 100 mg/day, or placebo. Treatment with diclofenac produced the strongest pain reducing effects (WOMAC scores decreased by 47%) compared with willowbark (17% reduction) and placebo (10% reduction), with the difference between willow bark extract and placebo not statistically significant.

**Rheumatoid arthritis** Willowbark extract (corresponding to 240 mg salicin/day) failed to significantly reduce pain in people with active RA, according to a small, double-blind, randomised study of 26 volunteers (Chrubasik et al 2004). The main outcome measure used was the patient’s assessment of pain rated on a 100-mm visual analogue scale.

**LOWER BACK PAIN**

Two randomised studies have investigated the use of oral white willowbark in people with acute episodes of chronic non-specific low-back pain (Chrubasik 2000, 2001a). According to a 2006 Cochrane systematic review, there is moderate evidence that a daily dose of 240 mg salicin from an extract of S. alba reduces pain more than either placebo or a daily dose of 120 mg of salicin in the short term for individuals with acute episodes of chronic non-specific low-back pain (Gagnier et al 2006).

One randomised placebo-controlled study involving 210 patients with chronic lower back pain found that 39% of those treated with 240 mg salicin became pain free after 4 weeks compared with 6% in the placebo group. This response was achieved after 1 week (Chrubasik et al 2000). Similar results were achieved in an open trial conducted over 18 months that compared willowbark extract containing 120 mg of salicin or 240 mg salicin with what the authors term ‘conventional treatment’ in 451 people with acute exacerbations of lower back pain. Those receiving 240 mg salicin experienced the best results, with 40% pain-free after 4 weeks compared with 19% in the 120 mg salicin group and 18% in the control group (Chrubasik et al 2001b).

**Comparative trial with rofecoxib** No significant differences in pain relieving effects were found between white willowbark standardised to provide a daily dose of 240 mg salicin and 12.5 mg of the synthetic COX-2 inhibitor rofecoxib according to a randomised trial of individuals with acute episodes of chronic non-specific low-back pain (Chrubasik et al 2001a). With regard to rescue treatments, the percentage of
patients requiring NSAIDs, tramadol or both was 10% for the willowbark group and 13% for the rofecoxib group. Approximately 90% of physicians and patients rated either treatment as effective and close to 100% rated either treatment as acceptable.

Considering some pharmaceutical treatments used in the management of pain and inflammatory conditions are costly, such as the newer COX-2 inhibitors, Chrubasik et al (2001b) also compared the cost savings associated with the use of willowbark. A dose of 120 mg salicin/day from willowbark reduced overall patient spending on additional drugs by about 35–50%. In comparison, 240 mg salicin/day produced superior pain relief that resulted in even less reliance on supplementary treatments, but savings were outweighed by the extra cost of the higher dose.

**FEVER AND HEADACHES**

Although no clinical trials are available for these indications, the known activity of the salicylate constituents suggests the herb may provide some symptomatic relief. Commission E has approved willowbark for these indications (Blumenthal et al 2000).

**DOSAGE RANGE**

- Tincture (1:1): 1–2 mL three times daily.
- Decoction: 1–3 g finely chopped herb in 1 cup of cold water, brought to the boil then reduced to simmer for 5 minutes, drunk 3–4 times daily.

**ACCORDING TO CLINICAL STUDIES**

- Osteoarthritic joint pain and inflammation — willowbark preparations standardised to total salicin content and providing 240 mg daily in divided doses.
- Acute episodes of chronic non-specific low-back pain — willowbark preparations standardised to total salicin content and providing 240 mg daily in divided doses

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**

None reported. Theoretically, the tannin and salicylate content may cause gastrointestinal disturbances.

**SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS**

Controlled studies are not available, therefore interactions are based on evidence of pharmacological activity and clinical significance is uncertain.

**ANTICOAGULANTS**

Although a clinical study found that consumption of salicin 240 mg/day produced minimal effects on platelet aggregation, higher doses may have a significant effect. Caution with high dose > 240 mg salicin/day.
**SALICYLATE DRUGS**
Theoretically, concurrent use may result in additive effects, although this has yet to be tested — observe patients taking this combination.

**ASPIRIN**
Theoretically, willow bark may enhance the anti-inflammatory and antiplatelet effects at doses of salicin 240 mg/day — observe patients taking this combination; beneficial interaction may be possible.

An increased risk of bleeding is theoretically possible with high doses > 240 mg salicin — observe.

**NSAIDS**
A reduction in drug requirements may be possible with the use of white willow bark in lower back pain according to a randomised study — beneficial interaction possible.

**CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS**
Commission E states that there is no evidence that willow bark preparations should be contraindicated in small children due to the risk of Reye’s syndrome, as the salicylates in the herb are metabolised differently to aspirin.

Due to the relatively high concentration of salicylates in this herb, it should not be used by people with salicylate sensitivity.

**PREGNANCY USE**
It is generally not advised to recommend salicylate-containing medicines during pregnancy or lactation, although no restrictions are known for willow bark directly.

**PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING**
- Evidence from several RCTs suggests that willow bark is an effective treatment for relieving pain in chronic backache and osteoarthritis.
- The results of one clinical study suggest it is as effective as 12.5 mg of the synthetic COX-2 inhibitor rofecoxib when used at a daily dose of 240 mg salicin.
- People using willow bark may find they have lowered requirements for traditional anti-inflammatory medicines such as NSAIDs.
- Currently, there is no evidence to suggest gastrointestinal side effects or significant platelet inhibition.
- Due to its salicylate content, people with salicylate sensitivity should avoid use of willow bark.
ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What will this herb do for me?
Scientific studies have found that willow bark is a useful treatment for relieving pain in osteoarthritis and chronic backache. It may also relieve symptoms of headache and fever.

When will it start to work?
Studies using willow bark preparations in diseases characterised by joint pain have found that effects start within 1 week’s use.

Are there any safety issues?
Willow bark appears to be free of major side effects or drug interactions, but it should not be taken by people with salicylate sensitivity.

REFERENCES
Setty AR, Sigal LH. Herbal medications commonly used in the practice of rheumatology: mechanisms of action, efficacy, and side effects. Semin Arthritis Rheum 34.6 (2005): 773-84.
Withania

Historical note  The name ashwagandha (one of the common names for this herb) comes from the sanskrit meaning ‘horse-like smell’. Apparently, this name not only refers to the smell of the herb but also its strengthening and aphrodisiac qualities. It is often referred to as ‘Indian ginseng’ because it is used in much the same way in Ayurvedic medicine as Panax ginseng in TCM, although it is considered less stimulating.

OTHER NAMES
Ashwagandha (and a variety of spellings including ashvagandha, ashwaganda, asvagandha), Ayurvedic ginseng, Indian ginseng, winter cherry

BOTANICAL NAME/FAMILY
Withania somnifera (family Solanaceae)
  Sometimes confused with Physalis alkekengi, also known as winter cherry.

PLANT PARTS USED
Primarily root, although berry, leaves and bark are sometimes used.

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Steroidal lactones (withanolides, withaferin A), alkaloids (including withanine, somniferine, isopelieterine, anaferine, tropine, pseudotropine), flavonoids, saponins, sitoindosides, iron, choline, acyethyl glucosides, coumarins (scopoletin and aesculetin), triterpene (beta-amyrin), phytosterols (stigmasterol and beta-sitosterol), essential oils (ipuranol, withaniol) (Abou-Dooh 2002; Kulkarni & Verma 1993; Mills & Bone 2000).

MAIN ACTIONS
ADAPTOGEN (MODULATES STRESS RESPONSES)
Withania has been shown to attenuate the negative effects of chronic stress in rats, including hyperglycaemia, glucose intolerance, increase in plasma corticosteroid levels, gastric ulcerations, male sexual dysfunction, cognitive deficits, immunosuppression and mental depression (Bhattacharya & Muruganandam 2003). Animal trials have shown that a withanolide-free hydrosoluble fraction of withania reduces the stress response induced both chemically and physically (Singh et al 2003). It suppresses stress-induced increases in dopamine receptors in the corpus striatum.
and acts as a GABA-mimetic agent by binding to GABA receptors (Mehta et al 1991, Upton 2000). Animal studies also suggest an ability to reduce adrenal weight and plasma cortisol levels (Kurandikar et al 1986), thus potentially protecting against the negative effects of elevated cortisol levels in chronic stress and allostasis.

NERVOUS SYSTEM ACTIVITY

Cognitive enhancement Memory enhancement has been confirmed by animal studies and appears to be mediated by a cholinergic effect (Dhuley 2001). Increased cortical muscarinic acetylcholine receptor capacity has been observed in animals and humans with extracts of withania (Schliebs et al 1997). Several withanolides exert calcium antagonistic ability, together with anticholinesterase activity, by inhibiting butyrylcholinesterase and acetylcholinesterase enzymes (Choudhary MI et al 2004, 2005). The presence of choline in the herb may also contribute to the production of acetylcholine and further increase cholinergic effects.

Neuroprotective Several animal studies indicate the potential for protection of neurons (Jain et al 2001), including protection from neuronal injury in Parkinson’s disease (Ahmad et al 2005) and promotion of dendrite formation (Tohda et al 2000). One possible explanation is due to the antioxidant properties of withania (Parihar & Hemnani 2003).

In animal models of haloperidol-induced dyskinesia (chewing movements, tongue protrusion and buccal tremors), the reported benefits of withania appear to be due to its antioxidant rather than GABA-mimetic action (Bhattacharya SK et al 2002; Naidu et al 2003). In vitro results suggest that withanolide A is able to reconstruct neuronal networks, including axons, dendrites, pre- and postsynapses, in the neurons (Kuboyama et al 2002, 2005).

ANTIOXIDANT

Withania exerts an indirect antioxidant action in vivo (Bhattacharya SK et al 1997, Bhattacharya A et al 2001). Daily administration of W. somnifera root extract increases hepatic glucose-6-phosphatase activity and decreases hepatic lipid peroxidation, most likely by increasing the activity of endogenous antioxidant enzymes (Panda & Kar 1997, 1998, 1999). In vitro W. somnifera inhibits both the lipid peroxidation and the protein oxidative modification induced by copper (Gupta et al 2003). In animal studies the antioxidant actions have been proposed as a possible mechanism for withania preventing the negative effects of stroke induced by middle cerebral artery occlusion (Choudhary G et al 2003).
INCREASES HAEMATOPOIESIS

Animal trials indicate the herb increases haemoglobin and red blood cell levels (Ziauddin et al 1996) and increases haemopoiesis (Aphale et al 1998). The iron content of the herb may further contribute to its role in red blood cell formation.

IMMUNOMODULATION

Animal studies have shown immunomodulating effects of withania, including an increase in white blood cell, platelet and neutrophil counts (Agarwal et al 1999, Davis & Kuttan 2000, Gupta YK et al 2001, Ziauddin et al 1996), increases in IFN-gamma and IL-2 and a reduction in TNF (Davis & Kuttan 1999). In vitro, increased nitric oxide production by macrophages has also been reported (Iuvone et al 2003). Withaferin A and withanolide D may cause immunosuppression, but other factors have immunostimulant effects (NMCD 2006).

ANTIBACTERIAL AND ANTIFUNGAL ACTIVITY

Animal and in vitro studies have shown antibacterial effects against Staphylococcus aureus, Listeria monocytogenes, Bacillus anthracis, Bacillus subtilis, Salmonella enteridis (Akin et al 1986) and Salmonella typhimurium (Owais et al 2005). The methanol and hexane extracts of both the leaves and the roots have potent antibacterial activity against S. typhimurium and Escherichia coli (Arora et al 2004); and the steroidal withanolides from the related species W. coagulens have been found to have antifungal activity against Allescheria boydii, Aspergillus niger, Curvularia lunata, Drechslera rostrata, Epidermophyton floccosum, Microsporum canis, Nigrospora oryzae, Pleurotus ostreatus and Stachybotrys atra (Choudhary et al 1995).

ANTIFLAMMATORY ACTIVITY

The withanolides (steroidal lactones) are considered to have anti-inflammatory effects (Chevallier 1996). Several withanolides exert selective COX-2 enzyme inhibition (Jayaprakasam & Nair 2003) and withania has been found to decrease alpha-2-macroglobulin, a liver-synthesised plasma protein that increases during inflammation (Anbalagan & Sadique 1985). A reduction in the erythrocyte sedimentation rate has also been noted in a double-blind clinical trial of 50–59 year old males (Kupparajan et al 1980).

ANTICANCER (ANTINEOPLASTIC AND CHEMOPREVENTION)

Studies show that withania can stimulate the production of cytotoxic T-lymphocytes in vivo and in vitro, and that it may prevent or reduce tumour growth (Davis & Kuttan 2002; Jayaprakasam et al 2003). Withania was found in animal models to prevent skin carcinoma induced by UVB radiation (Mathur et al 2004) and forestomach...
tumours (Padmavathi et al 2005); reduce the incidence, number and size of tumours; and to counteract the associated decrease in body weight (Singh et al 1996).

The withaferin A fraction appears to exert anti-angiogenic activity (Mohan et al 2004) and may be partly responsible for the antineoplastic effects observed in vitro and in vivo studies (Uma Devi 1995, 1996). The antioxidant effects aid in the prevention of DNA damage by mutagens (Khanam & Devi 2005) and this in combination with detoxifying properties, anti-inflammatory and immunomodulatory effects, determined in animal studies, are likely to contribute to its chemopreventive action (Prakash et al 2001, 2002).

**ANXIOLYTIC AND ANTIDEPRESSANT**
Animal studies have found glycowithanolides to exert anxiolytic effects comparable to those of lorazepam, and antidepressant effects comparable to those of the antidepressant drug, imipramine (Bhattacharya SK et al 2000).

**OTHER ACTIONS**

**CARDIOPROTECTIVE**
Cardioprotective effects have been noted in animal studies (Dhuley 2000, Mohanty et al 2004), significantly reducing myocardial injury after ischaemia and reperfusion (Gupta SK et al 2004). The alkaloids are considered to be sedative and reduce blood pressure and heart rate (Chevallier 1996, Malhotra et al 1965a). The withanolides have a chemical structure similar to cardiac glycosides and have demonstrated mild ionotropic and chronotropic effects on the heart (Roja et al 1991, Tripathi et al 1996).

**THYROID MODULATING**
An in vivo study reported that daily administration of *W. somnifera* root extract enhanced serum $T_4$ concentration (Panda & Kar 1998, 1999).

**SEXUAL ENHANCER**
Traditionally used for this purpose, one double-blind clinical trial found that a dose of 3 g taken daily for 1 year improved the sexual performance of 71.4% of healthy ageing males (Kupparajan et al 1980). Alternatively, animal studies have indicated that very high doses (3000 mg/kg) result in reduced sexual performance (Ilayperuma et al 2002).

**HEPATOPROTECTIVE**
Animal studies have demonstrated hepatoprotective effects (Bhattacharya A et al 2000, Sudhir et al 1986) and that withania inhibits phase I, and activates phase II and antioxidant enzymes in the liver (Padmavathi et al 2005).
CLINICAL USE
Overall, *W. somnifera* has not undergone significant scientific investigation in humans, therefore much of its use is based on pharmacological effects demonstrated in experimental models or traditional usage. In practice, it is often used in herbal combination treatments.

STRESS ADAPTATION
The pharmacological effects of the herb, which have been well established in animal studies, provide a theoretical basis for its use in situations characterised by stress (Archana & Namasiyayam 1999; Bhattacharya & Muruganandam 2003; Dhuley 2000; Grandhi et al 1994).

More specifically, oral administration of an aqueous, standardised extract of *W. somnifera* (in a dose extrapolated from the human dose) has been found to offer protection against experimentally induced biological, physical and chemical stressors (Rege et al 1999).

In one in-vivo study, plasma cortisol levels and adrenal weight were significantly lower, while liver weight increased (Kurandikar et al 1986).

To date, controlled studies are unavailable to determine and clarify whether these effects are also significant in humans.

(For more information see ‘Clinical note — Allostasis and adaptation to stress’ in the Siberian ginseng monograph.)

ANXIETY
Although controlled studies are lacking, the herb’s pharmacological effects, such as its GABA-mimetic activity (Mehta et al 1991) and ability to lower cortisol levels (Kurandikar et al 1986), provide a theoretical basis for its use in anxiety states. One study used a herbal combination treatment known as Geriforte, which contains primarily *W. somnifera*. The product was taken by 34 subjects with anxiety neurosis, and after 12 weeks significant reductions in the frequency, duration and intensity of symptoms were observed (Ghosal et al 1990).

ANABOLIC AND WEIGHT GAIN PROMOTION
Both animal and human studies have shown significant improvements in weight gain during the growth phase with the use of withania (Sharma et al 1986; Ziauddin et al 1996). It is suspected that an anabolic effect is responsible.

Withania-fortified milk (2 g/day for 60 days) has been investigated in children and found to induce weight gain, increase total plasma proteins and haemoglobin levels (Venkatraghaven et al 1980).

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
ANAEMIA
The herb is used in the treatment of iron deficiency anaemia due to its effects on haemopoiesis and natural iron content (Aphale et al 1998; Ziauddin et al 1996). This use has been supported by studies showing increased haemoglobin levels in children, induced by withania.

CANCER THERAPY
Prevention of bone marrow depression Animal studies suggest a potential role for withania as an adjunctive treatment during chemotherapy for the prevention of drug-induced bone marrow depression (Davis & Kuttan 1999; Gupta et al 2001).

The ability to stimulate stem cell proliferation has led to concerns that Withania somnifera could reduce cyclophosphamide-induced toxicity and therefore reduce its usefulness in cancer therapy (Davis & Kuttan 1998). However, preliminary animal studies indicate that withania could prove to be a potent and relatively safe radiosensitiser and chemotherapeutic agent (Uma Devi 1996).

DRUG WITHDRAWAL
In animal studies, repeated administration of withania (100 mg/kg) inhibited morphine tolerance and dependence (Kulkarni & Ninan 1997). Based on this observation, and its ability to modulate stress responses in general, withania is used in herbal combination therapy during opiate withdrawal.

ARTHITIS
Withania is traditionally incorporated into herbal combination formulations for symptom relief in osteoarthritis and rheumatoid arthritis. Its documented anti-inflammatory and antioxidant activities provide some support for this use, although controlled studies have not established efficacy.

OTHER USES
Traditionally used in convalescence for people who are stressed and both physically and emotionally exhausted. It is considered a non-stimulating tonic allowing for the restoration of vitality.

As the alkaloids are considered to be sedative and able to reduce blood pressure and heart rate (Chevallier 1996, Malhotra et al 1965a), it is also used in practice for insomnia, although controlled trials are lacking in this area.

DOSAGE RANGE
- Fluid extract (1:2): 5–13 mL/day.
- Dried root: 3–6 g/day in capsule or tea form.
ADVERSE REACTIONS
Large doses can cause gastrointestinal upset, diarrhoea and vomiting (Tierra 2005).

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
Controlled studies are not available; therefore, interactions are based on evidence of activity and are largely theoretical and speculative.

BARBITURATES
Additive effects are theoretically possible leading to increased sedation (NMCD 2006, Tierra 2005). Observe patients taking withania and barbiturates concurrently — beneficial interaction possible under medical supervision.

BENZODIAZEPINES
Additive effects are theoretically possible (Upton 2000). Observe patients taking withania and benzodiazepines concurrently — beneficial interaction possible under professional supervision.

CHEMOTHERAPY
Animal studies suggest a potential role for withania as an adjunctive treatment during chemotherapy for the prevention of drug-induced bone marrow depression (Davis & Kuttan 1999, Gupta et al 2001). Observe — beneficial interaction possible under professional supervision.

IMMUNOSUPPRESSANTS (INCLUDING CYCLOPHOSPHAMIDE)
The ability to stimulate stem cell proliferation has led to concerns that W. somnifera could reduce cyclophosphamide-induced toxicity and its usefulness in cancer therapy (Davis & Kuttan 1998) although preliminary animal studies indicate a potential role as a potent and relatively safe radiosensitiser and chemotherapeutic agent (Uma Devi 1996). Theoretically it may also decrease the effectiveness of other immunosuppressant drugs. Caution should be exercised with patients taking immunosuppressants concurrently; however, a beneficial interaction may be possible under professional supervision.
MORPHINE
In animal studies, repeated administration of withania (100 mg/kg) inhibited morphine tolerance and dependence (Kulkarni & Ninan 1997). For this reason it is sometimes used in opiate withdrawal. Beneficial interaction possible under professional supervision.

THYROID MEDICATION (E.G. LEVOTHYROXINE)
Additive effects are theoretically possible as an in vivo study reported that daily administration of withania enhanced serum T4 concentrations — observe patients taking withania and thyroid medications concurrently (Upton 2000).

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Use with caution in peptic ulcer disease: withania may cause gastrointestinal irritation (Upton 2000). People who are sensitive to the Solanaceae family should use this herb with caution.

PREGNANCY USE
Contraindicated in pregnancy (Lindner 1996) due to a reputed abortifacient activity.

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Withania is an Ayurvedic herbal medicine also referred to as Indian ginseng or ashwaganda. Overall, it has not undergone significant scientific investigation in humans and therefore much of its use is based on pharmacological effects demonstrated in experimental models or traditional usage.
- It is traditionally used for improving stress adaptation responses in people who are both physically and emotionally stressed and exhausted and during periods of convalescence.
- Preliminary evidence suggests it increases haematopoiesis, promotes weight gain, reduces anxiety symptoms, increases cognitive function and exerts a neuroprotective effect.
- It has also demonstrated antioxidant, immunomodulating, antineoplastic, antifungal and antibacterial activity in animal or test tube studies.
- The herb should not be taken in pregnancy, and used with caution in people sensitive to the Solanaceae family of plants.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this herb do for me?
Withania has not undergone much scientific investigation in humans, so it is difficult to predict what effects will occur using this source of information. However, according to traditional usage and other studies, it may improve stress responses,
reduce symptoms of anxiety, improve memory and mood, increase red blood cell production, increase immune responses and promote weight gain and is useful in convalescence.

**When will it start to work?**
Symptoms of anxiety and stress improve within 3 months’ continual use. It is not known when other effects start to develop.

**Are there any safety issues?**
The herb should not be taken in pregnancy, and used with caution in people sensitive to the Solanaceae family of plants.

**REFERENCES**

**Withania** 1378

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
Zinc

BACKGROUND AND RELEVANT PHARMACOKINETICS
Zinc is an essential trace element known to play an important role in all human living cells. The human body contains approximately 2 g zinc in total, with 60% found in skeletal muscle and 30% in bone mass, although it is found in all body tissues and fluids (Wahlqvist et al 1997). Dietary intake of zinc by healthy adults is 6–15 mg/day, but less than half of this is absorbed (Beers & Berkow 2003). It is now known that zinc absorption is influenced by many factors and adequate dietary intake is not necessarily indicative of adequate zinc status. High amounts of zinc in a meal cause a fractional decrease in zinc absorption and foods with high phytate content (e.g. wholegrains, corn and rice) significantly reduce zinc absorption due to the formation of strong and insoluble complexes (Lonnerdal 2000). Concerns have also been raised over the potential of calcium, iron, copper and cadmium to reduce zinc absorption. Alternatively, the amount of animal protein in a meal positively correlates to zinc absorption and the amino acids histidine and methionine, and various organic acids present in foods, such as citric, malic and lactic acids, can also increase absorption. As such, zinc is best absorbed from animal food sources (King 2003).

CHEMICAL COMPONENTS
Zinc sulfate and gluconate are the most commonly used forms in supplements.

FOOD SOURCES
Meat, liver, eggs, seafood (especially oysters and shellfish) are the best sources, but zinc is also found in nuts, legumes, wholegrains, miso, tofu, brewers’ yeast, mushrooms, green beans and pumpkin seeds.

DEFICIENCY SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS
Severe deficiency is rarely seen in industrialised countries, but marginal deficiency and inadequate intakes are not uncommon. According to a large national survey of over 29,000 people conducted in the USA, only 55.6% had adequate zinc intakes (based on total intakes of >77% of the 1989 US RDI levels). Young children aged 1–3 years, female adolescents and older people aged ≥71 years had the lowest percentage of ‘adequate’ zinc intake, and were identified at greatest risk of deficiency (Briefel et al 2000). Others at risk are alcoholics (especially those with liver disease), pregnant and lactating women, teenagers experiencing rapid growth, malnourished individuals.
including those with anorexia nervosa, people with severe or chronic diarrhoea, malabsorption syndromes or inflammatory bowel diseases, and strict vegetarians.

**SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS OF DEFICIENCY**
- Anorexia and impaired sense of taste.
- Slowed growth and development, and delayed sexual maturation.
- Delayed sexual maturation, hypogonadism and hypospermia, and menstrual problems.
- Skin rashes.
- Alopecia.
- Chronic and severe diarrhoea.
- Immune system deficiencies and increased susceptibility to infection.
- Impaired wound healing due to decreased collagen synthesis.
- Night blindness; swelling and clouding of the corneas.
- Behavioural disturbances such as mental fatigue and depression (King 2003).
- Erectile dysfunction.

Zinc deficiency in pregnancy is associated with the following (Bedwal & Bahuguna 1994, Prasad 1996):
- Increased maternal morbidity, pre-eclampsia and toxaemia.
- Prolonged gestation.
- Inefficient labour.
- Atonic bleeding.
- Increased risk of abortion and stillbirths.
- Teratogenicity.
- Low birthweight infants.
- Diminished attention in the newborn and poorer motor function at 6 months (Higdon 2003).

**PRIMARY DEFICIENCY**
This can result from inadequate dietary intake of zinc; however, inhibition of zinc absorption is a common causative factor (Lonnerdal 2000). Strict vegetarians are at risk of deficiency if their major food staples are grains and legumes because the phytic acid in these foods will impair dietary zinc absorption.

**SECONDARY DEFICIENCY**
Zinc deficiency develops in some people with cirrhosis, malabsorption syndromes, sickle cell anaemia, conditions of increased zinc loss, such as severe burns or major surgery, chronic diarrhoea or diabetes, HIV and AIDS, and during prolonged parenteral nutrition (Prasad et al 1999). Additionally, strenuous exercise and elevated
ambient temperatures increase zinc losses through perspiration. A congenital disorder known as acrodermatitis enteropathica causes severe zinc deficiency.

Clinical note — Measuring zinc status is difficult
Currently, there is no universally accepted single measure of zinc status in humans. The most commonly used approach is the measurement of serum zinc levels, but this is a poor measure of marginal zinc deficiency because zinc is primarily found intracellularly and only a small portion is found in the circulation where it is mainly bound to plasma protein. Plasma zinc levels are affected by the homeostatic system and other factors, such as diurnal rhythm, stress, infection, starvation and plasma protein levels. As a consequence, it is not an accurate reflection of dietary zinc intake or true zinc status (Wood 2000). Estimation of hair zinc levels is another tool used, with low hair zinc levels indicative of zinc depletion. This method is costly and also subject to inaccuracies caused by variable hair growth and the presence of zinc in some shampoos. The zinc taste response test (also known as the Bryce-Smith taste test) is a popular measure among naturopathic practitioners. It relies on patients detecting a taste after oral administration of 10 mL of a zinc sulfate solution. Delayed taste perception or lack of taste is seen to indicate a zinc deficiency state. It is based on the theory that sense of taste is primarily influenced by the zinc dependent enzyme, gustin, in the saliva. As such, low zinc status should substantially affect taste discrimination. This method is not particularly accurate and hampered by variations in patients’ subjective sense of taste and the fact that agents other than zinc influence taste perception. Clinical studies with zinc taste tests have confirmed the inconsistency of the results (Birmingham et al 2005, Garg et al 1993, Mahomed et al 1993). Ultimately, this leaves the diagnosis of marginal deficiency up to a practitioner’s clinical suspicion.

MAIN ACTIONS

IMPORTANT COFACTOR IN MANY BIOCHEMICAL REACTIONS
As a constituent of over 300 metalloenzymes, zinc is involved in myriad chemical reactions that are important for normal body functioning, such as carbohydrate metabolism, protein and DNA synthesis, protein digestion, bone metabolism and endogenous antioxidant systems (Beers et al 1999, Wahlqvist et al 1997, Wardlaw et al 1997). At the cellular level, the function of zinc can be divided into three categories: catalytic, structural and regulatory (King 2003).

Growth and development Zinc is important for the formation of biomembranes and zinc finger motifs found in DNA transcription factors (Semrad 1999).
Normal immune responses  Zinc is involved in many aspects of immunological function. It is essential for the normal development and function of cells, mediating non-specific immunity such as neutrophils and natural killer cells and affecting development of acquired immunity and T-lymphocyte function. Deficiency rapidly diminishes antibody and cell-mediated responses in both humans and animals, leading to increases in opportunistic infections and mortality rates (Fraker et al 2000). Animal models have shown that suboptimal intake of zinc over 30 days can lead to 30–80% loss in defence capacity. Investigation using a human model has demonstrated that even mild deficiency in humans adversely affects T-cell functions (Prasad 1998). Conversely, high-dose zinc supplementation (20-fold RDI) can also produce immune dysfunction.

Neurological function  Zinc ions are unevenly distributed in the CNS, acting as neurosecretory products or cofactors. Zinc is highly concentrated in the synaptic vesicles of specific neurons, known as ‘zinc-containing’ neurons (Frederickson and Danscher 1990, Frederickson and Moncrieff 1994, Frederickson et al 2000). Zinc-containing neurons are a subset of glutamatergic neurons and mostly located in the telencephalon. Zinc is released from zinc-containing neurons in a calcium- and impulse-dependent manner, producing a broad spectrum of neuromodulatory effects. Additionally, zinc appears to stabilise the storage of certain macromolecules in presynaptic vesicles.

Reproduction  In humans, zinc is necessary for the formation and maturation of spermatozoa, for ovulation, and for fertilisation (Favier 1992). Zinc has multiple actions on the metabolism of androgen hormones, oestrogen and progesterone, and these, together with the prostaglandins and nuclear receptors for steroids, are all zinc finger proteins.

In adult males, zinc content is high in the testis and prostate, which have the highest concentration of zinc of any organ in the body (Bedwal & Bahuguna 1994).

In women, zinc deficiency in pregnancy has been associated with increased maternal morbidity, increased risk of abortion, stillbirth, teratogenicity and other unwanted outcomes (Bedwal & Bahuguna 1994).

Antioxidant  Zinc limits oxidant-induced damage in a number of indirect ways, such as protecting against vitamin E depletion, controlling vitamin A release, contributing to the structure of the antioxidant enzyme extracellular superoxide dismutase, restricting endogenous free radical production, maintaining tissue concentrations of metallothionein, a possible scavenger of free radicals, and stabilising membrane structure (DiSilvestro 2000). More recently it was observed to decrease
lipid peroxidation, and protect mononuclear cells from TNF-alpha induced NF-kappa-B activation associated with oxidative stress (Prasad et al 2004).

**Insulin-like activity** One of the in vivo features of zinc is its insulin-like function, which is mediated via inhibition of endogenous GSK-3 (Ilouz et al 2002). This is important because GSK-3 inhibition appears essential for normal function of the insulin-activated signalling pathway.

**CLINICAL USE**

Many of the clinical uses of zinc supplements are for conditions thought to arise from a marginal zinc deficiency, but some indications are based on the concept that high-dose zinc supplements act as a therapeutic agent.

**DEFICIENCY**

Traditionally, zinc supplementation has been used to treat deficiency or prevent deficiency in conditions such as acrodermatitis enteropathica, anorexia nervosa, malabsorption syndromes, conditions associated with chronic diarrhoea, alcoholism, diabetes, HIV and AIDS, recurrent infections, severe burns, Wilson’s disease and sickle cell anaemia. Zinc supplements are also popular among athletes in order to counteract the zinc loss that occurs through perspiration.

**COMMON COLD**

Oral zinc supplements, lozenges and nasal sprays and gels have been investigated in the treatment of the common cold. It has been demonstrated that a transient increase in zinc concentrations in and around the nasal cavity prevents rhinovirus binding to cells and disrupts infection (Novick et al 1996) and/or modulates inflammatory cytokines that may exacerbate cold symptoms.

**Nasal preparations** A randomised, double-blind placebo-controlled trial with 160 people tested the effects of a nasal spray of 0.12% zinc sulfate and found that it reduced the total symptom score, but had no effect on the duration of cold symptoms or the mean time to resolution (Belongia et al 2001). The effectiveness of intranasal zinc gluconate as a preventative agent against experimentally induced rhinovirus infection was tested in a study of 91 subjects (Turner 2001). It was administered for 3 days prior to rhinovirus inoculation followed by 6 days of treatment. This regimen had no effect on total symptom score, rhinorrhea, nasal obstruction, or the proportion of infected volunteers who developed clinical colds.

Two other trials using a dose of zinc in a nasal gel formulation showed that zinc treatment significantly reduced cold duration compared with placebo when used within 24–48 hours of symptom onset (Hirt et al 2000, Mossad 2003). The nasal gel spray contained either 33 mmol/L zinc gluconate or placebo and was administered as
one dose per nostril four times daily until symptoms resolved or for a maximum of 10 days. Symptoms that responded included nasal drainage, hoarseness and sore throat (Mossad 2003).

**Oral supplements** Both positive and negative results have been obtained for different forms of oral zinc supplements and specialised preparations. A 2000 Cochrane review analysed the results from seven trials involving 754 cases and concluded that current evidence is inconclusive as to whether zinc lozenges are an effective treatment for symptoms of the common cold (Marshall 2000). This conclusion is considered conservative, as an intention-to-treat analysis at 7 days found a statistically significant RR of 0.69 and the numbers needed to treat for one person to benefit ranged from 4 to 8 (Arroll 2005). The authors of the review were concerned about blinding of the studies and variation in doses used making a conclusive recommendation difficult.

Since then, several new studies have been published (Eby & Halcomb 2006, McElroy & Miller 2002, 2003, Turner & Cetnarowski 2000). McElroy and Miller (2002) showed that treatment with zinc gluconate glycine lozenges (Cold-Eeze) significantly decreased cold duration (7.5 vs 9.0 days for non use) and significantly reduced cold frequency and concomitant antibiotic use in school-aged subjects. A subsequent phase IV study by the same pair of researchers (2003) investigated the therapeutic and prophylactic effectiveness of Cold-Eeze for the common cold in a cohort of 134 subjects drawn from the previous study. Once again, zinc gluconate glycine lozenges shortened cold duration (6.9 vs 9.0 days) and the mean number of colds (1.7 vs 1.28), achieving a 25% reduction in cold incidence. Zinc lozenges were administered once daily during the cold season and four times daily as acute treatment. An adult study demonstrated that zinc gluconate (13.3 mg) or zinc acetate (5 or 11.5 mg) lozenges had no effect on duration or severity of cold symptoms (Turner & Cetnarowski 2000). A recent double-blind, placebo controlled study found that frequent administration of zinc orotate lozenges (37 mg zinc each) and intranasal zinc gluconate spray had no effects on severity of cold symptoms or their duration (Eby & Halcomb 2006).

It is not clear why some trials have produced positive results whereas others have not; however, it is suspected that the type of zinc and formulation used has an influence over effectiveness. A closer look at the evidence shows that zinc gluconate or zinc acetate are the forms generally associated with positive results whereas other forms are less effective. Additionally, lozenge additives such as sorbitol and citric acid are thought to decrease zinc ion release, which is necessary for zinc’s virucidal activity. It has been suggested that zinc lozenges be allowed to completely dissolve in

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
the mouth without chewing and that citrus fruits or juices be avoided 30 minutes before or after dissolving each lozenge to avoid negating the therapeutic effects of zinc (Silk & Lefante 2005).

**AGE-RELATED MACULAR DEGENERATION**

Both dietary and supplemental zinc have been investigated in the prevention and/or progression of ARMD.

A 2002 Cochrane review assessed the effects of antioxidant vitamin and/or mineral supplementation on the progression of ARMD and found that evidence of effectiveness is currently dominated by one large trial that showed modest benefit in people with moderate to severe signs of the disease who were administered antioxidant vitamins and zinc together (Evans 2002). More recently, results of the Age-Related Eye Disease Study were published (AREDS 2001), which showed that high-dose vitamins C and E, beta-carotene, and zinc supplementation delayed the progression from intermediate to advanced disease by 25% over 5 years. The 11 centre, double-blind, prospective study involved 3640 volunteers aged between 55 and 80 years who were randomly divided into four treatment groups, receiving either antioxidant supplements (500 mg vitamin C, 400 international units (IU) vitamin E, and 15 mg beta carotene daily), zinc oxide and cupric oxide (80 mg elemental zinc, 2 mg elemental copper daily), antioxidants plus zinc, or placebo. The contribution of zinc to this result is unknown (see Lutein monograph for more information about ARMD).

Overall, the current available data are insufficient to conclusively state that zinc supplementation used as stand-alone treatment should be taken during the early signs of disease; however, when taken in combination with antioxidant vitamins the evidence is more supportive for its use in intermediate ARMD.

In terms of primary prevention, a 2005 study found that high dietary intake of zinc, beta-carotene and vitamins C and E was associated with a 35% reduced risk of ARMD in elderly persons (van Leeuwen et al 2005).

**DIABETES MELLITUS**

Zinc supplementation is sometimes used in diabetes in order to avoid deficiency, a state associated with both type 1 and 2 diabetes in numerous studies (Cunningham et al 1994). It is still unknown whether restoring zinc status to normal levels or using high-dose zinc to induce other effects will be beneficial in the clinical management of diabetes, its complications or its prevention, as current data from both animal and human studies have produced varied results (Baydas et al 2002, Cunningham et al 1994, Farvid et al 2004, Gupta et al 1998, Niewoehner et al 1986, Roussel et al 2003, Tobia et al 1998).
A prospective, double-blind, clinical interventional study of 56 obese women with normal glucose tolerance who were randomised to treatment with zinc, 30 mg/day, or placebo for 4 weeks (Marreiro et al 2002) found that zinc treatment decreased insulin resistance from 5.8 to 4.3 and insulin decreased from 28.8 to 21.2 mU/mL in the zinc group, but was unchanged in the placebo group. These results are particularly noteworthy because the women were not zinc deficient, suggesting a therapeutic role for zinc.

**Clinical note — Zinc deficiency and diabetes**
Diabetes affects zinc homeostasis in many ways and is associated with increased urinary loss, decreased absorption and decreased total body zinc (Chausmer 1998, Cunningham et al 1994). The role of zinc and zinc deficiency in diabetes and its complications or prevention is currently unclear. It has been suggested that deficiency may exacerbate destruction of islet cells in type 1 diabetes and may adversely affect synthesis, storage and secretion of insulin, a process that requires zinc. Furthermore, evidence indicates that patients with type 1 diabetes mellitus have a higher concentration of free radicals than healthy controls, which is due to increased oxidant production and/or decreased efficiency of endogenous antioxidant systems (Davison et al 2002). It is suspected that deficiency of key micronutrients (i.e. zinc, copper, manganese and selenium), which are integral components of important antioxidant systems, may be partly responsible.

**IMPROVES WOUND HEALING**
Zinc is an essential cofactor in wound healing and immune function. Therefore, zinc deficiency retards both fibroplasia and epithelialisation, and results in delayed wound healing. Zinc supplements are used to restore zinc status in cases of wound healing associated with malnutrition and deficiency. Additionally, zinc administered orally or topically to wounds can promote healing and reduce infection, according to one major review (Lansdown 1996).

In 2001, a randomised study demonstrated that oral zinc sulfate significantly improved healing of cutaneous leishmaniasis (Sharquie et al 2001). Results showed that the cure rate for a dose of 2.5 mg/kg was 83.9%, for 5 mg/kg it was 93.1% and for 10 mg/kg it was 96.9%, whereas no lesions showed any sign of healing in the control group.

**Topical application** Topical zinc oxide promotes cleansing and re-epithelialisation of ulcers and reduces the risk of infection and deterioration of ulcers compared with placebo, according to one double-blind trial of leg ulcer patients with low serum zinc levels (Agren 1990). Evidence from animal and in vitro research suggests that topically
applied zinc solution is more effective when combined with iron than when used alone, and can effectively enhance healing in acute partial-thickness and second-degree burn wounds (Feiner et al 2003).

**ARTERIAL AND VENOUS LEG ULCERS**
A 2000 Cochrane review assessed six placebo-controlled trials of zinc sulfate supplementation in arterial and venous leg ulcers and concluded that overall there is no evidence of a beneficial effect on the number of ulcers healed. However, there is some evidence that oral zinc might improve healing of venous ulcers in people with low-serum zinc levels (Wilkinson & Hawke 2000).

Double-blind studies producing encouraging results have used oral zinc (600 mg/day) combined with topical treatment and compression bandages (Haeger & Lanner 1974, Hallbook & Lanner 1972).

**ACNE AND OTHER SKIN CONDITIONS**
Over the past 2–3 decades, tetracyclines and macrolide antibiotics have been widely prescribed for the treatment of acne; however, resistance has been reported, especially to erythromycin and clindamycin with cross-resistance being widespread among strains of *Propionibacterium acnes*. As a result, non-antibiotic treatments such as topical and oral zinc preparations have been investigated as both alternatives and adjuncts to these treatments.

Overall, studies have yielded conflicting results, possibly due to considerable placebo effects, with better effects generally seen on inflammatory lesions than other lesion types. This is most likely due to the fact that zinc has a marked anti-inflammatory effect, which was first observed with zinc sulfate and later with zinc gluconate, which is a better tolerated form.

**Oral supplementation** Numerous studies have been conducted investigating the effects of zinc supplementation in acne vulgaris (Dreno et al 1989, 1992, 2001, Goransson et al 1978, Hillstrom et al 1977, Orris et al 1978, Weimar et al 1978, Weismann et al 1977, Verma et al 1980). Doses between 90 mg and 200 mg (30 mg elemental zinc) daily taken over 6–12 weeks have been associated with generally positive results, whereas larger doses tend to be poorly tolerated. More recently, an open study involving 30 subjects with inflammatory acne found that a lower dose of oral zinc gluconate (30 mg) taken daily reduced the number of inflammatory lesions after 2 months regardless of whether *P. acnes* was present (Dreno et al 2005).

Two double-blind studies have compared the effects of oral zinc supplementation with two antibiotic medicines, minocycline or oxytetracycline, over 3 months (Dreno et al 1989, Cunliffe et al 1979). Zinc sulfate (135 mg) was as effective as
oxytetracycline after 12 weeks’ use, decreasing acne scores by 65% in one study, whereas the same dose was not as effective as minocycline (500 mg) in the second study.

Zinc has also been investigated as an adjunct to antibiotic therapy under laboratory conditions. When administered in combination with erythromycin, it inhibits erythromycin-resistant propionibacteria according to two in vitro studies (Dreno et al 2005, Oprica et al 2002).


Statistically significant effects have been observed within the first 12 weeks of treatment for acne severity grades, and for papule, pustule and comedo counts, with the effect of the combination superior to preparations containing erythromycin alone (Habbema et al 1989, Schachner et al 1990). Human studies have identified antibacterial activity against *Propionibacterium* spp. in short-term treatment, which is mostly attributed to zinc (Fluhr et al 1999) and sebosuppressive effects (Pierard & Pierard-Franchimont 1993).

**REDUCED MALE FERTILITY**
Zinc deficiency leads to several clinical signs, such as decreased spermatogenesis and impaired male fertility. When zinc deficiency is not present, a 2002 survey found no statistically significant relationship between zinc in seminal plasma or serum and semen quality or local antisperm antibody of the IgG or IgA class (Eggert-Kruse et al 2002). Furthermore, zinc levels did not influence sperm capacity to penetrate cervical mucus in vitro or in vivo, and did not affect subsequent fertility.

**IMPOTENCE**
In men, zinc deficiency may lead to impaired testosterone synthesis, resulting in hypogonadism and impotency. One placebo-controlled study has investigated whether oral zinc supplementation improves erectile dysfunction. The study involved 20 uraemic haemodialysis patients and showed that 6 months treatment with oral zinc acetate (25 mg elemental zinc) taken twice daily 1–2 hours before meals resulted in greater libido, improved potency and more frequent intercourse compared to placebo (Mahajan et al 1982). Active treatment also resulted in significant increases in plasma zinc, serum testosterone, and sperm count and decreases in serum levels of LH and FSH.
**ATTENTION-DEFICIT HYPERACTIVITY DISORDER**

In 1990, Arnold et al observed that boys aged 6–12 years with ADHD with a higher baseline hair zinc level had better responses to amphetamine therapy than children with mild zinc deficiency. At the time it was suggested that children responding poorly to drug therapy and presenting with mild zinc deficiency would require zinc supplementation instead of amphetamine treatment to address the condition. Since then, numerous controlled studies have identified that children with ADHD have lower zinc tissue levels (serum, red cells, hair, urine, nails) than normal children (Arnold 2005). It is not certain why this occurs, but may result from not sitting at the kitchen table long enough to consume a balanced diet, picky eating, stimulant-related appetite suppression, malabsorption or biochemical changes.

Two double-blind studies have investigated whether oral zinc supplementation has a beneficial effect in ADHD, producing promising results. One randomised study involving 400 Turkish children with a mean age of 9.6 years found that treatment with 150 mg zinc sulfate (equivalent to 40 mg of elemental zinc) daily for 12 weeks resulted in significant reductions in hyperactive, impulsive and impaired socialisation symptoms, but not in reducing attention deficiency symptoms, as assessed by the ADHD Scale (Bilici et al 2004). A significant difference between zinc and placebo were already evident by week 4 ($P = 0.01$). Older children with low zinc and free fatty acid levels and high BMI responded best to treatment. A second placebo-controlled trial used a combination of 55 mg zinc sulfate (equivalent to 15 mg elemental zinc) and methylphenidate (1 mg/kg) daily for 6 weeks in Iranian children aged 5–11 years and reported significant benefits with the combination (Akhondzadeh et al 2004).

It is important to note that both studies were conducted with children from countries with suspected zinc deficiency and further investigation is required to determine whether the same beneficial results will occur in children living in Western countries.

**DEPRESSION**

Twenty patients with unipolar depression had an improved response to antidepressant medication when taken with zinc aspartate supplements (equivalent to 25 mg elemental daily), according to a small, double-blind pilot study (Nowak et al 2003). Significantly greater reductions in Hamilton Depression Rating Scale scores were achieved with zinc treatment compared to placebo by the 6th week and maintained until the end of the 12-week study.
**CROHN’S DISEASE**
Although reduced zinc status has been associated with chronic diarrhoea and Crohn’s disease (Sturniolo et al 1980), the results from a small open study demonstrated that oral zinc sulfate (110 mg three times daily) resolved intestinal permeability problems in people with increased permeability and decreases relapse rates (Sturniolo et al 2001).

**HERPES SIMPLEX**
Overall, application of zinc preparations greatly reduces or eliminates recurrence of genital herpes infections and resolves symptoms of herpes simplex infections (Kneist et al 1995, Finnerty 1986). Zinc sulfate gel applied every 2 hours was a more effective treatment than placebo in herpex simplex labialis in a double-blind study of 80 subjects (Kneist et al 1995). Another study of 200 volunteers with herpes simplex found that 0.25% zinc sulfate solution started within 24 hours of lesion appearance and applied 8–10 times daily cleared lesions within 3–6 days (Finnerty 1986). A randomised placebo-controlled study using a weak zinc solution (0.05% or 0.025% zinc sulfate) found no effects on frequency, duration or severity of herpes attacks, suggesting that stronger concentrations are required for effectiveness (Graham et al 1985).

**ANOREXIA NERVOSA**
There is evidence that suggests zinc deficiency may be intimately involved with anorexia in humans, if not as an initiating cause, then as an accelerating or ‘sustaining’ factor for abnormal eating behaviours that may deepen the pathology of the anorexia (McClain et al 1992, Shay & Mangian 2000). Zinc status is compromised in anorexia nervosa due to an inadequate zinc intake, with supplementation (50 mg elemental zinc/day) shown to decrease depression and anxiety, stop body weight loss and improve weight gain (Katz et al 1987, Safai-Kutti 1990). According to one randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial, 100 mg of zinc gluconate doubled the rate of subjects with anorexia nervosa increasing their BMI compared to placebo (Birmingham et al 1994).

**IMPROVES TASTE PERCEPTION**
Dysfunctional taste perception, or dysgeusia, is a condition that can at the least affect QOL and occasionally can become life-threatening. Zinc supplementation using 140 mg of zinc gluconate (20 mg elemental) per day can improve dysgeusia (Heckmann et al 2005).
**Tinnitus**

In 1987, a report was published suggesting a link between reduced zinc status and intermittent head noises in people suffering with tinnitus (Gersdorff et al. 1987). This has been further investigated in several studies; however, the poorly defined patient groups and use of serum zinc as the means of measuring zinc status makes interpretation of results difficult to assess.

In 1991 Paaske et al. reported the results of a randomised, double-blind study of 48 patients with tinnitus that had failed to find a significant effect on symptoms with sustained-release zinc sulfate tablets. Of note, only one subject had low zinc serum levels. More recently, a study of 111 subjects aged 20–59 years found individuals with tinnitus who had normal hearing had significantly lower serum zinc levels than controls, whereas zinc levels were normal for those with accompanying hearing loss (Ochi et al. 2003). In addition, a significant correlation between average hearing sensitivity and serum zinc level was observed. Yetiser et al. (2002) investigated serum zinc levels and response to supplementation in 40 patients with severe tinnitus of various origins. Some relief in tinnitus symptoms was reported by 57.5% of all subjects who received 220 mg of zinc daily for 2 months; however, the effect was considered minor. When results were divided by age, a different finding emerged as 82% of people over 50 years of age experienced an improvement on the tinnitus scale compared to only 48% of younger subjects. There was no correlation between severity of tinnitus and serum zinc levels. Zinc supplementation (50 mg/day) was further studied in a randomised, placebo-controlled trial involving 41 Turkish patients with tinnitus of no known cause. Active treatment for 2 months produced clinically favourable progress in 46.4% of subjects; however, this result was not statistically significant (Arda et al. 2003).

**Warts**

Oral zinc sulfate (10 mg/kg) supplements administered in three divided doses per day (up to 600 mg/day) for 2 months completely cleared recalcitrant viral warts in 87% of patients, according to a single-blind, placebo-controlled trial of 80 volunteers with at least 15 viral warts that were resistant to other treatments (Al Gurairi et al. 2002). Warts were completed cleared in 61% of patients after 1 month of treatment, whereas none of the patients receiving placebo reported a successful response and some developed new warts. In both placebo and treatment groups the drop-out rates were high: 50% and 45% respectively. Interestingly, patients in the treatment group with low serum zinc baseline levels (mean 62.4 µg/100 mL) exhibited no signs or symptoms of deficiency and zinc serum levels failed to rise in the patients who remained resistant to zinc therapy. Treatment with high-dose zinc supplements was
accompanied by nausea and in some cases vomiting and mild epigastric pain, although these symptoms were described as mild and transient.

OTHER USES

REDUCING THE RISK OF CANCER
Epidemiological studies suggest that zinc deficiency may be associated with increased risk of cancer (Prasad & Kucuk 2002).

HIV AND AIDS
Low plasma zinc concentration occurs in HIV infection, especially with advancing illness (Wellinghausen et al 2000). The balance of evidence favours the view that a low plasma zinc level is a marker for disease progression (Siberry et al 2002). Large intervention trials are not available to determine whether zinc supplementation in HIV infection produces positive outcomes.

MALARIA
Zinc supplementation (10 mg elemental) randomly allocated to preschool children residing in a malaria-endemic region of Papua New Guinea for 6 days a week over 46 weeks showed this intervention reduced morbidity due to Plasmodium falciparum (Shankar et al 2000). Duggan et al (2005) also identified low plasma zinc levels in children with acute malaria, including a significant correlation between evidence of illness severity and zinc status.

PNEUMONIA
A randomised, controlled trial involving 270 children aged between 6 and 12 months, hospitalised with pneumonia, found that those given 20 mg/day of zinc (as acetate) showed significant reductions in recovery time from severe pneumonia. Overall hospital stay duration was also reduced when used with standard antimicrobial therapy (Brooks et al 2004). Furthermore, a randomised, placebo-controlled trial in which 1665 children aged less than 12 months were given 70 mg of zinc prophylactically found a reduced incidence of pneumonia (17%), with severe pneumonia incidence reducing by 49%. It also reduced URTI by 8% and reactive airways disease (bronchiolitis) by 12% (Brooks et al 2005).

WILSON’S DISEASE
Patients with diagnosed Wilson’s disease have increased hepatic glutathione and reduced oxidation when supplemented with zinc sulfate (220 mg three times daily) for 3 months, compared with those using penicillamine (Farinati et al 2003).
**ALZHEIMER’S DEMENTIA**
Cognitive performance was temporarily improved after 3 months of zinc supplementation (zinc chelate 15 mg) taken twice daily by six subjects with Alzheimer’s disease (Potocnik et al 1997). Although the initial improvement was not maintained in this small open study, a modest cognitive improvement on psychometric testing was observed at 12 months for the four patients evaluated.

**DOSAGE RANGE**

**AUSTRALIAN RDI**
**Children**
- 1–3 years: 3 mg/day.
- 4–8 years: 4 mg/day.
- 9–13 years: 6 mg/day.
- Males 14–18 years: 13 mg/day.
- Females 14–18 years: 7 mg/day.

**Adults**
- Males > 19 years: 14 mg/day.
- Females > 19 years: 8 mg/day.

**Pregnancy**
- < 19 years: 10 mg/day.
- ≥ 19 years: 11 mg/day.

**Deficiency**
- 25–50 mg elemental zinc daily.

**ACCORDING TO CLINICAL STUDIES**
- Common cold — zinc gluconate lozenges (free of sorbitol, mannitol or citric acid).
  - Adults: 9–24 mg elemental zinc dissolved in the mouth, without chewing every 2 hours for acute treatment.
  - School-aged children: dissolved in the mouth once daily as prophylaxis and four times daily for acute treatment.
  - *It is recommended that citrus fruits or juices be avoided 30 minutes before or after dissolving each lozenge to avoid negating the effects of zinc.*
- Common cold — nasal gel spray containing either 33 mmol/L zincum gluconicum administered four times a day for a maximum of 10 days.
- ARMD — zinc oxide (equivalent to 80 mg elemental zinc), together with 500 mg vitamin C, 400 IU vitamin E, and 15 mg beta-carotene, taken daily.
- ADHD — 55–150 mg zinc sulfate daily.
- Diabetes — 30 mg/day (type of zinc unknown).
• Wound healing — 2.5 mg/kg zinc sulfate daily.
• Leg ulcers — 600 mg zinc sulfate daily.
• Acne vulgaris — 90–200 mg (50 mg elemental) daily.
• Crohn’s disease — 110 mg zinc sulfate taken three times daily.
• Herpes infection — 0.25% zinc sulfate solution applied 8–10 times daily.
• Anorexia nervosa — 50–200 mg (50 mg elemental) zinc daily.
• Dysgeusia — 140 mg zinc gluconate daily.
• Tinnitus — 50–200 mg daily of zinc (salt unknown).
• Warts — 10 mg/kg zinc sulfate taken orally in three divided doses (up to 600 mg/day) for 1–2 months.

TOXICITY
Signs of toxicity are nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, fever and lethargy and have been observed after ingestion of 4–8 g zinc according to a 2002 WHO report. Single doses of 225–450 mg of zinc usually induce vomiting (King 2003). Doses of zinc ranging from 100 to 150 mg/day interfere with copper metabolism and cause hypocuprinaemia, red blood cell microcytosis and neutropenia if used long term.

ADVERSE REACTIONS
Mild gastrointestinal distress has been reported at doses of 50–150 mg/day of supplemental zinc (King 2003). According to a randomised, double-blind study, zinc gluconate glycine lozenge (104 mg equivalent to 13.3 mg ionic zinc) taken every 3–4 hours is well tolerated (Silk & Lefante 2005). Of the side-effects that were reported, dry mouth and a burning sensation on the tongue were probably related to use, whereas symptoms of nausea, dizziness, lightheadedness and upset stomach were considered as possibly related.

SIGNIFICANT INTERACTIONS
CALCIUM
High levels of dietary calcium impair zinc absorption in animals, but it is uncertain whether this occurs in humans — separate doses by 2 hours.

CAPTOPRIL AND ENALOPRIL
These drugs increase urinary excretion of zinc (Golik et al 1990). Monitor for signs and symptoms of zinc deficiency. Increased zinc intake may be required with long-term drug treatment.

COFFEE
Coffee reduces zinc absorption — separate intakes by 2 hours (Pecoud et al 1975).
COPPER
High zinc intakes (100–150 mg/day) interfere with copper metabolism and can cause hypocuprinaemia with long-term use. Avoid using high-dose zinc supplements long term, or increase intake of copper.

FOLATE
Folate intake may reduce zinc levels — observe patient for signs and symptoms of zinc deficiency with long-term folate supplementation.

IRON
Supplemental (38–65 mg/day elemental) iron decreases zinc absorption (King 2003) — separate doses by 2 hours.

NSAIDS
Zinc interacts with NSAIDs by forming complexes with these drugs (Dendrinou-Samara et al 1998) — separate dose by 2 hours.

TETRACYCLINES AND QUINOLONES
Complex formation between zinc and tetracycline results in reduced absorption of both substances with potentially reduction in efficacy — separate dose by 2 hours.

THIAZIDE AND LOOP DIURETICS
These diuretics increase urinary zinc loss — monitor for signs and symptoms of zinc deficiency with long-term drug use. Increased zinc intake may be required with long-term therapy.

METHYLPHENIDATE
The efficacy of this drug is improved by supplementation with zinc sulfate (15 mg elemental zinc) for 6 weeks in children with ADHD. There is no change to side-effects reported (Akhondzadeh et al 2004).

VACCINATIONS

RADIOThERAPY
Radiotherapy reduces plasma zinc levels (Ertkin et al 2004). Supplementation may be required with intensive radiotherapy treatment.
INTERFERON-ALPHA/RIBAVIRIN
Interferon-alpha and ribavirin treatment for hepatitis C patients is not affected by zinc supplementation (Ko et al 2005).

ORLISTAT
Orlistat has no significant effect on zinc levels (Zhi et al 2003).

TRICYCLIC ANTIDEPRESSANTS AND SELECTIVE SEROTONIN REUPTAKE INHIBITORS
Zinc supplementation (25 mg elemental zinc daily) improves the efficacy of antidepressants such as tricyclic antidepressants and SSRIs after 2 weeks of intervention (Nowak et al 2003) — beneficial interaction possible.

CONTRAINDICATIONS AND PRECAUTIONS
Amiloride reduces zinc excretion and can lead to zinc accumulation (Reyes et al 1983). Therefore, supplementation should be used with caution.

PREGNANCY USE
Zinc is safe in pregnancy and may improve fetal heart rate in zinc deficient mothers (in conjunction with iron and folic acid) (Merialdi et al 2004).

PRACTICE POINTS/PATIENT COUNSELLING
- Zinc is involved in many chemical reactions that are important for normal body functioning and it is essential for health and wellbeing.
- Although zinc supplements are traditionally used to treat deficiency, they are also used to prevent deficiency in conditions associated with low zinc status or deficiency, such as acrodermatitis enteropathica, anorexia nervosa, malabsorption syndromes, conditions associated with chronic diarrhoea, alcoholism, diabetes, HIV and AIDS, recurrent infections, severe burns, Wilson’s disease and sickle cell anaemia.
- Zinc supplements are also popular among athletes in order to counteract zinc loss that occurs through perspiration.
- Zinc lozenges have been used to prevent and treat the symptoms of the common cold and oral supplements have been used to treat acne vulgaris, improve wound healing and chronic leg ulcers, resolve intestinal permeability problems and reduce recurrences in Crohn’s disease, treat recalcitrant warts, reduce symptoms of tinnitus and improve ADHD.
- Topical applications of zinc have been used to treat acne vulgaris (in combination with erythromycin), herpes simplex and to promote wound healing.
• Numerous interactions exist between other minerals, foods and medicines and zinc.

ANSWERS TO PATIENTS’ FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS
What will this supplement do for me?
Zinc is found in every cell of the body and is essential for health and wellbeing. Some studies have found that supplements are not only useful to treat and prevent deficiency, but may also be useful in conditions such as the common cold, poor wound healing and leg ulcers, diabetes, Crohn’s disease, acne vulgaris, warts, ADHD and tinnitus. Topical preparations may be useful in acne vulgaris (with erythromycin), herpes infection and chronic wounds.

When will it start to work?
This depends on the indication (refer to monograph for more details).

Are there any safety issues?
Used in high doses, zinc can cause nausea, vomiting, gastrointestinal discomfort and if used long term, reduce copper levels. Zinc also interacts with a number of other minerals, foods and medicines.

REFERENCES


Birmingham CL et al. Reliability of the AccuSens Taste Kit(c) in patients with eating disorders. Eat Weight


Davison GW et al. Exercise, free radicals, and lipid peroxidation in type 1 diabetes mellitus. Free Radic Biol

Dendrinou-Samara C et al. Anti-inflammatory drugs interacting with Zn(II), Cd(II) and Pt(II) metal ions. J


Dreno B et al. Zinc salts effects on granulocyte zinc concentration and chemotaxis in acne patients. Acta Derm


Eby GA, Halcomb WW. Ineffectiveness of zinc gluconate nasal spray and zinc orotate lozenges in common


APPENDIX 1

GLOSSARY AND ABBREVIATIONS
Abortifacient – Substance used to terminate a pregnancy.
ACE – angiotensin-converting enzyme
ACTH – adrenocorticotrophic hormone
Active constituents – Chemical components that exhibit pharmacological activity and contribute to the agent’s overall therapeutic effects.
Acute – Beginning abruptly; sharp and intense; subsiding after a short period.
Adaptogen – Innocuous agent, non-specifically increasing resistance to physical, chemical, environmental, emotional or biological factors (‘stressors’) and having a normalising effect independent of the nature of the pathological state.
ADHD – attention deficit hyperactivity disorder
ADI – Acceptable Daily Intake
Adjuvant – Substance added to a mixture to enhance the effect of the main ingredient.
ADRAC – Adverse Drug Reactions Advisory Committee (Australia)
Adverse reaction – Unintended harmful, undesirable or seriously unpleasant response to a medicine at doses intended for prophylaxis, diagnosis or therapeutic effect.
Aerial parts – All parts of a plant that are above the ground. Very often, plants that have useful aerial parts are harvested when flowering (e.g. St John’s wort (Hypericum perforatum) of the Hypericaceae family).
Agonist – Substance that binds to and activates a receptor, thereby causing a response.
Alkaloid – Naturally occurring cyclic organic compound containing nitrogen in a negative oxidation state, which has limited distribution in living organisms. Based on their structures, alkaloids are divided into several subgroups: non-heterocyclic alkaloids and heterocyclic alkaloids, which are again divided into 12 major groups according to their basic ring structure. They tend to have marked physiological effects in vivo (e.g. morphine, codeine, nicotine).
Allostatic responses – Changes that occur in the body in order to adapt and respond to physical or psychological change (e.g. standing, sitting, stress). They are critical to survival, have broad boundaries and involve the sympathetic nervous system and the HPA axis.
ALT – alanine aminotransferase
Amino acid – Organic compound composed of one or more basic amino groups and one or more acidic carboxyl groups; form the basic structural units of protein.
AMP – adenosine monophosphate
Analgesic – Substance that relieves the symptoms of pain.
ANF – atrial natriuretic factor
Antagonist – Substance that binds to a receptor (blocking others from doing so), but does not activate it, causing a diminished response.
Anthelmintic – Substance that destroys or assists in the expulsion of intestinal worms.
Anthocyanins – Compounds responsible for the bright colours of most flowers and fruits; water-soluble pigments that occur as glycosides and their aglycones (anthocyanidins) and have significant anti-oxidant activity.
Anti-allergic – Substance that reduces the allergic response (e.g. antihistamine activity or mast cell stabilisation).
Anti-asthmatic – Substance that prevents asthma attacks and/or reduces their severity.
Anticholinergic – Agent that blocks cholinergic receptors (e.g. atropine), which results in inhibition of transmission of parasympathetic nerve impulses.
Anticoagulant – Substance that prevents or delays blood coagulation (e.g. warfarin).
Antidiabetic – Substance that aids in blood glucose management or improves management of diabetes via other mechanisms.
Anti-emetic – Substance or procedure that prevents or alleviates nausea and vomiting.
Antigen – Substance that the body recognises as foreign and to which it can evoke an immune response; often it is a protein.
Antimicrobial – Substance that kills microorganisms or inhibits their growth or replication.
Anti-oxidant – Substance that inhibits or delays the oxidation of a second substance; also described as scavenging free radical molecules.
Antipruritic – Substance or procedure that relieves or prevents itching.
Antipyretic – Substance or procedure that reduces fever.
Antispasmodic – Substance that reduces smooth muscle spasms.
Antitussive – Substance that suppresses the cough reflex.
Anxiolytic – Substance used to treat and relieve anxiety states.
Apolipoprotein – Protein on the surface of lipoproteins that may bind to receptors, activate enzymes involved in lipoprotein metabolism and provide structure.
Apoptosis – Programmed cell death.
ARMD – age-related macular degeneration
AST – aspartate aminotransferase
Astringent – Substance that precipitates proteins, causes vasoconstriction and constriction of mucous membranes, and reduces cell permeability when applied topically.
ATP – adenosine triphosphate
Bark – Outermost protective layer of a tree trunk, formed by layers of living cells just above the wood itself. There are usually high concentrations of the active ingredients in the bark (e.g. cinnamon from Cinnamomum camphora of the Lauraceae family).
Bioavailability – Proportion of an administered dose that reaches the systemic circulation intact.
Bitter tonic – Herbs with a bitter taste, which are used to stimulate the upper gastrointestinal tract (i.e. stomach, liver, pancreas). They stimulate appetite and digestive function.
BMI – Body mass index
BPH – benign prostatic hypertrophy
Bulb – Fleshy structure made up of numerous layers of bulb scales, which are leaf bases. Bulbs that are popular for medicinal use include onion and garlic (Allium cepa and A. sativum, respectively, both of the Liliaceae family).
CAM – complementary and alternative medicine
Cardioprotective – Substance that protects the heart from damage by toxins or ischaemia (oxygen deficiency).
Carminative – Substance that relieves flatulence, abdominal distension, spasm and discomfort by relaxing the intestinal muscles and sphincters.
Carotenoid – Group of red, yellow or orange highly unsaturated pigments found naturally in foods. Some are converted to vitamin A in the body and most exhibit anti-oxidant properties.
Chelation – Chemical interaction of a metal ion with another substance, which results in the formation of a molecular complex with the metal firmly bound and isolated.
Chemoprevention – Substance or intervention that reduces the incidence of cancer.
CFS – chronic fatigue syndrome
Cholagogue – Substance that stimulates the release of stored bile from the gall bladder.
Choleretic – Substance that stimulates both the production and the flow of bile.
Chronic – Persisting for a long period of time.
Chylomicrons – Large particles that transport dietary cholesterol and fatty acids from the gastrointestinal tract to the liver.
CNS – central nervous system
Cognitive activator – Substance or procedure that stimulates the mental processes such as memory, judgement, reasoning and comprehension.
Cohort study – Study concerning a specific population that shares a common characteristic (e.g. same age, same gender).
Cold extraction – Plant material is extracted in a solvent of differing polarity at room temperature, which enables maximum extraction of most components.
Contraindication – Any factor that makes it undesirable or dangerous to administer a medicine or perform a procedure on a specific patient.
Corticosteroids – Steroidal hormones that are synthesised and released from the adrenal cortex; includes both glucocorticoids and mineralocorticoids.
COX – cyclo-oxygenase
Crude herb – Raw plant before it is processed or dried.
CVD – cerebrovascular disease
Cytochrome P450 (CYP) – Proteins involved in extra-mitochondrial electron transfer, chiefly in the liver and during detoxification. There are many CYPs, which are named by the root symbol CYP, followed by a number for family, a letter for subfamily, and another number for the specific gene.
DBP – diastolic blood pressure
Decoction – Aqueous medicine made from an extract of water-soluble substances, usually with the aid of boiling water.
Decongestant – Substance or procedure that reduces or eliminates congestion and swelling, usually of mucous membranes.
Debridement – Removal of foreign objects, damaged tissue, cellular debris and dirt from a wound or burn to prevent infection and promote healing.
Demulcent – Substance that soothes and reduces irritation of tissues such as skin or mucous membranes.
DHA – docosahexanoic acid
DHEA – dehydroepiandrosterone
Diuretic – Substance that modifies kidney function to increase the rate of urine flow.
DMBA – 7,12-dimethylbenz[a]anthracene
Double-blind study – Both the test subject and clinician do not know whether a placebo or active medicine is being administered. The substances are often identifiable by a code that is revealed after results are obtained. This method is widely used in clinical studies to confer greater objectivity.

DSM-IV – Diagnostic and Statistical Manual [of Mental Health Disorders], 4th edn.

ECG – electrocardiogram

EEG – electroencephalogram

Emmenagogue – Substance that increases the strength and frequency of uterine contractions and initiates and promotes menstrual flow (some are also abortifacients).

Emollient – Substance that softens tissue and reduces irritation, usually of the skin and mucous membranes.

Endogenous – Originating from within the body; synthesised by the body.

Epidemiological study – Study of occurrence and distribution of disease in large human populations.

Ergogenic aid – Substance that improves energy utilisation with the expectation that it will enhance physical performance.

Erythropoiesis – Process of erythrocyte production in the bone marrow.

ESADDI – estimated safe and adequate daily dietary intake

ESCAP – European Scientific Cooperative on Phytotherapy

ESR – erythrocyte sedimentation rate

Essential amino acids – Eight amino acids that are required for health and must be obtained from the diet: isoleucine, leucine, lysine, methionine, phenylalanine, threonine, tryptophan and valine.

Essential fatty acids (EFA) – Polyunsaturated acids required for growth and general health, and must be obtained from the diet (e.g. omega 3 EFAs found in fish oils).

Essential oil – Volatile oils usually extracted from plants through a process of either steam distillation or microwave extraction. They consist of terpenes (mono- and sesquiterpenoids and coumarins) and are of considerable importance as active ingredients (e.g. peppermint oil from Mentha × piperita from the Lamiaceae family).

Expectorant – Substance that promotes the expulsion of mucus, fluids or sputum from the respiratory tract.

Extract – Substance prepared by the use of solvents or evaporation to separate it from the original material.
Fatty oils – Non-volatile, insoluble oils pressed from either the seeds or the fruits of a plant (e.g. olive oil).
FDA – Food and Drug Administration (USA)
FEV1 – forced expiratory volume in 1 second
Flavonoids – Compounds responsible for the colour of flowers, fruits and sometimes leaves. The name refers to the Latin flavus, meaning yellow. Some may contribute to the colour as co-pigment. Flavonoids protect the plant from UV damage and play a role in reproduction by attracting pollinators.
Flowers – Commonly used in medicine (e.g. cloves (Syzygium aromaticum, Myrtaceae family), chamomile (Chamomilla recutita, Asteraceae family) and marigold (Calendula officinalis, Asteraceae family)).
Fluid extract – Hydro-ethanolic extract of crude herbal material with a drug solvent ratio of 1:1 or 1:2 (e.g. 1 part herb to 1 or 2 parts solvent).
Free radical – Unstable organic compound with at least one unpaired electron.
Fresh plant tincture – Herbal extract made from fresh plant instead of dried material.
Fruit – Most commonly used seeds are anis (Pimpinella anisum) and fennel (Foeniculum vulgare), both of the Apiaceae family. In some instances, the fruit peel is used specifically (e.g. citrus spp, from the Rutaceae family).
FSH – follicle stimulating hormone
FVC – forced vital capacity
GABA – gamma-aminobutyric acid
GAD – generalised anxiety disorder
Galactogogue – Substance that promotes the production and flow of breast milk.
GI – glycaemic index
Glycoside – Sugar-containing compound with a glycone (sugar) and aglycone (non-sugar) component that can be cleaved on hydrolysis.
Gum – Solids consisting of mixtures of polysaccharides that are water-soluble and are partially digested by humans. Gums sometimes flow from a damaged plant stem as a defence mechanism or sometimes as a protective system against the invasion of bacteria and fungi. Well-known examples are gum arabic (Acacia senegal, Leguminosae), and aloe gel (Aloe vera (Liliaceae family): gum mixed with water).
Gy – gray (unit of radiation)
Haemostasis – Physiological process that stops bleeding (i.e. vessel constriction, platelet plug formation and blood coagulation).
HbA1c – haemoglobin A1c
HBeAg – hepatitis B early antigen
HDL – high-density lipoprotein
Hepatoprotective – Substance that reduces or prevents liver damage; protects against the destructive effect of hepatotoxins.
High-performance liquid chromatography – Very popular and widely used method for the analysis and isolation of bioactive natural products.
HIV – human immunodeficiency virus
HMG-CoA – 3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl coenzyme A
HPA – hypothalamus–pituitary–adrenal [axis]
HRT – hormone replacement therapy
HSV – herpes simplex virus
Hypnotic – Substance that induces sleep or the feeling of dreamy sleepiness.
Hypoglycaemic – Substance that reduces blood glucose levels.
Hypolipidaemic – Substance that reduces blood levels of lipids (e.g. cholesterol, triglycerides).
Iatrogenic – Condition caused by medical or surgical treatment or diagnostic procedures.
IBS – irritable bowel syndrome
IFN – interferon
Ig – immunoglobulin
IL – interleukin
Immunomodulation – Substance that alters the immune response; also described as having a balancing effect on immune responses.
Immunostimulant – Substance that augments the immune response.
Immunosuppressant – Substance that inhibits the immune response.
Infused oil – Herbal extract using a fixed oil as the solvent.
Infusion (herbal) – Herbal tea prepared by pouring boiling water over plant parts and steeping for a short time.
iNOS – inducible nitric oxide synthase
Inotrope – Substance that has an effect on the force of myocardial contractility. A positive inotrope increases the force of contraction whereas a negative inotrope decreases the force of contraction.
INR – international normalised ratio
Interaction – Pharmacological interaction is said to occur when the response to one medicine varies from what is usually predicted because another substance has altered the response. An interaction may lead to drug toxicity or a loss of
drug effect; however, it can also be manipulated to benefit the patient by improving outcomes, reducing side-effects or reducing drug dose and costs.

**IP** – intraperitoneal

**IQ** – intelligence quotient

**Ischaemia** – oxygen deficiency.

**IV** – intravenous

**IVF** – in vitro fertilisation

**Laxative** – Substance that causes bowel evacuation.

**LD50** – median lethal dose

**LDL** – low-density lipoprotein

**LH** – luteinising hormone

**Maceration** – Method of herbal extraction in which cut herb is soaked in solvent (such as cold water) for a period of time before draining, straining and pressing.

**Meta-analysis** – Quantitative statistical procedure for combining the results of independent studies to better analyse the efficacy of a specific treatment.

**Mineral** – Compound containing a non-metal, metal, radical or phosphate required for proper body functioning and health maintenance.

**Mineral oil** – Faecal softener and laxative.

**MND** – motor neurone disease

**MOA** – monoamine oxidase

**MRSA** – methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*

**MSSA** – methicillin-sensitive *Staphylococcus aureus*

**Mucilage** – Sticky mixture of carbohydrates produced by plant cell activity. Herbs with a high mucilaginous content are often used as demulcents (e.g. *Ulmus fulvus* (slippery elm), *Althea officinalis* (marshmallow)).

**Mucolytic** – Substance that dissolves or destroys mucus.

**Myocardial infarction** – Necrosis (death) of a portion of the heart muscle; also called a heart attack.

**NADPH** – nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate

**Narrow therapeutic index (NTI)** – The dose required to produce a toxic effect in 50% of test animals (TD$_{50}$) is close to the dose required to produce an effective therapeutic response in 50% of test animals (ED$_{50}$); such drugs are particularly susceptible to adverse interactions (e.g. digoxin).

**Nervine** – Substance that exerts a relaxant effect; described as nourishing and strengthening the nervous system.
Neurotransmitter – Chemical that acts as a messenger, enabling transmission of nerve impulses across synapses and neuromuscular junctions. The most important are acetylcholine, catecholamines (noradrenaline, adrenaline and dopamine), serotonin, some amino acids and neuro-active peptides.

NK – natural killer [cell]
NO – nitric oxide
NSAID – non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug
Nutritive – Substance that contains numerous nutrients such as vitamins, minerals, carbohydrates and fats.
NYHA – New York Heart Association Classification
OA – osteoarthritis
OCP – oral contraceptive pill
OTC – over-the-counter
Oxytocic – Substance that exerts similar effects to oxytocin (i.e. stimulates smooth muscle, usually of the uterus, to contract).
PCOS – polycystic ovaries syndrome
PEF – peak expiratory flow
Peri-operative – Pertaining to the time of surgery.
PG – prostaglandin
P-glycoprotein (P-gp) – P-gp is a transport protein found on the surface of hepatocytes, renal tubular epithelial cells, epithelial cells in the intestine and placenta and capillary epithelial cells in the brain. It has a counter-transport activity (i.e. can transport medicines from the blood back into the gastrointestinal tract, thereby reducing bioavailability).
Pharmacodynamics – Study of the effects of drugs on living organisms.
Pharmacokinetics – Study of the actions of drugs within the body (i.e. absorption, distribution, metabolism and excretion, onset of action and duration of effect).
Phytochemical – Naturally occurring chemical found in a plant.
Phytotherapy – Study and application of plant medicine; a modern term used to describe scientifically investigated and validated herbal medicine.
Placebo – Harmless inactive substance that does not contain an active medicine; used in clinical studies for comparison with medicines suspected of exerting a clinical effect to determine whether in fact a significant response does occur.
PMS – premenstrual syndrome
PO – per os (oral)
Polypharmacy – Use of many medicines by a patient with one or more health conditions.
Polysaccharide – Carbohydrate polymer formed from three or more sugar molecules.
Postprandial – After a meal.
Poultice – Paste made from crushed fresh plant, either mixed with oil or alcohol or simply made in water and applied to the parts of the body.
PPI – proton-pump inhibitors
ppm – parts per million
Prospective study – Study designed to determine the relationship between a condition and a characteristic shared by some members of a group. Usually the population selected is healthy at the beginning of the study and are observed over a period of time for the development of certain conditions in the different subgroups (e.g. smokers and non-smokers).
PUFA – polyunsaturated fatty acids
PUVA – psoralen ultraviolet A
QOL – quality of life
RA – rheumatoid arthritis
RAST – radioallergosorbent test
RCT – randomised controlled trial
RDI – recommended daily intake
Resin – Excreted from specialised cells or ducts in plants and consists of a mixture of essential oils and polymerised terpenes; usually insoluble in water. Well-known examples include frankincense (Boswellia sacra) and myrrh (Commiphora molmol), both of the Burseraceae family
Restorative – Restores or renews a person’s state of health or consciousness to normal.
Rhizome – Root; underground fleshy stem that grows horizontally and acts as food storage for the plant.
Risk factor – Factor that increases a person’s susceptibility to an unwanted, unpleasant or unhealthy event or disease.
Root – Fleshy or woody, usually underground, part of a plant; may be fibrous (e.g. Urtica dioica or U. radix of the Urticaceae family, stinging nettle), solid (e.g. Glycyrrhiza glabra of the Leguminosae family, licorice) or fleshy (e.g. Harpagophytum procumbens of the Pedaliaceae family, devil’s claw).
Salicylate – Substance that contains or is derived from salicylic acid.

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
Saponin – Vast group of glycosides that occur in many plants; dissolve in water and form a soapy solution when shaken; used in demulcents.

SBP – systolic blood pressure

SC – subcutaneous

Seeds – Contained within the fruit and used medicinally (e.g. fennel seed (Foeniculum vulgare, Apiaceae)).

SLE – systemic lupus erythematosus

SSRI – selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor

Synergistic – Several components acting or working together in a coordinated manner to produce an effect greater than that of the sum of the individual effects.

Tannin – Substance that forms a precipitate with proteins, nitrogenous bases, polysaccharides and some alkaloids and glycosides (e.g. Camellia sinensis, the herb commonly used to make ‘tea’ is a rich source of tannins).

TCM – traditional Chinese medicine

TGA – Therapeutic Drugs Administration (Australia)

Th – T helper cell

Therapeutic index – Measure of the safety of a medicine based upon the dose required to produce a toxic effect in 50% of test animals (TD$_{50}$) divided by the dose required to produce an effective therapeutic response in 50% of test animals (ED$_{50}$) i.e. TI = TD$_{50}$/ED$_{50}$.

Thin layer chromatography – Analytical method using glass or aluminium plates precoated with the sorbent (e.g. silica gel) to separate a compound mixture according to the polarity of its components.

Tincture – Hydro-ethanolic extraction of crude herbal material; usually extracted in the ratio of 1:5 (1 part herb to 5 parts solvent). Glyceride tinctures may be prepared by using glycerol rather than alcohol.

TNF – tumour necrosis factor

TPN – total parenteral nutrition

TSH – thyroid stimulating hormone

URTI – upper respiratory tract infection

UTI – urinary tract infection

UV – ultraviolet

VAS – visual analogue scale

Vitamin – Organic compound essential to life. With few exceptions, they cannot be synthesised in the body and must be obtained from the diet.

VLDL – very low-density lipoprotein
APPENDIX 2

HERB/NUTRIENT–DRUG INTERACTIONS
ASSUMPTIONS MADE WHEN COLLATING AND ASSESSING
INFORMATION FOR THIS TABLE

- Information is compiled from the 120 monographs included in this book.
- The clinical significance of many interactions is still unknown because
  controlled trials are lacking in most cases. In these instances, interactions are
  based on evidence of pharmacological activity and case reports, and have a
  sound theoretical basis, although remain to be tested.
- All information refers to oral dose forms unless otherwise specified.
- Information is correct at the time of writing; however, because of the ever-
  expanding knowledge base developing in this area, new research is constantly
  being published.
- The interaction table is provided as a guide only and should not replace the
  use of professional judgement. It has been developed to assist clinicians when
  advising patients.

USING THIS GUIDE IN PRACTICE

- Refer to Chapter 8: Interactions with Herbal and Natural Medicines for
  background information.
- Commonly used prescription and over-the-counter medications are organised
  by therapeutic class and subclass and are listed alphabetically.
- Common names have been used when referring to herbs.
- Refer to the original monograph for more information about a particular
  substance.

RECOMMENDATIONS

Avoid — there may be insufficient information available to be able to advise
using the two substances safely together, so avoid until more is known. The
drug may have a narrow therapeutic index and there is sufficient evidence to
suggest that the interaction may be clinically significant. Consider an
alternative treatment that is unlikely to produce an undesirable interaction.

Avoid use unless under medical supervision — harmful effects of the
potential interaction can be avoided if doses are altered appropriately under
professional supervision or the patient is closely monitored. Some of these
interactions can be manipulated to the advantage of the patient. Changes to the
dosage regimen may be required for safe combined use.

Caution — the possibility exists of an interaction that may change effects
clinically; be aware and monitor. It is prudent to tell patients to be aware and
seek advice if they are concerned.
Observe — interaction may not be clinically significant at the usual recommended doses and theoretical; however, the clinician should be alert to the possibility of an interaction.

Beneficial interaction possible — prescribing the interacting substance may improve clinical outcomes; for example, reducing drug requirements, complementing drug effects, reducing drug side-effects, counteracting nutritional deficiencies caused by drugs, alleviating drug withdrawal symptoms, and enhancing patient wellbeing.
**Key to the Table by Herb/Supplement**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb/Supplement</th>
<th>Codeine</th>
<th>Theophylline</th>
<th>Adhatoda</th>
<th>Codeine</th>
<th>Theophylline</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Albizia</td>
<td>Antidepressants including SSRIs, SNRIs, tricyclics and MAOIs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Adhatoda</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Antihistamines and mast-cell-stabilising drugs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Codeine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Barbiturates</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Theophylline</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aloe vera</td>
<td>Digoxin (e.g. Lanoxin)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Theophylline</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Helicobacter pylori</em> triple-therapy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Theophylline</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hypoglycaemic (e.g. metformin)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Theophylline</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Topical corticosteroids (e.g. hydrocortisone)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Theophylline</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andrographis</td>
<td>Alcohol</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Theophylline</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Anticoagulants (e.g. warfarin)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Theophylline</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Antiplatelet drugs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Theophylline</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Barbiturates</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Theophylline</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hepatotoxic drugs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Theophylline</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hypoglycaemic (e.g. metformin)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Theophylline</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Paclitaxel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Theophylline</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Paracetamol</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Theophylline</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tricyclic antidepressants</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Theophylline</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Astragalus</td>
<td>Nitroglycerin/ glyceryl trinitrate (e.g. anginine)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Theophylline</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Paclitaxel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Theophylline</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baical skullcap</td>
<td>Antihistamines and mast-cell-stabilising drugs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Theophylline</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Interferon</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Theophylline</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Paclitaxel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Theophylline</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beta-carotene</td>
<td>Cholestryramine (e.g. Questran lite, colestipol [e.g. Colestid])</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Theophylline</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilberry</td>
<td>Antiplatelet drugs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Theophylline</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hypoglycaemic (e.g. metformin)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Theophylline</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bitter melon</td>
<td>Hypoglycaemic (e.g. metformin)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Theophylline</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brahmi</td>
<td>Tacrine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Theophylline</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herb/nutrient-drug interactions</td>
<td>Page</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium</td>
<td>1443</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium-channel blockers</td>
<td>1459</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corticosteroids</td>
<td>1454</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-Dopa (levodopa)</td>
<td>1440</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Etidronate (e.g. Didronel)</td>
<td>1460</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Levothyroxine (e.g. Oroxine)</td>
<td>1463</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oestrogen and progesterone</td>
<td>1460</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penicillamine (e.g. D-penamine)</td>
<td>1476</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quinolone antibiotics</td>
<td>1467</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sucralfate (e.g. Carafate, Ulcyte)</td>
<td>1464</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tetracycline antibiotics</td>
<td>1468</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thiazide diuretics</td>
<td>1447</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carnitine</td>
<td>1437</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anticoagulants (e.g. warfarin)</td>
<td>1450</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anticonvulsants</td>
<td>1459</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Betamethasone</td>
<td>1475</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisplatin</td>
<td>1473</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doxorubicin (e.g. Adriamycin)</td>
<td>1469</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIV drugs (e.g. zidovudine, AZT, Retrovir)</td>
<td>1469</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interferon-alpha</td>
<td>1466</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interleukin-2-immunotherapy</td>
<td>1475</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Celery</td>
<td>1437</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anticoagulants (e.g. warfarin)</td>
<td>1463</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Levothyroxine (e.g. Oroxine)</td>
<td>1451</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenobarbitone</td>
<td>1479</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PUVA therapy</td>
<td>1469</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Celery seed extract</td>
<td>1457</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saquinavir</td>
<td>1470</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chamomile</td>
<td>1479</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benzodiazepines</td>
<td>1479</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saquinavir</td>
<td>1470</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chaste tree</td>
<td>1458</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dopamine antagonists</td>
<td>1479</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral contraceptive pill</td>
<td>1479</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chitosan</td>
<td>1479</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lipophilic drugs</td>
<td>1479</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chondroitin</td>
<td>1437</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anticoagulants (e.g. warfarin)</td>
<td>1470</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saquinavir</td>
<td>1470</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chromium</td>
<td>1459</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Hypoglycaemic (e.g. metformin) ................................................. 1462
Hypolipidaemic ........................................................................... 1447
Cinnamon
Hypoglycaemic (e.g. metformin) ................................................. 1462
Coenzyme Q10
Anticoagulants (e.g. warfarin) ...................................................... 1437
Antimigraine preparations .......................................................... 1444
Beta-adrenergic-blocking agents .................................................. 1443
Clonidine (e.g. Catapres) .............................................................. 1444
Doxorubicin (e.g. Adriamycin) ...................................................... 1473
Fibrac-acid derivatives (e.g. gemfibrozil) ......................................... 1449
HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors (statins) ........................................ 1449
Hydralazine (e.g. Apresoline, Alphapress) ....................................... 1442
Hydrochlorothiazide (e.g. Diclotride) ............................................ 1447
Methyldopa (e.g. Aldomet) ........................................................... 1443
Timolol eye drops ........................................................................ 1463
Tricyclic antidepressants .............................................................. 1452
Colostrum
Saquinavir .................................................................................... 1470
Cranberry
Anticoagulants (e.g. warfarin) ...................................................... 1437
Damiana
Hypoglycaemic (e.g. metformin) ................................................. 1462
Dandelion
Quinolone antibiotics (e.g. norfloxacin [e.g. Noroxin]) .................... 1467
Dandelion leaf
Diuretics ....................................................................................... 1446
Devil’s claw
Anticoagulants (e.g. warfarin) ...................................................... 1437
Nitroglycerin/ glyceryl trinitrate (e.g. anginine) ................................. 1436
Saquinavir ..................................................................................... 1470
Dong quai
Anticoagulants (e.g. warfarin) ...................................................... 1437
Echinacea
Cyclosporin ................................................................................ 1466
Paclitaxel .................................................................................... 1474
Evening primrose oil
Anticoagulants (e.g. warfarin) ...................................................... 1437
Antihypertensive drugs ................................................................ 1442
Antiplatelet drugs ......................................................................... 1440
Phenothiazines (e.g. chlorpromazine, trifluoperazine) .................... 1453
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb/Nutrient</th>
<th>Drug Interactions</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fat-soluble vitamins (A, D, E, K, beta-carotene)</td>
<td>Cholestyramine (e.g. Questran lite, colestipol [e.g. Colestid])</td>
<td>1448</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fenugreek</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anticoagulants (e.g. warfarin)</td>
<td>1437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoglycaemic (e.g. metformin)</td>
<td>1462</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feverfew</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anticoagulants (e.g. warfarin)</td>
<td>1437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antimigraine preparations</td>
<td>1444</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antiplatelet drugs</td>
<td>1440</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish oils</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anticoagulants (e.g. warfarin)</td>
<td>1438</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antiplatelet drugs</td>
<td>1440</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pravastatin (e.g. Pravachol)</td>
<td>1449</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saquinavir</td>
<td>1449</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Trimethoprim [e.g. Triprim])</td>
<td>1468</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antacids</td>
<td>1464</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anticonvulsants</td>
<td>1450</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barbiturates</td>
<td>1456</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cholestyramine (e.g. Questran lite, colestipol [e.g. Colestid])</td>
<td>1448</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastric-acid inhibitors (proton-pump inhibitors [e.g. omeprazole], H₂-receptor antagonists [e.g. ranitidine])</td>
<td>1464</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methotrexate</td>
<td>1474</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral contraceptive pill</td>
<td>1458</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pancreatin</td>
<td>1464</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyrimethamine (e.g. Daraprim)</td>
<td>1468</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulfasalazine (e.g. Salazopyrin)</td>
<td>1472</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garlic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anticoagulants (e.g. warfarin)</td>
<td>1438</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antihypertensive drugs</td>
<td>1442</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antiplatelet drugs</td>
<td>1440</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Helicobacter pylori triple-therapy</td>
<td>1465</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hepatotoxic drugs</td>
<td>1479</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypolipidaemic</td>
<td>1448</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paclitaxel</td>
<td>1474</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paracetamol</td>
<td>1435</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saquinavir</td>
<td>1469</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginger</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anticoagulants (e.g. warfarin)</td>
<td>1438</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antiplatelet drugs</td>
<td>1441</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saquinavir</td>
<td>1470</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb/nutrient</th>
<th>Drug Class</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ginkgo biloba</td>
<td>Anticoagulants (e.g. warfarin)</td>
<td>1438</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Anticonvulsants</td>
<td>1450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Antidepressants including SSRIs, SNRIs, tricyclics and MAOIs</td>
<td>1452</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Antiplatelet drugs</td>
<td>1441</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisplatin</td>
<td>1475</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Doxorubicin (e.g. Adriamycin)</td>
<td>1473</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Haloperidol (e.g. Serenate)</td>
<td>1453</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tacrine</td>
<td>1453</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginkgo — Korean</td>
<td>Anticoagulants (e.g. warfarin)</td>
<td>1438</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Alcohol</td>
<td>1478</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Erythropoietin</td>
<td>1460</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nifedipine</td>
<td>1444</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginkgo — Siberian</td>
<td>Anticoagulants (e.g. warfarin)</td>
<td>1438</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chemotherapy</td>
<td>1472</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Digoxin (e.g. Lanoxin)</td>
<td>1445</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hypoglycaemic (e.g. metformin)</td>
<td>1462</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Influenza virus vaccine</td>
<td>1466</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginseng — Korean and Ginseng — Siberian</td>
<td>Paclitaxel</td>
<td>1474</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Glucosamine</td>
<td>1470</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Glutamine</td>
<td>1470</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Goldenseal</td>
<td>1466</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cyclosporin</td>
<td>1466</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grapeseed extract</td>
<td>Anticoagulants (e.g. warfarin)</td>
<td>1438</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Antiplatelet drugs</td>
<td>1441</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Aspirin</td>
<td>1471</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green tea</td>
<td>Anticoagulants (e.g. warfarin)</td>
<td>1438</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hypoglycaemic (e.g. metformin)</td>
<td>1462</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guarana</td>
<td>Anticoagulants (e.g. warfarin)</td>
<td>1438</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Antihypertensive drugs</td>
<td>1442</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Antiplatelet drugs</td>
<td>1441</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CNS sedatives</td>
<td>1455</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CNS stimulants</td>
<td>1454</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
Digoxin (e.g. Lanoxin) ................................................................. 1445
Diuretics .................................................................................. 1446
Hawthorn
  Antihypertensive drugs ......................................................... 1442
  Cardiac glycosides ............................................................... 1444
  Nitroglycerin/ glyceryl trinitrate (e.g. anginine) ................. 1436
Hops
  CNS sedatives ....................................................................... 1455
  Oestrogen ............................................................................. 1460
Horseradish
  Anticoagulants (e.g. warfarin) .............................................. 1438
  Levothyroxine (e.g. Oroxine) .............................................. 1463
Iron
  ACE inhibitors (e.g. captopril, enalapril) ......................... 1443
  Antacids ................................................................................. 1464
  Cholestyramine (e.g. Questran lite, colestipol [e.g. Colestid]) 1448
  L-Dopa (levodopa) ............................................................... 1454
  L-Dopa with carbidopa .......................................................... 1454
  Erythropoietin ....................................................................... 1461
  Etidronate (e.g. Didronel) .................................................... 1460
  Gastric-acid inhibitors (proton-pump inhibitors [e.g. omeprazole], H₂-receptor antagonists [e.g. ranitidine]) 1465
  Haloperidol (e.g. Serenace) ................................................... 1453
  Levothyroxine (e.g. Oroxine) .............................................. 1463
  Penicillamine (e.g. D-penamine) ........................................ 1476
  Quinolone antibiotics (e.g. norfloxacin [e.g. Noroxin]) ....... 1467
  Sulfasalazine (e.g. Salazopyrin) ........................................ 1472
  Tetracycline antibiotics (e.g. minocycline [e.g. Minomycin], doxycycline) ........ 1468
Kava kava
  Alcohol .................................................................................. 1478
  Barbiturates ......................................................................... 1456
  Benzodiazepines .................................................................... 1457
  CNS sedatives ....................................................................... 1455
  Codeine ................................................................................ 1434
  L-Dopa (levodopa) ............................................................... 1454
  Methadone ........................................................................... 1476
  Morphine ............................................................................. 1434
  Phenobarbitone ..................................................................... 1451
  Phenobarbitone and phenytoin ......................................... 1451
Lavender oil
  CNS sedatives ....................................................................... 1455
Lemon balm
Barbiturates ................................................................. 1456
Tacrine ................................................................. 1453
Licorice
Anticoagulants (e.g. warfarin) ........................................ 1439
Antihypertensive drugs ................................................. 1442
Corticosteroids ......................................................... 1459
Diclofenac sodium (topical) ........................................ 1472
Digoxin (e.g. Lanoxin) ............................................... 1445
Diuretics ................................................................. 1446
Oestrogen and progesterone .......................................... 1460
Oral contraceptive pill ............................................... 1458
Paclitaxel ................................................................. 1474
Testosterone ............................................................ 1460
Vinblastine ............................................................... 1475
Magnesium
Aminoglycosides (e.g. gentamicin) ............................. 1467
Calcium-channel blockers (e.g. verapamil) .................. 1443
L-Dopa (levodopa) .................................................... 1454
Etidronate (e.g. Dronel) ............................................ 1460
Levothyroxine (e.g. Oroxine) ................................. 1463
Loop diuretics ......................................................... 1446
Nitroglycerin/ glyceryl trinitrate (e.g. anginine) ....... 1436
Penicillamine (e.g. d-penamine) ............................... 1476
Potassium-sparing diuretics .................................... 1447
Quinolone antibiotics (e.g. norfloxacin [e.g. Noroxin]) 1467
Tetracycline antibiotics (e.g. minocycline [e.g. Minomycin], doxycycline) .... 1468
Thiazide diuretics .................................................... 1447
Meadowsweet
Anticoagulants (e.g. warfarin) .................................... 1439
Aspirin ................................................................. 1471
Simple analgesics and antipyretics ......................... 1434
Myrrh
Anticoagulants (e.g. warfarin) .................................... 1439
Antiplatelet drugs .................................................... 1441
Diltiazem ............................................................... 1444
Hypoglycaemic (e.g. metformin) ............................. 1462
Hypolipidaemic ....................................................... 1448
Propranolol ........................................................... 1443
New Zealand green-lipped mussel
Saquinavir ............................................................. 1470

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb/nutrient</th>
<th>Drug interactions page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oats (oat-based cereals)</td>
<td>1442</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antihypertensive drugs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypolipidaemic</td>
<td>1448</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Olive leaf and olive oil</td>
<td>1442</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antihypertensive drugs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Olive leaf extract</td>
<td>1462</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoglycaemic (e.g. metformin)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passionflower</td>
<td>1445</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barbiturates</td>
<td>1456</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benzodiazepines</td>
<td>1457</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CNS sedatives</td>
<td>1455</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peppermint</td>
<td>1465</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclosporin</td>
<td>1443</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peppermint oil</td>
<td>1439</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Felodipine</td>
<td>1443</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simvastatin (e.g. Lipex, Zocor)</td>
<td>1449</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perilla</td>
<td>1434</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antihistamines and mast-cell-stabilising drugs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Policosanol</td>
<td>1439</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anticoagulants (e.g. warfarin)</td>
<td>1439</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aspirin</td>
<td>1471</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypolipidaemic</td>
<td>1448</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Probiotics</td>
<td>1466</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antibiotics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psyllium</td>
<td>1439</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anticoagulants (e.g. warfarin)</td>
<td>1439</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoglycaemic (e.g. metformin)</td>
<td>1462</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pygeum</td>
<td>1465</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-alpha-reductase inhibitors (e.g. finasteride [e.g. Proscar])</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quercetin</td>
<td>1445</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisplatin</td>
<td>1475</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digoxin (e.g. Lanoxin)</td>
<td>1445</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diltiazem</td>
<td>1444</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haloperidol (e.g. Serenace)</td>
<td>1453</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hepatotoxic drugs</td>
<td>1479</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paclitaxel</td>
<td>1474</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paracetamol</td>
<td>1436</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quinolone antibiotics (e.g. norfloxacin [e.g. Noroxin])</td>
<td>1467</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red clover</td>
<td>1460</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oestrogen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb/nutrient</th>
<th>drugs</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rosemary</td>
<td>Anticoagulants (e.g. warfarin)</td>
<td>1439</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chemotherapy</td>
<td>1472</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAMe</td>
<td>Alcohol</td>
<td>1478</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Antidepressants including SSRIs, SNRIs, tricyclics and MAOIs</td>
<td>1452</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hepatotoxic drugs</td>
<td>1479</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Paracetamol</td>
<td>1436</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Saquinavir</td>
<td>1471</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saw palmetto</td>
<td>S-1-alpha-reductase inhibitors (e.g. finasteride [e.g. Proscar])</td>
<td>1465</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schisandra</td>
<td>Alcohol</td>
<td>1479</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hepatotoxic drugs</td>
<td>1479</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Paracetamol</td>
<td>1436</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selenium</td>
<td>Cisplatin</td>
<td>1475</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soy</td>
<td>Antibiotics</td>
<td>1467</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St John’s wort</td>
<td>Anticoagulants (e.g. warfarin)</td>
<td>1439</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Anticonvulsants</td>
<td>1450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Antidepressants including SSRIs, SNRIs, tricyclics and MAOIs</td>
<td>1452</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Barbiturates</td>
<td>1456</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cyclosporin</td>
<td>1466</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Digoxin (e.g. Lanoxin)</td>
<td>1446</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HIV non-nucleoside transcriptase inhibitors</td>
<td>1469</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HIV protease inhibitors</td>
<td>1469</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Methadone</td>
<td>1476</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Midazolam (e.g. Hypnovel)</td>
<td>1455</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Oral contraceptive pill</td>
<td>1458</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Phenobarbitone and phenytoin</td>
<td>1451</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PUVA therapy</td>
<td>1479</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Simvastatin (e.g. Lipex, Zocor)</td>
<td>1449</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tacrolimus (e.g. Prograf)</td>
<td>1466</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Theophylline</td>
<td>1477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tricyclic antidepressants</td>
<td>1452</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Verapamil</td>
<td>1443</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St Mary’s thistle</td>
<td>Alcohol</td>
<td>1478</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Anticoagulants (e.g. warfarin)</td>
<td>1439</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compound</td>
<td>Page</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbamazepine (e.g. Tegretol)</td>
<td>1450</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisplatin</td>
<td>1475</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclosporin</td>
<td>1466</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hepatotoxic drugs</td>
<td>1479</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paracetamol</td>
<td>1436</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simvastatin (e.g. Lipex, Zocor)</td>
<td>1449</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tacrine</td>
<td>1454</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tricyclic antidepressants</td>
<td>1452</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stinging nettle</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loop diuretics</td>
<td>1446</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saquinavir</td>
<td>1471</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stinging nettle root</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-alpha-reductase inhibitors (e.g. finasteride [e.g. Proscar])</td>
<td>1465</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turmeric</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anticoagulants (e.g. warfarin)</td>
<td>1439</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antiplatelet drugs</td>
<td>1441</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclophosphamide</td>
<td>1473</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyrosine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antidepressants including SSRIs, SNRIs, tricyclics and MAOIs</td>
<td>1452</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CNS stimulants</td>
<td>1454</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-Dopa (levodopa)</td>
<td>1454</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephedrine</td>
<td>1477</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Levothyroxine (e.g. Oroxine)</td>
<td>1463</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAOIs</td>
<td>1452</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morphine</td>
<td>1434</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenylpropanolamine (found in Neo-Diofen)</td>
<td>1477</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valerian</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barbiturates</td>
<td>1456</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benzodiazepines</td>
<td>1457</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CNS sedatives</td>
<td>1455</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cholestyramine (e.g. Questran lite, colestipol [e.g. Colestid])</td>
<td>1448</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors (statins)</td>
<td>1449</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isotretinoin (e.g. Roaccutane)</td>
<td>1478</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral contraceptive pill</td>
<td>1458</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orlistat (e.g. Xenical)</td>
<td>1476</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B1 (thiamin)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antibiotics</td>
<td>1467</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loop diuretics</td>
<td>1447</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B2 (riboflavin)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antimigraine preparations</td>
<td>1444</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
Oral contraceptive pill .......................................................... 1458
Tricyclic antidepressants .................................................... 1452

Vitamin B3 (niacin)
- HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors (statins) ......................... 1449
- Hypoglycaemic (e.g. metformin) ................................... 1462
- Hypolipidaemic .............................................................. 1448
- Imipramine .................................................................. 1453
- Isoniazid ..................................................................... 1469
Oral contraceptive pill ........................................................ 1458

Vitamin B5 (pantothenic acid)
- Antibiotics ..................................................................... 1467
- Oral contraceptive pill ................................................... 1458

Vitamin B6
- Barbiturates .................................................................. 1457
- Vitamin B6 (pyridoxine)
  - L-Dopa (levodopa) ...................................................... 1454
  - Hydralazine (e.g. Apresoline, Alphapress) ...................... 1443
  - Oral contraceptive pill ................................................ 1458
  - Penicillamine (e.g. D-Penamine) ................................. 1477
  - Phenytoin .................................................................. 1451
  - Theophylline .............................................................. 1477

Vitamin B12
- Carbamazepine (e.g. Tegretol) ....................................... 1451
- Gastric-acid inhibitors (proton-pump inhibitors [e.g. omeprazole], H2-receptor antagonists [e.g. ranitidine]) 1465
- Hydrochlorothiazide (e.g. Diclotride) .............................. 1447
- Metformin .................................................................... 1463
- Oral contraceptive pill ................................................... 1459
- Phenobarbitone and phenytoin ....................................... 1451
- Tetracycline antibiotics (e.g. minocycline [e.g. Minomycin], doxycycline) ............................. 1468

Vitamin C
- Aluminium-based antacids ............................................. 1464
- Aspirin ......................................................................... 1471
- Chemotherapy ................................................................ 1472
- Chitosan ....................................................................... 1449
- Corticosteroids ................................................................ 1459
- L-Dopa (levodopa) .......................................................... 1454
- Doxorubicin (e.g. Adriamycin) ........................................ 1473

Vitamin D
- Calcium-channel blockers (e.g. verapamil) ....................... 1443
- Cholestyramine (e.g. Questran Lite, colestipol [e.g. Colestid]) ................................................. 1448

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
Corticosteroids .......................................................................................................................... 1459
Ketoconazole (e.g. Nizoral) ........................................................................................................ 1478
Orlistat (e.g. Xenical) .................................................................................................................. 1476
Phenytoin and valproate ............................................................................................................ 1451
Rifampicin ................................................................................................................................... 1469

Vitamin E
Anticoagulants (e.g. warfarin) ..................................................................................................... 1440
Chloroquine (e.g. Chlorquin) ....................................................................................................... 1468
Chlorpromazine (e.g. Largactil) .................................................................................................... 1453
Cholestryramine (e.g. Questran lite, colestipol [e.g. Colestid]) ............................................. 1448
Cisplatin ...................................................................................................................................... 1475
Doxorubicin (e.g. Adriamycin) ................................................................................................... 1474
Isoniazid ....................................................................................................................................... 1469
Nitroglycerin/ glyceryl trinitrate (e.g. anginine) ......................................................................... 1436
Orlistat (e.g. Xenical) ................................................................................................................. 1476
Propranolol .................................................................................................................................. 1443
Saquinavir ..................................................................................................................................... 1471
Simple analgesics and antipyretics ............................................................................................. 1435
Sucralfate (e.g. Carafate, Ulcyte) .............................................................................................. 1464

Vitamin K
Cholestryramine (e.g. Questran lite, colestipol [e.g. Colestid]) .................................................. 1448

Willowbark
Aspirin ........................................................................................................................................... 1472
Saquinavir .................................................................................................................................... 1471
Simple analgesics and antipyretics ............................................................................................. 1435

Withania
Barbiturates .................................................................................................................................. 1457
Benzodiazepines .......................................................................................................................... 1457
Chemotherapy .............................................................................................................................. 1472
Erythropoietin .............................................................................................................................. 1461
Immunosuppressants (e.g. cyclophosphamide) ......................................................................... 1473
Levothyroxine (e.g. Oroxine) ....................................................................................................... 1463
Morphine ....................................................................................................................................... 1434
Phenobarbitone ............................................................................................................................ 1451

Zinc
ACE inhibitors (e.g. captopril, enalapril) ..................................................................................... 1443
L-Dopa (levodopa) ....................................................................................................................... 1454
Etidronate (e.g. Didronel) ............................................................................................................ 1460
Levothyroxine (e.g. Oroxine) ....................................................................................................... 1463
Loop diuretics ................................................................................................................................ 1447
Penicillamine (e.g. D-penamine) ............................................................................................... 1477
Quinolone antibiotics (e.g. norfloxacin [e.g. Noroxin]) ........................................ 1468
Saquinavir ................................................................................................................. 1471
Tetracycline antibiotics (e.g. minocycline [e.g. Minomycin], doxycycline) ...... 1468
Thiazide diuretics ........................................................................................................ 1447
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Herb/Supplement</th>
<th>Potential outcome</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>Evidence/Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ALLERGIC DISORDERS</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Antihistamines</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antihistamines and mast-cell-stabilising drugs</td>
<td>Albizia</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Both in vitro and in vivo tests have reported significant mast-cell-stabilisation effects similar to those of cromoglycate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Baical skullcap</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Luteolin and baicalein have been shown to inhibit IgE antibody-mediated immediate- and late-phase allergic reactions in mice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Perilla</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Perilla seed extract has been shown to inhibit histamine release from mast cells in a dose-dependent manner — drug dosage may need modification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ANALGESIA</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Narcotic analgesics</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Codeine</td>
<td>Adhatoda</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Theoretically will increase antitussive effects of drug</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kava kava</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>Increased CNS depression theoretically possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morphine</td>
<td>Kava kava</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>Increased CNS depression theoretically possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyrosine</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Tyrosine potentiates morphine-induced analgesia by 154% in mice</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Withania</td>
<td>Reduced morphine tolerance/dependence</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible with professional supervision</td>
<td>In animal studies, repeated administration of withania (100 mg/kg) inhibited morphine tolerance and dependence, so it is sometimes used in opiate withdrawal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Simple analgesics and antipyretics</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simple analgesics and antipyretics</td>
<td>Meadowsweet</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Additive anti-inflammatory and analgesic effects theoretically possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug</td>
<td>Herb/Supplement</td>
<td>Potential outcome</td>
<td>Recommendation</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin E</td>
<td></td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Vitamin E may enhance the pain-modifying effects of drug in RA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Willowbark</td>
<td></td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Additive anti-inflammatory and analgesic effects theoretically possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aspirin</td>
<td>Grapeseed extract</td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Observe Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Theoretically may enhance antiplatelet and anti-inflammatory activity of aspirin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meadowsweet</td>
<td></td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Observe Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Theoretically may enhance anti-inflammatory and antiplatelet effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Policosanol</td>
<td></td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Doses &gt;10 mg/day may inhibit platelet aggregation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin C</td>
<td></td>
<td>Decreased vitamin C effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction</td>
<td>Aspirin may interfere with both absorption and cellular uptake mechanisms for vitamin C, thereby increasing vitamin C requirements, as observed in animal and human studies. Increased vitamin C intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Willowbark</td>
<td></td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Observe Beneficial interaction possible Caution with high-dose (&gt; 240 mg salicin daily)</td>
<td>Theoretically may enhance anti-inflammatory and antiplatelet effects. Although a clinical study found that consumption of salicin 240 mg/day produced minimal effects on platelet aggregation, higher doses may have a significant effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paracetamol</td>
<td>Andrographis</td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Andrographis may exert hepatoprotective activity against liver damage induced by paracetamol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garlic</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Garlic may exert hepatoprotective activity against liver damage induced by paracetamol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug</td>
<td>Herb/Supplement</td>
<td>Potential outcome</td>
<td>Recommendation</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quercetin</td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Quercetin may exert hepatoprotective activity against liver damage induced by paracetamol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St Mary’s thistle</td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>St Mary’s thistle may exert hepatoprotective activity against liver damage induced by paracetamol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAMe</td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>SAMe may exert hepatoprotective activity against liver damage induced by paracetamol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schisandra</td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Schisandra may exert hepatoprotective activity against liver damage induced by paracetamol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM**

**Anti-angina agents**

| Nitroglycerin/ glyceryl trinitrate (e.g. anginine) | Vitamin E | Prevention of drug tolerance | Beneficial interaction possible | Oral vitamin E prevented nitrate tolerance when given concurrently with transdermal nitroglycerin (10 mg/24 h) according to one randomised placebo-controlled study |

**Anti-arrhythmic agents**

| Astragalus | Additive effects | Observe | Additive effects are theoretically possible with IV administration of astragalus, based on positive inotropic activity identified in clinical studies; the clinical significance of these findings for oral dose forms is unknown |
| Devil’s claw | Additive effects | Observe | Devil’s claw has demonstrated anti-arrhythmic activity, but interaction is theoretical and clinical significance is unclear |
| Hawthorn | Additive effects | Observe | Hawthorn has demonstrated anti-arrhythmic activity in vitro and in vivo, but interaction is theoretical and clinical significance is unclear |
| Magnesium | Additive effects | Observe | High-dose oral magnesium has demonstrated anti-arrhythmic activity according to one clinical trial |

**Anticoagulants, antiplatelets**

Monitor bleeding time and signs and symptoms of excessive bleeding
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Herb/Supplement</th>
<th>Potential outcome</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>Evidence/Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Anticoagulants (e.g. warfarin)</td>
<td>Andrographis</td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Caution — monitor bleeding time</td>
<td>Andrographolide clinically confirmed to inhibit platelet-activating-factor-induced platelet aggregation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carnitine</td>
<td>Andrographis</td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Caution — monitor bleeding time and signs and symptoms of excessive bleeding</td>
<td>According to one case report, L-carnitine 1 g/day may potentiate the anticoagulant effects of acenocoumarol.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Celery</td>
<td>Carnitine</td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Observe with concentrated extracts</td>
<td>Although it contains naturally occurring coumarins, interaction is unlikely.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chondroitin</td>
<td>Carnitine</td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Observe with high-dose supplements</td>
<td>Theoretical risk; not observed in clinical trials.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coenzyme Q10</td>
<td>Carnitine</td>
<td>Reduced drug effects</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>A double-blind crossover study found that oral CoQ10 100 mg/day had no significant effect on INR or warfarin levels; however, in vivo tests using 10 mg/kg/day CoQ10 decreased serum concentrations of warfarin by increasing drug metabolism.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cranberry</td>
<td>Carnitine</td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>Based on case reports.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devil’s claw</td>
<td>Carnitine</td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>Case reports suggest possible anticoagulant activity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dong quai</td>
<td>Carnitine</td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Caution with high-dose supplements</td>
<td>A controlled trial using an IV preparation of dong quai found that it prolonged prothrombin times, but it is unknown whether this effect occurs with oral dose forms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evening primrose oil</td>
<td>Carnitine</td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Caution with high-dose supplements</td>
<td>Gamma-linoleic acid in evening primrose oil affects prostaglandin synthesis, leading to inhibition of platelet aggregation — clinical significance is unknown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fenugreek</td>
<td>Carnitine</td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Contains naturally occurring coumarins, but a placebo-controlled study found no effect on platelet aggregation, fibrinogen or fibrinolytic activity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feverfew</td>
<td>Carnitine</td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Although feverfew inhibits platelet aggregation in vitro and in vivo, no effects were seen in a clinical study.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug</td>
<td>Herb/Supplement</td>
<td>Potential outcome</td>
<td>Recommendation</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish oils</td>
<td>Increased bruising</td>
<td>Caution with doses &lt; 12 g</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
<td>Bleeding time is increased at doses of 12 g/day, according to a clinical study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and bleeding</td>
<td>Avoid with very high doses (&gt; 12 g) unless</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>under medical supervision</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garlic</td>
<td>Increased bruising</td>
<td>Avoid at high dose (&gt; 4 g) unless under</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
<td>Large doses may increase INR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and bleeding</td>
<td>medical supervision</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginger</td>
<td>Increased bruising</td>
<td>Avoid at high dose (&gt; 10 g) unless under</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
<td>Inhibits platelet aggregation at high doses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and bleeding</td>
<td>medical supervision</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginkgo biloba</td>
<td>Increased bruising</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
<td>Although case reports suggest possible anticoagulant effect, two recent clinical studies indicate no effect on pharmacokinetics, pharmacodynamics or clinical effects of warfarin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and bleeding</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginseng —</td>
<td>Increased bruising</td>
<td>Avoid unless under medical supervision</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
<td>Inhibits platelet aggregation both in vitro and in vivo; clinical significance unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>and bleeding</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginseng —</td>
<td>Increased bruising</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
<td>In vivo study demonstrated that an isolated constituent in Siberian ginseng has anticoagulant activity and a clinical trial found a reduction in blood coagulation induced by intensive training in athletes — whether these effects also occur in non-athletes is unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siberian</td>
<td>and bleeding</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grapeseed extract</td>
<td>Increased bruising</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
<td>Inhibits platelet aggregation in vitro — clinical significance unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and bleeding</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green tea</td>
<td>Reduced drug effects</td>
<td>Caution with high doses</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
<td>A case report of excessive intake (2.25–4.5 L green tea daily) was reported to inhibit warfarin activity and decrease INR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guarana</td>
<td>Increased bruising</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
<td>In vitro and in vivo research has identified antiplatelet activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and bleeding</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horseradish</td>
<td>Increased bruising</td>
<td>Observe with high-dose supplements</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
<td>Although it contains coumarins, interaction unlikely, but this has not been established clinically</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and bleeding risk</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug</td>
<td>Herb/Supplement</td>
<td>Potential outcome</td>
<td>Recommendation</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Licorice</td>
<td></td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Caution with high doses</td>
<td>Isoliquiritigenin inhibits platelet aggregation, and glycyrrhizin inhibits prothrombin, according to in vitro and in vivo tests — clinical significance unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meadowsweet</td>
<td></td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>In vitro tests have indicated anticoagulant activity — clinical significance unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myrrh</td>
<td></td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Observe with myrrh preparations Caution with guggul preparations</td>
<td>Guggul inhibited platelet aggregation in vitro and in a clinical study, so concurrent use may theoretically increase the risk of bleeding — implications for Commiphora molmol use unclear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Policosanol</td>
<td></td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Caution with doses &gt;10 mg daily</td>
<td>Current evidence is contradictory, as one study failed to detect an interaction between policosanol and warfarin, but others have found that doses &gt;10 mg/day may inhibit platelet aggregation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psyllium</td>
<td></td>
<td>Decreased drug absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by at least 1 hour</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rosemary</td>
<td></td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>Rosemary demonstrates antithrombotic activity in vitro and in vivo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St John’s wort</td>
<td></td>
<td>Decreased drug effects</td>
<td>Avoid unless under medical supervision to monitor for signs of reduced drug effectiveness and adjust dose if necessary Prothrombin time or INR should be closely monitored with addition or withdrawal of St John’s wort</td>
<td>St John’s wort increases metabolism of drug</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St Mary’s thistle</td>
<td></td>
<td>Increased drug effects</td>
<td>Caution — monitor for signs of increased drug effectiveness</td>
<td>Possible CYP (liver cytochrome) inhibition effects, but conflicting evidence makes evaluation difficult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turmeric</td>
<td></td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Caution with concentrated extracts</td>
<td>Curcumin inhibits platelet aggregation in vitro and in vivo — clinical significance unknown</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Herb/Supplement</th>
<th>Potential outcome</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>Evidence/Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin E</td>
<td></td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Caution with high-dose supplements (&gt;1000 IU daily) Until clinical significance can be established prothrombin time or INR should be closely monitored with addition or withdrawal of high-dose vitamin E supplements</td>
<td>Clinical studies have produced conflicting results: several found no effects of platelet aggregation or coagulation, although others found an increased bleeding risk People with reduced levels of vitamin K may be more susceptible to the effects of vitamin E potentiating warfarin activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antiplatelet drugs (e.g. aspirin)</td>
<td>Andrographis</td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Herb inhibits platelet aggregation, observed in animal and clinical studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilberry</td>
<td></td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Caution with high-dose (&gt;170 mg) anthocyanadins unless under medical supervision</td>
<td>Dose is extremely high and not relevant to clinical practice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evening primrose oil</td>
<td></td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Observe, although beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Theoretically may enhance anti-inflammatory and antiplatelet effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feverfew</td>
<td></td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Although feverfew inhibits platelet aggregation in vitro and in vivo, no effects were seen in a clinical study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish oils</td>
<td></td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe — beneficial interaction possible under professional supervision</td>
<td>No haemorrhagic effects were seen in a clinical study — theoretical concern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garlic</td>
<td></td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Caution at doses &gt; 4 g/day</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Herb/Supplement</th>
<th>Potential outcome</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>Evidence/Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ginger</td>
<td></td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Caution at high dose (&gt;10 g) unless under professional supervision</td>
<td>Inhibits platelet aggregation at very high doses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginkgo biloba</td>
<td></td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Theoretically possible because of platelet-activating-factor inhibitor activity, but three trials cast doubt on the clinical significance of this effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grapeseed extract</td>
<td></td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Theoretically may enhance antiplatelet activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guarana</td>
<td></td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Decreases platelet aggregation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myrrh</td>
<td></td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Guggul inhibited platelet aggregation in vitro and in a clinical study, so concurrent use may theoretically increase the risk of bleeding. It is uncertain what implications this observation has for use of Commiphora molmol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turmeric</td>
<td></td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Observe with concentrated extracts</td>
<td>Curcumin inhibits platelet aggregation in vitro and in vivo — clinical significance unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aspirin</td>
<td>Grapeseed extract</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Theoretically may enhance antiplatelet and anti-inflammatory activity of aspirin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meadowsweet</td>
<td></td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Observe — beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Theoretically may enhance anti-inflammatory and antiplatelet effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Policosanol</td>
<td></td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Doses &gt;10 mg/day may inhibit platelet aggregation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin C</td>
<td></td>
<td>Decreased vitamin C effects</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Aspirin may interfere with both absorption and cellular uptake mechanisms for vitamin C, thereby increasing vitamin C requirements, as observed in animal and human studies. Increased vitamin C intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Willowbark</td>
<td></td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Caution with high dose (&gt;240 mg/day)</td>
<td>Theoretically may enhance anti-inflammatory and antiplatelet effects. Although a clinical study found that consumption of salicin 240 mg/day produced minimal effects on platelet aggregation, higher doses may have a significant effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug</td>
<td>Herb/Supplement</td>
<td>Potential outcome</td>
<td>Recommendation</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antihypertensive agents</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antihypertensive drugs</td>
<td>Essential fatty acids</td>
<td>Increased drug</td>
<td>Observe — beneficial interaction</td>
<td>Both omega-3 and omega-6 fatty acids exhibit antihypertensive activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>— omega-3 and omega-6</td>
<td>effects</td>
<td>interaction possible</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evening primrose oil</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe — monitor</td>
<td>Evening primrose oil has been shown</td>
<td>Increased drug effects — beneficial interaction possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>drug requirements</td>
<td>to enhance the effects of several</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(interaction may</td>
<td>antihypertensive drugs, including</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>be beneficial)</td>
<td>dihydralazine, clonidine and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>captopril in rats under experimental</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Evening primrose oil</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guarana</td>
<td>Antagonistic effects</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>Theoretical concern</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garlic</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Caution — monitor</td>
<td>Clinical trials have shown garlic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>drug requirements</td>
<td>to reduce blood pressure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(interaction may</td>
<td>(interaction may be beneficial)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hawthorn</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Caution — monitor</td>
<td>Mild antihypertensive activity has</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>drug requirements</td>
<td>been reported with long-term use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(interaction may</td>
<td>of hawthorn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>be beneficial)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Licorice</td>
<td>Reduced drug effect</td>
<td>Caution — monitor</td>
<td>High-dose glycyrrhizin taken long-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>blood pressure</td>
<td>term can lead to increased blood</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>when high-dose</td>
<td>pressure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>licorice</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>preparations are</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>taken for more</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>than 2 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oats (oat-based cereals)</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe — monitor</td>
<td>A clinical trial has shown that</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>drug requirements</td>
<td>ingestion of oat-based cereals</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(interaction may</td>
<td>decreased blood pressure in 73% of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>be beneficial)</td>
<td>hypertensive patients and reduced</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>drug requirements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Olive leaf and olive oil</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Beneficial</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>interaction</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>possible</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydralazine (e.g. Apresoline, Alphapress)</td>
<td>Reduced CoQ10 serum levels</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Increased CoQ10 intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug</td>
<td>Herb/Supplement</td>
<td>Potential outcome</td>
<td>Recommendation</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B6 (pyridoxine)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced vitamin B6 absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by at least 2 hours</td>
<td>A clinical trial has shown that the drug may induce B6 deficiency, so increased intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methyldopa (e.g. Aldomet)</td>
<td>Coenzyme Q10</td>
<td>Reduced CoQ10 serum levels</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Increased CoQ10 intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACE inhibitors (e.g. captopril, enalapril)</td>
<td>Iron</td>
<td>Reduced drug effect</td>
<td>Separate doses by at least 2 hours</td>
<td>A small clinical trial found that concomitant iron administration reduced area-under-the-curve plasma levels of unconjugated captopril by 37%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinc</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced zinc levels</td>
<td>Monitor for zinc efficacy and zinc status</td>
<td>Increased zinc intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verapamil</td>
<td>St John’s wort</td>
<td>Reduces drug levels via increased metabolism</td>
<td>Monitor and adjust dose as necessary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beta-adrenergic-blocking agents</td>
<td>Coenzyme Q10</td>
<td>Reduced CoQ10 serum levels</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Increased CoQ10 intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Propranolol</td>
<td>Myrrh</td>
<td>Reduced drug effect</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>A clinical trial has shown that guggulipid reduces bioavailability of propranolol. It is uncertain what implications this has for use of Commiphora molmol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin E</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced drug effect</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>According to in vitro research, vitamin E inhibits drug uptake in human cultured fibroblasts — clinical significance unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium-channel blockers (e.g. verapamil)</td>
<td>Calcium</td>
<td>Reduced drug effect</td>
<td>Avoid high-dose supplements unless under medical supervision</td>
<td>Calcium may reduce antihypertensive effect of drug</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium</td>
<td></td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe — monitor drug requirements (interaction may be beneficial)</td>
<td>A meta-analysis of 20 randomised trials showed that magnesium has a modest antihypertensive activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin D</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced drug effect</td>
<td>Caution unless under medical supervision</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Felodipine</td>
<td>Peppermint oil</td>
<td>Increased drug effects</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>Peppermint oil has been shown to increase the oral bioavailability of felodipine in animal studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug</td>
<td>Herb/Supplement</td>
<td>Potential outcome</td>
<td>Recommendation</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nifedipine</td>
<td>Ginseng — Korean</td>
<td>Increased drug effects</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diltiazem</td>
<td>Myrrh</td>
<td>Reduced drug effect</td>
<td>Prudent to avoid guggulipid preparations</td>
<td>A clinical trial has shown that guggulipid reduces bioavailability of diltiazem. It is uncertain what implications this has for use of Commiphora molmol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quercetin</td>
<td></td>
<td>Increased drug effects</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>Increased drug bioavailability observed in vivo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Antimigraine preparations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antimigraine preparations</th>
<th>Coenzyme Q10</th>
<th>Additive effects</th>
<th>Beneficial interaction possible</th>
<th>CoQ10 demonstrated migraine prevention activity in a clinical study</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Feverfew</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Feverfew demonstrated migraine prevention activity in several clinical studies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B2 (riboflavin)</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Vitamin B2 has demonstrated migraine prevention activity in several clinical studies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clonidine (e.g. Catapres)</td>
<td>Reduced CoQ10 serum levels</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>In vivo study indicates that clonidine reduces serum CoQ10 levels. Increased CoQ10 intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Cardiac inotropic agents**

<p>| Cardiac glycosides | Hawthorn | Additive effects | Caution — monitor drug requirements (interaction may be beneficial) | Theoretical interaction, as in vitro and in vivo studies indicate that hawthorn has positive inotropic activity Small clinical study found interaction not clinically significant when digoxin 0.25 mg taken with Hawthorn (WS1442) 450 mg twice daily |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Herb/Supplement</th>
<th>Potential outcome</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>Evidence/Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Digoxin (e.g. Lanoxin)</td>
<td>Aloe vera</td>
<td>Increased drug toxicity</td>
<td>Avoid long-term use of high-dose preparations</td>
<td>Long-term oral use of aloe can deplete potassium levels and reduced potassium status lowers the threshold for drug toxicity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ginseng — Siberian</td>
<td>Interferes with therapeutic drug monitoring for digoxin</td>
<td>Caution — drug assay may produce false-positive results</td>
<td>Refer to Chapter 8 on interactions for further information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Guarana</td>
<td>Increased drug toxicity</td>
<td>Avoid long-term use of high-dose preparations</td>
<td>Long-term guarana use can deplete potassium levels and reduced potassium status lowers the threshold for drug toxicity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Licorice</td>
<td>Increased drug toxicity</td>
<td>Avoid long-term use of high-dose preparations (&gt;100 mg glycyrrhizin daily &gt;2 weeks) unless under medical supervision</td>
<td>Reduced potassium status lowers the threshold for drug toxicity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Quercetin</td>
<td>Increased drug toxicity</td>
<td>Avoid concurrent use</td>
<td>Increased drug bioavailability possible</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adverse effects of high-dose digoxin include: nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, confusion, fainting, palpitations, irregular heart beat, visual disturbances.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Herb/Supplement</th>
<th>Potential outcome</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>Evidence/Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
|                       | St John’s wort   | Reduced drug effects               | Avoid unless under medical supervision  
Monitor for signs of reduced drug effectiveness and adjust dose if necessary  
When St John’s wort is started or ceased, monitor serum levels and alter drug dosage as required | St John’s wort induces CYP enzymes and P-glycoprotein. A clinical trial shows that St John’s wort significantly decreases serum levels of drug within 10 days of concomitant use |
| **Diuretics**         |                  |                                    |                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Diuretics             | Dandelion leaf   | Additive effects                   | Observe                                                                                                                                     | Theoretically increased diuresis is possible — clinical significance is unknown                                                                                                                                  |
|                       | Guarana          | Additive diuretic effects but decreased hypotensive effects of drug | Caution  
Monitor potassium status                                                                                                               | Theoretically increased diuresis and decreased hypotensive effects are possible — clinical significance is unknown                                                                                          |
|                       | Licorice         | Increased potassium excretion      | Avoid long-term use unless under medical supervision  
Monitor potassium status                                                                                                                      | Potassium loss may become significant when licorice is used in high dose (>100 mg glycyrrhizin daily) for longer than 2 weeks                                                                                   |
<p>| Loop diuretics        | Magnesium        | Increased magnesium excretion      | Monitor magnesium efficacy and status — beneficial interaction possible                                                                 | Increased magnesium intake may be required with long-term therapy                                                                                                                                             |
|                       | Stinging nettle  | Additive effects                   | Observe                                                                                                                                     | Theoretically increased diuresis is possible — clinical significance is unknown                                                                                                                                  |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Herb/Supplement</th>
<th>Potential outcome</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>Evidence/Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B1 (thiamin)</td>
<td>Reduced B1 levels</td>
<td>Monitor B1 efficacy and</td>
<td>Increased B1 intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>status — beneficial</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>interaction possible</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinc</td>
<td>Increased urinary</td>
<td>Monitor zinc efficacy and</td>
<td>Increased zinc intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>zinc excretion</td>
<td>status — beneficial</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>interaction possible</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potassium-sparing diuretics</td>
<td>Magnesium</td>
<td>Increased magnesium effects</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thiazide diuretics</td>
<td>Calcium</td>
<td>Decreased urinary calcium</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>excretion</td>
<td>Monitor serum calcium and look for signs of hypercalcaemia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Magnesium</td>
<td>Increased magnesium</td>
<td>Increased magnesium intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>excretion</td>
<td>efficacy and status — beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Zinc</td>
<td>Increased urinary</td>
<td>Increased zinc intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>zinc excretion</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hydrochlorothiazide</td>
<td>Reduced CoQ10 serum levels</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Increased CoQ10 intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e.g. Diclotride)</td>
<td>Coenzyme Q10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B12</td>
<td>Reduces hyper-homocysteinaemia</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible in conjunction with folate</td>
<td>Hydrochlorothiazide may increase homocysteine levels</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Hypolipidaemic agents**

<p>| Hypolipidaemic agents | Chromium | Additive effects | Observe — monitor drug requirements (interaction may be beneficial) | Clinical trials indicate that chromium reduces total cholesterol levels |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Herb/Supplement</th>
<th>Potential outcome</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>Evidence/Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Garlic</td>
<td></td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe — monitor drug requirements (interaction may be beneficial)</td>
<td>A meta-analysis of 13 clinical trials concluded that garlic significantly reduces total cholesterol levels — effects are described as modest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myrrh</td>
<td></td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe — monitor drug requirements (interaction may be beneficial for guggul preparations)</td>
<td>Guggul has demonstrated cholesterol-lowering activity in several clinical studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oats (oat-based cereals)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible — monitor drug requirements</td>
<td>Clinical trials indicate that oat-based cereals reduce total cholesterol levels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Policosanol</td>
<td></td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Caution, although beneficial interaction possible under medical supervision</td>
<td>Policosanol may theoretically increase cholesterol-lowering effects of statins, but a theoretical concern exists as to whether concurrent use will also increase incidence of adverse effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B3 (niacin)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible — caution with sustained-release form</td>
<td>Several clinical trials confirm the cholesterol-lowering activity of niacin and the safety of niacin with statins, but the sustained-release form may be unsafe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cholestyramine (e.g. Questran lite, colestipol [e.g. Colestid])</td>
<td>Fat-soluble vitamins (A, D, E, K, beta-carotene)</td>
<td>Reduced vitamin absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by at least 4 hours and monitor vitamin status</td>
<td>Increased vitamin intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folate</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced folate absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by at least 4 hours and monitor iron status</td>
<td>Increased vitamin intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced iron absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by at least 4 hours and monitor iron status</td>
<td>Increased iron intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin E</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced vitamin absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by at least 4 hours and monitor vitamin status</td>
<td>Increased vitamin intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug</td>
<td>Herb/Supplement</td>
<td>Potential outcome</td>
<td>Recommendation</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chitosan</td>
<td>Vitamin C</td>
<td>May increase cholesterol-lowering effect</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fibric-acid derivatives (e.g. gemfibrozil)</td>
<td>Coenzyme Q10</td>
<td>Reduced CoQ10 serum levels</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible — separate doses by 4 hours</td>
<td>Increased CoQ10 intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors (statins)</td>
<td>Coenzyme Q10</td>
<td>Reduced CoQ10 serum levels</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Clinical study indicates several statin drugs reduce CoQ10 levels — increased CoQ10 intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
<td>Increased vitamin A activity</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td></td>
<td>A clinical trial has reported increased serum levels of vitamin A — clinical significance unclear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B3 (niacin)</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible — caution with sustained-release form</td>
<td></td>
<td>Several clinical trials confirm the cholesterol-lowering activity of niacin and the safety of niacin with statins, but the sustained release form may be less safe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pravastatin (e.g. Pravachol)</td>
<td>Fish oils</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>A clinical trial suggests improved lipid-lowering effects when used concurrently</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simvastatin (e.g. Lipex, Zocor)</td>
<td>Peppermint oil</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe — monitor drug requirements (interaction may be beneficial)</td>
<td>Peppermint oil has been shown to increase the oral bioavailability of simvastatin in animal studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St John’s wort</td>
<td>Reduced drug effects</td>
<td>Monitor for signs of reduced drug effectiveness and adjust the dose if necessary When St John’s wort is started or ceased, monitor serum levels and alter drug dosage as required</td>
<td>St John’s wort increases metabolism of simvastatin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St Mary’s thistle</td>
<td>Increased drug effect</td>
<td>Observe — monitor drug requirements</td>
<td></td>
<td>May reduce metabolism of drug resulting in increased serum levels and adverse effects (difficult to evaluate evidence)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Herb/Supplement</th>
<th>Potential outcome</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>Evidence/Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Anticonvulsants</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anticonvulsants</td>
<td>Carnitine</td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>l-Carnitine deficiency may cause or potentiate valproic acid toxicity, and supplementation is known to reduce the toxicity of valproate as well as symptoms of fatigue — concurrent use is recommended, as a beneficial interaction is possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Folate</td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Monitor for drug effectiveness Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Requires close supervision to ensure that drug efficacy is not substantially reduced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ginkgo biloba</td>
<td>Reduced drug effects</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Based on case reports</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>St John’s wort</td>
<td>Reduced drug effects</td>
<td>Avoid unless under medical supervision to alter doses appropriately When St John’s wort is started or ceased, monitor serum levels and alter drug dosage as required</td>
<td>St John’s wort may increase drug metabolism, resulting in reduced drug efficacy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbamazepine (e.g. Tegretol) NTI: signs of overdose include CNS and respiratory depression, hypotension, vomiting, fluid retention</td>
<td>St Mary’s thistle</td>
<td>Increased drug effects</td>
<td>Caution — monitor drug requirements</td>
<td>May reduce metabolism of drug resulting in increased serum levels and adverse effects (difficult to evaluate evidence)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug</td>
<td>Herb/Supplement</td>
<td>Potential outcome</td>
<td>Recommendation</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B12</td>
<td>Decreased B12 levels</td>
<td>Observe for signs and symptoms of B12 deficiency</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>In studies with children, long-term carbamazepine use led to a decrease in vitamin B12 levels. Increased intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenobarbitone</td>
<td>Celery</td>
<td>Prolonged action</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>Celery juice has been found to prolong the action of phenobarbitone in rats — clinical significance unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kava kava</td>
<td>Increased sedation</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Withania</td>
<td>Increased sedation</td>
<td>Observe although beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenobarbitone and phenytoin</td>
<td>Kava kava</td>
<td>Increased sedation</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St John’s wort</td>
<td>Decreased drug effects (increased drug metabolism)</td>
<td>Avoid — monitor drug requirements. When St John’s wort is started or ceased, monitor serum levels and alter drug dosage as required</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B12</td>
<td>Increased serum B12 levels</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td></td>
<td>One clinical study reported that combined long-term use of phenobarbital and phenytoin resulted in significantly increased serum B12 levels — clinical significance unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenytoin</td>
<td>Vitamin B6 (pyridoxine)</td>
<td>Reduced drug effects</td>
<td>Caution — monitor for reduced drug effectiveness</td>
<td>B6 in high doses may lower plasma levels and efficacy of drug and decrease seizure control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenytoin and valproate</td>
<td>Vitamin D</td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Anticonvulsants induce catabolism of vitamin D through liver induction — prolonged use is associated with increased risk of developing rickets and osteomalacia, therefore increased intake may be useful with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug</td>
<td>Herb/Supplement</td>
<td>Potential outcome</td>
<td>Recommendation</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Antidepressants</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antidepressants including SSRIs, SNRIs, tricyclics and MAOIs</td>
<td>Albizia</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Increased risk of serotonergic syndrome is theoretically possible, as the herb increases serotonin levels, according to in vivo studies — clinical significance unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ginkgo biloba</td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Reduced sexual dysfunction side-effects reported in a clinical study and may also improve sleep continuity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>St John’s wort</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Avoid unless under medical supervision</td>
<td>Risk of serotonergic syndrome if combined use is not carefully monitored</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SAMe</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>Theoretically may increase risk of serotonergic syndrome, and a case report exists; however, an experimental study found that brain SAMe levels were significantly reduced after chronic treatment with imipramine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tyrosine</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Avoid unless under medical supervision</td>
<td>Tyrosine is a precursor for several neurotransmitters, which theoretically increases risk of serotonin syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAOIs</td>
<td>Tyrosine</td>
<td>Increased side-effects</td>
<td>Avoid</td>
<td>Some tyrosine may be metabolised to tyramine Concurrent use with MAOIs may lead to hypertensive crisis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tricyclic antidepressants</td>
<td>Andrographis</td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Andrographis may exert hepatoprotective activity against liver damage induced by tricyclic antidepressants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Coenzyme Q10</td>
<td>Reduced CoQ10 serum levels</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Increased CoQ10 intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>St John’s wort</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Avoid unless under medical supervision</td>
<td>Although St John’s wort decreases drug plasma levels of tricyclic antidepressants, it may increase available serotonin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>St Mary’s thistle</td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>St Mary’s thistle may exert hepatoprotective activity against liver damage induced by tricyclic antidepressants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vitamin B2 (riboflavin)</td>
<td>Decreased B2 levels</td>
<td>Monitor for signs and symptoms of B2 deficiency Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Tricyclic antidepressants may reduce the absorption of riboflavin. Increased B2 intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug</td>
<td>Herb/Supplement</td>
<td>Potential outcome</td>
<td>Recommendation</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imipramine</td>
<td>Vitamin B3 (niacin)</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>A combination of imipramine with l-tryptophan 6 g/day and niacinamide 1500 mg/day has been shown to be more effective for people with bipolar disorder than imipramine alone</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Antipsychotic agents**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Herb/Supplement</th>
<th>Potential outcome</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>Evidence/Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Haloperidol (e.g. Serenace)</td>
<td>Ginkgo biloba</td>
<td>Increased drug effects and reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Observe — beneficial interaction possible under professional supervision</td>
<td>Three clinical trials demonstrate that ginkgo increases drug effectiveness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron</td>
<td>Reduced iron effect</td>
<td>Monitor iron status</td>
<td></td>
<td>May cause decreased blood levels of iron — clinical significance unclear. Increased iron intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quercetin</td>
<td>Reduced drug side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td></td>
<td>According to in vivo studies, reduced chewing movements and tongue protrusions possible with concurrent use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenothiazines (e.g. chlorpromazine, trifluoperazine)</td>
<td>Evening primrose oil</td>
<td>Reduced drug effects</td>
<td>Avoid concomitant use until safety can be established</td>
<td>Several case reports suggest that evening primrose oil may reduce seizure threshold and reduce drug effectiveness in patients with schizophrenia treated with phenothiazines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorpromazine (e.g. Largactil)</td>
<td>Vitamin E</td>
<td>Reduced drug effects</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>According to in vitro research, vitamin E inhibits drug uptake in human cultured fibroblasts — clinical significance unknown</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CNS agents**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Herb/Supplement</th>
<th>Potential outcome</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>Evidence/Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cholinergic drugs Tacrine (e.g. Cognex)</td>
<td>Brahmi</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Cholinergic activity has been identified for brahmi, so increased drug activity is theoretically possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ginkgo biloba</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Cholinergic activity has been identified for ginkgo, so increased drug activity is theoretically possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lemon balm</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Cholinergic activity has been identified for lemon balm, so increased drug activity is theoretically possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug</td>
<td>Herb/Supplement</td>
<td>Potential outcome</td>
<td>Recommendation</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St Mary’s thistle</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>St Mary’s thistle may exert hepatoprotective activity against liver damage induced by tacrine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CNS stimulants</td>
<td>Guarana</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>Herb has demonstrated CNS stimulant activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyrosine</td>
<td></td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>Tyrosine is a precursor for several neurotransmitters (theoretical concern)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Movement disorders**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Herb/Supplement</th>
<th>Potential outcome</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>Evidence/Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>L-Dopa (levodopa)</td>
<td>Calcium</td>
<td>Reduced drug absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by 2 hours</td>
<td>L-dopa can form an insoluble complex with calcium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Iron</td>
<td>Reduced drug absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by 2 hours</td>
<td>L-dopa can form an insoluble complex with iron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kava kava</td>
<td>Reduced drug effects</td>
<td>Avoid unless under medical supervision</td>
<td>Theoretical interaction, as dopamine antagonist effects have been reported for kava kava</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Magnesium</td>
<td>Reduced drug absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by 2 hours</td>
<td>L-dopa can form an insoluble complex with magnesium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tyrosine</td>
<td>Decreased drug and tyrosine effect</td>
<td>Avoid unless under medical supervision</td>
<td>L-Dopa competes with tyrosine for uptake, so concurrent use may decrease uptake of both substances, thereby reducing efficacy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vitamin B6 (pyridoxine)</td>
<td>Reduced drug effects</td>
<td>Observe Monitor for reduced drug effectiveness</td>
<td>Interaction does not occur with combination L-dopa products</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vitamin C</td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>A case report of co-administration with vitamin C suggests this may reduce drug side-effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Zinc</td>
<td>Reduced drug absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by 2 hours</td>
<td>L-Dopa can form an insoluble complex with zinc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-Dopa with carbidopa</td>
<td>Iron</td>
<td>Reduced drug effects</td>
<td>Separate doses by at least 2 hours</td>
<td>May reduce bioavailability of carbidopa and L-dopa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug</td>
<td>Herb/Supplement</td>
<td>Potential outcome</td>
<td>Recommendation</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sedatives, hypnotics</td>
<td>CNS sedatives</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Guarana</td>
<td>Reduced drug effects</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Theoretically guarana may reduce the sedative effects of drug via its CNS stimulation effects; however, an in vivo study found no interaction with pentobarbital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hops</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kava kava</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>May be useful in benzodiazepine withdrawal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible under medical supervision</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lavender oil</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Passionflower</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>May be useful in benzodiazepine withdrawal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible under medical supervision</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Valerian</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>May be useful in benzodiazepine withdrawal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible under medical supervision</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Midazolam (e.g. Hypnovel)</td>
<td>Reduced drug effects</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>St John’s wort may increase drug metabolism and so reduce serum levels of drug</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Monitor for signs of reduced drug effectiveness and adjust the dose if necessary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Barbiturates</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>Potentiation of phenobarbitone-induced sleeping was observed in vivo — clinical significance unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible under medical supervision</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug</td>
<td>Herb/Supplement</td>
<td>Potential outcome</td>
<td>Recommendation</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andrographis</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe Beneficial interaction possible under medical supervision</td>
<td>Potentiation effects observed in vivo — clinical significance unknown</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folate</td>
<td>Reduced drug effects</td>
<td>Caution Monitor for signs of reduced drug effectiveness</td>
<td>Concomitant folic acid use can reduce seizure control</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kava kava</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Caution Beneficial interaction possible under medical supervision — monitor drug dosage</td>
<td>Increased sedation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lemon balm</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe Beneficial interaction possible under medical supervision</td>
<td>Increased sedation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passionflower</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Caution Beneficial interaction possible under medical supervision — monitor drug dosage</td>
<td>Increased sedation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St John’s wort</td>
<td>Reduced drug effects</td>
<td>Avoid — monitor drug requirements. When St John’s wort is started or ceased, monitor serum levels and alter drug dosage as required</td>
<td>St John’s wort induces CYP enzymes and P-glycoprotein, so can reduce drug serum levels</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valerian</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Caution Beneficial interaction possible under medical supervision</td>
<td>Increased sedation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug</td>
<td>Herb/Supplement</td>
<td>Potential outcome</td>
<td>Recommendation</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B6 (pyridoxine)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced plasma levels and drug effects</td>
<td>Caution Monitor for drug effectiveness</td>
<td>Concomitant B6 use can reduce seizure control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Withania</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Observe Beneficial interaction possible under medical supervision</td>
<td>Theoretically may increase sedation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benzodiazepines</td>
<td>Chamomile</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe Beneficial interaction possible under medical supervision</td>
<td>Theoretically an additive effect can occur with concurrent use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kava kava</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Caution Beneficial interaction possible under medical supervision — monitor drug dosage</td>
<td>Combination has been used to ease symptoms of benzodiazepine withdrawal under medical supervision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passionflower</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Caution Beneficial interaction possible under medical supervision — monitor drug dosage</td>
<td>Increased sedation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valerian</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Observe Beneficial interaction possible under medical supervision</td>
<td>Combination has been used to ease symptoms of benzodiazepine withdrawal under medical supervision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Withania</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Observe Beneficial interaction possible under medical supervision</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug</td>
<td>Herb/Supplement</td>
<td>Potential outcome</td>
<td>Recommendation</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONTRACEPTIVE AGENTS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Combined oral contraceptive agents</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral contraceptive pill</td>
<td>Chaste tree</td>
<td>Reduced herb effects</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>There has been speculation as to whether chaste tree is effective when OCPs are being taken. Several clinical studies conducted in women taking the OCP have confirmed that chaste tree still reduces symptoms of premenstrual syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Folate</td>
<td>Reduced folate levels</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Folate levels are reduced with long-term use. Increased intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Licorice</td>
<td>Increased side-effects</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Increased risk of side-effects such as hypokalaemia, fluid retention and elevated blood pressure have been noted in case reports</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>St John’s wort</td>
<td>Reduced drug effects</td>
<td>Caution — avoid use with low-dose OCP</td>
<td>Breakthrough bleeding has been reported in 12 cases, which may indicate decreased effectiveness. Caution related to hyperforin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
<td>Increased vitamin A levels</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>OCP increases serum vitamin A levels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vitamin B2 (riboflavin)</td>
<td>Reduced vitamin B2 levels</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>OCP may increase demand for vitamin B2. Increased intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vitamin B3 (niacin)</td>
<td>Reduced vitamin B3 levels</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Increased intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vitamin B5 (pantothenic acid)</td>
<td>Reduced vitamin B5 levels</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Increased intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vitamin B6 (pyridoxine)</td>
<td>Reduced vitamin B6 levels</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>OCP may induce pyridoxine deficiency. Increased intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug</td>
<td>Herb/Supplement</td>
<td>Potential outcome</td>
<td>Recommendation</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B12</td>
<td>Reduced vitamin B12 levels</td>
<td>Observe for signs and symptoms of B12 deficiency Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>OCP users showed significantly lower concentrations of cobalamin than controls in a clinical study. Increased intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ENDOCRINE AND METABOLIC DISORDERS**

**Adrenal steroid hormones**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Corticosteroids</th>
<th>Calcium</th>
<th>Reduced side-effects</th>
<th>Beneficial interaction possible</th>
<th>Through inhibiting vitamin D-mediated calcium absorption, overall levels may be decreased. Increased calcium intake may be required with long-term therapy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chromium</td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Corticosteroids increase urinary losses of chromium, and chromium supplementation has been shown to aid in recovery from steroid-induced diabetes mellitus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Licorice</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Concurrent use of licorice preparations potentiates the effects of topical and oral corticosteroids (e.g. prednisolone) as glycyrrhizin inhibits the metabolism of prednisolone. Some practitioners use licorice to minimise requirements for, or to aid in withdrawal of, corticosteroid medications</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin C</td>
<td>Reduced vitamin C effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>May increase requirement for vitamin C. Increased intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin D</td>
<td>Reduced vitamin D absorption</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Increased vitamin D intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Betamethasone</td>
<td>Carnitine</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>RCT has shown that a combination of low-dose betamethasone (2 mg/day) and L-carnitine (4 g/5 days) was more effective in preventing respiratory distress syndrome (7.3% vs 14.5%) and death (1.8% vs 7.3%) in preterm infants than high-dose betamethasone given alone (8 mg/2 days)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug</td>
<td>Herb/Supplement</td>
<td>Potential outcome</td>
<td>Recommendation</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Agents affecting calcium and bone metabolism</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alendronate (e.g. Fosamax) and Etidronate (e.g. Didronel)</td>
<td>Calcium</td>
<td>Reduced drug absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by at least 2 hours</td>
<td>Calcium may reduce drug absorption; however, adequate calcium is required for optimal drug effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron</td>
<td>Reduced drug absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by at least 2 hours</td>
<td>Magnesium may reduce drug absorption; however, adequate magnesium is required for optimal drug effects</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium</td>
<td>Reduced drug absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by at least 2 hours</td>
<td>Magnesium may reduce drug absorption; however, adequate magnesium is required for optimal drug effects</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinc</td>
<td>Reduced drug absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by at least 2 hours</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gonadal hormones</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oestrogen</td>
<td>Hops</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Theoretical interaction, based on mild oestrogenic effect of hops</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red clover</td>
<td>Reduced drug effects</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Theoretically, if taken in large quantities phyto-oestrogens may compete with synthetic oestrogens for receptor binding — clinical significance unknown</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oestrogen and progesterone</td>
<td>Calcium</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Possible beneficial interaction on bone mineralisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Licorice</td>
<td>Increased side-effects</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Caution with high-dose licorice or long-term use (&gt; 2 weeks)</td>
<td>OCP can increase sensitivity to glycyrrhizin side-effects such as hypertension, fluid retention, hypokalaemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Testosterone</td>
<td>Licorice</td>
<td>Altered testosterone effect</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Contradictory evidence suggests possible effects on testosterone levels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Haemopoietic agents</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Erythropoietin</td>
<td>Ginseng — Korean</td>
<td>Enhanced drug effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>The total saponin fraction has been shown to promote haemopoiesis — clinical significance for total herb unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug</td>
<td>Herb/Supplement</td>
<td>Potential outcome</td>
<td>Recommendation</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron</td>
<td>Enhanced drug effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Withania   | Enhanced drug effects | Beneficial interaction possible | Animal studies indicate herb increases haematopoiesis — clinical significance unknown |}

**Hypoglycaemic agents**

Hypoglycaemic (e.g. metformin) agents
Adverse effects associated with increased hypoglycaemic effects include sweating, hunger, depression, tremor and headaches

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb/Supplement</th>
<th>Potential outcome</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>Evidence/Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aloe vera</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Oral aloe vera may have hypoglycaemic activity, so additive effects are theoretically possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andrographis</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Caution — blood glucose levels should be checked regularly Beneficial interaction possible under professional supervision</td>
<td>Andrographis has hypoglycaemic activity comparable to that of metformin in vivo, so additive effects are theoretically possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilberry</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Animal study identified the constituent myrtillin as exerting hypoglycaemic actions — relevance for bilberry unclear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bitter melon</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Caution Monitor drug requirements Possible beneficial effect under professional supervision</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 — Herb/nutrient–drug interactions 1461
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Herb/Supplement</th>
<th>Potential outcome</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>Evidence/Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chromium</td>
<td>Chromium</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Caution Monitor drug requirements Beneficial interaction possible under professional supervision</td>
<td>Clinical studies have shown that chromium has hypoglycaemic activity in some individuals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cinnamon</td>
<td>Cinnamon</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe — potentially beneficial interaction</td>
<td>Clinical studies have produced contradictory results</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Damiana</td>
<td>Damiana</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fenugreek</td>
<td>Fenugreek</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Caution — blood glucose levels should be checked regularly Beneficial interaction possible under professional supervision</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginseng — Siberian</td>
<td>Ginseng — Siberian</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Speculation is based on IV use in animal studies and has not been observed in humans with oral dose forms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green tea</td>
<td>Green tea</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Clinical significance unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myrrh</td>
<td>Myrrh</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Caution — blood glucose levels should be checked regularly Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Myrrh has been shown to increase glucose tolerance in both normal and diabetic rats — clinical significance unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Olive leaf extract</td>
<td>Olive leaf extract</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible — drug dose may need modification</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psyllium</td>
<td>Psyllium</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Drug dose may need modification</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B3 (niacin)</td>
<td>Vitamin B3 (niacin)</td>
<td>Increased drug requirement</td>
<td>Caution Monitor drug effectiveness</td>
<td>Niacin may affect glycaemic control and increase fasting blood glucose levels, so medication doses may need to be reviewed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug</td>
<td>Herb/Supplement</td>
<td>Potential outcome</td>
<td>Recommendation</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metformin</td>
<td>Vitamin B12</td>
<td>Decreased vitamin B12 levels</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Increased B12 intake may be required with long-term drug use</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Thyroid hormones and antithyroid agents**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Levotyroxine (e.g. Oroxine)</th>
<th>Calcium</th>
<th>Reduced drug absorption</th>
<th>Separate doses by 2–4 hours</th>
<th>Calcium and thyroxine form an insoluble complex together</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Celery</td>
<td>Decreased drug effect</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horseradish</td>
<td>Increased drug requirement</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Monitor thyroid function. Dose may need to be adjusted</td>
<td>Isothiocyanates may inhibit thyroxine formation and be goitrogenic, although this has not been demonstrated clinically</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron</td>
<td>Decreased drug absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by 2–4 hours</td>
<td></td>
<td>Iron supplements may decrease absorption of thyroid medication; however, iron deficiency may impair the body’s ability to make thyroid hormones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium</td>
<td>Reduced drug absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by 2–4 hours</td>
<td></td>
<td>Magnesium and thyroxine form an insoluble complex together</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyrosine</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td></td>
<td>Additive effects theoretically possible, as tyrosine is a precursor to thyroid hormones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Withania</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>A clinical trial reported that daily administration of <em>Withania somnifera</em> root extract enhanced serum T4 concentration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinc</td>
<td>Reduced drug absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by 2–4 hours</td>
<td></td>
<td>Zinc and thyroxine form an insoluble complex together</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**EYE**

**Glaucoma preparations**

| Timolol eye drops | Coenzyme Q10 | Reduced side-effects | Beneficial interaction possible | A clinical trial of people with glaucoma found that oral CoQ10 reduced cardiovascular side-effects of timolol eye drops without affecting intraocular pressure |

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Herb/Supplement</th>
<th>Potential outcome</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>Evidence/Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GASTROINTESTINAL SYSTEM</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Digestive supplements</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pancreatin</td>
<td>Folate</td>
<td>Reduced folate absorption</td>
<td>Monitor for folate efficacy and folate status</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hyperacidity, reflux and ulcers</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aluminium-based antacids</td>
<td>Vitamin C</td>
<td>Increased aluminium absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by at least 2 hours</td>
<td>Vitamin C increases the amount of aluminium absorbed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antacids</td>
<td>Folate</td>
<td>Reduced folate absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by 2–3 hours</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced iron absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by at least 2 hours</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Antiulcer drugs</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sucralfate (e.g. Carafate, Ulcyte)</td>
<td>Vitamin E</td>
<td>Reduced vitamin absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by at least 4 hours</td>
<td>Increased vitamin intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced calcium absorption</td>
<td>Monitor calcium status</td>
<td>Calcium supplementation may be required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastric-acid inhibitors (proton-pump inhibitors [e.g. omeprazole], H2-receptor antagonists [e.g. ranitidine])</td>
<td>Folate</td>
<td>Reduced folate absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by 2–3 hours</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug</td>
<td>Herb/Supplement</td>
<td>Potential outcome</td>
<td>Recommendation</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced drug and iron effect</td>
<td>Monitor for iron efficacy and iron status</td>
<td>Drug reduces gastric acidity and therefore iron absorption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B12</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced B12 absorption</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>B12 supplementation may be required with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Helicobacter pylori</em> triple-therapy</td>
<td>Garlic</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Interaction may be beneficial</td>
<td>Garlic inhibits growth of <em>H. pylori</em> in vitro and in vivo and two studies have shown a synergistic effect with omeprazole</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Laxatives**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Potential outcome</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>Evidence/Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aloe vera</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>Anthraquinones have significant laxative activity and may increase adverse effects of griping</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GENITOURINARY SYSTEM**

**Bladder function disorders**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Potential outcome</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>Evidence/Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pygeum</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saw palmetto</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Meta-analyses show that herb is beneficial for BPH and in vitro tests show it may also inhibit 5-alpha-reductase activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stinging nettle root</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Clinical studies show nettle root to improve symptoms of BPH</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IMMUNOLOGY**

**Immune modifiers**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb</th>
<th>Potential outcome</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>Evidence/Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cyclosporin</td>
<td>Peppermint</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Avoid unless under medical supervision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Peppermint oil has been shown to increase the oral bioavailability of cyclosporin in animal studies — clinical significance unknown</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
### Drug

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Herb/Supplement</th>
<th>Potential outcome</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>Evidence/Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Echinacea</td>
<td>Decreased drug effects</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>Theoretically, the immunostimulant activity of the herb may reduce drug effects — clinical significance unknown</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goldenseal</td>
<td>Increased drug effects</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>RCT conducted with berberine constituent — clinical relevance for goldenseal difficult to assess</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St John’s wort</td>
<td>Reduced drug effects</td>
<td>Avoid</td>
<td>Decreases plasma levels significantly within 3 days of concomitant use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St Mary’s thistle</td>
<td>Reduced drug side-effects but may increase drug effects</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>Decreases hepatotoxicity; however, herb may reduce drug metabolism leading to increased effects — clinical significance unknown</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interferon</td>
<td>Increased side-effects</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>There have been reports of acute pneumonitis due to a possible interaction between Sho-saiko-to preparation (containing baical skullcap) and interferon, which appears to be due to an allergic–immunological mechanism rather than direct toxicity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interferon-alpha</td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Clinical trials with patients being treated with interferon-alpha for hepatitis C found a reduction in fatigue associated with treatment when carnitine 2 g/day was co-administered</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tacrolimus (e.g. Prograf)</td>
<td>Reduced drug effects</td>
<td>Avoid unless under medical supervision</td>
<td>Decreased drug serum levels</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Vaccines

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vaccine</th>
<th>Herb/Supplement</th>
<th>Potential outcome</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>Evidence/Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Influenza virus vaccine</td>
<td>Ginseng — Siberian</td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>May reduce the risk of post-vaccine reactions</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### INFECTIONS AND INFESTATIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Herb/Supplement</th>
<th>Potential outcome</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>Evidence/Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Antibiotics</td>
<td>Probiotics</td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Reduces gastrointestinal and genitourinary side-effects. A meta-analysis of nine studies found that <em>Lactobacilli</em> and <em>Saccharomyces boulardii</em> successfully prevent antibiotic-induced diarrhoea. Increase intake with antibiotic therapy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Herb/Supplement</th>
<th>Potential outcome</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>Evidence/Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Soy</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced phyto-oestrogen effect</td>
<td>Inhibits metabolism of isoflavones to equol through inhibition of intestinal microflora</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B1 (thiamin)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduces endogenous vitamin production</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Increase dietary intake or consider supplementation with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B5 (pantothenic acid)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduces endogenous vitamin production</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Increase dietary intake or consider supplementation with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aminoglycosides (e.g. gentamicin)</td>
<td>Magnesium</td>
<td>Decreased magnesium absorption</td>
<td>Caution Monitor for signs and symptoms of magnesium deficiency</td>
<td>Aminoglycosides may deplete magnesium levels and result in neuromuscular weakness. Increased magnesium may be required with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quinolone antibiotics (e.g. norfloxacin [e.g. Noroxin])</td>
<td>Calcium</td>
<td>Reduced drug absorption</td>
<td>Separate antibiotic dose by at least 2 hours before or 4 hours after oral calcium</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dandelion</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced drug absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by at least 2 hours</td>
<td>Reduced drug absorption observed in an experimental study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced drug absorption</td>
<td>Separate antibiotic dose by at least 2 hours before or 4–6 hours after oral iron</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced drug absorption</td>
<td>Separate antibiotic dose by at least 2 hours before or 4 hours after oral magnesium</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quercetin</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced drug effect</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>Theoretical concern based on test tube studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug</td>
<td>Herb/Supplement</td>
<td>Potential outcome</td>
<td>Recommendation</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinc</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced drug and zinc absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by at least 2 hours</td>
<td>Complex formation between zinc and quinolones results in reduced absorption of both substances, with potential reduction in efficacy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tetracycline antibiotics (e.g. minocycline [e.g. Minomycin], doxycycline)</td>
<td>Calcium</td>
<td>Reduced drug and calcium absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by at least 2 hours</td>
<td>Tetracyclines form insoluble complexes with calcium, thereby reducing its absorption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced drug and iron absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by at least 4 hours</td>
<td>Tetracyclines form insoluble complexes with iron, thereby reducing its absorption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced drug and magnesium absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by at least 2 hours</td>
<td>Tetracyclines form insoluble complexes with iron, thereby reducing its absorption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B12</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced drug absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by at least 2 hours</td>
<td>B complexes containing B12 may significantly reduce the bioavailability of tetracycline hydrochloride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinc</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced drug and zinc absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by at least 2 hours</td>
<td>Complex formation between zinc and tetracycline results in reduced absorption of both substances, with potential reduction in efficacy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other antibiotics and anti-infectives (Trimethoprim [e.g. Triprim])</td>
<td>Folate</td>
<td>Reduced folate levels</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>Increased folate intake may be required with long-term or high-dose therapy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Antimalarials**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Herb/Supplement</th>
<th>Potential outcome</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>Evidence/Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pyrimethamine (e.g. Daraprim)</td>
<td>Folate</td>
<td>Reduced folate levels</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible with folinic acid</td>
<td>Impaired folate utilisation occurs with drug use — supplementation may be required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chloroquine (e.g. Chlorquin)</td>
<td>Vitamin E</td>
<td>Reduced drug effects</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>According to in vitro research, vitamin E inhibits drug uptake in human cultured fibroblasts — clinical significance unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug</td>
<td>Herb/Supplement</td>
<td>Potential outcome</td>
<td>Recommendation</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antituberculotics and Antileprotics</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cycloserine and isoniazid</td>
<td>Vitamin B6 (pyridoxine)</td>
<td>Reduced B6 levels</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Drug may induce pyridoxine deficiency. Increased intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isoniazid</td>
<td>Vitamin B3 (niacin)</td>
<td>Reduced B3 levels</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Prolonged isoniazid therapy (the drug replaces niacinamide in NAD) may induce pellagra. Increased intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vitamin E</td>
<td>Reduced vitamin absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by at least 4 hours and monitor vitamin status</td>
<td>Increased vitamin intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rifampicin</td>
<td>Vitamin D</td>
<td>Reduced vitamin D levels</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Increase vitamin D intake with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antiviral agents</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIV drugs (e.g. zidovudine [AZT, e.g. Retrovir])</td>
<td>Carnitine</td>
<td>Reduced carnitine levels</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>In vitro studies indicate prevention of muscle damage due to carnitine depletion. Increased intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIV non-nucleoside transcriptase inhibitors</td>
<td>St John’s wort</td>
<td>Reduced drug effects</td>
<td>Avoid</td>
<td>St John’s wort increases drug metabolism, thereby reducing drug serum levels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIV protease inhibitors</td>
<td>St John’s wort</td>
<td>Reduced drug effects</td>
<td>Avoid</td>
<td>St John’s wort increases drug metabolism, thereby reducing drug serum levels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saquinavir</td>
<td>Garlic</td>
<td>Reduced drug effects</td>
<td>Avoid</td>
<td>A clinical study found that garlic reduces serum levels of saquinavir and therefore drug efficacy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUSCULOSKELETAL SYSTEM</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Celery seed extract</td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial</td>
<td>Gastroprotective activity seen in animal model</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Herb/Supplement</th>
<th>Potential outcome</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>Evidence/Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chamomile</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction</td>
<td>Gastroprotective activity seen in animal model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chondroitin</td>
<td></td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible Drug dosage may require modification</td>
<td>May enhance the anti-inflammatory effects of the NSAID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colostrum</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction</td>
<td>Gastroprotective activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devil’s claw</td>
<td></td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible Drug dosage may require modification</td>
<td>May enhance the anti-inflammatory effects of the NSAID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish oils</td>
<td></td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible Drug dosage may require modification</td>
<td>May enhance the anti-inflammatory effects of the NSAID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginger</td>
<td></td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible Drug dosage may require modification</td>
<td>May enhance the anti-inflammatory effects of NSAIDs at high doses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glucosamine</td>
<td></td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible Drug dosage may require modification</td>
<td>May enhance the anti-inflammatory effects of the NSAID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glutamine</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction</td>
<td>May ameliorate the increased intestinal permeability caused by indomethacin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Zealand green-lipped mussel</td>
<td></td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible Drug dosage may require modification</td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory activity reported in a clinical study — may enhance the anti-inflammatory effects of the NSAID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug</td>
<td>Herb/Supplement</td>
<td>Potential outcome</td>
<td>Recommendation</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stinging nettle</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction</td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory activity reported in a clinical study — may enhance the anti-inflammatory effects of the NSAID</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>possible Drug dosage may require modification</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAMe</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction</td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory activity reported in a clinical study — may enhance the anti-inflammatory effects of the NSAID</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>possible Drug dosage may require modification</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin E</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction</td>
<td>May enhance the pain-modifying effects of the NSAID when used in high doses for RA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>possible Drug dosage may require modification</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Willow bark</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction</td>
<td>May enhance the anti-inflammatory effects of the NSAID</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>possible Drug dosage may require modification</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinc</td>
<td>Reduced absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by at least 2 hours</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aspirin</td>
<td>Grapeseed extract</td>
<td>Additive effects Observe</td>
<td>Theoretically may enhance antiplatelet and anti-inflammatory activity of aspirin and may increase risk of bleeding</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Beneficial interaction</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>possible Drug dosage may require modification</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meadowsweet</td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Theoretically may enhance anti-inflammatory and antiplatelet effects</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Beneficial interaction</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>possible Drug dosage may require modification</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Policosanol</td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Doses &gt;10 mg/day may inhibit platelet aggregation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin C</td>
<td>Decreased vitamin C effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction</td>
<td>Aspirin may interfere with both absorption and cellular uptake mechanisms for vitamin C, thereby increasing vitamin C requirements, as observed in animal and human studies. Increased vitamin C intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Herb/Supplement</th>
<th>Potential outcome</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>Evidence/Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Willowbark</td>
<td>Increased bruising and bleeding</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Theoretically may enhance anti-inflammatory and antiplatelet effects. Although a clinical study found that consumption of salicin 240 mg/day produced minimal effects on platelet aggregation, higher doses may have a significant effect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diclofenac sodium (topical)</td>
<td>Licorice</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>In vitro studies have shown that the addition of glycyrrhizin enhanced the topical absorption of diclofenac sodium — significance for licorice unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulfasalazine (e.g. Salazopyrin)</td>
<td>Folate</td>
<td>Reduced drug absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by 2–3 hours</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron</td>
<td>Reduced drug and iron effects</td>
<td>Separate doses by at least 2 hours</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NEOPLASTIC DISORDERS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Herb/Supplement</th>
<th>Potential outcome</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>Evidence/Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chemotherapy</td>
<td>Ginseng — Siberian</td>
<td>Improved treatment tolerance</td>
<td>Caution — possible beneficial interaction under medical supervision</td>
<td>Co-administration may increase drug tolerance and improve immune function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rosemary</td>
<td>Increased drug effects of Pgp substrates</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>Inhibits P-glycoprotein so may affect the bio-availability of Pgp substrates</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin C</td>
<td>May enhance anti-tumour activity</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Controversial</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Withania</td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td></td>
<td>Animal studies suggest a potential role for withania as an adjunctive treatment during chemotherapy for the prevention of drug-induced bone marrow suppression — clinical significance unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug</td>
<td>Herb/Supplement</td>
<td>Potential outcome</td>
<td>Recommendation</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Alkylating agents</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclophosphamide</td>
<td>Turmeric</td>
<td>Reduced drug</td>
<td>Avoid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>effects</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immunosuppressants</td>
<td>Withania</td>
<td>Reduced drug</td>
<td>Caution — possible beneficial interaction</td>
<td>The ability to stimulate stem cell proliferation has led to concerns that withania could reduce cyclophosphamide-induced toxicity, although preliminary animal studies indicate a potential role as a potent and relatively safe radiosensitiser and chemotherapeutic agent. Theoretically it may also decrease the effectiveness of other immunosuppressant drugs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e.g. cyclophosphamide)</td>
<td></td>
<td>effects Reduced side-effects/toxicity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herbs with</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced drug</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Theoretically, immunostimulating agents may reduce drug effectiveness; however clinical significance is unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>immunostimulant</td>
<td></td>
<td>effects</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>properties (e.g.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>echinacea, andrographis, astragalus, baical skullcap, garlic, Korean ginseng, Siberian ginseng)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Antibiotic cytotoxics</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doxorubicin</td>
<td>Carnitine</td>
<td>Reduced side-</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Animal and human studies suggest that long-term carnitine administration may reduce the cardiotoxic side-effects of adriamycin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e.g. Adriamycin)</td>
<td></td>
<td>effects</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Coenzyme Q10</td>
<td>Reduced side-</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Animal and human studies suggest that the cardiotoxic side-effects of adriamycin are reduced with CoQ10 supplementation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>effects</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ginkgo biloba</td>
<td>Reduced side-</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>In vivo research suggests that ginkgo can prevent doxorubicin-induced cardiotoxicity, although no human studies are available to confirm this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>effects</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vitamin C</td>
<td>Reduces side-</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Encouraging — further evidence required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>effects and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>enhances</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>therapeutic action</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug</td>
<td>Herb/Supplement</td>
<td>Potential outcome</td>
<td>Recommendation</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin E</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>One study found that oral dl-alpha tocopheryl acetate (1600 IU/day) prevented doxorubicin-induced alopecia; however, the same dosage failed to prevent alopecia after doxorubicin treatment after mastectomy for breast cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antimetabolites</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methotrexate</td>
<td>Folate</td>
<td>Reduced side-effects but may reduce drug response</td>
<td>Caution in cancer treatment Observe in other conditions</td>
<td>Methotrexate is a folate antagonist drug, supplementation may reduce toxicity. This action may be problematic in cancer treatment and reduce drug response, but beneficial in other uses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paclitaxel</td>
<td>Licorice</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>A constituent of licorice has been demonstrated to significantly potentiate the effects of paclitaxel in vitro — clinical significance for licorice unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quercetin</td>
<td></td>
<td>Increased drug effects</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>Increased drug bio-availability seen in animal study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immunosuppressant drugs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andrographis</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced drug effects</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>Immunostimulant activity has been demonstrated in vivo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Astragalus</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced drug effects</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>Due to known immunostimulant effects observed clinically</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baical skullcap</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced drug effects</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>Due to known immunostimulant effects observed clinically</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Echinacea</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced drug effects</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>Due to known immunostimulant effects observed clinically</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garlic</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced drug effects</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>Due to known immunostimulant effects observed clinically</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginseng – Korean and Ginseng – Siberian</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced drug effects</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>Due to known immunostimulant effects observed clinically</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug</td>
<td>Herb/Supplement</td>
<td>Potential outcome</td>
<td>Recommendation</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisplatin</td>
<td>Carnitine</td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible under professional supervision</td>
<td>Research into the use of L-carnitine 4 g/day for 7 days showed reduced fatigue from treatment with cisplatin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginkgo biloba</td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible under professional supervision</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quercetin</td>
<td>Increased drug effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction theoretically possible under professional supervision</td>
<td>Pre-treatment may sensitize human cervix carcinoma cells to drug according to preliminary research</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St Mary's thistle</td>
<td>Increased drug effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible under professional supervision</td>
<td>Preliminary research has shown that this combination may reduce toxicity effects yet enhance antitumour activity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selenium</td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible under professional supervision</td>
<td>In vitro and in vivo studies indicate that selenium may reduce drug-associated nephrotoxicity, myeloid suppression and weight loss</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin E</td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible under professional supervision</td>
<td>Oral vitamin E (300 mg/day) taken before cisplatin treatment and continued for 3 months significantly reduced the incidence and severity of neurotoxicity, according to a randomised study</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interleukin-2-immunotherapy</td>
<td>Carnitine</td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible under professional supervision</td>
<td>Clinical trials using L-carnitine (1000 mg/day orally) found that it may successfully prevent cardiac complications during IL-2-immunotherapy in cancer patients with clinically relevant cardiac disorders</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Vinca alkaloids

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Herb/Supplement</th>
<th>Potential outcome</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>Evidence/Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vinblastine</td>
<td>Licorice</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe Beneficial interaction possible under medical supervision</td>
<td>A constituent of licorice has been demonstrated to significantly potentiate the effects of vinblastine in vitro — clinical significance unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug</td>
<td>Herb/Supplement</td>
<td>Potential outcome</td>
<td>Recommendation</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NUTRITION</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Anorectics and weight-reducing agents</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orlistat (e.g. Xenical)</td>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
<td>Reduced vitamin absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by at least 4 hours Monitor vitamin status</td>
<td>Increased vitamin intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin D</td>
<td>Reduced vitamin absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by at least 4 hours Monitor vitamin status</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin E</td>
<td>Reduced vitamin absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by at least 4 hours Monitor vitamin status</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POISONING, TOXICITY AND DRUG DEPENDENCE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Agents used in drug dependence</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methadone</td>
<td>Kava kava</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>Increased sedation theoretically possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St John’s wort</td>
<td>Reduced drug effects</td>
<td>Avoid</td>
<td>Decreases serum levels</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Detoxifying agents, antidotes</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penicillamine (e.g. d-penamine)</td>
<td>Calcium</td>
<td>Reduced drug effects</td>
<td>Separate doses by 2 hours</td>
<td>Combination forms insoluble complex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron</td>
<td>Reduced drug and iron effects</td>
<td>Separate doses by at least 2 hours Do not suddenly withdraw iron</td>
<td>Sudden withdrawal of iron during penicillamine use has been associated with penicillamine toxicity and kidney damage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium</td>
<td>Reduced drug effects</td>
<td>Separate doses by 2 hours</td>
<td>Combination forms insoluble complex</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug</td>
<td>Herb/Supplement</td>
<td>Potential outcome</td>
<td>Recommendation</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B6</td>
<td>Reduced B6 effect</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction</td>
<td>Drug may induce pyridoxine</td>
<td>deficiency — increase intake with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(pyridoxine)</td>
<td></td>
<td>possible</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinc</td>
<td>Reduced drug effects</td>
<td>Separate doses by 2 hours</td>
<td>Combination forms insoluble</td>
<td>complex</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RESPIRATORY SYSTEM**

**Broncospasm relaxants**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Herb/Supplement</th>
<th>Potential outcome</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>Evidence/Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ephedrine</td>
<td>Tyrosine</td>
<td>Increased side-effects</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Tyrosine (200 and 400 mg/kg) has been shown to increase side-effects of anorexia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>caused by ephedrine and amphetamine in a dose-dependent manner in rats —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>clinical significance unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theophylline</td>
<td>St John’s wort</td>
<td>Reduced drug effects</td>
<td>Monitor for signs of</td>
<td>Decreased drug serum levels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>reduced drug effectiveness</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>and adjust the dose if necessary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B6</td>
<td>Reduced B6 levels</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction</td>
<td>Drug may induce pyridoxine</td>
<td>deficiency. Increased intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(pyridoxine)</td>
<td></td>
<td>possible</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Expectorants, antitussives, mucolytics and decongestants**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Herb/Supplement</th>
<th>Potential outcome</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
<th>Evidence/Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adhatoda</td>
<td>Increased drug effects</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Results from animal studies show that Adhatoda vasica extract</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>exerts considerable antitussive activity when administered orally and is</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>comparable to codeine when cough is due to irritant stimuli</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenylpropanolamine (found in Neo-Diophen)</td>
<td>Tyrosine</td>
<td>Increased side-effects</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Tyrosine (200 and 400 mg/kg) has been shown to increase side-effects of anorexia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>caused by phenylpropanolamine in a dose-dependent manner in rats —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>clinical significance unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug</td>
<td>Herb/Supplement</td>
<td>Potential outcome</td>
<td>Recommendation</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SKIN</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acne, keratolytics and cleansers</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isotretinoin (e.g. Roaccutane)</td>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Avoid</td>
<td>Isotretinoin is a vitamin A derivative, so adverse effects and toxicity may be increased</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Psoriasis, seborrhoea and ichthyosis</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ketoconazole (e.g. Nizoral)</td>
<td>Vitamin D</td>
<td>Reduced vitamin D effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>Ketoconazole reduces the conversion of vitamin D to its active forms. Increased intake may be required with long-term therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Topical corticosteroids</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Topical corticosteroids (e.g. hydrocortisone)</td>
<td>Aloe vera (topical)</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>In addition to its own anti-inflammatory effects, animal studies have shown that aloe vera increases the absorption of hydrocortisone by hydrating the stratum corneum, inhibits hydrocortisone’s antiwound-healing activity and increases wound tensile strength</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>OTHER</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcohol</td>
<td>Andrographis</td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>May reduce hepatic injury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginseng — Korean</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kava kava</td>
<td></td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Potentiation of CNS sedative effects have been reported in an animal study; however, one double-blind placebo-controlled study found no additive effects on CNS depression or safety-related performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St Mary’s thistle</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>May reduce hepatic injury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAMe</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>May reduce hepatic injury caused by such agents as paracetamol, alcohol and oestrogens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug</td>
<td>Herb/Supplement</td>
<td>Potential outcome</td>
<td>Recommendation</td>
<td>Evidence/Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schisandra</td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>May reduce hepatic injury</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dopamine antagonists</td>
<td>Chaste tree</td>
<td>Reduced drug effects</td>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>Reduced drug effects theoretically possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andrographis</td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>May exert hepatoprotective activity against liver damage induced by drugs such as paracetamol and tricyclic antidepressants</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garlic</td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>May exert hepatoprotective activity against liver damage induced by drugs such as paracetamol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quercetin</td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction</td>
<td>Hepatoprotective activity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St Mary’s thistle</td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>May exert hepatoprotective activity against liver damage induced by drugs such as paracetamol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAMe</td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>May exert hepatoprotective activity against liver damage induced by drugs such as paracetamol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schisandra</td>
<td>Reduced side-effects</td>
<td>Beneficial interaction possible</td>
<td>May exert hepatoprotective activity against liver damage induced by drugs such as paracetamol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lipophilic drugs</td>
<td>Chitosan</td>
<td>Reduced drug absorption</td>
<td>Separate doses by at least 2 hours</td>
<td>Binds to dietary fats and reduces their absorption and so can also affect the absorption of lipophilic drugs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PUVA therapy</td>
<td>Celery</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>While celery has been found to contain psoralens, celery extract does not seem to be photosensitising, even after ingestion in large amounts; however, it may increase the risk of phototoxicity with concurrent PUVA therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St John’s wort</td>
<td>Additive effects</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>Hypericin may increase sensitivity to UV radiation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
APPENDIX 3

POISONS

INFORMATION CENTRES
Call 131 126 (24 hour line) for information and advice on emergency treatment of poisoning, bites and stings in all States and Territories of Australia.

**New South Wales**
The Children’s Hospital at Westmead
Locked Bag 4001
WESTMEAD 2145
Tel: (02) 9382 1367

**Victoria**
Royal Children’s Hospital
Flemington Road
PARKVILLE 3052
Tel: (03) 9345 5680

**Queensland**
Brisbane Royal Children’s Hospital
Herston Road
HERSTON 4029
Tel: 131 126

**South Australia**
Women’s and Children’s Hospital
72 King William Road
ADELAIDE 5006
Tel: (08) 8161 7222

**Western Australia**
Sir Charles Gairdner Hospital
Hospital Avenue
NEDLANDS 6009
Tel: (08) 9346 2923

**Tasmania**
Royal Hobart Hospital
48 Liverpool Street,
HOBART 7001
Tel: (03) 6222 8737
Northern Territory
Royal Darwin Hospital
Rocklands Drive
TIWI 0810
Tel: (08) 8922 8424

Australian Capital Territory
The Canberra Hospital
Yamba Drive
GARRAN 2605
Tel: (02) 6244 3333

Australian Sports Drug Agency
Tel: 1800 020 506

Specialised Drug Information Service
National Prescribing Service
- Health professionals — 1300 138 677
- Consumers — 1300 888 763

New Zealand
Tel: 0800 764 766
(0800 POISON)

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
APPENDIX 4

RESOURCES: TRAINING, MANUFACTURERS AND INFORMATION
Universities, schools and colleges in Australia and New Zealand offering undergraduate or postgraduate courses in nutritional medicine, herbal medicine, naturopathy or complementary medicine.

**VICTORIA**

Southern School of Natural Therapies  
39 Victoria St, Fitzroy 3065

Melbourne College of Natural Medicine (branch of the Australian College of Natural Medicine based in Queensland)  
City Campus: 368 Elizabeth St,  
Melbourne 3000  
Box Hill Campus: 2A Cambridge St, Box Hill 3128

Australian College of Natural Medicine  
609-611 Camberwell Rd, Camberwell 3124

RMIT School of Health Sciences  
Bundoora West Campus, Plenty Rd, Bundoora 3083

Victoria University  
TAFE School of Health Sciences  
Ballarat Rd, Footscray 3011

Australian College of Nutritional and Environmental Medicine (ACNEM)  
13 Hilton St, Beaumaris 3193

Australian College of Herbal Medicine  
38/487 Toorak Rd, Toorak 3142

National College of Traditional Medicine  
1st Floor, 25-29 Devonshire Rd,  
Sunshine 3020

**ACT**

ACT College of Natural Therapies  
Unit 1 Lynnwood, 31 Muggleston Place, Bruce 2617

Canberra Institute of Technology  
GPO Box 826, Canberra 2601
National Institute of Health Sciences  
PO Box 279, Deakin West 2600  

NSW

Nature Care College of Natural Therapies and Life Studies  
46 Nicholson St, St Leonards 2065

Australasian College of Natural Therapies  
PO Box K1356, Haymarket 1240

International Academy of Nutrition  
Suite 4/21, Sydney Rd, Manly 2095  
(PO Box 370, Manly 2095)

College of Nepean Natural Therapeutics  
Suite 12/20 Castlereagh St, Penrith 2750

NSW School of Natural Medicine  
202 North Boambee Rd,  
Coffs Harbour 2450

Gracegrove College  
Level 1/723 Hunter St  
(PO Box 108), Newcastle 2300

Endeavour College of Natural Therapies  
Cnr Henson and Short Sts,  
Summer Hill 2130

Charles Sturt University  
School of Biomedical Sciences  
PO Box 588, Wagga Wagga 2678

University of Sydney  
Faculty of Pharmacy  
Sydney 2006

University of Western Sydney  
(in conjunction with Endeavour College, Sydney)  
4 Hensen St, Summer Hill 2130
University of Newcastle
School of Applied Sciences
University Drive, Callaghan 2308

University of Technology Sydney
College of Traditional Chinese Medicine
Faculty of Science (incorporates the College of TCM)
Broadway, Sydney 2000

Southern Cross University
School of Health & Human Sciences
Natural and Complementary Medicine
PO Box 157, Lismore 2480

SA
University of South Australia
Division of Health Sciences
City East Campus, North Terrace,
Adelaide 5000

South Australian Health Education Centre
88 Currie St, Adelaide 5000

Wholistic Learning Centre
308A Pulteney St, Adelaide 5000

Adelaide Training College of Complementary Medicine
Division 3/297 Montacute Rd,
Newton 5074

QUEENSLAND
Australian College of Natural Medicine (ACNM)
Brisbane Campus: 362 Water St,
Fortitude Valley 4006
Gold Coast Campus: 1 Nerang St, Southport 4215

Australian College of Phytotherapy
PO Box 661, Warwick 4370
Health Schools Australia  
111 Crescent Ave, Hope Island 4212  
Queensland Institute of Natural Sciences  
PO Box 5608, Maroochydore BC 4558  
Australian Institute of Applied Sciences  
PO Box 124, Stones Corner 4120  
Academy of Natural Therapies (TAFE Gold Coast Institute)  
PO Box 5547, Gold Coast Mail Centre 9726  
Academy of Safe Therapies  
PO Box 2060, Burleigh Junction 4220  
Aromatherapy College of Australia  
Suite 3, 16-36 Nile St,  
Woolloongabba 4102  
Robynn Morro’s College of Natural Medicine  
64-66 Thuringowa Dve, Kirwan 4817  

**WA**  
Australian College of Natural Medicine (ACNM)  
Perth Campus: Piccadilly Square, Nash St, East Perth 6004  
The AMRA College of Natural Sciences  
PO Box 664, Kalamunda 6076  
Australian Institute of Holistic Medicine  
862 North Lake Rd, Jandakot 6164  

**TASMANIA**  
TAFE Tasmania  
PO Box 2015, Hobart 70001  

**NEW ZEALAND**  
Naturopathic College of New Zealand Ltd  
4-6 Lynton St, New Plymouth
The International College of Herbal Medicine
18-B Sirrah St, Wainui, Gisborne

COMPLEMENTARY MEDICINE ASSOCIATIONS OF AUSTRALIAN AND NEW ZEALAND PRACTITIONERS AND INDUSTRY

Australasian Integrative Medicine Association (AIMA)
AIMA Office, located within the Royal Australian College of General Practitioners Building, 1 Palmerston Cres, South Melbourne, Vic 3205
  • Chiefly represents medical doctors; however, other healthcare professionals may become associate members.

Australian Natural Therapies Association (ANTA)
PO Box 657, Maroochydore, Qld 4558
  • Major association representing complementary medicine practitioners.

Australian Naturopathic Practitioners Association (ANPA)
609-611 Camberwell Rd, Camberwell, Vic 3124
  • Longest standing association of naturopathy in Australia.

Australian Traditional Medicine Society (ATMS)
12/27 Bank St, Meadowbank, NSW 2114
  • Currently Australia’s largest professional association of complementary medicine practitioners, representing about 65% of the total complementary medicine profession.

Complementary Medicine Association (CMA)
PO Box 6412, Baulkham Hills Business Centre, Baulkham Hills, NSW 2153

The Federation of Natural and Traditional Therapists Ltd (FNTT)
PO Box 168, North Adelaide, SA 5006
  • Comprises several professional associations.

National Herbalists Association of Australia (NHAA)
33 Reserve St, Annandale, NSW 2038
  • Largest association specialising in herbal medicine.

Complementary Healthcare Council (CHC)
Unit 2, 1 Napier Close, Deakin, ACT 2600
  • Peak body representing the complementary healthcare industry (suppliers, retailers, healthcare professionals and consumers).
Australian Self Medication Industry (ASMI)
Level 4, 140 Arthur St, North Sydney, NSW 2060
- Represents companies involved in the manufacture and distribution of over-the-counter consumer healthcare products; peak industry body for the Australia self-care industry.

Australian Complementary Health Association
Ross House, 4th Floor, 247 Flinders Lane, Melbourne, Vic 3000
- Represents consumers and practitioners.

International Federation of Aromatherapists
14 Fawkner Cr, Hurstbridge, Vic 3099

MANUFACTURERS OF HERBAL MEDICINES AND NATURAL SUPPLEMENTS IN AUSTRALIA AND NEW ZEALAND

DFC Thompson Australia Pty Ltd
23-25 Sefton Rd, Thornleigh, NSW 2120

Healtheries of Australia Pty Ltd
PO Box 22045, Otahuhu, New Zealand

Lipa Pharmaceuticals Pty Ltd
21 Reaghs Farm Rd, Minto, NSW 2566

MediHerb Pty Ltd
PO Box 713, Warwick, Qld 4370

Nutrition Care Pharmaceuticals Pty Ltd
PO Box 153, Dingley, Vic 3172

Tabco Pty Ltd
26 Roseberry St, Balgowlah, NSW 2093

RESOURCES USED TO COMPILE THIS BOOK
A book of this type requires careful research and access to quality resources in order to provide balanced and accurate information. Here is a list of many of the reference texts and electronic databases on which the information is based.

Reference Texts

© 2007 Elsevier Australia

**Specialist Databases**

- EMBASE.com
- FullText Clinicians’ Health Channel
- Health and Medical Complete
- Journals @ OVID (OVID technologies)
- Medical Library and Health Module
- Micromedex (Thomson Healthcare Series)
- Natural Medicines Comprehensive Database (Therapeutic Research Facility): www.naturaldatabase.com
- ProQuest
- Science Direct (Elsevier Publishing): www.sciencedirect.com
APPENDIX 5

GUIDE TO THE SAFE USE OF COMPLEMENTARY MEDICINES DURING THE PREOPERATIVE PERIOD
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common name</th>
<th>Botanical name (where applicable)</th>
<th>Comments</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Andrographis</td>
<td>Andrographis paniculata</td>
<td>Andrographolide inhibits platelet-activating-factor-induced platelet aggregation in a dose-dependent manner (confirmed clinically) (Amroyan et al 1999, Zhang et al 1994)</td>
<td>Suspend use 1 week prior to surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilberry</td>
<td>Vaccinium myrtillus</td>
<td>Bilberry extract inhibits platelet aggregation according to ex vivo tests (Pulliero et al 1989). The anthocyanin content is responsible.</td>
<td>Suspend use of high dose supplements 1 week prior to surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chondroitin</td>
<td></td>
<td>There is a theoretical risk of anticoagulant activity, but it has not been investigated in clinical trials (Chavez 1997). There are no reports of excessive bleeding</td>
<td>Likely to be safe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devil's claw</td>
<td>Harpagophytum procumbens</td>
<td>Case reports suggest possible anticoagulant activity</td>
<td>Suspend use of concentrated extracts 1 week prior to surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evening primrose oil (EPO)</td>
<td>Omega-6 essential fatty acids or n-6 fatty acids</td>
<td>Gamma linolenic acid in EPO affects PG synthesis leading to inhibition of platelet aggregation – clinical significance unknown</td>
<td>Suspend use of high-dose concentrated products 1 week prior to surgery; however, safety is difficult to assess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feverfew</td>
<td>Tanacetum parthenium</td>
<td>Inhibition of platelet aggregation has been observed in several in vitro studies (Groenewegen &amp; Heptinstall 1990, Marles et al 1992, Voyno-Yasenetskaya et al 1988); however, a small human study found no effects on platelet aggregation (Biggs et al 1982)</td>
<td>Likely to be safe; however, safety is difficult to assess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish oils</td>
<td>Omega-3 essential fatty acids or n-3 fatty acids</td>
<td>High doses of dietary omega-3 essential fatty acids modestly reduce thrombotic responses in vivo (Harker et al 1993). Bleeding times increased at doses of 12 g/day of n-3 fatty acids (Harris et al 1990)</td>
<td>Usual dietary intakes likely to be safe. Suspend use of high-dose products 1 week prior to surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garlic</td>
<td>Allium sativum</td>
<td>Inhibition of platelet aggregation is clinically significant – two case reports of postoperative bleeding after excessive dietary intake have been reported (Burnham 1995, German et al 1995). One clinical study found reduced hematocrit values and plasma viscosity (Jung et al 1991)</td>
<td>Usual dietary intakes likely to be safe. Suspend use of concentrated extracts 1 week prior to surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common name</td>
<td>Botanical name (where applicable)</td>
<td>Comments</td>
<td>Recommendation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginger root</td>
<td><em>Zingiber officinale</em></td>
<td>Oral doses of 4 g/day did not alter platelet aggregation or fibrinogen levels in one clinical study, whereas a high dose of 10 g/day significantly reduced platelet aggregation in another clinical study (Bordia et al 1997)</td>
<td>Usual dietary intakes likely to be safe. Suspend use of high-dose (10 g/day) concentrated extracts 1 week prior to surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginkgo</td>
<td><em>Ginkgo biloba</em></td>
<td>Case reports of postoperative bleeding (Fessenden et al 2001, Hauser et al 2002). However, three placebo-controlled studies failed to detect a significant effect on platelet function or coagulation (Bal Dit et al 2003, Jiang et al 2003, Kohler 2004)</td>
<td>Suspend use 1 week prior to surgery; however, safety is difficult to assess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginseng Korean</td>
<td><em>Panax ginseng</em></td>
<td>Inhibition of platelet aggregation has been identified in both in vitro and in vivo tests (Kuo et al 1990) but not human studies</td>
<td>Suspend use 1 week prior to surgery; however, safety is difficult to assess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grapeseed extract</td>
<td><em>Vitis vinifera</em></td>
<td>Shown to inhibit platelet aggregation, and combining extracts of grape seed and grape skin produced a far greater antiplatelet effect in test tube and ex vivo tests (Shanmuganayagam et al 2002)</td>
<td>Suspend use of concentrated extracts 1 week prior to surgery; however, safety is difficult to assess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guarana</td>
<td><em>Paullinia cupana</em></td>
<td>In vitro and in vivo research has identified antiplatelet activity (Bydloswki et al 1991)</td>
<td>Suspend use of concentrated extracts 1 week prior to surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Licorice root</td>
<td><em>Glycyrrhiza radix</em></td>
<td>Isoliquiritigenin inhibits platelet aggregation (Tawata et al 1992) and glycyrrhizin inhibits prothrombin (Francischetti et al 1997) according to in vitro tests – clinical significance unknown</td>
<td>Usual dietary intakes likely to be safe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meadowsweet</td>
<td><em>Filipendula ulmaria</em></td>
<td>In vitro and in vivo tests have identified anticoagulant activity (Liapina and Koval’chuk 1993) – clinical significance of these findings is unknown</td>
<td>Suspend use of concentrated extracts 1 week prior to surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myrrh</td>
<td><em>Commiphora molmol</em></td>
<td>Guggul inhibited platelet aggregation in vitro and in a clinical study (Bordia &amp; Chuttani 1979)</td>
<td>Suspend use of guggul preparations 1 week prior to surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Policosanol</td>
<td></td>
<td>Doses of 10 mg/day and greater reduce platelet aggregation according to clinical studies (Arruzazabala et al 2002, Castano et al 1999). Effect of 20 mg/day is similar to aspirin 100 mg stat.</td>
<td>Suspend use of doses 10 mg/day or greater 1 week prior to surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common name</td>
<td>Botanical name (where applicable)</td>
<td>Comments</td>
<td>Recommendation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turmeric root</td>
<td><em>Curcuma longa</em></td>
<td>Curcumin, a major component of turmeric, inhibits platelet aggregation in vitro (Shah et al 1999, Srivastava et al 1995) – clinical significance unknown</td>
<td>Usual dietary intakes likely to be safe. Suspend use of concentrated extracts 1 week prior to surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin E</td>
<td>Alpha-tocopherol</td>
<td>Clinical studies in recent years have produced conflicting results – 200 IU daily (800 mg of α-alpha-tocopherol) taken for 28 days had no effects on platelet aggregation or coagulation according to one clinical study (Morinobu et al 2002). A lower dose of 600 mg (900 IU) of RRR-alpha-tocopherol daily taken for 12 weeks did not alter coagulation activity in a second clinical study (Kitagawa &amp; Mino 1989). However, increased risk of gingival bleeding at doses of 50 mg/day was found by a further clinical study (Liede et al 1998)</td>
<td>Suspend use of high-dose supplements (&gt;1000 IU/day) 1 week prior to surgery; however, safety is difficult to assess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Willowbark</td>
<td><em>Salix</em> spp.</td>
<td>Although it has been assumed that willowbark affects platelet aggregation due to its salicylate content, one clinical study found that consumption of <em>Salis cortex</em> (240 mg salicin daily) produced minimal effects on platelet aggregation (Krivoy et al 2001)</td>
<td>Likely to be safe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 — Guide to the Safe Use of Complementary Medicines During the Preoperative Period  1495
See Chapter 9 for references.
APPENDIX 6

CLINICAL USE AND SAFETY OF VITAMINS AND MINERALS
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vitamin/mineral</th>
<th>Australian and New Zealand RDI for adults (&gt;18 yo)</th>
<th>Dose range used in practice</th>
<th>Major uses (oral or topical forms)</th>
<th>Cautions</th>
<th>Side-effects</th>
<th>Toxicity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>VITAMINS</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
<td>Women: 700 µg</td>
<td>10,000–50,000 IU/day orally in divided doses</td>
<td>Treating deficiency Prevention of secondary deficiency (e.g. coeliac disease, cystic fibrosis, pancreatic disease) Reducing severity of infectious diseases in children Dermatology — many uses Slowing progression of retinitis pigmentosa</td>
<td>Hypersensitivity Pregnancy Hypervitaminosis A Retinoid analogue use Lactation Chronic renal failure or liver disease</td>
<td><strong>Early signs</strong> Dry rough skin and mucous membranes, desquamation Coarse sparse hair, alopecia of eyebrows Diplopia Bone and joint pain <strong>Later signs</strong> Irritability Increased intracranial pressure and headache Dizziness Hepatotoxicity</td>
<td>Cumulative toxicity if &gt;100,000 IU long term Acute toxicity possible if &gt;2,000,000 IU taken If taken long term in pregnancy, &gt;1500 IU may be teratogenic, causing craniofacial abnormalities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B1 (thiamin)</td>
<td>Women: 1.1 mg, Men: 1.2 mg</td>
<td>5–3000 mg</td>
<td>Treating deficiency Prevention of secondary deficiency (e.g. hyperemesis and malabsorption states) Acute alcohol withdrawal Alzheimer’s dementia Dysmenorrhoea</td>
<td>Hypersensitivity None</td>
<td>Well tolerated</td>
<td>Non-toxic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin/ mineral</td>
<td>Australian and New Zealand RDI for adults (&gt;18 yo)</td>
<td>Dose range used in practice</td>
<td>Major uses (oral or topical forms)</td>
<td>Cautions</td>
<td>Side-effects</td>
<td>Toxicity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Vitamin B2 (riboflavin) | Women: 1.1 mg  
<70 yo: 1.3 mg  
Men: 1.3 mg  
>70 yo: 1.6 mg | 10–400 mg/day | Treating deficiency  
Prevention of secondary deficiency (e.g. chronic diarrhoea, liver disease, chronic alcoholism)  
Prevention of migraine headaches  
Reducing incidence of both nuclear and cortical cataract | Hypersensitivity  
None | Well tolerated | Non-toxic |
| Vitamin B3 (niacin) | Women: 14 mg  
Men: 16 mg | 1500–2000 mg crystalline niacin or sustained-release forms daily | Treating deficiency  
Prevent secondary deficiency (e.g. anorexia nervosa)  
Hypercholesterolaemia and hypertriglyceridaemia  
Syndrome X | Hypersensitivity  
Diabetes  
Pepic ulcer disease  
Gout  
Hepatitis  
Liver function should be monitored and patients observed for symptoms of myopathy | Flushing is a common side-effect (not with nicotinamide). Night-time administration, ER niacin or concurrent administration of aspirin can reduce these effects  
Palpitations | Tachycardia, chills, sweating, shortness of breath, nausea, vomiting, myalgias, hepatotoxicity  
ER niacin is considered the safest form |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vitamin/mineral</th>
<th>Australian and New Zealand RDI for adults (&gt;18 yo)</th>
<th>Dose range used in practice</th>
<th>Major uses (oral or topical forms)</th>
<th>Cautions</th>
<th>Side-effects</th>
<th>Toxicity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B6 (pyridoxine)</td>
<td>Women: 1.3 mg &gt;50 yo: 1.5 mg Men: 1.3 mg &gt;50 yo: 1.7 mg</td>
<td>5–500 mg/day</td>
<td>Treating deficiency Prevention of secondary deficiency (e.g. malabsorption syndromes, cancer, liver cirrhosis and alcoholism, hyperthyroidism) Relieving symptoms of PMS and morning sickness Hyperhomocysteinaemia (often with folic acid and B12) Reducing repeated febrile convulsions in children Autism (with magnesium)</td>
<td>Hypersensitivity Long-term use of high-dose pyridoxine supplements (&gt;100 mg, although this level varies between individuals) should be used with caution</td>
<td>Nausea, vomiting, headache, paraesthesias, sleepiness and low serum folic acid levels have been reported If taken at night, may induce vivid dreams</td>
<td>Paraesthesia, hyperaesthesia, bone pain, muscle weakness, numbness and fasciculation most marked at the extremities Dose and time frame at which toxicity occurs varies significantly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B6 (pyridoxine)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Studies involving large populations found minimal or no toxicity with 100–150 mg/day over 5–10 years, whereas women self-medicating for PMS taking 117 ± 92 mg for 2.9 ± 1.9 years have reported increased incidence of peripheral neuropathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin/ mineral</td>
<td>Australian and New Zealand RDI for adults (&gt;18 yo)</td>
<td>Dose range used in practice</td>
<td>Major uses (oral or topical forms)</td>
<td>Cautions</td>
<td>Side-effects</td>
<td>Toxicity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B12 (cobalamin)</td>
<td>2.4 µg</td>
<td>2–2000 mg/day</td>
<td>Treating deficiency Prevention of secondary deficiency (e.g. atrophic gastritis, achlorhydria) Pernicious anaemia Hyperhomocysteinaemia (with B6 and folate) Depression HIV infection Cognitive impairment Diabetic retinopathy Sleep disorders Tinnitus</td>
<td>Hypersensitivity Avoid in cases of altered cobalamin metabolism or deficiency associated with chronic cyanide intoxication</td>
<td>None known</td>
<td>Well tolerated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folate</td>
<td>400 µg</td>
<td>1–15 mg/day</td>
<td>Treating deficiency Prevention of secondary deficiency (e.g. malabsorption syndromes such as coeliac and Crohn’s disease, HIV infection) Preconception care and pregnancy (prevention of neural tube defects) Hyperhomocysteinaemia Cognitive impairment Reducing incidence of cancer Vitiligo Topical: periodontal disease</td>
<td>Hypersensitivity Use may mask B12 deficiency by correcting the apparent microcytic anaemia without altering the potential for or progression of neurological damage</td>
<td>Doses &gt;5 mg/day: generalised urticaria, nausea, flatulence and bitter taste in the mouth and some CNS activation in the form of irritability and excitability, altered sleep pattern</td>
<td>Non-toxic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin/mineral</td>
<td>Australian and New Zealand RDI for adults (&gt;18 yo)</td>
<td>Dose range used in practice</td>
<td>Major uses (oral or topical forms)</td>
<td>Cautions</td>
<td>Side-effects</td>
<td>Toxicity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin C</td>
<td>45 mg</td>
<td>250–12,000 mg/day orally in divided doses More is used when administered IV</td>
<td>Treating deficiency Prevention of secondary deficiency (e.g. heavy smokers, achlorhydria, chronic diarrhoea, major surgery) Treat iron deficiency anaemia (with iron) Preventing and treating common URTI such as colds and influenza and mild allergic responses Prevention and adjunctive treatment of cardiovascular disease and cancer</td>
<td>Hypersensitivity Increases iron, and decreases copper, absorption Renal impairment Interacts with numerous laboratory tests (e.g. serum cholesterol and triglycerides and urinary oxalate)</td>
<td>None expected if &lt;3000–4000 mg/day but this varies between individuals Gastrointestinal upset: nausea, diarrhoea, flatulence, distension Hyperoxaluria and renal stones now considered doubtful</td>
<td>Considered non-toxic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin C</td>
<td>Management of diabetes and asthma Oral and topical forms used for various dermatological conditions (e.g. wound healing, photo-aged skin, prevention of sunburn (with vitamin E))</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vitamin/mineral</th>
<th>Australian and New Zealand RDI for adults (&gt;18 yo)</th>
<th>Dose range used in practice</th>
<th>Major uses (oral or topical forms)</th>
<th>Cautions</th>
<th>Side-effects</th>
<th>Toxicity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin D</td>
<td>5 µg&lt;br/&gt;&gt;50 yo: 10 µg&lt;br/&gt;&gt;70 yo: 15 µg</td>
<td>2000–300,000 IU/day</td>
<td>Treating deficiency&lt;br/&gt;Prevention of secondary deficiency (e.g. malabsorption states)&lt;br/&gt;Sarcoidosis&lt;br/&gt;Hypoparathyroidism (with calcium)&lt;br/&gt;Hypophosphataemia (with phosphorus)&lt;br/&gt;Prevention of bone fracture and osteoporosis (with calcium)&lt;br/&gt;Hepatic and renal osteodystrophy&lt;br/&gt;Scleroderma</td>
<td>Hypersensitivity&lt;br/&gt;Hypercalcaemia&lt;br/&gt;Sarcoidosis&lt;br/&gt;Hyperparathyroidism&lt;br/&gt;SLE&lt;br/&gt;Vitamin D toxicity&lt;br/&gt;Pregnancy&lt;br/&gt;Lactation&lt;br/&gt;Renal failure&lt;br/&gt;Use of cardiac glycosides, thiazide diuretics, calcium-channel blockers</td>
<td>Not seen with doses &lt;2400 IU/day&lt;br/&gt;Doses &gt;3800 IU: hypercalcaemia, soft tissue calcification&lt;br/&gt;Fatigue, headache, nausea, vomiting, metallic taste, abdominal cramps, myalgia, tinnitus, arthralgia, constipation, polyuria, polydipsia</td>
<td>Cumulative toxicity possible&lt;br/&gt;Between 50,000 and 200,000 IU/day: signs of hypercalcaemia&lt;br/&gt;50,000–200,000 IU daily: nausea, vomiting, anorexia, calcification of soft tissue and organs, cardiac arrhythmias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin/mineral</td>
<td>Australian and New Zealand RDI for adults (&gt;18 yo)</td>
<td>Dose range used in practice</td>
<td>Major uses (oral or topical forms)</td>
<td>Cautions</td>
<td>Side-effects</td>
<td>Toxicity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Vitamin E      | Women: 7 mg alpha-tocopherol  
Men: 10 mg alpha-tocopherol | 50–3200 IU/day | Treating deficiency  
Prevention of secondary deficiency (e.g. malabsorption syndromes, cystic fibrosis)  
Prevention of cardiovascular disease, certain cancers, ischaemic stroke in high-risk hypertensive patients, nitrate tolerance  
Enhancing immune function in the elderly  
Slowing progression of Alzheimer’s dementia  
Improving symptoms in PMS, menopause, intermittent claudication  
Reducing pain in OA and RA | Hypersensitivity  
People with impaired coagulation, inherited bleeding disorders, history of haemorrhagic stroke, vitamin K deficiency or at risk of pulmonary embolism or thrombophlebitis  
Suspension of use of supplements 1–2 weeks before major surgery | Adverse effects are dose-related and tend to occur only at very high doses (>1200 IU/day)  
Side-effects include diarrhoea, flatulence, nausea and heart palpitations  
Increased risk of bleeding if vitamin K deficiency present | Vitamin E is relatively non-toxic  
Doses as high as 3200 mg/day have been used for 12 years without signs of toxicity |
| Vitamin E      |                                    |                              | Treating some forms of male infertility  
Oral and topical use for many dermatological states  
Prevention or treatment of many other conditions such as exercise-induced tissue damage, some types of senile cataracts, epilepsy and fibromyalgia | | | |
### MINERALS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vitamin/mineral</th>
<th>Australian and New Zealand RDI for adults (&gt;18 yo)</th>
<th>Dose range used in practice</th>
<th>Major uses (oral or topical forms)</th>
<th>Cautions</th>
<th>Side-effects</th>
<th>Toxicity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Calcium**    | Women: 1000 mg<br>1300 mg<br>Men: 1000 mg<br>70 yo 1300 mg | 250–2000 mg/d (oral or topical forms) | Treating deficiency<br>Prevention of secondary deficiency (e.g. achlorhydria and malabsorption syndromes)<br>Prevention of osteoporosis, pre-eclampsia, maintenance of bone density, colorectal cancer<br>Symptoms of PMS<br>Hypertension and hyperlipidaemia<br>Dyspepsia | Hypersensitivity<br>Hyperparathyroidism<br>Chronic kidney disease<br>Hypercalcaemia | Gastrointestinal discomfort, nausea, loss of appetite, constipation, flatulence, metallic taste, muscle weakness | Increased serum calcium level may be associated with hypotonia, depression, constipation, hypoglycaemia, hyperlipidaemia, and coma<br>Prolonged hypercalcaemia syndrome, especially if normal or elevated serum phosphate; can precipitate ectopic calcification of blood vessels, joints, gastric mucosa, cornea and renal tissue |}
<p>| <strong>Chromium</strong>   | Women: 25 µg&lt;br&gt;Men: 35 µg | 50–1000 µg | Treating deficiency&lt;br&gt;Diabetes&lt;br&gt;Hypoglycaemia&lt;br&gt;Hyperlipidaemia&lt;br&gt;Obesity&lt;br&gt;Atypical depression&lt;br&gt;Polycystic ovary syndrome&lt;br&gt;Syndrome X | Hypersensitivity | Irritability and insomnia have been reported with chromium yeast supplementation&lt;br&gt;Chromium picolinate is well tolerated | Chromium IV is used in industry and is highly toxic, whereas Cr III, which is used in supplements, is well tolerated |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vitamin/mineral</th>
<th>Australian and New Zealand RDI for adults (&gt;18 yo)</th>
<th>Dose range used in practice</th>
<th>Major uses (oral or topical forms)</th>
<th>Cautions</th>
<th>Side-effects</th>
<th>Toxicity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Iodine</td>
<td>150 µg</td>
<td>0.5–6 mg</td>
<td>Treating deficiency</td>
<td>Hypersensitivity</td>
<td>Symptoms of iodine hypersensitivity are fever, painful joints, lymph node enlargement, eosinophilia, urticaria, angio-oedema, cutaneous and mucosal haemorrhage and fatal peri-arteritis</td>
<td>Chronic iodine toxicity when intake is &gt;2 mg/day. Symptoms: brassy taste in mouth, burning sensation in mouth and throat, increased salivation, gastric irritation, aceneform skin lesions, pulmonary oedema, depression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Preventing deficiency in high-risk groups</td>
<td>Hyperthyroidism</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Fibrocystic breast disease</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Mastalgia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron</td>
<td>Women: 18 mg &gt;50 yo: 8 mg Men: 8 mg</td>
<td>10–100 mg/day</td>
<td>Treating deficiency</td>
<td>Hypersensitivity</td>
<td>Gastrointestinal disturbances such as nausea, diarrhoea, constipation, heartburn, upper gastric discomfort</td>
<td>Haemochromatosis can develop from long-term excessive intake of iron. Iron toxicity causes severe organ damage and death. The most pronounced effects are haemorrhagic necrosis of the gastrointestinal tract and liver damage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Prevention of secondary deficiency (e.g. menorrhagia, cystic fibrosis)</td>
<td>Haemochromatosis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Unexplained fatigue</td>
<td>Haemosiderosis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>without anaemia</td>
<td>Iron-loading anaemias (thalassaemia, sideroblastic anaemia)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Improving athletic performance</td>
<td>Liquid iron preparations can discolour teeth (brush teeth after use)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin/mineral</td>
<td>Australian and New Zealand RDI for adults (&gt;18 yo)</td>
<td>Dose range used in practice</td>
<td>Major uses (oral or topical forms)</td>
<td>Cautions</td>
<td>Side-effects</td>
<td>Toxicity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium</td>
<td>Women: 310 mg &gt;30 yo: 32 mg Men: 400 mg &gt;30 yo 420 mg</td>
<td>200–750 mg/day</td>
<td>Treating deficiency Prevention of secondary deficiency (e.g. inflammatory bowel diseases, diabetes, hyperthyroidism) Alleviating symptoms of coronary heart disease, reducing hypertension, reducing plasma lipid levels, reducing incidence of arrhythmias in congestive heart failure Prevention of migraine headache, premenstrual headache, osteoporosis</td>
<td>Hypersensitivity Renal failure and heart block (unless pacemaker present)</td>
<td>Most common Diarrhoea and gastric irritation; usually not seen at doses &lt;350 mg/day (elemental) Overuse of magnesium hydroxide or magnesium sulfate may cause deficiencies of other minerals or lead to toxicity <strong>Other side-effects</strong> Decreased heart rate, hypotension, muscle weakness</td>
<td>Most commonly seen in patients with renal insufficiency Symptoms: muscle weakness, sedation, ECG changes, confusion, hypotension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium</td>
<td>Relieving symptoms of PMS, dyspepsia, constipation, asthma, dysmenorrhoea, leg cramps in pregnancy, muscular cramps in general Improving diabetic control</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vitamin/mineral</th>
<th>Australian and New Zealand RDI for adults (&gt;18 yo)</th>
<th>Dose range used in practice</th>
<th>Major uses (oral or topical forms)</th>
<th>Cautions</th>
<th>Side-effects</th>
<th>Toxicity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Selenium</td>
<td>Women: 60 µg Men: 70 µg</td>
<td>80–200 µg/day</td>
<td>Treating deficiency Prevention of secondary deficiency (e.g. cirrhosis, malabsorption syndromes, cystic fibrosis, coeliac disease, HIV infection) Reducing total cancer incidence and mortality (especially lung, colorectal and prostate cancers), adjunctive treatment HIV infection Cardiovascular disease Autoimmune thyroiditis Symptoms of RA, asthma Male infertility Anxiety and depression</td>
<td>Hypersensitivity NHMRC upper level of intake is 400 µg/day</td>
<td>Nausea, vomiting, nail changes, irritability, fatigue Organic form of selenium found in high-selenium yeast is less toxic and safer than other forms</td>
<td>Long-term use of excessive doses (&gt;1000 µg/day) can produce fatigue, depression, arthritis, hair or fingernail loss, garlicky breath or body odour, gastrointestinal disorders and irritability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin/mineral</td>
<td>Australian and New Zealand RDI for adults (&gt;18 yo)</td>
<td>Dose range used in practice</td>
<td>Major uses (oral or topical forms)</td>
<td>Cautions</td>
<td>Side-effects</td>
<td>Toxicity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Zinc           | Women: 8 mg  
Men: 14 mg | 25–200 mg/day | Treating deficiency  
Prevention of secondary deficiency (e.g. cirrhosis, malabsorption syndromes, severe burns, major surgery)  
Treating the common cold and reducing symptoms (lozenges)  
Diabetes  
Enhancing wound healing (e.g. leg ulcers)  
Decreasing relapse rates in Crohn’s disease  
Acne vulgaris  
Topical: herpes simplex infection | Hypersensitivity | Mild gastrointestinal upset at doses of 50–150 mg/day | Single doses of 225–450 mg usually induce vomiting  
Nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, fever and lethargy, which have been observed after ingestion of 4–8 g  
Doses ranging from 100 to 150 mg/day interfere with copper metabolism and cause hypocupraemia, red blood cell microcytosis, and neutropenia if used long-term |

ER, extended release; yo, years old.

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
MULTIVITAMINS
Overall, acute toxicity is unlikely with combination vitamin supplements unless huge amounts have been ingested. In the case of toxicity or side-effects, signs and symptoms will relate to the individual nutrient ingested. In general, gastrointestinal symptoms such as discomfort, nausea and diarrhoea are the most frequent adverse effects.

Of all the nutrients listed, extra special care must be taken when supplementing with vitamins A and D and the mineral iron. The forms of selenium and niacin used in practice also have a major influence on their safety profile and should be taken into consideration.

For more details regarding RDI for specific age groups: www.nhmrc.gov.au/publications/synopses/n35syn.htm
APPENDIX 7

EVIDENCE BASE FOR PHYSIOLOGICAL ACTIVITIES OF HERBS AND SUPPLEMENTS

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
Evidence codes

AS  Animal studies
CT  Clinical trial
EP  Based on epidemiological studies
IV  In vitro studies
PH  Based on known pharmacological activity of constituents
TH  Theoretical
TU  Traditional use
Assumptions made when collating the information for this table
- Information is compiled from the 120 monographs included in this book
- All information refers to oral dose forms unless otherwise specified
- Information listed here is correct at time of writing; however, because of the ever-expanding knowledge base developing in this area, new research is constantly being published
- Not all actions referred to in the text are covered; see monographs for more detail
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Major actions (known or suspected)</th>
<th>Herb/Nutrient</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Adaptogenic</strong></td>
<td>Ginseng — Korean</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ginseng — Siberian</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tyrosine</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Withania</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Analgesic</strong></td>
<td>Brahmi</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Antinociceptive activity identified when used in combination with other herbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chondroitin</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Musculoskeletal pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Clove oil</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
<td>Effects due to the eugenol, beta-caryophyllene component. Clinical trials used tiger balm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dandelion (root)</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Mild effects reported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Devil's claw</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Musculoskeletal pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fenugreek</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Antinociceptive activity identified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Feverfew</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
<td>Inhibits prostaglandin production and acts at nociceptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ginger</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Inhibits prostaglandin and thromboxane production and topically depletes substance P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Glucosamine</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Musculoskeletal pain — effects seen in osteoarthritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kava kava</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td>Local anaesthetic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lemon balm</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>High doses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Meadowsweet</td>
<td>TH</td>
<td>Based on its high salicylate content</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Peppermint</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Observed for oil applied topically</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>St John’s wort</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td>Binds opioid receptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SAMe</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Musculoskeletal pain — effects seen in osteoarthritis (not prostaglandin mediated)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Shark cartilage</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Mechanism does not appear to involve the opioid system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major actions (known or suspected)</td>
<td>Herb/Nutrient</td>
<td>Evidence</td>
<td>Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stinging nettle</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Probably due to counter-irritant effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin E</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Established in clinical trials using high doses of 1200 mg daily in rheumatoid arthritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Willowbark</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Musculoskeletal pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Antacid</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium</td>
<td>TU</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meadowsweet</td>
<td>TU</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Anti-allergic</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adhatoda</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>Asicine and vasicinone possess bronchodilatory activity and inhibit allergen-induced bronchial obstruction, with effects comparable to those of sodium cromoglycate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Albizia</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>Significant mast-cell-stabilisation effects, similar to those of sodium cromoglycate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baical skullcap</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>Inhibits histamine release</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brahmi</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
<td>Potent mast-cell-stabilising activity (methanolic fraction) comparable to that of disodium cromoglycate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clove oil</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>Inhibits histamine release</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feverfew</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>Inhibits histamine release (different mechanism to cromoglycate)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginger</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
<td>Inhibits histamine release</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginseng --- Korean</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
<td>Stabilises cell membrane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginseng --- Siberian</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
<td>Inhibits histamine release</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peppermint</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>Inhibits histamine release</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perilla</td>
<td>IV, AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Various mechanisms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Probiotics</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduces antigen transport through the intestinal mucosa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quercetin</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St Mary's thistle</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>Mast-cell stabilisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major actions (known or suspected)</td>
<td>Herb/Nutrient</td>
<td>Evidence</td>
<td>Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stinging nettle</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Freeze-dried preparation showed activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin C</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduces histamine levels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anti-anxiety/anxiolytic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baical skullcap</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>Certain constituents bind with the benzodiazepine-binding site of the GABA-A receptor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brahmi</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chamomile</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>Binds benzodiazepine receptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginger</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>In combination with ginkgo biloba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginseng — Korean</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
<td>Regulates GABA-A receptors in vitro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kava kava</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Various mechanisms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lavender</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lemon balm</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Eugenol and citronellol bind to GABA-A receptors and increase the affinity of GABA to receptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passionflower</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Unknown mechanism — possibly acts via GABA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St John’s wort</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>Various mechanisms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valerian</td>
<td>IV, CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Stimulates the release of GABA, inhibits GABA reuptake and may have an effect at GABA receptors; low-dose valerian (100 mg) reduces situational anxiety without causing sedation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Withania</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Unknown mechanism — possibly acts via GABA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anti-atherogenic</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
<td>— See listing under Lipid-lowering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antibacterial</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
<td>— See listing under Antimicrobial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anticancer (e.g. antimitogenic, antineoplastic and/or anti-angiogenic activity has been identified)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Astragalus</td>
<td>IV, AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tested in combination with other herbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baical skullcap</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>May induce apoptosis, inhibit proliferation, prevent metastases and inhibit angiogenesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilberry</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Major actions (known or suspected)</th>
<th>Herb/Nutrient</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chamomile IV, AS</td>
<td>Antitumour</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cranberry IV</td>
<td>Antitumour</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creatine AS</td>
<td>Antitumour</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fenugreek IV, AS</td>
<td>Antineoplastic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garlic IV</td>
<td>Antineoplastic in breast, prostate, endometrial, stomach and colon cancer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginseng — Korean IV, AS</td>
<td>Antitumour, antimetastatic and apoptosis-inducing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goldenseal IV, AS</td>
<td>Demonstrated for the berberine constituent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grapeseed extract IV</td>
<td>Suppresses tumour growth and has cytotoxic activity against a range of cancer cells, including breast, lung, prostate, and gastric adenoma cells</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green tea IV, EP</td>
<td>Reduction in proliferation, increase in apoptosis and possible anti-angiogenic properties identified; supported by epidemiological studies</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lavender IV, AS, PH</td>
<td>Preliminary evidence of activity for several constituents</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lavender oil IV, AS</td>
<td>Antineoplastic in cancer of the colon, liver, lung, breast, pancreas, prostate, as well as melanoma</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Licorice IV, AS</td>
<td>Antitumour</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lutein CT</td>
<td>Possibly endometrial, lung, breast, bowel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mullein IV</td>
<td>Antitumour</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perilla IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quercetin IV, AS</td>
<td>Multiple mechanisms involved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red clover IV, AS, CT</td>
<td>Antimutagenic as well as protecting against chemical-induced DNA damage</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St John’s wort IV, AS</td>
<td>Selective photosensitisation of tumour cells</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St Mary’s thistle IV</td>
<td>Anti-angiogenic and antitumour</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shark cartilage IV, AS</td>
<td>Anti-angiogenic and antitumour</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major actions (known or suspected)</td>
<td>Herb/Nutrient</td>
<td>Evidence</td>
<td>Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turmeric</td>
<td>IV, AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Promotes apoptosis, reduces proliferation, reduces angiogenesis and metastases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Stimulates epithelial cell differentiation, preventing the proliferation of dedifferentiated or undifferentiated carcinoma cells in skin, breast, liver, colon, cervical, prostate, oral, pharyngeal, oesophageal and lung carcinomas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Withania</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>Antineoplastic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chemoprotection</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beta-carotene</td>
<td>EP</td>
<td></td>
<td>Effect associated with ‘natural’ beta-carotene and natural sources</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Celery</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>May reduce incidence of stomach and colon cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish oils</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>Especially breast, prostate and colorectal cancers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flaxseed oil</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Increased levels of ALA associated with reduced risk of breast cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folate</td>
<td>EP, AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Especially cervix, colorectal, lung, oesophagus, brain, pancreas and breast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garlic</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
<td>Including breast, prostate, endometrial, stomach and colon cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginseng — Korean</td>
<td>IV, AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guarana</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hops</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lutein and Zeaxanthin</td>
<td>EP</td>
<td></td>
<td>various cancers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lycopene</td>
<td>IV, AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Especially prostate, stomach and cervical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Probiotics</td>
<td>IV, AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Antimutagenic, anticarcinogenic (e.g. nitrosamines), immune enhancing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rosemary</td>
<td>IV, AS, TU</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St Mary’s thistle</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selenium</td>
<td>CT, EP</td>
<td></td>
<td>Significantly reduces total cancer mortality, total cancer incidence and incidences of lung, colorectal, and prostate cancers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stinging nettle</td>
<td>IV, CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Antiproliferative in prostate cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major actions (known or suspected)</td>
<td>Herb/Nutrient</td>
<td>Evidence</td>
<td>Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turmeric</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Against skin cancer, stomach cancer, colon cancer and oral cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B3</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin C</td>
<td>EP</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin D</td>
<td>EP</td>
<td></td>
<td>Inverse association with colorectal cancer and breast cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin E</td>
<td>EP</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Withania</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>Multiple mechanisms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinc</td>
<td>EP</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Antifibrotic**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb/Nutrient</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Baical skullcap</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td>In combination; chemopreventive role in the development of hepatocellular carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginger</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Anticoagulant** — See listing under Blood thinning

**Anticonvulsant**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb/Nutrient</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Albizia</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lavender oil</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Antidepressant/neurotransmitter effects**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb/Nutrient</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Albizia</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Influences GABA, serotonin and dopamine levels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brahmi</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Mechanism unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folate</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Effectiveness may be restricted to only those patients with an existing deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginkgo biloba</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td>Greater inhibition of MAO-A than MAO-B, increases uptake of serotonin, direct and indirect cholinergic activity, competitive antagonist for GABA-A receptors; moderation of corticosterone levels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Licorice</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Inhibits serotonin reuptake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major actions (known or suspected)</td>
<td>Herb/Nutrient</td>
<td>Evidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perilla</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Mechanism unknown — does not appear to involve monoamines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St John’s wort</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Various mechanisms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAMe</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Various mechanisms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selenium</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Low dietary intakes of selenium have been linked with greater incidence of anxiety, depression and tiredness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyrosine</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Precursor to neurotransmitters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B6 (pyridoxine)</td>
<td>TH</td>
<td>Supplementation can elevate GABA and serotonin levels by increasing production</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Withania</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Effects comparable to those of imipramine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Antidiarrhoeal

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb/Nutrient</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bilberry</td>
<td>TH, PH</td>
<td>Due to tannins and astringent activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colostrum</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Effective against some forms of infectious diarrhoea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goldenseal</td>
<td>IV, AS, CT</td>
<td>Due to berberine constituent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Probiotics</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Includes infant, travellers’, infectious, acute and antibiotic-induced diarrhoea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raspberry</td>
<td>TU, PH</td>
<td>Due to tannins and astringent activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sage</td>
<td>TU, PH</td>
<td>Due to tannins and astringent activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thyme</td>
<td>TU, PH</td>
<td>Due to tannins and astringent activity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Anti-emetic

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb/Nutrient</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ginger</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
<td>Multiple mechanisms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peppermint</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Peppermint oil inhalation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Antifibrotic** — See listing under Anticancer

**Antifungal** — See listing under Antimicrobial
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Major actions (known or suspected)</th>
<th>Herb/Nutrient</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Antihypertensive/hypotensive</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andrographis</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>Involves adrenoceptors, autonomic ganglia receptors and a reduction in circulating angiotensin-converting enzyme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Astragalus</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>Intravenous administration in rats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baical skullcap</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>Mechanism unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Results variable, possibly in ‘salt sensitive’ hypertension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coenzyme Q10</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Mechanism unknown but may reduce total peripheral resistance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evening primrose oil</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Mechanism unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish oils</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Mechanism unknown but may reduce total peripheral resistance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garlic</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>Renin–angiotensin and NO may be involved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginseng — Korean</td>
<td>IV, AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>May not be clinically significant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hawthorn</td>
<td>TU, IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>Mechanism unknown but may reduce total peripheral resistance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Affects NO release and vascular tone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oats</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Mechanism unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Olive oil and Olive leaf</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quercetin</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stinging nettle</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>Administered IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin C</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Results overall positive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin E</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Modulates vascular function possibly via NO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Anti-inflammatory</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adhatoda</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Alkaloid fraction shown to be equivalent to hydrocortisone in one study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major actions (known or suspected)</td>
<td>Herb/Nutrient</td>
<td>Evidence</td>
<td>Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aloe</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Aloe vera gel reduces oxidation of arachidonic acid, thereby reducing prostaglandin synthesis and inflammation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andrographis</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>May involve promotion of ACTH and enhancement of adrenocortical function</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baical skullcap</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td>May bind a variety of chemokines and limit their biological function; inhibits COX-2, PGE$_2$, 5-lipoxygenase and NO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilberry</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Reduces oedema</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brahmi</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Effect is mediated via inhibition of PGE$_2$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calendula</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td>Reduces oedema</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Celery</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Mechanism unknown</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chamomile</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Most research uses topical application</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cinnamon</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clove oil</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Due to the eugenol, beta-caryophyllene component</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Damiana</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Mechanism unknown</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dandelion (root)</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Mild activity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devil’s claw</td>
<td>IV, AS, CT</td>
<td>Various mechanisms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Echinacea</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td>Inhibits COX-1 and COX-2 and possibly other mechanisms (topical)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evening primrose oil</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
<td>Precursor to PGE$_1$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fenugreek</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Mechanism unknown</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feverfew</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Inhibits prostaglandin production</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish oils</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
<td>Chiefly prostaglandin mediated</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flaxseed oil</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garlic</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td>Fresh extract and oil — inhibits COX activity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginger</td>
<td>IV, AS, CT</td>
<td>Inhibits prostaglandin and thromboxane production and topically depletes substance P</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major actions (known or suspected)</td>
<td>Herb/Nutrient</td>
<td>Evidence</td>
<td>Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginkgo biloba</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduces oedema</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginseng — Korean</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>Inhibition of NF-kappa-B and COX-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goldenrod</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>Mechanism unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goldenseal</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>Due to the berberine content</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grapeseed extract</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
<td>Non-specific inhibitory activity against COX-1 and -2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hawthorn</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>Chiefly due to the flavonoid constituents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Honey</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Topical use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hops</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lavender</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Licorice</td>
<td>PH, IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>Largely mediated by cortisol, although other mechanisms likely to exist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meadowsweet</td>
<td>TH</td>
<td></td>
<td>High salicylate content</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myrrh</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>Mechanism unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Zealand green-lipped mussel</td>
<td>IV, AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Possibly via effects on prostaglandins and leukotrienes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noni</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Olive oil and Olive leaf</td>
<td>PH</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perilla</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
<td>Refined oil and seed extract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pygeum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Effect due to multiple constituents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quercetin</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raspberry</td>
<td>TU, PH</td>
<td></td>
<td>Topically, due to tannins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rosemary</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
<td>Possibly via effects on prostaglandins and leukotrienes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St John’s wort</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>Various mechanisms</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7 — Evidence base for physiological activities of herbs and supplements 1523
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Major actions (known or suspected)</th>
<th>Herb/Nutrient</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>St Mary’s thistle</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td>Various mechanisms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAMe</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Not prostaglandin mediated</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saw palmetto</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Dual inhibitor of the cyclo-oxygenase and 5-lipoxygenase pathways and decreases COX expression</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schisandra</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Leukotriene inhibitor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selenium</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td>Possibly via effects on prostaglandins and leukotrienes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shark cartilage</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Mechanism unknown — does not affect opioid system</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slippery elm</td>
<td>TU, TH</td>
<td>High mucilage content; soothes irritated and inflamed tissues</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stinging nettle</td>
<td>IV, EP, CT</td>
<td>Various mechanisms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turmeric</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Various mechanisms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Willowbark</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Chiefly due to salicylate content</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Withania</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>May reduce ESR, mechanism unknown</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Antimicrobial

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb/Nutrient</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Albizia</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td>Antifungal and antibacterial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aloe vera</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Activity against <em>Pseudomonas aeruginosa</em>, <em>Klebsiella pneumoniae</em>, <em>Streptococcus pyogenes</em>, <em>Staphylococcus aureus</em> and <em>Escherichia coli</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baical skullcap</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Dose dependent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bitter melon</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Antibacterial and antiviral — activity against <em>E. coli</em>, <em>Salmonella paratyphi</em>, <em>Shigella dysenteriae</em> and <em>Streptomyces griseus</em>, <em>Helicobacter pylori</em>, <em>Mycobacterium tuberculosis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brahmi</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Significantly inhibited <em>H. pylori</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calendula</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Antibacterial, antiviral and antifungal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chamomile</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Bactericidal and fungicidal activities against Gram-positive bacteria (<em>Bacillus subtilis</em>, <em>Staphylococcus aureus</em>) and <em>Candida albicans</em>, <em>Escherichia coli</em>, <em>Streptococcus mutans</em>; inhibitory activity against HIV activation; inhibits herpes virus in vitro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major actions (known or suspected)</td>
<td>Herb/Nutrient</td>
<td>Evidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chitosan</td>
<td>AS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cinnamon</td>
<td>IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Citrus aurantium</td>
<td>IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Clove oil</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cloves</td>
<td>IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Colostrum</td>
<td>IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cranberry</td>
<td>IV, AS, CT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Echinacea</td>
<td>IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Garlic</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ginger</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Goldenrod</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Goldenseal</td>
<td>IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Green tea</td>
<td>IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Guarana</td>
<td>IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gymnema sylvestre</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major actions (known or suspected)</td>
<td>Herb/Nutrient</td>
<td>Evidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Honey</td>
<td>IV, CT</td>
<td>Leptospermum (manuka) honey can inhibit the growth of several important bacterial pathogens, including <em>Escherichia coli</em>, <em>Salmonella typhimurium</em>, <em>Shigella sonnei</em>, <em>Listeria monocytogenes</em>, <em>Staphylococcus aureus</em>, <em>Bacillus cereus</em> and <em>Streptococcus mutans</em>. Also useful against certain strains of methicillin-resistant <em>Staphylococcus aureus</em> and vancomycin-sensitive and resistant enterococci. Topical use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hops</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Activity against the Gram-positive bacteria <em>Bacillus subtilis</em> and <em>Staphylococcus aureus</em> A, but almost no activity against the Gram-negative bacterium <em>Escherichia coli</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horseradish</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Gram-negative and Gram-positive bacteria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lavender oil</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Antibacterial, antifungal and mitocidal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lemon balm</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Eugenol has antibacterial activity against <em>Escherichia coli</em> and <em>Staphylococcus aureus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Licorice</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meadowsweet</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Bacteriostatic activity has been reported against <em>Staphylococcus aureus</em>, <em>S. epidermidis</em>, <em>Escherichia coli</em>, <em>Proteus vulgaris</em> and <em>Pseudomonas aeruginosa</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mullein</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Antiviral and antibacterial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myrrh</td>
<td>IV, CT</td>
<td>Activity against <em>Escherichia coli</em>, <em>Staphylococcus aureus</em>, <em>Pseudomonas aeruginosa</em> Successful trials in acne Topical use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noni</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peppermint</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Peppermint oil is active against <em>Helicobacter pylori</em>, <em>Staphylococcus aureus</em>, <em>Escherichia coli</em>, <em>Salmonella enteritidis</em>, <em>Listeria monocytogenes</em>, <em>Shigella sonnei</em> and <em>Micrococcus flavus</em>, and a variety of fungi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perilla</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rosemary</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Activity against a variety of bacteria and fungi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sage</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Active against <em>Staphylococcus aureus</em>, <em>Escherichia coli</em>, <em>Salmonella spp.</em>, <em>Shigella sonnei</em>, <em>Klebsiella ozanae</em>, <em>Bacillus subtilis</em> and various fungi, including <em>Candida albicans</em> Antimicrobial activity also reported for sage oil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St John’s wort</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Active against MRSA and other Gram-positive bacteria</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Major actions (known or suspected)</th>
<th>Herb/Nutrient</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shark cartilage</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
<td>Activity against protozoa, fungi, and both Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thyme</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
<td>Activity against Escherichia coli, Listeria monocytogenes, Salmonella enterica, Helicobacter pylori</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turmeric</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Withania</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
<td>Activity against Staphylococcus aureus, Listeria monocytogenes, Bacillus anthracis, Bacillus subtilis, Salmonella enteridis and Salmonella typhimurium</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Antifungal**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb/Nutrient</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Baical skullcap</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Including Candida albicans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calendula</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Activity against Aspergillus niger, Rhizopus japonicum, Candida albicans, Candida tropicalis and Rhodotorula glutinis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cinnamon</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Activity observed against Saccharomyces cerevisiae, Candida shehata, C. kefyr, C. albicans, C. steatolytica and C. tropicalis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citrus aurantium</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Activity observed against Saccharomyces cerevisiae, Candida shehata, C. kefyr, C. albicans, C. steatolytica and C. tropicalis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clove oil</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Activity against the fungus Trichophyton mentagrophytes var. interdigitale but almost no activity against the yeast Candida albicans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Echinacea</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Inhibitory effects on Candida and Cryptococcus spp. have been demonstrated for triterpenoid glycosides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goldenrod</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Berberine constituent inhibits Candida spp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goldenseal</td>
<td>PH</td>
<td>Berberine constituent inhibits Candida spp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hops</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Activity against the fungus Trichophyton mentagrophytes var. interdigitale but almost no activity against the yeast Candida albicans</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Major actions (known or suspected)</th>
<th>Herb/Nutrient</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Myrrh</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Activity against <em>Candida albicans</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rosemary</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sage</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tea tree oil</td>
<td>IV, CT</td>
<td><em>Candida</em>, toenail onychomycosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antiviral</td>
<td>Withania</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td><em>Withanolides coagulens</em>, <em>Allescheria boydii</em>, <em>Aspergillus niger</em>, <em>Curvularia lunata</em>, <em>Drechslera rostrata</em>, <em>Epidermophyton floccosum</em>, <em>Microsporum canis</em>, <em>Nigrospora oryzae</em>, <em>Pleurotus ostreatus</em> and <em>Stachybotrys atra</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Aloe vera</td>
<td>IV, CT</td>
<td>Virucidal against herpes simplex 1 and 2, vaccinia virus, parainfluenza virus and vesicular stomatitis virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Baical skullcap</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bitter melon</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Calendula</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Virucidal activity against influenza viruses and suppresses the growth of herpes simplex virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Echinacea</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Activity against herpes simplex virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ginseng — Siberian</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Inhibits the replication of RNA-type viruses such as human rhinovirus, respiratory syncytial virus and influenza A virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Green tea</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Interferes with virus absorption; antiviral activity has been identified against HIV, herpes simplex 1, influenza A and B, rotavirus and enterovirus, Epstein-Barr virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gymnema sylvestre</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hawthorn</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Herpes simplex 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lemon balm</td>
<td>IV, AS, CT</td>
<td>Herpes simplex 1, HIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Licorice</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td>Activity against SARS-CV, HIV, influenza, ebola virus, herpes simplex virus 1, Epstein-Barr virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>l-Lysine</td>
<td>IV, CT</td>
<td>Clinical trials show inconsistent results against herpes simplex virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rosemary</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major actions (known or suspected)</td>
<td>Herb/Nutrient</td>
<td>Evidence</td>
<td>Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St John’s wort</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>Antiretroviral activity appears to be photo-activated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stinging nettle</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
<td>Activity against HIV-1, HIV-2, human cytomegalovirus, respiratory syncytial virus and influenza A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tea tree oil</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
<td>Activity against herpes simplex 1 and 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Antimalarial</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andrographis</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Antiparasitic</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goldenseal</td>
<td>PH</td>
<td></td>
<td>Berberine inhibits <em>Entamoeba histolytica, Giardia lamblia, Trichomonas vaginalis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myrrh</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Effective against schistosomiasis, fascioliasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Antimigraine (i.e. reducing frequency and/or severity of attacks)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coenzyme Q10</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Mechanism unknown — possibly via mitochondrial stabilisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feverfew</td>
<td>CT, AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced frequency and severity of migraine headache</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduces serotonin release from platelets; possibly other mechanisms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Mechanism unknown — possibly via mitochondrial stabilisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAMe</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced pain reported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B2 (riboflavin)</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced frequency and duration of migraines with large doses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Antioxidant</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adhatoda</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
<td>Induces glutathione S-transferase and DT-diaphorase in lungs and forestomach, and superoxide dismutase and catalase in kidneys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andrographis</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>Increases liver superoxide dismutase, glutathione peroxidase, glutathione reductase and catalase concentrations, thereby increasing endogenous antioxidant production by the liver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Astragalus</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>Raises superoxide dismutase activity in the brain and liver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baical skullcap</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herb/Nutrient</td>
<td>Evidence</td>
<td>Comments</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beta-carotene</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilberry</td>
<td>PH</td>
<td>Contains anthocyanosides</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brahmi</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td>Direct free radical-scavenging activity and increases endogenous anti-oxidant systems</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calendula</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduces levels of superoxide and hydroxyl radicals, suggesting a free radical-scavenging effect; reduces lipid peroxidation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carnitine</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chamomile</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Inhibits lipid peroxidation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cinnamon</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clove oil</td>
<td>PH</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cocoa</td>
<td>IV, AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coenzyme Q10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cranberry</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Antioxidant activity of flavonol glycosides comparable or superior to that of vitamin E</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creatine</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dandelion</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Echinacea</td>
<td></td>
<td>Activity attributed to numerous antioxidant constituents found in echinacea, such as vitamin C, beta-carotene, flavonoids, selenium and zinc</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garlic</td>
<td></td>
<td>Capable of directly scavenging free radicals, and indirect activity by enhancing endogenous anti-oxidant systems such as glutathione, superoxide dismutase, catalase and glutathione peroxidase</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginger</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginkgo biloba</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>The extract and several of its individual constituents (quercetin, kaempferol) have demonstrated significant anti-oxidant properties; used topically, increases the activity of superoxide dismutase within skin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glutamine</td>
<td></td>
<td>Precursor to glutathione</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb/Nutrient</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Grapeseed extract</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td>Significantly greater effects than vitamins C and E and beta-carotene; procyanidins prevent vitamin E loss and regenerate alpha-tocopherol radicals back to their anti-oxidant form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green tea</td>
<td>IV, AS, CT</td>
<td>Inhibits lipid peroxidation, scavenges hydroxyl and superoxide radicals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hawthorn</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Direct and indirect activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Honey</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lavender</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lemon balm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Licorice</td>
<td>IV, CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lutein and Zeaxanthin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lycopene</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meadowsweet</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mullein</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noni</td>
<td>IV, CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Olive leaf and Olive oil</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perilla</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Policosanol</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Reduces oxidation of LDL-cholesterol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quercetin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raspberry</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rosemary</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td>Chiefly due to carnosol and carnosic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sage</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Chiefly due to labiatic acid and carnosic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St Mary’s thistle</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major actions (known or suspected)</td>
<td>Herb/Nutrient</td>
<td>Evidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAMe</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schisandra IV</td>
<td></td>
<td>Direct activity and increases glutathione levels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selenium</td>
<td></td>
<td>Essential component of glutathione peroxidase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shark cartilage IV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slippery elm IV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stinging nettle IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thyme</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turmeric IV</td>
<td></td>
<td>Direct and indirect activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyrosine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B2 (riboflavin)</td>
<td></td>
<td>By itself, but also as part of the enzyme glutathione reductase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B3 IV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin C IV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin E</td>
<td></td>
<td>Considered to be the most important and potent lipid-soluble anti-oxidant. It prevents free radical damage to polyunsaturated fatty acids within the phospholipid layer of each cell membrane and oxidation of LDL-cholesterol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Withania AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>Direct and indirect anti-oxidant activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinc</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Antiparasitic** — See listing under Antimicrobial

**Antiplatelet** — See listing under Blood thinning

**Antipruritic**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb/Nutrient</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chickweed</td>
<td>TU</td>
<td>Topical use; effect due to saponins</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Major actions (known or suspected)</th>
<th>Herb/Nutrient</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oats</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Topical use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Antipyretic</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andrographis</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fenugreek</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Willowbark</td>
<td>PH</td>
<td>Effect chiefly due to salicylate content</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Antispasmodic</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adhatoda</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Essential oil</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brahmi</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Acts on smooth muscle; effect due to inhibition of calcium influx into the cell</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chamomile</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cinnamon</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clove oil</td>
<td>PH</td>
<td>Effect due to the eugenol, beta-caryophyllene component</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feverfew</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hops</td>
<td>TU</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horseradish</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kava kava</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td>Acts on skeletal muscles</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myrrh</td>
<td>EV</td>
<td>Due to T-cadinol, and several minor components</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peppermint</td>
<td>IV, CT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rosemary</td>
<td>TU</td>
<td>Used for mild cramp-like gastrointestinal and biliary upsets, as well as for tension headache, renal colic and dysmenorrhoea</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sage</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St John's wort</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Most likely mediated via GABA activity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Major actions (known or suspected)</th>
<th>Herb/Nutrient</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Saw palmetto</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thyme</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turmeric</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Smooth muscle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valerian</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td>Acts on smooth muscle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Antithrombotic** — See listing under Blood thinning

**Antitussive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb/Nutrient</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adhatoda</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Comparable to codeine when cough is due to irritant stimuli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chickweed</td>
<td>TU</td>
<td>Saponins irritate mucous membranes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cocoa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Licorice</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passionflower</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thyme</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Anti-ulcer/anti-ulcerogenic (i.e. prevention and/or treatment)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb/Nutrient</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Brahmi</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Fresh juice of whole plant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chamomile</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fenugreek</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginger</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginseng — Korean</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lemon balm</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Activity associated with reduced acid output and increased mucin secretion, an increase in prostaglandin E\textsubscript{2} release and a decrease in leukotrienes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Licorice</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major actions (known or suspected)</td>
<td>Herb/Nutrient</td>
<td>Evidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protective effects against stomach ulcers induced by acetylsalicylic acid; however, no protection was seen against ulcers produced under high-acid environments or due to stimulation by histamine. Effect may be prostaglandin-mediated</td>
<td>Meadowsweet</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Associated with reduced acid output, increased mucin secretion, increased prostaglandin E₂ release and decreased leukotriene release</td>
<td>St Mary's thistle</td>
<td>AS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May reduce symptoms</td>
<td>Turmeric</td>
<td>CT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Antiviral** — See listing under Antimicrobial

**Anxiolytic** — See listing under Anti-anxiety

**Blood thinning**

**Anticoagulant**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb/Nutrient</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dong quai</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meadowsweet</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginseng — Siberian</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Decreases blood coagulation normally induced by intensive training of athletes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Antiplatelet**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb/Nutrient</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Andrographis</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
<td>Andrographolide inhibits platelet-activating-factor-induced human blood platelet aggregation in a dose-dependent manner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baical skullcap</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clove oil</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Due to the eugenol component</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cocoa</td>
<td>IV, CT</td>
<td>Due to polyphenol content</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feverfew</td>
<td>IV, AS, CT</td>
<td>No significant effects were seen in a clinical study of 10 patients receiving feverfew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish oils</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Observed for high doses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garlic</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginger</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Observed for high doses &gt;10 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginkgo biloba</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Platelet-activating-factor antagonist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major actions (known or suspected)</td>
<td>Herb/Nutrient</td>
<td>Evidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginseng — Korean</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginseng — Siberian</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>3,4-dihydroxybenzoic acid constituent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grapeseed extract</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Combination of grapeseed and grape skin produces a greater effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guarana</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Licorice</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td>Clinical relevance yet to be determined</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myrrh</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Gum guggul fraction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Policosanol</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rosemary</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schisandra</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Several lignans inhibit platelet-activating factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turmeric</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td>Demonstrated for curcumin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin E</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td>Demonstrated in vitro, but in vivo tests have been inconsistent; likely only at very high doses</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Antithrombotic**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb/Nutrient</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Andrographis</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baical skullcap</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evening primrose oil</td>
<td>TH</td>
<td>PGE1 production results in a cascade of reactions that ultimately inhibit platelet aggregation and cause vasodilation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish oils</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garlic</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Bone density protection**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb/Nutrient</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Calcium</td>
<td>CT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium</td>
<td>CT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red clover</td>
<td>CT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major actions (known or suspected)</td>
<td>Herb/Nutrient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soy</td>
<td>CT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin C</td>
<td>CT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin D</td>
<td>CT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capillary stabilisation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilberry</td>
<td>AS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginkgo biloba</td>
<td>AS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grapeseed extract</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hawthorn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardioprotective</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cocoa</td>
<td>EP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coenzyme Q10</td>
<td>CT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dong quai</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish oils</td>
<td>CT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glutamine</td>
<td>IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hawthorn</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lycopene</td>
<td>EP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quercetin</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major actions (known or suspected)</td>
<td>Herb/Nutrient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schisandra</td>
<td>AS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selenium</td>
<td>CT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin C</td>
<td>EP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin E</td>
<td>CT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Withania</td>
<td>AS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chemoprotection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Choleretic (i.e. increased bile production and flow)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andrographis</td>
<td>AS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chamomile</td>
<td>AS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dandelion (root)</td>
<td>TU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginger</td>
<td>AS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Globe artichoke</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peppermint</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St Mary’s thistle</td>
<td>AS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wild yam</td>
<td>AS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chologogue (i.e. increased bile flow)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Celery</td>
<td>AS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Globe artichoke</td>
<td>AS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turmeric</td>
<td>AS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chondroprotective</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chondroitin</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devil’s claw</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major actions (known or suspected)</td>
<td>Herb/Nutrient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glucosamine IV, CT</td>
<td>May stimulate proteoglycan and hyaluronic acid synthesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAMe IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B3 CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CNS sedative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chamomile AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hops TU, CT, AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lavender oil AS, CT</td>
<td>Inconsistent results</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lemon balm CT</td>
<td>High doses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kava kava IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passionflower AS</td>
<td>Mechanism unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peppermint AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valerian IV, AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CNS stimulant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guarana CT</td>
<td>Possibly due to caffeine content</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cognitive enhancement/activator</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Albizia AS</td>
<td>Effects due to saponins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Astragalus AS</td>
<td>In combination with other herbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilberry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brahmi CT</td>
<td>Possible mechanism of action are anti-oxidant and anticholinesterase activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginkgo biloba IV, AS, CT</td>
<td>Cholinergic activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginseng — Korean CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guarana AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Major actions (known or suspected)</th>
<th>Herb/Nutrient</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lemon balm</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Dose dependent, cholinergic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Licorice</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyrosine</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Withania</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Cholinergic effects</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Diuretic**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb/Nutrient</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Celery</td>
<td>TU</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dandelion (leaf)</td>
<td>TU</td>
<td>Considered a potassium-sparing diuretic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Globe artichoke</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goldenrod</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Excretion of calcium can increase whereas excretion of potassium and sodium decreases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green tea</td>
<td>PH</td>
<td>Chiefly due to caffeine content</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guarana</td>
<td>PH</td>
<td>Chiefly due to caffeine content</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horseradish</td>
<td>TU</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stinging nettle leaf</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tribulus</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>With high dose</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Expectorant**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb/Nutrient</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chickweed</td>
<td>TU</td>
<td>Saponins irritate mucous membranes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Licorice</td>
<td>TU, TH</td>
<td>Stimulates tracheal mucus secretion, facilitating elimination of mucus from the respiratory tract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mullein</td>
<td>PH</td>
<td>Due to saponins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thyme</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Due to saponins</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Gastrointestinal effects**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb/Nutrient</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Astragalus</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Improves gastrointestinal motility; strengthens the movement and muscle tone of the small intestine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major actions (known or suspected)</td>
<td>Herb/Nutrient</td>
<td>Evidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cinnamon</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citrus aurantium essential oil</td>
<td>TU</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colostrum</td>
<td>IV, AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fenugreek</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gentian</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginger</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glutamine</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guarana</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lavender</td>
<td>TU</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hepatoprotective</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andrographis</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Astragalus</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baical skullcap</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clove oil</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garlic</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginger</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hawthorn</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Licorice</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perilla</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major actions (known or suspected)</td>
<td>Herb/Nutrient</td>
<td>Evidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quercetin IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rosemary AS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St Mary’s thistle IV, AS, CT</td>
<td>Protective against carbon tetrachloride-induced liver cirrhosis, paracetamol-induced liver peroxidation, and side-effects of cyclosporin, phenothiazine, butyrophenone, erythromycin, amitriptyline and nortriptyline, oestradiol, amanita phalloides, tacrine and iron overload</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAMe CT</td>
<td>Significantly increases hepatic glutathione levels</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schisandra IV, AS, CT</td>
<td>Gomisin A inhibits elevation of serum aminotransferase activity and hepatic lipoperoxides content, and the appearance of histological changes such as degeneration and necrosis of hepatocytes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turmeric IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hepatorestorative (i.e. liver repair)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginseng — Korean AS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St Mary’s thistle AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schisandra AS</td>
<td>Gomisin A increases ornithine decarboxylase activity, which is important during the early stages of regeneration and suppresses fibrosis proliferation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Homocysteine level reduction</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folate CT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B6 CT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B12 CT</td>
<td>With B6 and folic acid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hypertensive</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guarana PH</td>
<td>Effects due to caffeine content</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hypoglycaemic/improving blood sugar control</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aloe vera CT</td>
<td>One clinical study found that blood sugar levels reduce steadily in people treated with aloe gel, compared with a control group</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major actions (known or suspected)</td>
<td>Herb/Nutrient</td>
<td>Evidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andrographis AS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilberry AS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bitter melon CT, AS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calendula AS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carnitine CT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chromium CT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cinnamon CT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Damiana AS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devil’s claw AS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fenugreek AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gymnema sylvestre CT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hawthorn AS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myrrh AS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oats CT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Olive leaf AS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stinging nettle AS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Hypotensive** — See listing under Antihypertensive

**Male fertility**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb/Nutrient</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Astragalus IV</td>
<td></td>
<td>Stimulates sperm motility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carnitine CT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Increasing semen quality, sperm concentration and total and forward sperm motility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginseng — Korean</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Improves erectile dysfunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major actions (known or suspected)</td>
<td>Herb/Nutrient</td>
<td>Evidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selenium</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Required for human sperm maturation and sperm motility; positive correlation between selenium levels and sperm density, number, motility and viability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tribulus</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Androgenic; protodioscin converts to DHEA; observed pro-erectile effects with protodioscin, due to increased release of NO from the endothelium and nitronergic nerve endings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinc</td>
<td></td>
<td>Deficiency affects spermatogenesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immunomodulating</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aloe vera</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td>Immune stimulant, antiviral, antitumour and non-specific immunostimulant activity; protective against a variety of fungi and bacteria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andrographis</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
<td>Immune stimulant; antigen-specific and non-specific immune responses in vivo; immunostimulant activity of the whole extract is greater than the isolated andrographolide constituent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Astragalus</td>
<td>IV, AS, CT</td>
<td>Immune stimulant; stimulates macrophage activity and enhances antibody responses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baical skullcap</td>
<td>IV, AS, CT</td>
<td>Immune stimulant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beta-carotene</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Multiple mechanisms involved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calendula</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Stimulates phagocytosis of human granulocytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chamomile</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Immune stimulant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chromium</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Chromium has both immunostimulatory and immunosuppressive effects, as shown by its effects on T- and B-lymphocytes, macrophages and cytokine production</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coenzyme Q10</td>
<td></td>
<td>Immune stimulant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dong quai</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td>Immune stimulant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Echinacea</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Immune stimulant; acts mainly on non-specific cellular immunity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fenugreek</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Immune stimulant — enhanced humoral immunity, significant increases in macrophage activity and a stimulatory effect on lymphoproliferation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish oils</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garlic</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Immune stimulant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major actions (known or suspected)</td>
<td>Herb/Nutrient</td>
<td>Evidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginger</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td>In vitro and in vivo research suggests that ginger extract exerts some degree of immunomodulatory activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginkgo biloba</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Immune stimulant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginseng — Korean</td>
<td>IV, CT</td>
<td>Based on the production of cytokines, activation of macrophages, stimulation of bone marrow cells and stimulation of inducible NO synthesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginseng — Siberian</td>
<td>IV, AS, CT</td>
<td>Stimulates general non-specific resistance and influences T-lymphocytes, natural killer cells and cytokines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goldenseal</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glutamine</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lutein</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Probiotics</td>
<td>IV, AS, CT</td>
<td>Probiotics bind to intestinal epithelial cells and inhibit the binding of pathogenic bacteria to the gut wall by producing inhibitory substances such as bacteriocins, lactic acid and toxic oxygen metabolites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quercetin</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td>Contradictory evidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selenium</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
<td>Confirmed in both animal studies and human trials, immune modulation is in part due to improved activation and proliferation of B-lymphocytes and enhanced T-cell function. Selenium concentrations significantly decrease during stages of acute infection, suggesting either increased utilisation and/or excretion or decreased absorption during this period</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shark cartilage</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Immune stimulant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turmeric</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td>Curcumin has demonstrated both immunostimulating and immunosuppressing activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Immune-stimulant role includes expression of mucins and keratins, lymphopoiesis, production of antibodies, and the function of neutrophils, natural killer cells, macrophages and T- and B-lymphocytes. Potentiates antibody responses and lymphocyte proliferation in response to antigens. Restores the integrity and function of mucosal surfaces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin C</td>
<td>IV, CT</td>
<td>Immune stimulant — favourably modulates lymphocytes and phagocytes, regulates natural killer cells and can influence antibody and cytokine synthesis under certain situations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major actions (known or suspected)</td>
<td>Herb/Nutrient</td>
<td>Evidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin E</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Withania</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinc</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Laxative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb/Nutrient</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aloe vera</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Anthraquinones increase intestinal water content, stimulate mucus secretion and induce intestinal peristalsis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dandelion (root)</td>
<td>TU</td>
<td>Mild activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium</td>
<td>PH</td>
<td>In high doses</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Lipid-lowering**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb/Nutrient</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Astragalus</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td>In combination with other herbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baical skullcap</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilberry</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Decreases plasma triglyceride levels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Reduced LDL-cholesterol levels by 4.4%, increased HDL-cholesterol levels 4.1% in one study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calendula</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carnitine</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Reduced serum lipoprotein-a levels; changes in other lipid parameters inconsistent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Celery</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chitosan</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chromium</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cocoa</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major actions (known or suspected)</td>
<td>Herb/Nutrient</td>
<td>Evidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fenugreek</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish oils</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flaxseed oil</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flaxseeds</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garlic</td>
<td>IV, CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginger</td>
<td>AS, EV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginseng — Korean</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Globe artichoke</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goldenseal</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grapeseed extract</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gymnema sylvestre</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hawthorn</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lycopene</td>
<td>IV, CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myrrh</td>
<td>CT, AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oats</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Policosanol</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Probiotics</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St Mary’s thistle</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turmeric</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B3</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Major actions (known or suspected)</th>
<th>Herb/Nutrient</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B5</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anti-atherogenic</td>
<td>Andrographis</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Significantly improves atherosclerotic iliac artery stenosis induced by both deendothelialisation and a high-cholesterol diet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Garlic</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Selenium</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nephroprotection</td>
<td>Goldenrod</td>
<td>TU</td>
<td>Believed to stabilise the microarchitecture of the kidneys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>St Mary’s thistle</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuroprotection</td>
<td>Baical skullcap</td>
<td>AS, IV</td>
<td>Attributed to the flavonoids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Brahmi</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Carnitine</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Creatine</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fish oils</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Folate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ginkgo biloba</td>
<td>IV, AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ginseng — Korean</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ginseng — Siberian</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Quercetin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Schisandra</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Demonstrated for some of the herbs lignans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vitamin E</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major actions (known or suspected)</td>
<td>Herb/Nutrient</td>
<td>Evidence</td>
<td>Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Withania IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Neurotransmitter effects** — See listing under Antidepressant

**Reproductive hormonal effects**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb/Nutrient</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Black cohosh</td>
<td>IV, AS, CT</td>
<td>Reduces level of luteinising hormone; oestrogenic activity is controversial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chaste tree</td>
<td>IV, CT</td>
<td>Inhibits prolactin release by selective stimulation of pituitary dopamine D2 receptors; however, low dose may increase secretion; stimulates progesterone-receptor expression in vitro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Damiana</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td>Weak oestrogen agonist activity reported; possibly works via progesterone receptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hops</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Significant competitive binding to oestrogen receptors alpha and beta and up-regulation of progesterone receptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red clover</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td>Weak oestrogenic effects; anti-androgenic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rosemary</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Anti-oestrogenic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAMe</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Reduces prolactin levels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saw palmetto</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Reduces prolactin levels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tribulus</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Androgenic; protodioscin converts to DHEA; observed pro-erectile effects with protodioscin due to increased release of nitric oxide from the endothelium and nitronergic nerve endings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wild yam</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td>Inconsistent results</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Thermogenic effects**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb/Nutrient</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ginger</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green tea</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Interaction between catechin polyphenols and caffeine stimulates noradrenaline release and reduces noradrenaline catabolism</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Thyroid modulation**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herb/Nutrient</th>
<th>Evidence</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Brahmi</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Increases T4 concentration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fenugreek</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Reduces conversion of T4 to T3, resulting in increased T4 concentration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major actions (known or suspected)</td>
<td>Herb/Nutrient</td>
<td>Evidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iodine</td>
<td>PH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lemon balm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inhibits binding of thyroid-stimulating hormone to thyroid plasma membranes and extra-thyroidal enzymic T4-5'-deiodination to T3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selenium</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Withania</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wound healing/enhancement</td>
<td>Aloe vera</td>
<td>IV, AS, CT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calendula</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chamomile</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chickweed</td>
<td>TU</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chitosan</td>
<td>PH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Echinacea</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grapeseed extract</td>
<td>IV, AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Honey</td>
<td>AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myrrh</td>
<td>TU</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St John’s wort</td>
<td>TU</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slippery elm</td>
<td>TU, PH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B2</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B5</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin C</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin E</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major actions (known or suspected)</td>
<td>Herb/Nutrient</td>
<td>Evidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinc</td>
<td>IV, AS, CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX

This is an index to the herbal medicines, conditions and main actions (clinical uses) discussed in this book. Minor actions and drug interactions have not been indexed for each medicine (although drug interactions are indexed when discussed in the chapters).

Related information might be found under clinical uses and effects for each condition of interest (eg under ‘hyperlipidaemia' and ‘lipid-lowering activity').

Page locators indicate the first page number only, but not a page range for a continual discussion of a topic.

Index entries for special groups (eg ‘elderly') are used when drugs are specifically recommended for a group of people, but not when the medicine is used for general purposes and aspects of its use for special groups is discussed. For example, a drug for morning sickness is indexed under ‘pregnancy', but the safety of a general drug in pregnancy is not.
2-amino-2-deoxy-beta-D-glucopyranose
  See glucosamine
5-alpha reductase inhibition
  saw palmetto
Aaron's rod
  See goldenrod
  See mullein
abortion (recurrent)
  vitamin B12
Abyssinian myrrh
  See myrrh
Acanthopanax
  See Siberian ginseng
acne
  chaste tree
  tea tree oil
  zinc
Adam's flannel
  See mullein
adaptogens (resistance to stress)
  Korean ginseng
  schisandra
  Siberian ginseng
  tyrosine
  withania
adenosyl-L-methionine (SAMe)
adhatoda
Adhatoda vasica
  See adhatoda
adiantifolia
  See ginkgo biloba
adjustment disorder
  hawthorn
adolescents
  calcium
adrenal hormones
  vitamin C
adrenocorticoid insufficiency
  licorice
aesecule
  See horse chestnut

Aesculus
  See horse chestnut
Aetheroleum Eucalypti
  See eucalyptus
African cucumber
  See bitter melon
African ginger
  See ginger
African plum tree
  See pygeum
African prune tree
  See pygeum
age-related macular degeneration
  lutein
  zinc
agnus castus
  See chaste tree
ail
  See garlic
ajo
  See garlic
al-gutub
  See tribulus
albizia
Albizia lebbeck
  See albizia
alcachofa
  See globe artichoke
alcacuz
  See licorice
alcaucil
  See globe artichoke
alcohol intake
  St John's wort
alcohol withdrawal
  vitamin B1
alcoholic liver diseases
  St Mary's thistle
alcoholism
  vitamin B1

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
aldolase reductase inhibition
licorice
aldose reductase inhibition
quercetin
aldosterone
licorice
alertness
guarana
all-heal
See valerian
allergic rhinitis
stinging nettle
allergy effects
albizia
baical skullcap
lavender
peppermint
perilla
quercetin
allium
See garlic
Allium sativum
See garlic
almindelig timian
See thyme
Aloe barbadensis
See aloe vera
aloevera
alopecia
lavender
rosemary
saw palmetto
alpha tocopherol
See vitamin E
altamisa
See feverfew
altitude sickness
ginkgo biloba
alumty
See pygeum

Alzheimer’s dementia
fish oils
folate
vitamin B1
vitamin E
amantilla
See valerian
amber
See St John’s wort
American coneflower
See echinacea
American dwarf palm tree
See saw palmetto
American elm
See slippery elm
amino acid metabolism
folate and
vitamin B1
amino monosaccharide
See glucosamine
amoraciae rusticanae radix
See horseradish
anabolic effects
glutamine
Siberian ginseng
withania
anaemia
folate
iron
vitamin B2 (riboflavin)
vitamin B12
vitamin C
withania
anaesthesia
cloves
kava kava
myrrh
analgesia
bitter melon
cloves
— continued next page
analgesia—continued
  devil’s claw
  feverfew
  ginger
  kava kava
  Korean ginseng
  lemon balm
  meadowsweet
  noni
  shark cartilage
  St John’s wort
  stinging nettle
  willow bark
androgen receptor binding
  saw palmetto
androgenetic alopecia
  saw palmetto
andrographis
  Andrographis paniculata
    See andrographis
Angelica
  See dong quai
angina
  astragalus
  carnitine
  coenzyme Q10
  vitamin E
angiogenesis
  shark cartilage
  turmeric
anorexia nervosa
  vitamin B3 (niacin)
  zinc
anthelmintic activity
  bitter melon
  thyme
anti-emetic activity
  baikal skullcap
anti-inflammatory effects
  adhatoda
  aloe vera
  andrographis
  baikal skullcap
  bilberry
  black cohosh
  brahmi
  calendula
  celery
  chamomile
  chondroitin
  cloves
  damiana
  dandelion
  devil’s claw
  echinacea
  eucalyptus
  evening primrose oil
  fenugreek
  feverfew
  fish oils
  flaxseed oil
  ginger
  ginkgo biloba
  glucosamine
  golden rod
  grape seed extract
  hawthorn
  horse chestnut
  Korean ginseng
  lemon balm
  licorice
  meadowsweet
  myrrh
  New Zealand green-lipped mussel
  noni
  olive
  perilla
  pygeum
  —continued next page

Index 1555

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
anti-inflammatory effects—continued
quercetin
raspberry leaf
rosemary
SAMe
saw palmetto
shark cartilage
St John’s wort
St Mary’s thistle
stinging nettle
turmeric
willow bark
withania
anti-NF-kappa B activity
turmeric
anti-oedema activity
bilberry
ginkgo biloba
horse chestnut
anti-oestrogenic activity
rosemary
anti-tumour effects
St Mary’s thistle
antiangiogenic activity
shark cartilage
antibacterial activity
bitter melon
antibacterial activity
aloe vera
baical skullcap
chamomile
chitosan
cinnamon
citrus aurantium
cloves
colostrum
cranberry
green tea
honey
hops
lemon balm
licorice
mullein
olive
rosemary
St John’s wort
tea tree oil
withania
anticarcinogenic effects
astragalus
beta-carotene
grape seed extract
green tea
lutein
perilla
turmeric
withania
anticoagulant effects
dong quai
ginkgo biloba
anticonvulsant-induced folate deficiency
folate
anticonvulsant-induced osteomalacia
vitamin D
antidepressant activity
brahmi
chromium
licorice
perilla
SAMe
St John’s wort
antiemetic activity
ginger
vitamin B1
antifibrotic activity
baical skullcap
St Mary’s thistle
antifungal activity
baical skullcap
chitosan
citrus aurantium
—continued next page
antifungal activity—continued
cloves
echinacea
lemon balm
olive
tea tree oil
withania
antihistamine activity
vitamin C
antihypertensive activity
coenzyme Q10
fish oils
garlic
Korean ginseng
noni
oats
olive
quercetin
antimetastatic effects
Korean ginseng
antimicrobial activity
baical skullcap
calendula
chamomile
eucalyptus
garlic
ginger
goldenseal
Gymnema sylvestre
lavender
mullein
noni
olive
peppermint
sage
thyme
antimutagenic effects
grape seed extract
olive
turmeric
antineoplastic effects
garlic
lavender
shark cartilage
withania
antiNF-kappa B activity
turmeric
antinociceptive effects
brahmi
fenugreek
antioestrogenic activity
rosemary
antioxidant actity
beta-carotene
olive
antioxidant activity
astragalus
baical skullcap
bilberry
brahmi
citrus aurantium
cocoa
coenzyme Q10
cranberry
dandelion
garlic
ginger
ginkgo biloba
globe artichoke
glutamine
grape seed extract
green tea
hawthorn
honey
horse chestnut
lemon balm
licorice
lutein
lycopene
noni
—continued next page
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antioxidant Activity</th>
<th>Antipyretic Action</th>
<th>Antiseptic Activity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>perilla</td>
<td>andrographis</td>
<td>fenugreek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quercetin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rosemary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sage</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schisandra</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>selenium</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slippery elm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St Mary's thistle</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turmeric</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tyrosine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vitamin A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vitamin B3 (niacin)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vitamin C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vitamin E</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>withania</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zinc</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antiplatelet Activity</th>
<th>Antithrombotic Activity</th>
<th>Antifungal Activity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>andrographis</td>
<td>andrographis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baical skullcap</td>
<td>evening primrose oil</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dong quai</td>
<td>fish oils</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fish oils</td>
<td>flaxseed oil</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>garlic</td>
<td>garlic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ginger</td>
<td>olive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ginkgo biloba</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grape seed extract</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean ginseng</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>licorice</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>policosanol</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turmeric</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antiproliferative Effects</th>
<th>Antitumour Effects</th>
<th>Antiviral Activity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>baical skullcap</td>
<td>Korean ginseng</td>
<td>aloe vera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fish oils</td>
<td>mullein</td>
<td>astragalus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flaxseed oil</td>
<td>noni</td>
<td>baical skullcap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>garlic</td>
<td>turmeric</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>olive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antipruritic Effects</th>
<th>Antitussive Effects</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oats</td>
<td>adhatoda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>chickweed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cocoa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>eucalyptus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>thyme</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antitussive Activity</th>
<th>Antitumour Activity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aloe vera</td>
<td>Korean ginseng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>astragalus</td>
<td>mullein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baical skullcap</td>
<td>noni</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Index 1558
antiviral activity—continued
  bitter melon
citrus aurantium
cloves
colostrum
echinacea
green tea
hawthorn
L-lysine
lemon balm
licorice
mullein
olive
quercetin
Siberian ginseng
St John’s wort
stinging nettle
tea tree oil

anxiety
  baikal skullcap
brahmi
hawthorn
hops
kava kava
lavender
lemon balm
passionflower
selenium
St John’s wort
valerian
withania

aphrodisiac activity
  tribulus

*Apium graveolens*
  See celery

apoptosis
  baikal skullcap
Korean ginseng
turmeric

appetite loss
  fenugreek

gentian
sage
appetite suppressants
citrus aurantium
guarana
apricot vine
  See passionflower
*Arbre aux quarante ecus*
  See ginkgo biloba
Armoracia
  See horseradish

aromatherapy
citrus aurantium
eucalyptus

arrhythmias
  coenzyme Q10
  fish oils
  flaxseed oil
hawthorn
magnesium

arteriosclerosis
  garlic

arthritis
  devil’s claw
evening primrose oil
  feverfew
  fish oils
New Zealand green-lipped mussel
olive
selenium
stinging nettle
turmeric
vitamin B2 (riboflavin)
vitamin E
withania

eritichaut
  See globe artichoke
arusha
  See adhatoda
asclepias geminate
  See Gymnema sylvestre

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
ascorbic acid
  See vitamin C
ashwagandha
  See withania
asthma
  adhatoda
  albizia
  beta-carotene
  fish oils
  ginkgo biloba
  magnesium
  New Zealand green-lipped mussel
  quercetin
  selenium
  vitamin C
astragalus
  Astragalus membranaceus
  See astragalus
astringent activity
  bilberry
  raspberry leaf
  sage
  thyme
ATBC study
  vitamin E
atherogenesis
  fish oils
  goldenseal
  olive
atherosclerosis
  flaxseed oil
  garlic
  hawthorn
  turmeric
athlete’s foot
  tea tree oil
Atlantic yam
  See wild yam
atopic dermatitis
  fish oils
  St John’s wort
aubepine
  See hawthorn
Australian fever tree leaf
  See eucalyptus
Australian tea tree oil
  See tea tree oil
autism
  vitamin B6
  auto-immune thyroiditis
  selenium
Avena sativa
  See oats
awa
  See kava kava
Ayurvedic ginseng
  See withania
Ba Ji Tian
  See noni
bachelors button
  See feverfew
back pain
  devil’s claw
bacopa
  See brahmi
Bacopa monnieri
  See brahmi
bai guo ye
  See ginkgo biloba
baical skullcap
baies de myrtille
  See bilberry
bakash
  See adhatoda
baking chocolate
  See cocoa
bal
  See myrrh
balderbrackenwurzel
  See valerian
baldness
  lavender
  rosemary
  saw palmetto
baldrian
  See valerian
baldrianwurzel
  See valerian
balm mint
  See lemon balm
balsam pear
  See bitter melon
balsana
  See St John's wort
ban tulsi
  See perilla
baneberry
  See black cohosh
Barbados aloe
  See aloe vera
barbasco
  See wild yam
bay willow
  See willow bark
bee balm
  See lemon balm
beefsteak plant
  See perilla
beg kei
  See astragalus
bei qi
  See astragalus
benign prostatic hypertrophy
  red clover
  saw palmetto
  stinging nettle
benzodiazepine withdrawal
  kava kava
beta-carotene
bianco spino
  See hawthorn
bilberry
bird's foot
  See fenugreek
bitter gourd
  See bitter melon
bitter melon
bitter orange
  See citrus aurantium
black cohosh
black sampson
  See echinacea
black snakeroot
  See black cohosh
black susans
  See echinacea
Black, French or Spanish psyllium
  See psyllium
blanket herb
  See mullein
blaubeeren
  See bilberry
bloating
  lavender
blood clotting
calcium
blood sugar control
carnitine
  chromium
  Gymnema sylvestre
  oats
  vitamin B3 (niacin)
  vitamin C
blowball
  See dandelion
blue balm
  See lemon balm
blue chamomile
  See chamomile
blue gum
  See eucalyptus
blue mountain tea
   See goldenrod
body weight
   creatine
bol
   See myrrh
bone effects
   calcium
   quercetin
   vitamin C
   vitamin D
bone marrow effects
   baical skullcap
   withania
bowel cancer
   lutein
brahmi
brain function
   vitamin C
Brauneria
   See echinacea
Brazilian cocoa
   See guarana
breast cancer
   fish oils
   flaxseed oil
   lutein
   vitamin D
brennesselkraut
   See stinging nettle
bridewort
   See meadowsweet
brittle willow
   See willowbark
broad-leafed sage
   See sage
bronchial phlegm
   chickweed
bronchitis
   chickweed
   thyme
bronchodilator activity
   adhatoda
buckeye
   See horse chestnut
bugbane
   See black cohosh
bunny’s ears
   See mullein
bupleurum combination
   baical skullcap
burns
   aloe vera
   calendula
   chickweed
   glutamine
   honey
   St John’s wort
butter rose
   See evening primrose oil
C. zeylanicum
   See cinnamon
cabbage palm
   See saw palmetto
calcium
   calcium regulation
   l-lysine
   vitamin D
calendula
   Calendula arvensis
   See calendula
   Calendula officinalis
   See calendula
Camellia sinensis
   See green tea
camomile grande
   See feverfew
camphor of the poor
   See garlic
cancer
   astragalus
   — continued next page
cancer—continued
ATBC study
baical skullcap
beta-carotene
bitter melon
fish oils
flaxseed oil
folate
garlic
glutamine
goldenseal
grape seed extract
green tea
Korean ginseng
licorice
lutein
lycopene
noni
olive
quercetin
red clover
rosemary
selenium
shark cartilage
soy
St John’s wort
turmeric
vitamin A
vitamin C
vitamin D
vitamin E
withania
candidiasis
echinacea
candlewick plant
See mullein
cankerwort
See dandelion
cannelle de ceylan
See cinnamon
capillary wall strength
grape seed extract
carbohydrate metabolism
vitamin B1
carcinoflo
See globe artichoke
cardiac surgery
cardiogenic shock
carnitine
cardiomyopathy
carnitine
cardioprotective activity
beta-carotene
coenzyme Q10
dong quai
folate
glutamine
green tea
quercetin
vitamin B12
cardiovascular diseases
astragalus
beta-carotene
carnitine
cocoa
coenzyme Q10
evening primrose oil
fish oils
flaxseed oil
garlic
goldenseal
hawthorn
Korean ginseng
lycopene
magnesium
olive
quercetin
red clover
selenium
—continued next page
cardiovascular diseases—continued
soy
turmeric
vitamin B6
vitamin C
vitamin E
cardo blanco
See St Mary’s thistle
cardo de burro
See St Mary’s thistle
Carduus marianus
See St Mary’s thistle
carinative activity
cinnamon
lavender
peppermint
carnitine
carpal tunnel syndrome
vitamin B6
cartilage protection
chondroitin
Caryophyllus aromaticus
See cloves
cassia
See cinnamon
Castao de Indias
See horse chestnut
cataracts
beta-carotene
lutein
lycopene
quercetin
vitamin B2 (riboflavin)
vitamin C
catarrh
golden rod
cats-head
See tribulus
celery
cell differentiation and growth
vitamin A
vitamin D
zinc
cellular energy production
creatine
vitamin B5 (pantothenic acid)
cellular function
creatine
central nervous system depression
kava kava
central nervous system stimulation
guarana
cerebrovascular disease
magnesium
cervical cancer
folate
lycopene
cervicitis
teak oil
cevil’s bones
See wild yam
Ceylon celonzimi cinnamon
See cinnamon
Ceylon cinnamon
See cinnamon
chamomile
Chamomilla recutita
See chamomile
chandon marie
See St Mary’s thistle
chaste tree
chasteberry
See chasteberry
cheese fruit
See noni
chemokine binding
baical skullcap
chemoprotective activity
astragalus
baical skullcap
—continued next page
chemoprotective activity — continued

- celery
- fish oils
- folate
- garlic
- grape seed extract
- hops
- Korean ginseng
- lycopene
- probiotics
- quercetin
- rosemary
- selenium
- turmeric
- vitamin A
- vitamin B3 (niacin)
- vitamin E
- withania

Chemotherapy adjuncts
- astragalus
- baikal skullcap
- rosemary
- turmeric

- chestnut
  See horse chestnut

- Chiang huang
  See turmeric

- chickweed

- childbirth, perineal discomfort following
  lavender

- children
  calcium
  diarrhoea
  St John’s wort
  vitamin A

- China root
  See wild yam

- Chinese angelica
  See dong quai

- Chinese basil
  See perilla

- Chinese cinnamon
  See cinnamon

- Chinese hawthorn
  See hawthorn

- Chinese licorice
  See licorice

- Chinese magnolia vine
  See schisandra

- Chinese skullcap
  See baikal skullcap

- Chinese tea
  See green tea

- chirayata
  See andrographis

- chiretta
  See andrographis

- chitin
  See chitosan

- chitosan

- chocolate
  See cocoa

- cholagogue action
  celery
  globe artichoke
  turmeric
  wild yam

- choleric action
  andrographis
  dandelion
  globe artichoke
  peppermint

- cholesterol lowering
  baikal skullcap
  coenzyme Q10
  fenugreek
  garlic
  ginger
  goldenseal
  Gymnema sylvestre
  hawthorn

- continued next page

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
cholesterol lowering—continued
  lycopene
  myrrh
  policosanol
  vitamin B3 (niacin)
  vitamin B5 (pantothenic acid)
cholesterol oxidation
  policosanol
cholinergic activity
  lemon balm
chondroitin
chondroprotective effects
  chondroitin
  glucosamine
  vitamin B3 (niacin)
chromium
chronic liver diseases
  St Mary’s thistle
chronic obstructive pulmonary disease
  coenzyme Q10
chronic otitis media
  mullein
chronic prostatitis
  saw palmetto
chrysanthemum parthenium
  See feverfew
ci wu jia
  See Siberian ginseng
Cimicifuga racemosa
  See black cohosh
cineole
  See eucalyptus
Cinnamomum cassia
  See cinnamon
Cinnamomum verum
  See cinnamon
cinnamon
cinnamon bark
  See cinnamon
circulatory stimulation
  horseradish
cirrhosis of the liver
  SAMe
  St Mary’s thistle
citrus aurantium
  Citrus sinensis
    See citrus aurantium
claudication (intermittent)
  vitamin E
clinical use of vitamins and minerals
clover
  See red clover
cloves
CNS effects
  guarana
  kava kava
Cochlearia armoracia
  See horseradish
cocoa
cocoa liquor
  See cocoa
cocoa mass
  See cocoa
coenzyme A synthesis
  vitamin B5 (pantothenic acid)
coenzyme activity
  folate
  vitamin B1
  vitamin B5 (pantothenic acid)
  vitamin B6
coenzyme Q10
cofactor for biochemical reactions
  chromium
  vitamin B12
  zinc
cognitive effects
  albizia
  brahmi
  cocoa
  fish oils
  folate
—continued next page
cognitive effects—continued

guarana
Korean ginseng
lavender
lemon balm
rosemary
sage
soy
tyrosine
vitamin B12
withania
cold stress
tyrosine
colic root
See wild yam
colitis
lemon balm
colorectal cancer
calcium
fish oils
flaxseed oil
folate
vitamin D
colostrum
combflower
See echinacea
Commiphora molmol
See myrrh
common balm
See lemon balm
common cold
andrographis
garlic
meadowsweet
zinc
common dandelion
See dandelion
common ginger
See ginger
common hops
See hops
common lavender
See lavender
common myrrh
See myrrh
common nettle
See stinging nettle
common sage
See sage
common thyme
See thyme
compass plant
See rosemary
complementary medicine associations
cold stress
concentration
Korean ginseng
lavender
rosemary
coneflower
See echinacea
congestive heart failure
astragalus
carnitine
coenzyme Q10
creatine
goldenseal
hawthorn
magnesium
connective tissue maintenance
vitamin C
constipation
magnesium
convulsions
vitamin B6
coronary artery disease
flaxseed oil
magnesium
cortex cinnamomii ceylanici
See cinnamon
cough
adhatoda
mullein
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cow clover</td>
<td><em>See</em> red clover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cow slip</td>
<td><em>See</em> evening primrose oil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COX-2 inhibition</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crab</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crack willow</td>
<td><em>See</em> willow bark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cramping</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cranberry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Crataegus</em></td>
<td><em>See</em> hawthorn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crohn's disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>curacao aloe</td>
<td><em>See</em> aloe vera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Curcuma longa</em></td>
<td><em>See</em> turmeric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cure-all</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cutaneous</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Cyanara scolymus</em></td>
<td><em>See</em> globe artichoke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cyanara</td>
<td><em>See</em> globe artichoke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CYP enzymes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cystitis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>da-suan</td>
<td><em>See</em> garlic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dairy products</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dalchini</td>
<td><em>See</em> cinnamon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dalmatian sage</td>
<td><em>See</em> sage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>damiana</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dandelion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dang gui</td>
<td><em>See</em> dong quai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deafness, sudden</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ginkgo biloba</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deficiencies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calcium</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carnitine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chitosan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chromium</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coenzyme Q10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>creatine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>evening primrose oil</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fish oils</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>folate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glutamine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iron</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lutein</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lycopene</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnesium</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>probiotics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>selenium</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tyrosine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vitamin A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vitamin B1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vitamin B2 (riboflavin)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vitamin B3 (niacin)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vitamin B5 (pantothenic acid)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vitamin B6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vitamin B12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vitamin C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vitamin D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vitamin E</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zinc</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>definitions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dementia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>folate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ginkgo biloba</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vitamin B1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vitamin E</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
demulcent effects
damiana
evening primrose oil
fenugreek
fish oils
goldenseal
Gymnema sylvestre
magnesium
olive
psyllium
quercetin
vitamin B3 (niacin)
vitamin C
vitamin E
zinc
diabetic neuropathy
vitamin B12
diabetic retinopathy
grape seed extract
dialysis
vitamin E
diarrhoea
bilberry
chamomile
colostum
goldenseal
probiotics
raspberry leaf
thyme
zinc
diffuse oesophageal spasm (DES)
peppermint
digestion
andrographis
astragalus
citrus aurantium
fenugreek
gentian
hops
horseradish
probiotics
raspberry leaf

dental caries
cinnamon
cocoa
green tea
perilla
dental plaque prevention
chitosan
depression
chromium
folic

ginkgo biloba
SAMe
selenium
St John’s wort

tyrosine
vitamin B3 (niacin)
vitamin B12
withania
dermatitis
chamomile
everning primrose oil
fish oils
licorice
slippery elm
St John’s wort
devil’s claw
devil’s scourge
See St John’s wort
devil’s shrub
See Siberian ginseng
devil’s-thorn
See tribulus
diabetes
baical skullcap
bitter melon
chromium
cinnamon

devil’s claw

devil’s shrub

diabetes

diffuse oesophageal spasm (DES)

digestion

Index 1569

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
dihydrotestosterone binding
  saw palmetto
diosgenin
  See wild yam
Disporea
  See wild yam
diuretic activity
  baical skullcap
dandelion
globe artichoke
golden rod
stinging nettle
tribulus
DNA synthesis
  vitamin B1
dolichos soja
  See soy
dolloff
  See meadowsweet
don quai
dropsy plant
  See lemon balm
dropwort
  See meadowsweet
drug interactions
drug poisoning
  St Mary's thistle
drug withdrawal
  tyrosine
  vitamin B1
  withania
duck foot tree
  See ginkgo biloba
dwarf bilberry
  See bilberry
dwarf palmetto
  See saw palmetto
dyslipidemia
  See hyperlipidaemia
dysmenorrhoea
  black cohosh
  magnesium
  vitamin B1
dyspepsia
  calcium
  cinnamon
citrus aurantium
devil's claw
fenugreek
gentian
ginger
globe artichoke
lavender
licorice
magnesium
peppermint
raspberry leaf
sage
St Mary’s thistle
thyme
turmeric

eczema
  chamomile
  chickweed
education in herbal medicine
egoma
  See perilla
elderly
  creatine
  folate
  lutein
  vitamin E
  zinc

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
electronic databases

eleuthero root
  See Siberian ginseng

Eleutherococcus senticosus
  See Siberian ginseng

emollient action
  mullein

endometrial cancer
  lutein

endometriosis
  evening primrose oil

endothelial function
  fish oils
  flaxseed oil
  vitamin C

English hawthorn
  See hawthorn

English lavender
  See lavender

environmental toxins
  St Mary’s thistle

enzymes
  iron
  saw palmetto

epilepsy
  baical skullcap
  Korean ginseng

epithelial cell maintenance
  vitamin A

EPO
  See evening primrose oil

Epstein-Barr virus
  licorice

erectile dysfunction
  Korean ginseng

erogenic aids
  carnitine
  coenzyme Q10
  creatine
  guarana
  iron
  Siberian ginseng
  tribulus
  vitamin C

eschilo
  See horse chestnut

escine
  See horse chestnut

Essence of eucalyptus rectifiee
  See eucalyptus

essential oils
  chamomile
  peppermint
  perilla

eucalyptol
  See eucalyptus
eucalyptus
  Eucalyptus citriodora
  See eucalyptus
  Eucalyptus dives
  See eucalyptus
  Eucalyptus globulus
  See eucalyptus
  Eucalyptus polybractea
  See eucalyptus

Eugenia
  See cloves

European bilberry
  See bilberry

European blueberries
  See bilberry

European hops
  See hops

evening primrose oil

evidence-based medicine

expectorant effects
  chickweed
  licorice

eye health in diabetes
  vitamin C

eye root
  See goldenseal

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
eye strain
   grape seed extract
fan palm
   See saw palmetto
farigola
   See thyme
fat binding
   chitosan
fatigue
   iron
   Siberian ginseng
featherfew
   See feverfew
featherfoil
   See feverfew
febrile convulsions
   vitamin B6
female reproductive system disorders
   evening primrose oil
   wild yam
fenugreek
fertility
   carnitine
   selenium
   vitamin E
   zinc
fetal growth
   calcium
   fish oils
fever
   willow bark
fever plant
   See evening primrose oil
fever tree
   See eucalyptus
feverfew
fibre
   See chitosan
fibrinolysis stimulation
   garlic
fibromyalgia
   SAMe
fibrosis
   baical skullcap
   St Mary’s thistle
Field marigold
   See calendula
Filipendula ulmaria
   See meadowsweet
fish oils
flannel-leaf
   See mullein
flaxseed oil
fleur d’ulmaire
   See meadowsweet
Flos chamomil
   See chamomile
folacin
   See folate
folate (vitamin B9)
folia thymi
   See thyme
folic acid
   See folate
food fortification with folate
food sources
   c oeco
   calcium
   carnitine
   chondroitin
   chromium
   coenzyme Q10
   creatine
   fish oils
   folate
   glucosamine
   iron
   lutein
   lycopene
   magnesium
— continued next page
food sources—continued
probiotics
selenium
tyrosine
vitamin A
vitamin B1
vitamin B2 (riboflavin)
vitamin B3 (niacin)
vitamin B5 (pantothenic acid)
vitamin B6
vitamin B12
vitamin C
vitamin D
vitamin E
zinc
fossil tree
See ginkgo biloba
Fournier’s gangrene
honey
fragrant valerian
See valerian
framboise
See raspberry leaf
freen chiretta
See andrographis
French lavender
See lavender
frostbite
aloe vera
gangrene
honey
garden balm
See lemon balm
garden lavender
See lavender
garden marigold
See calendula
garden rosemary
See rosemary
garden sage
See sage
garden thyme
See thyme
garlic
gartenthymian
See thyme
gastric ulcers
bilberry
brahmi
calendula
fenugreek
ginger
Korean ginseng
licorice
gastritis
thyme
gastrointestinal conditions
aloe vera
calendula
chamomile
colostrum
ginger
glutamine
Korean ginseng
lavender
lemon balm
meadowsweet
slippery elm
turmeric
gastroprotective activity
bilberry
glucosamine
glutamine
Korean ginseng
meadowsweet
quercetin
St Mary’s thistle
gattilier
See chastet tree
gemmema melicida
See Gymnema sylvestre
genital herpes
  aloe vera
echinacea
genital infections
  probiotics
gentian
gentiana
  See gentian
Gentiana lutea
  See gentian
German chamomile
  See chamomile
gestational diabetes
  chromium
cinnamon
gin-nan
  See ginkgo biloba
ginger
gingivitis
  calendula
green tea
ginkgo biloba
ginseng (Indian or Ayurvedic)
  See withania
ginseng (Korean)
ginseng (Siberian)
ginseng (women's)
  See dong quai
glaucoma
  bilberry
ginkgo biloba
globe artichoke
glossary
glucosamine
glucose metabolism
glucosamine
psyllium
glucose tolerance factor
  vitamin B3 (niacin)
glutamine
glycine gracilis
  See soy
glycine hispida
  See soy
Glycine max
  See soy
glycine soja
  See soy
Glycyrrhiza glabra
  See licorice
goathead
  See tribulus
goatweed
  See St John's wort
gokahi
  See Siberian ginseng
gokhru
  See Gymnema sylvestre
gold-bloom
  See calendula
goldenrod
goldenseal
gomishi
  See schisandra
graine de marronier d'inde
  See horse chestnut
granadilla
  See passionflower
grape seed extract
grapple plant
  See devil's claw
gravel root
  See meadowsweet
great mountain root
  See horseradish
great mullein
  See mullein
great raifort
  See horseradish
great stinging nettle
  See stinging nettle
haemodialysis
  vitamin E
haemorrhoids
  bilberry
  horse chestnut
hagedorn
  See hawthorn
han cao
  See licorice
hardhay
  See St John’s wort
haridra
  See turmeric
Harpagophytum procumbens
  See devil’s claw
hartheu
  See St John’s wort
haver
  See oats
hawthorn
head lice eradication
  tea tree oil
headache
  cloves
  feverfew
  magnesium
  peppermint
  vitamin B2 (riboflavin)
  willowbark
heart transplantation
  vitamin B6
heat shock response
  turmeric
hedgesthorn
  See hawthorn
heerabol
  See myrrh
heidelbeeren
  See bilberry
Helicobacter pylori infection
cinnamon
garlic
probiotics
heliotrope
See valerian
hemp tree
See chastetree
hepatic enzyme induction
dandelion
hepatic fibrosis
St Mary’s thistle
hepatic osteodystrophy
vitamin D
hepatitis infection
baical skullcap
St Mary’s thistle
hepatoprotective action
andrographis
astragalus
baical skullcap
ginger
globe artichoke
licorice
perilla
quercetin
rosemary
SAMe
schisandra
St Mary’s thistle
turmeric
hepatorestorative activity
Korean ginseng
herb de millepertuis
See St John’s wort
herba de la pastora
See damiana
herba thymi
See thyme
herbal medicine
drug interactions
evidence base
manufacturers
teaching institutions
herbe aux chats
See valerian
herpes infections
cloves
echinacea
L-lysine
lemon balm
licorice
St John’s wort
zinc
hestekastanje
See horse chestnut
hierba de San Juan
See St John’s wort
hippocastani semen
See horse chestnut
hirabol myrrh
See myrrh
HIV infection
aloe vera
bitter melon
glutamine
licorice
selenium
vitamin B3 (niacin)
vitamin B12
holligold
See calendula
holy thistle
See St Mary’s thistle
homocysteine
folate
vitamin B6
vitamin B12
honey
hopfen
See hops
hops
_index_1576
hormone modulation
black cohosh
chaste tree
damiana
don quai
Korean ginseng
licorice
pygeum
saw palmetto
selenium
soy
wild yam
hormone production
tyrosine
horse chestnut
horseradish
hospital poison information centres
houblon
See hops
hu lu ba
See fenugreek
Huang qin
See baical skullcap
huang-qi
See astragalus
huckleberry
See bilberry
huile d’onagre
See evening primrose oil
Humulus lupulus
See hops
Hungarian chamomile
See chamomile
Huntington’s disease
creatinine
hurtleberry
See bilberry
hwanggi
See astragalus
Hydrastis canadensis
See goldenseal
hydrogen peroxide content of honey
hyperemesis
vitamin B1
hyperhomocysteinaemia
folate
vitamin B6
vitamin B12
Hypericum perforatum
See St John’s wort
hyperlipidaemia
chitosan
chromium
cocoa
fenugreek
garlic
globe artichoke
grape seed extract
Gymnema sylvestre
hawthorn
Korean ginseng
magnesium
myrrh
oats
policosanol
psyllium
turmeric
hypertension
calcium
coenzyme Q10
evening primrose oil
fish oils
garlic
hawthorn
magnesium
oats
olive
vitamin E
hyperthyroidism
carnitine
hypertriglyceridaemia
  myrrh
  vitamin B3 (niacin)
  vitamin B5 (pantothenic acid)

hypnotic effects
  kava kava
  valerian

hypoglycaemic action
  aloe vera
  andrographis
  bilberry
  chromium
  damiana
  fenugreek
  oats
  olive

hypoparathyroidism
  vitamin D

hypophosphataemia
  vitamin D

hypotensive action
  andrographis
  astragalus
  baical skullcap
  stinging nettle
  vitamin C

icho
  See ginkgo biloba

iluo
  See pygeum

immunomodulation
  aloe vera
  andrographis
  astragalus
  baical skullcap
  beta-carotene
  cocoa
  coenzyme Q10
  dong quai
  echinacea
  fenugreek
  flaxseed oil
  garlic
  ginkgo biloba
  glutamine
  goldenseal
  Korean ginseng
  licorice
  lutein
  probiotics
  quercetin
  selenium
  shark cartilage
  Siberian ginseng
  turmeric
  vitamin A
  vitamin B12
  vitamin C
  vitamin D
  vitamin E
  withania
  zinc
  in vivo studies
  beta-carotene
  Indian echinacea
    See andrographis
  Indian elm
    See slippery elm
  Indian ginger
    See ginger
  Indian ginseng
    See withania
  Indian head
    See echinacea
  Indian mulberry
    See noni
  Indian saffron
    See turmeric
  infants
  calcium
  fish oils
  — continued next page
infants—continued
  glutamine
  vitamin A
infections
  garlic
  green tea
  honey
  licorice
  Siberian ginseng
  thyme
  vitamin A
  vitamin C
inflammation
  bilberry
  calendula
  cocoa
  fish oils
  flaxseed oil
  golden rod
  myrrh
  olive
  raspberry leaf
  sage
  slippery elm
  willow bark
inflammatory bowel disease
  probiotics
influenza
  licorice
insect bites
  lavender
insomnia
  kava kava
  lavender
  lemon balm
  passionflower
  valerian
insulin sensitivity
  carnitine
  chromium
  cinnamon
  flaxseed oil
  insulin-like activity
  zinc
  intermittent claudication
  vitamin E
  Internet resources
  intoxicating pepper
    See kava kava
  iodine
  iperico
    See St John’s wort
  iron
  iron chelation
    St Mary’s thistle
  iron deficiency anaemia
    vitamin C
  irradiation protection
    Korean ginseng
  irritable bowel syndrome
    globe artichoke
    peppermint
    probiotics
    psyllium
  ischaemic heart disease
    astragalus
  ischaemic reperfusion injury
    bilberry
    ispaghula
    See psyllium
  itch
    oats
  Jacob’s staff
    See mullein
  jalanimba
    See brahmi
  jalanaveri
    See brahmi
  Jamaica ginger
    See ginger
  Jamaican honeysuckle
    See passionflower

Index 1579
Japanese silver apricot  See ginkgo biloba
jaundice root  See goldenseal
jiang huang  See turmeric
johanniskraut  See St John’s wort
joint pain  willow bark
justicia adhatoda  See adhatoda
kakara  See bitter melon
kalmegh  See andrographis
Kan Jang  See andrographis
kannan keihi  See cinnamon
kannel  See cinnamon
kansas snakeroot  See echinacea
kanzo  See licorice
kar-e-khask  See Gymnema sylvestre
karela  See bitter melon
katzenwurzel  See valerian
kava kava
Kawa  See kava kava
keishi  See cinnamon
keuschlammfruchte  See chaste tree
kew tree  See ginkgo biloba
kharak  See Gymnema sylvestre
kidney  baical skullcap
          St Mary’s thistle
kidney stone prevention  calcium
          magnesium
          tribulus
king of bitters  See andrographis
king’s cure all  See evening primrose oil
kirah  See pygeum
klamath weed  See St John’s wort
knoblauch  See garlic
konradskraut  See St John’s wort
Korean ginseng
kronsbeere  See cranberry
ku gua  See bitter melon
kuei-pi  See cinnamon
kulit kayumanis  See cinnamon
kurundu  See cinnamon
L-carnitine
L-glutamine
L-lysine
L-tyrosine
la-juan  See garlic
lactation  calcium
          continued next page
lactation—continued
   chaste tree
   fenugreek
lady of the meadow
   See meadowsweet
lady’s milk
   See St Mary’s thistle
lady’s thistle
   See St Mary’s thistle
lae vulgaris
   See chamomile
Lavandula
   See lavender
lavanga-pattai
   See cinnamon
lavender
laxative action
   aloe vera
leg ulcers
   aloe vera
   zinc
lemon balm
Leontodon taraxacum
   See dandelion
libido
   damiana
   tribulus
lice eradication
licorice
Linum usitatissimum
   See flaxseed oil
linseed oil
   See flaxseed oil
lion’s tooth
   See dandelion
lipid oxidation
   lycopene
lipid peroxidation reduction
licorice
lipid-lowering activity
   bitter melon
   chromium
   cocoa
   flaxseed oil
   ginger
   globe artichoke
   oats
   psyllium
   vitamin B3 (niacin)
lipoxygenase inhibition
   baical skullcap
liver cancer
   selenium
liver cirrhosis
   SAMe
   St Mary’s thistle
liver damage (toxicity)
   St Mary’s thistle
liver disease
   dong quai
   St Mary’s thistle
liver regeneration
   schisandra
   St Mary’s thistle
liver tonics
   dandelion
   Korean ginseng
local anaesthesia
   cloves
   kava kava
   myrrh
local analgesia
   cloves
lung cancer
   lutein
   vitamin A
lupulus
   See hops
lurundu
   See cinnamon
lutein
   lycopene
   © 2007 Elsevier Australia

Index   1581
lysine
macrophylllos cassia bark tree  
    See cinnamon
macula degeneration  
    beta-carotene
macular degeneration  
    ginkgo biloba
    lutein
    lycopene
    zinc
macular pigment development 
    lutein
magnesium
maidenhair tree  
    See ginkgo biloba
malabar nut tree  
    See adhatoda
malabsorptive syndromes 
    vitamin D
male fertility  
    carnitine
    selenium
    vitamin E
    zinc
manufacturers of herbal medicines
Marian thistle 
    See St Mary’s thistle
Mariendistel 
    See St Mary’s thistle
marigold
marine oils  
    See fish oils
marron europeen 
    See horse chestnut
marronnier 
    See horse chestnut
marsh apple  
    See cranberry
marsh parsley  
    See celery
Mary thistle 
    See St Mary’s thistle
masabedda  
    See Gymnema sylvestre
mast cell stabilisation 
    albizia
    lavender
    St Mary’s thistle
mastalgia  
    chaste tree
    evening primrose oil
matrem  
    See feverfew
Matricaria chamomilla  
    See chamomile
matsu-cha  
    See green tea
maybush  
    See hawthorn
mayflower  
    See evening primrose oil
maypop passion flower  
    See passionflower
maythorn  
    See hawthorn
meadow clover 
    See red clover
meadow sage  
    See sage
meadow-wort  
    See meadowsweet
meadowsweet
measles (reduction of secondary infections) 
    vitamin A
meidorn  
    See hawthorn
Melaleuca alternifolia  
    See tea tree oil
melasol  
    See tea tree oil
meletin
See quercetin
Melissa officinalis
See lemon balm
membrane functions
calcium
memory
Korean ginseng
memory enhancement
albizia
brahmi
sage
memory impairment
ginkgo biloba
mengkudu
See noni
menopausal symptoms
black cohosh
evening primrose oil
kava kava
Korean ginseng
red clover
sage
soy
St John’s wort
vitamin E
wild yam
menstrual cycle
black cohosh
chaste tree
magnesium
vitamin B1
mental fatigue
creatine
Mentha × piperita
See peppermint
merasingi
See Gymnema sylvestre
metabolic effects
flaxseed oil
folate and
vitamin B1
vitamin C
methi
See fenugreek
methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus
infection
tea tree oil
methotrexate toxicity
folate
Mexican damiana
See damiana
Mexican yam
See wild yam
microbial food supplements
See probiotics
migraine
feverfew
magnesium
vitamin B2 (riboflavin)
milk thistle
See St Mary’s thistle
milk vetch
See astragalus
millepertuis
See St John’s wort
mineralisation of bone and teeth
calcium
mineralocorticoid effects
licorice
minerals
clinical use
minor bupleurum combination
baical skullcap
miscarriages (recurrent)
vitamin B12
mitral valve prolapse
magnesium
miziboc
See damiana
Momordica charantia
See bitter melon

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
Mongolian milk
See astragalus
monk’s pepper
See chaste tree
mood elevation
selenium
moosbeere
See cranberry
moose elm
See slippery elm
Morinda citrifolia
See noni
morning sickness
vitamin B6
morphine tolerance
withania
motion sickness
ginger
motor neurone disease
creatine
mountain radish
See horseradish
mouse-ear
See chickweed
mucoprotective action
vitamin A
mucous membrane inflammation
licorice
sage
mulllein
muscle contraction
calcium
muscular dystrophy
creatine
musculoskeletal disorders
ginger
mushroom poisoning
St Mary’s thistle
mussels, New Zealand green-lipped
mutterkraut
See feverfew
myalgia
St John’s wort
myocardial infarction
carnitine
vitamin C
myocarditis
astragalus
carnitine
myrrh
N-(aminoiminomethyl)-N-methyl glycine
See creatine
N-acetyl D-glucosamine
See glucosamine
narrow-leaved paperbark
See tea tree oil
nasal congestion
eucalyptus
horseradish
nasal sprays
vitamin B5 (pantothenic acid)
zinc
nasopharynx inflammation
golden rod
Nasturtium armoracia
See horseradish
natal tree
See pygeum
natural DHEA
See wild yam
nausea
baical skullcap
ginger
vitamin B6
nephrolithiasis
nephroprotective effects
St Mary’s thistle
nervous system
fish oils
vitamin B12
vitamin C
— continued next page
nervous system—continued
  withania
  zinc
nettle
  See stinging nettle
neural tube defects
  vitamin B12
neurological degenerative diseases
  creatine
neuroprotective activity
  baical skullcap
  creatine
  ginkgo biloba
  Korean ginseng
  quercetin
  withania
neurotransmitter activity effects
  albizia
  chromium
  ginkgo biloba
  guarana
  kava kava
  St John’s wort
  tyrosine
  vitamin B1
  vitamin B6
  vitamin C
New Zealand green-lipped mussel
NF-kappa B inhibition
  turmeric
nhau
  See noni
niacin (vitamin B3)
nicotinic acid
  See Vitamin B3
night blindness
  vitamin A
nitrates tolerance
  vitamin C
  vitamin E

nitric oxide synthase inhibition
  baical skullcap
  non-haeme iron
  noni
  nono
  See noni
  nonu
  See noni
nutrients
  interaction with
  magnesium
  nutritive demulcent
  slippery elm
  oats
  ob choei
  See cinnamon
obesity
  chromium
  obsessive compulsive disorder
  St John’s wort
  oedema
  evening primrose oil
  Oenothera biennis
  See evening primrose oil
  oesophageal cancer
  selenium
  oesophageal spasm (DES)
  peppermint
  oestradiol binding
  wild yam
  oestrogen receptor binding
  chaste tree
  soy
  oestrogenic activity
  black cohosh
  hops
  licorice
  red clover
  rosemary
  rosemary
  wild yam

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
ogap’l
  See Siberian ginseng
ogi
  See astragalus
ogon
  See baical skullcap
oil of cloves
  See cloves
old man
  See rosemary
old woman’s broom
  See damiana
*Olea europaea*
  See olive
oleum caryophylli
  See cloves
*Oleum Eucalypti*
  See eucalyptus
olive
oneseed hawthorn
  See hawthorn
online electronic databases
onychomycosis (toenail)
  tea tree oil
ophthalmic conditions
  bilberry
  ginkgo biloba
  grape seed extract
  lutein
  vitamin A
  vitamin C
oral hygiene
  calendula
  chitosan
  cloves
  coenzyme Q10
  folate
  green tea
  perilla
oral inflammation
  myrrh
orange root
  See goldenseal
osteoarthritis
  celery
  chondroitin
  glucosamine
  New Zealand green-lipped mussel
  SAMe
  shark cartilage
  vitamin E
osteodystrophy
  vitamin D
osteomalacia
  vitamin D
osteoporosis
  calcium
  magnesium
  red clover
  soy
  vitamin D
otitis media
  mullein
Our Lady’s key
  See evening primrose oil
ovarian cancer
  lutein
oxygen transport and storage
  iron
  *P. afra*
  See psyllium
  *P. arenaria*
  See psyllium
  *P. indica*
  See psyllium
  *P. psyllium*
  See psyllium
pale coneflower
  See echinacea
palsywort
  See evening primrose oil

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
Panax ginseng
  See Korean ginseng
pancreas function
  vitamin B3 (niacin)
pantothenic acid
paperbark tree oil
  See tea tree oil
parathyroid gland regulation
  vitamin D
parathyroid hormone
  vitamin D
Parkinson's disease
  SAMe
  vitamin E
Passiflora incarnata
  See passionflower
passion vine
  See passionflower
passionflower
Paulinia cupana
  See guarana
peppermint
pepperrot
  See horseradish
peptic ulcer
  turmeric
percutaneous coronary intervention
  folate
  vitamin B12
perilla
Perilla frutescens
  See perilla
perineal discomfort following childbirth
  lavender
periodontal disease
  coenzyme Q10
  folate
  perilla
perioperative care
  iron
peripheral arterial occlusive disease
  garlic
peripheral vascular disease
  carnitine
  ginkgo biloba
peripheral venous insufficiency
  grape seed extract
Periploca sylvestris
  See Gymnema sylvestre
peristalsis
  Korean ginseng
pernicious anaemia
  vitamin B12
perspiration reduction
  sage
petit myrte
  See bilberry
pharyngeal inflammation
  myrrh
pharyngotonsillitis
  andrographis
phaseolus max
  See soy
phenylketonuria (PKU)
  tyrosine supplementation in
phosphorous regulation
  vitamin D
phosphorus regulation
  vitamin D
photo-aged skin
  vitamin C
phu germanicum
  See valerian
phu parvum
  See valerian
Physalis alkekengi
  See withania
phyto-oestrogens
  See oestrogenic activity
Pigenil
  See pygeum
pigmentation
   folate
   ginkgo biloba
   lutein
pin heads matricaria
   See chamomile
Piper methysticum
   See kava kava
pit shirish shirsha
   See albizia
Plantago ovata
   See psyllium
plantain
   See psyllium
pneumonia
   baical skullcap
poisoning
   St Mary’s thistle
poisons information centres
polar plant
   See rosemary
policosanol
polyneuropathy
   St John’s wort
poor man’s treacle
   See garlic
postmenopausal women
   calcium
pot marigold
   See calendula
pouchitis
   probiotics
prebiotics
pregnancy
   calcium
   evening primrose oil
   folate
   ginger
   iron
   magnesium
   vitamin B6
   vitamin D
preisselbeere
   See cranberry
premenstrual syndrome
   black cohosh
   calcium
   chaste tree
   cocoa
   evening primrose oil
   ginkgo biloba
   magnesium
   St John’s wort
   vitamin B6
   vitamin E
preoperative care
   glutamine
priest’s crown
   See dandelion
primrose oil
   See evening primrose oil
probiotics
progesterone effects
   chaste tree
prolactin effects
   chaste tree
   saw palmetto
Pronitol
   See pygeum
prostate cancer
   astragalus
   fish oils
   flaxseed oil
   lutein
   lycopene
   selenium
   stinging nettle
   vitamin D
prostatic hypertrophy
   red clover
   saw palmetto
   stinging nettle

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
reductase (5-alpha) inhibition  
  saw palmetto  
regulation of calcium and phosphorus levels  
  vitamin D  
ren shen  
  See Korean ginseng  
renal osteodystrophy  
  vitamin D  
renal transplant recipients  
  folate  
  vitamin B12  
reproductive function  
  zinc  
reproductive system disorders  
  evening primrose oil  
  wild yam  
resistance to stressors (adaptogens)  
  Korean ginseng  
  schisandra  
  Siberian ginseng  
  tyrosine  
  withania  
respiratory diseases  
  baical skullcap  
  cinnamon  
  colostrum  
  eucalyptus  
  licorice  
  thyme  
  vitamin C  
restenosis  
  folate  
  vitamin B12  
  vitamin E  
restlessness  
  hops  
retinitis pigmentosa  
  vitamin A  
retinopathy  
  bilberry  
  ginkgo biloba  
grape seed extract  
reward deficiency syndrome  
  tyrosine  
rheumatism root  
  See wild yam  
rheumatoid arthritis  
  evening primrose oil  
  fish oils  
  New Zealand green-lipped mussel  
  olive  
  selenium  
  vitamin B2 (riboflavin)  
  vitamin E  
rhinitis  
  stinging nettle  
  vitamin B5 (pantothenic acid)  
rhiza zingiberis  
  See ginger  
rhabdastanisamen  
  See horse chestnut  
Roripa armoracia  
  See horseradish  
rosemary  
rosin rose  
  See St John’s wort  
Rosmarini folium  
  See rosemary  
Rosmarinus officinalis  
  See rosemary  
rout gui  
  See cinnamon  
rubi idaei folium  
  See raspberry leaf  
Rubus  
  See raspberry leaf  
Rudbeckia  
  See echinacea  
russisk rod  
  See Siberian ginseng
rustic treacle
    See garlic
s-adenosyl-L-methionine (SAMe)
sabal fructus
    See saw palmetto
Sabal serrulata
    See saw palmetto
safety of vitamins and minerals
saffron, Indian
    See turmeric
sage
Saigon cinnamon
    See cinnamon
sakau
    See kava kava
saleekha
    See cinnamon
salisburia
    See ginkgo biloba
salivation reduction
    sage
Salix alba
    See willowbark
Salvia
    See sage
sambrani chettu
    See brahmi
SAMe
SARS-associated coronavirus
    licorice
satinflower
    See chickweed
saw palmetto
    stinging nettle with
scar tissue
    vitamin E
schisandra
Schisandra chinensis
    See schisandra
scleroderma
    vitamin D
scurvy root
    See echinacea
scute
    See baical skullcap
Scutellaria baicalensis
    See baical skullcap
seasonal affective disorder
    St John’s wort
secretion reduction
    sage
sedative effects
    chamomile
    hops
    lavender
    lemon balm
    passionflower
    valerian
selenium
Serenoa repens
    See saw palmetto
serotonergic activity
    black cohosh
serotonin effects
    feverfew
    vitamin B6
Seville orange
    See citrus aurantium
sex hormones
    licorice
sexual function
    damiana
    ginkgo biloba
    Korean ginseng
    tribulus
shanzha
    See hawthorn
shark cartilage
sheng-mai-san
    See schisandra
shepherd’s herb
    See damiana
shokyo
  See ginger
shosi
  See perilla
Siberian ginseng
sickle cell anaemia
  folate
  vitamin B2 (riboflavin)
silberweide
  See willowbark
silver apricot
  See ginkgo biloba
Silybum marianum
  See St Mary’s thistle
single chamomile
  See chamomile
sinusitis
  horseradish
sirakurinjan
  See Gymnema sylvestre
skin conditions
  aloe vera
  chamomile
  chickweed
  evening primrose oil
  licorice
  mullein
  slippery elm
  St John’s wort
  tea tree oil
  vitamin A
  vitamin B5 (pantothenic acid)
  vitamin C
  vitamin E
  zinc
skin disinfection
  thyme
skullcap
sleep disorders
  hops
  vitamin B12
slippery elm
smallage
  See celery
snakeroot
  See echinacea
soja hispida
  See soy
soja max
  See soy
Solidago
  See goldenrod
Somali myrrh
  See myrrh
sonnenwendkraut
  See St John’s wort
soothing irritated skin
  slippery elm
sophretin
  See quercetin
soy
  See quercetin
Spanish chestnut
  See horse chestnut
Spanish lavender
  See lavender
Spanish sage
  See sage
spasm
  lemon balm
  peppermint
  rosemary
  valerian
sperm motility
  astragalus
spike lavender
  See lavender
spinal cord injury
  creatine
spireae flos
  See meadowsweet
squamous cell carcinoma
  lutein

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
squawroot
    See black cohosh
St Jan’s kraut
    See St John’s wort
St John’s wort
St Mary’s thistle
stag’s herb
    See damiana
*Staphylococcus aureus* infection
    tea tree oil
star chickweed
    See chickweed
starweed
    See chickweed
starwort
    See chickweed
statin drug use
    coenzyme Q10 and
*Stellaria media*
    See chickweed
steroid receptor activity
    Korean ginseng
stinging nettle
    saw palmetto with
stinking rose
    See garlic
stomach cancer
    lycopene
    selenium
stress
    Korean ginseng
    licorice
    schisandra
    Siberian ginseng
    tyrosine
    valerian
    vitamin B6
    withania
stringy bark tree
    See eucalyptus
stroke
    magnesium
    su zì
    See perilla
sunburn protection
    green tea
    vitamin C
    vitamin E
sundrop
    See evening primrose oil
surgery
    glutamine
    iron
sushavi
    See bitter melon
sweat reduction
    sage
sweet balm
    See lemon balm
sweet elm
    See slippery elm
sweet goldenrod
    See goldenrod
sweet root
    See licorice
sweet taste suppression
    Gymnema sylvestre
swine snout
    See dandelion
*Syzgium aromaticum*
    See cloves
Tadenan
    See *pygeum*
taxagawurzel
    See Siberian ginseng
taj
    See cinnamon
tamalpatra
    See cinnamon
tanaceti partheni
    See feverfew

© 2007 Elsevier Australia
Tanacetum parthenium
  See feverfew
tang kuei
  See dong quai
Taraxacum
  See dandelion
taste suppression
  Gymnema sylvestre
tea tree oil
  teaching institutions
teeth mineralisation
  calcium
tempeltrae
  See ginkgo biloba
temple balm
  See ginkgo biloba
term definitions
testosterone
  licorice
  saw palmetto
theobroma cacao
  See cocoa
thermogenic activity
  green tea
thiamin
  See vitamin B1
thyme
  thyme-leave gratiola
  See brahmi
thymianbitter
  See thyme
Thymus vulgaris
  See thyme
thyroid hormones
  carnitine
  fenugreek
  iodine
  selenium
  tyrosine
thyroiditis
  selenium
ti tree oil
  See tea tree oil
timo
  See thyme
tinea
  garlic
  tea tree oil
tinnitus
  ginkgo biloba
  vitamin B12
tipton weed
  See St John’s wort
tocopherol
  See vitamin E
toenail infection (onychomycosis)
  tea tree oil
toko keihi
  See cinnamon
tonga
  See kava kava
tonsillitis
  andrographis
toothache
  cloves
  total parenteral nutrition
  vitamin B1
touch-me-not
  See Siberian ginseng
toxic liver damage
  St Mary’s thistle
traubensilberkerze
  See black cohosh
travel sickness
  ginger
treatment decisions
  colostrum
tribulus
  Tribulus terrestris
  See tribulus
trifoil
  See red clover
Trifolium pratense
  See red clover
triglyceride level reduction
  bilberry
  fish oils
Trigonella foenum
  See fenugreek
trigonella seeds
  See fenugreek
true lavender
  See lavender
turethra
true sage
  See sage
turmeric
Trumera
  See damiana
tyrosine
uabano
  See guarana
uranzeiro
  See guarana
ubidecarenone
  See coenzyme Q10
ubiquinol
  See coenzyme Q10
ulcers
  aloe vera
  baical skullcap
  bilberry
  brahmi
  calendula
  chamomile
  fenugreek
  ginger
  horse chestnut
  Korean ginseng
  licorice
  turmeric
  zinc
Ulmus
  See slippery elm
universities
upper respiratory tract infections
  andrographis
  echinacea
  garlic
  meadowsweet
  zinc
urinary deodourising activity
  cranberry
urinary tract infection
  celery
  cranberry
  probiotics
Urtica dioica
  See stinging nettle
urtica ortie
  See stinging nettle
urticaria
  chickweed
uterine effects
  dong quai
  raspberry leaf
Vaccinium macrocarpon
  See cranberry
Vaccinium myrtillus
  See bilberry
Vaccinium oxyccoccus
  See cranberry
vaginitis
  garlic
  tea tree oil
valerian
Valeriana officinalis
  See valerian
varicose veins
  bilberry
vasa
See adhatoda
horse chestnut
vasaka
See adhatoda
vascular activity
baical skullcap
horse chestnut
vasoregulation
ginkgo biloba
Verbascum
See mullein
vertigo
ginkgo biloba
Viet Nam cinnamon
See cinnamon
violet willow
See willowbark
viscoelastic agents
chondroitin
visual function improvement
bilberry
lutein
vitamin A
vitamin A
vitamin B1
vitamin B2 (riboflavin)
vitamin B3 (niacin)
vitamin B5 (pantothenic acid)
vitamin B6
vitamin B9 (folate)
vitamin B12
vitamin C
vitamin D
vitamin E
vitamins
clinical use
Vitex agnus-castus
See chaste tree
vitiligo
folate
ginkgo biloba
Vitis vinifera
See grape seed extract
vomiting
baical skullcap
ginger
vitamin B1
wanzenkraut
See black cohosh
water lemon
See passionflower
web resources
weight gain promotion
withania
weight loss
calcium
chitosan
citrus aurantium
damiana
green tea
guarana
Gymnema sylvestre
psyllium
weissdorn
See hawthorn
white endive
See dandelion
white ginseng
See Korean ginseng
white willowbark
See willowbark
whitehorn
See hawthorn
whortleberry
See bilberry
wild celery
See celery
wild chamomile
See chamomile
wild cinnamon
See cinnamon
wild cucumber
  See bitter melon
wild endive
  See dandelion
wild gentian
  See gentian
wild pepper
  See chaste tree
wild sesame
  See perilla
wild valerian
  See valerian
wild yam
willow bark
winged elm
  See slippery elm
winter cherry
  See withania
winter weed
  See chickweed
witch’s herb
  See St John’s wort
withania
Withania somnifera
  See withania
women’s ginseng
  See dong quai
wood spider
  See devil’s claw
wound healing
  aloe vera
calendula
  See chamomile
chamomile
chickweed
echinacea
grape seed extract
honey
myrrh
slippery elm
St John’s wort
vitamin B2 (riboflavin)